

A photograph of an Antarctic landscape. In the foreground, there is a large, jagged iceberg with a sharp peak. The water is filled with smaller ice floes and chunks. In the background, there are more ice formations under a clear, dark blue sky.

# The Antarctic Dictionary

A COMPLETE GUIDE TO ANTARCTIC ENGLISH

**BERNADETTE HINCE**

# The Antarctic Dictionary

A COMPLETE GUIDE TO ANTARCTIC ENGLISH

BERNADETTE HINCE



CSIRO  
PUBLISHING



museum  
VICTORIA



National Library of Australia  
Cataloguing-in-Publication Data

Hince, B. (Bernadette), 1951- .  
The Antarctic dictionary : a complete guide to Antarctic English.

Bibliography.  
ISBN 0 9577471 1X.

1. English language – Antarctica – Etymology.
  2. English language – Antarctica – Dictionaries.
- I. Title.

427.9989

© 2000 Bernadette Hince  
First published 2000 by CSIRO Publishing and Museum of Victoria

Available from:  
CSIRO PUBLISHING  
PO Box 1139  
(150 Oxford Street)  
Collingwood 3066  
Australia

Tel: (03) 9662 7666 Int: +61 3 9662 7666  
Fax: (03) 9662 7555 Int: +61 3 9662 7555  
Email: sales@publish.csiro.au  
www.publish.csiro.au

Cover photo "Iceberg II" © Doug Thost

*The publishers gratefully acknowledge the support of Peter Boyer and the Australian Antarctic Division in the production of this book.*

To my daughters Rachael and Clare,  
and with special thanks to Harry Burton

*This page intentionally left blank*



## —Foreword—

**H**umans are a restless, adaptable and inventive species. As we have spread around the globe to colonise new environments, both benign and hostile, we have constantly had to invent new words to describe unfamiliar landscapes, identify new plants and animals, report the changing of the seasons and the weather, and to catalogue the new tools and techniques we have needed to survive. Language lubricates the complex social machinery that has driven our evolutionary success.

Language is a living, constantly evolving entity. But every modern language is also an archive of the history and culture of its speakers, a catalogue of the things that were important to them in their lives, and a description of the environments in which they lived.

As a professional explorer, I have had the privilege of trekking across Antarctica, and like others before me, found myself in an environment so alien to human experience, so overwhelmingly different, that even the riches of the English language were often inadequate to describe it.

Inevitably, the exigencies of life in the frozen continent have spawned a new vocabulary. This vocabulary, like the English language itself, is a fresh synthesis of ingredients from other, older languages – the languages of the scientists, engineers, technicians and doctors of the nations that have established permanent bases in Antarctica.

Bernadette Hince's *Antarctic Dictionary* documents the development and use of this vocabulary. It is a unique and scholarly work. With its rich seams of pure, Pythonesque humour and dark irony, it illuminates the workings of the human mind when pushed to its limits.

A handwritten signature in black ink, appearing to read 'Ranulph Fiennes', with a stylized flourish at the end.

Sir Ranulph Fiennes  
17 August 2000

*I am to break into the conversation  
With a word that tastes like snow to say.*

Douglas Stewart *Fire on the Snow* 1944

## — Introduction —

**A**NTARCTICA is a place many English-speakers never think of. Sometimes it seems invisible. The continent does not appear in the world map of the Australian airline Qantas which makes regular summer sightseeing flights to Antarctica — to the south of Australia and across the bottom of the map is a landless expanse of blue ocean.

The Antarctic is, in name as well as in fact, the opposite. In the Arctic, indigenous people live on the perimeter of a frozen ocean. They have occupied the lands surrounding the Arctic Ocean, used its resources, adapting their ways of life to extreme cold, and been colonised by other nations who have lately coveted its wealth (the oil). Antarctica has no native population. It is our only frozen continent, though even in the early twentieth century, its status as a continent was still only guessed at. In *Hard Times* (Wilkes, Antarctica, 1963) Rod Mallory's brief poem says it all in six words

*The Antarctic,  
So unarctic,  
So Antarctic*

The isolation and wild nature of Antarctica were at first barriers to both science and words. To many, the continent is still a barren and useless wasteland. But after decades of twentieth century visits by a very small number of explorers, adventurers, scientists and the military, Antarctica is now playing host to a growing number of summer tourists, the odd artist and the even odder lexicographer. In the 1999–2000 summer season, an estimated 14 000 tourists visited the antarctic regions. As people have begun to visit the waters and the ice, they have needed new words for its extraordinary wildlife, landscapes and weather. Journalist Water Sullivan noted this, when he wrote in 1957 that 'until the moon or other planets are attained, Antarctica will remain the most unearthly region within the reach of man. The landscape is so alien that a completely specialized vocabulary is needed to describe it.' This dictionary documents the development and use of this vocabulary.

### The region covered by the dictionary

Bernard Stonehouse wrote in *North Pole, South Pole* (1990): 'There are no single, definitive boundaries for either Arctic or Antarctic ... All who need polar boundaries define their own, and different disciplines use different criteria.' What do we mean by 'antarctic'? In 1902, Edwin Balch wrote

"Antarctica" is a term which is slowly coming into use to designate the continent which probably extends across the regions of the South Pole. ... Geographers are not yet agreed as to the limits of the Antarctic.

In 2000, they are still not agreed. So, using the prerogative of makers of dictionaries and of writers in general, I have drawn a wide net around a slippery subject.

In this dictionary Antarctica is the continent and its surrounding seas and islands, and the words described are those used there. No one has made a study of the English of Antarctica before. When the *Oxford English Dictionary* was published in 1933, Antarctica had only just been recognised as a continent. Since then we have learnt much about the region, partly through the English-speaking researchers on Australian, British, New Zealand, South African and United States bases in Antarctica. These countries have a year-round presence on the continent. The Australian station of Mawson (established in 1954) is the oldest permanently-manned base in continental Antarctica. The American station at the south geographic pole, Amundsen-Scott, is the furthest south. In isolated places like these, a new vocabulary has developed.

The Antarctic regions include not only the continent of Antarctica. This dictionary also covers the subantarctic. It includes all the subantarctic islands and islands south of 40°S, and one narrowly north of this, Tristan da Cunha. Tristan is one of the two permanently-inhabited places covered here, the other being the Falkland Islands. British settlers came to the Falklands in 1765, and Tristan has been British since 1816; each has a unique lexicon. Many Falklands words — **camp** is the best example — come from the Spanish of nearby mainland South America. And many English terms used in southern-



most South America occur also, sometimes first, in the Falklands.

Whether looked at lexically or bio-geographically, the subantarctic islands are scattered but connected. The English botanist J.D. Hooker, in his *Flora antarctica* (1847), included Tristan, St Paul, Amsterdam, Prince Edward and Marion Islands, the New Zealand subantarctic islands, Kerguelen, the Falklands, South Georgia, the South Shetlands, and the South Sandwich Islands, and terms referring to these subantarctic islands are included in this dictionary.

The dictionary in general does not cover place names, either formal or informal, though where place names have been used as the basis for creating names for the residents, these names — **Goughel**, **MacTownite** and **Mawsonite**, or **Auckland Island flightless teal**, for example — have been included.

#### *Northern and Scandinavian influences*

Antarctica has no indigenous population, and its mineral and petroleum resources are remote, both politically since the signing of the **Madrid protocol**, and physically. But in the eighteenth, nineteenth and twentieth centuries, its marine life — whales, seals, and penguins — yielded furs and oils in evanescent abundance. Those who came from the north to harvest these resources brought words for the resources and the ways of harvesting, such as the Norwegian-based **grax**.

In the early twentieth century, whalers and sealers were predominantly Scandinavian. A census of South Georgia in 1909 showed that in a population of 720 whalers on shore and on factory ships, 80% were Norwegian, 8% Swedish, and 2% each Finnish and Danish (R. Headland, *The island of South Georgia* 1984). Members of Antarctic expeditions also represented diverse nations — the *Belgica* expedition (1897–99), for example, included Norwegian Roald Amundsen, Polish Henryk Arctowski, Romanian Emile Racovitza and American Frederick Cook. These men often had arctic experience, and brought with them northern words for the landscapes and creatures they were seeing — terms for landforms (**nunatak**), clothes (**mukluks**, **finnesko**), food (**pemmican**) and dog travel (**Nansen sled**).

Initially, I had assumed that a large number of the snow and ice terms in this dictionary (such as **ice blink**, which indicates ice-covered seas beyond present sight) would come from earlier use in the northern hemisphere. It was surprising to discover that it and many other terms in fact occur earlier in Antarctic English. This shows that people were

seeing unfamiliar sights — they needed English words for them, and coined them in the south. In part, it probably also reflects the fact that no-one has yet made a detailed study of Arctic English.

#### **How the dictionary was made**

The basis for this dictionary is my collection of more than 20 000 quotations from published sources. I read whatever I could lay my hands on, wherever I was — waiting rooms, the science lab at Davis in Antarctica, houses of friends, and libraries in various parts of the world all provided good material. But though my reading program was governed partly by chance I had clear aims: to cover the literature of the main English-speaking presences in Antarctica and the subantarctic (Britain, South Africa, Australia, New Zealand and the United States), from the earliest writings until modern times; and to cover the gamut of publications — scientific papers, poetry, plays, novels, magazines, newspapers, and advertisements.

The bulk of literature on Antarctica and the subantarctic regions is from the second half of the twentieth century. Scientific works form the largest part of it, because most exploration and occupation of the continent has been in the name of science. Scientific papers are easy to find, and not always so easy to read. I tried hard to find other additional sources to draw on, because scientific usage of words is generally highly specialised and I wanted evidence of broader common use. Some words included here are those which only a scientist would use — a non-scientist might say **icefish** rather than **nototheniid**. Other terms are so precise that they also are largely the preserve of scientists. Most of us would call the southern hemisphere seal *Mirounga leonina* a **sea elephant** or **elephant seal** — scientists would probably call it a **southern elephant seal**.

Almost all of the words in the dictionary database have been used in print several times, and the dictionary therefore provides evidence of sustained use over time. In some cases, this is not so, and words are included on the evidence of only one or two collected quotations — among these words are **benny**, **Bird Islander**, **dogloo**, **unicorn icefish** and the **vanilla daisy**. There are several reasons for including these words: they might be more often spoken than written, they might have had some historical vogue and no longer be known, or they might be names used in modern reference books. Words in the last category quite often become better known over time

and become used by other writers: they are recorded here as an early part of this process.

Other words — such as **snotsicle** — are simply too tempting to omit, though I have found only a sole published quotation for them. It is a great disappointment that I have not found a quotation for **the big pav**, meaning simply ‘Antarctica’ (a pav or pavlova is a popular meringue dessert in Australia and New Zealand). The nearest I got was in Meredith Hooper’s excellent children’s dictionary, *A for Antarctica*, where she writes that in the pack ice, ‘sometimes, as far as one could see, the ice was whipped into peaks like an endless white meringue’.

### How to use the dictionary

A ‘historical dictionary’ is an old-fashioned term for one which uses quotations from published sources for each word it defines, and the life of the dictionary lies in the quotations. These are the main primary source of information in compiling the dictionary — they are an equivalent to the skins in museums used by bird taxonomists, or the pressed dried plants in herbariums which botanists use in naming plants. They are the evidence of use, and of meaning.

Quotations are reproduced exactly as they appear in the original source, with the following small typographical exceptions: text appearing in blocks of capital letters has usually been put into lower case italics, and scientific names in earlier texts have sometimes been italicised in the interest of clarity. Where quoted text has a mistake which I recognise as such, and where it would help to flag this, the term ‘[sic]’ (meaning ‘thus’) appears after the error. Material within a quotation is sometimes omitted for brevity. Following the practice of the recent *Dictionary of New Zealand English*, where medial ellipsis occurs, it is shown by ‘.’, or by ‘...’ when it includes a full-stop.

This dictionary follows the normal pattern for historical dictionaries, with headwords arranged strictly alphabetically, so **kelper** precedes **kelp goose**. If there are two different grammatical forms of a term, such as **try out** (which is both verb and noun), the form with earlier evidence of usage comes first. The etymology, where present, comes before the quotations. The quotations are arranged chronologically, and are selected to include the earliest one found, a scattering over time, and a recent example.

### Part of speech

No part of speech is given when a word is recorded only as a noun or noun phrase. The italicised part of speech otherwise follows the headword.

### Dates, location

Some quotations are diary entries; these can be identified because they begin with a full date of the entry. For example, a 1908 quotation for **pressure** gives the diary date in bold, followed by the latitude at which the observation was made (83°S). The year of publication follows after the author’s name:

**5 Dec 1908** (83°S) Shackleton, E.H. (1909).

Where I cannot be sure that an entry was made on a particular day, I have used the date of publication instead. As Roland Huntford points out in *Scott and Amundsen* (1993), published diaries sometimes differ dramatically from the original source. Historical dictionaries rely primarily on published sources, so this uncertainty must be taken as read.

When a description is published a considerable time after the event described, I have sometimes included in brackets an idea of the date of the event. For instance, the following quotation was published in 1942, but in the quotation the writer is referring to an earlier expedition of 1912:

**1942** (1912) Mawson, Douglas *Geographical narrative and cartography. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911-14. Scientific reports series A* Government Printer, Sydney, vol 1: 196.

After descending for some 7 miles, we found ourselves on a plain at the level of the barrier-ice wall of Watt Bay.

### Terminology

In definitions, *winter* and *summer* refer to the southern hemisphere winter and summer. Imperial measurements such as foot and mile are given, as are their metric equivalents.

In quoting periodicals and newspapers, I have recorded the author as well as the title of the publication. For example, under **all-sky camera**, the author and publication details appear as:

Kühn, G.J. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research*.

Where possible, I have distinguished between a *contributor* to a book, newspaper or journal, such as Kuhn (above) and a *brief extract or quotation* given in a work, such as Bransfield (below):

Bransfield, Edward in *The Literary Gazette and Journal of Belles Lettres* [London] vol 5, quoted in *Polar Record* (1945).

### Square brackets

Some words have early quotations which appear in square brackets. These describe the object or action but do not use the headword itself. For example the

first quotation for **adelle penguin** (Moseley 1879) accurately describes the bird but does not use the name. And in his 1840 quotation John Gould does not use the term **shy albatross**, though he says that he is naming the bird (in Latin) because of its shyness. These quotations appear in square brackets.

### *Cross-references*

In order to make using the dictionary as easy as possible, words have been frequently cross-referenced. Cross-references appear in bold roman (upright) text. For example:

**native cabbage**

The plant *Pringlea antiscorbutica*: see **Kerguelen cabbage**.

This shows that the main information appears under **Kerguelen cabbage**, the most common name for this plant.

Where cross-references exist for a word alone and also in a combination of that word, this is shown by round brackets, for example **(wild) fox**. Both **fox** and **wild fox** are used as names for this extinct Falkland Islands beast, and **(wild) fox** is the most economical way of showing that both the shorter and the longer form have separate entries in the dictionary.

### *Selecting of headwords*

Because this is a dictionary based on evidence of usage, the main entries appear under the name for

which there is most evidence of use. Bird names, for example, are not necessarily given their 'recommended common name'. While ornithologists might call a particular Falkland Islands bird a **long-tailed meadowlark**, many visitors and locals will refer to it as a **robin**, or as a **military starling**, which is where the description of the bird appears here. And though the **southern fulmar** might be so-called in most modern bird texts, it appears in this dictionary as the **silver-grey petrel** because the weight of evidence for use of that name over time is still far greater.

This dictionary does not prescribe usage. The pre-eminent reason for this is my belief that it is not possible to control the ways in which people use language — even though at times many of us might like to try. Words like **oasis**, for example, are considered by some to be unsuitable terms in an icy context. But 'oasis' has been used in Antarctica from at least 1915 until today, and it endures because it serves a purpose in describing ice-free land.

Writing dictionaries is an idiosyncratic occupation. The notion of a dusty independent arbitrator generating impartial information is seldom true. I enjoy making exclusions or inclusions, and answering to no-one but myself for it, though I have laid out my cards in the normal way of historical dictionaries for the reader to see.

Bernadette Hince  
8 April 2000  
Canberra



## — Acknowledgments —

This book depends heavily on friends, advisers and institutions. In particular, it is a pleasure to acknowledge and thank:

Museum Victoria, and its benefactor the late Sir Thomas Ramsay, for awarding me the Thomas Ramsay Science and Humanities fellowship which during 1995 funded a full year of research on my dictionary;

My parents Patricia and Kenneth Hince (Euroa) for bringing me up with a love of words and books, and for contributing quotations by reading for the dictionary; all my family for their love and support, especially my husband Nick Drayson for fish and scones, and careful editorial comment; the Antarctica New Zealand library (as it was), and Deirdre Sheppard's help; Susan Barr, David Bruton, Oddrun Grønvik and Christian-Emil Ore for advice on Norwegian words; Albert Beintema, the Netherlands, for Tristan advice; Margaret Bradshaw; Mike Bradstock (Canterbury University Press) for help with Kiwi words; the British Library; Harry Burton (Australian Antarctic Division, Hobart) for getting me to the ice and for his insightful friendship; the late John Calaby, inspirational in his depth of knowledge of natural history and willingness to share this; Jane Cameron (Falkland Islands archivist, Stanley) for generous help and thoughtful comments on Falklands words, and for a modern and informed perspective on the Falklands; Judy Chappell and Astrida Mednis (Canberra) for my introduction to Weddell seals and to camping in Antarctica; Trevor Chinn (National Institute of Water and Atmosphere, Dunedin) for information on the residents of Vanda camp; Ric Coe (Nairobi) and Rupert Summerson (Canberra) for the use of laptop computers at critical times; Max Downes (formerly ANARE, Melbourne) for discussions on Heard Island; Richard Eakin (University of New England, Portland, Maine) and Peter Ritchie (Massey University, Palmerston) for antarctic fish; Nikki Gemmell (formerly of the Australian Broadcasting Corporation) for recollections and 'snotsicle'; Oddrun Grønvik (Nordic Studies, Universitetet i Oslo) for help with the derivation of 'grax'; Harold Fletcher (late of Sydney) and Alf Howard (Brisbane) for their BANZARE recollections; John Fowler (Falkland Islands Tourist

Board, Stanley) for assistance with Falkland Islands contacts and words; Penny Greenslade (Canberra) for antarctic springtail advice; Scott Polar Research Institute archivist Bob Headland for advice on place names; Barbara Hince (Kenneth Hince Books, Melbourne) for her generosity with books; Valmai Hankel (State Library of South Australia, Adelaide) and Valerie Sitters (Royal Geographical Society of Australasia (SA), Adelaide); Meredith Hooper (London); Ian Hughes (Canberra) for reading, and for his loving intellectual and personal encouragement over many years; Janet Hughes (National Gallery of Australia, Canberra) for sharing contacts and knowledge; David Jacka (no relation) for his friendship and pharmacological wisdom; Eleanor Jacka (Adelaide); Kermit for three months of first-class antarctic food; Rod Ledingham (Australian Antarctic Division, Hobart) for dogs, nose-wiper mitts and other technology; Colin McLay (Zoology Department, University of Canterbury, Christchurch) for help with southern crabs; Jim McAdam (Department of Agriculture and Rural Development, Northern Ireland) for Falkland Islands plants; Mikael Magnusson (United Nations Environment Program, Nairobi) and Gestur Gíslason (Hitaveita Reykjavíkur, Iceland) for help with Icelandic words; Bill Manhire (English Department, Victoria University, Wellington) for sharing books and resources; Kevin McCue (Australian Geological Survey, Canberra) for his early encouragement of the project; Museum Victoria's Tim O'Hara, Robin Wilson and Ken Walker for help with my databases, Toulou Marra for typing, and Museum volunteers Nicole and Rebecca Seligmann for assistance in reading for the dictionary; Bruce Moore (Australian National Dictionary Centre, Australian National University, Canberra) for my accommodation as visiting fellow in 1997, and the centre's Julia Robinson, Joan Hughes, Jay Arthur, Hillary Kent and Dorothy Savage for discussions about words and dictionary matters over the years; Phil Moors (Royal Botanic Gardens, Melbourne) for information and books on New Zealand's sub-antarctic islands and for 'spheniscophile'; the National Library of Australia (Canberra), especially Averil Edwards and the staff of the Petherick Reading Room; Baden Norris (antarctic curator, Christchurch

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

Museum), and the museum's library staff; Harry Orsman (English Department, Victoria University, Wellington) for his outstanding generosity in sharing quotations, books and observations, and Elizabeth Orsman for hospitality in Wellington; Ber van Perlo (Nairobi and the Netherlands) for the use of his bird library; Andre Phillips (University of New South Wales, Sydney) for looking for words in deep space and at the South Pole, general cheerful encouragement, help with the ionosphere, and — with Claire Milton — for unexpected and valuable help with the final editing; Gary Poore (Museum Victoria, Melbourne) for crustaceans and books; Hugh and Penny Price (Cambridge) for hospitality while I worked at the Scott Polar Research Institute; Bill Ramson (formerly of the Australian National Dictionary Centre, Canberra) and Ian Hodgson (formerly of the Australian Geological Survey, Canberra) for providing pivotal jobs which eventually led me to this dictionary; Steve Richards (Helicopters New Zealand) for his bird's eye view of the antarctic continent and for helping me stay on it; Steve Rintoul (CSIRO Marine Research, Hobart) for ocean currents, Rodney Russ (Heritage Expeditions, Christchurch) for facilitating my visit to New Zealand's Snares, Auckland and Campbell Islands; the Scott Polar Research Institute staff (Cambridge), especially archivist William Mills, librarians Shirley Sawtell and Philippa Hogg, and public relations officer Pamela Davies; Peter Shaughnessy (CSIRO Wildlife and Ecology, Canberra) for his outstandingly thoughtful and careful comments on seals and birds; Ken Simpson (Museum Victoria, Melbourne) for archival matter on Macquarie Island; Helen Skcat and Ian Coates (Canberra) for proof-reading; Peter and Fran Smith for sharing their library of old *National Geographics* and the beauty of Koorabri; Bernard Stonehouse (Scott Polar Research Institute, Cambridge) for comments on the penguin names and penguin-related terms; May Stinear (Canberra) for her completely unexpected and valuable assistance in typing, and Bruce Stinear for his ANARE

knowledge and his encouragement; Rupert Summerson (Bureau of Rural Sciences, Canberra, and ex-BAS) for his tireless suggestions and queries, continuing enthusiasm for this book, contacts generously given, information on the British Antarctic Survey, and help with dog terms; Michael Swales (Tristan da Cunha Association, Uttoxeter) and his generously shared archives on Tristan da Cunha at Denstone College; Robert Swan (explorer, London) for books lent and conversation; Maudheimer Charles Swithinbank (Scott Polar Research Institute, Cambridge) for many helpful comments on the snow and ice terms, and for his courteous assistance at the Scott Polar Research Institute in 1995; Michael Thomson (British Antarctic Survey, Cambridge) for help with the world of dogs; Doug Thost (Australian Antarctic Division, Hobart) for the poster, words and cherry danishes; Bob Tingey (formerly Australian Geological Survey, Canberra) for encouragement and geological advice; Vicki Wadley (CSIRO Marine Research, Hobart) for squid names; Ken Walker (Museum Victoria, Melbourne) for his cheerful and willing assistance throughout 1995 as secretary of the Thomas Ramsay Science and Humanities fellowship committee; John Warham (Christchurch) for petrel thoughts; Steve Warren (Atmospheric Physics, University of Washington, Seattle) for help with the clouds, Martin White (British Antarctic Survey, Cambridge) and Dick Williams (Australian Antarctic Division, Hobart) for their many — separate — comments on antarctic and subantarctic fish; and Gavin Young (Australian National University, Canberra) for geology, palaeontology and the occasional loan of his mukluks, books and front step.

I would also like to thank those who have been involved in the book's production — I am indebted to Nick Alexander and Meredith Lewis of CSIRO Publishing, and to Anne Findlay for her proof-reading. Finally, my special thanks to Peter Boyer for devoting much of his own time to the design and desktop layout of the text.

# — Abbreviations —

advt	advertisement	NOED	Oxford English dictionary, 2nd edition
AND	Australian National Dictionary	n.p.	no page number
assoc	association	nr	near
attrib.	attributive(ly)	NZ	New Zealand
Aust.	Australia(n)	obs.	obsolete
Australas.	Australasia(n)	occas.	occasionally
b.	born	OED	Oxford English dictionary
Brit.	British/Britain	opp.	opposite
c	circa (about)	oz	ounce(s)
cf.	compare with	PEI English	Dictionary of Prince Edward Island English
DAlasKE	Dictionary of Alaskan English	perh.	perhaps
DCanE	A dictionary of Canadianisms on historical principles	phr.	phrase/phrasal
DNZE	Dictionary of New Zealand English	pl.	plural
DS AfrE	Dictionary of South African English	presum.	presumably
ed.(eds)	editor(s)	prob.	probably
EDD	English Dialect Dictionary	pt	part
edn	edition	publ.	published/publisher
esp.	especially	repr.	reprint(ed)
facs	facsimile edition	sc.	scilicet (an explanatory addition)
fr	from	sing.	singular
ft	foot, fect	spec.	specific(ally)
HANZAB	Handbook of Australian, New Zealand and Antarctic Birds	t	tonne(s)
hist.	historical: when this is used to label a word, it means the word is not in current use except when describing former times.	transl.	translated/translator
		US	United States
in	inch(es)	usu.	usual(ly)
incl.	including	vol	volume
m	metre(s)	yd	yard(s)
		w	with



*This page intentionally left blank*

# A

**aaaa, aaaaah, aaahh** *See* **ahhh**

## Adelaide

[From *Queen Adelaide Island*, sighted by British sea captain and navigator John Biscoe in February 1832 and named after Queen Adelaide, wife of William IV.]

An occupant of the British Adelaide Island base, off the west coast of the Antarctic Peninsula, which was opened in 1961 and closed in 1977, except for occasional use. It was transferred to Chile in the 1982–83 summer, and is now the station Teniente Luis Carvajal Villarroel, generally known as Carvajal.

**1967** *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* 5 (Aug): 5.

He and John enjoyed the hospitality at Adelaide, which they repaid by dog driving tips, and by John taking some “Adelaites” on a trip northwards.

## Adelian

[French explorer Jules Sébastien César Dumont d'Urville sighted part of continental Antarctica on his voyage in the *Astrolabe* in 1840, and named it *Terre Adélie* (Adélie Land) after his wife Adèle-Dorothée.]

A past or present occupant of Adélie Land.

**1915** Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911–1914* William Heinemann, London, vol II: 251.

The Adelians, if that may be used as a distinctive title, sat on the warm deck and read letters and papers in voracious haste, with snatches of the latest intelligence from the Macquarie Islanders and the ship's officers.

**adelie penguin** *noun phr. and attrib. Occas. adelic land penguin, and often shortened to adelic.* The French accent in **adélie** is often used in English.

[The scientific name *adeliae* was given by French surgeon Jacques-Bernard Hombron and naturalist H. Jacquinot (*Ann. Sci. Nat. Ser. 2*, vol. xvi (1841) 320) to a kind of penguin first seen in Adélie Land. *Terre Adélie* was so called after the wife of Dumont d'Urville: see **Adelian**.

The 1879 quotation is interesting because it suggests that the penguin did not yet have a common name.]

The black and white penguin *Pygoscelis adeliae* (fam. Spheniscidae), the only penguin with a distinctive white ring around its eyes. It reaches about 70 cm (2 ft 4 in) in height, and breeds on the antarctic continental coast and islands south of the **antarctic convergence**. It feeds mainly on krill, and has also been called the **black-throated penguin**. See also **antarctic penguin, pygoscelid**.

**1879** Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the 'Challenger'* Macmillan and Co, London: 254.

Penguins were common at the edge of the ice. They progressed through the water like Rock-hoppers, and probably were the *Eudyptes Adélie* of Ross's Expedition, since they had

black heads; we could not catch any, though we tried to get some which were on an ice-block; they seemed shy.]

**1900** Cook, Frederick A. *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 423.

The birds which were constantly present upon the ice-pack are .. the Adelia land penguin (*Pygosulis* [sic] *adeliae*).

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 314.

Adélie Land Penguin (*Pygoscelis adeliae*): the smaller blunt-billed, black-headed species found in immense rookeries on Victoria Land and Adélie Land, as well as in the area around Louis Philippe and Graham Lands. Length, 30 inches; weight, about 12 lbs.

**24 Feb 1903** Wilson, Edward in Roberts, Brian, ed. (1967) *Edward Wilson's birds of the Antarctic* New Orchard Editions, Poole [Dorset]: 18.

Only an occasional Adélie Penguin has paid us a visit.

**1904** *The Canterbury Times Annual* The Canterbury Times, Christchurch, 1 Oct: [24].

[caption] Egg of Adélie Penguin.

**1905** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* XV(CXIV): 58.

The following Lantern-slides were then exhibited:— By Mr. W. Eagle Clarke, a series of very fine slides taken by the Scottish National Antarctic Expedition in the South Orkneys and at Gough Island. The subjects were as follows:— 1. Rookery and nesting-habits of the Adélie Penguin (*Pygoscelis adeliae*) [etc.].

**1914** Priestley, Raymond E. (1974) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* T. Fisher Unwin, London, repr. Melbourne University Press: 56.

Penguin and seal have all the good qualities of mutton and beef, and the flavour of Adélie penguin is equal to that of most birds.

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* Duckworth, London: 246.

Adelie penguins' eggs are about the size of a goose's; they are either white, or of the same shade as a duck's, but have much coarser shells. They are excellent to eat; the white being semi-transparent and gelatinous, and the yolk delicate of flavour. Two eggs are laid, with an interval of three or four days between. They are laid on the bare stones which form the nest, and are kept warm during the process of incubation by being enveloped in a deep crease in the thick, downy feathers of the lower abdomen. This crease permits of the eggs coming into close contact with the skin. The eggs are frequently turned, so that warmth can be applied equally.

**1923** (South Orkneys) Brown, R.N. Rudmose *A naturalist at the poles: The life, work & voyages of Dr. W.S. Bruce the polar explorer* Seeley, Service & Co, London: 127.

Sheathbills and skuas were nesting as well as .. adelia penguins. To take adelia eggs it is necessary to lift the struggling bird from the nest.

**1950** Admiral Lord Mountevans *The desolate Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 33.

Of all the different penguin species, the Adélie Land Penguin is the most numerous and the most amusing to watch. From the explorer's point of view or taste he is the most appetising: properly prepared and thoroughly well cleaned from all traces of blubber the Adélie penguin tastes quite like hare, and is much improved by red currant jelly!

— 36. If the skua gull is king of the Antarctic, the Adélie penguin is the pet of the Great White South, and most, if not all of us, who have joined the brotherhood of the Antarctic, look back with real affection to our Adélie days.

**1958** Bursley, Jack *Antarctic night* Longman, Green & Co., London: 47.

A few Adélie penguins saw us and ran up, chattering together in amazement ... At first they tried to keep up with the ship, running alongside on the ice. When they found they couldn't, they tobogganed on their bellies, propelling themselves with their little feet. This failing too, they stopped and stood up like tiny statues until we had passed.

**1968** Sparks, John and Soper, Tony *Penguins* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 25.

The body temperature of an adélie penguin sitting out a driving blizzard in Antarctica is similar to that of a jackass penguin, reposing on a Dassen Island beach, not far from Cape Town.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 93.

As we pass there is bloody flesh in the water, and on the nearby rocks and tossed-up ice floes there are little gatherings of the Adélies, shocked into silence and immobility, huddled into mutual protection as we are huddled on the larc, and gazing apprehensively down on the water rather than on us. We are just in time to see a homecoming Adélie, perhaps conscious of the peril, come porpoising in to the little cove, and then perform the Adélies' great circus act, always winning admiration, of projecting itself out of the water in a vertical, standing position, to land upright on the edge of the ice several feet above the water it has left.

**1995** *The Courier-Mail [Brisbane]* 24 Jan: 1.

Adélie penguin chicks, a symbol of the Antarctic, are dying at the rate of 50 a day near Mawson Station in Antarctica. Of 1800 chicks hatched this season at Bechervaise Island only 126 remain.

**1995** *Sunday Herald Sun [Melbourne]* 8 Jan: 20.

Adelies are clowns with their lolling button eyes and their Charlie Chaplin walks. They are real sticky-beaks with more cheek than a Collingwood rover.

## A factor See Antarctic factor

### ahhh verb. Also *aaaa, aaaaah, aaahh, ah*

[Fortescue (1991) records the Greenland dog commands ah ah come here, follow me, and ta ta stop].

'Halt', a sledge dog command, usually softly called.

**1939** Stephenson, A. in Rymill, John *Southern lights: the official account of the British Graham Land Expedition 1934-1937* Travel Book Club, London: 152.

As soon as Fleming shouted "Ah!" and the team came to rest, Riley pounced on Nanok before he had a chance to remember he was not in harness.

**1953** Adie, Raymond J. in *Polar Record* 6(45) Jan: 641.

The words of command used by the Falkland Islands Dependencies Survey are corruptions from arctic terms. In order to standardize them the following terms were used at Stonington Island: To start 'Up dogs— weet', To stop 'A-a-a-a'.

**1995** Ross Sea Committee, *Trans-Antarctic Expedition: newsletter* no 9 (Oct): 4.

There are nine dogs in a team arranged in four pairs with a single dog leading. The lead dog is chosen for his qualities of intelligence and initiative, but is not necessarily the king dog of the team. He, in particular, is trained to obey the commands of the sledge driver. There are four basic commands which are 'veet' meaning go or pull, 'yuk' for a right hand turn, and 'errrr' for a left hand turn, with 'ahhh' for stop.

This latter command is usually accompanied by the application of the sledge brake.

**1963** McKenzie, Douglas *Opposite poles* Robert Hale & Co, London/Whitcombe & Tombs, New Zealand: 31.

The dogs had been reared to understand instruction in Greenland Eskimo, and while this language might have meant everything to the dogs it was a harsh and confusing tongue for many observers on the glacier who did not speak Greenland Eskimo very well. Four words and expressions were in common use, and the first of these was 'Pig!' At any rate it sounded like 'pig', but what the dog-handler actually was saying was 'Wheet!' meaning, 'Go forward!' — a variation of the well-known 'Mush!' in fact. The sound 'Aaaaah!' which resembled the grateful sigh of a hiker sinking into a deep armchair after thirty miles on the road, was used to bring the moving dogs to a halt; and it was the most successful sound the drivers employed.

**1966** Baum, Allyn *Antarctica: the worst place in the world* Macmillan Co, NY: 117.

To stop the team, a barely audible 'Ahhh, boys, ahhh' brings the dogs to a slow panting halt.

**1996** (Admiralty Bay) Walton, Kevin and Atkinson, Rick *Of dogs and men: the illustrated story of the dogs of the British Antarctic Survey 1944-1994* Images Publishing, Malvern Wells: 9.

'Aaahh, boys,' the first man called. The words were sufficient. There was no need to apply the foot brake, for the dogs were as tired as their drivers, and only too ready to stop.

## akja

[From the Finnish akja an open sledge. DALaskE records ahkio (from the same root) in use from 1955-.]

A lightweight, portable aluminium sledge designed for rescue work.

**1965** Hedblom, Captain E.E. *Polar manual, 4th edn* US Navy, Bethesda, Maryland: 57.

Man-hauling of casualties in an akja or toboggan takes two to six men, depending on snow conditions.

**1982** Jackson, Andrew, ed. *ANARE field manual, 2nd edn* [Australian] Antarctic Division, Department of Science and Technology: 39.

Two types of manhauling sledges are used. By far the easier to pull is the five-bridge Nansen-type ... The other type is the Akja ski rescue sledge. This can be broken into two halves for back-packing or carrying in aircraft. It is shaped like a flat-bottomed boat, about 2.5 metres long. It is made of aluminium and is suitable for transporting injured personnel for short distances. It is generally much harder to pull than the Nansen-type and should not be used for long trips.

## albatross noun and attrib.

[Albatross is probably from the Spanish alcatraz, any species of *Sula* (gannet), birds which could be likened to the albatross. NOED suggests that the Spanish alcatraz was transferred to the frigate bird and thence to the albatross, but itself has earlier quotations than those for the gannet, which use the word for the albatross. In 1760 Albatrus was given as a scientific name for the genus.]

Albatrosses are not exclusively antarctic or even southern hemisphere birds, but they are significant and conspicuous seabirds of the Southern Ocean, depending on the strong winds of higher southern latitudes.]

Any bird of the family Diomedidae — large oceanic birds which are predominantly white or white with black and brown plumage, with long narrow wings, a powerful bill and a short tail. With their strong, gliding flight the larger species are characteristic of the world's southern oceans, where they range as far south as the edge of

the antarctic pack ice. The southern albatrosses breed mainly on the subantarctic islands. The best-known albatross is the **wandering albatross**, but many others occur in the Antarctic and subantarctic — the **black-browed, grey-headed, Salvin's, shy, (light-mantled) sooty** and **yellow-nosed albatrosses**.

**1681** [source: NOED] Grew *Mus. Reg. Soc.*: 73.

The head of the *Man of War*; called also *Albitrosse*.

**1726** Shelvocke, George in Balch, Edwin Swift (1902) *Antarctica* Allen, Lane & Scott, Philadelphia: 59.

Hatley ... after soem fruitless attempts, at length, shot the Albitross, not doubting (perhaps) that we should have fair wind after it.

**12 Dec 1772** (51°S, 21°E) Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure. In the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970), vol I: 23.

Upon our getting among the ice islands, the albatrosses left us; that is, we saw but one now and then.

**1821** ("New Shetland") *The Literary Gazette and Journal of Belles Lettres [London]* vol 5, quoted in *Polar Record* (1946) 4(32) Jul: 385.

There are gulls, albitrosses, and one land bird about the size of a pigeon.

**1827** (South Georgia) Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24, 2nd edn* David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 57.

The Albatross (the Diomedea of ornithology) is a bird which has been often seen by navigators off the Cape of Good Hope, and in southern latitudes, and has been frequently described; but as the species abounds in the island of Georgia, I shall record some observations I have made in regard to their domestic habits, &c. A full grown albatross sometimes measures 16 or 17 feet from the tip of one wing to the tip of the other when expanded; but more commonly they average about 12 feet. These birds are so abundantly covered with feathers that, when plucked, they appear not above one half the original size, and our astonishment at their apparent magnitude immediately vanishes. I have found them when cleaned, to weigh from 12 to 25 lb.

**1879** Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the 'Challenger'* Macmillan and Co, London: 129.

Various similar corruptions are in use as terms for southern animals. The name Albatross itself is a Spanish word "alcatraz", a "gannet." The Spanish no doubt called the albatrosses they met with "gannets," their familiar sea bird, just as common sailors will call every sea bird a gull, and a foreigner's corruption of the word became adopted as a special name for the bird.

**9 Feb 1907** Barrow, K.M. (1910) *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 118.

Yesterday some of the men went out in a boat to shoot albatrosses, and shot seven. These birds are so large that it is as much as a woman can do to bring up one from the shore slung on her back. Once they nested on the island, but now nests are not to be found nearer than Inaccessible.

**1955** Dalziel, Ken *Penguin road* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 42.

On a September day about seventy years ago, some Australian boys found an albatross with a metal band around its neck ... The date on the metal band showed that the bird had carried the message to the coast of Australia, a distance of 3000 miles, in six weeks.

**1970** (Campbell Island, 1921) Thomson, Haurea in *The Islander: the quarterly bulletin of the Campbell–Raoul Island association* 7 (June): 131.

Albatross eggs .. were taken in an effort to provide variety to the menu.

**1982** Sage, Bryan and Hosking, Eric *Antarctic wildlife* Croom Helm, London: 92.

There are 13 species of albatross in the world of which one breeds in the tropics (on the Galapagos Islands) and three in the north Pacific. The other nine species inhabit the world's windiest latitudes between the Tropic of Capricorn and the Antarctic Circle, and most of them south of latitude 40°S.

## albatrossery

[**Albatross** + -ery, suffix denoting a place where certain animals are, as in rookery.]

A nesting area for albatrosses.

**1967** Gillham, Mary E. *Sub-Antarctic sanctuary. Summertime on Macquarie Island* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Wellington: 112.

I .. emerged into the albatrossery equi-distant between two nests.

## albatross latitudes Also albatross regions

[**Albatross** + latitude an angular distance north or south of the equator (NOED: c1391–).]

The belt of westerly winds in the southern hemisphere between about 40 and 60°S, where it is windy enough for large, heavy-bodied albatrosses to be airborne.

**1967** Gillham, Mary E. *Sub-Antarctic sanctuary: summertime on Macquarie Island* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Wellington: 20.

These are the 'albatross latitudes', where the air is seldom still enough to becalm these great birds, which rely almost entirely on windspeed and upcurrents of air to maintain their gliding flight.

**1989** Beazley, Mitchell, ed. *The world atlas of birds, 2nd edn* Colour Library Books Ltd, Godalming, Surrey: 223.

The albatross latitudes. A broad belt of westerly winds encircles the southern hemisphere and, riding these winds, the albatrosses cover enormous distances between their breeding grounds and distant winter quarters.

**19 Dec 1997** Maxwell Davies, Peter [source: <http://www.maxopus.com/lists/antarcti.htm>, accessed 12 Mar 1999]

The seabirds swooping parallel to the boat — we are well down in the albatross regions.

## allied shearwater Also allied petrel

The small shearwater or muttonbird *Puffinus assimilis* (fam. Procellariidae), also known as the 'little shearwater', a seabird which is black above and white below with blue legs and feet. It has three subspecies, one of which is the **subantarctic little shearwater**.

**1913** *The Emu* XII suppl.: 29.

*Puffinus assimilis* .. Allied Petrel.

**30 Jul 1943** Sorensen, J.H. *The work journal of J.H. Sorensen, coastwatcher in the "Cape expedition", Campbell Island, 1942–45* Diary, in possession of Dept of Conservation and Wildlife, Wellington: 233.

The birds are probably diving petrels, (*Pelecanoides* sp.), but might be Allied Shearwaters. These too must be obtained at a later date.

**1974** Robertson, C.J.R., ed. *Birds in New Zealand* A.H. & A.W. Reed, Wellington: 103.

The Allied Shearwater is a winter breeder which has three local subspecies covering the whole region from the Kermadec Islands in the north to the Auckland Islands in the south. However, their distribution is localised and patchy.

**alligator**

[Alligator has been recorded for a reptile of the crocodile family from 1568, and has probably been applied here because of the appearance of the fish.]

A long-nosed fish of the fam. Bathydraconidae (see **dragonfish**) or of the genus *Parachaenichthys* (fam. Channichthyidae).

**1955** (Heard Island) Dalziel, Ken *Penguin road* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 49.

We set off towards the beach and on our way passed Arthur, who said, "If you catch any alligators, don't forget to bring them home." Of course we thought this remark was very funny because there are no alligators in those icy waters. However, what Arthur meant, we later discovered, were the alligator fish, strange demon-like creatures often found in these waters ... We didn't have to wait long before catching our first alligator. It was an odd creature about two feet long with a head almost a quarter its length and shaped like that of a baby alligator. There was very little flesh around the head; it appeared to be nothing more than a framework covered with skin to serve as a mouth.

**all-sky camera** Also *auroral all-sky camera*

[All-sky because the camera photographs the whole of the sky at the one time. These cameras are used in both the Antarctic and Arctic.]

A camera used to record auroral displays, which uses either special curved mirrors or a lens to photograph the whole of the sky at once.

**1957** Ross Sea Committee, *Trans-Antarctic Expedition: newsletter* [Wellington] no 14 (1 Apr): 10.

Trevor Hatherton has erected an all-sky camera which consists of a camera so mounted as to be able to photograph the whole sky.

**1963** Wilkes *Hard Times* 1(1) Feb: 2.

Even light reflected from the snow seems to find its way to the all-sky camera.

**1964** Antarctic, *Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(9) Mar: 384.

Many countries have placed orders for an all-sky camera designed and manufactured in New Zealand: a triumph for this country's scientists and engineers ... With the exception of Sweden, the countries will all use the cameras at bases in the Antarctic. The cameras will be co-ordinated in photographing the whole of the Aurora phenomena at the same time. They photograph the whole sky from horizon to horizon in every direction.

**1966** (Macquarie Island) MacKenzie, D., ed. *Fog 'N Bog* [year-book of Macquarie Island overwinterers] ANARE, Macquarie Island: 31.

There's other things to [sic], in the technical patter. Like, Riometer, All Sky, and forward scatter.

**1971** Kühn, G.J. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* no 1: 36.

At present this programme consists of an all-sky camera recording of aurorae, supplemented by visual observations.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 168.

The All-sky camera on the roof of 'Aurora House', a shed on the lower slopes of Beeman Hill above the main hostel buildings, records similar auroral displays on clear nights.

**ammunition** *Tristan da Cunha*

[Ammunition was formerly used in the sense of military stores or supplies. Names such as ammunition-boots (-bread etc.) have been given

since 1844 to equipment supplied to soldiers, and this is the likely derivation of the term on Tristan, whose early settlement was by British troops.]

A boot or pair of boots.

**1967** Pondus-Bøgerne, Lohse, transl fr Danish by Falk-Rønne, Arne *Back to Tristan* Allen & Unwin, London: 21.

They have, too, a collection of special words which a modern Englishman finds hard to understand. Heavy boots, for example, are called "ammunition".

**1985** Winchester, Simon *The sun never sets* Prentice Hall Press, NY: 87.

They will wear "ammunitions", or heavy boots, upon their feet.

**Amsterdam Island**

Amsterdam Island, an outlying dependency of France in the southern Indian Ocean, is a mountainous volcanic island lying about 4500 km (2800 miles) off the south-east coast of Africa, at 37°50'S, 77°34'E. The island was sighted in March 1522 by a ship of Magellan's fleet, whose Commodore D'Elcano named it Saint Paul. It was later named by Dutch navigator van Diemen in 1633, and claimed in 1843 by France, who installed a meteorological station there in 1950. It is part of the French Southern and Antarctic Lands.

**Amsterdam albatross**

The very rare albatross *Diomedea amsterdamensis* (fam. Diomedidae), recently (1983) identified as a separate species from the **wandering albatross**. It breeds on Amsterdam Island; the adult bird is dark brown above, and white and brown below, and it is smaller than the **wanderer**.

**1985** Harrison, Peter *Seabirds of the world: an identification guide, revised ed.* Christopher Helm, London: 46.

Amsterdam Albatross .. *Diomedea amsterdamensis* .. Recently discovered breeding on Amsterdam Island, Indian Ocean, where up to 8 pairs attempt to breed annually.

**1995** *Nature Australia Magazine* 25(1) winter: 41.

Amsterdam albatross (*Diomedea exulans amsterdamensis*). Small, very dark and similar to Antipodes Island race but with a black cutting edge on upper bill. Mainly inhabits Indian Ocean but one bird was killed on a longline in Tasmanian waters. Breeds on Amsterdam Island in the Indian Ocean.

**Amsterdam fur seal** Also *Amsterdam Island fur seal*

The seal *Arctocephalus tropicalis*: see **subantarctic fur seal**.

**1975** Wilson, V.J. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* no 5: 31.

The immediate objective of the tagging was to determine the local movement of pups of the southern elephant seal *M. leonina* and the Amsterdam Island fur seal *Arctocephalus tropicalis* during the winter season following their birth.

**1977** (Marion Island) van Aarde, R.J. in *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] Jan: 31.

Two species of seals, the southern elephant seal, *Mirounga leonina*, and the Amsterdam fur seal, *Arctocephalus tropicalis*, are found there.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

**ANARE** *attrib. Aust.*

[Acronym from 'Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions']

Related to the Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions.

**1953** (Macquarie Island) Gwynn, A.M. in *The Emu* 53(2) Jun: 150.

Adélie Penguin (*Pygoscelis adeliae*) A single adult female was found on the beach near the ANARE Station on November 19, 1950.

**1961** Béchervaise, John *The far South* Angus and Robertson, Melbourne: xiii.

In 1947 the word ANARE, abbreviating Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions, came into common use ... Today three ANARE bases in the Antarctic and one at Macquarie Island are more active than ever.

**1966** (Macquarie Island) MacKenzie, D., ed. *Fog 'N Bog* [year-book of Macquarie Island ANARE overwinterers] ANARE, Macquarie Island: 23.

The next problem to be faced is the feeding. These dogs are everlastingly hungry and must be fed well. A dubious looking substance known as dog pemmican is provided for emergencies and field trips. I would describe it as a mixture of the famous ANARE biscuit and pulverised bird guano.

**1989** Green, K., Burton, H.R. & Williams, R. *Antarctic Science* 1(4): 317.

The authors thank ANARE expeditioners who helped collect seal faeces on Heard Island in 1987–88.

**1994** Department of the Environment, Sport and Territories *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions strategic plans 1995–2000* Department of the Environment, Sport and Territories: 17.

It is often very difficult to distinguish between falling snow (precipitation) and drifting or blowing snow at Anare bases.

**ANARE** *noun, Aust.*

1. An expedition mounted by the Australian Antarctic Division; the annual Australian wintering party; the research activities of or relating to such an expedition.

**1987** National Parks and Wildlife Service, Tasmania *Macquarie Island nature reserve: visitor's handbook* National Parks and Wildlife Service, Hobart: 29.

Antarctic Division resupply ships usually visit the reserve twice a year, during the summer months. This provides four working periods at the island: a) changeover, when the main resupply is carried out, usually 3–4 days; b) the summer period, from five weeks to five months; c) when the summer personnel are picked up, usually 1–2 days; d) a full ANARE, lasting between twelve and thirteen months.

**1991** *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions news* Sept: 11.

The Atlas Cove station site includes two graves (of Alastair Forbes and Richard Hoseason, members of the 1952 ANARE who died in 1952).

2. An Australian **expeditioner**.

**1974** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Sept: 56.

*Harry Eastoe*. Mawson '70. Has a well-stocked bar for any A.N.A.R.E.s passing by Rabaul.

**1987** Keenan, Jim in *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Sept: 9.

[glossary] Anares — Australia's most southerly inhabitants.

**ANARE code** *Historical*

The five-letter code devised by the Australian Antarctic Division, used in sending a telex or **wyssa**. See also **yikla**.

**1963** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Sept: 3.

If you don't agree with something we are doing, don't be a lazy so-and-so, sit down and write us a letter. You can even use the ANARE code!

**1995** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* 14(3) Mar: 23.

I guess today's expeditioners have no need to use the old ANARE code any more, but for those who still remember — YAALC WYLLA WYUJN.

**anareite** *Aust.*

[From **ANARE** + *-ite* suffix indicating an affiliation or connection.]

An Australian antarctic worker or **expeditioner**.

**1972** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Nov: 20.

Karin has travelled as a passenger on "Thala Dan" and is also well-known to ANARE-ites aboard.

**anchor ice**

[The earliest recorded use of anchor-ice is in 1815 American English (NOED). Its meaning, of ice formed at the bottom of lakes and rivers, has been extended in antarctic usage to include ice forming in this way in the sea.]

Ice formed in shallow water when the water itself remains unfrozen. The ice forms on the seabed or bottom of the body of water, in platelets or clusters which can break off and float. It is also called **ground ice**.

**1922** Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994) *The worst journey in the world* Penguin Books Ltd, repr. Picador, London: 462.

I began to notice large sheets of anchor ice off the end of Cape Evans, that is to say, ice forming and remaining on the bottom of the open sea.

**1928** Markham, Sir C. and Mill, H.R. in Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 382.

Ground Ice or Anchor Ice. "Ice formed on the bed of a river, lake, or shallow sea, while the water as a whole remains unfrozen."

**1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 43.

Shallow-water flora and fauna are discouraged by anchor ice, large platelets of ice which form on the sea bed down to depths of about 33 metres. It appears during very cold spells, and grows like white lettuce to form mats up to 40 centimetres deep.

**1986** Curtsinger, Bill in *National Geographic* 169(4) Apr: 501.

Paul has been teaching me about anchor ice, which forms on the seafloor in water shallower than 100 feet, then tears free and floats upwards, carrying sponges, bottom creatures and even fish trapped or frozen within.

**annual ice**

Sea ice that forms one year and breaks up during the following summer; **first-year ice**.

**1969** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* March: 6.

Solid wastes of all kinds are collected from each building and trucked to a spot on the annual ice near the sewage outlet.

**1997** Jim Mastro in *International Wildlife* Nov–Dec: np.

This "sea ice" (also called "annual ice" to differentiate it from the thicker, more permanent ice shelves) forms a 1.5 to 3-meter thick (4- to 10-ft) lid covering the ocean.

**anorak** *noun and attrib.*

[Anorak a weatherproof jacket, has been recorded from 1924 in general English, but the earliest published examples yet noted are antarctic. The word is used more commonly in Britain than anywhere else: its probable path into British English is a long one, via arctic and antarctic usage. Fortescue's *Inuktuq* dictionary notes the Greenland annuraaq for a light parka.]

A weatherproof jacket.

**1898** Cook, Frederick A. *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 286.

Amundsen, who was the biggest, the strongest, the bravest and generally the best dressed man for sudden emergencies, slipped into his *annorak*, jumped on his *ski* and skated rapidly over the gloomy blackness of the pack to the light.

**1911** Charcot, Jean Baptiste Auguste Etienne (1978) *The voyage of the "Why Not?"* in the Antarctic Facsimile edition, Australian National University Press, Canberra: 16.

Generally speaking, we were comparatively lightly clad, but one indispensable article of clothing was the 'anorak,' a kind of overcoat of pliable but close-fitting canvas, with a hood to it, which went over the ordinary clothes and counteracted the cold admirably by keeping out draughts.

**1948** Weetman, Charles *All about Antarctica* Ramsay, Ware Publishing Pty Ltd, Melbourne: 131.

Items of clothing included in the equipment supplied to the personnel of the Australian 1947–48 expedition also included .. windproof smocks and trousers and Anorak suits.

**27 Jul–2 Aug 1959** Béchervaise, John (1963) *Blizzard and fire: a year at Mawson, Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 123.

It is a day when men go to earth, but for essential journeys we have trussed ourselves up in windproof parkas and anoraks.

**antarctic** *adjective*

[The name antarctic for the region opposite to the Arctic (NOED 1366–) comes from the Greek ἀνταρκτικός, opposite to the north. Though the roots of the word are Greek, I have found no evidence of the popular belief that the word itself was used in ancient Greek writings.]

There are two parts to the question of the usage of the word 'antarctic': when was the concept of such a southern land first elucidated, and when and by whom was it coined? The ancient Greeks (variously suggested as including Pythagoras and Aristotle) theorised about the existence of cold polar zones. Aristotle suggested that parts of the earth far from the equator, the frigid zone, were constantly frozen and uninhabitable. Eratosthenes later supposed that these frigid zones extended 24° from each pole. The word reflects particularly clearly the northern hemisphere culture from which it and many other antarctic English words come. Continuing the sense of opposite, antarctic was also used in the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries to mean directly opposite, or contradictory.]

1. Relating to the southern hemisphere in general.

**1794** Shaw, George *Zoology of New Holland* J. Sowerby, London: 6.

Amongst the most curious quadrupeds yet discovered in the Antarctic regions, may be numbered the animal represented on the present plate [sc. the Pygmy Opossum].

2. Relating to the regions close to or surrounding the **South Pole** (sense 1).

**1844** Hooker, Joseph Dalton *The botany of the Antarctic voyage of H.M. Discovery ships Erebus and Terror in the years 1839–1843*, under the command of Captain Sir James Clark Ross Reeve Bros, London, vol 1: 12.

The Myrtaceæ, which in North America do not attain a higher latitude than 26°, and in Europe only one reaches the 46th degree, in the southern regions are amongst the most Antarctic plants.

**1898** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* VII(LII): xli.

The order of *Tubinares* was essentially Antarctic, at least ten species having been met with in Antarctica, whereas in the Arctic regions *Fulmarus glacialis* was the sole representative of the group.

**1901** *The Ibis* 1(II) Apr: 338.

The birds collected during the "Hamburg Magellanic Collecting-voyage" consisted of 60 specimens belonging to 44 species. In enumerating them, Herr Martens takes the opportunity of cataloguing all the forms that have been noted as occurring south of about 43° S. L. ... The result is a list of 299 species, made up, as it appears to us, of three very different Avifaunas which have little or nothing to do with one another — namely, the South American element (192 sp.), the New Zealand element (59 sp.), and true Antarctic element (48 sp.).

**1935** Christensen, Lars, transl. fr Norwegian by E.M.G. Jayne *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 251.

We thus have a total of eight species of flowering plants common to Gough Island and the Tristan da Cunha group, but not known outside this area. Three species are Antarctic in their distribution, two of which are found in South America.

**1954** Ealey, E.H.M. in *The Emu* 54(2) June: 91.

As the Antarctic Convergence is to the north of Heard it must be considered an Antarctic island.

**1985** Priddle, Julian in Bonner, W.N. and Walton, D.W.H., eds *Key environments: Antarctica* Pergamon Press, Oxford: 128.

As with truly Antarctic lakes, biological enrichment plays an important role in the development of some lakes and pools on subAntarctic islands.

3. Perishingly cold.

**1996** *Canberra Times* 25 Aug: 6.

Residents of Sydney shivered through one of the coldest days in 100 years as heavy snowstorms blanketed parts of eastern Australia. Several roads were closed due to the rare snowfall, but ski resort owners were elated by some of the best conditions in years. The chill spread deep into the tropical state of Queensland where farmers feared that the Antarctic chill could threaten livestock.

4. Relating to a symbolically pure, remote state: cf **antarctic** *noun* sense 5.

**1997** Diski, Jenny *Skating to Antarctica* Granta Books, London: 237.

Given that depression happened to me, and I did have support, I found it was possible after a time to achieve a kind of joy totally disconnected from the world. I wanted to be unavailable and in that place without the pain. I still want it. It is coloured white and filled with a singing silence. It is an endless ice rink. It is antarctic.

**Antarctic** *noun*

1. Usu. as **the Antarctic**: the **antarctic** continent.

**1894** Burn Murdoch, W.G. *From Edinburgh to the Antarctic* Longmans, Green and Co, London: 16.

At last we were fairly *en route* for the Antarctic, possibly the South Pole.

**1900** Cook, Frederick A. *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 128.

We took advantage of the conditions to cross Bransfield Strait, which separates the South Shetlands from the mainland of the true antarctic.

**1996** Hooper, Meredith *The Round Table: the Commonwealth Journal of International Affairs* 337: 63.

'The Antarctic' is usually taken to mean the area containing the continent and the islands, ocean and ice surrounding it. There is no actual boundary to this enormous region ... Some

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

people use 'the Antarctic' to mean the continent itself. The continent is known as 'Antarctica' but that is also used for the whole region.

2. Usu. as **the Antarctic**: More generally (see, for example, 1982 quotation), the antarctic regions including the **subantarctic**.

**30 Oct 1897** Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 5.

The *Belgica* appeared small, but she seemed well adapted to the prospective work, and above all, she was filled brim full with good food, — such delicacies as only a Belgian could select. I am sure as we penetrate the white antarctic she will seem large enough.

**1912** *Mercury [Hobart]* 8 Mar: 4.

*Shipping ... arrived* — March 7. Fram, aux. bqtine, 402 tons, Capt. Neilsen, from the Antarctic.

**1990** Garnett, Tom in *The Age [Melbourne]* 27 Nov: 11.

"You can't buy any more roses. We have 119 now. There isn't room for another." "Yes there is." "... There is no point in reasoning with genuine rose passion. In the end we had to get some railway sleepers, build up the bed half a metre and now we have yet another Iceberg. We have more Icebergs than the Antarctic.

3. Usu. as **the Antarctic**: Specifically, the land, ice and seas south of the **antarctic convergence**, south of 60°S (see also **Antarctic Treaty**), or within the **antarctic circle**.

**1907** Hodgson, T.V. *National Antarctic Expedition 1901–1904*. Natural history. Vol. III Zoology and botany (Invertebrata: marine algae, musci) British Museum, London: 2.

For the Antarctic proper the latitude 60°S. seems sufficient as it includes all the glaciated lands of Antarctica, and the shallower waters less than 1000fm., connected therewith.

**1933** Deacon, G.E.R. *A general account of the hydrology of the South Atlantic Ocean* Discovery Reports vol. VII, issued by the Discovery Committee, Colonial Office London: 193.

Judging from a hydrological standpoint the Falkland Island Dependencies are all Antarctic, although the Falkland Islands themselves are sub-Antarctic. Farther east Bouvet Island, Heard Island, and MacDonald Island are Antarctic. Kerguelen lies just on the convergence and there is a mixture of Antarctic surface water and sub-Antarctic water near it.

**1970** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Nov: 25.

Generally the qualifying areas [sc. for the Polar Medal] are:— Antarctic: South of Latitude 60°S.

**1971** Bertrand, Kenneth J. *Americans in Antarctica* American Geographical Society special publication no. 39: 1.

The Antarctic consists of the continent of Antarctica and its off-lying islands and surrounding seas. Roughly centred on the South Pole, the Antarctic land masses — the continental shield of East Antarctica and the mountainous archipelago of West Antarctica — are buried by thousands of feet of glacial ice which effectively welds them into a continental unit with an area of about 5 million square miles, almost all within the Antarctic Circle. Various limits can be used for the Antarctic, but in this book the Antarctic Convergence is accepted as the boundary.

4. An **Antarctican**.

**1938** Evans, Admiral Sir Edward R.G.R. *South with Scott* Collins, London: 112.

The old 'Antarctics' amongst us knew how useless it had been to arrange those Antarctic dinners, which never came off as intended.

5. **Symbolic** An unattainable or ideal state.

**1963** Pyncheon, Thomas V quoted in Sara Wheeler (1996) *Terra incognita* Jonathan Cape, London: xiii.

You wait. Everyone has an Antarctic.

**Antarctica** *noun*

1. The **antarctic continent**. Every part of earth except Antarctica belongs to a nation and therefore has a definite and distinct political meaning, as well as often a more general sense. This cannot happen in Antarctica, because the continent does not belong to any country, though the surrounding islands are the territories of particular countries. See also **the freezer, last continent, sixth continent, seventh continent, white continent**.

**1505** Balch, Edwin Swift (1902) *Antarctica* Allen, Lane & Scott, Philadelphia: 11.

"Antarctica" is a term which is slowly coming into use to designate the continent which probably extends across the regions of the South Pole. The word itself is an old one, since one of the letters of Amerigo Vespucci was issued at Strasbourg in 1505 under the title of *Be [De] Ora Antarctica*.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: ix.

Enveloped in an atmosphere of universal death, wrapped in its closely-clinging cerements of ice and snow, the one expression of the Antarctica of to-day is that of lifeless silence.

**1955** *Polar Record* 7(51) Sept: 518.

For many years the generally accepted estimates of the area of Antarctica have varied little either way from the 14,200,000 sq. km. (5,482,620 sq. miles) first suggested by W.S. Bruce in 1906. Hans-Peter Kosack has recently produced new figures. He estimates the area of the continent itself, excluding islands and ice shelves, to be 13,101,154 sq. km. (5,058,356 sq. miles). The area of the ice shelves is an additional 930,910 sq. km. (359,425 sq. miles). If all the islands south of lat. 63°S, and the South Orkney Islands are included, the total rises to 14,107,637 sq. km. (5,446,959 sq. miles).

**1968** Dukert, Joseph M. *This is Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 10.

[The Greeks] based their name for the far-off southern continent on a picture they invented in the night sky. 'Arktikos' is the Greek word for 'bear' and this is what they called a particular group of stars which were always in the northern heavens. Land on the other side of the world was clearly 'opposite the bear' so they called it just that. The Greek name was 'Antarktikos', and they showed it on their maps.

**1990** *Earthwatch* X(1) Oct: 73.

One hundred million years ago Kangaroo Island did not exist. Nor, for that matter, did Australia. For in those days, Australia was one with Antarctica.

**1995** *Sunday Age [Melbourne]* 23 April: Agenda 10.

Mount Erebus is not part of Antarctica — it's on Ross Island — but the sea around it is permanently ice. This is the site of New Zealand's Scott Base and the US McMurdo Base.

2. The **antarctic regions**.

**1956** Yaldwyn, J.C. *Checklist of scientific expeditions to Antarctica (up to 1956)* Royal Society of NZ Antarctic Research Committee Special Report no. 11: 1.

The term "Antarctica" is used in the sense of "the Antarctic Continent and the coastal islands thereof".



**1990** Adams, Richard, ed. *Antarctica: voices from the silent continent* Montagne Jeunesse Co., UK: 18.

South Georgia, although a good deal further east, lies only two degrees south of the Falklands. One could be excused, therefore, for expecting a similar aspect and climate to match. But the truth is very different. The rounded, peaty Western Isles look exists only in very isolated and restricted places and at lower levels: the flavour of the island as a whole is pure Antarctica.

**3.** *Figurative or symbolic* An untouched or untouchable place; an ideal.

**1969** Keneally, Thomas *The survivor* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 86.

For Ramsey, hurt done against the man who would lead you into that absolute human state known as Antarctica partook of the mysterious sin against the spirit.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 154.

I learn .. that beneath some fairly hard-bitten exteriors on this ship there is a deep desire to work, not for personal or departmental advantage, but for an ideal called "Antarctica".

**1994** *New Scientist* no 1949 (29 Oct): n.p.

With their usual verve, Australians call this section of their northern coastline the "Top End". Ecologists and conservationists use other, more gilded terms: "the Yukon of the South", "the Antarctica of the tropics". Want to see what the continent was like before the Europeans messed things up with their sheep, cattle, rabbits and cats? Come here, they say, and savour what's left of the primeval Australian bush.

**4.** *Figurative or symbolic* An extremely cold place.

**1995** *Melbourne Times* 28 Jun: 38.

The frustrated and courageous underdoglion Royboys went the knuckle at Antarctica MCG last Saturday.

## antarctican *noun*

1. An inhabitant or native of Antarctica: usually human (but see 1930 quotation).

**1930** (Little America) Byrd, Richard Evelyn in *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 168.

[caption] Making friends with a nine-foot Antarctican. Weddell seals played an important part in the expedition's commissary calculations, for they furnished much of the food for the 80-odd sledge dogs. These seals are sluggish when out of the water and fall an easy prey to the meat hunter. They sometimes attain a weight of a ton or more.

**1966** MacKenzie, D., ed. *Fog 'N Bog*. [Yearbook of Macquarie Island ANARE overwinterers] ANARE, Macquarie Island: 22.

The following are a few words of advice intended for 'first time' Antarcticans, who, having served an arduous apprenticeship on Macquarie Island, desire to further their experiences and stick away some more cash. This may be done quite easily by volunteering for a term either at Mawson or Wilkes.

**1972** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] June: 19.

He often meets up with wandering Antarcticans.

**1980** Woodard, Edwin and Bischoff, Heather *Woodard Storehouses of the snow* Leisure Books, Norwalk, Connecticut: 258.

There were eleven survivors — six men, four women, and baby Joe Connolly, a new native Antarctican.

**1990** Adams, Richard, ed. *Antarctica: voices from the silent continent* Montagne Jeunesse Co., UK: 44.

The Argentinians have a bank and a small hotel, encourage families to live in the Antarctic and even claim the first ever 'Antarctican' who was born at their peninsula base in 1978.

**1997** Robinson, Kim Stanley *Antarctica* HarperCollins, London: 135.

'I'm a true Antarctican, one of the few. Most of them are Chileans like me.'

**2.** More generally, an **Antarctician**.

**1989** Laws, Richard *Antarctica: the last frontier* Boxtree Ltd, London: 7.

Altogether I must have spent at least half my life in Antarctic work and some six full years living there ... I am a committed Antarctican.

## antarctican *adjective*

Belonging to or resident in Antarctica.

**1999** *Weekend Australian* 9–10 Oct suppl: 2.

People voting in Antarctica can register as "Antarctican" voters.

## antarcticana

[Prob. not restricted to NZ although the two quotations are NZ.]

An item or items related to Antarctica.

**1963** McKenzie, Douglas *Opposite poles* Robert Hale & Co, London/Whitcombe & Tombs, New Zealand: 87.

Scott Base made its preparations for Christmas dinner, which was to be at midday. All the tables were pushed together to make a single line down the centre of the mess room. The ceiling was ablaze with garlanded Christmas cards and coloured paper. The menu was, naturally, a conventionally ingenious amalgam of French phrases and Antarcticana. Beer, and sometimes wine, flowed unexceptionably as we moved away from the 'Potage à la Mount Erebus'.

**1964** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* [Wellington] 3(12) Dec: 565.

We are pleased to be able to give a brief description of Antarcticana which Mr. Gibbs has gathered together.

## antarctic armless flounder

The edible marine fish *Mancopsetta maculata antarctica* (fam. Achirosettidae), occurring in circumpolar waters.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 259.

*Mancopsetta maculata antarctica* ... Antarctic armless flounder ... Known from Shag Rocks, South Georgia Island, Marion and Prince Edward Islands, Crozet Islands, Kara Dag Bank, Ob and Lena Seamounts, Kerguelen Islands, Heard and McDonald Islands ... Taken as a bycatch in the Kerguelen fisheries. Flesh of excellent quality.

**1999** Fishbase [source: [http://www.cgiar.org/iclarm/fish-base/database/ScientificName\\_Detail.cfm?ID=7120](http://www.cgiar.org/iclarm/fish-base/database/ScientificName_Detail.cfm?ID=7120)] 19 Mar.

Antarctic armless flounder ... length 50.0 cm.

## antarctic banana belt *See* banana belt

## antarctic beech

[No trees grow within the Antarctic Circle today — antarctic beech is included here for its name, not its modern range — but see also 1995 quotation.]

Any of several tall forest trees of the southern hemisphere genus *Nothofagus* (fam. Fagaceae); in southern S America, esp. *N. antarctica*.

**1844** (nr Cape Horn) Hooker, Joseph Dalton *The botany of the Antarctic voyage of H.M. Discovery ships Erebus and Terror in the*

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

years 1839–1843, under the command of Captain Sir James Clark Ross Reeve Bros, London, vol 1: ix.

Here, in the sheltered bays, the two kinds of *Antarctic Beech*, the *Evergreen* and *Deciduous*, form a dense, though small forest, and ascent, in a stunted form, to an elevation of 1000 feet on the hills.

**6 Jan 1898** Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 108.

The bow used by them [sc. the *Ona* of Tierra del Fuego] is made of the wood of the antarctic beech, which is scraped and worked into the desired shape.

**1911** Skottsberg, Carl *The wilds of Patagonia* Edward Arnold, London: 41.

The bank of the river ... is covered by the almost impenetrable brushwood of *Nothofagus antarctica*, one of the Antarctic beeches.

**1954** *Polar Record* 7(48) Jul: 156.

Seeds for trees and shrubs to be grown on Marion Island have now been imported to South Africa from Iceland, Alaska, Scandinavia and South America, and include such species as .. Antarctic Beech (*Nothofagus antarctica*).

**2 Feb 1968** (nr Punta Arenas) Scott, Peter (1983) *Travel diaries of a naturalist: Australia, New Zealand, New Guinea, Africa, the Galapagos islands, Antarctica and the Falkland Islands* Collins, London: 250.

There were two species — at least — of Antarctic Beech on the Fort Bulnes promontory. These I took to be *Nothofagus antarcticus* [sic], and *N. betuloides* though *N. pumilo* may have been there too. I am not sure which is the evergreen one. The commonest tree had a somewhat dentate leaf. The leaf of the other had a smoother edge and was a little more shiny. Many of these leaves were turning yellow and the branches had a flattened appearance.

**1995** Crossley, Louise *Explore Antarctica* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 12.

Trees similar to the *Nothofagus gunnii*, or Antarctic beech, which is found in Tasmania today, still grew widely across Antarctica up to 30 Ma [sc. million years ago].

## antarctic berg

A **berg** originating in antarctic waters, typically a **tabular berg**. Antarctic icebergs are larger and more numerous than those of the Arctic.

**1884** McCormick, R. *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 188.

The Antarctic bergs differ from the Arctic, in their general formation; being detached from the outer margin of the barrier, the ice is much purer and freer from earthy matter than are the Arctic bergs, for the most part formed in deep ravines or fiords along the coast; consequently the greater transparency of the southern ice may give to it the intensity of the blue which so distinguished it from the northern ice.

**1909** (nr 61°29'S, 179°53'E) Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907–1909* William Heinemann, London: 60.

Next morning, January 14, we sighted our first iceberg, and passed it at a distance of about two and a half miles. It had all the usual characteristics of the Antarctic bergs, being practically tabular in form, and its sides being of a dead white colour.

**1974** *Aurora*. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne] Dec: 43.

Left to their own course, Antarctic bergs bother no one, drifting well outside normal commercial shipping routes. Once the big bergs calve off the ice shelves, they travel with the circular currents in the southern oceans and eventually melt.

This represents countless billions of gallons of fresh water going to waste.

**1986** Pyne, Stephen J. *The ice: a journey to Antarctica* University of Iowa Press: 10.

Annually, Antarctica produces some five thousand bergs, about 6.5 times the production of the Arctic. The average size of Antarctic bergs is much greater than that of Arctic bergs, each Antarctic berg averaging about one million tons of fresh water.

**1991** Hooper, Meredith A for *Antarctica: facts and stories from the frozen South* Pan Books, London: 70.

Antarctic bergs have more bubbles than Arctic bergs, so float higher in the water. Even then four-fifths of an Antarctic iceberg is below sea level.

## antarctic biscuit

A kind of **sledging biscuit**.

**1914** (Cape Adare) Priestley, Raymond E. (1974) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* T. Fisher Unwin, London, repr. Melbourne University Press: 109.

I had heard very unfavourable reports of the hardness and unpalatability of our sledging biscuits, and so took this opportunity of tasting both Antarctic and Emergency biscuits, and was agreeably surprised to find that, although the reports about their hardness were not much exaggerated, they were certainly quite pleasant to taste. Later on we were to count their hardness as one of their greatest attributes, but that time was not yet, and during the present season I think most of us would have preferred them to be somewhat softer.

**1922** Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994) *The worst journey in the world* Penguin Books Ltd, repr. Picador, London: 235.

Expendible [sic] stores: 'Antarctic' biscuit 135 lbs [etc.].

## antarctic bottom water

Cold, dense water forming a current flowing north along the seafloor from the **Antarctic continent**. It is formed in the Weddell and Ross Seas and off Adélie Land.

**1933** Deacon, G.E.R. *A general account of the hydrology of the South Atlantic Ocean* Discovery Reports vol. VII, issued by the Discovery Committee, Colonial Office London: 221.

Below the warm layer there is a heavy type of Antarctic water which has been formed by the cooling of warm deep water without appreciable dilution. It sinks near the Antarctic Continent to fill the deep polar basins and then flows northwards along the sea bottom. It has been called the Antarctic bottom water.

**1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 36.

In the Weddell Sea area .. very cold water in contact with the continent sinks under its own weight, to form a northward-flowing deep current — *Antarctic Bottom Water*.

**1990** Selkirk, P.M., Selkirk, R.D. and Selkirk, D.R. *Subantarctic Macquarie Island: environment and biology* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 31.

Antarctic bottom water (cold, saline and dense) originates in the Weddell and Ross Seas.

**1994** Stevens, Jane E. in *The Dallas Morning News* 12 Dec: 10D. At the Equator, Antarctic bottom water rises as the water above heats and flows to the south again to be cooled in the Antarctic winter.

## antarctic butterfish *S Africa*

The fish *Hyperoglyphe antarctica*: see **blue fish**.

**1986** Smith, Margaret M. and Heemstra, Phillip C. *Smiths' sea fishes* Springer-Verlag, Berlin: 843.

*Hyperoglyphe antarctica* Antarctic butterflyfish Antarktische bottervis ... Uniformly dark, sometimes almost black. Attains 110 cm. Taken in trawls on deep lines in 300 m or more. Temperate waters; islands of South Atlantic and southern Indian oceans; New Zealand, southern Australia and South Africa.

## antarctic cabbage

[See **cabbage**.]

The plant *Stilbocarpa polaris*: see **Macquarie Island cabbage**.

**1990** Marchant, S. and Higgins, P.J., co-ordinators *Handbook of Australian, New Zealand and Antarctic birds, vol 1B Australian penguin to ducks* Oxford University Press, Melbourne: 1296.

Birds occupy pools on coastal platforms vegetated with tussock *Poa foliosa*, Antarctic cabbage *Stilbocarpa polaris* and sedge.

## antarctic circle

A parallel of latitude, south of which the sun does not set at midsummer. The precise latitude changes slowly over time (an increase of some 47 seconds of latitude a century), due to the decrease in the earth's obliquity of the ecliptic. It has been variously defined as 66°30'S, 66°32'S, 66°33'S (most commonly, today), or even 66°S. In the year 2000, the exact latitude of the circle is 66°33'39"S; in 2100 it will be 66°34'25"S.

The first recorded crossing of the antarctic circle was by Captain James Cook in the *Resolution* and *Adventure* on 17 January 1773. Most of the antarctic continent is south of the antarctic circle, which is also called the **circle** or **(south) polar circle**.

**1556** (source: NOED) *Recorde Cast. Knowl.* 27.

The Antartike circle is equall and equidistant to the Arctike circle.

**17 Jan 1773** Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, in the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970), vol 1: 42.

On the 17th between eleven and twelve o'clock, we crossed the Antarctic Circle in the longitude of 39°35' East; for at noon we were by observation in the latitude of 66°36'30" South.

**13 Dec 1820** Bellingshausen, Thaddeus in Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. (1945) *The voyage of Captain Bellingshausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819–1821* Hakluyt Society, London, vol II: 387.

At 7.30 p.m. we crossed the Antarctic Circle for the fourth time during our expedition, in Long. 164°34'14"W. At this time we saw an icefield in which numbers of large icebergs were embedded .. streams of broken ice extended from this field.

**1820** Miers, John in *Edinburgh Philosophical Journal* 3(6): 367.

I shall introduce the detail in regular order, previously hinting my opinion that a large Southern Continent is about to be discovered. The existence of this continent was believed many ages since; the ancient, and many modern philosophers being fully convinced that a vast tract of land must lie within the limits of the Antarctic Circle, to which they gave the name of Terra Australis Incognita.

**1827** Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24*, 2nd edn David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 2.

The only explorers who have, to our knowledge, explored the sea within the Antarctic Circle, are Captain Cook and Furneaux, in their second voyage, which was towards the South Pole, in the years 1773, and 1774.

**1879** Hooker, J.D. in *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: 11.

The three small archipelagos of Kerguelen Island (including the Heard Islands), Marion and Prince Edward's Islands, and the Crozets, are individually and collectively the most barren tracts of the Globe, whether in their own latitude or in any higher one, except such as lie within the Antarctic Circle itself; for no land even within the N. Polar area presents so impoverished a vegetation.

**1948** Hurley, Frank *Shackleton's argonauts: the epic tale of Shackleton's voyage to Antarctica in 1915* repr. McGraw-Hill Book Co (1972): 122.

Is. In [1916] For a tantalizing month we zigzagged a score of times across the Antarctic Circle. It really seemed as if the spirit of Antarctica held us in durance and refused to permit us to cross its borderline, the 67th parallel.

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* London: 31. On December 10th, 1910 — twelve days after leaving New Zealand — the Terra Nova crossed the geographical threshold of the South, the Antarctic Circle.

**1930** Kinnear in Bernacchi, L.C., ed. *The polar book. Produced for the British Polar Exhibition 1930* E. Allom & Co Ltd, London: 65.

Owing to the higher temperature within the Arctic circle as compared with that of the Antarctic circle more birds are found breeding north of 66°N. lat. than 66°S. lat.

**1955** Dalziel, Ken *Penguin road* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 74.

We were awakened by a long blast on the ship's siren. This was not to inform us of an emergency, but that a crossing had been made of the Antarctic circle, an imaginary line drawn by map-makers at latitude 66° 30' south.

**1978** Béchervaise, John *Science: men on ice in Antarctica. Australian Life Series* Lothian Publishing Co, Melbourne: 34.

Inside the Antarctic Circle (or the Arctic Circle), 66 1/2° latitude from the equator, in midsummer, the sun does not set.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 39.

The Antarctic Convergence limits the range of various plankton and fish. This then is the true boundary of the Antarctic: the Antarctic Circle is no more than a line on the map.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 33.

I stand beside the bridge computer as we do this, determined not to miss the Antarctic Circle coming up — and there it is 66°33.5'.

## antarctic circumpolar current Also *circumpolar (antarctic) current*

A deep current flowing eastward around Antarctica in the **Southern Ocean**. This is the world's largest ocean current, and it connects the Indian, Pacific and Atlantic Oceans. The current is made up of several branches associated with water mass boundaries or fronts (see **antarctic polar front**). It is driven by strong westerly winds and hence is also called the **west wind drift**.

**1933** Sverdrup, H.U. *On vertical circulation in the ocean due to the action of the wind with application to conditions within the Antarctic Circumpolar Current* Discovery Reports vol. VII, issued by the Discovery Committee, Colonial Office London: 165.

We can now summarize our conceptions as to the structure of the circumpolar Antarctic current. Within the Antarctic



## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

water we find a vertical circulation which, when looking towards the east, rotates counter-clockwise. The surface layers are carried towards the north by the pure drift current.

**1968** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* III(5) Sept–Oct: 168. It has been known for almost a hundred years that the bottom waters of the Pacific Ocean are not derived locally from surface waters but enter from the south via the antarctic circumpolar current.

**1982** Barnes, James N. *Let's save Antarctica!* Greenhouse Publications, Melbourne: 27.

The turbulent 'roaring forties', 'furious fifties', and 'shrieking sixties' lie in a circumpolar storm track and a westerly oceanic current zone known commonly as the West Wind Drift, or Circumpolar Current.

**1992** National Science Foundation *The United States Antarctic program* National Science Foundation, NSF 91-92 (revised), Arlington Virginia: 161.

As Gondwanaland broke up through the process of plate tectonics and Antarctica moved to its polar position, oceanic and atmospheric conditions changed. Persistent westerly winds began to circle Antarctica, creating the immense circumpolar current that flows through the southern parts of the Pacific, Atlantic, and Indian Oceans.

**1994** *Mercury [Hobart]* 23 May, suppl.: 3.

The Antarctic circumpolar current is the world's largest oceanic current — four times the size of the Gulf Stream.

### antarctic circumpolar wave

The **antarctic circumpolar current**, which takes about eight or nine years to circle the globe, carries with it two large regions of colder, and two of warmer, water, thousands of kilometres across. These alternating regions, identified in 1996, are called the antarctic circumpolar wave. Changes in sea ice extent and winds are also associated with the wave.

**1996** White, W.B. and Peterson, R.G. in *Nature* 380: 699.

[title] An Antarctic circumpolar wave in surface pressure, wind, temperature and sea-ice extent.

**1998** O'Neill, Graeme in *Sunday Herald Sun [Melbourne]* 19 Jul: 26.

The blobs, about 1 km deep and up to 3000 km in diameter — wide enough to span the Southern Ocean between Australia's southern coastline and Antarctica — are associated with a phenomenon called the Antarctic Circumpolar Wave (ACW), discovered by US oceanographers two years ago.

### antarctic coastal current

#### The east wind drift.

**1959** *Polar Record* 9(63) Sept: 601.

Oceanography .. Study of the Antarctic coastal current.

**1993** Priddle, Julian *Antarctic seas* British Antarctic Survey, Cambridge: 2.

Near to Antarctica the prevailing winds are from the east and therefore drive waters westwards (anti-clockwise) in the Antarctic Coastal Current or East Wind Drift. Further north the winds are predominantly westerly and water is driven eastwards in the Antarctic Circumpolar Current or West Wind Drift.

### antarctic cod

A southern marine fish of the family Nototheniidae; a **nototheniid** (sense 2). Sometimes shortened to **cod** or lengthened to **antarctic rock cod**. See also **giant antarctic cod**.

**1969** Cooper, Allan *Fishes of the world* Paul Hamlyn, London: 128.

The Antarctic 'cods' are very abundant and they can also be eaten. None are found outside Antarctica ... More than thirty kinds of Antarctic cod have been described, belonging to the genera *Notothenia* and *Trematomus*.

**1986** *Antarctic Society of Australia newsletter [Sydney]* no 7 (Oct): 5.

Undisputed evidence of overfishing of some finfish species exists for several areas of the Southern Ocean. In the South Georgia area, for example, stocks of Antarctic cod (*Notothenia rossi*) have crashed from an estimated 400,000 tonnes in 1970 to a meagre 866 tonnes in 1983.

**1988** Porter, Eliot *Antarctica, 2nd edn* Arch Cape Press, NY: 115. Eggnog, hot punch, and whisky were served, accompanied by both smoked and raw Antarctic cod (*Dissostichus [sic] mawsonii*) that had been prepared by a Japanese biologist from his discarded laboratory subjects.

**1991** Abel, Kay, Williams, Meryl and Smith, Perry *Australian and New Zealand Southern Trawl Fisheries Conference, Melbourne 6-9 May 1990* Bureau of Rural Resources/Australian Bureau of Agricultural and Resource Economics, Canberra: 208.

The .. strictly bottom living nototheniids or Antarctic cods .. are between 30 and 50 cm long as adults and are generally rather sluggish, slow growing fish.

### antarctic continent *noun*

[An interesting aspect of this term is that there was speculation about a southern continent — one of the main continuous bodies of land on the earth's surface — centuries before its existence was confirmed.]

a. Mainland Antarctica, the continent surrounding the **South Pole**, with an area of about 14 million km<sup>2</sup> (5.5 million square miles) including ice shelves. It is often divided into **East** and **West Antarctica**, which are also known as **Greater** and **Lesser Antarctica**. It is also simply called the **continent**.

b. The continental area, specifically excluding the **Antarctic Peninsula**.

**1614** [source: NOED] Brerewood (1635) *Enquiries*: 119.

Europe, Afrique, and Asia .. the south or Antartique continent, etc.

**30 Jan 1840** (Adélie Land) Wilkes, Charles in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* (1901) Royal Geographical Society, London: 392.

In this way we approached within half a mile of the dark volcanic rocks, which appeared on both sides of us, and saw the land gradually rising beyond the ice to the height of 3000 feet, and entirely covered with snow ... I make this bay in longitude 140°02'30"E., latitude 66°45'S.; and, now that all were convinced of its existence, I gave the land the name of the Antarctic Continent.

**1897** Hann, Julius in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* (1901) Royal Geographical Society, London: 33.

This appears to indicate that a barometrical maximum must exist over the snow-covered Antarctic continent, if such a region exists.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 324.

Extensive masses of land exist within the Antarctic Circle; but whether this land takes the form of a vast continent, or an archipelago of islands smothered under an overload of frozen snow which conceals their insularity, or islands whose shores are washed by the ocean, remains still an enigma, and a fascinating one to be solved by future expedi-

tions. It is, I think, premature to call it the "Antarctic Continent," for explorations on the American side and even on that of Australia, tend to prove the existence of a broken-up continuation of these two continents with the most extensive masses of land lying under their respective meridians.

**1902** Balch, Edwin Swift *Antarctica* Allen, Lane & Scott, Philadelphia: 12.

The name "Antarctic Continent" is rapidly becoming superseded, as a generic term, by the shorter "Antarctica".

**1909** Cheeseman, T.F. in Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington: 453.

It will be convenient to commence with the ice-clad lands surrounding the South Pole, to which the name Antarctic Continent is now commonly and appropriately applied.

**1911** Charcot, Jean Baptiste Auguste Etienne *The voyage of the "Why Not?"* in the Antarctic Australian National University Press facts, Canberra (1978): 5.

Had we any right to go on calling by the name of the 'Antarctic Continent' this portion of our globe where the only indications of land to which we could point were two isolated peaks at a distance from one another?

**9 Jul 1916** Shackleton, Ernest quoted in *Magellan Times* 13 Jul: 7. Our expedition has not been a real success, but that only means putting it off for a time. This business now is the saving of these men I have been speaking about, and when that is done, and I can gather men about me for another expedition, we shall cross the Antarctic Continent.

**1939** Rymill, John *Southern lights: the official account of the British Graham Land Expedition 1934-1937* Travel Book Club, London: ix.

We were able to work in a previously unvisited part of the Antarctic and make two major discoveries. First, that Graham Land is part of the Antarctic Continent and not an archipelago, as was previously thought.

**1941** *Polar Record* 3(22) July: 449.

For the first time the beauties of the Antarctic Continent have been captured wholesale on colour film, so that those who are not privileged to visit the Antarctic may realize the lure it has to attract some men there many times.

**1947** Scott, J.M. *The Pole of Inaccessibility* Hodder and Staughton, London: 9.

"What's the problem?" "Whether the Antarctic Continent is really a continent or two huge islands. It's more or less round, you know, according to our maps. But two great indentations, set more or less opposite one another, break the outline. The Ross Sea and the Weddell Sea are known, but it remains to be discovered whether or not those two indentations are connected by a frozen channel which cuts Antarctica in half."

**1964** Helm, A.S. and Miller, J.H. *Antarctica: the story of the New Zealand party of the Trans-Antarctic expedition* R.E. Owen, Government Printer, Wellington: 11.

For the past half century the Antarctic continent alone has offered the challenge to men to wrest from this shrinking planet its last long-guarded secrets. It is unthinkable that another decade will pass before the as yet Antarctic incognita uncovers its last forbidding expanse. A world which has no geographical secrets is difficult to conceive, but fortunately geographical and scientific discovery have advanced hand in hand and science in its widest sense will allow man to pursue the elusive for centuries to come.

**1975** McPherson, John G. *Footprints on a frozen continent* Hicks Smith & Sons, Sydney: 10.

Wilkes was the first to name the coastline the 'Antarctic Continent', an inspired guess which was for many years to remain unproven.

— 34.

The Antarctic Continent is a large land mass approximately centred on the South Geographic Pole, and is therefore a platform upon which all the snow falling in the high latitude region is stored. In comparison, the North Pole does not have a land mass to accumulate the great thickness of ice and snow that we see in Antarctica.

**1990** Walton, D.W.H. in Kerry, K.R. and Hempel, G., eds *Antarctic ecosystems: ecological change and conservation* Springer-Verlag, Berlin: 51.

For over 25 million years the Antarctic continent has had no terrestrial connection with any of the other southern continental landmasses.

**1991** Gaskin, Chris and Peat, Neville *The world of penguins* Hodder & Stoughton, Auckland: 5.

There is a common belief that Antarctica is the true home of penguins, but only two species — the Emperor and the Adélie — breed on the Antarctic continent proper (excluding the Antarctic Peninsula); the majority breed on sub-Antarctic islands or in warmer zones.

**1996** *Geographical Magazine* Jan: 42.

To get a feel for the importance of Antarctica remember that the thermal equator (the imaginary line around the earth of mean hottest temperatures) is 10 degrees north of the equator — and that's because the Antarctic continent is a heat sink, a radiator for the earth.

### antarctic continental shelf *noun phr. and attrib.*

[Continental shelf has been used for the relatively shallow belt of seabottom bordering a continental mass, from 1892-.]

The comparatively narrow area of shallow sea surrounding the **antarctic continent**. The antarctic continental shelf is deeper than that of any other continent.

**1946** *Polar Record* 4(32): 400.

Plans include departure from U.S. ports early in December 1946, timely arrival in the vicinity of the Antarctic continental shelf ice and the systematic conduct of a series of exercises as long as the open season continues.

**1982** Brewster, Barney *Antarctica: wilderness at risk* A.H. & A.W. Reed Ltd, Wellington: 84.

Unlike the extensive Arctic continental shelves, where fish are found in abundance, the Antarctic continental shelf is generally narrow and unusually deep. Thus only about 100 of the world's 20,000 or so fish species found in the earth's oceans have been identified south of the Antarctic Convergence.

### antarctic continent theory

The generally accepted theory of the existence of the supercontinent of Gondwana, which separated by continental drift into several smaller land masses including the **antarctic continent**.

**1909** Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand*, Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington, vol 2: 805.

At the present time the Antarctic Continent proper is almost devoid of terrestrial life. The plants are represented by one species of flowering-plants [sic] (*Deschampsia antarctica*), and by a few minute mosses and lichens; while the land-animals are confined to a small number of wingless insects and spiders. Evidently the Antarctic Continent theory requires a warmer climate for Antarctic land in past ages, and evidence for this is now available.

**1976** Kerr, I.S. *Campbell Island: a history* A.H. & A.W. Reed Ltd, Wellington: 68.

One, the "relict" theory, supposed that the common fauna were the remnants of species that had developed in the great

land areas further north but had subsequently been driven south by later forms and now survive only in the subantarctic islands and the extreme south of the continents. It was not presumed that the islands were joined to the continents when this happened but, rather, that the islands had always been widely separated from the landmasses and that their inhabitants must have reached them by crossing the oceans. The other explanation, the "Antarctic continent" theory overcomes this difficulty. It was supposed that the Antarctic continent was once of much greater extent and was joined at times to South America, New Zealand and Australia, and possibly South Africa.

### antarctic convergence

An irregular belt in the **Southern Ocean** some 40–50 km (25–30 miles) wide, occurring between about 48° and 61°S, where cold **antarctic surface water** and warmer subantarctic surface water meet, the colder, more dense antarctic water sinking beneath the warmer water (see **antarctic intermediate water**). Its exact latitude varies with time and longitude. It is sometimes regarded as the place where the **Antarctic** and **subantarctic** meet. The zone is a significant oceanic and biological boundary; the Convention on the Conservation of Antarctic Marine Living Resources applies to organisms "south of the convergence". Also called the (**antarctic**) **polar front**, and simply the **convergence**.

**1933** Sverdrup, H.U. *On vertical circulation in the ocean due to the action of the wind with application to conditions within the Antarctic Circumpolar Current* Vol VII, Discovery Reports. Cambridge University Press, London: 150.

The Antarctic Convergence is found at the surface in about 60°S. The downwards bend of the isotherms to the north of 60°S indicates sinking motion of the water, and the salinity section shows that there the origin of the Antarctic intermediate current must be sought.

**1956** Ealey, E.H.M. and Chittleborough, R.G. *Plankton, hydrology and marine fouling at Heard Island*. ANARE Interim reports no. 15: 6.

Records of sea temperatures taken during A.N.A.R.E. relief voyages over the period 1949–1955 show that in the region between longitudes 70°E. and 119°E., the Antarctic Convergence lies between latitudes 48¼° and 51¼°S during the months January–March inclusive. At all times of the year Heard Island is south of the Convergence which passes approximately through Iles de Kerguelen.

**1971** Bertrand, Kenneth J. *Americans in Antarctica* American Geographical Society special publication no. 39: 15.

Perhaps the most significant geographic discovery of the Discovery Committee investigations was the existence of the Antarctic Convergence.

**1993** Fiennes, Ranulph *Mind over matter: the epic crossing of the Antarctic continent* Sinclair-Stevenson, London: 278.

At the Antarctic Convergence cold Antarctic water meets warmer waters and, at this well defined circumpolar boundary, both sea and air temperatures become markedly warmer. The make up of sea birds and sea creatures also changes at this point, an invisible line which undulates between latitudes 50° and 60°.

### antarctic current

[Current has been used for a part of a body of water, from c1380–(NOED).]

A current, esp. of **antarctic surface water**, flowing away from the **antarctic continent**.

**1906** Clark, W. Eagle in *The Ibis* 6(XXI) Jan: 146.

In spite of their low latitude, the climate of the South Orkneys is essentially polar. One of the most powerful factors in determining the temperature of the air over this region is the cold antarctic current which carries streams of ice and numerous icebergs to a latitude corresponding with that of the northern part of England.

**1909** Suter, Henry in Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington, vol 1: 6.

Cape Horn was evidently the birthplace of *Isc.* the molluscs] *Nacella* and *Patinigera*; thence they have been distributed eastward to the Falkland, New Georgia, and Kerguelen Islands by the eastward-sweeping Antarctic current, carrying them upon seaweeds.

**1933** Earland, Arthur *Foraminifera Part II. South Georgia* Vol VII Discovery reports. Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 29.

Although there is no great difference in latitude between the position of the Falkland Islands (51°–52°30'S) and South Georgia (54°–55°S), it would be difficult to find two areas so nearly in the same latitude presenting greater contrasts. The Falklands, lying on the Continental Shelf of South America, are surrounded by a wide area of shallow water with generally sandy bottom deposits, and, owing to the influence of the warm Pacific water coming through the Drake Strait, are entirely free from ice and present a fauna of a distinctly cool, temperate type. South Georgia, on the other hand, lies outside the influence of the Pacific warm water and, surrounded by the cold Antarctic current flowing northwards, is within the region of pack-ice.

### antarctic divergence

A narrow band in the southern Antarctic Ocean where surface waters diverge between westward-flowing surface waters near the antarctic continent and eastward-flowing waters further away from the continent. The divergence of surface water is balanced by upwelling from below.

**1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 37.

*Antarctic Surface Water* ... originates at the *Antarctic Divergence*, a narrow zone in the southern Antarctic Ocean where subsurface water is pulled upward between two divergent bands of surface water. The divergence is caused by a sharp difference in prevailing winds.

**1986** Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and Foldvik, A. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* 16(1): 18.

The Antarctic Divergence ... has been observed on a number of sections forming part of this programme ... The location of this front has been defined as the latitude at which the subsurface temperature minimum is broken by a column of warmer water.

**1995** Crossley, Louise *Explore Antarctica* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 54.

Close to the Antarctic continent the winds are mainly from the east, while further north in the furious fifties and roaring forties the winds are mainly from the west. The surface currents of the ocean are driven by these winds. The Antarctic Divergence separates these zones of the east and west wind drift.

### antarctic dog Obs.

The dog *Canis australis*: see **warrrah**.



## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

**1781** Pennant, Thomas *History of quadrupeds, vol 1* B. White, London: 240.

*Antarctic Dog* ... Inhabits the *Falkland* isles, near the extremity of *South America*, is dwindled to the size described. It is the only land animal of those distant isles: lives near the shores: kennels like a fox; and forms regular paths from bay to bay, probably for the conveniency of surprizing water-fowl, on which it lives. It is at times very meager, from want of prey: is very tame; fetid, and barks like a dog.

The islands were probably stocked with these animals by means of islands of ice broken from the continent, and carried by the currents.

### **antarctic factor** *Aust. and NZ. Also A factor*

[*Similar humorous expressions are used in a general context: Murphy's law (see 1992 quotation), originally US, is first recorded in 1958 for describing the 'apparent perverseness and unreasonableness of things' (NOED).*]

A (usu. humorous) term for the unpredictability of life in Antarctica, usually perceived to be greater than elsewhere and often attributed to the severe weather or extreme isolation.

[**1909** (nr Cape Royds, McMurdo Sound) Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907-1909* William Heinemann, London: 243.

Adams, Marshall and Marston had not yet become accustomed to the little misadventures incidental to travel in the Antarctic.]

**1963** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(9) Mar: 406.

The 1963 parties at all three Australian stations, Mawson, Davis and Wilkes, rounded off their year's work by conducting extensive field traverses. Misfortunes and difficulties, so typically an Antarctic factor, were met by all parties.

**1988** Butler, Rowan *Breaking the ice* Albatross Books, Sydney: 17.

In the best tradition of 'the mail must go through', a third attempt was made. Those with red faces checked rocket and line once more before it was successfully fired and our letters, sealed in multiple garbage bags, were hauled across the water. The exercise had been an interesting introduction to the 'Antarctic factor' which often brings catastrophe to the simplest of tasks.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 12.

So we are already being conditioned about what we will later hear spoken about as the "A-factor", the Antarctic factor, the *man proposes God disposes* factor, the sense you sometimes have in Antarctica that you are being played with, in an amused kind of way, by forces beyond your comprehension or imagination.

**1994** *Antarctic Times: the official newsletter of Scott Base 1* (22 Oct): [1].

The Antarctic factor has struck — instead of a flight to Christchurch I'm still at Scott Base.

**1997** Robinson, Kim Stanley *Antarctica* HarperCollins, London: 176.

'Even with the Antarctic factor thrown in they might be starting soon.' 'The Antarctic factor?' 'Murphy's law to the power of ten. Things fall apart. The centre cannot hold. Nor the spin axis.'

### **antarctic flea**

The bird-flea *Glaciopsyllus antarcticus* (fam. Ceratophyllidae), a parasite of antarctic fulmars and petrels, and

the only antarctic flea known. For most of the year, the nests of its hosts are buried under at least a metre of snow.

**1962** Smit, F.G.A.M. and Dunnet, G.M. in *Pacific Insects* 4(4): 895.

Although *Mioctenopsylla* is an Arctic counterpart of the Antarctic flea, there seems to be no close relationship between the two.

**1987** *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions newsletter* no 52 (Dec): 1.

The Antarctic flea is an ectoparasite of Antarctic petrels and is the only species of flea to be found on the Antarctic continent. It was first discovered in 1961 on Ardery Island, near Casey Station, in nests of the Southern fulmar.

### **antarctic flying squid**

The deep red squid *Todarodes filippovae* (fam. Ommastrephidae) of the Southern Ocean, whose mantle is usu. 200–400 mm long. It is caught as bycatch or incidental catch.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 179.

*Todarodes filippovae* ... Antarctic flying squid ... Circumpolar in the Southern Ocean, south of approximately 40°S.

### **antarctic fulmar**

[*Fulmar, a Hebrides dialect word, has been used for petrels since 1698.*]

1. The seabird *Thalassoica antarctica*, better known as the **antarctic petrel**.

**1906** (South Orkneys) Eagle Clarke, W. in *The Ibis* 6(XXI) Jan: 169.

*Thalassoeca antarctica* .. A few examples only of the Antarctic Fulmar were seen at the South Orkneys.

2. The seabird *Fulmarus glacialisoides*, better known as the **silver-grey petrel**.

[**14 Oct 1772** Hoare, Michael E., ed. (1982) *The Resolution journal of Johann Reinhold Forster 1772-1775* vol 1: 177.

We ... caught a *Fulmar* (*Procellaria glacialis*) with a hook & Line & my Son drew it.]

**1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 111.

[caption] Antarctic fulmars are grey and gull-like, though unlikely to be confused with any gull of the southern hemisphere.

**1993** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XXVIII(5): 198.

We focused our analyses on the numerically dominant species of the Elephant Island area that are known to feed substantially upon krill: chinstrap penguins (*Pygoscelis antarctica*) and antarctic fulmars (*Fulmarus glacialisoides*).

### **antarctic fur seal** *noun and attrib.*

[*Seal is recorded for animals of the fam. Phocidae from c1000- (NOED).*]

The most southerly **fur seal** *Arctocephalus gazella* (fam. Otariidae), a grey-brown seal once hunted for its fur. Like other fur seals, it has two layers of hairs, a coarser outer layer of 'guard hairs', and a fine furry inner layer that insulates the animal and provides the commercial fur.

The seal breeds on southern islands (Marion and Prince Edward, Crozet, Kerguelen, Heard and McDonald, Macquarie, South Georgia, South Shetlands, South

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

Orkney, South Sandwich and Bouvet Islands). Males grow to 2 m (6 ft 6 in) and females to 1.3 m (4 ft 4 in) long. It is also called the **Kerguelen fur seal**.

**1894** Bruce, William in Burn Murdoch, W.G. *From Edinburgh to the Antarctic* Longmans, Green and Co, London: 361.

Should this [sc. slaughter] continue, these seals, the Antarctic Fur Seals at the beginning of the century, will undoubtedly be quickly exterminated.

**1902** Balch, Edwin Swift *Antarctica* Allen, Lane & Scott, Philadelphia: 79.

Sheffield and Fanning ... captured many seals and this voyage was the forerunner of those which resulted in the extermination of the antarctic fur seal.

**1971** Bertrand, Kenneth J. *Americans in Antarctica* American Geographical Society special publication no. 39: 24.

The skins were ... taken to Calcutta and Canton, where they were sold for \$65,000. Thus began the Antarctic fur seal trade with China.

**1983** King, Judith E. *Seals of the world, 2nd edn* British Museum (Natural History), London, and Oxford University Press, Oxford: 48.

The Antarctic or Kerguelen Fur Seal was first described from a female animal collected on Kerguelen in 1874 ... It has often previously been known as the Kerguelen Fur Seal, but as Kerguelen is the only part of its range where it is not known to breed at the moment, and the centre of the population is on South Georgia, Antarctic Fur Seal is a more suitable name.

**1996** (Macquarie Island) *Icy News* 1 Mar: [3].

Sue & Dave have seen most of the Antarctic fur seal pups moult from black furry creatures to very small seals.

## antarctic gonate squid

The squid *Gonatus antarcticus* (fam. Gonatidae).

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 152.

*Gonatus antarcticus* ... Antarctic gonate squid.

## antarctic great skua

The bird *Megalestris antarctica*: see **skua**.

**1906** (South Orkneys) Eagle Clark, W. in *The Ibis* 6(XXI) Jan: 180.

*Megalestris antarctica* .. About five hundred Antarctic Great Skuas spend the summer on Laurie I., taking up their quarters in the vicinity of the Penguin-rookeries, where they revel among the eggs and young of their neighbours.

## antarctic green sponge

The sponge *Latrunculia apicalis* (fam. Latrunculiidae).

**1993** *US Antarctic Journal* XXVIII(5) 133.

The antarctic green sponge, *Latrunculia apicalis*, produces bioactive discorhabdins that were originally described from the temperate New Zealand sponge *Latrunculia* sp.

## antarctic hairgrass

[Hair-grass is recorded (NOED: 1759-) for grasses of the genus *Aira*: *Deschampsia* was formerly classified as an *Aira*. The 1827 and 1909 quotations suggest that the common name was not then current.]

The fine-leaved perennial grass *Deschampsia antarctica* (fam. Poaceae), one of the two known flowering plants south of 60°S. It grows in damp areas on the north-western Antarctic Peninsula and South Sandwich,

South Orkney and South Shetland Islands to about 68°S, as well as in the Falklands, southern South America, Kerguelen and Heard Islands. It is often found growing with the other flowering plant of Antarctica, the **antarctic pearlwort**.

**1827** (South Shetlands) Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822-24, 2nd edn* David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970) 133.

None of the islands afford any vegetation, save a short straggling grass, which is found in very small patches, in places where there happens to be a little soil. This, together with a moss, similar to that which is found in Iceland, appears in the middle of January, at which time the islands are partially clear of snow.

**1909** Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington: 453.

It is not surprising to learn that a single grass (*Deschampsia antarctica*), collected on Graham Land and the adjacent islands, is the sole phanerogam yet observed.]

**1989** May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica, 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 72.

Only two flowering plants grow south of 60°S — the Antarctic hair grass (*Deschampsia antarctica*) and the Antarctic pearlwort (*Colobenthos* [sic] *subulatus*). They occur in small clumps near the shore of the west coast of the Antarctic Peninsula.

**1994** *Canberra Times* 19 Sept: 8.

The study documents a "rapid increase" in the continent's only two flowering plants at sites 965 km apart, Faraday on Galindez Island and Signy Island in the South Orkneys ... Thirty years ago, there were just 700 Antarctic hairgrass (*Deschampsia antarctica*) plants on Galindez and the neighbouring islands. In 1990, the scientists counted 17,500, a 25-fold increase.

## antarctic herring

[Herring from the similarity of the small, silvery fish to herrings (fam. Clupeidae).]

The marine fish *Pleuragramma antarcticum*: see **antarctic silverfish**.

**1983** *Australian Fisheries* Jul: 7.

Several of these [sc. Nothothenoioidei] are thought to be of commercial importance including the Antarctic cods, Antarctic toothfish, Patagonian toothfish and Antarctic herring.

**1990** Adams, Richard, ed. *Antarctica: voices from the silent continent* Montagne Jeunesse Co., UK: 47.

The sei whale stays in deep waters, feeding on fast-swimming prey such as Antarctic herring.

## antarctic horsefish

[Horsefish has been used since 1723 for various fishes with heads like that of a horse.]

The marine fish *Zanclorhynchus spinifer* (fam. Congiopodidae), which occurs around Indian Ocean subantarctic islands — Marion, Prince Edward, Crozet, Kerguelen, Heard and Macquarie Islands. It grows to about 40 cm long, and is of minor commercial importance.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 278.

*Zanclorhynchus spinifer* ... Antarctic horsefish ... Only known from Macquarie, Kerguelen, Heard(?) Crozet and Marion islands, but particularly abundant in the latter archipelago ...



Caught as bycatch in bottom trawls; not yet marketed for human consumption, but sometimes used as fishmeal.

## antarctic ice

A term used fairly loosely for **antarctic pack ice**, and also sometimes for the antarctic continent or ice sheet itself (see **antarctic ice sheet**).

**7 Jan 1841** McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 148.

This afternoon I shot the first penguin, on a piece of ice ... I had thus an opportunity afforded me of landing on a piece of Antarctic ice for the first time, to pick up a penguin.

**1847** Hooker, Joseph Dalton *Flora Antarctica: the botany of the antarctic voyage of H.M. Discovery ships Erebus and Terror, in the years 1839–1843* Reeve Brothers, London, vol II: 216.

The proximity of the Antarctic Ice being influenced by that of the large bodies of land, it advances nearer to South Georgia than to Fuegia.

**1899** *Geographical Journal* 13 (May): 543.

The *Belgica* is the first vessel which has ever wintered in the antarctic ice.

**1900** Amundsen, Roald in Cook, Frederick A. *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK, repr. by McGill-Queen's University Press, Montreal (1980): 452.

The antarctic ice, compared to the arctic ice which I have had a chance to observe, is much more level and even, and consequently easier to traverse.

**1930** Mill, in Bernacchi, L.C. (compiler) *The polar book. Produced for the British Polar Exhibition 1930* E. Allom & Co Ltd, London, 24.

E.H. Shackleton, profiting by his experience in the *Discovery*, fitted out the *Nimrod* in 1907 and introduced original methods of equipment and transport, including the first motor-car to run on Antarctic ice.

**1958** Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund *The crossing of Antarctica: the Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955–58* Cassell & Co, London: 13.

From Montevideo we sailed for South Georgia, our last port of call before plunging into the antarctic ice. By 5 a.m. on 16th December the *Theron* was edging her way into Grytviken where the Government Station is situated on King Edward Point.

**1978** Béchervaise, John *Science: men on ice in Antarctica. Australian Life Series* Lothian Publishing Co, Melbourne: 21.

Some Antarctic ice is the coldest in the world, almost ninety degrees Celsius below the freezing point of fresh water.

## antarctic ice barrier

### The ice barrier.

**1901** Gregory, J.W. and Bonney, T.G. in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 196.

The origin of the Antarctic Ice Barrier, which extends Eastwards from Mts. Erebus and Terror, is still unsettled ... In crossing the upper surface of the Barrier, the most important point to observe is the arrangement and distribution of the crevasses.

**1933** Sheppard, Edith M. *Isopod Crustacea. Part I. The family Serolidae* Discovery Reports vol. VII, issued by the Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 330.

*Serolis bromleyana* ... Occurrence. Off the east coast of New Zealand, in 1100 and 700 fathoms, and close to the Antarctic Ice-Barrier in 1975 fathoms.

## antarctic ice cap

The thick layer of ice on the **antarctic continent**: see **ice cap**.

**1963** McKenzie, Douglas *Opposite poles* Robert Hale & Co, London/Whitcombe & Tombs, New Zealand: 114.

As a scientist, a geologist, Fuchs saw a fresh field of research in drawing the profile of the land underlying the Antarctic ice-cap.

**1997** *Popular Science* Feb: 38.

If the Antarctic ice cap were to melt completely, it would raise the level of the oceans by as much as 200 feet, dramatically altering the shape of the United States.

## antarctic icefish

The marine fish *Champscephalus gunnari*, more commonly known as the **mackerel icefish**.

**1989** May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica, 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 146.

Since 1969, three of the four most important commercial fin fish species — marbled notothenia, scaled notothenia and Patagonian toothfish — have been very heavily over-fished in the area regulated by the Convention on the Conservation of Marine Living Resources, and few controls have been introduced. As for the fourth species, the Antarctic ice-fish, there are grave fears for the future of the stock after a catch of 162,598 tonnes in 1982/83.

**1990** Kock, K.-H. in *Antarctic Science* 2(2) (Jun): 180.

A reduced catch of only 21,356 tonnes of Antarctic ice fish (*Campscephalus gunneri* [sic]).

## antarctic ice pack

A general term for antarctic **pack ice**.

**1967** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 4(9) Mar: 465.

The Australians on board, trapped for nearly a month in an Antarctic ice pack, kept cheerful in sub-zero temperatures while they awaited rescue.

**1982** Barnes, James N. *Let's save Antarctica!* Greenhouse Publications, Melbourne: 12.

The Antarctic ice pack has an important, though poorly understood, influence on regional and global climate patterns. Because of thermal insulating properties, it greatly reduces the exchange of heat between the atmosphere and the ocean. Its large annual fluctuation in size also affects world climate.

## antarctic ice sheet

The ice cap covering the antarctic continent. See also **East Antarctic ice sheet**, **West Antarctic ice sheet**.

**1959** *Polar Record* 9(63) Sept: 607.

F. Loewe reviewed the various items in the mass budget of the Antarctic ice sheet.

**1980** Woodard, Edwin and Bischoff, Heather Woodard *Storehouses of the snow* Leisure Books, Norwalk, Connecticut: 140.

The great Antarctic ice sheet is undergoing destruction by unknown subterranean forces, apparently pushing hot magma and rock up through the earth's mantle.

**1991** Tingey, Robert J. *The geology of Antarctica* Clarendon Press, Oxford: 365.

The Antarctic Ice Sheet is one of the most prominent features on our planet.

**1995** *Weekend Australian* 21–22 May, suppl.: 19.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

The build up in the Antarctic ice sheet is the latest in a series of events which researchers consider may point to accelerated global warming: recently British scientists observed the creation of extra large icebergs, while Argentinian researchers said sea ice around the Antarctic peninsula was breaking up extensively.

**antarctician**

[**Antarctic** + suffix *-ian*]

Someone entangled with Antarctica — a dweller, a former occupant or an aficionado. See also **Antarctic-an** (sense 2.)

**1963** *Wilkes Hard Times* 1(1) Feb: 7.

Then in 1961 the bookworm turned, applied for a position in the Antarctic as a supervisor, and got it. Thus followed the pattern of life so well known to all intrepid Antarcticians, and I wonder if I shall ever get out of this land of ice and snow ... and I wonder further if I want to.

**1987** Keenan, J. in *Aurora* (Sept): 9.

[glossary] **Antarctician** — A self styled expert on things Antarctic.

**1994** *Polar Whispers* 2 (May): 2.

It was very appropriate that Gary's friend and well known New Zealand based Antarctician, Colin Monteath, should present the first lecture.

**antarctic intermediate water** *Also antarctic intermediate current*

A body of low-salinity, highly-oxygenated water formed where **antarctic surface water** sinks below **subantarctic surface water** at the **antarctic convergence**, and flows northwards from there.

**1933** Deacon, G.E.R. *A general account of the hydrology of the South Atlantic Ocean* Discovery Reports vol. VII. Cambridge University Press, London: 220.

The Antarctic surface water which sinks at the Antarctic convergence mixes with sub-Antarctic water in a region of intense vertical mixing just north of the Antarctic convergence. The mixture of water then sinks downwards towards the north, and spreads over the whole of the South Atlantic Ocean. It gives rise to a layer of water which is both Antarctic and sub-Antarctic in origin, and it is found farther north between layers of sub-tropical water, and warm deep water, both of which are of sub-tropical origin. The layer has therefore been called the Antarctic intermediate layer, and the water Antarctic intermediate water.

**1933** Sverdrup, H.U. *On vertical circulation in the ocean due to the action of the wind with application to conditions within the Antarctic Circumpolar Current* Discovery Reports, vol. VII. Cambridge University Press, London: 150.

The Antarctic Convergence is found at the surface in about 60°S. The downwards bend of the isotherms to the north of 60°S indicates sinking motion of the water, and the salinity section shows that there the origin of the Antarctic intermediate current must be sought.

**1958** David, P.M. *The distribution of the Chaetognatha of the Southern Ocean* Discovery Reports, vol. XXIX. Cambridge University Press, London: 214.

The main concentration of *Sagitta maxima* is in the antarctic intermediate water.

**1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 38.

The *Antarctic Intermediate Current* ... underlies the surface of the Indian and Pacific Oceans, washing upward against submarine shelves to cool the coastal waters of New Zealand, southern Australia and many oceanic islands.

**1985** El-Sayed, Sayed Z., in Bonner, W.N. and Walton, D.W.H., eds *Key environments: Antarctica* Pergamon Press, Oxford: 136.

As the Antarctic Surface Water sinks below the surface at the Convergence, and continues northward, it forms the Antarctic Intermediate Water, which is characterized by a salinity minimum and a relatively high oxygen maximum.

**1992** *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions newsletter* no 70 (Winter): 6.

The rate of overturning about the circumpolar current determines the rate of formation of water masses, including Antarctic surface water and Antarctic intermediate water.

**antarcticist**

One specializing in Antarctica; in the 1922 quotation below, used in reference to penguins.

**1922** Cherry-Garrard, Apsley *The worst journey in the world* Penguin Books Ltd, repr. Picador, London (1994): 579.

If penguins are primitive, it is rational to infer that the most primitive penguin is farthest south. These are the two Antarcticists, the Emperor and the Adélie.

**1936** Byrd, Richard E. *Antarctic discovery* Putnam, London: 1.

There is really only one effective training ground for Antarcticists, to borrow Cherry-Garrard's identification; and that is Antarctica itself.

**antarcticite**

A calcium chloride mineral,  $\text{CaCl}_2 \cdot 6\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , described from Antarctica's **dry valleys**.

**1966** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 4(8) Dec: 398.

Dr. Tetsuya Torii has spent several months during the summer season in the Dry Valley area since 1953 and found a new mineral called "Antarcticite".

**1988** Porter, Eliot *Antarctica, 2nd edn* Arch Cape Press, NY: 111.

Around each rock is a moist slight depression, filled with crystals of the hexahydrate of calcium chloride, an exceedingly hygroscopic mineral to which a Japanese mineralogist has given the name *antarcticite*.

**1998** Lopez, Barry *About this life* Alfred A. Knopf, NY: 70.

Insofar as the dry valleys of Victoria Land are known to the outer world, they are known for four things ... for a mineral, antarcticite (calcium chloride hexahydrate), discovered in local ponds so heavily laden with salt they do not freeze in winter, when the temperature rests as -60 degrees and -70 degrees Fahrenheit [etc.].

**antarcticitis** *Humorous*

A yearning for Antarctica.

**1963** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] Sept: 3.

Many of you suddenly turn up in the Explorer's Arms "just for a chat" or "just to find out what is going on." If you see yourself here, you are not only like a bird in a cage, but you are also suffering from Antarcticitis, or in certain cases, Macquarie disease.

**1997** *The Orange County Register* 11 Feb: 12.

The two were married at the end of her season, and now live in Minneapolis. But she, too, has a severe case of Antarcticitis. "I want to go back, mostly because it's a magical place."

**antarctic kelp**

The very large brown seaweed or 'bull kelp' *Durvillaea antarctica* (Phaeophyta), which has a massive holdfast and thick stem, and can grow to 70 m (75 yd) long. It occurs on the southern coasts of New Zealand and Australia, in Patagonia, and around the Falkland and Kerguelen Islands. It forms a thick 'forest' of kelp, and is a distinctive feature of the coastlines of many sub-antarctic islands.

**1987** National Parks and Wildlife Service, Tasmania *Macquarie Island nature reserve: visitor's handbook* NPWS, Hobart: 27.

The Antarctic kelp (*Durvillaea antarctica*) plays a dominant role in the ecology of the shore region on Macquarie Island. It not only provides habitats for large numbers of invertebrate species and some fish but also tempers the effects [sic] of the surf breaking along the shore.

**1988** (Heard Island) *Australian Geographic* 9 (Jan-Mar): 68.

In this area [sic, intertidal zone] you find the colourful limpets and marine algae, and the gigantic Antarctic kelp in dense forests.

**Antarctic knobbed octopus**

The octopus *Pareledone polymorpha*.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome, vol 1: 202.

*Pareledone polymorpha* ... Antarctic knobbed octopus ... Currently found in the Atlantic sector of the Southern Ocean and in the Ross Sea.

**antarctic krill**

[The 1852 quotation is from the zoologist who named the species.]

The translucent, shrimp-like marine crustacean *Euphausia superba* (fam. Euphausiacea), which is abundant in circumpolar waters south of the **antarctic convergence**, and grows to about 6 cm (2 in) body length. It is fished commercially, but has more significance as the basis of the food chain in antarctic waters, where it is food for whales, fish, seals and seabirds. It is more often simply called **krill**.

**1852** Dana, James D. *Crustacea. United States Exploring Expedition during the years 1838, 1840, 1841, 1842 under the command of Charles Wilkes, U.S.N. vol. XIII, Part 1 C.* Sherman, Philadelphia: 645.

*Euphausia superba* ... Antarctic Seas, south of Van Diemen's Land, latitude, 66°05' south, longitude 157° east ... Length, two inches. Colour, as noted and sketched by Lieutenant Totten, red, spotted with whitish.]

**1981** *Insight* Marshall Cavendish, London, 3(35): 958.

Krill is a Norwegian whaling term meaning 'whale food': It applies to 80-90 species of shrimp-like crustaceans. The most notable variety is the Antarctic krill, *Euphausia superba*, which occurs in the south Antarctic [sic]. It is also the largest form, with some about 7.5 cm (3 in) in length.

**1995** Menkhorst, Peter W., ed. *Mammals of Victoria: distribution, ecology and conservation* Oxford University Press, Melbourne: 303.

Humpbacks feed by gulping large mouthfuls of seawater containing prey organisms, which are retained in the mouth by fringed rows of baleen plates attached on either side of the upper jaw. Their diet in Antarctic waters, south of about 55°S, is almost exclusively antarctic krill, *Euphausia superba*).

**antarctic limpet**

The marine mollusc *Nacella concinna* (fam. Patellacea) of the Antarctic Peninsula region, a gastropod which grows to about 6.5 cm (2\_ in) diameter.

**1971** (Palmer Station) Shabica, S.V. in *Antarctic Journal of the United States* VII(5) Sept/Oct: 160.

The general ecology of the antarctic limpet *Patinigera polaris*.

**1988** Porter, Eliot *Antarctica, 2nd edn* Arch Cape Press, NY: 65. Flat cones shaped like a Chinese peasant's hat: these Antarctic limpets were rough and brown on top, pearly gray-blue inside.

**1992** Campbell, David in *New Scientist* no. 1846 (7 Nov): 33. An Antarctic limpet, in the unlikely event that it is not snatched by a gull or eaten by a sea star, has the potential to live for a hundred years.

**antarctic mainland**

The **antarctic continent** and nearshore islands.

**1922** (South Georgia) Murphy, Robert Cushman in *National Geographic* 41(4) Apr: 422.

The plant life represents a transition stage between the Falkland or the north Fuegian type and that of the Antarctic mainland.

**1958** Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund *The crossing of Antarctica: the Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955-58* Cassell & Co, London: 62.

As the day wore on, Southern Thule, the most southerly island of the South Sandwich group, gradually disappeared over the northern horizon. This was the last land we should see before reaching the Antarctic mainland.

**1993** Fiennes, Ranulph *Mind over matter: the epic crossing of the Antarctic continent* Sinclair-Stevenson, London: 11.

The first three claims to have sighted the Antarctic mainland all came within a few days of each other, as recently as February 1819.

**antarctic midge** Also **midge fly**

[The insect was found by members of the Belgian Antarctic Expedition 1897-1899, and the scientific name commemorates the ship of that expedition, the *Belgica*.]

The small wingless midge *Belgica antarctica* (fam. Chironomidae), the largest permanent terrestrial inhabitant of Antarctica. The larvae, which live in brackish coastal pools of the antarctic peninsula, can survive freezing.

**1985** Sømme, Lauritz in Bonner, W.N. and Walton, D.W.H., eds *Key environments. Antarctica* Pergamon Press, Oxford: 114.

Larvae of the Antarctic midge *Belgica antarctica* are able to survive a certain degree of freezing.

**1994** *Mercury [Hobart]* 23 May, suppl.: 13.

He discovers Antarctica's largest land animal. It's only 6 millimetres long ... the wingless Midge Fly.

**antarctic midwinter**

**Midwinter.**

**[22 June 1898]** Cook, Frederick A. *Through the first Antarctic night 1898-1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK, repr. McGill-Queen's University Press, Montreal (1980): 323.

Thirty-five long, dayless nights have passed. An equal number of dreary, cheerless days must elapse before we see again the glowing orb ... We have thus passed the antarctic midnight.]

**1930** (Ross Sea) Byrd, Richard Evelyn in *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 169.

Unexpected warm weather struck us toward the middle of June — unexpected because that was the Antarctic midwinter — and the moisture of temperatures of only 8 to 11 below zero created .. marvelous ice and frost crystals.

**1967** (nr Mawson station) *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* June: 15.

On the fourth day, after marching through appalling weather, they saw the Antarctic midwinter darkness headlights of the tractor as the two parties slowly converged.

### antarctic monster *New Zealand*

Fire. The consequences of a fire in Antarctica, esp. in the older, tinder-dry wooden buildings, could be dire.

**c1977** *Poster* Scott Base, Antarctica.

Fire is the great antarctic monster.

**1983** *New Zealand Antarctic Record* 4(3): 8.

Fire at Scott Base is known as the Antarctic Monster, because of the lack of water to extinguish it.

### antarctic neosquid

The squid *Alluroteuthis antarcticus* (fam. Neoteuthidae).

**1985** *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome, vol 1: 169.

*Alluroteuthis antarcticus* ... Antarctic neosquid ... All sectors of the Antarctic Ocean; circumpolar.

### antarctic nose-wiper mitt

A glove with a sheepskin pad on the back, for wiping your nose without freezing your hands.

**1979** Lewis, David *Voyage to the ice: the Antarctic expedition of Solo* Australian Broadcasting Commission/Wm Collins Sons & Co: 50.

Each person's clothing varied somewhat, of course, in accordance with conditions and taste, but mine would be about average: .. thick quilted synthetic over-trousers, thick synthetic quilted parka, wool gloves or mitts with waterproof overmitts or industrial rubber gloves, or Antarctic 'nose wiper' mitts in dry conditions (eg. steering, if not too rough).

### antarctic oasis

A snow and ice-free area: an **oasis**.

**27 Sept–25 Oct 1959** Béchervaise, John (1963) *Blizzard and fire: a year at Mawson, Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 169.

The scene emphasized the double nature of the Vestfold Hills which, when first sighted from the air, in summer, were described as an antarctic oasis.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 169.

The Vestfold Hills are defined officially as an "Antarctic oasis", an oasis being defined as "a substantial ice-free area separated from the ice sheet by a distinct ablation zone". ... Scientists welcomed the oases because in them, and on the occasional exposed rock-faces of the mountains of Antarctica, they could get out their geological hammers and, where lakes were present, whatever scientists use for shrimp-nets.

### Antarctic Ocean *noun phr. and attrib.*

The body of water more commonly known as the **Southern Ocean**, comprising oceanic waters from the

edge of the **antarctic continent** northwards, where at an undefined point they become the Indian, Pacific and South Atlantic Oceans. The subtropical front is usually taken as the northern boundary of the Southern Ocean.

**15 Dec 1820** Bellingshausen, Fabius von in Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. (1945) *The voyage of Captain Bellingshausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819–1821* Hakluyt Society, London, vol II: 388.

Mr Ignatiev .. brought back a penguin of the Royal species, an unusually large one, 3 feet in height and weighing 59 lb. Near it on the ice was a shrimp. I have already mentioned that penguins eat shrimps, and this one was a proof that the parts of the Antarctic Ocean traversed by us were filled with these creatures.

**1834** *The penny cyclopædia* vol II, Charles Knight, London: 68. Antarctic Ocean, a term properly applied to the ocean between the antarctic circle and the South Pole. The word is sometimes used to express generally the cold oceanic regions round the South Pole, without strict regard to the limits of the antarctic circle.

**1879** *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: III.

The British Museum contains examples [sc. of *Stercorarius antarcticus*] from South Africa (Sir A. Smith), Campbell Island (Lieutenant A. Smith), Antarctic Seas, and the Pack Ice, Antarctic Ocean.

**1901** Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 8.

We have only drawn attention to these considerations because they indicate the peculiar importance of tidal observation [sic] in the Antarctic Ocean from a scientific point of view ... Here only do we find an ocean uninterrupted throughout the whole circumference of the planet.

**1938** Christensen, Lars in Jayne, E.M.G. transl. fr Norwegian *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 148.

When .. a Norwegian Company sought permission to fish for whales in Ross Sea, the so-called Ross Dependency was created by a British Order in Council. From that time, and especially since the opening of the Bouvet grounds, and the increasing activity in exploring the Antarctic continent, the question of dividing up the Antarctic Ocean area into sectors has become a serious consideration in world politics.

**1949** Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 238.

Bottles were released at intervals from Corinthian Bay. Finally a hundred bottles were floating in the waters of the Antarctic Ocean.

**1968** Dukert, Joseph M. *This is Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 57.

A general rule of nature seems to be that living things .. age more slowly when the temperature is low ... Partly as a result of this the Antarctic Ocean is the richest in the world. The other reason for its fertility is that the bottom waters of the sea around Antarctica are in constant motion. Minerals and organic fertilizer are always being brought up toward the surface.

**1987** Instituto Antartico Argentino *Argentine Antarctic research programmes 1987–1990* Instituto Antartico Argentino: 7.

The waters that surround Antarctica are named Antarctic Ocean as a whole. This name includes the most austral parts of the three large oceans from 50°S approximately up to the Antarctic Continent.

**1992** Lied, Nils Oscar: *the true story of a husky* Kerr Publishing, Sydney: 56.

The only contact with reality came through the soles of my mukluks, as they left their faint prints on the hard-packed

snow covering the sea-ice, which separated us from the black, Antarctic Ocean by less than a metre.

### antarcticophile

A lover of Antarctica; an enthusiast for the place.

**1986** Woody Horning in *Antarctic Society of Australia newsletter* no 7 (Oct): 3.

The calendar ... features 24 colour photographs from a wide range of Antarctic environments including the Ross Sea, the Dry Valleys and the Antarctic Peninsula ... A must for Antarcticophiles.

**1987** Chester, Jonathan in *Australian Geographic* 5 (Jan): 94.

An 'Antarcticophile', Warwick is as fascinated by the far south as his wife Lynn.

### antarctic ozone hole

A part of the upper atmosphere seasonally depleted of ozone, and first observed in Antarctica: see **ozone hole**.

**1987** *Antarctic Society of Australia newsletter* no 11 (Dec): 17.

To investigate the nature and extent of the antarctic ozone hole a major study was undertaken in the spring of this year.

**1991** *Canberra Times* 14 Sept: 14.

With the end of the long polar night, the Antarctic ozone hole is opening for the season, this year a week earlier than usual, the US Government said. An ozone hole is a thinning in the upper atmosphere of ozone, a gas that protects the earth's surface from hazardous ultraviolet radiation. Such thinning is triggered each spring over Antarctica by the return of sunlight. The poles experience months of darkness during the winter.

**1997** *Seattle Times* 6 Apr: 1.

Join researchers aboard one small ship engaged in a big-league scientific investigation beneath the Antarctic ozone hole. Working conditions: bitter weather, endless stress, impossible hours. Rewards: little recognition, less money, but an experience like nothing else in the world.

### antarctic pack ice *Also antarctic pack*

The pack ice surrounding the antarctic continent: see **pack ice**.

**1870** Hamilton, Captain R.V. in *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society* XIV(II): 148.

It is generally considered that an Antarctic pack is much more dangerous than an Arctic, and it certainly is for sailing-vessels.

**20 Dec 1910** (68°41'S, 179°28'W) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912* (1972) Blandford Press, London: 82.

We have as yet seen only Crabeaters, the common seal of the Antarctic pack ice, and of these we have only killed 4. Everyone appreciated the liver and the meat, as they have also appreciated the meat of penguins.

**1919** (Macquarie Island) Mawson, Sir Douglas in *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society of Australasia (SA branch)* XX: 3.

October is the coldest month, probably owing to the near approach of the Antarctic pack ice.

**1971** Bertrand, Kenneth J. *Americans in Antarctica* American Geographical Society special publication no. 39: 8.

These [sc. Scott, Shackleton] were man's first attempts at navigating in Antarctic pack ice, and five ships were beset and two crushed.

**1995** *The Australian* 25 Jan: 40.

The females [sc. seals] perform the most spectacular dives — the deepest recorded to date being 1700m — while the huge

males, which are 3 to 4m in length and weigh up to 3000kg, feed lazily in the shallows of the Antarctic pack-ice.

### antarctic papillose octopus

[*Prob. from the Latin papilla nipple-like protuberance, referring to the octopus's skin.*]

The octopus *Graeledone antarctica* (fam. Octopodidae).

**1985** *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome, vol 1: 196.

*Graeledone antarctica* ... Antarctic papillose octopus ... Currently known from the Ross Sea, Antarctica and Prydz Bay.

### antarctic pearlwort

[*Pearlwort has been used for plants of the fam. Caryophyllaceae since 1660 (NOED).*]

Either of two species of small perennial plant in the genus *Colobanthus* (fam. Caryophyllaceae). *C. quitensis* grows in damp ground of the Antarctic Peninsula region and in the Falkland Islands, as well as in South America. It is one of only two flowering plants known from continental Antarctica (the other is **antarctic hair-grass**). Its cushion-forming (to about 25 cm or 10 in across) growth is a typical adaptation of plants to cold climates; related species of *Colobanthus* occur on various subantarctic islands.

[**1867** Hooker, J.D. *Handbook of the New Zealand flora: a systematic description of the native plants of New Zealand and the Chatham, Kermadec's, Lord Auckland's, Campbell's, and Macquarrie's islands* Reeve & Co., London: 25.

*Colobanthus subulatus* ... Campbell's Island J.D.H. Also found in the alps of Victoria and abundantly in Antarctic America.]

**1989** *Antarctic Science* 1(1) Mar: 80.

Antarctic pearlwort *Colobanthus* .. *subulatus* does not occur in the Antarctic (although *C. quitensis* does).

**1992** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XXVII(1) Mar: 14.

Lynch Island supports one of the most extensive and dense stands of antarctic hair grass (*Deschampsia antarctica*) known in the Treaty Area. The only other flowering plant, antarctic pearlwort (*Colobanthus quitensis*), is also abundant.

**1997** *Washington Times* 31 Mar: 14.

The Antarctic pearl wort, a velvety, mosslike plant that thrives on rocky islands, develops a pigment known as a flavenoid that seems to make it more tolerant of heavy UV radiation.

### antarctic penguin

Generally, a penguin of the **antarctic regions** (see 1972 quotation); specifically, either of two penguins more commonly known by other names, the **adelie penguin** (*Pygoscelis adeliae*) and the **chinstrap penguin** (*P. antarctica*).

**4 Feb 1775** Hoare, Michael E., ed. (1982) *The Resolution journal of Johann Reinhold Forster 1772-1775* vol 4: 721.

Shot several antarctic Pinguins, a Fulmar [etc.].

**1900** Cook, Frederick A. *Through the first Antarctic night 1898-1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK, repr. by McGill-Queen's University Press, Montreal (1980): 421.

The most common [sc. birds of the Belgica Channel] are .. the Papuan penguin (*Pygoscelis papua*), and the antarctic penguin (*Pygoscelis antarctica*), these latter two living in vast rookeries.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 44.

The little Antarctic Penguin (*Pygoscelis Adeliae*) was very common.

**1940** Christopherson, Erling, transl fr Norwegian by Benham, R.L. *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 87.

The Rock-hopper also lives in colonies on the coast of Patagonia, Falkland Island, Gough, Kerguelen and St. Paul, to mention a few of the more important places. It is probable that it occurs everywhere in the southern west-wind zone, but it is small and insignificant by comparison with the very much larger Antarctic penguin.

**1952** Sladen, W.J.L. in *The Ibis* 94(3): 541.

Penguins studied were the Adélie *Pucheramphus adeliae*, Antarctic *Pygoscelis antarctica* and Gentoo *P. papua*.

**1972** Mason, Theodore K. *All about the frozen continent: Antarctica* Paul Hamlyn, Sydney: 40.

Only the Adélie and Emperor penguins venture as far south as the antarctic continent, although seventeen types of penguins live in the Southern Hemisphere ... Both types of antarctic penguins are well-equipped with layers of feathers and fat to withstand the cold.

### Antarctic Peninsula *noun phr. and attrib.*

The glaciated mountainous part of West Antarctica, which extends in a long arm towards southernmost South America. The northern part of the peninsula is also known as Graham Land, and the southern part as the Palmer Peninsula.

**1963** Antarctic. *Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(8) Dec: 355.

The operation is essentially an oceanographic investigation of the Drake Strait area, between Tierra del Fuego and the great Antarctic Peninsula which the British call Graham Land, the Americans Palmer Land — and the Chileans O'Higgins Land!

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 147.

In the 1960s two icebergs were tracked for years in the Antarctic Peninsula area. One measured 68 by 47 miles, the other 65 by 33 miles ... The biggest iceberg ever recorded is said to have measured 280 miles by 60 miles.

**1991** *New Scientist* 130 no. 1774 (22 June): 25.

The Antarctic Peninsula is the continent's Balkans, its Calcutta and its Mesopotamia.

**1995** Leat, Philip *The geology of Antarctica* British Antarctic Survey, Cambridge: 10.

Geologically, the Antarctic Peninsula has more in common with the Andes of southern South America than with most of the rest of Antarctica. It consists of the eroded remnants of a volcanic arc that was active from about 200 until only 10 million years ago.

### antarctic petrel

[Antarctica was given as a species name to the bird (then *Procellaria antarctica*) by German naturalist and professor of chemistry Johann Friedrich Gmelin, in his edition of Linnaeus's *Systema naturae* (1789) vol. 1: 565. Gmelin latinised all published vernacular names which had not already been treated thus. (Scientists quite often translate a plant or animal's common name into Latin and use this for naming a species, and vice versa.)

Here, the name antarctica indicates the 'type locality' of the species: the place where the original specimen used to describe the species came from.]

The brown and white circumpolar seabird *Thalassoica antarctica* (fam. Procellariidae), which breeds on the

antarctic continent. It is normally found in antarctic seas in summer; in winter it reaches New Zealand and is occasionally found off southern Australia. It is also called the **antarctic fulmar** and **brown-backed petrel**.

**17 Jan 1773** Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, In the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* W. Strahan and T. Cadell, London: 42.

For two days before, [we] had seen several flocks of the brown and white pintadoes, which we named Antarctic peterels, because they seem to be natives of that region. They are, undoubtedly, of the peterel tribe; are, in every respect, shaped like the pintadoes, differing only from them in colour. The head and fore-part of the body, tail, and ends of the wings, are white.

**19 Mar 1841** McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 181.

I shot three Antarctic petrel, but only succeeded in securing one of them.

**1888** Buller, Sir Walter Lawry *A history of the birds of New Zealand, 2nd edn* Published by the author, Westminster London, vol II: 229.

*Thalassoeca antarctica*. (Antarctic Petrel.) ... I am still in doubt as to the propriety of admitting this species into our avifauna, the specimen described by Sir James Hector having been shot in lat. 46°S., long. 118°9'E., or about "1000 miles west of Tasmania and in the latitude of Otago".

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 315.

The brown-backed Antarctic Petrel (*Thalassoeca antarctica*, sometimes placed in the genus *Priocella* [sic]) was found as far south as Latitude 78° S. It has a brown mantle and head, with broad white edges to wing coverts and secondaries; the tail is white, tip brown; under parts white. Length about 17 inches. Very little is known of its breeding place. At Cape Adare they were seen early in November, flying in large flocks towards the south.

**8 Dec 1910** Taylor, Griffith in Hanley, Wayne, ed. (1978) *The Griffith Taylor collection: diaries and letters of a geographer in Antarctica* Geography Department, University of New England, Armidale: 27.

This morning an Antarctic Peterel was caught in a rather novel way ... A long double rope is tied from the mizzen top to the rail: from this depends a wildly waving light pair of lines in which the ever swooping albatross and peterel — may and does entangle itself. This little beggar was brown backed white beneath, with a fierce beak and a pronounced central nostril of hard bone. Ponting took some photographs of it.

**23 Jan 1930** (66°S, 50°E) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 324.

Large flocks of Antarctic Petrels came out towards us and hovered over, so they are there in large numbers.

**1958** Bursey, Jack *Antarctic night* Longman, Green & Co., London: 112.

On the eleventh of January we pulled through to clear water in the Ross Sea. Antarctic petrels flew over the fringes of the pack, sometimes landing on pieces of ice and then flying away again as the ship bore down on them.

**1974** Harper, Peter C. and Kinsky, F.C. in *Tuatara* 21(1,2): 27.

The Antarctic Petrel .. is one of the most beautiful petrels a seafarer is likely to see.

**1992** Ewing, Tania in *Airways* Jan–Feb '92: 28.

[caption] On Hop Island in the Rauer group, an adult Antarctic petrel .. tends her fast-growing chick.

### antarctic pipit

The land bird *Anthus antarcticus*, endemic to South Georgia and now more commonly called the **South Georgian pipit**.

**1906** Lönnberg, Einar in *Vetenskapsakademiens Handlingar* 40(5): 54.

The Antarctic Pipit has always been the favourite of people visiting South Georgia.

**1929** *The birds of South Georgia* Discovery Reports vol 1. Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 585.

The Antarctic Pipit, confined to South Georgia, is common on the low ground near the coast all round the island and does not migrate. It lives much on the seashore, and round the streams and freshwater pools further inland: in winter it is confined to the beach. It feeds on small insects, crustacea and mollusca. The nest is built of dry tussac stems in November, among the tussac or in crevices of the rocks. The egg is described as dull grey-green thickly speckled with dirty red-brown streaks and flecks.

**1985** Siegfried, W.R. in Bonner, W.N. and Walton, D.W.H., eds *Key environments. Antarctica* Pergamon Press, Oxford: 258.

[caption] The Antarctic's only passerine, the Antarctic pipit of South Georgia.

**1990** Adams, Richard, ed. *Antarctica: voices from the silent continent* Montagne Jeunesse Co., UK: 20.

In South Georgia, our law of 'the higher the latitude, the lower the species count', clicks up a further notch. We now have only 29 breeding bird species with about the same score of recorded vagrants. This time, all but the Antarctic pipit, the endemic South Georgia pintail and the yellow-billed teal are birds of the sea.

### antarctic polar front

#### The antarctic convergence.

**1981** Scientific Committee on Antarctic Research *Twenty-third report to SCAR on South African Antarctic Research Activities April 1980–October 1981* SCAR, Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, Pretoria: 18.

The detailed location and nature of the Antarctic Polar Front and the Sub-tropical Front south of South Africa has been shown for the first time from these studies.

**1993** Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 26.

Suddenly there is a change. The air is colder, mist appears and the birds are more numerous and different. A glance at the ship's thermometer shows the sea temperature has suddenly dropped. These are all signs that the ship has just passed the Antarctic Polar Front, where cold water spreading out from Antarctica meets warmer upwelling water coming down from the tropics. Each year this meeting place shifts a little north or south but it is always there ... To the north are animals that, for the most part, could not survive in the Southern Ocean.

### antarctic pole

The **South Pole** (sense 1).

**1544** Alphonse, Jean, transl. Helen Wallis, quoted in Eisler, William (1995) *The furthest shore: images of Terra Australis from the Middle Ages to Captain Cook* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 26.

He describes 'la grande Java' as: 'a land which extends down near to the Antarctic pole'.

**1844** Hooker, Joseph Dalton *The botany of the Antarctic voyage of H.M. Discovery ships Erebus and Terror in the years 1839–1843, under the command of Captain Sir James Clark Ross* Reeve Bros, London, vol 1: 213.

Perennial ice descends to the level of the ocean in a latitude nearly midway between the Equator and the Antarctic Pole.

### antarctic pole of inaccessibility

The most inaccessible part of Antarctica: see **pole of inaccessibility**.

**1960** *Polar Record* 10(64): 80.

The Soviet station at the Antarctic Pole of Inaccessibility [Polyus Nedostupnosti] was established on 14 December 1958 in lat. 82° 06'S., long. 54° 58'E., 2100 km. from "Mirnyy" and at an altitude of 3720 m.

**1996** *Polar Whispers. News of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 8 (Sept): 1.

The Antarctic Pole of Inaccessibility is the furthest point from all the Antarctic coasts and is situated on the Polar Icecap in the middle of Wilkes Land.

### antarctic prion

The seabird *Pachyptila desolata* (fam. Procellariidae) which, like other prions, is grey-blue above and white underneath. It breeds on the South Shetland, South Orkney and South Sandwich Islands, at South Georgia on the northern **Antarctic Peninsula**, and on Macquarie, Heard and Auckland Islands. It has also been called a **brown-banded petrel**. See also **Auckland Island prion**, **Banks' whale-bird**, **dove prion**.

**1974** Robertson, C.J.R., ed. *Birds in New Zealand* A.H. & A.W. Reed, Wellington: 104.

The Antarctic Prion is represented only by one subspecies confined to the Auckland Islands.

**1990** Marchant, S. and Higgins, P.J., co-ordinators *Handbook of Australian, New Zealand and Antarctic birds. Vol. 1 A Ratites to Petrels* Oxford University Press, Melbourne: 526.

*Pachyptila desolata* Antarctic Prion ...The epithet Antarctic recognizes that this is the only species of prion that nests on Antarctic continent [sic] and seems to have prevailed over Dove in modern literature since the RAOU 1926 Checklist.

**1993** *The Age* [Melbourne] 3 Aug: 7.

Marksman are being trained by the Antarctic division of the Department of Environment to shoot up to 200 sea birds in a biology experiment near Australia's far-flung Heard Island. The proposed scientific kill has angered some ornithologists who say that research into the birds' diet did not justify such action ... A permit has been issued to kill up to 40 birds of five species by shotgun in waters off Heard, about 3500 kilometres south-west of Perth. The birds to be shot are diving petrels, cape petrels, Antarctic prions, fulmar prions and southern fulmars. Their stomach contents will be analysed.

### antarctic red sponge

The marine sponge *Kirkpatrickia variolosa* (Demispongiae).

**1993** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XXVIII(5): 133.

The first example of unusual chemistry to come from antarctic invertebrates appears to be the variolins from the antarctic red sponge *Kirkpatrickia variolosa*.

### antarctic regions Also antarctic region

This term can mean anything from a vague reference to southern latitudes or the region centred on the South

Pole, to a precise area — for example, the part of the globe south of 60°S (see 1994 quotation), or south of the **antarctic convergence** (see 1989 quotation). It is very similar in meaning to **Antarctica**, although *antarctic regions* is never used simply for the antarctic continent.

It is not surprising that historical use is vague, because until the existence of a southern continent was established, the area was a great unknown, but modern use of the term is also often general rather than specific. See also **frozen south**, **(south) polar regions**.

**1821** *The Literary Gazette and Journal of Belles Lettres* [London] vol 5, quoted in *Polar Record* (1946) 4(32) Jul: 392.

When in W. longitude 52°23'45", and S. latitude 61°30', on the 22nd of February the brig made a dash to the southward, determined to enter the Antarctic Regions, no ice being visible on the eastern coast, or that which they had just quitted. After a run of 40 miles, however, with a fine N.E. breeze, icebergs were encountered in immense numbers, and towards evening loose pieces of sheet-ice stopped their progress.

**11 August 1838** Instructions to Lieut. Wilkes fr Hon J.K. Paulling, US Secretary of the Navy, in Balch, Edwin Swift (1902) *Antarctica* Allen, Lane & Scott, Philadelphia: 139.

You will proceed to the port of Sydney, where adequate supplies may be obtained. From thence you will make a second attempt to penetrate within the Antarctic region, south of Van Diemen's Land, and as far west as longitude 45°E., or to Enderby's Land, making your rendezvous on your return at Kergulen's Land.

**1899** *The Geographical Journal* 13 (May): 542.

The *Belgica* had reached Montevideo on that day [sc. 4 April 1899] on her way home, having abandoned the intention of returning to the antarctic regions.

**1915** Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911–1914* William Heinemann, London, vol 1: 15.

We passed alongside a small caverned berg whose bluish-green tints called forth general admiration. In the distance others could be seen. One larger than the average stood almost in our path. It was of the flat-topped, sheer-walled type, so characteristic of the Antarctic regions; three-quarters of a mile long and half a mile wide, rising eighty feet above the sea.

**1959** Johnson, M.L., Abercrombie, Michael and Fogg, G.E. *New Biology* no. 29, Penguin Books, St Albans [UK]: 102.

To the biologist, the term 'Antarctic regions' covers much more than the continent itself, for it includes a large number of isolated islands scattered throughout the waters of the southern seas [sc. S. Georgia, S. Sandwich, Bouvet, Heard, Balleny, S. Orkneys, S. Shetlands, Kerguelen, Macquarie, and Tristan da Cunha].

**1989** May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica, 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 18.

Scattered around the Southern Ocean are a number of small islands and archipelagoes on both sides of the Antarctic Convergence, which is generally taken to be the boundary of the Antarctic region.

**1990** Stonehouse, Bernard *North Pole, South Pole: a guide to the ecology and resources of the Arctic and Antarctic* Prion, London: 13.

There are no single, definitive boundaries for either Arctic or Antarctic; each starts at its geographical pole and extends an indefinite distance towards the temperate zones. In the south is the continent of Antarctica, and the region of ocean and islands around it is the Antarctic region ...

All who need polar boundaries define their own, and different disciplines use different criteria.

**1994** Department of the Environment, Sport and Territories *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions strategic plans 1995–2000*: 24.

The Antarctic region<sup>1</sup> encompasses diverse ecosystems ranging from cold deserts to the sodden sub-Antarctic, from the pack-ice to hot salty lakes, from the small area of ice-free land to the vast oceanic regions of abyssal depth.

Footnote: The region includes the Antarctic Continent, the Southern Ocean and the sub-Antarctic islands.

**antarctic rock cod** *noun phr. and attrib.*

[Rock cod has been used since 1634 in Scottish and northern English (NOED), for a cod found on rocky seafloors or ledges.]

A marine fish of the family *Nototheniidae*; a **nototheniid** (sense 2). See also **(antarctic) cod**, **rock cod**.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes*. Southern Ocean FAO, Rome: 323.

The Antarctic rockcod catches reported in 1982/83 totalled 9791 t which is much less than those reported in the early seventies (up to 600 000 t).

**1993** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XXVIII(5): 143.

We describe the sequence of a neural beta tubulin from the antarctic rockcod, *Notothenia coriiceps neglecta*.

**antarctic rubber sponge**

The marine sponge *Latrunculia leptorhopsis* (fam. *Latrunculiidae*).

**1993** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XXVIII(5): 133.

The antarctic rubber sponge, *L. leptorhopsis*, produces cytotoxic lipids related to leucettamols A and B from the tropical *L. microrhaphis*.

**antarctic scallop**

[Scallop has been used for shellfish of the genus *Pecten* since c1440.]

The scallop *Adamussium colbecki* (fam. *Pectinidae*), a bivalve mollusc found close to the antarctic continent and in the South Orkney, South Shetland and South Sandwich Islands. It is not yet fished commercially.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes*. Southern Ocean FAO, Rome: 105.

*Adamussium colbecki* ... Antarctic scallop ... Circum-Antarctic, extending northward to the South Okney [sic] Islands only.

**1990** Berkman, P.A. in Kerry, K.R. and Hempel, G., eds *Antarctic ecosystems: ecological change and conservation* Springer-Verlag, Berlin: 281.

The endemic Antarctic scallop, *Adamussium colbecki*, is one of the "commonest" bivalves in the Antarctic benthos.

**antarctic sea star**

[Sea-star has been used for starfish since 1569.]

The sea star *Perknaster fuscus* (Asteroidea).

**1993** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XXVIII(5): 134.

We chose the antarctic sea star *Perknaster fuscus* because it is a general spongivore and the chief predator on antarctic sponges.

**antarctic shag** Also **antarctic cormorant**

[Shag has been used for cormorants since 1566.]

The large black and white cormorant *Phalacrocorax atriceps bransfieldensis* or *P. bransfieldensis* (fam. *Phalacrocoracidae*) with prominent blue rings around its eyes, more commonly called a **blue-eyed shag**. It is the only



species of shag on the Antarctic Peninsula, nesting on islands there and on other antarctic islands.

**1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 88.

Antarctic cormorants and gentoo penguins breed happily among tussock grass when it is there, but as successfully on bare or moss-covered ground in the south.

**1993** (Gerlache Strait) *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XXVIII(5): 159.

A large flight (250 +) of antarctic shags (*Phalacrocorax bransfieldensis*) was observed in November 1989.

### antarctic silverfish *Also antarctic silverside*

[Silverfish has been used for various silver-coloured fishes found in different parts of the world since the time of Dampier (1703).]

The silvery herring-like marine fish *Pleuragramma antarcticum* (fam. Nototheniidae), which grows to about 25 cm (10 in) length and occurs around Antarctica. It was briefly fished in the late 1980s. It is also known as the **antarctic herring**.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 378.

*Pleuragramma antarcticum* ... Antarctic silverfish ... Silvery, back darker ... Circum-Antarctic species in cold waters (less than +2°C), mainly close to the Antarctic Continent ... This abundant species is not yet commercially exploited.

**1987** Williams, D and Hosie, G in *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions newsletter* 50 (June): 7.

A herring-like fish (*Pleuragramma antarcticum*), commonly known as the Antarctic Silverside, is virtually the only fish found in this zone on the bottom, and then only in small numbers ... The station at the shelf edge yielded .. a few Antarctic Silverside larvae.

**1988** Williams, Richard in *Australian Natural History* 22(11) Summer: 520.

The trend towards pelagic specialisation reaches its full expression in the Antarctic Silverfish, which, although still an Antarctic cod, superficially resembles a herring in being a medium-sized (up to 30 centimetres long) streamlined fish with silvery, easily detachable scales. Its diet is even similar, feeding on small planktonic crustaceans such as copepods and larval krill. In this fish the skeleton is very much reduced, there are large intervertebral spaces, filled with a jelly-like substance, and obvious subcutaneous and intermuscular oil sacs. This species is the only wholly pelagic Antarctic fish.

**1991** Williams, D. and Nicol, S. in Abel, Kay and others *Australian and New Zealand Southern Trawl Fisheries Conference. Issues and opportunities.* Melbourne, 6-9 May 1990 Bureau of Rural Resources/Australian Bureau of Agricultural and Resource Economics, Canberra: 209.

Catches in the order of a few hundred tonnes have been made in some years of .. the Antarctic silverside *Pleuragramma antarcticum* ... The latter is one of the few pelagic antarctic cods, which grows to about 25 cm long and has a very high oil content, making it somewhat similar to pilchards from the processing point of view.

**1995** Boswell, Evelyn in *Bozeman Daily Chronicle* 9 Apr: 33. 344.

Penguins rely on krill, a shrimp-like crustacean that's the basis of the food chain in Antarctica. The skuas largely depend on Antarctic silverfish.

### antarctic skua *Also antarctic skua gull*

[Skua has been used for predatory gulls since 1678 (NOED). See also skua.]

The large, dark brown, predatory seabird *Catharacta antarctica* (fam. Laridae). Subspecies of this bird live around the antarctic continent, breeding on the Antarctic Peninsula, and in the subantarctic including the Falkland Islands, Tristan and Gough Islands. Various subspecies of this bird are known by different common names.

The use of the common name is confusing, and so is the scientific classification. The *Handbook of Australian, New Zealand and Antarctic Birds* (vol 3: 385) notes that *Catharacta* has 'complex taxonomy'. This is nothing new: an editorial note in *The Ibis* in 1926 noted that 'the races of the Antarctic Skua are in considerable confusion'.

**1879** (Inaccessible Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 124.

The Antarctic Skua [sc. *Stercorarius Antarcticus*] is very similar in appearance to the large northern Skua, of which a figure is given here in default of better. The two species were at first considered by naturalists to be identical; they differ however, especially in the structure of the bill. The Skua is of a dark brown colour, not unlike that of most typical birds of prey. We met with the bird constantly afterwards on our southern voyage.

**1901** (Cape Adare) Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 200.

The Antarctic skua gull (*Megalestris Maccormicki*) arrived on the same day as the penguins, singly at first; a few days after in great numbers. They are of a light brown colour and measure nearly five feet from tip to tip of the wings. Being of a most predatory nature, they played great havoc among the nests and young of the penguin. Indeed, they may be said to live entirely upon them during the breeding season, for, wherever there are penguins the skua gulls are not far away.

**1905** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* XV(CXIV): 59.

The following Lantern-slides were then exhibited:- By Mr. W. Eagle Clarke, a series of very fine slides taken by the Scottish National Antarctic Expedition in the South Orkneys and at Gough Island. The subjects were as follows:- ... Antarctic Skua (*Megalestris antarctica*), feeding on a dead Penguin [etc.].

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent.* The Richards Press, London: 102.

The Antarctic Skua (*Megalestris antarcticus*) has the same predatory habits as its McCormick cousin.

**1959** M.L. Johnson, Michael Abercrombie and G.E. Fogg *New biology* no. 29, Penguin Books, St Albans [UK]: 112.

There are at least four closely related forms which may be included under the name 'Antarctic skua': the great skua (*Catharacta skua skua*) ranges widely not only throughout the North Atlantic but reaches the Antarctic regions; the Chilean skua (*C. s. chilensis*) associated with South America; the McCormick skua (*C. s. maccormicki*), the most southerly ranging form of them all; and the brown skua (*C. s. lombergi*).

**1966** Robertson, C.J.R. in *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 4(8) Dec: 380.

On the Antarctic continent, banding activities have been centred on the Antarctic Skua (*Stercorarius skua maccormicki*).

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 27.

In the 1964 Ordinance several species were classed as pests. The Kelp Gull, Antarctic Skua [sc. *Catharacta antarctica*], Thin-billed Prion and the House Sparrow could be killed at any time. The first two species are alleged to do appreciable damage to sheep but it is certain that they are useful scavengers of dead sheep, particularly those thousands culled annually.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

**1992** *45th ANARE Casey yearbook 1992 ANARE, Casey: 70.*  
Antarctic Skua (or Southern Polar Skua). The Antarctic skua is smaller and paler than the Great Skua, which inhabits Macquarie Island.

**1994** *New Scientist* no 1945 (1 Oct): 11.  
France looks set to make peace with bird populations disrupted by the building of an airstrip at its Antarctic research station at Dumont d'Urville. During the course of laying the 1100-metre runway, the builders bulldozed the sites of colonies of five species of seabirds, including Adélie penguins, petrels and Antarctic skuas. Earlier this year, after part of the runway was washed into the sea, the government decided to abandon it.

### antarctic snaggletooth

The marine fish *Borostomias antarcticus* (fam. Stomiidae), which grows to about 30 cm (1 ft), and has a long barbel on its chin. The fish lives in deep water at higher latitudes of both southern (35°–65°S) and northern hemispheres.

**1994** Common, Martin F., Glover, J.C.M. and Hutter, R.H. *The fishes of Australia's southern coast* State Printer, Adelaide: 255.  
Antarctic snaggletooth ... is a relatively common predator in deep temperate midwaters.

### antarctic soft-shell clam

[Soft-shell clam has been used for the long-neck clam since 1818 (NOED).]

The clam *Laternula elliptica* (fam. Laternulidae), one of the largest and most widely distributed antarctic bivalve molluscs. It occurs all round the antarctic continent, in the Antarctic Peninsula region, and around the South Orkney, South Shetland and South Sandwich Islands, South Georgia and Kerguelen.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 98.  
*Laternula elliptica* ... Antarctic soft-shell clam ... An Antarctic species with a wide distribution.

### antarctic springtail

[Spring-tail has been used for various insects which leap or spring using their tails, since 1717. Antarctic springtail is one of many common names which is in part a direct translation of the Latin scientific name (antarcticus). In the case of this springtail, like many other antarctic creatures, 'commonness' of a common name is relative.]

The small iridescent black wingless insect *Cryptopygus antarcticus* (fam. Isotomidae). It grows to about 2 mm, and lives on the Antarctic Peninsula and on subantarctic islands. More than 20 other less well-known springtails have been found in Antarctica.

**1948** Hurlley, Frank, quoted by Greenslade, Penelope in *Papers and Proceedings of the Royal Society of Tasmania* (1990) 124(1): 42.

The ward-room is the battle field of more scientific thrill. The dining-table resembles a section of the richly verdured South Georgian terrain. Sir Ernest Shackleton, Jock Wordie, Robbie Clark, Hussey, Dr Macklin and one or two helpers, armed with forceps and magnifying lenses, bend over a heterogeneous profusion of grasses, mosses, lichens, azorellas, etc. they are searching the tangled mass, blade by blade, and leaf by leaf, for tiny springtails [etc.].]

**1988** Moss, Sanford and del Eiris, Lucia *Natural history of the Antarctic Peninsula* Columbia University Press, NY: 58.

*Cryptopygus antarcticus* is the dominant terrestrial arthropod in Antarctica and its offshore islands south of the Antarctic Convergence. For that reason it would not be incorrect to refer to it as the "Antarctic Springtail", although a formal common name does not exist.

**1989** May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica, 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 73.

[caption] The Antarctic springtail (*Cryptopygus antarcticus*) seen here under the scanning electron microscope, is a wingless insect, 1 mm in length, found mainly in the coastal habitats of the Antarctic Peninsula. It feeds on micro-fungi and algae.

### antarctic summer

[Summer has been used in the more inclusive sense, 'in contradistinction to winter', of 'the warmer half of the year' (NOED) since c825. While this sense in general is retained here, the warmer part is much less than half of the year in Antarctica.]

It is generally agreed that Antarctica has only two seasons, summer and winter, but their meanings and lengths are debated. Most commonly, an antarctic summer is the period during which sea-ice is melting, rather than freezing — about four (but sometimes from two to five) months between October and March. It is sometimes but not always equated with continuous daylight (see **day**), and is also called (**polar**) **summer**.

**1901** Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 56.

On the journey from Cape Adare southwards, some remarkably low temperatures were observed for the time of the year ... On February 19, the minimum temperature was -12°F. (-24°C.), with clear sky and light winds from the South. It is possible to form an idea from these temperatures what one would be likely to encounter in the way of cold on a sledge journey Southwards from the edge of the great ice barrier in the middle of the Antarctic summer.

**1919** Brown, R. in Cheeseman, T.F. *The vascular flora of Macquarie Island. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911–14 under the leadership of Sir Douglas Mawson. Scientific reports. Series C. — Zoology and Botany* Government Printer, Sydney, vol. VII pt 3: 9.

One could, with much truth, say that the antarctic summer is but an astronomical conception; those who have experienced it know how little reality it has! It cannot be doubted that the low summer temperature, the large amount of cloud and fog, and the constant high winds must co-operate in producing most unfavourable conditions for plant-life, and will go far towards explaining the poverty of the flora in Macquarie Island and the other islands of the subantarctic zone.

**1939** (on board the *Wyatt Earp*) Ellsworth, Lincoln *National Geographic* LXXVI(1) Jul: 129.

An Antarctic summer is but two months long.

**1975** McPherson, John G. *Footprints on a frozen continent* Hicks Smith & Sons, Sydney: 96.

During the four months of Antarctic summer the sun never sets.

**1993** Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 153.

The only thing which is certain about an Antarctic summer is that it will be very short. Particularly in the deep south, the sun's visit is all too brief and no sooner has the ice retreated to its minimum extent than it starts expanding again.

**1995** *The Age [Melbourne]* 6 Mar: 6.

Several iceshelves have disintegrated in the past few years, the Antarctic summer has grown dramatically longer, an important glacier is dissolving into the sea three times faster than had been thought, and part of the white continent is

turning green as flowers and grasses spread rapidly over it ... Already research shows that the Antarctic summer — the period during which ice melts — has grown from 60 to 90 days in little more than a decade on the Wilkins Ice Shelf. There have been similar increases all along the peninsula.

1995 Stevens, Jane E. in *The Sciences [US]* Jul-Aug: 15.

In the Antarctic summer — December through February — the continent is rimmed with a mere million and a half square miles of sea ice.

### antarctic surface water

[Surface-water has been used for the surface layer of a body of water since 1860 (NOED).]

A layer of cold, low-salinity surface water up to 250 m (820 ft) deep, which flows north to northeast from the **antarctic continent** to meet warmer **subantarctic surface water** at the **antarctic convergence**. See also **antarctic current**. This layer is also known as the **antarctic upper water**.

1933 Deacon, G.E.R. *A general account of the hydrology of the South Atlantic Ocean* Discovery Reports vol VII, issued by the Discovery Committee, Colonial Office London: 173.

The Antarctic climate in the south gives rise to a cold poorly saline surface layer of Antarctic surface water.

1954 Ealey, E.H.M. in *The Emu* 54(3) Aug: 204.

Heard Island (53°01'S, 73°23'E) lies south of the Antarctic Convergence and is surrounded, therefore, by the rich Antarctic surface water and its abundant plankton.

1959 Baker, A. de C. *The distribution and life history of Euphausia triacantha* Holt and Tattersall. Discovery Reports vol. XXIX, issued by the National Institute of Oceanography, Cambridge University Press, London: 328.

North of about 65°S the Antarctic surface water, a layer of cold water 100–250 m. in thickness, is moving to the east and north and below this lies the warm deep water which generally has a strong southerly component.

1982 Barnes, James N. *Let's save Antarctica!* Greenhouse Publications, Melbourne: 14.

Antarctica is surrounded by three continuous basins of the Pacific, Atlantic and Indian Oceans. Three major types of water masses surround the continent: Antarctic surface water, which incorporates fresh water from melting ice and snow, flows northerly until it reaches the Convergence; the warm deep layer, which is very salty and low in oxygen, originates in major oceans to the north; and Antarctic bottom water which is very salty and has high oxygen content.

1992 (Ross Ice Shelf) Campbell, David *The crystal desert* Secker & Warburg, London: 24.

Every spring the Antarctic surface water is diluted by the meltwater from the pack ice and the glacier-born icebergs that calve from the continent.

### antarctic tern

[Tern has been used for seabirds of the genus *Sterna* since 1678 (NOED).]

The seabird *Sterna vittata* (fam. Laridae), a predominantly grey bird with a black and white head. It breeds throughout the subantarctic — on Kerguelen, Crozet, Marion and Prince Edward Islands, Tristan da Cunha, Gough Island, St Paul, Amsterdam Island, Macquarie Island, the New Zealand subantarctic islands, South Georgia, South Shetlands and the South Orkneys. Breeding adults have a black cap and bright red bill, legs and feet. It is difficult to distinguish from the **arctic**

**tern**, which summers in the Southern Ocean and antarctic pack ice.

Some subspecies of this tern have distinct common names: see **kingbird**, **Macquarie Island wreathed tern**, **subantarctic tern**, **Tristan tern**, **wreathed tern**.

1948 *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* 69(1): 149.

Other sea-birds at the Snares are the Antarctic Tern (*Sterna vittata*) [etc.].

1952 Downes, M.C. in *The Emu* 52(4) Nov: 306.

During 1949 many observations were made and specimens obtained of the Antarctic Tern, *S. vittata*, by the biologists on Heard Island. In later years, it was shown to breed on the island and to migrate during the winter. The eclipse plumage includes a black bill and a white cap on the head.

1976 Ryssen, W.J. van *The birds of the Tristan da Cunha group and Gough Island* Board of Extra-mural Studies, University of Cape Town: 25.

Antarctic tern *Sterna vittata* Kingbird.

1987 National Parks and Wildlife Service, Tasmania *Macquarie Island nature reserve: visitor's handbook* NPWS, Hobart: 21.

The Antarctic tern breeds in very small numbers, probably 20–50 pairs in the reserve. Their nests are often solitary and usually on sea stacks just offshore. It is possible that introduced predators such as cats, wekas and ship rats have prevented successful breeding onshore and thereby reduced their numbers.

1992 (South Shetland Islands) *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XXVII(1) Mar: 16.

A small colony of chinstrap penguins .. occurs at Fort William .. Other breeding species include .. up to 1,000 antarctic terns (*Sterna vittata*) in nine colonies.

### antarctic toothfish

The fish *Dissostichus mawsoni*: see **giant antarctic cod**.

1979 Lovering, J.F. and Prescott, J.R.V. *Last of lands ... Antarctica* Melbourne University Press, Parkville: 66.

*Dissostichus* [sic] *mawsoni* Antarctic tooth fish.

1985 Kock, Karl-Hermann in Bonner, W.N. and Walton, D.W.H., eds *Key environments. Antarctica* Pergamon Press, Oxford: 189.

By far the biggest species [of Antarctic fish] are the Patagonian and Antarctic toothfish (*Dissostichus eleginoides*, *D. mawsoni*).

### Antarctic Treaty

A treaty concerning the use of Antarctica, brought into force in 1961. The treaty covers all land, sea and ice shelves but not open seas, south of 60°S, and had 12 original signatories (Argentina, Australia, Belgium, Chile, France, Japan, New Zealand, Norway, South Africa, the Soviet Union, United Kingdom and United States). It puts any territorial claims in abeyance, agrees on peaceful use of the continent, forbids nuclear testing and nuclear waste disposal, and allows for freedom of scientific research. A 1991 addition banned exploration for oil and minerals in the region for 50 years.

1968 Dukert, Joseph M. *This is Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 79.

In the case of Antarctica, the spirit of the IGY led to the signing of a formal treaty which is scheduled to last at least until 1989. Peaceful cooperation is promised by 12 nations,

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

including Australia, New Zealand, the United Kingdom, the United States and the Soviet Union. The other countries which agreed to the treaty are Argentina, Belgium, Chile, France, Japan, Norway and the Union of South Africa.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 29.

We stood before the computer panel on the chart table and watched 59°59.99' become 60°00.00'. We were formally in the Antarctic, and we shook hands. Not, mind you, within the Antarctic Circle — that is another matter. But we were within the area defined by the member nations of the Antarctic Treaty as being, for their purposes, the Antarctic. For instance, from this point on we could not throw any rubbish overboard, and it all had to be stored until our journey back homewards reached this point.

**1991** *New Scientist* 130 no 1774 (22 June): 25.

The Antarctic Peninsula ... is the best demonstration of the successes and failures of the Antarctic Treaty, which has governed the continent for 30 years this month.

## Antarctic Treaty nation

A country which has signed the **Antarctic Treaty**.

**7 Nov 1974** *The Age [Melbourne]* quoted in *Aurora* (1975) Sept: 19.

The discovery of oil or gas would only complicate their studies, but it could not be ignored and would lead to problems for the Antarctic treaty nations.

**1989** Gell, Rob *Antarctica: future of a frozen wilderness* Houghton Mifflin Australia, Melbourne: 7.

There are now fifty bases, representing twenty Antarctic Treaty nations, established in the Antarctic.

## antarctic trough

[Trough has been used for a line or elongated region of lower barometric pressure between two regions of higher pressure since 1882 (NOED).]

A belt of low atmospheric pressure around Antarctica (see 1985 quotation).

**1985** Reader's Digest *Antarctica. Great stories from the frozen continent* RD, Sydney: 14.

The depressions approach, and usually dissipate, near the coast of Antarctica where they help to cause a permanent ring of low pressure around the continent at about 60°S, known as the Antarctic Trough.

## antarctic upper water

A layer of cold surface water flowing north from Antarctica, more commonly called **antarctic surface water**.

**1971** van Zinderen Bakker, E.M.Sr., Winterbottom, J.M. (eds) and Dyer, R.A. *Marion and Prince Edward Islands: report on the South African biological and geological expedition 1965–66* A.A. Balkema, Cape Town: 6.

The cold Antarctic Upper Water, which is nearest to the Antarctic Continent, reaches as far north as 2° latitude south of Marion.

**1985** Phillpot, H.R. in Bonner, W.N. and Walton, D.W.H., eds *Key environments. Antarctica* Pergamon Press, Oxford: 23.

The Antarctic Convergence ... marks the area in which Antarctic upper water sinks below and mixes with warmer sub-Antarctic surface water.

## antarctic vortex

[Vortex has been used for a violent eddy of air since before 1700 (NOED).]

## The polar vortex.

**1994** *Antarctic Society of Australia newsletter* no 39 (Dec): 15.

Satellite observations show a strong spatial and temporal correlation of ClO abundances with ozone depletion in the Antarctic vortex.

## antarctic wastes Also antarctic waste

[Waste has been used for wild or desolate regions since about 1200 (NOED). Many terms, including this one, reflect a view of Antarctica as unused and unusable.]

## The antarctic regions.

**1931** O'Brien, John S. *By dog sled for Byrd: 1600 miles across Antarctic ice* Thomas S. Rockwell, Chicago: 17.

Here, near the northern edge of the great Ross Barrier, we have been doing the slow, hard preparatory work that must precede any trip out into the Antarctic wastes.

**1949** Wiggins, Arch R. *Knights of the blizzard* Salvationist Publishing and Supplies, London: 87.

What memories flashed across his mind as the ear-splitting blast rolled across the Antarctic waste!

**1969** *The Polar Times [USA]* no 69 (Dec): 31.

A member of South Africa's 10th expedition to the South Pole fell to his death down a precipice in the Antarctic wastes 100 miles from his base at Sanae.

**1999** *Daily Nation [Nairobi]* 17 Feb: VIII.

From October to March the sun never sets on the frozen Antarctic wastes.

## antarctic waters

[Waters has been used for maritime tracts belonging to a particular nation, since 1659 (NOED).]

The waters surrounding the antarctic continent. Different authors use this term with precise but different meanings: south of the **antarctic convergence**, or of the latitudes 40°, 55° or 60°S.

**1899** *The Geographical Journal [London]* 13 (May): 643.

The second section of the cruise in antarctic waters may be looked upon as the most successful part of the expedition. Whether it was because the choice of the route brought us into the calm belt between the west-wind zone and the more southerly east-wind region, or whether fortune favoured us, the fact remains that the expedition found the most exceptionally fine weather.

**1908** Tattersall in *National Antarctic Expedition 1901–1904. Natural history vol IV Zoology (various invertebrata)* British Museum, London: 1.

Dana (1852) in his great work on Crustacea records two species from Antarctic waters (i.e., south of lat. 60°S.).

**1938** *National Geographic* LXXIV(2) Aug: 228.

Just why the Wilson's petrels check their northward movement at about latitude 50° north is another mystery of the ocean. They come from icy Antarctic waters; yet they do not penetrate the similarly cold regions of the north.

**1941** *Polar Record* 3(22) July: 454.

After the whale-oil crisis of 1931 all the Norwegian and all but one of the English whaling companies formed a production cartel for the seasons 1932–33 and 1933–34 ... The Norwegian–British arrangements fell short of their aim, for increased efficiency offset the imposed restrictions. Moreover, the restrictions were limited to Antarctic waters south of Lat. 40°S., so that whalers could pursue the whales into warmer seas at any time, without being bound by the regulations.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

**1978** Lanzerotti, L.J. and Park, C.G. eds *Upper atmosphere research in Antarctica* American Geophysical Union Antarctic Research Series no 29, Washington DC: 4.

Campbell Island (New Zealand), Macquarie Island (Australia), and Ile Kerguelen (France) in the antarctic waters have made significant research contributions.

**1985** Kock, Karl-Hermann in Bonner, W.N. and Walton, D.W.H., eds *Key environments: Antarctica* Pergamon Press, Oxford: 188.

In addition to many endemic fish preying on krill a considerable number of species migrate from north of the Convergence into Antarctic waters in summer to feed on krill.

**1991** Bradshaw, Margaret *Canterbury Museum's Antarctica: a supplement to the displays at Canterbury Museum* Canterbury Museum, Christchurch: 16.

When *Euphausia superba*, the red shrimp-like crustacean commonly called krill, shows up in the ocean, you can be sure you have entered Antarctic waters.

**1995** Menkhorst, Peter W., ed. *Mammals of Victoria: distribution, ecology and conservation* Oxford University Press, Melbourne: 303.

Humpbacks feed by gulping large mouthfuls of seawater containing prey organisms, which are retained in the mouth by fringed rows of baleen plates attached on either side of the upper jaw. Their diet in Antarctic waters, south of about 55°S, is almost exclusively antarctic krill, *Euphausia superba*.

### antarctic whaling *noun phr. and attrib.*

The whaling industry which developed in antarctic regions in the twentieth century, beginning in 1904 and taking almost entirely **humpback whales** for the first decade and more. The International Whaling Commission was established in 1946 to conserve whale stocks, but whale populations continued to fall.

**1894** Burn Murdoch, W.G. *From Edinburgh to the Antarctic* Longmans, Green and Co, London: 173.

To the Company's shareholders .. an Antarctic whaling-station would probably mean a loss.

**1935** Christensen, Lars, transl. fr Norwegian by Jayne, E.M.G. *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Staughton, London: 54.

All these factory-ships had been on Antarctic whaling-grounds between about 40° and 50° E. since November.

**1979** Pownall, Peter and Caton, Albert in *Australian Fisheries* 38(5) May: 17.

The last major development of whaling techniques occurred with the fitting out of the Norwegian pelagic whaling factory ship *Sir James Clark Ross* in 1923. This operated in the Antarctic, hauling the whales on board through a stern chute for flensing on deck, thereby overcoming one of the main problems that had hampered the processing of whales at sea. Subsequently the great era of Antarctic whaling developed, with Britain, Japan and Germany joining Norway by 1937, and after World War II by the Soviet Union.

**1982** Tønnessen, J.N. and Johnsen, A.O. *The history of modern whaling* C. Hurst and Co, London/Australian National University Press, Canberra: 157.

The criterion for Antarctic whaling will inevitably have to be that it was carried on in practically daily contact with the ice.

**1992** *Age* [Melbourne] 11 Apr: Extra 3.

Japan has been an Antarctic whaling nation since 1937.

### antarctic whelk

[Whelk is recorded for marine gastropod molluscs of the genus *Buccinum* with a turbinate shell, since about 725 (NOED).]

The gastropod mollusc *Neobuccinum eatoni* (fam. Buccinidae), which occurs only in antarctic and subantarctic waters. It grows to about 70 mm (3 in) long.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes* FAO, Rome: 109.

*Neobuccinum eatoni* ... Antarctic whelk ... Wide Antarctic distribution, as far north as Kerguelen Islands.

### antarctic winter *noun phr. and attrib.*

[Winter in the sense of the colder half of the year (in contradistinction to 'summer') is recorded from c888 (NOED); this is a more restricted use of the word.]

The winter in Antarctica, a season of variable length: see (**polar**) winter, and see also **antarctic summer**.

**1849** Cooper, James Fenimore *The sea lions; or, the lost sealers* Richard Bentley, London, vol. III: 169.

"Not a timber of mine shall be touched. I do not believe one-half of these stories about the antarctic winter."

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 133.

We were now (June) in the middle of the Antarctic winter, which, by the way, is longer than the Arctic. In his annual round the sun carries a week (7 days) longer on the north than he does on the south side of the equator, and consequently, in the former case, the winter is longer than in the latter. This is due to the earth being, during the Antarctic winter, at its greatest distance from the sun (aphelion) when it moves more slowly in its orbit.

**28 Apr 1933** Christensen, Lars, transl. fr Norwegian by Jayne, E.M.G. (1935) *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Staughton, London: 41.

She [sc. the *Norvegia*] used to lie alongside the old yacht jetty near the Clock Tower during the Antarctic winter, while shipwrights repaired her wounds and strengthened her for further battles with the ice.

**1939** Byrd, Richard E. *Alone* Reader's Union Ltd and Putnam & Co Ltd, London: 3.

Bolling Advance Weather Base, which I manned alone during the Antarctic winter night of 1934, was planted in the dark immensity of the Ross Ice Barrier.

**1957** Anderson, W. Ellery *Expedition south* Evans Brothers, London: 145.

One day I saw the temperature rise from -10°F to +50°F. It was fine, so we took off our clothes and sun-bathed, and I remember Joe Lewis getting a touch of sun-stroke — in the middle of the Antarctic winter.

**1991** Bainbridge, Beryl *The birthday boys* Duckworth, London: 31. Lashly and me did our best to put the Belgian right, spelling out the urgency of establishing a base before the Antarctic winter set in — being ignorant of the South he continued to belly-ache, so much so I offered to pitch him overboard.

### antarctic wood fur *Also simply wood fur*

A fuzzy surface on exposed wood, resulting from intense cold and wind fraying the fibres of the wood.

**1986** *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions newsletter* 47 (Sept): 9.

Both wooden plaques are suffering from a unique form of deterioration known as 'Antarctic wood fur' which is caused by the wood fibres breaking down in the cold and windy environment.

**1986** Hughes, Janet *Mawson's huts: interim conservation report vol 6*. Materials conservation issues Unpublished report: 10.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

'Antarctic wood fur' .. is the profound separation and bleaching of wood fibres at the surface to form a furry appearance and loss of surface detail.

**1990** (Borchgrevink's hut, Cape Adare) Harrowfield, D.L. in *New Zealand Antarctic Record* 3(2) Jun: 8.

All of the wooden cases were badly damaged from water freezing in boards, which then split. "Wood fur" reported at Mawson's hut, Commonwealth Bay, was present.

**antarcticity** *adjective*

Belonging to or appropriate in Antarctica.

**1994** *Night Times* [Scott Base winterers magazine] Mar: [2].

"Steve" was found to be a cool mountaineering/Antarcticity sort of name.

**antartick**

[The spelling reflects a common and long-established pronunciation.]

**The Antarctic** (*noun*, sense 2).

**1949** Villiers, Alan *Whalers of the midnight sun* Angus & Robertson, Sydney: 10.

"They ain't goin' ter 'unt for whales 'ere; they're goin' ter the Antartick!"

**anti-antarctic** *adjective*

Having an opposition to the notions of things antarctic.

**23 Dec 1997** (Rothera station) Maxwell Davies, Peter [source: <http://www.maxopus.com/lists/antarcti.htm>, accessed 12 Mar 1999]

Eventually the rock music pulsing through the thin walls drives me to .. a windowless cubicle of a "laboratory," where the incessant tramping across the ceiling, the clamour of voices from all around and about, and the noises of machinery are preferable. Sudden subversive thoughts of an Anti-Antarctic symphony, featuring the antiphonal bleeps, revs, roars and skids of frenzied vehicles, a scherzo caricaturing broody scientific boffins on closely adjacent nests etc.].

**Antipodes Islands**

[The term *antipodes* has been used in *British English* since 1549 for a region 'directly opposite to our own' (NOED).]

The Antipodes Islands, a small group of uninhabited islands at about 49°45'S, 178°40'E, lie 870 km (540 miles) southeast of New Zealand. The islands and southeast England are more or less opposite each other on the globe, and they were named the 'Penantipodes' in March 1800 by Captain Henry Waterhouse on HMS *Reliance*.

They are a reserve of New Zealand, and landing there is both difficult and not permitted. The islands consist of one main island and several smaller islands and rocks.

**Antipodes Island parakeet** *Also* **Antipodes parakeet**

[Parakeet has been used since 1581 for a bird of the parrot family, esp. a smaller one (NOED).]

The green parrot *Cyanoramphus unicolor* (fam. *Platycercidae*), one of two parakeets which live only on the sub-

antarctic Antipodes Island group. It has a blue wing-flash, and its entirely green head distinguishes it from the **red-crowned parakeet**.

[1879 Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 211.

In Antipodes Island, which lies south-east of New Zealand and a little nearer the South Pole than Kerguelen's Land, parakeets are abundant, although the island is covered with tussock, and without trees.]

**1892** [source: DNZE] *Transactions of the New Zealand Institute* XXIV: 64.

*Platycercus unicolor*. (The Antipodes Island Parakeet.)

**1909** Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington: xxxiv.

During the expedition, Dr. L. Cockayne, acting under instructions from the Government, secured twelve specimens each of .. the Antipodes Island parakeet (*Cyanoramphus unicolor*), and the Auckland Island parakeet (*C. novaeseelandiae*).

**1951** Powell, A.W.B. *Native animals of New Zealand* Auckland Museum, Auckland: 85.

Three other parakeets are native to New Zealand — the yellow-fronted, the orange-fronted, and the Antipodes Island Parakeet.

**1979** Peterson, Roger Tory *Penguins* Houghton Mifflin Co., Boston: 176.

The Antipodes Island parakeet *Cyanoramphus unicolor*, actually depends to some extent on the penguin colonies, picking bits of nourishment from the carcasses and dried skins of dead penguins and from the eggs broken by skuas.

**4 Dec 1998** Barham, Peter <http://teddy.phy.bris.ac.uk/~pjb/antarctica>: ch 5.

The particular highlight (for birders) is supposed to be the Antipodes Parakeets — these are a bit far south for parakeets. I saw at least two pairs of these not very interesting birds.

**Antipodes Island pipit** *Also* **Antipodes pipit**

The light brown bird *Anthus novaeseelandiae steindachneri* (fam. *Motacillidae*), which lives on New Zealand's Antipodes Islands group. Its normal behaviour, typical of all pipits, is to keep ahead of walkers on a track (hence the expression 'pipit at the post').

**1909** Waite, Edgar R. in Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington: 553.

*Anthus steindachneri*, Reischek. (Antipodes Island pipit.) .. The pipits are extremely tame, and run almost at one's feet. I found them to be most numerous on the beach, feeding probably upon Amphipoda and other small creatures peopling the broad *Durvillaea* which is washed ever to and fro by the waves.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 65.

The pale brown Antipodes pipit, with dull yellow striped markings, of a subspecies endemic to the island, picks insects, flies, and grubs from among the penguin excreta and crevices in the rock. Andreas Reischek, referring to the pipit as a ground lark, "named it *Anthus [novaeseelandiae] steindachneri*, after Dr Franz von Steindachner, Privy Counsellor, and Director of the Imperial Museum at Vienna, in recognition of his kindness to me".



**Antipodes Island red-fronted parakeet** *see*  
**Antipodes red-crowned parakeet**

**Antipodes Island snipe**

[Snipe has been used for migratory birds with a long straight bill, frequenting marshy places, since about 1325 (NOED).]

The small barred dark to pale brown wading bird *Coenocorypha aucklandica meinertzhagenae* (fam. Scolopacidae). This bird, which has a long bill and short legs, lives only on the Antipodes Island group, and is a subspecies of the bird sometimes called the **subantarctic snipe**. See also **snipe 2**.

**[20 Dec 1893** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* III(XIII): xi. In No. IX. of the Bulletin Canon Tristram described a new Snipe from the Snares under the name of *Gallinago huegeli*, and mentioned that the Snipe from Antipodes Island would probably also be new. Having received a specimen from that locality, I find Canon Tristram's surmise to be right, and have much pleasure in naming the species after him *Gallinago tristramis*, Rothschild, sp. n. The new species is nearest in pattern to *G. aucklandica*, Gray, but differs from its three allies in its deeper rufous-brown colour and its much larger size. Under surface brownish buff, with the flanks barred ... Hab. Antipodes Island.]

**1955** [source: DNZE] Oliver *New Zealand birds*: 278. The Antipodes Island Snipe was first collected by Fairchild in 1887.

**[1974** Robertson, C.J.R., ed. *Birds in New Zealand* A.H. & A.W. Reed, Wellington: 90.

The Snipes are represented by five subspecies, one each for the Stewart, Chatham, Snares, Antipodes and Auckland Islands. Owing to their habits being so retiring and their isolated habitats it is difficult to study them.]

**1995** Department of Conservation *Draft conservation management strategy — subantarctic islands* Southland Conservancy Conservation Management Planning series no 6, Dept Conservation, NZ: [22].

Four endemic bird species are present: Antipodes Island snipe, pipit, parakeet and red-crowned parakeet.

**Antipodes red-crowned parakeet** *Also*  
**Antipodes Island red-fronted parakeet**

The parakeet *Cyanoramphus novaeseelandiae hochstetteri*, also called **Reischek's parakeet**.

**1955** [source: DNZE] Oliver *New Zealand birds*: 560. The food of the Antipodes Island red-fronted Parakeet consists mainly of plant substances.

**1985** [source: DNZE] *Reader's Digest book of New Zealand birds*: 248.

*C. n. hochstetteri* Antipodes red-crowned parakeet.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 181.

[caption] Ecologist Rowley Taylor .. disentangles an Antipodes red-crowned parakeet from his net. Note the blood on his finger!

**apple hut** *Aust. Often simply apple*

[The earliest (1983) quotation below probably refers to a **googie hut**, a larger hut mounted on a stand, whereas apples are erected directly on the ground.]

A round, usu. red, prefabricated fibreglass field hut, designed in Tasmania for Antarctic use, and called by

its maker Malcolm Wallhead the 'igloo satellite cabin'. These insulated huts can be transported whole by helicopter or assembled easily on-site, and provide almost instant shelter, sleeping two or three in comfort. See also **melon hut**, **zucchini**.

**1983** (Magnetic Island) *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions newsletter* no 32 (Dec): 150.

The apple hut, a fibreglass dome for residing in, has been mounted on its pedestal, carried aloft up the drift by 400 strong men and 2 bull whips.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 217.

They took with them their own accommodation, slung under the helicopters, three prefabricated 'apple' huts and two 'melon' huts. (The 'apples' look like apples and are designed and built in Tasmania.)

**1991** Bowden, Tim *Antarctica and back in sixty days* Australian Broadcasting Corporation, Sydney: 163. Law Base is one hut and a cluster of Apples.

**aptenodytid penguin**

[The bird genus *Aptenodytes* was named by Miller (*Var. Subj. Nat. Hist.* 1788 pl. 23), from the Greek ἀπτηνν winged and δῦτης a diver. It refers to the modified wings of this and all other penguins, which render it incapable of flight but well-adapted to swimming and diving.]

A penguin of the genus *Aptenodytes*; there are two species, the **king penguin** and **emperor penguin**.

**1968** Stonehouse, Bernard *Penguins: the World of Animals series* Arthur Barker, London/Golden Press, NY: 69.

Aptenodytid penguins, which lay only one egg, begin their incubation routine within minutes, the male taking the egg firmly, holding it on his feet, and adopting a characteristic crouching attitude.

**arctic** *noun and adjective*

[Arctic originally meaning 'of the north pole or north polar regions' (used since about 1391: NOED), is here applied to the south polar regions.]

(Belonging in, originating in or characterising) either of the polar regions; more particularly, and more remarkably, applying to the south polar regions, that is, **antarctic** (*adj* 2).

**19 Nov 1820** (Macquarie Island) Bellingshausen, Thaddeus in Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. (1945) *The voyage of Captain Bellingshausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819–1821* Hakluyt Society, London, vol II: 370.

To our surprise we saw a quantity of small parakeets, all belonging to one species, on this semi-Arctic island.

**23 Dec 1833** Darwin, Charles (1901) *Journal of researches into the natural history and geology of the countries visited during the voyage round the world of H.M.S. 'Beagle' under command of Captain Fitz Roy, R.N.*, 2nd edn, John Murray, London: 173.

It appears from the character of the fossils in Europe, Asia, Australia, and in North and South America that those conditions which favour the life of the larger quadrupeds were lately co-extensive with the world: what those conditions were, no one has yet even conjectured. It could hardly have been a change of temperature, which at about the same time destroyed the inhabitants of tropical, temperate, and arctic latitudes on both sides of the globe.

**1879** (Inaccessible Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 124.



## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

The Antarctic Skua is very similar in appearance to the large northern Skua ... We met with the bird constantly afterwards on our southern voyage, as far down even as the Arctic Circle; and a specimen was noticed by Ross further south still, in Possession Island.

**22 Dec 1897** Cook, Frederick A. (1980 repr.) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898-1899* McGill-Queen's University Press, Montreal: 84.

As this first chapter in the history of the Magellan Strait closed, its importance also vanished, with the discovery of the passage around Cape Horn by the Dutch navigators Schouten and Le Maire; and for two hundred and fifty years following the region was left to the possession of the arctic life with which nature had stocked it.

**20 Aug 1913** Capt. J. Davis in *The Register [Adelaide]* LXXVII no. 20,834: 13.

"I expect to return to the arctic to pick up Dr. Mawson in December," he said.

**1922** (Cape Evans) Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Penguin Books Ltd, Picador, London: 182.

In our case the best thing was not at all bad, for the hut, as Arctic huts go, was as palatial as is the Ritz, as hotels go.

**1930** (Bay of Whales, Dec 1928) Byrd, Richard Evelyn in *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 140.

The sky of pale, Arctic blue, tinged with gray toward the horizon; the interminable monotony of the ice, eroded in grotesque shapes, broken by the open leads through which we were sailing; occasional fat, sleepy seals basking in the sun, and the Antarctic birds winging swiftly in silent flight — all gave a false sense of serenity ... We sailed on to the Bay of Whales, arriving there in Arctic midsummer, and found that surprisingly little of the ice had gone out.

**1957** *Ross Sea Committee, Trans-Antarctic Expedition: newsletter [Wellington]* no 11 (Jan): 5.

Because the "Magga Dan" will have to navigate through all waters her hold equipment provides for cooling in tropical regions, while she has also a heating installation, which keeps her holds frost-proof under Arctic conditions.

**1979** Lewis, David *Voyage to the ice. The Antarctic expedition of Solo* Australian Broadcasting Commission/Wm Collins Sons & Co: 27.

Could any crew be expected to tolerate such overcrowding in arctic conditions for something like three months?

**1987** Bates, Robert L. and Jackson, Julia A., eds *Glossary of geology, 3rd edn* American Geological Institute, Alexandria: 35.

*Arctic, adj.* Said of a climate in which the mean temperature of the coldest month is less than 0°C, and the mean temperature for the warmest month is below 10°C.

### Arctics *noun*

[A further instance of expanded use of the word.]

The polar regions of the earth.

**1962** Henderson, Jim *One foot at the Pole* Whitcombe & Tombs, Christchurch: 137.

'Will men be interested and busy in the polar areas to the end of this century and beyond?'

'Oh yes, definitely. We've only begun to scratch the surface in the Arctics.'

### arctic tern

[Tern has been used for seabirds of the genus *Sterna* since 1678 (NOED). The bird breeds and summers in the Arctic.]

The seabird *Sterna paradisaea* (formerly *S. macrura*; fam. Laridae), a grey and white bird with black head markings and a red bill. It makes an extraordinary migration

each year, breeding in the Arctic and flying south to spend the southern summer on the edges of the antarctic pack ice, where it is difficult to distinguish from the **antarctic tern**.

**1899** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* VIII(LX): xxxvii.

Two nests .. of the Arctic Tern (*Sterna macrura*).

**1906** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* XIX(CXXVIII): 18.

Mr. W. Eagle Clarke showed specimens of the Terns obtained by the Scottish National Antarctic Expedition in the Weddell Sea and off the Antarctic Continent, where great numbers were observed as far south as 74°. All were typical Arctic Terns (*Sterna macrura*) — a species the latitudinal range of which was thereby proved to be greater than that of any other bird, extending as it does from 82°N. in summer to 74°S or more in our winter.

**1955** (Heard Island) Dalziel, Ken *Penguin road* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 57.

The Arctic tern sees more daylight than any other creature on earth. During their journeys to the perpetually ice-bound land south of us we on Heard Island often saw them resting. They had grey backs, wings measuring about eighteen inches from tip to tip, white underparts and tail, and bright red feet.

**1957** Anderson, W. Ellery *Expedition south* Evans Brothers, London: 105.

Arctic terns came at us, too, like large white swallows with scarlet beaks, with a shrill staccato chatter like machine guns as they swooped just above our heads.

**1968** Herbert, Wally *A world of men: exploration in Antarctica* Eyre & Spottiswoode, London: 68.

The Arctic Terns arrived, pointing their red beaks threateningly at us as they circled and squawked overhead. They had migrated 13,000 miles, but arrived looking bloated on the krill they found when they reached the pack ice. The Greenland flocks migrate in late August across the Atlantic to southern Europe without rest, stops, or food; then after a short period of recuperation, continue their journey down the west coast of Africa, keeping well out to sea and flying seldom more than a hundred feet above the water. Some go south from the Cape into the pack ice and on farther to the Antarctic coastline; while others follow the equatorial currents across the Atlantic, then fly down the east coast of South America to the Graham Land peninsula.

**1993** Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 136.

The Arctic tern's journeys are extraordinary feats of endurance and make it all the more remarkable that the Antarctic tern, which is almost indistinguishable from its Arctic cousin, hardly migrates at all.

### area of inaccessibility *see* pole of inaccessibility

### Arnoux's beaked whale *Also* Arnoux's whale

[Louis Jules Arnoux (1814-68) was ship's surgeon on the vessel *Rhin* which brought the original specimen used to describe with a scientific name (the 'type specimen') from New Zealand to France in 1846.]

The velvety blue-black, toothed whale *Berardius arnuxii* (fam. Ziphiidae), which grows to about 9 m (30 ft) long. It lives as far south as the edge of the antarctic pack ice, where it feeds on squid.

**[1902** Beddard, Frank Evers *Mammalia. The Cambridge Natural History* vol X Macmillan and Co, London: 368.

*B. arnuxii*, from the seas of New Zealand, is the only species of this genus which is well known. It is 30 or 32 feet in



length, and is of a velvety black colour, with a greyish belly. Instead of lowing like a cow, this Whale has been described as "bellowing like a bull"! ... Like other Ziphioids, *Berardius* feeds mainly, if not entirely, upon cuttle-fish, a prey eminently suited to their almost toothless mouths.]

**1943** Hydrographic Office, US Navy Department *Sailing directions for Antarctica*. H.O. no 138 Hydrographic Office, Washington: 55.

Arnoux's whale (*Berardius arnouxii*). Length up to 40 feet. Teeth usually confined to one pair of very pointed and compressed teeth toward the tip of the lower jaw. Black in color.

**1979** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XIV (Jun): 8.

The following are designated native mammals: .. Whales: Arnoux's Beaked *Berardius arnouxii* [etc.]

**1993** Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 61.

The hourglass dolphin is the only small dolphin found in the south ... Larger are Arnoux's beaked whale, up to 9.75 metres long, and the southern bottlenosed whale, reaching 7.5 metres long. These whales, which are almost impossible to tell apart at sea, range as far south as the ice edge. They both dive for their food, preying almost exclusively on deep-water squid.

### as the skua (gull) flies *Humorous*

[Variant of as the crow flies, an expression used in British English since 1810 (NOED).]

In a straight line.

**1936** Byrd, Richard E. *Antarctic discovery* Putnam, London: 78.

Little America, hidden by the barrier shoulder north of Ver-Sur-Mer Inlet, was about three miles, as the skua gull flies, from the ship's berth.

**1 Feb 1959 (1963)** Béchervaise, John *Blizzard and fire: a year at Mawson, Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 40.

It was time for us to think of the next relief at Mawson, three hundred and fifty miles round the coast — as the skua flies.

**1963** McKenzie, Douglas *Opposite poles* Robert Hale & Co, London/Whitcombe & Tombs, New Zealand: 63.

The tractors were six hundred and twenty trail-miles from Scott Base but, because of the vast loop they had been obliged to take to climb through the mountains from the ice shelf to the plateau, they were not much more than half this distance from Scott as the skua gull flies.

**1988** Butler, Rowan *Breaking the ice* Albatross Books, Sydney: 78.

I decided to test out the new mast design for the automatic weather stations by erecting one inland at Lanyon Junction, fifteen kilometres as the skua flies from Casey.

### Atlantic petrel

The seabird *Pterodroma incerta* (fam. Procellariidae), a bird of the South Atlantic which breeds only on Gough Island and the Tristan da Cunha group. It is dark brown on the back and upperparts, with a white breast and belly, and is also called **Schlegel's petrel** and the **white-breasted black eagle**.

**1957** Holgersen, Holger *Ornithology of the "Brategg" Expedition. Scientific results of the "Brategg" Expedition 1947-48*, no. 4 Publikasjon nr. 21. Kommandør Chr. Christensens Hvalfangstmuseum, Sandefjord: 48.

Shoals of fish attracted great numbers of dolphins and birds and among the latter were quite a lot of Atlantic Petrels, yet only singly.

**1975** Watson, George E. *Birds of the Antarctic and subantarctic. Antarctic Research Series* American Geophysical Union, Washington: 131.

The Atlantic petrel tends to follow ships.

**1994** Cooper, John and Ryan, Peter G. *Management plan for the Gough Island wildlife reserve* Government of Tristan da Cunha, Edinburgh, Tristan da Cunha: 19.

Two species, the Atlantic Petrel *Pterodroma incerta* and Great Shearwater *Puffinus gravis*, are wholly or virtually restricted as breeding species to the Tristan-Gough group of islands. Virtually the entire population of Atlantic Petrels breeds at Gough Island, with only a few hundred pairs remaining at Tristan (where they have been greatly reduced by human consumption in the past).

### Auckland Islands

The Auckland Islands are a group of six uninhabited subantarctic volcanic islands lie about 375 km (235 miles) south of New Zealand, at 50°40'S, 166°10'E. The islands, which have given their name to a number of birds, were discovered in 1806 by Captain Abraham Bristow in the *Ocean*, and named *Lord Auckland's Group* after William Eden (1744-1814), first Baron Auckland.

The islands were named well before the New Zealand city of Auckland, which was founded in 1840. They were an early 19th century sealing and later whaling base, although when in 1849 the Enderby family tried to establish a settlement there (the Southern Whale Fishery company), it was unsuccessful. Today the islands are visited by scientists and by tourist ships.

### Auckland Island flightless teal *Also Auckland Island (flightless) duck, Auckland Island teal*

The small duck *Anas aucklandica* (formerly *Nesonetta aucklandica*) (fam. Anatidae), a rare wildfowl occurring only on offshore islands of the Auckland Islands. The bird has a dark brown back and chestnut to pale underside. Although flightless, it uses its small wings to skitter over water.

**[19 Jan 1864** (Carnley Harbour, Auckland Islands) Musgrave, Thomas in Shillinglaw, John J., ed. (1866) *Castaway on the Auckland Islands: a narrative of the wreck of the "Grafton" and of the escape of the crew after twenty months suffering* Lockwood and Co., London: 8.

While we were up the western arm of the harbour I shot a dozen of widgeon and young ducks.]

**1888** Buller, Sir Walter Lawry *A history of the birds of New Zealand*, 2nd edn Published by the author, Westminster London, vol II: 263.

*Nesonetta aucklandica*. (Auckland-Island duck.) ... The type of this species in the British Museum (which was brought home by the Antarctic Expedition) is slightly larger, and differs somewhat in its coloration, the plumage of the shoulders and the sides of the body being more or less vermiculated. The above description and the accompanying figure are taken from the only specimen of this bird in my collection (an adult male), which was brought from the Auckland Islands by Mr. Burton, of the Colonial Museum, in May 1880 ... Nothing is at present known of its habits, except that, owing to the abbreviated form of its wings, it is quite incapable of flight.

**1909** Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington, vol I: xxxiv. During the expedition, Dr. L. Cockayne, acting under instructions from the Government, secured twelve specimens each

of the Auckland Island flightless duck (*Nesonetta aucklandica*), the Antipodes Island parrakeet (*Cyanoramphus unicolor*), and the Auckland Island parrakeet (*C. novae-zelandiae*). These were afterwards liberated on the native birds' sanctuary on Kapiti Island, where, according to the last reports, they were doing well.

**1950** Scott, Peter *Key to the wildfowl of the world* Severn Wildfowl Trust, Slimbridge, Gloucestershire: [20].

Auckland Island flightless teal *Anas aucklandica aucklandica*. Auckland Islands (400 miles south of New Zealand). Lately reported to be holding its own satisfactorily.

**1970** Kinsky, F.C. *Annotated checklist of the birds of New Zealand including the Ross Dependency* A.H. & A.W. Reed Ltd, Wellington: 38.

*Anas aucklandica aucklandica* .. Auckland Island Teal (Flightless Duck). Auckland Islands, chiefly confined to Enderby, Rose, Ocean, Ewing, Disappointment and Adams Islands.

**1979** Peterson, Roger Tory *Penguins* Houghton Mifflin Co., Boston: 69.

In January 1971, Sir Peter Scott and I were in a Zodiac looking for the rare Auckland teal among the shores of Enderby Island in the Auckland.

**1995** Department of Conservation *Draft conservation management strategy — subantarctic islands* Southland Conservancy Conservation Management Planning series no 6, Department of Conservation, NZ: 52.

A study of the Auckland Island flightless teal on the islands of the Port Ross area.

## Auckland Island lark

[Lark has been used for birds resembling those of the fam. *Alaudidae*, since 1766 (NOED).]

The bird *Anthus novaeseelandiae aucklandicus*: see **Auckland Island pipit**.

**18 Mar 1904** Roberts, Brian, ed. (1967) *Edward Wilson's birds of the Antarctic* New Orchard Editions, Poole [Dorset]: 153.

Ferrar went up Mount Eden and ... saw the Auckland Island lark up there.

## Auckland Island merganser

[Merganser is recorded for fish-eating ducks of the genus *Mergus* in the northern hemisphere, since 1752 (NOED).]

The extinct small duck *Mergus australis* (fam. Anatidae), which lived on the Auckland Islands, and in prehistoric times on New Zealand's South Island. Both male and female were dark brown to bluish-black on the back and greyish brown on the chest. Though usually reported as flightless, the duck had small wings and in fact could fly well. It probably became extinct in the first years of the twentieth century as a result of hunting and the introduction of mammals such as rats and cats to these islands. Also simply **merganser**, and **southern merganser**.

**[23 Nov 1840** (Auckland Islands) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 131.

A brown-coloured duck and a merganser frequent the harbour.]

**1888** Buller, Sir Walter Lawry *A history of the birds of New Zealand*. 2nd edn Published by the author, Westminster London, vol II: 279.

*Mergus australis*. (Auckland-Island Merganser.) ... My collection contains a single example (a female), and there is

another, of the same sex, in the British Museum. My description of the adult male is taken from the Baron's [sc. von Hügel] specimen in the Cambridge University Museum, which was courteously lent to me by Professor Newton.

**1930** Oliver, W.R.B. *New Zealand birds* Fine Arts (NZ) Ltd, Wellington: 209.

Auckland Island Merganser, *Mergus australis*. This very distinct species of Merganser was discovered at the Auckland Islands by Hombron and Jacquinet, the naturalists attached to the French expedition which in 1839 visited the group in the ships "Astrolabe" and "Zelee". The species has never been plentiful.

**1950** Scott, Peter *Key to the wildfowl of the world* Severn Wildfowl Trust, Slimbridge, Gloucestershire: [42].

Auckland Island merganser, *Mergus australis* Auckland Islands (400 miles south of New Zealand). Probably extinct.

**1960** Westerskov, Kaj *Birds of Campbell Island*. Wildlife Publication no. 61, Wildlife Division, New Zealand: 66.

Auckland Island merganser (*Mergus australis*) ... There is no evidence available that this now extinct merganser ever has occurred on Campbell Island.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 147.

The Auckland Island merganser, *Mergus australis*, Australasia's only sea duck, is now extinct.

## Auckland Island pipit *Also Auckland Islands pipit*

[Pipit has been used for birds of the genus *Anthus* since 1768 (NOED).]

The yellowish brown bird *Anthus novaeseelandiae aucklandicus* (fam. Motacillidae) which occurs only on the Auckland and Campbell groups of islands. It has also been called the **Auckland Island lark**.

**1909** Waite, Edgar R. in Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington: 553.

*Anthus novae-zealandiae*, Gmelin. (Auckland Island pipit.) .. It is unlikely that the habits of this bird differ from those of *A. steindachneri*, but I certainly noticed its absence from the beaches, while it was numerously met with on the higher lands.

**1970** Kinsky, F.C. *Annotated checklist of the birds of New Zealand including the Ross Dependency* A.H. & A.W. Reed Ltd, Wellington: 65.

*Anthus novaeseelandiae aucklandicus* Gray, 1862 Auckland Islands Pipit.

**1995** Department of Conservation *Draft conservation management strategy — subantarctic islands* Southland Conservancy Conservation Management Planning series no 6, Department of Conservation, NZ: [18].

Indigenous landbirds such as bellbird, Auckland Island pipit and Auckland Island tomtit, are abundant.

## Auckland Island prion

[Prion has been used since 1848 (NOED) for small petrels of the genus *Pachyptila* (formerly Prion).]

The blue-grey and white seabird *Pachyptila desolata banksi* (fam. Procellariidae), a subspecies of the **antarctic prion**. It breeds on the Auckland Islands, as well as Heard, Macquarie, the South Sandwich, South Orkney and South Shetland Islands, and South Georgia, and has also been called **Banks' whale-bird**. The scientific classification of species of prions is unsettled.

**1962** Bailey, Alfred M. and Sorensen, J.H. *Subantarctic Campbell Island* Proceedings no. 10, Denver Museum of Natural History: 224.

Auckland Island Prion *Pachyptila desolata alter*. The small petrels of this genus are well distributed throughout the remote islands of the subantarctic seas ... The subspecies *alter* breeds on the Auckland Islands.

**1995** Department of Conservation *Draft conservation management strategy — subantarctic islands* Southland Conservancy Conservation Management Planning series no 6, Dept Conservation, NZ: [18].

Eight endemic bird species are present: Auckland Island prion, shag, teal, rail, banded dotterel, snipe, pipit and tomtit.

### **Auckland Island rail** *Also Auckland (Islands) rail*

[Rail a bird of the fam. Rallidae, has been recorded from c1450–(NOED).]

The small brown ground-living bird *Rallus pectoralis muelleri* (fam. Rallidae), which lives on Adams Island in the Auckland Islands, and perhaps other islands in the group. For most of the twentieth century, this bird was thought to be extinct.

**[11 Feb 1875]** (Auckland Islands) Letter to Mr. R.B. Sharpe from Baron A. von Hügel *The Ibis* 5(XIX) Jul: 392.

My luck with Auckland things did not end here; for I have received a Rail killed on that island by the unfortunate Capt. Musgrave of the 'Grafton.' As soon as I got the bird I was struck with its resemblance to one of the Rallidae I was acquainted with, but for some time could not make out which. At last it struck me that it must be the Australian *Rallus brachyptus*; and on comparing the Auckland with the Australian bird, I found them to agree very closely, though the colouring seemed different; but as the Canterbury-Museum specimen appears to be very old and faded, it is impossible to judge. It is curious, my falling in with so many things from the Auckland Isles, and especially a "Rail," now that I am just working at them. I shall be able to determine if my Rail is *Rallus brachyptus* [sic, corrected in ink here to 'brachyptus'] or new as soon as I get to Melbourne, there being a good series there. At all events it is the first Rail known to have been procured in the group.]

**30 Mar 1904** Wilson, Edward in Roberts, Brian, ed. (1967) *Edward Wilson's birds of the Antarctic* New Orchard Editions, Poole [Dorset]: 158.

The following Auckland birds none of us saw: .. Auckland Rail, *Rallus brachyptus* etc.

**1909** Waite, Edgar R. in *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington: 555.

*Hypotaenidia muelleri*, Rothschild. (Auckland Island rail.) .. Presumed to be extinct. This bird was not seen by members of the expedition.

**1966** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 4(6) June: 302.

The southern section of last summer's Auckland Islands expedition found on the remote and almost inaccessible Adams Island, the southernmost island of the Auckland group, a New Zealand bird long thought to be extinct. The latest rediscovery is the Auckland Islands rail, a small ground-living bird about the size of a quail. The rail was reported to be extinct by a Canterbury Philosophical Society Expedition to the islands in 1907. Its survival is due to the fact that Adams Island is separated by almost a mile of sea from the main island of the group, and that Adams Island has no introduced animals at all.

**1990** Turbott, E.G. (convener) *Checklist of the birds of New Zealand and the Ross dependency, Antarctica, 3rd edn* Random Century New Zealand, Auckland: 119.

*Rallus pectoralis muelleri* Rothschild. Auckland Island Rail ... In 1989 rediscovered on Adams Island in good numbers.

### **Auckland Island shag** *Also Auckland shag*

The small black and white shag or cormorant *Phalacrocorax* (or *Leucocarbo*) *colensoi* (fam. Phalacrocoracidae), a marine bird which lives only in the Auckland Islands group. It has pink legs and feet, and pink to violet eye-rings.

**[26 Nov 1840]** (Auckland Islands) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 132.

Shot a shag, a black-backed gull and a fine falcon on the beach.

**1849** (Auckland Islands) Enderby, Charles *The Auckland Islands: a short account of their climate, soil, & production; and the advantages of establishing there a settlement at Port Ross for carrying on the southern whale fisheries* Pelham Richardson, London: n.p.

No geese were seen; and the only game observed were a few grey ducks, snipes, cormorants, and the common shag.]

**1936** Guthrie-Smith, W.H. *Sorrows and joys of a New Zealand naturalist* AH & AW Reed, Dunedin: 204.

Everywhere we came across the Auckland Island shag. Always we found them unalarmed and easy to approach.

**1 Feb 1944** Sorensen, J.H. *The work journal of J.H. Sorensen, coastwatcher in the "Cape expedition", Campbell Island, 1942–44* Original in possession of NZ Dept of Conservation and Wildlife, Wellington: 317.

I had my first really close look at Auckland Island shags today and the pink ring encircling the eye was most conspicuous even the juvenile birds having it. This gave them the appearance of having a much larger eye than *P. campbelli*.

**1960** (1900s) Westerskov, Kaj *Birds of Campbell Island*. Wildlife Publication no. 61, Wildlife Division, New Zealand: 24.

These last three shags collected in the Auckland Island were the Auckland Island shag.

**1990** Marchant, S. and Higgins, P.J., co-ordinators *Handbook of Australian, New Zealand and Antarctic birds vol 1B Australian Pelican to Ducks* Oxford University Press, Melbourne: 885.

*Phalacrocorax colensoi* Auckland shag ... Named in honour of Rev. William Colenso, FRS, (1811–99) naturalist and missionary in New Zealand.

**1991** Gaskin, Chris and Peat, Neville *The world of penguins* Hodder & Stoughton, Auckland: 26.

Many seabirds, including the Auckland Island shag (cormorant) depicted here, are foot-propelled divers and fold their wings while underwater.

### **Auckland Island snipe**

The shy, pale to dark brown scalloped bird *Coenocorypha aucklandica aucklandica* (fam. Scolopacidae). It is probably now extinct on the main Auckland Island but still lives on the offshore islands. It has also been called **native snipe**, and is closely related to the **Antipodes** and **Snares Island snipes**, being another subspecies of the **subantarctic snipe**. See also **snipe 2**.

**[30 Nov 1840]** (Auckland Island) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 135.

I found snipe in the long grass, which were very difficult to flush, and then rising close under the feet ... I shot a brace, however, and saw a paroquet or two.]

**1873** [source: DNZE] Buller *Birds of New Zealand* 196. *Gallinago aucklandica*. (Auckland-Island Snipe).

**11 Feb 1875** Letter to Mr R.B. Sharpe from Baron A. von Hügel. *The Ibis* 5(XIX) Jul: 392.

The Snipe from the Auckland Isles seems to me different in size and colouring.]

**1926** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* XLVII(CCCVIII): 41. Mr. H. Guthrie Smith .. gave a short account of some field-observations on certain New Zealand birds:- The Auckland Island Snipe (*Coenocorypha aucklandica*, subsp.), he stated, lays two eggs in a nest of moss and lichen on a cushion of gale-flattened scrub. He had never seen more than a single nestling following its parents, and had reason to believe that instantly after the chipping of the egg the weaker chick succumbs. These Snipe feed on small red worms found plentifully in the peat, and still survive because they nest on wind-swept barren grounds, where there is nothing to tempt the prowling Wood-Hens (*Gallirallus*). They are extremely tame, can be stroked on the nest, and are practically flightless, running for the nearest cover when disturbed.

**3 Feb 1944** Sorensen, J.H. *The work journal of J.H. Sorensen, coastwatcher in the "Cape expedition", Campbell Island, 1942-45* Original in possession of NZ Dept of Conservation and Wildlife, Wellington: 318.

I also saw today my first Auckland Island snipe and they are quaint but beautiful little birds and do not fly much.

**1974** Robertson, C.J.R., ed. *Birds in New Zealand* A.H. & A.W. Reed, Wellington: 90.

The Snipes are represented by five subspecies, one each for the Stewart, Chatham, Snares, Antipodes and Auckland Islands. Owing to their habits being so retiring and their isolated habitats it is difficult to study them.]

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 138.

Cats have done far more damage to bird life on Campbell Island and the main Auckland Island than either rats or pigs. According to Sir Charles Fleming, who was one of the World War II coastwatchers there, they are the main predators of smaller petrels on Auckland Island, and are probably responsible for the extinction of the .. Auckland Island snipe and shore plover.

**1990** Turbott, E.G. (convener) *Checklist of the birds of New Zealand and the Ross dependency, Antarctica, 3rd edn* Random Century New Zealand, Auckland: 140.

*Coenocorypha aucklandica aucklandica* ... Auckland Island snipe ... Present on Ewing, Adams and probably Disappointment Island. Believed exterminated on main island by introduced carnivores.

**Auckland Islands pipit** See **Auckland Island pipit**

**Auckland Island teal** See **Auckland Island flightless teal**

**Auckland Island tit** Also **Auckland Island tomtit** [Tomtit has been used for various small birds from 1706 (NOED).]

The small, pale-yellow breasted, black and white forest bird *Petroica macrocephala marrineri* (fam. Eopsaltriidae), found only on the Auckland Islands. It is also called a **(yellow-breasted) tit**.

**1967** Roberts, Brian, ed. *Edward Wilson's birds of the Antarctic* New Orchard Editions, Poole [Dorset]: 134.

[editor's caption] Auckland Island Tit, *Petroica macrocephala marrineri*.

**7 Feb 1971** (Enderby Island) Scott, Peter (1983) *Travel diaries of a naturalist: Australia, New Zealand, New Guinea, Africa, the Galapagos islands, Antarctica and the Falkland Islands* Collins, London: 268.

The New Zealand Pipit was the tamest of all, .. with the endemic Auckland Island Tomtit (flycatcher) only slightly less so.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 72.

[caption] An endemic Auckland Island tit, on Rose Island.

**1995** Department of Conservation *Draft conservation management strategy — subantarctic islands* Southland Conservancy Conservation Management Planning series no 6, Dept Conservation, NZ: [18].

Indigenous landbirds such as bellbird, Auckland Island pipit and Auckland Island tomtit, are abundant.

**Auckland rail** See **Auckland Island rail**

**auk** verb. Also **eeouk, eeyuk, yuk**

[There is great confusion about the origins and meanings of dog commands in Antarctica, most of which are northern words. Sometimes their meanings seem to have been transposed as well as transferred. In Greenland dog commands atsuk atsuk means turn right (Fortescue 1991). In Labrador English (DCaNE), ouk is recorded in 1924 with the same meaning of 'turn right'.]

A sledge-dog command (pronounced 'ow-k'), generally used to mean 'turn right', but occasionally, 'turn left'.

**1953** Adie, Raymond J. in *Polar Record* 6(45) Jan: 641.

The words of command used by the Falkland Islands Dependencies Survey are corruptions from arctic terms. In order to standardize them the following terms were used at Stonington Island:

To start "Up Dogs — Weet"

To stop "A-a-a-a"

Turn right "Auk, Auk" ("au" pronounced as "ou" in loud)

Turn left "l-r-r-re" (with a long rolling "r").

**1956** Ross Sea Committee, *Trans-Antarctic Expedition: newsletter* [Wellington] no 9 (Oct): [4].

There are nine dogs in a team arranged in four pairs with a single dog leading. The lead dog is chosen for his qualities of intelligence and initiative, but is not necessarily the king dog of the team. He, in particular, is trained to obey the commands of the sledge driver. There are four basic commands which are 'veet' meaning go or pull, 'yuk' for a right hand turn, and 'errrr' for a left hand turn, with 'ahhh' for stop. This latter command is usually accompanied by the application of the sledge brake.

**1957** Taylor, R.J.F. in *Polar Record* 8(56) May: 432.

The actual words used on F.I.D.S. have been standardized. To turn left is *lrr-r-re*, to turn right *Auk*. Croft gives the Eskimo words as *Ille* for right and *Yuk* for left, i.e. there has been a transposition of these words when they were anglicized.

**1957** Dovers, Robert *Huskies* G. Bell and Sons, London: 21.

The commands were quite simple. 'Ee ee!' for 'go'; 'Heely!' for 'right'; 'Yuck' for 'left'; and 'Whoa!' for 'stop'.

**1966** MacKenzie, D., ed. *Fog 'N Bog* [yearbook of Macquarie Island ANARE overwinterers] ANARE, Macquarie Island: 23.

If the lead dogs are perfect gentlemen they will turn left or right on command at hearing the words *eelee* and *eeyuk*.

**1995** Ledingham, Rod in Robinson, Shelagh, ed. *Huskies in harness: a love story in Antarctica* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 22.

This was to be my introduction to dog driving. I was given a team called the Picts, and shown the commands: the one for left was *auk*.

**1995** Spence, F.A. in Robinson, Shelagh, ed. *Huskies in harness: a love story in Antarctica* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 41.

The Eskimo commands of 'Illie', meaning 'turn left' and 'Eeook', meaning 'turn right', echoed across the ice as Ivan strove to control the team.

**1996** Walton, Kevin and Atkinson, Rick *Of dogs and men: the illustrated story of the dogs of the British Antarctic Survey 1944-1994* Images Publishing, Malvern Wells: 59.

Because these were Eskimo huskies, efforts were made to retain the commands they recognised — 'Auk' meaning right, 'Irra' left.

**aurora** *Pl. usually auroras, sometimes aurorae or aurora*

[Spec. use of aurora which has been used since 1621 for a luminous atmospheric phenomenon in the vicinity of the earth's magnetic poles (NOED).]

The **aurora australis** or southern lights.

**1879** (Kerguelen Island) Eaton, A.E. in *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: 4.

While the English were in Royal Sound the glimmer of distant lightning was seen one night in the direction of Mount Ross; but this was a very exceptional occurrence. Such displays of the aurora as were observed were not remarkable for their brilliancy.

**22 Feb 1898** Cook, Frederick A. (1980 repr.) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898-1899* McGill-Queen's University Press, Montreal: 184.

We have seen the stars and the moon but once since entering the Pacific, and, to the present, there have been no auroras visible.

**3 Jul 1911** Bowers, Birdie in Seaver, George (1951) 'Birdie' Bowers of the Antarctic John Murray, London: 206.

"We had auroras the like of which I have never imagined. At times the sky was ablaze with brilliant curtains of light being shaken along as if by a breeze and whirling into vortices or opening like a vast mushroom overhead, at other times shafts like searchlight beams, We lay flat on our backs and looked up at them."

**1914** Priestley, Raymond E. (1974 repr.) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* Melbourne University Press: 96.

The Antarctic Aurora as a rule is a poor show when compared with its fellow in the north.

**14 April 1934** Byrd, Richard E. (1939) *Alone* Reader's Union Ltd and Putnam & Co Ltd, London: 85.

In the north-east a silver-green serpentine aurora pulsed and quivered gently.

**1949** Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 130.

The aurorae occur in the Antarctic regions, with maximum frequency on the circumference of a circle about twenty-three degrees from the magnetic axis pole.

**1958** (Shackleton Base) Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund *The crossing of Antarctica: the Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955-58* Cassell & Co, London: 53.

Aurora too appeared as curtains of wavering light, changing their form, intensity and colour from minute to minute. Usually these displays were white, but sometimes they were tinged with red and green, colours that pulsed against the dark background of the polar night.

**1971** Gledhill, J.A. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* 1: 5.

The aurorae are caused by the interaction of charged particles with the upper atmospheric gases.

**1978** Béchervaise, John *Science: men on ice in Antarctica. Australian Life Series* Lothian Publishing Co, Melbourne: 83.

To stand in the open air, even in temperatures far below freezing, and watch the aurora, is one of the most rewarding experiences of the polar regions.

**1991** Hooper, Meredith A for *Antarctica: facts and stories from the frozen South* Pan Books, London: 22.

The aurora australis can reach from one hundred to one thousand kilometres up into the sky ... Aurorae can occur night after night.

**1995** Orsman, Chris in *Sport [Wellington]* : 14 (Apr): 6.

The wind has dropped and southwards over the pole the Aurora fuses messages of the far away.

## aurora australis

The southern lights, a visible play of light in the dark sky, the result of charged solar particles channelled by the earth's magnetic field into the polar regions, where they cause gases to fluoresce in the upper atmosphere. They are also called the **aurora (polaris)**, **polar light**, and **southern aurora** or **southern lights**.

**17 Feb 1773** Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, In the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970): 53.

Between midnight and three o'clock in the morning, lights were seen in the heavens, similar to those in the northern hemisphere, known by the name of Aurora Borealis, or Northern Lights; but I never heard of the Aurora Australis being seen before. The officer of the watch observed, that it sometimes broke out in spiral rays, and in a circular form; then its light was very strong, and its appearance beautiful. He could not perceive it had any particular direction; for it appeared, at various times, in different parts of the heavens, and diffused its light throughout the whole atmosphere.

**17 Feb 1840** (nr 97°37'E, 64°S) Wilkes, Charles in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 403.

Between ten and eleven o'clock at night .. we were gratified with a splendid exhibition of the Aurora Australis. It exceeded anything .. I had heretofore witnessed; its activity was inconceivable, darting from the zenith to the horizon in all directions in the most brilliant coruscations .. flashed in brilliant pencillings of light, like sparks of electric fluid in vacuo, and reappear again to vanish; forming themselves into one body, like an umbrella, or fan, shut up; again emerging to flit across the sky with the rapidity of light, they showed all the prismatic colours at once or in quick succession.

**1943** Carmichael, Hugh in *Polar Record* 4(25) Jan: 12.

The aurora is a peculiar glow visible in cloud-free night sky. It is most frequently seen in high latitudes, but during very intense displays it may occur even in the tropics. The aurora in the northern hemisphere is called the aurora borealis; in the southern aurora australis.

**1958** Bursey, Jack *Antarctic night* Longman, Green & Co, London: 74.

Our first glimpse of the waving, weaving curtains of the aurora australis.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 168.

On fine nights, the aurora australis may be seen, an atmospheric phenomenon caused by charged particles from the

sun bombarding the atmosphere and coming under the influence of the earth's magnetic field. Such displays are most frequent in high latitudes, where the lines of magnetic force converge.

**1996** *Canberra Times* 9 Sept: 5.

She is looking forward to perusing penguins, seeing the Aurora Australis up close, the isolation, and having a chef cook dinner every night. "It's the windiest, driest, roughest place in the whole world," she said. "It's the last continent. Why wouldn't anyone want to go?"

### **auroral** *adjective*

Belonging to or characteristic of the **aurora australis**.

**1909** Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907-1909* William Heinemann, London: 216.

Mawson was occupied with his physical work, which included auroral observations and the study of the structure of the ice.

**1960** (Scott Base) *News from the South [NZARP, Wellington]* 1 (9 May): 2.

The all-sky cameras and spectroscopes .. in the auroral tower (Dudley's Ivory Tower) scan the sky through the dark hours to record auroral effects not visible to the naked eye.

### **auroral all-sky camera** *See all-sky camera*

### **auroral belt** *See auroral oval*

### **auroral corona** *See corona*

### **auroral display**

A particular show or night's observation of the **aurora australis**.

**18 Sept 1912** (Commonwealth Bay) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 113.

Good auroral display this evening.

**16 Apr 1943** (Campbell Island) Sorensen, J.H. *The work journal of J.H. Sorensen, coastwatcher in the "Cape expedition", Campbell Island, 1942-44* Original in possession of NZ Dept of Conservation and Wildlife, Wellington: 191.

Had another mild auroral display tonight. Unfortunately for observations the display was very mediocre although the night was clear and frosty. At 9.30 p.m. the first rays appeared in the S.E. At 9.35 the arc was breaking up and lower to horizon.

**1969** Keneally, Thomas *The survivor* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 47.

"It will put the scientists in a far better position to correlate magnetic readings and to take photographs so that the height of the auroral displays can be calculated."

### **aurorally** *adverb*

In the manner of an **aurora australis**.

**1960** (Scott Base) *News from the South [NZARP, Wellington]* 1 (9 May): 3.

Colin Jenness's hands are full with ionospheric research and the recording of radio emanations from outer space photographically and 'aurorally'.

### **auroral oval** *Also auroral belt, auroral zone*

An oval ring-shaped zone on the earth's surface, centred on the **geomagnetic pole**, in which the **aurora**

**australis** is most often observed. The shape and extent of this oval can change during times of increased geomagnetic activity.

*Occas.*, as in 1916 quotation, simply an aurora itself.

**1916** Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard. Being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911-1914* William Heinemann, London: 166.

A tenuous auroral belt developed near the S. side of Mount Erebus, above the summit.

**1957** *Ross Sea Committee, Trans-Antarctic Expedition: newsletter* no 16 (1 June): 4.

The auroral belt is a strip approximately 600 miles wide describing a rough circle centred not on the South Geographic Pole nor yet on the South Magnetic Pole, even though it is now known that there is a close tie up between magnetic phenomena and auroral activity. This auroral ring centres on the South Geomagnetic Pole which is a theoretical focus of the earth's magnetic field as apart from the point of maximum dip which is the Magnetic Pole proper. With a radius of about 1500 miles the centre of this auroral belt passes almost midway between New Zealand and the Antarctic Continent, then follows the coastline of the Continent westward to the Weddell Sea, south of the Atlantic Ocean, completing the circle by crossing Antarctica not far beyond the true South Pole and swings North across the South Pacific Ocean at the northern limit of the Ross Sea.

**1964** Helm, A.S. and Miller, J.H. *Antarctica: the story of the New Zealand party of the Trans-Antarctic expedition* R.E. Owen, Government Printer, Wellington: 237.

From the onset of darkness there were many nights when well defined auroral displays occurred. With a radius of 1,500 miles, the centre of the auroral belt passed almost midway between New Zealand and the Antarctic continent.

**1968** Bond, F.R. in *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Nov: 7.

Equatorwards of the Auroral Zone, at Macquarie Island .. studies in the various phenomena listed are carried out.

**1995** Crossley, Louise *Explore Antarctica* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 76.

Because solar wind particles can only penetrate the earth's magnetic field at the poles, auroras are concentrated around these areas, which are known as the auroral ovals. For a variety of reasons the southern auroral oval is more accessible than the northern.

### **aurora polaris**

The **aurora australis**.

**1901** (Cape Adare) Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 92.

At nine o'clock in the evening of the 15th of March, we witnessed our first aurora polaris during clear, calm weather, the temperature at the time being 16° Fahr. The light first emanated in a waving curtain from the south-east, and went round to the south-west. The motion of the arrow-like beams, constituting the curtain, was rapid and at times would run along with an undulating motion, then suddenly shoot downwards towards the earth. These beams were of a nebulous whiteness, with occasionally a reddish tint in them. Varying in intensity, at times the display would almost fade away, but would again be renewed from behind the mountain to the east. Seen for the first time, it was a wondrous sight.

**1913** (Commonwealth Bay) Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911-1914* William Heinemann, London: 106.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

The first good display of aurora polaris was witnessed during the evening of March 12, though no doubt there had been other exhibitions obscured by the drift.

**1942** (1912) Mawson, Douglas *Geographical narrative and cartography. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911-14. Scientific reports series A vol 1* Government Printer, Sydney: 40.

During the late evening there was an appearance of the aurora polaris.

### Australian Antarctic Territory

The part of Antarctica claimed by Australia, consisting of all land south of 60°S lying between 45° and 160°E (excepting Adélie Land), inherited from Britain under the *Australian Antarctic Territory Acceptance Act* in 1933 and brought into force in 1936.

**1954** *Polar Record* 7(48) Jul: 119.

It was announced on 18 February that an Australian station had been established on the mainland of Antarctica in lat. 67°36'S., long. 62°53'E. It has been officially named Mawson, in honour of Sir Douglas Mawson, the distinguished Australian who has contributed so much to the exploration of the Australian Antarctic Territory.

**1960** *Polar Record* 10(65) May: 163.

*Australian Antarctic Territory* (Australia), established by Order in Council of 7 February 1933, which came into force with a Proclamation on 24 August 1936, after passage of Australian Antarctic Acceptance Act, 13 June 1933.

Footnote: All islands and territories, other than Terre Adélie, south of lat. 60° S. between longs. 45° E. and 160° E. (based on claims dating from about 1909).

### azorella *noun and attrib. Subantarctic islands*

[Azorella is the scientific name for the plant genus, given in 1783 by French naturalist Jean Baptiste Antoine Pierre Monet, Chevalier de la Marck, for unknown reasons.]

The perennial cushion-plant *Azorella selago* (fam. Apiaceae or Umbelliferae) of Heard Island and other subantarctic islands. The plants can form vast cushions extending for metres.

**1875** (Kerguelen Island) Kidder, J.H. *Contributions to the natural history of Kerguelen Island, made in connection with the American*

*Transit-of-Venus expedition, 1874-75*. 1. Ornithology Government Printing Office, Washington: 18.

Sometimes a few dried stalks are laid together in the bottom of a barely perceptible cavity; oftener a tuft of dead azorella-leaves, found ready to hand, serves their turn [sc. for a tern's nest].

**1879** (Marion Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 172.

The thick rank herbage concealed these treacherous places, and the ground being covered with *Azorella* tufts, these gave way under one's feet and rendered progression excessively wearying.

**28 Nov 1929** (Heard Island) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 266.

Descended to look at small crater, then back to hut over moss and azorella plain on basalt lava floor. Ponds in lava between azorella clumps.

**1949** Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 83.

The peeping sun ... lay thinly over the dark ground and the green-topped azorella tussocks.

**1956** Migot, André, transl. fr French by Groves, Richard *The lonely South* Rupert Hart-Davis, London: 43.

Here and there a strange umbelliferous plant, the azorella, covers the ground with its large spongy cushions.

**1982** (Îles Crozet) Hosking, Eric and Sage, Bryan *Antarctic wildlife* Croom Helm, London: 48.

Areas of undisturbed moorland have a plant community in which Kerguelen Cabbage *Pringlea antiscorbutica*, clumps of *Acaena*, and cushions of *Azorella selago* are prominent.

**1983** (Heard Island) Thornton, Meg, ed. *Heard Island expedition 1983* Heard Island expedition, Sydney: 36.

We threaded our way through a maze of *Azorella*, Poa Grass and small pools ... The late afternoon sun emerged from behind the enshrouded mountain and danced over the spectacular mounds of apple green *Azorella*.

**1985** (Heard Island) Mullins, Barbara *The Australian environment: islands* Hodder & Stoughton, Sydney: 25.

*Azorella*, a spongy, moss-like plant, grows in great mats up to about a metre high.

# — B —

**bachelor** *noun and attrib.*

[*Extended use of the English bachelor (NOED a young male fur-seal), recorded in Alaska from 1874–.*]

A young male **elephant seal** or **fur seal**, not yet breeding.

**1929** (South Georgia) *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 238.

When the harem bull starts roaring at a bachelor bull, if the latter is a small one, he usually takes this as a warning and edges away, but if he is a big one he usually answers back, challenging the harem bull to fight.

**1949** (Heard Island) Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 164.

He was asked by Expedition Headquarters to complete a census of all visible seals by the beginning of October. The instructions caused some amusement, reading like the orders of a desert sheik: "Number in each harem? How many bachelors?"

**1958** Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 155.

The young males, which do not start to breed until they are five or six years old and are therefore known as 'bachelors', have a fine greyish coat which is the one most highly regarded in commerce.

**1978** (Marion and Prince Edward Islands) Condy, P.R. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* 8: 45.

All adult male elephant seals, hauled-out during the breeding season, were considered to be breeding bulls, and were classified as being either beachmasters, assistant beachmasters, challengers or bachelors.

**bad ice** *noun phr. and attrib.*

**Sea ice** which obstructs or impedes travel. See also **ice year**.

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* London: 264.

The ship entered such heavy ice that it took more than thirty hours to extricate her from the newly-formed pancake floes, which were heaped up many layers deep on the surface of the sea for miles. It was a hard fight to get out of this bad ice; and when at last we were free of it, the Terra Nova steamed back to Cape Evans.

**1956** Stinear, B.H. *Preliminary report on operations from Mawson Base, Australian National Antarctic Research Expedition, 1954–55* BMR Record 1956/44, Canberra: 8.

In many cases, outcrops which would otherwise be easy to reach are inaccessible because of the "bad ice" conditions around them.

**1996** (McMurdo Sound) Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 241.

Wordie House .. has been closed ever since, except for the year when a team making for Adelaide Island got caught out by bad ice and bivouacked in Wordie House.

**bag drag** *US*

The process of taking oneself and one's luggage to be weighed before aircraft travel.

**1996** Dicks, Ethan *English, as She is spoke at McMurdo* <http://www.infinet.com/~erd/MCMslang.html>, printed 11 Jul.

[glossary] Bagdrag: The act of showing up at the Movement Control Center to weigh in for a flight. All checked baggage is taken, and all passengers are weighed with carry-on and Extreme Cold Weather gear.

**1997** Robinson, Kim Stanley *Antarctica* HarperCollins, London: 94.

'They're still not used to bag drag being something you can carry yourself.'

**balaenid**

A whale of the fam. Balaenidae: see **baleen whale**.

**1990** Martin, Anthony R. *Whales and dolphins* Bedford Editions, London: 13.

Balaenids from the early Miocene (25 million years ago) have been found in Patagonia.

**balaenopterid** *noun and attrib.*

[*The family Balaenopteridae was named by John Gray in 1846. The genus Balaenoptera was named by French naturalist Count Lacépède (Hist. Nat. Cetac. 1804: 34), from the Latin balaena whale, and Greek πτερον fin or wing, referring to the large flipper or forelimb of the animal.*]

A **baleen whale** of the family Balaenopteridae, also known as a **rorqual**, inhabiting all oceans of both southern and northern hemispheres. Northern and southern hemisphere populations are thought to be distinct, not migrating across the equator.

Most baleen whales regularly migrate in summer to higher latitudes. These include the **blue**, **fin**, **minke** and **sei whales**, and the **humpback whale**.

**[1911]** Charcot, Jean Baptiste Auguste Etienne *The voyage of the 'Pourquoi-pas?', the journal of the second French South Polar Expedition, 1908–1910* Australian National University Press facs, Canberra (1978): 40.

From the whale-hunter's point of view, there are two sorts of whale, the 'right' whale and the 'rusher' — a division which coincides with a zoological classification, the former being properly speaking, a balaena (*Balaena Australis* in the southern, *Balaena Groenlandis* in the northern seas), and the others being balaenopteras. The commercial value of the balaenas is much superior to that of the balaenopteras, not only on account of the quantity and quality of their oil, but also — and perhaps especially — because of the dimensions and quality of their bone, of which the price in the market is high. The bone of the balaenoptera, on the contrary, is very short and of scarcely any use, and the oil which can be extracted from its fat is comparatively scanty.]

**1933** Laurie, Alec H. *Some aspects of respiration in blue and fin whales*. *Discovery Reports* vol VII, issued by the Discovery



Committee, Colonial Office. Cambridge University Press, London: 369.

Sperm and Right whales may differ widely in their diving capabilities from Balaenopterids.

**1959** Laws, R.M. *The foetal growth rates of whales with special reference to the Fin Whale*, Balaenoptera physalus Linn. Discovery Reports vol XXIX, issued by the National Institute of Oceanography. Cambridge University Press, London: 304.

In all Balaenopterid species the gestation period is 12 months or less.

**1995** Menkhorst, Peter W., ed. *Mammals of Victoria: distribution, ecology and conservation* Oxford University Press, Melbourne: 306.

Populations of all the balaenopterids were heavily exploited by modern whaling in the Antarctic, the larger and preferred species being reduced to near-extinction.

### **bald rockcod** Also *bald notothen*

[The fish appears bald because of the lack of scales on, and pale colour of, the dorsal side of the head.]

The marine fish *Pagothenia borchgrevinki* (fam. Nototheniidae) of circumpolar antarctic waters. It grows to about 28 cm and lives near the underside of sea ice, and is also called a **borch**.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 368.

*Pagothenia borchgrevinki* ... Bald rockcod ... Circumpolar ... This species is one of the most southern fish.

**1988** Williams, Richard in *Australian Natural History* 22(11): 520.

Fish such as the Bald Rockcod (*Pagothenia borchgrevinki*) live under the sea ice, where they capture the small crustaceans that feed on the microscopic algae on the ice undersurface and also derive protection (at least during the juvenile stages) by hiding in the ice crevices. For this cryopelagic habit they also need a fairly slender shape, neutral buoyancy and cryptic colouration, and hence skeletal reduction and lipid deposits are also seen in this species, along with a moderately streamlined shape and pale colouration.

**1990** Gon, O. and Heemstra, P.C. *Fishes of the Southern Ocean* J.L.B. Smith Institute of Ichthyology, Grahamstown: 308.

Bald notothen ... Head and body dark dorsally, with dark spots or irregular cross-bars, the ventral parts yellowish.

### **baleen** noun and attrib.

[Baleen has been used in English (see NOED) for the comb-like 'whale-bone' of whales since c1325.]

The comb-like strainers which hang from the upper jaw in the mouths of balaenopterid whales. Though often called **whalebone**, baleen, like human fingernails, is composed of keratin. It is light, flexible and elastic, and was formerly used commercially.

**1938** Ommanney, F.D. *South latitude* Longman, Green & Co., London: 23.

He is a whale-bone whale and his mouth is filled with horny whale bone plates which hang down from the upper jaw — the baleen.

**1968** Dukert, Joseph M. *This is Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 58.

A whale will swim along through a school of krill with his jaws wide apart filling his mouth with food and seawater. Then he rolls his tongue forward, pressing the mouthful against a kind of natural "soup strainer" just inside his upper lip ... The whale's strainer is called baleen or whalebone, but it isn't really bone.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 28.

The rare right whale, *Eubaleana australis*, .. was considered the "right" whale to hunt, not only for its oil but also for the length and quality of its baleen, the three-metre long curtain of flexible bone plates between its jaws — once used for umbrella ribs, corset stays, and riding crops — through which baleen whales sieve their food.

**1995** Menkhorst, Peter W., ed. *Mammals of Victoria: distribution, ecology and conservation* Oxford University Press, Melbourne: 303.

Humpbacks feed by gulping large mouthfuls of seawater containing prey organisms, which are retained in the mouth by fringed rows of baleen plates attached on either side of the upper jaw.

### **baleen whale** noun phr. and attrib.

[Whales of the sub-order Mysticeti have been called baleen whales since at least 1874 (NOED), when the term was used for northern whales. It was later used for antarctic and southern whales.]

A filter-feeding whale in the sub-order Mysticeti. A baleen whale has stiff plates of **baleen** in its mouth, each with a hairy fringe on the inner edge: it takes in great volumes of water and filters it out through the baleen, retaining the prey in its mouth. Baleen whales are also known as **whalebone whales**, an older name and the more common name for them until recent times.

**1960** *Polar Record* 10(66) Sept: 291.

The largest catches of baleen whales were taken in areas III (longs. 0° to 70°E.) and IV (longs. 70° to 130°E.) and accounted for 33.6 and 31.1 per cent respectively, of the total pelagic catch. The former sanctuary in the Pacific sector (longs. 70°W. to 160°E.) contributed only 9.1 per cent, compared with 25 per cent in the previous season.

**1985** Gambell, Ray in Bonner, W.N. and Walton, D.W.H., eds *Key environments: Antarctica* Pergamon Press, Oxford: 234.

Because the oil from sperm whales, which is the prime product, is chemically very different from baleen whale oil, it has to be kept separate.

**1992** Campbell, David *The crystal desert* Secker & Warburg, London: 194.

The baleen whales of Antarctica live a relatively short time — at best only twenty-five or thirty years.

### **balsam bog** noun phr. and attrib., Falkland Islands

[Balsam has been used since the eighteenth century (NOED 1741–, DARE 1786–) in the names of plants which produce an aromatic juice or gum, + bog used in the names of plants growing in bogs from 1760. The English name has also been used for the plant in Tierra del Fuego.]

The plant *Bolax gummifera* (formerly *B. glebaria*; fam. Apiaceae or Umbelliferae), whose dense rosettes form very large, hard, yellowish to dark green mounds. It exudes a gum which has been used medicinally (see 1829, 1899 quotations). It has also been called **bog balsam**.

[1829 Barnard, Captain Charles H. *A narrative of the sufferings and adventures of Captain Charles H Barnard, in a Voyage Round the World, during the years 1812, 1813, 1814, 1815, & 1816*] London, New York, for the author: 115.

While eating breakfast, I told Albrook that he and I would go to the tops of the hills, and gather some balsam, as I had finished the box I had been making for that purpose. On the

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

tops of the high hills there are large green bunches, growing in the form of a bee-hive, and varying from the size of a common hive to that of a hog's head: from these the warmth of the sun draws out a resinous gum, which is the best application to a bite or cut that I ever used.]

**1847** Hooker, J.D. *Flora Antarctica: the botany of the antarctic voyage of H.M. Discovery ships Erebus and Terror, in the years 1839–1843* Reeve Brothers, London, vol II: 214.

Bougainville was the first voyager and man of science who noticed the vegetable productions of the Falklands, the most remarkable of which are certainly the *Tussac Grass* and the *Balsam-bog* (*Bolax glebaria*).

**1857** Snow, W. Parker *A two years' cruise off Tierra del Fuego, the Falkland Islands, Patagonia, and in the River Plate: a narrative of life in the Southern Seas* Longman, Brown, Green, Longmans and Roberts, London, vol. 1: 91.

A stream of good water; wild bushes; the balsam bog.

**1899** Brandon, Rev. Lowther, ed. *The Falkland Islands Magazine* X(13) May: [20].

Another curious plant grows in the bogs. This looks like a stone. It forms in bunches as hard as a rock, and from three to eight feet tall. It is so hard that you cannot cut it with a sharp knife. On hot days a pale yellow gum comes out on its surface and a rich aromatic odor fills the surrounding air. It is known here as the balsam bog.

**1909** Aston, B.C. in Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington, vol. 2: 751.

*Bolax glebaria* forms "balsam bogs," the plant simulating in appearance the elastic cushions of *Azorella Selago* at Kerguelen Island, another peat-ridden country.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 18.

At higher altitudes above about 600 m (2000 feet) and on lower stony slopes, large cushion plants such as *Balsam-bog* *Bolax gummifera* occur on otherwise bare ground.

### **banana belt** *noun phr. and attrib., humorous Also antarctic banana belt*

[Banana, the fruit, is used as a symbol of tropical warmth here, in this humorous reference to the less cold parts of Antarctica.

The term banana belt probably originated in North America, where it is recorded from 1897 in Canada and 1898 in the USA. It is found in Alaskan English from 1937. *DAlaskaE* notes that it 'is a facetious designation for an area of Alaska which, when viewed from the perspective of another part of the state, has a comparatively mild climate ... Depending on the user's perspective, the location of the banana belt varies'. This applies equally to its Antarctic usage, whose humour also lies in the essentially comparative nature of the assessment.]

A place in Antarctica reputedly less cold than another part, especially the west or northwest of the Antarctic Peninsula. See also **riviera**.

**1958** Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund *The crossing of Antarctica: the Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955–58* Cassell & Co, London: 130.

For May the party reported a mean temperature of  $-38^{\circ}\text{F}$  and a mean wind speed of 35 mph, while the lowest temperature was  $-67^{\circ}\text{F}$ . As Shackleton could only boast a minimum temperature of  $-60^{\circ}\text{F}$  it became known as 'The Banana Belt'.

**1968** Dukert, Joseph M. *This is Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 142.

Situated some five miles off the west coast of the Antarctic Peninsula are the Argentine Islands, the site of another long-established base. These 180-odd islands lie in what is locally nicknamed the "Antarctic banana belt", such is its record for fine weather.

**1970** (Prince Charles Mountains) *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] June: 6.

Each day radio messages relayed the state of the weather and the frustrations of those expeditioners unable to do their work. Fifty knot winds at one peak often prevented link up with another station less than forty miles away where its occupants were basking in 'banana belt' conditions.

**1971** Young, Pamela *Penguin summer — or, a rare bird in Antarctica* A.H. & A.W. Reed, Wellington: 48.

"Storms at Cape Bird?" my husband scoffed. "This my girl, is the banana belt of the South."

**1972** Bakker E.M. van Zinderen in *Antarktische Bulletin* 2(7–8) Mar: 59.

I am a member of the "sub-Antarctic gang", the people who are interested in those small islands which are scornfully called the banana islands by your people who live underground or should I say "under-ice" in deep freeze.

**1982** Brewster, Barney *Antarctica: wilderness at risk* A.H. & A.W. Reed Ltd, Wellington: 4.

Coastal temperatures are moderated by the ocean and low elevations, although even there summer temperatures rarely rise above freezing, except along the north-western fringe of the Antarctic Peninsula. Dubbed the "banana belt" by Antarcticans, mean summer temperatures along this fringe — outside the Antarctic Circle — remain above freezing for one to four months each year, depending on location.

**1990** Adams, Richard, ed. *Antarctica: voices from the silent continent* Montagne Jeunesse Co., UK: 24.

The peninsula of Graham Land ... is by far the nearest point of the continent to the rest of the world. Its tip reaches as far north as a little over 63 south, and not for nothing is it referred to as the 'banana belt' of the Antarctic. One can be much colder in Cambridge in January than on a summer's day here.

**1995** (Signy) *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* no. 336 (Aug): 7.

The weather last week has been almost tropical, around zero degrees and with the 30 knot winds the sea ice has taken a right hammering, but then this is the banana belt.

### **band**

[The word band is common to manifestations of auroras in both hemispheres.]

A pattern seen in the **aurora australis**.

**1938** Evans, Admiral Sir Edward R.G.R. *South with Scott* Collins, London: 109.

The auroras were a little disappointing this first winter as seen from Cape Evans, they were certainly better seen from the Barrier. We only got golden bands and curtains splaying in the heavens.

**1939** Byrd, Richard E. *Alone* Reader's Union Ltd and Putnam & Co Ltd, London: 93.

In addition to the weather observations I now had to make five auroral observations every day. They came at 10 o'clock in the morning, then at 1 o'clock, 4 o'clock, 7 o'clock, and the last one at 10 o'clock. The aurora occurs in complicated patterns, called rays, arcs, curtains, bands, and coronas. Standing at the hatch, I would identify the structure, and note other relevant information, such as the bearing and estimated altitude of the centre and the termini.

**1949** (Heard Island) Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 200.

The cosmic ray scientists were up for long periods, noting the structure, the rays, arcs, draperies, bands and the coronas. Other relevant details, such as the altitude and bearing

of the centre, and the ends of the patterns were entered in the auroral observations.

**1957** Ross Sea Committee, *Trans-Antarctic Expedition: newsletter [Wellington]* no 16 (1 June): 5.

All the auroras seen from Scott Base this year have, with that one exception, been colourless, although they have portrayed the familiar features of bands, rays and fans associated with any occurrence.

## banded rail

[Banded from the bird's rusty red band on its barred black and white breast + rail (recorded in English from c1450-) a bird of the fam. Rallidae.]

The extinct bird *Gallirallus philippensis macquariensis*, also known as the **Macquarie Island rail**.

**1937** Falla, R.A. *Birds. BANZARE reports series B, vol 2* Hassell Press, Adelaide: 20.

Specimens of the banded rail were collected and described by Hutton.

**1961** Holdgate, M.W. and Wace, N.M. in *Polar Record* 10(68) May: 485.

Cats were also introduced by sealers before 1821 and were abundant in 1890-94, when they probably caused the extermination of the parakeet and banded rail.

**1985** Leader-Williams, N. in Bonner, W.N. and Walton, D.W.H., eds *Key environments: Antarctica* Pergamon Press, Oxford: 325.

Two endemic bird species on Macquarie Island, a banded rail (*Rallus philippensis*) and a parakeet (*Cyanoramphus novaeseelandiae*), became extinct between 1880 and 1894.

## Banks' whale-bird Also **Banks' dove-petrel**

[The scientific name was given (originally as Banksi) by English ornithologist John Gould (Handbook vol ii: 474), in honour of English botanist Sir Joseph Banks (1743-1820). It was apparently described from a specimen in his collection, from the 'Island of Desolation' or Kerguelen Island.]

The blue-grey and white seabird *Pachyptila desolata banksi*: see **Auckland Island prion**.

**1907** Clarke, William Eagle in *The Ibis* (II) Apr: 326.

During the run from the South Orkneys towards the Sandwich Islands the following birds were either obtained or came under notice:- Banks's Whale-Bird (*Prion banksi*) [etc.].

**1913** Royal Australasian Ornithologists' Union *Checklist of the birds of Australia* Walker, May & Co., Melbourne: 30.

*Prion banksi*, Gould .. Banks Dove-Petrel.

**1929** (South Georgia) *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 579.

*Prion banksi*, Gould. Banks' Whale Bird ... The bill is blue, the dorsal part black and the tip bluff.

## Banzare attrib.

[Acronym from the name of the expedition.]

Belonging to the British, Australia, New Zealand Antarctic Expedition, which took place over the two successive summers of 1929-30 and 1930-31. These were ship-based explorations to chart the antarctic coastline between 45°E and 160°E, led by Australian antarctic explorer and geologist Douglas Mawson.

**1982** Jackson Andrew, ed. *ANARE field manual, 2nd edn* Antarctic Division, Department of Science and Technology: 28.

George V Coast was claimed for the British Crown by Sir Douglas Mawson during the Banzare Expedition of 1929-31.

**1984** Fletcher, Harold *Antarctic days with Mawson: a personal account of the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929-31* Angus and Robertson, London: 91.

During the BANZARE voyages, only occasional seals were sighted, usually occupying inaccessible areas.

**1993** *Antarctic Society of Australia newsletter* 32 (Mar): 8.

The BANZARE expedition did not establish land bases but made extensive geological and biological investigations from the *Discovery* at many points along a 2500 km strip of Antarctic coastline.

## barrel (of oil) noun and attrib., sealing and whaling

[Spec. use of barrel a measure of capacity (NOED).]

An estimated measure of oil yield from a catch of **seals** or **whales**; by extension, the (size of the) creature itself. A US barrel was 31.5 US gallons, a British barrel 35 US gallons.

**22 Nov 1791** Melville, Captain Thomas, quoted in Dakin, William John (1938) *Whalemen adventurers: the story of whaling in Australian waters and other Southern Seas Related Thereto, 2nd edn* Angus & Robertson, Sydney: 11.

The *Salamander* had killed a ten barrel whale and lost her by bad weather.

**15 Feb 1855** (Heard Island) Rogers, Erasmus Darwin, quoted by Richards, Rhys in *American Neptune* (1981) 41: 295.

After steering south-southwest in bad stormy weather for five days, he wrote on 15 February

"At daylight raised land ahead ... Saw plenty of elephant on 3 different beaches .. should think the three beaches had 2,500 barrels of oil on them, mostly cows."

**29 Oct 1912** Murphy, Robert Cushman (1948) *Logbook for Grace Robert Hale Ltd*, London: 118.

Cow sperm whales, the skipper vouchsafed, rarely run larger than twenty-five or thirty barrels. Twenty-barrel cows are still commoner, though he had once or twice taken cows that yielded as much as forty barrels.

## barrier noun and attrib.

[The commandment-like 1953 quotation excludes the modern use of barrier in favour of ice shelf. Surprisingly, this seems to have more or less happened — there are few later quotations.

The 'Great Ice Barrier' barred progress of ships towards the South Pole.]

An **ice barrier**, including the Ross Ice Shelf (see **great ice barrier**).

**1833** Fanning, Edmund *Voyages round the World; with Selected Sketches of Voyages to the South Seas, North and South Pacific Oceans, China, Etc., performed under the Command and Agency of the Author* Collins & Hannay, New York: 472.

They should not leave such station [sc. a port at latitude 30-40°S] before the latter part of the month of January; by so doing, time would be given for the ice at the barrier, which is considered to be between the 60th and 67th degrees of latitude, to break up and drift out of the way.

**11 Jan 1840** (64° 11' S, 164° 30' E) Wilkes, C., quoted in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 365.

There was now a large bay before us. As the vessel moved rapidly, at 10.30 p.m. we had reached its extreme limits, and found our further progress entirely stopped by a compact barrier of ice, enclosing large square icebergs. The barrier consisted of masses closely packed, and of every variety of shape and size.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 334.

[glossary] Barrier.— The edge of the great Antarctic glaciers or ice-caps which enter the sea, but remain attached to the land. They sometimes extend out into the sea many miles from the shore, and are generally from 80 to 200 feet in height above the water.

**1909** Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907-1909* William Heinemann, London: 237.

If we were to accomplish a good journey to the south it was important that they [sc. the ponies] should not be tired out in the early stages of the march over the Barrier surface.

**1916** Doorly, Captain Gerald S. *The voyages of the 'Morning'* Smith, Elder & Co., London: 87.

With the advent of spring sledging was commenced, and one of the first journeys undertaken was along the Barrier surface, following the southern shores of the Erebus and Terror Island.

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 379.

[glossary] Barrier. Some authorities, such as Mr. J.M. Wordie, use this term in preference to the term Shelf Ice ... Others, such as Mr. R.E. Priestly, restrict its use to the Ross Barrier.

**1939** Byrd, Richard E. *Alone* Reader's Union Ltd and Putnam & Co Ltd, London: 7.

Out there on the South Polar barrier, in cold and darkness as complete as that of the Pleistocene, I should have time to catch up.

**1943** Hydrographic Office, US Navy Department *Sailing directions for Antarctica. H.O. no 138* Hydrographic Office, Washington: 21.

Barrier — a thick, largely fresh-water ice formation with a nearly flat upper surface extending seaward from the land but attached thereto ... Modern usage of the term *Barrier* means the cliffed edge of shelf ice.

**1953** *Polar Record* 6(46) Jul: 838.

In order to avoid confusion, the word "barrier" shall be excluded from modern usage, but the "Ross Ice Shelf" and the "Filchner Ice Shelf" may have marked under them, in brackets and in smaller lettering, the phrase "Formerly Ross Barrier", "Formerly Filchner Barrier".

**1991** Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 396.

[glossary] Barrier — a term variously used to refer to the seaward cliff or front of an ice sheet, ice shelf, or substantial field of pack ice, or to an ice shelf as such, eg the Great Ross Barrier now called the Ross Ice Shelf.

## barrier berg

### A tabular berg.

**4 Mar 1842** McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 273.

About midnight, on quitting the cabin and going on deck, I saw a fine, large, perfectly flat-topped barrier berg, upwards of a mile in length. Lat. 68°18', long. 156°7'.

**26-28 Oct 1908** Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 14.

Ice bergs numerous ... Some [are] snow barrier bergs, occasionally tilted, others land ice.

**18 Dec 1910** (67°24'S, 177°34'E) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912* Blandford Press, London: 78.

We passed through lanes of water between sheets of low Barrier bergs of very large area and quite recent fracture. They stood 15 to 20 feet out of water and we had open water, like streets between rows of houses, where they had split.

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 52.

While, on the one hand, no actual shelf ice has been reported from the Arctic, on the other hand, tabular bergs, which in the Antarctic are barrier bergs, are known to exist in the north.

**barrier hush** See **barrier quake**

**barrier ice** noun *phr.* and *attrib.*

The ice making up the **barrier**.

**1839** (67°37'S, 164°54'E) Enderby, Charles in *Journal of the Royal Society* IX: 520.

We found we were in a deep bay, formed by what evidently appeared to be barrier ice and close to it.

**1903** (nr McMurdo Sound) *Eastern Daily Press* 21 May.

During February the ice broke away for seven miles to south of us, but south of that, I think, it never breaks away, as it is then Barrier ice, and not ordinary sea ice.

**1918** Stillwell, F.L. *The metamorphic rocks of Adelle Land. Section 1 Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911-14. Scientific reports series A.- Geography, Physiography, Glaciology, Oceanography, and Geology* South Australian Government Printer, Adelaide, vol III pt 1: 218.

[caption] Cape Gray from the edge of the barrier ice cliffs.

**1942** (1912) Mawson, Douglas *Geographical narrative and cartography. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911-14. Scientific reports series A* Government Printer, Sydney, vol 1: 196.

After descending for some 7 miles, we found ourselves on a plain at the level of the barrier-ice wall of Watt Bay.

**1949** Innes, Hammond (1953 edn) *The white south* Fontana Books, London: 156.

I was not longer looking at their reflections in the atmosphere, but at the bergs themselves. Probably they had calved from the barrier ice somewhere along the Caird Coast.

**1963** Ley, Willy *The Poles: Life nature library* Time-Life International, Nederland: 13.

This outward flow to the sea has produced a phenomenon peculiar to the Antarctic, the so-called barrier ice.

**1991** Bainbridge, Beryl *The birthday boys* Duckworth, London: 111.

The sea was a seething mass of floating chunks of Barrier ice. A mere six hours earlier we could have walked to the Hut on sound sea ice.

**barrier quake** Also **barrier hush**, **barrier shudder** An **icequake**.

**19 Nov 1908** Shackleton, E.H. (1909) *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907-1909* William Heinemann, London: 276.

At 6.20 P.M. we suddenly heard a deep rumble, lasting about five seconds, that made the air and the ice vibrate. It seemed to come from the eastward, and resembled the sound and had the effect of heavy guns firing. We conjecture that it was due to some large mass of the Barrier breaking away, and the distance must be at least fifty miles from where we are. It was startling, to say the least of it.]

**5 Jul 1913** (Ferrar Glacier) Griffith Taylor, T. in Hanley, Wayne, ed. (1978) *The Griffith Taylor collection: diaries and letters of a geographer in Antarctica* Geography Department, University of New England, Armidale: 96.

Here I first made the acquaintance of the "Barrier Shudder." Every now and then a shiver would shake the surface and we could hear the eerie wave of sound expanding like a ripple all around. Sometimes one could see the whole snow surface sinking slightly, and at first the effect was very unpleasant.

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 379.

[glossary] Barrier Shudder. A subsidence of the surface crust, over air spaces.

**22 April 1934** Byrd, Richard E. (1939) *Alone* Reader's Union Ltd and Putnam & Co Ltd, London: 103.

A tremendous boom, as if tons of dynamite had exploded in the Barrier .. This is what is known as a Barrier quake — a subsidence of great areas of snow contracting from cold.

- [1943 Debenham, Frank in *Polar Record* 4(25) Jan: 21. Even the apparently alarming noise of the escaping air when an area of packed snow sank suddenly under the weight of the sledge did not produce panic in him as it did in most of the dogs. Wilson described his reaction in this way. "There were innumerable subsidences of the surface — the breaking of crusts over air spaces with a hushing sort of noise or muffled report. My leader Stareek thought there was a rabbit under the crust every time one gave way close by him and he would jump sideways with both feet on the spot and his nose in the snow. The action was like a flash and never checked the team." The "Barrier Hush", as it came to be called, later became a source of interest to all the dogs and was welcomed by the drivers for that reason.]

### BAS *noun and attrib.*

[From the acronym for British Antarctic Survey. British Antarctic Territory extends from 60° S, between 20° W and 80° W. The Survey was formerly the Falkland Islands Dependencies Survey: see **FID**.]

The British Antarctic Survey, which is based in Cambridge, England.

- 1989** *Antarctic Science* 1(1) Mar: 57.  
The Antarctic specimens were collected by British Antarctic Survey (BAS) geologists in 1982/83 and 1987/88.
- 1991** Venables, Stephen *Island at the edge of the world: a South Georgia odyssey* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 80.  
The BAS personnel left on the island were instructed to lie low and avoid antagonising the enemy but, as BAS has discovered over the years, if you want staff to work for months or even years at a time in the wilds of Antarctica, you have to accept people with a strong spirit of adventure.
- 1997** Diski, Jenny *Skating to Antarctica* Granta Books, London: 6.  
I phoned around a little to people who might know. It became clear that the BAS was the key, and the only key, to getting onto the white continent and that my chances of persuading them were virtually nil.

### base, the *Tristan da Cunha and Inaccessible Island.* *Often with a capital, as the Base*

The sloping plateau under the main peak on the island of Tristan da Cunha; (occas.) the similar feature on nearby Inaccessible Island.

- [16 Dec 1817 (Tristan da Cunha) Carmichael, Captain Dugald in *Transactions of the Linnean Society of London* (1818) 12(2): 484.  
The face of the mountain, as far up as the base of the dome, is mostly covered with brush-wood, intermixed with fern and long grass.]
- 13 Jun 1906** Barrow, K.M. (1910) *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 47.  
By "the Base" the islanders mean the top of the cliffs which gird the island, and which rise one thousand to two thousand feet.
- 1926** Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 81.  
The land at Seal Bay is like that at the Settlement, shut in by the huge cliffs of the Base, as the people call the lower approaches of the Central Peak, which occupies the greater part of the island.
- 1951** Rowan, M.K. in *The Ostrich* XXII(3) Dec: 140.  
At Tristan da Cunha itself, the coastline is ringed with 2,000 ft. cliffs, surmounted by a gently sloping plateau, called the Base.

- 1989** (Inaccessible Island) *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 4 (Mar): 5.  
Amongst difficulties to be overcome were: the rugged terrain, the cloud (down over the 'base' two days out of every three) which hindered exploration inland, and the weather on the west side of the Island which prevented the launching of our dinghy on most days, for coastal exploration.
- 1993** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 13 (Sept): 9.  
My visit of 25–28 January 1993 in the R.M.S. St Helena was my fourth to Tristan da Cunha. The principle [sic] objective this time was a climb up to the Base, or plateau, to secure video footage and slides of the two species of albatross nesting there.

### basie *South African*

An **expeditioner**.

- 1964** (Sanae) *Antarktische Bulletin* 3 (May): 4.  
Oubaas (the dog) ... is the only permanent inhabitant of the station and it will be understandable if he should turn into a neurotic being with so many strange "basies" to get accustomed to every year.

### bastoos *Falkland Islands*

[From the Latin American Spanish *basto pack-saddle*.]

A South American saddle for horseriding.

- 27 Jan 1882** Wiseman, William in Layman, Rear-Admiral C.H. and Cameron, Jane (1995) *The Falklands and the Dwarf: the cruise of HMS Dwarf in the Falkland Islands 1881–1882* Picton Publishing, Chippenham: 139.  
Oh how rough and bad the ground seemed, and what an abomination the South American saddle<sup>1</sup> and how I longed for an English one.  
<sup>1</sup>These may either have been the padded leather sections, laced together down the centre, known as *bastoos*, or the wooden-framed saddle known as the Falkland Island saddle, or *malvinero*, both originating with the Uruguayan gauchos.

### bathydraconid

[From the Greek *βαθύς* deep + *δράκων* a sea fish.]

Any of the shallow to deepwater marine fishes which make up the family Bathydraconidae (see **dragonfish**), found only in Antarctica.

- 1968** Everson, Inigo and Ralph, R. in *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* 15 (Mar): 61.  
A tendency for Antarctic fish to reduce the number of erythrocytes and the amount of haemoglobin in their blood ... is clearly seen in the bathydraconid, *Parachaenichthys georgianus*.
- 1990** Ekau, W. in *Antarctic Science* 2(2) Jun: 132.  
The bathydraconids had their maximum densities at depths of around 450 m.

### bay ice *noun phr. and attrib. Also simply bay*

**Sea ice** confined within a bay. Bay ice can be thick and apparently solid, but can quickly disintegrate, and is therefore dangerous to travel on.

- 1849** Cooper, James Fenimore *The sea lions; or, the lost sealers* Richard Bentley, London: 200.  
Some of the sealers ascribed this obstinacy in the bay-ice to its greater thickness.
- 22 Feb 1898** Cook, Frederick A. (1980 repr.) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* McGill–Queen's University Press, Montreal: 186.  
The ice, too, is what is usually termed bay-ice, with freshly broken edges, with icicles hanging from some points, and having upon the surface only small hummocks.

**17 Dec 1929** (64°S, 77°E) Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 284.

Many fair-sized bergs today, most shelf ice, many tilted, also some large glacier-ice bergs — crevassed ice. There have been many thick old bay ice bergs, say 5-year ice like miniature shelf ice, say 12 ft face to 6 ft face.

**1931** (Ross Ice Shelf) O'Brien, John S. *By dog sled for Byrd: 1600 miles across Antarctic ice* Thomas S. Rockwell, Chicago: 20.

The treacherous, ever-changing bay ice has undergone enormous changes in the last twenty-four hours. Towering pressure ridges — those huge jagged elevations of ice formed by the shifting currents — have been thrown across the former trail over this area.

**1957** Anderson, W. Ellery *Expedition south* Evans Brothers, London: 85.

"Don't be daft, man. You'll need a boat not a sledge from the way the bay ice is breaking up."

**1968** Herbert, Wally *A world of men: exploration in Antarctica* Eyre & Spottiswoode, London: 26.

No ship had ever been in that bay before, so the Captain was disinclined to break a channel through the old bay ice towards the previously-chosen site of the new site.

**1980** *Geo [Aust]* 2(3): 60.

The wind shifted, blowing the ice out of Moubray Bay. We were free and limped to the edge of the bay ice where we moored and licked our wounds.

**1993** (Casey station) Clark, Linda and Wishart, Elspeth 66° *South Queen Victoria Museum, Launceston*: 46.

Summertime came and all that bay used to break out of there and cart all the remains of the burnt out rubbish.

### **beachmaster** *noun and attrib.*

1. A dominant breeding male seal who has a territory (usually on a beach) that includes females with which he will breed, and where he maintains his position by demonstrating his strength.

**[1 Aug 1824** (Tristan da Cunha) Earle, Augustus (1832) *A narrative of a nine months' residence in New Zealand, in 1827; together with a journal of a residence in Tristan d'Acunha, an island situated between South America and the Cape of Good Hope* Longman, Rees, Orme, Brown, Green, & Longman, London: 344.

The moment the ladies appear, the males make a terrible snorting noise, the signal for them to commence a dreadful battle, in order to determine which shall be the champion of the strand. The monsters throw themselves on each other.]

**1879** (Kerguelen Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 202.

The old male elephants were described by the sealers of Heard Island as having a trunk 10 inches in length. These old males were called "Beach-masters."

**20 Jan 1913** Murphy, Robert Cushman (1948) *Logbook for Grace Robert Hale Ltd, London*: 203.

After a while a second bull [sc. sea elephant] came swimming alongshore and hauled out near by, but the aggressive and jealous beachmaster at once attacked and drove him off.

**1966** MacKenzie, D., ed. *Fog 'N Bog [yearbook of Macquarie Island ANARE overwinterers]* ANARE, Macquarie Island: 45.

Dozens of heavy bodies roll through the surf and lift themselves onto the rocky beach. Motivated by a strong homing instinct, these are the mature bull seals returning to the rookery of their birth for the breeding season. They are swollen with much feeding. Their necks, chests and shoulders, two-thirds of their total body weight, are enormous. The biggest and strongest are the beachmasters, the bosses.

**1978** (Marion and Prince Edward Islands) Condy, P.R. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* 8: 45.

All adult male elephant seals, hauled-out during the breeding season, were considered to be breeding bulls, and were classified as being either beachmasters, assistant beachmasters, challengers or bachelors.

**1986** (Auckland Islands) Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 32.

[caption, sc. *Arctocephalus forsteri*] Each of the two beachmaster bulls presides over a harem of smaller, fawn-coloured females, some of them with pups.

**1993** (Macquarie Island) *Station News [Australian Antarctic Division]* Feb: 5.

Ellies — Elephant Seals. They come in three sizes, large, very large, and extremely large. The latter may become BEACHMASTERS; huge males weighing up to three tonnes that establish and hold a section of beach as their breeding territory.

### 2. **Sealing**

The supervisor of sealing operations on a beach.

**1915** (Heard Island) Harvey, Rufus Watson *Thrilling adventures in the Antarctic wilds* Unpublished record, in possession of Tim Vasquez: 31.

He was the beach master or to state it more plainly was the man in charge of the work and the men who were on that beach.

### 3. **Aust.**

[Beach-master is recorded in 1875 (NOED) for an officer appointed to superintend troop disembarkation.]

The co-ordinator in loading or unloading from a ship at the beach or wharf of an antarctic station.

**1986** (Heard Island) Smith, Jeremy *Specks in the Southern Ocean* Department of Geography and Planning, University of New England, Armidale: 36.

Bob Walsh went too, to control handling of stores on the beach; he was the beachmaster, a name more usually used in Antarctic regions to refer to dominant male Elephant Seals.

**1991** *Casey News [Casey station]* Dec: [1].

Especially notable were .. Ron (Shaggs) Sherwood for coordinating the exercise as beachmaster, the Larcies for the non-stop effort travelling between ship and shore and all those involved in the numerous chain gangs to shift the items from container to storage.

**[1996** Downes, Max *Indexing sealer's logbooks from Heard Island* ANARE Research Notes no 97, Australian Antarctic Division, Kingston: 15.

Experienced "beach-headers" who took charge of the work on shore were a valuable part of a crew properly fitted out for elephanting.]

### **beachmastership**

The dominance of a **beachmaster** seal.

**1964** (Macquarie Island) Nunn, Robert in *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(12) Dec: 556.

Large veteran male elephant seals again recline on the beaches and in the wallows awaiting their fate and the chance to assert their beachmastership.

### **beaker** *US*

[Presumably after the character Beaker on the television show *The Muppets*.]

A scientist.

**1990** *Antarctica Sun Times [US Naval Support Force, Antarctica]* IV(iii) 7 Nov: 8.

Grantees (beakers) will be on hand to answer your questions.  
**1996** (McMurdo station) Kiernan, Vincent in *New Scientist* 150 (2025) 13 April: 33.

The cultural divide is just as obvious to the support staff. They tend to refer to scientists as “beakers”. The term’s origin is obscure (one suggestion is that it came from “beaker scum”, a term used to describe algae from the ice which scientists collected in beakers), but it all too effectively conjures up the image of nerdy types who plunge ahead with some arcane project, oblivious to the social niceties and the amazing natural wonders all round.

**1996** (McMurdo Sound) Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 90.

‘Once the beakers have crated up their samples they don’t have any work to do,’ he shouted, ‘so they sleep all day and party all night.’ ‘Beaker’ was a character in *Sesame Street*, but the term had been appropriated and was applied to all scientists.

## beakerdom

[Fr *beaker*.]

The world of **beakers**.

**1996** Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 160.

Seven seasons in Antarctica, including two winters, had left him with a healthy disrespect for beakerdom.

## bear

A **sea bear**.

**1849** Cooper, James Fenimore *The sea lions; or, the lost sealers* vol II: 132.

Roswell was standing .. overlooking the long reach of rocky coast over which the “sea-elephants,” and “lions,” and “dogs,” and “bears,” were waddling.

**1955** (Enderby Island, Auckland Islands) Eden, Allan W. *Islands of despair: being an account of a survey expedition to the subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Andrew Melrose, London: 37.

We had more seal trouble at the camp, and Les had to get up at 5 a.m. to chase away a bear that was getting mixed up with our cooking utensils and cutlery. It was bellowing to its pup.

## Beche tent Also *Bechervaise tent*

[Abbreviation of the name of Australian antarctic explorer John Mayston Béchervaise, 1910–1998.]

A tent with two entrances, designed for antarctic conditions.

**9–12 Mar 1960** Béchervaise, John (1963) *Blizzard and fire: a year at Mawson, Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 244.

Styles, Budd and I also went ashore .. to erect the small orange Béche tent in which Syd had decided to put sole trust as shelter for the long journey.

**1966** (Kerguelen Island) Temple, Philip *The sea and the snow* Cassell Australia, Melbourne: 79.

The Pyramid and Bechervaise tents were heavy and sturdy, well fitted for the atrocious weather on Heard.

**1967** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] June: 14.

It was a lovely camp — the tractor train, little Beche tent, line of dogs picketed out on the neve, whispering snow streaming past in the vast frozen wilderness and 52 degrees of frost!

**1995** Maggs, Tom in Robinson, Shelagh, ed. *Huskies in harness: a love story in Antarctica* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 92.

We were camping in Beche tents, to save weight. Compact, with generous entrance tunnels front and rear, good aerody-

namics, and lighter than the polar pyramid, the Beche for all of that was cursed with poles which had to be assembled and disassembled each time you pitched or dropped camp.

## bellbird

[Bellbird is recorded in Australian English for the bird *Myzantha melanophrys* with its ringing call from 1799– (AND), and in NZ English for the bird *Anthornis melanura* from 1845– (DNZE). This is a specialised use of the New Zealand meaning.]

The small green bird *Anthornis melanura melanura* (fam. Meliphagidae), of New Zealand’s subantarctic islands as well as mainland New Zealand. It has a beautiful song.

**15 Mar 1904** (Auckland Islands) Wilson, Edward in Roberts, Brian, ed. (1967) *Edward Wilson’s birds of the Antarctic* New Orchard Editions, Poole [Dorset]: 153.

I then shot a green bellbird, one of the honey eaters with a brush tongue. It had a most glorious note, a Blackbird’s warble and the thickets are full of it here.

**1973** (Auckland Islands) *The Islander: the quarterly bulletin of the Campbell–Raoul Island association* 2(6) Mar: 127.

Tits and bellbirds were feeding young.

**1986** (Auckland Islands) Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand’s subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington NZ: vii.

Landing on sheltered eastern shores, we would immediately be surrounded by bellbirds, which would stay for several minutes, filling the air with “the most melodious music ... almost imitating small bells but with the most tunable silver sound imaginable,” as Joseph Banks described it, when he first landed on the New Zealand mainland with Captain Cook.

## benny *Falkland Islands*

[Originally, from 1982, used in a somewhat derogatory sense; now less so. From the yokel Benny, a character in the British television program Crossroads.]

A **Falkland Islander**.

**1999** *The Sunday Times* [London] 23 May: 20.

WIWIFI (When I was in the Falklands) we were specifically ordered not to call Falkland Islanders “Bennies”. They were then referred to as “Stills” — still Bennies. This was also outlawed. The islanders then became known as “Andies” — and ‘e’s still a Benny.

## berg

[Berg is recorded from about the same time (1823: NOED) in arctic usage, where its sense is the same, though the normal form of icebergs is somewhat different.]

An **iceberg**. In the Antarctic, the commonest form of iceberg is the **tabular berg**.

**16 Dec 1820** Bellingshausen, Thaddeus, in Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. (1945) *The voyage of Captain Bellingshausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819–1821* Hakluyt Society, London, vol 2: 371.

At 11 o’clock a tremendous roar of surf was carried over to us on the wind. I posted men all around the ship, on gangways, ladders, on lowest steps near the very water’s edge, for the lower the eye or ear is placed, the more easily is the whiteness of the bergs picked up.

**1840** *The Sydney Herald* 12 Mar: 2.

The *Vincennes* .. run [sic] down the coast from 154°18’ to 97°45’ east longitude, about seventeen hundred miles, within a short distance of the land, often so near as to get

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

soundings with a few fathoms of line, during which time she was constantly surrounded by ice islands and bergs, and experiencing many heavy gales of wind, exposing her constantly to shipwreck.

**14 Feb 1898** Arctowski, Henryk in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 494.

On Monday, February 14, the sea was free from ice, except for bergs, many of which were in sight.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 39.

At Cape Adare huge bergs were often observed during perfectly calm weather travelling at about four knots an hour towards the north-west.

**1916** Doorly, Captain Gerald S. *The voyages of the 'Morning'* Smith, Elder & Co., London: 57.

Christmas Day was even more perfect, the sky being cloudless. The calm sea, strewn with bergs of the most erratic shapes, and with denser drift ice, displayed in the intense sunshine a truly wonderful and dazzling effect.

**18 Mar 1945** (Deception Island) *Polar Record* (1946) 4(32): 378. We parted a cable in the night and have had to stand out to sea: in thick visibility we have hit a berg and our bow is stove in.

**1969** *The Polar Times* 69 (Dec): 18.

A berg under four feet high is called a growler, and the ice-packed sea abounds with them. Up to 20 feet high they are referred to as bergy bits; small berg to 50 feet high; medium berg to 150 feet in height, and large berg, more than 150 feet high.

**1974** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] Dec: 42.

The long, flat bergs of the Antarctic make their craggy counterparts in the North Atlantic seem puny. Bergs that measure ten miles long and half-a-mile wide are considered "small" in the southern hemisphere ... Arctic icebergs break off from tidewater glaciers that slope down to the water's edge and thus are comparatively modest in size. The reason for the vastness of the Antarctic bergs is that they are calved off ice shelves. Actually continuations of fairly level glaciers, these shelves may grow hundreds of miles out to sea before breaking off as literal ice islands.

**1991** Hooper, Meredith A for *Antarctica: facts and stories from the frozen South* Pan Books, London: 70.

Antarctic bergs have more bubbles than Arctic bergs, so float higher in the water. Even then four-fifths of an Antarctic iceberg is below sea level.

## berg ice

The ice which forms a **berg**.

**1911** Hobbs, William Herbert *Characteristics of existing glaciers* The Macmillan Company, NY: 191.

It should not, however, be overlooked that the "Challenger" exploring expedition, while undertaken primarily for other than Antarctic exploration, entered Antarctic water in 1874, crossed the Antarctic Circle, and has furnished especially valuable data upon the pack and berg ice of that region.

**1984** Lewis, David in *National Geographic* 166(5) Nov: 650.

Norm and Jamie were given simple tasks and chores (such as collecting berg ice to be thawed for drinking water) that required them to spend some time off the boat.

## berging *verbal noun*

### Calving.

**1979** Lovering, J.F. and Prescott, J.R.V. *Last of lands ... Antarctica* Melbourne University Press, Parkville: 14.

Most of the wastage of the Antarctic Ice Sheet is the discharge of icebergs along its edge since the low temperatures of the sheet preclude appreciable loss by melting even during summer. The total loss by berging is estimated at  $57 \times 10^{10}$  tonnes per year.

## berglet

[**Berg** + -let (*diminutive*)]

A small **iceberg**.

**3 Jan 1911** Griffith Taylor, Thomas in Hanley, Wayne, ed. (1978) *The Griffith Taylor collection: diaries and letters of a geographer in Antarctica* Geography Department, University of New England, Armidale: 56.

It was undercut a lot and the berglets broke off here.

**1987** Lewis, David with Lewis, Mimi *Icebound in Antarctica* Secker & Warburg, London: 141.

Thirty feet is much too shallow for even the smallest berglet.

## bergy bit *Usu as pl. bergy bits*

A large fragment of (*usu.* glacier) ice, often described as house-sized, and larger than the fragment called a **growler**. They are usually but not always free-floating (despite the 1928 quotation); they can also be frozen into **sea ice**, or **grounded**.

**1906** (South Orkneys) Rudmose Brown, R.N., Mossman, RC and Pirie, J.H. Harvey *The voyage of the "Scotia", being the record of a voyage of exploration in Antarctic Seas by Three of the Staff* William Blackwood and Sons, Edinburgh: 169.

There were a few "bergy bits" of ice about, but they were easily dodged.

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 379.

Bergy Bits. "Medium-sized pieces of glacier ice, or of heavy floes, or hummocky pack washed clear of snow," and floating in the sea. Usually about the size of a cottage.

**8 Dec 1929** (60°17'S, 77°50'E) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 273.

By 1 pm bergs and bergy bits very numerous. Clear bars in sky ahead suggest pack ice is not far away.

**20 Jan 1957** *Station log 1, Davis, 20 Jan-4 May 1957* Davis, Antarctica: 3.

The station's fresh water supply is being supplemented by odd pieces of ice which drift ashore from the nearby grounded "bergy bit".

**1968** *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* 13 (Apr): 2.

A particularly ferocious bergy bit, conservatively estimated to weigh 50 tons, attacked the tide gauge installation.

**1988** Williams, R. in *Hydrobiologia* 165: 166.

*P. borchgrevinkii* was the main species .. caught at the inshore sites in the Rauer Islands, generally by angling through holes in the sea ice. Eighty per cent of these specimens were caught under the sea ice, especially where bergy bits were frozen into it, and were uniformly pale.

## bergy seltzer

[From **berg**, -y + *seltzer* an *effervescent mineral water*.]

The fizzing produced when air trapped in **iceberg** ice is liberated.

**1987** Bates, Robert L. and Jackson, Julia A., eds *Glossary of geology, 3rd edition* American Geological Institute, Alexandria: 66.



Bergy seltzer: A sizzling sound, like that of newly uncorked seltzer water, emitted by an iceberg when melting. It is caused by the release of air bubbles that were retained in the ice under high pressure.

**1995** Ives, Jack D. and Sugden, David, eds *Polar regions Reader's Digest*, Sydney: 26.

[caption] In warm summer water, a high-pitched hissing sound, "bergy seltzer", created by high-pressure bubbles [sc. in the iceberg] being released as the ice melts, can be heard.

### beset *adjective*

Of a vessel etc.: hemmed in by ice. A vessel which is beset or **ice-bound** can drift for great distances, but is not in control of its path. Geographical features — mountains, islands — can also be beset, becoming inaccessible when ice surrounds them.

**1820** Miers, John in *Edinburgh Philosophical Journal* 3(6): 370.

Mr Smith on his return to the River Plate in June following, was determined, if possible, to verify what he had seen: he steered in the latitude of 62° 12'S., but when he reached the longitude of 67°W he became so beset with loose pack-ice, that he was alarmed for the safety of his ship and cargo; in a few hours he got clear, and stood off on his course, considering that all attempts in his situation, with the very short days and in the depth of winter, would be extremely indiscreet.

**28 Feb 1831** Weddell, James in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 322.

Latitude 65° 57'S., longitude 47° 20' 30"E. P.M., passed to the southward through much broken field-ice. 4 p.m. saw several hummocks to the southward, which much resembled tops of mountains, and at 6 p.m. clearly distinguished it to be land, and to a considerable extent; to my great satisfaction what we had first seen being the black tops of mountains showing themselves through the snow on the lower land, which, however, appeared to be a great distance off, and completely beset with close field-ice and icebergs.

**1900** Cook, Frederick A. (1980 repr.) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898-1899* McGill-Queen's University Press, Montreal: xiii.

After penetrating ninety miles we found ourselves firmly beset. Unable to extricate the ship, we drifted with the ice to and fro, but generally west, for thirteen long months.

**1916** Wild, Frank in *Magellan Times* 7 Sept (no. 122): 6.

On the 25th of April, the day after the departure of your boat, the island was beset by dense pack.

**1942** *Polar Record* 3(24) Jul: 581.

Shackleton had ordered the ship to winter north of Glacier Tongue as the *Discovery* in 1902 had failed to break out from farther south, and this order compelled Stenhouse to moor the *Aurora* in a precarious position off Cape Evans. In winter darkness on May 6, in 1915, a heavy blizzard snapped the six steel hawsers and chain cable holding the stern, and dragged away the two bower [sic] anchors. Beset in the pack, the ship drifted through the Ross Sea for nine months.

**1972** Neethling, D.C. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research*: 6.

The RSA was beset for more than 5 weeks in close pack only 180 km from Sanae.

### besetment

I cannot improve on the 1928 quotation for besetment: Of a vessel, the state of becoming surrounded by ice and losing 'its liberty of motion'.

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 379.

[glossary] Besetment. The immurement of a ship in sea-ice. When a vessel is so completely hemmed in as to have lost its liberty of motion it is said to be beset.

**1964** Helm, A.S. and Miller, J.H. *Antarctica. The story of the New Zealand party of the Trans-Antarctic expedition* R.E. Owen, Government Printer, Wellington: 112.

The increasing pack eventually brought the ship to a standstill on Christmas Day. This was as yet no besetment but an inability to make further southward progress until visibility should clear sufficiently to indicate the direction of leads.

**1980** Woodard, Edwin and Bischoff, Heather *Woodard Storehouses of the snow* Leisure Books, Norwalk, Connecticut: 10.

There was to be a "besetment" party until the ship got out of the ice jam.

**1988** Butler, Rowan *Breaking the ice* Albatross Books, Sydney: 122.

Our besetment caused Antarctic Division to make the first of many revisions to the shipping schedule in an exceptional season.

### big canary *Tristan da Cunha* Also **big bill(ed) canary**

[big (bill) from the bird's stout beak + canary a songbird of the finch fam. *Fringillidae*.]

The small greenish-yellow bird *Neospiza wilkinsi* (fam. *Fringillidae*) which breeds on Nightingale Island in the Tristan da Cunha group. It is also called a **canary**, and **Wilkins bunting**.

**1940** (Nightingale Island) Christopherson, Erling *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 98.

Hitherto I had looked for *Wilkinsi*, the big canary, in the tussock, where I saw the other canaries. This had been a mistake, and now .. I combed the scrub for hours ... Next day, however, I .. shot one I thought looked big. Shortly afterwards I stood with the first fine specimen in my hand ... Disappointingly unimposing, yellowish-green in colour, only the enormous beak and powerful legs pointed to something out of the ordinary.

**1952** Hagen, Yngvar *Birds of Tristan da Cunha* Det Norske Videnskap Akademi i Oslo/Hos Jacob Dybwad, Oslo: 175.

Most Tristan people did not know *Nesospiza wilkinsi* as they usually named the *Nesospiza* finches "Canary" without recognizing that there are two distinct forms. However, at least one of the Tristan men who served us as guides, knew a so-called "Big Canary" and we always called the bird by this name when we spoke about it.

**1969** Zettersten, Arne *The English of Tristan da Cunha* Lund Studies in English no 37: 93.

Canary .. is the local name for the Tristan Bunting, *Nesospiza acunhae*, which is now extinct on Tristan but still found on Nightingale. There are two distinct forms of the *Nesospiza* finches. Some people recognise the difference and call *Nesospiza wilkinsi*, *Big Canary* or *Big-billed Canary*.

**1976** Ryssen, W.J. van *The birds of the Tristan da Cunha group and Gough Island* Board of Extra-mural Studies, University of Cape Town: 30.

Wilkins' bunting *Nesospiza Wilkinsi* Big Bill Canary .. Nightingale and Inaccessible Islands only.

### big-crested penguin NZ

[Big-crested from the erect crest of yellow feathers + penguin.]

The penguin *Eudyptes sclateri*: see **erect-crested penguin**.

**1909** (Antipodes Island) Waite, Edgar R. in Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington, vol. 2: 236.

As we put foot ashore we were greeted with the defiant shrieks of birds, chiefly *Catarractes sclateri*, present in countless thousands. The big-crested penguin occupied all the available space on the beach, and for some distance up the slopes also.

**1936** (Antipodes Island) Guthrie-Smith, W.H. *Sorrows and joys of a New Zealand naturalist* AH & AW Reed, Dunedin: 227.

The lower stone and boulder space was appropriated by the larger Big Crested Penguin (*Catarractes sclateri*).

## big eat See big heaps

## big eye

Insomnia attributed to changes in the length of daylight in antarctic regions.

**1958** Barber, Noel *The white desert* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 52.

The brassy sun beat down every hour of the twenty-four, giving Antarctica its only occupational disease, known as the "big eye", a local word for insomnia.

**1962** Henderson, Jim *One foot at the Pole* Whitcombe & Tombs, Christchurch: 77.

What with the different moods and feelings and experiences, and the sun never setting but slinking round the horizon like a spy plane, it's hard to drop off sometimes. Even veterans can feel the same way. 'Big eye', they call sleeplessness.

**1969** Keneally, Thomas *The survivor* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 247.

He would permit Mrs Leeming, he said with a sly Irish smile, to visit the pit site only if she got a full night's sleep, no big-eye, no waiting up for the midnight sun.

**1992** 45th ANARE *Casey yearbook* 1992 ANARE, Casey: 54.

[glossary] Big Eye: Expeditioners seen wandering aimlessly around the Red Shed when they cannot sleep, because the long hours of darkness upset their internal clocks.

**1997** Gemmell, Nicki *Shiver* Vintage Books, Random House: 227.

I've slept sparsely during my time in Antarctica and on my last night I sleep deeply for only an hour. I've become used to grabbing at sleep in snatches. 'You've got Big Eye, Fin. We all get it down here in summer'.

## bigeye krill

A crustacean of the genus *Thysanoessa* (fam. Euphausiidae), esp. *T. macrura* of the Southern Ocean, occurring south of 50°S, but more often south of 60°S, to the edge of the pack ice. It grows to about 30 mm length. See also **krill**.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 86.

*Thysanoessa macrura* ... Bigeye krill ... Distinctive characters: Eyes large [etc].

**1992** Campbell, David *The crystal desert* Secker & Warburg, London: 98.

The eye is spherical, not lobed. This tells me that it is not in the genus *Thysanoessa*, the big-eyed krills.

## big gull Falkland Islands

[Big, see 1910 quotation + gull recorded from 1430– (NOED) for birds of the fam. Laridae.]

The seagull *Larus dominicanus*, otherwise known as the **Dominican gull**.

**1910** Cobb, Arthur F. *Wildlife in the Falkland Islands* Gowans & Gray, London: 68.

[caption] Nest and eggs of Dominican gull. These birds are locally called Big Gulls as they are the largest and most common of the Falkland Gulls.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 193.

Kelp Gull *Larus dominicanus* .. Local names: Big Gull, White Gull; Grey Gull (1st year) ... The largest gull breeding in the Falklands, it is familiar around Stanley and all settlements.

## big heaps Tristan da Cunha. Also big eat

A feast; a sumptuous meal.

**1964** Hosegood, Nancy *The glass island: the story of Tristan da Cunha* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 156.

Memories of Christmas Day on Tristan, when everyone had shared an enormous feast of stuffed roast lamb followed by Spotted Dick (known as the 'big eat') ... "Dey h'ain't lettin' nobody come for Chris'mas h'arter all!" ... "H'all the more f'r us h'at da big eat."

**1983** Fraser, Michael, Gilfillan, David, Hall, Nick et al *Denstone Expedition to Inaccessible Island. Denstonian Supplement Autumn 1983* Denstone College, Uttoxeter: 21.

Like all the other Islanders, 'our' three showered kindness upon us and each invited us to 'big heaps' in his home back on Tristan.

**1992** (1940s) *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 10 (Mar): 11.

Big Heaps are a regular feature of Island life, not only as a form of payment, but also when any occasion such as an important birthday or a wedding is to be celebrated. (Important birthdays are first, twenty-first, fortieth, fiftieth and sixtieth birthdays). When such an occasion is the reason for Big Heaps, then all the family, which means at least half the population, are invited to an enormous meal ... These colossal meals, with meats, puddings and baked foods of great variety are all prepared by the women-folk of the family on open fires in the deep low hearths of the cottages.

## bipolar adjective

Occurring in both the antarctic and arctic regions. Plants or animals which are described as bipolar are usually absent from intermediate regions.

**1896** [source: NOED] Ortmann, A.E. in *Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Philad.* 1895: 191.

The examples of bipolar distribution of crustacea.

**1907** Fowler, G. Herbert in *National Antarctic Expedition 1901–1904. Natural history. vol III Zoology and botany (Invertebrata: marine algae, musci)* British Museum, London: 6.

The record of *Krohnia hamata* as a truly "bipolar" species is thus completed; it ranges from 81°30'N .. to 77°49'S.

**1948** Lamb, I. Mackenzie *Antarctic pyrenocarp lichens*. Discovery reports vol XXV. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 9.

It has long been known that the antarctic flora includes a considerable bipolar element, consisting of species which occur also in the Arctic.

**1996** (McMurdo Sound) Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 175.

The Captain had just written a book on Soviet Maritime History. 'Are you more interested in the south?' I asked hopefully as we sat in his private quarters sipping Coca-Cola. He had a drawing of a polar bear by Nansen on the wall. 'No,' he said. 'I am bipolar'.

**bipolarity**

The quality of being **bipolar**.

**1896** [source: NOED] Ortmann, A.E. in *Proc. Acad. Nat. Sci. Philad.* 1895: 191.

Neither in this species is .. a bipolarity of the genus probable.

**1898** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* VII(LII): xl.

Mr. Sclater brought forward the subject of "Bipolarity," which had been much discussed recently in the debates on the question of the scientific advantages of an Antarctic expedition, and remarked that in the case of the higher Vertebrates, or in that of Birds at least, no sort of "Bipolarity" could be stated to exist.

**1959** Cragg, J.B. in Johnson, M.L., Abercrombie, Michael and Fogg, G.E. *New biology* no. 29, May, Penguin Books, St Albans [UK]: 117.

The word has undergone some change of meaning since it first became prominent in biological discussions after the return of the *Challenger* expedition in the last half of the nineteenth century. It then meant the occurrence of the same species in Arctic and Antarctic regions with its absence from regions in between. In a very short period of time, the sharpness of its meaning was lost and bipolarity came to include those cases where organisms occurred in the north and south temperate zones but were absent from the tropics. The term underwent still further changes and was used to cover not only species, but genera and even higher classification categories provided they had a discontinuous distribution with northern and southern forms.

**Bird Islander** *Brit.*

A past or present resident of the BAS station on Bird Island (54°S, 38°03'W), at the western end of South Georgia. This small base opened in 1958 and was occupied intermittently by British and American parties until 1971, when it became a regular summer base. It has been manned continuously since the early 1980s for wildlife research, and is a Site of Special Scientific Interest.

**1988** *BAS Club Newsletter* 23 (Spring): 9.

Will any Bird Islanders who would welcome an excuse to meet please contact me.

**blaaahval** *Also blahval*

[From the Norwegian blåhval blue whale.]

A **blue whale**.

**1916** Andrews, Roy Chapman *Whale hunting with gun and camera* D. Appleton & Co, NY: 178.

The Norwegian name *blahval* was given to the greatest of all living creatures because of the distinctly bluish color of its body. The Newfoundland and American whalers call the animal "sulphur-bottom," a most inappropriate name, for there is no suggestion of yellow on its body.

**1964** Jenkins, Geoffrey *A grue of ice* Fontana Books, London: 51. He raised his tankard. "To the Blaaahval." Here it comes, I thought, with that toast to the Blue Whale. "Blaahval!" echoed the Norwegians.

**black albatross.** *In 20th century usage, restricted to Tristan da Cunha*

The albatross *Diomedea fuliginosa*, generally now known as the **sooty albatross**.

**1726** Shelvocke, George, quoted in Balch, Edwin Swift (1902) *Antarctica* Allen, Lane & Scott, Philadelphia: 59.

We had not had the sight of one fish of any kind, since we were come to the southward of the Straights of le Mair, nor one sea bird, except a disconsolate black albatross who accompanied us for several days.

**1817** Carmichael, Captain Dugald in *Transactions of the Linnean Society of London* (1818) 12(2): 489.

The black albatrosses (*D. fuliginosa*) are at this season gregarious, building their nests close to each other. In the area of half an acre I reckoned upwards of a hundred. They are constructed of mud, raised five or six inches, and slightly depressed at the top. At the time we passed, the young birds were more than half grown, and covered with a whitish down. There was something extremely grotesque in the appearance of these birds standing on their respective hillocks motionless like so many statues, until we approached close to them, when they set up the strangest clattering with their beaks, and, if we touched them, squirted on us a deluge of foetid oily fluid from the stomach.

**24 Jan 1840** Wilkes, Charles in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 413.

Penguins were swimming round, and also several shoals of black-fish; a black albatross was shot; towards night the weather became very thick; they [sc. the *Porpoise*] were in longitude 150°E., latitude 65°56'S.

**1862** (41°S, 46°E) Layard, E.L. in *The Ibis* IV(XIV) Apr: 97.

In its [sc. *Procellaria gigantea*] company arrived *Diomedea fuliginosa* (the Black Albatros), from which it is easily distinguished by its flesh-coloured bill and more rounded tail, whereas *D. fuliginosa* has a black bill and a cuneiform tail.

**1963** Mackay, Margaret *Angry island: the story of Tristan da Cunha (1506-1963)* Arthur Barker, London: 42.

The black albatross built its nest of earth, about a foot high.

**black and white curlew** *Falkland Islands Also black and white oystercatcher*

[Oyster-catcher has been used for black or black and white birds of the fam. *Haematopodidae* since 1731 (NOED).]

The wading bird *Haematopus leucopodus* (fam. *Haematopodidae*) of the Falkland Islands and southern South America. It is also called the 'Magellanic oystercatcher' and  **pied oystercatcher**, and simply 'curlew' in the Falkland Islands.

**23 May 1842** McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 286.

I shot one black and three black and white oyster-catchers. **1861** (Falkland Islands) Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 156.

*Haematopus leucopus* .. (Black and White Oyster-catcher.) This Oyster-catcher is also common along the sea-coast, laying its eggs in the beginning of October, sometimes on the sea-shore, but more frequently a little way inland, on a dry, sandy soil. The eggs are two in number, as with the other species; and there is no attempt at a nest.

**1910** Cobb, Arthur F. *Wildlife in the Falkland Islands* Gowans & Gray, London: 63.

[caption] Eggs of black and white oyster-catcher Pied Oyster-Catcher ... This bird is also known as the Black and White Curlew.

**1924** Vallentin, R in Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history* by Rupert Vallentin Clarendon Press, Oxford: 308.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

*Hæmatopus leucopus* .. 'Curlew', 'Black and White Curlew' ... At Shallow Bay the shrill piping note of these birds was usually the first bird call to be heard at early dawn during spring time.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 167.

Magellanic Oystercatcher *Haematopus leucopodus*. Local names: Black & White Curlew; Pied Oystercatcher ... A conspicuous bird of sand-beaches and creeks, this oystercatcher is handsomely pied with shiny black head, breast and back and white belly.

**black-back**

[Black-back has been used for a species of gull since 1855 (NOED).]

The gull *Larus dominicanus*: see **dominican gull**.

**1894** (Falkland Islands) Burn Murdoch, W.G. *From Edinburgh to the Antarctic* Longmans, Green and Co, London: 192.

In about two hours I had five different kinds of birds: Loggerhead, Black-back etc.].

**6 Jan 1943** Sorensen, J.H. *The work journal of J.H. Sorensen, coastwatcher in the "Cape expedition", Campbell Island, 1942-44* Original, in possession of NZ Dept of Conservation and Wildlife, Wellington: 149.

Terns and black-backs do not hesitate to attack a skua.

**1967** Gillham, Mary E. *Sub-Antarctic sanctuary. Summertime on Macquarie Island* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Wellington: 60.

Greater and lesser black-backs, Pacific and Dominican, all are exceedingly difficult to approach at the nest.

**black-backed albatross**

An albatross, perh. an immature **wandering albatross** or a smaller albatross.

**29 Dec 1840** (S of Campbell Island) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 144.

The sooty and small black-backed albatross, with several whales about us.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 36.

The Black-backed and Sooty Albatross left us at the ice edge, but the Cape Pigeon still followed in our wake.

**black-backed gull** Also **black-backed dominican gull**

The gull *Larus dominicanus*: see **dominican gull**.

**11 May 1840** (Kerguelen Island) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 48.

Black-backed gulls and tern flying overhead.

**1894** Hamilton, A. in *Transactions and Proceedings of the New Zealand Institute* XXVII Art LXV: 573.

*Larus dominicanus*. — The black-backed gull was fairly plentiful at the time of our visit.

**1906** (South Orkneys) Clarke, William Eagle in *The Ibis* 6(XXI): 178.

*Larus dominicanus* .. This Black-backed Gull has a remarkably wide latitudinal distribution, ranging as it does from 10°S. in the South Atlantic to within a few degrees of the Antarctic Circle.

**1948** Richdale, L.E. *Wild life on an island outpost: expedition to The Snares Islands 1947-48* Otago Daily Times and Witness Newspapers, Dunedin: 115.

The Black-backed Gull (*Larus dominicanus*) is very scarce indeed, a feature which is characteristic of any southern locality I have visited devoid, or practically devoid, of human habitation.

**1959** Johnson, M.L., Abercrombie, Michael and Fogg, G.E. *New biology* no. 29 Penguin Books, St Albans [UK]: 111.

There are those forms such as the black-backed Dominican gull with north and south migrations within the southern hemisphere.

**1965** (South Georgia) Harper, Peter C. in *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 4(1) Mar: 390.

The South Georgian Shag, Brown Skua and Black-backed Gull were found to be well represented.

**1974** (Marion Island) Anderson, G.D. and Condy, P.R. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* no. 4: 60.

A mouse was seen feeding on the carcass of a juvenile black-backed gull.

**black-bellied storm petrel**

[Black-bellied from the markings on the belly + storm petrel.]

The small seabird *Fregatta melanogaster* (fam. Hydrobatidae, also known as Oceanitidae) which has black and white plumage, its white underparts often with a blackish marking on the belly. It is a burrowing petrel which breeds widely in the subantarctic and (like many other southern seabirds) ranges further north in winter. See also **storm petrel**.

**1906** (South Orkneys) Clarke, William Eagle in *The Ibis* 6(XXI) Jan: 169.

On examining the captured bird it was at once evident that it was not a specimen of *Oceanites oceanicus*, for it had entirely black feet, had white on the under surface, the feathers of the back slightly edged with white, a longer and more hooked mandible, and strongly upturned nasal tubes. On the return of the Expedition, I found this bird to be an example of *Fregatta melanogaster* — the Black-bellied Storm-Petrel.

**1927** *The Oologists' Record* VII(4) Dec: 79.

The Black-bellied Storm Petrel, *Fregatta tropica melanogaster*, breeding in South Shetlands. Found breeding January 13, 1927, in a somewhat similar site to Wilson's Storm-Petrel.

**1980** (South Georgia) Parmelee, David F. *Bird Island in antarctic waters* University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis: 22.

The next rarest of the sacked birds were two black-bellied storm petrels of a different genus, *Fregatta*. Infrequently I had seen this rather uncommon bird far at sea, but until this night it had eluded me on land and therefore was special. Black-bellies breed at least sparingly on Bird Island, where Peter on occasion had seen their eggs and chicks in tussock burrows.

**1981** (Prince Edward Island) Berruti, A. and others in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* 10-11: 32.

A desiccated carcass of a nestling black-bellied storm petrel *Fregatta tropica* was found on a nest in September.

**1999** Pizzey, Graham and Knight, Frank *Field guide to the birds of Australia* Angus & Robertson, Sydney: 92.

Black-bellied storm-petrel .. breeds Nov.-April on circumpolar sub-Antarctic islands.

**black box** *Falkland Islands*

A radio transceiver (for transmitting and receiving).

**1993** Chater, Tony *The Falklands* The Penna Press, St Albans: 66.

In 1950 she was used to transport twenty Berry twelve volt transceivers or 'Black Boxes' to isolated settlements.

**black-brow** *noun and attrib.*

The **black-browed albatross** *Diomedea melanophrys*.

**1961** Béchervaise, John *The far South* Angus and Robertson, Melbourne: 83.

Few ornithological delights can equal that of spending two or three hours on the ledges of a high cliff-face, watching the black-brows or the light-mantled sooties sweep in from the sea and fearlessly alight beside you.

**1967** Gillham, Mary E. *Sub-Antarctic sanctuary: summertime on Macquarie Island* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Wellington: 115.

Many of the old black-brow nests on North Head were still extant.

**1980** Parmelee, David F. *Bird Island in antarctic waters* University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis: ix.

The name molly, an abbreviation for mollymawk, or mollyhawk, is a name given certain small albatrosses. The mollies of Bird Island are the "black-brows" and "gray-heads."

**black-browed albatross** *noun phr. and attrib. Also black-browed mollymawk, and (formerly and originally) black-eyebrowed albatross*

[Black-browed from the black stripe over each eye, + albatross. Dutch naturalist Coenraad Jacob Temminck used *melanophris* in the bird's scientific name (Nouveau recueil des planches colorées d'Oiseaux (1828) 77: pl 456), from the Greek μέλας black + φρυξ brow.]

The albatross *Diomedea melanophris* (fam. Diomedidae), which has a white head with a black line above each eye, and a bright yellow bill; the adults have white underwings with broad black edges. There are two races of the bird: *D. m. melanophris* is circumpolar and breeds on subantarctic and antarctic islands, *D. m. impavida* breeds only on New Zealand's Campbell Island. The bird is also called the **Cape molly, spectacled albatross** and **white mollymawk**.

**1848** Gould, John *The birds of Australia* vol. VII, The author, 20 Broad St, Golden Square, London: pl. 43.

*Diomedea melanophrys*, Temm. Black-eyebrowed Albatros ... The *Diomedea melanophrys* may be regarded as the most common species of Albatros inhabiting the southern ocean, and from its gregarious habits and very familiar disposition, it is known to every voyager who has rounded either of the Capes. I have never myself been at sea many days between the 35th and 55th degrees of south latitude without recognising it.

**1888** Buller, Sir Walter Lawry *A history of the birds of New Zealand. 2nd edn* Published by the author, Westminster London, vol II: 200: 198.

*Diomedea melanophrys*. (Black-browed albatros.) ... On the nesting-habits of this species of Albatros Mr. W. Dougall has communicated some very interesting notes: ... "At Monumental Head (Auckland Island) we picked up our hunters laden with Albatroses living and dead, and Albatros eggs in abundance ... At Campbell Island I ascended one of the highest hills, Mount Honey (1866 feet) ... As the top (1866 feet) is reached ... travelling becomes easier, as there is no growth to impede progress, but diminutive tussock among which are the Albatros nests and their tenants."

**1900** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* X(LXXIII): cvi.

Mr. T. Parkin made some observations on the abundance of bird-life noticed by him in the Southern Oceans. The following is the list of birds obtained during a day's shooting in a calm on December 2nd, 1890, in the Cape Seas, when on a voyage to Australia in the clipper ship 'Sobraon,' South

Atlantic Ocean, lat. 39°51' S., long. 8°49' E. 7 Wandering Albatrosses (*Diomedea exulans*). 2 Black-eyebrowed Albatrosses (*D. melanophrys*) [etc.].

**23 Oct 1910** Wilson, Edward in Roberts, Brian, ed. (1967) *Edward Wilson's birds of the Antarctic* New Orchard Editions, Poole [Dorset]: 59.

We entered a belt of fog and mist at 5 p.m. and though we had a crowd of birds with us all day we lost nearly all of them except 6 or 7 Black-browed Mollymawks.

**1921** *The Oologists' Exchange & Mart* Mar 1: 3.

J.S. Carlisle, "Strathmore," Private Bag, Buluwayo, Rhodesia, requires clutches with full data of .. Black-browed Albatross [etc].

**1960** Westerskov, Kaj *Birds of Campbell Island*. Wildlife Publication no. 61, Wildlife Division, New Zealand: 24.

The black-browed mollymawk is said to be very abundant on Campbell Island and to begin breeding in the second week of September.

**1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 109.

Black-browed albatrosses are similar [sc. to grey-headed albatrosses], but with a white head and black, all-yellow bill, and a dark line of plumage above the eyes which gives them an appearance of profound, concentrated thought.

**1984** Fletcher, Harold *Antarctic days with Mawson: a personal account of the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929-31* Angus and Robertson, London: 217.

During the afternoon, Falla shot a black-browed albatross which we managed to recover with a landing net. The crew were not too happy because according to sailors' lore, killing an albatross brought on bad weather. Later, Professor Johnston, searching through the bird's intestines, excitedly announced he had found a new form of parasitic worm. Closer investigation proved it to be a length of spaghetti. Tinned spaghetti had been served for lunch and scraps thrown overboard had been snapped up by the ill-fated bird as a dainty morsel. On the other hand, sly smiles on several faces indicated that it might have been placed in the bird's intestine with evil intent.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: iv.

[caption] Black-browed mollymawk chick at Bull Rock colony, Campbell Island.

**1988** (Falkland Islands) *National Geographic* 173(3) Mar: 406.

Amidst the crowd are nests of the black-browed albatross, a majestic black-and-white bird whose giant offspring sit enthroned on pedestal nests, plumed elegantly in down like infant maharajas.

**1993** *The Age [Melbourne]* 20 April: 13.

Albert the black-browed Albatross — or, to give him his scientific name, *Diomedea melanophis* [sic] — is back at the northern tip of the British Isles. By rights, at this time of year he should be setting off on a round tour of the South Atlantic. But instead of facing the rigors of the southern winter, he is the lone representative of his species north of the equator. This month, Albert — as birdwatchers have affectionately named him — returned for his 22nd summer at the vast gannet colony at Hermaness, on the Shetland island of Unst. He is destined to begin another lonely year vainly awaiting a mate.

**black cod**

[Cod has been used for a well-known sea-fish from 1357- (NOED).]

It is reasonable to guess that the 1821 quotation refers to one of these fishes, but there is no way to be sure.]

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

Any of several marine fishes of the genus *Paranotothenia* (formerly *Notothenia*), esp. *P. angustata* (fam. Nototheniidae), which grows to about 40 cm (1 ft 4 in) long. They are found throughout the subantarctic and in coastal waters of New Zealand.

**1821** (South Shetlands) Sherratt, Richard, quoted in *Polar Record* (1952) 6(43) Jan: 365.

Fishes are likewise in abundance and variety ... There is a very delicate fish to be caught near the different detached rocks, which I call the black or rock cod, weighing from 4 lbs. to 8 lbs. the only eatable fish taken here.

**1877** [source: DNZE] *Transactions of the New Zealand Institute* IX: 486.

Two different fishes are included in this term [sc. blue cod], and one of them is sometimes called black cod.

**1975** de Vries, Arthur L in *Antarctic Journal of the United States* X(5) Sept/Oct: 283.

The latter experiment will be done by transfusing the black cod, *Notothenia angustata*, with antifreeze and determining the effect on its survival. This black cod, which belongs to the antarctic cod family, is one of the few members that lacks antifreeze compounds.

**1991** Higham, Tim *New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Department of Conservation, Invercargill: 56.

Except at the Snares, fishermen will soon find their catch confined to three very similar species of black cod (or Maori chief): *Notothenia microlepidota*, *N. angustata* and *N. magellanica* Iscl.

### black-chinned siskin *Falkland Islands*

The mainly black, greyish and yellow small bird *Carduelis barbatus* (fam. Fringillidae) of the Falkland Islands and South America.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 234.

The Black-chinned Siskin is common and widespread in wooded country from Tierra del Fuego and the Magellanic islands to 27°S.

**1993** Chater, Tony *The Falklands* The Penna Press, St Albans: 57.

[caption] Black-chinned Siskins nesting in native boxwood, the largest native shrub.

### black-crested grebe *Falkland Islands*

[Grebe has been used for diving birds of the fam. Podicipedidae since 1766 (NOED).]

The waterbird *Rollandia rolland*: see **white-tufted grebe**.

**1861** (Falkland Islands) Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 162.

*Podiceps rollandi* .. (Black-crested Grebe.) This Grebe is rather common, being found in both fresh and salt water, though more frequent on the freshwater streams. I have often hunted for their nests, but have never been successful in finding one. At Port Louis, in January 1859, I found a pair of Grebes in Fish Creek, and, wanting specimens, I fired at one, which I only succeeded in wounding. It went on to some stones, and on my approach took to the water. As it did so, two small dark objects fell from its back into the water and floated ashore. I found them to be young ones, both of which had been killed by my first shot. I had not observed them previously, or I certainly should not have fired.

**1924** (1860s) Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history* by Rupert Vallentin Clarendon Press, Oxford: 268.

At Port Lake North there were a pair of *P. rollandi* (black-crested grebe) always to be seen during the spring and summer whenever I went there.

### black curlew *Falkland Islands*

The wading bird *Haematopus ater* (fam. Haematopodidae) of the Falkland Islands and South America; it is black to brown with a red bill and legs, and is also called the **black oystercatcher**.

**1904** Vallentin, Rupert in *Memoirs and Proc of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no. 23: 40.

*Haematopus ater*, "The Black Curlew." In this species the ground colour of the eggs is warmer [sc. than that of the Curlew, *Haematopus leucopus*], approaching almost to light pink.

**1910** Cobb, Arthur F. *Wildlife in the Falkland Islands* Gowans & Gray, London: 62.

The Black Curlew is scarcer and less noisy than the Black and White Curlew.

### black eaglet *Tristan da Cunha* Also **black haglet**

[Eaglet is recorded for a young eagle from 1572 on (NOED).]

The bird *Pterodroma macroptera macroptera*: see **great-winged petrel**. Sometimes the bird is simply called an **eaglet**.

**1803** Grant, James *The narrative of a voyage of discovery performed in His Majesty's vessel the Lady Nelson, of sixty tons burthen, with sliding keels, in the years 1800, 1801, and 1802, to New South Wales* T. Egerton, London: 59.

It is certain that the black Haglet, which I have several times mentioned in this narrative, procures its food by often harassing and fighting with other birds.

**27 Mar 1831** (nr 60°40'S, 55°E) Weddell, James in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 325.

Strong winds S.E., squally with much snow and sleet, intervals of calm, which left a most distressing sea; a great quantity of black eaglets and other small birds about us. Very thick weather at times.

**1910** Barrow, K.M. *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 275.

The Black Eaglet, the Long-winged Fulmar (*Aestrelata Macroptera*). Comes in to moult in May; lays first week in July.

**1926** Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 135.

Black eaglets are got in June and July, and we found these good eating, but molly mawks, which are hunted from January to March, were very strong and unpleasant.

**1940** Hagen, Yngvar in Christopherson, Erling transl. fr Norwegian by Benham, R.L. *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 187.

The black eaglet comes on land in March or April and breeds in mid-winter ... The importance of such a bird as food in the lean winter months may be estimated from John's further remarks: One season, about forty years ago, he caught a thousand black eaglets ... Nowadays only very occasional black eaglets come on land here, and it took me a whole night to obtain a specimen — night being the best time to secure them. It was impossible to conjure up more than a couple of specimens in all.

**1958** Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 49.

Besides the albatrosses, however, many of the smaller, ground-nesting birds (largely petrels) are or were eaten by

the islanders. The Padiunker (the Great Grey Petrel), the Black Haglet (Great-winged Petrel), and the White-breasted Black Haglet (Atlantic Petrel) are all eaten, though their numbers have fallen off greatly since rats became common on Tristan.

**1963** Mackay, Margaret *Angry island: the story of Tristan da Cunha (1506–1963)* Arthur Barker, London: 196.

All kinds of eggs were eaten (though most were fishy and indigestible) ... Petrels, mollies and black eaglets were the favourites.

**1993** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 13 (Sept): 9.

We found the nests of the Great-winged Petrel (Black Haglet) and the Grey Petrel (or Padiunker). These nests were on steep slopes just below the Base, and for years I regretted not making the extra effort to climb that little bit higher onto the Base.

**black-eyebrowed albatross** See **black-browed albatross**

### blackfin icefish

The marine fish *Chaenocephalus aceratus* (see **Scotia Sea icefish**), more often simply called an **icefish**.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 266.

*Chaenocephalus aceratus* ... Blackfin icefish, Scotia Sea icefish ... Reported from Bouvet Island and from the islands of the Scotia Arc (South Georgia, South Sandwich, South Orkney, South Shetland Islands), and the Antarctic Peninsula ... Marketed as frozen fish (entire or fillets); the flesh is excellent.

**1990** Gon, O. and Heemstra, P.C. *Fishes of the Southern Ocean* J.L.B. Smith Institute of Ichthyology, Grahamstown: 381.

*Chaenocephalus aceratus* (Lönnberg, 1906) Blackfin icefish ... Body greyish, pale ventrally, with 4–5 dark cross-bars on sides of body.

### blackfin notothen

[The fins of the fish are black, with white ray tips.]

The marine fish *Trematomus scotti*: see **crowned rock-cod**.

**1990** Gon, O. and Heemstra, P.C. *Fishes of the Southern Ocean* J.L.B. Smith Institute of Ichthyology, Grahamstown: 327.

*Trematomus scotti* (Boulenger, 1907) Blackfin notothen ... Circum-Antarctic, including the South Shetland and South Orkney islands, but not any other islands of the Scotia Arc.

### blackfish

[Black fish has been used for 'a small species of whale' since 1688 (NOED).]

Any of several cetaceans, esp. *Globicephala melas* (formerly *G. melaena*) (fam. Delphinidae), a dark grey to black dolphin with white markings; it grows to about 6.5 m (21 ft) long. There are separate populations in cold southern and northern oceanic waters. It is also known as the **caa'ing whale** and **long-finned pilot whale**.

**21 Dec 1811** (Tristan da Cunha) Lambert, Jonathan (1818) in *Blackwood's Edinburgh Magazine* IV (xxi) : 284.

During the pupping season, the black-fish are very numerous, and equally rapacious, always on the look-out for the elephants, great or small, young or old. I have seen them attack *old ones*, and carry young ones off.

**19 Dec 1830** (58°20'S, 25°11'W) Weddell, James in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 308.

Many small birds about the vessel, viz. stormy and blue petrels ... Saw also many penguins, some whale and black-fish.

**1879** Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 100.

The descriptions of the external appearance of the "black-fish" of the south seas which we possess are too vague to furnish good zoological characters.

**29 Dec 1912** Davis, J.K. in Crossley, Louise, ed. (1997) *Trial by ice: the Antarctic journals of John King Davis* Bluntisham Books, Bluntisham: 46.

There was a large shoal of black fish around the ship at 4 o'clock this afternoon.

**15 May 1942** Sorensen, J.H. *The work journal of J.H. Sorensen, coastwatcher in the "Cape expedition", Campbell Island, 1942–44* Original, in possession of NZ Dept of Conservation and Wildlife, Wellington: 12.

Located two blackfish skulls on the beach near this camp with other bones, (probably from the same cetaceans) lower down the beach.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 28.

Pilot whales, sometimes incorrectly known as blackfish, accompany HMNZS *Monowai* near the Bounty Islands. The species feeds mainly on squid and often swims in large groups.

**1990** Strange, Ian J. *A field guide to the wildlife of the Falkland Islands and South Georgia* Harper Collins, London: 122.

Long-finned Pilot Whale or 'Blackfish' *Globicephala melaena* ... Overall very dark greyish-black (locally known as 'Blackfish').

**1997** (30 Apr 1998: [www.falklands-nature.demon.co.uk/news/news0697.html](http://www.falklands-nature.demon.co.uk/news/news0697.html)) *Falklands Conservation* June.

Long-finned Pilot Whales (*Globicephala melaena*), known in the Falklands as "Blackfish", are among the most common species which mass strand.

**black haglet** See **black eaglelet**

### black hake

[Hake has been used for a gadoid fish since c1430 (NOED).]

The fish *Dissostichus eleginoides*, better known as **Patagonian toothfish**.

**1996** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] 16(2) Dec: 16.

The Federal Government has given permission for the Perth based company Austral Fisheries to harvest fish to the value of \$20 million ... The fish in question is the Patagonian Toothfish (*Dissostichus* [*Isic* *eleginoides*]) or black hake.

### black hawk

*Falkland Islands*

The peregrine falcon *Falco peregrinus* (fam. Falconidae), a bird of prey which is dark grey above and white with strong dark brown barring underneath. This bird is widely distributed over the globe.

**9 May 1842** (Falkland Islands) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 285.

Reached the summit at two p.m.: here I shot a rabbit and two black hawks.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 161.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

Peregrine Falcon *Falco peregrinus* .. Local names: Sparrow Hawk, Black Hawk.

**black ice**

[Black ice a thin, hard, transparent ice is recorded in British and Canadian English from 1829– (NOED, DCanE), for the same meaning as below.]

Newly formed, thin, relatively clear sea ice, which appears dark because of the sea beneath it (see 1930 quotation).

**1914** (nr Cape Bernacchi) Priestley, Raymond E. (1974 repr.) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* Melbourne University Press: 364.

We got into a confused belt of pressure, seamed with leads of black ice which was obviously new.

**1930** Debenham, F in Bernacchi, L.C., ed. *The polar book: produced for the British Polar Exhibition 1930* E. Allom & Co Ltd, London: 47.

In stormy weather no ice sheet will form even though the surface of the sea contains myriads of small ice crystals. With calm weather and a low temperature however, the sea quickly becomes covered with a film of thin ice which is comparatively clear until snow has fallen on it and since it shows the dark sea beneath it, it is often called "black" ice at this stage.

**1965** Hedblom, Captain E.E. *Polar manual, 4th edn* US Navy, Bethesda, Maryland: 103.

If inadvertently caught on black ice, walk gently, with feet far apart in a circle back whence you came.

**1995** (Prydz Bay) Law, Phillip *You have to be lucky: antarctic and other adventures* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 74.

Shaw and I found hummocks and snowdrift, huge tilted ice-bergs and piles of broken ice, pressure ridges and weak black ice.

**black iceberg**

An iceberg which has grounded in an earthy place, accumulating a veneer of earth and rocks which give a dark colour and land-like appearance to it.

**1827** (south of S Sandwich Islands) Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24, 2nd edn* David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 32.

At daylight in the morning of the 10th the chief mate reported land within sight, in the shape of a sugar loaf; as soon as I saw it I believed it to be a rock, and fully expected to find *terra firma* a short distance to the southward. It was 2 o'clock in the afternoon before we reached it; and not till then, when passing within 300 yards, could we satisfy ourselves that it was not land, but black ice. We found an island of clear ice lying close, and detached above water, though connected below, which made a contrast of colour that had favoured or rather completed the deception. In short, its north side was so thickly incorporated with black earth, that hardly any person at a distance would have hesitated to pronounce it a rock.]

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins. People and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 152.

Today I had one of the rarest Antarctic experiences. I saw a great black iceberg, and I was one of the very few people on board to see it. ... The huge cliff-face facing us was black from top to bottom. It was about 200 feet high, with striations of white where snow had cascaded down the face from the top of the berg. ... Here we had a berg which .. had grounded .. in shallower, coastal waters .. driving great rocks and mud into its texture. Later, as melting and division took

place, its centre of gravity altered, and .. it up-ended itself, so that the bottom of the berg became its side, embedded with rocks.

**blackish oystercatcher** See **black curlew****black-necked swan** *Falkland Islands*

[Both scientific and common names refer to the black head and neck of the swan.]

The swan *Cygnus melanocoryphus* (fam. Anatidae); the adult has a black head and neck and white body. It breeds in the Falkland Islands and South America, and was once hunted in the Falklands as game.

**1785** [source: NOED] Latham *Gen. Synopsis Birds* VI: 438.

Black-necked Swan ... The plumage the same with the other Swan, except that the neck is of a velvet black.

**1840** Mackinnon, L.B. (RN) *Some account of the Falkland Islands, from a six months' residence in 1838 and 1839* A.H. Bailey & Co., London: 29.

The first in the list of birds is the swan; they are not found in great plenty, but are very beautiful birds, the whole neck being a jetty black, and the rest of the body of a snowy white.]

**12 June 1842** McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 294.

Here [sc. Swan Bay] I found the object of my search, the black-necked swan (*Cygnus nigricollis*) — seven or eight of these most elegant and beautiful of all the swan family swimming on the lake.

**1861** (Falkland Islands) Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 159.

*Cygnus nigricollis* .. (Black-necked Swan.) This Swan is found all the year round in East Falkland, but is rather scarce and very wild. In 1859 a number appeared in the River Murrel, and most of them moulted there. A pair of them which were caught did not survive long in captivity. The Black-necked Swan seems to breed principally on the adjacent island, as I have never heard of more than one nest being found on the mainland. This was on the edge of a pond at Mare Harbour.

**1904** Vallentin, Rupert in *Memoirs and Proc of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no. 23: 37.

*Cygnus nigricollis*, "Black-necked Swan." A striking bird, and very locally distributed. A pair of these birds were seen by an acquaintance on a pool of water near Stanley early in November; but they immediately took flight on observing him. A few still breed in places on the West Falklands.

**1913** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 22(4) (1 Apr): 61.

An Ordinance To amend the law with regard to the preservation of wild animals and birds ... Schedule II. Black-necked Swan ... closed season 1 Oct–last Feb.

**1924** Vallentin, R in Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands. With notes on the natural history by Rupert Vallentin* Clarendon Press, Oxford: 314.

*Cygnus melanocoryphus* .. 'Black-necked Swan'. Curiously enough I never met with a single specimen of this swan during the whole of my last visit.

**1987** Martins, Rodney *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation [London]* no 6 (May): 5.

Pebble Island, in addition, has an excellent series of freshwater wetlands, offering a superb opportunity for bird watchers to see waterfowl such as .. the vulnerable and highly localised black-necked swan.

**1993** (King George Island: Admiralty Bay) *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XXVIII(5): 152.



We were visited by a few nonresident incidentals. Several macaroni penguins and arctic terns were seen, and a black-necked swan was sighted in the bay in December.

### black night hawk *Historical*

[Night-hawk a name given to various birds from 1611–.]

The seabird *Procellaria aequinoctialis*: see **Cape hen**.

**1879** (Kerguelen Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 208.

Another petrel, *Majaquens aequinoctialis*, which also is often to be seen cruising after the ship, but then always solitary, is called the "Cape Hen" by ordinary sailors, and "Black Night Hawk" by the whalers. It makes a hole, larger a good deal than that of the Mutton-bird, and nearly always with its mouth opening on a small pool of water, or in a very damp place.

### black oystercatcher *Falkland Islands. Also blackish oystercatcher*

[Oyster-catcher has been used for black or black and white birds of the fam. *Haematopodidae* since 1731 (NOED).]

The wading bird *Haematopus ater*: see **black curlew**.

**1777** Forster, George (Tierra del Fuego) *A voyage round the world, in his Britannic Majesty's sloop, Resolution, commanded by Capt. James Cook* B. White, London, vol 2: 488.

The black oyster-catchers, or sea-pies, and several other birds dwelt along the shores.

**9 May 1842** McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 285.

Hauled the boat up on the beach, where I shot three black oyster-catchers.

**1861** Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 155.

*Haematopus ater* ... The Black Oyster-catcher remains in East Falkland the whole year round, laying its eggs (two in number) in the beginning of November, just one month later than our other Oyster-catcher (*Haematopus leucopus*). A hole, formed in the shingle just above high-water mark, generally on a point running out, is its favourite nesting-place.

**1917** Beck, Rollo H. in *The American Museum Journal* XVII(7) Nov: 430.

[caption] The nest of the black oyster catcher is scratched in the gravelly beach above high tide, and one can find the two eggs merely by walking along the highwater mark.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 166.

Blackish Oystercatcher *Haematopus ater* ... Local name: Black Curlew ... Adults are sooty-black on head, neck and underparts and dark brown above.

### black penguin

[Despite the 1888 quotation, the adult bird is similar to other penguins in the genus.]

The penguin *Eudyptes robustus*, also known as the **Snares penguin**.

**1888** Buller, Sir Walter Lawry *A history of the birds of New Zealand, 2nd edn* Published by the author, Westminster London, vol II: 296.

*Eudyptes atratus*. (Black Penguin.) ... This remarkable Penguin, so conspicuously different in its coloration from all other known members of the genus, was obtained from the Snares, a group of sea-girt rocks lying about sixty miles to the south-west of Stewart's Island.

### black petrel

[Black from the bird's plumage, + **petrel**.]

The seabird *Procellaria aequinoctialis*, better known as the **Cape hen**.

**1806** (Amsterdam Island) Barrow, John *A voyage to Cochinchina, in the years 1792 and 1793* Oxford University Press facs, Kuala Lumpur (1975): 147.

The number of birds was likewise astonishing, and the two causeways were strewn with their eggs. During our short stay on shore we obtained the following birds: .. *Procellaria Equinoctialis*, Black Petrel, *Procellaria Puffinus*, Puffin [etc.].

**16 Nov 1820** Bellingshausen, Thaddeus, in Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. (1945) *The voyage of Captain Bellingshausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819–1821* Hakluyt Society, London, vol 2: 363.

At noon we were in Lat. 54°33'16"S., Long. 133°57'59"E. Arriving at midday on the parallel of Macquarie Island I set my course east by south for this island. At 2.0 p.m. we encountered a few diving penguins, and we were daily accompanied by birds — pintades, black and blue petrels, grey and white albatrosses, and one Egmont hen.

**1844** Gould, John in *Annals and Magazine of Natural History* vol 13 no. 85: 362.

*Procellaria gigantea*, Gmel. (Large Black Petrel).— Very common between the 35th and 55th degrees of S. lat.

**1905** Clarke, William Eagle in *The Ibis* V: 262.

*Majaquens aequinoctialis* ... One specimen was obtained, skin "No. 20, Gough Island," and similar "Black Petrels" are recorded as having been observed ... This species does not appear to have been recorded hitherto from any of the islands of the Tristan group.

### black right whale *noun*

The whale *Balaena australis*, better known as the (**southern**) **right whale**.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 423.

*Balaena glacialis* Müller, 1776 [= *Eubalaena australis* (Borowski, 1781)] ... Black right whale ... A large bulky whale.

### black rock cod

The marine fish *Notothenia coriiceps* (fam. Nototheniidae), which lives in shallow waters around many subantarctic islands.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 346.

*Notothenia (Notothenia) coriiceps* ... Black rockcod ... Reported from all shelves of the sub-Antarctic islands of the Indian sector of the Southern Ocean (Kerguelen, Heard, Crozet, Marion-Prince Edward Islands).

### black shag

A black cormorant or shag, sometimes referring to the Falkland Islands bird *Phalacrocorax magellanicus*: see **rock shag**.

**30 Mar 1904** Wilson, Edward in Roberts, Brian, ed. (1967) *Edward Wilson's birds of the Antarctic* New Orchard Editions, Poole [Dorset]: 158.

The following Auckland birds none of us saw: ... Black Shag, *Phalacrocorax chalconotus*.

**1910** Cobb, Arthur F. *Wildlife in the Falkland Islands* Gowans & Gray, London: 67.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

[caption] A rock shag rookery. Rock or Black Shag .. is a smaller bird than the King Shag, and has a black throat in the normal adult plumage.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 127.

Rock Shag *Phalacrocorax magellanicus* ... Local name: Black Shag ... Generally glossy black above and on the neck ... Common breeding resident found in sheltered bays and harbours throughout the Falklands.

**1991** Barker, David *Antarctica: an artist's logbook* Random Century New Zealand, Auckland: 50.

Skip, clad in bright yellow and orange, goes off hunting in the dinghy and returns with a small black shag and his smoking .22 rifle.

### black-throated finch *Falkland Islands*

The bird *Melanodera melanodera melanodera*: see **sparrow**.

**1976** Wace, N.M. and Holdgate, M.W. *Man and nature in the Tristan da Cunha islands. IUCN monograph no. 6* Morges, Switzerland: 68.

The .. bunting or finch *Rowettia goughensis* .. resembles the black-throated finch or 'sparrow' of the Falkland Islands (*Melanodera m. melanodera*).

**1998** Warrah [http://www.falklands-nature.demon.co.uk/warrah/]13 (May).

Ten bird species are entirely restricted to the Southern Patagonia Endemic Bird Area ... Two of these .. are restricted and endemic to the Falklands, whilst two others (*Tussacbird Cinctodes antarcticus* and Black-throated Finch *Melanodera melanodera*) are endemic sub species.

### black-throated penguin

[From the black throat of the adult bird.]

#### The adélie penguin.

**1906** (South Orkneys) Eagle Clarke, W. in *The Ibis* 6(XXI) Jan: 157.

The Adélie or Black-throated Penguin is no doubt a resident bird in the Archipelago, for it was observed there all the year round, though only occasionally during the winter months.

### black tomtit NZ

[Black from the bird's plumage + tomtit various small birds.]

The small black bird *Petroica macrocephala dannefaerdi*: see **Snares black tit**.

**1948** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* 69(1): 6.

Endemic forms are three in number; the Snares Sernbird [sic: ?fernbird] .. the Snares Snipe .. and the Black Tomtit (*Petroica macrocephala dannefaerdi* Rothschild) ... The Black Tomtit was long classified as a close relative of the Black Robin of the Chatham Islands.

**1951** Sorensen, J.H. *Wild life in the subantarctic* Whitcombe & Tombs, Christchurch: 81.

The bigger island .. is also the home of the dainty little fern-birds and a black tomtit.

### black whale

The whale *Balaena australis*: see **southern right whale**. (This is not the whale sometimes known as the **black-fish**).

**1798** (40°12'S, ~ 35°W) Colnett, Captain James *A voyage to the South Atlantic and round Cape Horn into the Pacific Ocean, for the*

*purpose of extending the Spermaceti Whale fisheries, and other objects of commerce* Printed for the author by W. Bennett, London: 9.

Black whales were seen spouting in every direction, and the boats pursued one to harpoon it, but without success ... The number of whales in sight presented a fair opportunity of making a profitable voyage in the article of black oil.

**1821** Sherratt, Richard, quoted in *Polar Record* (1952) 6(43) Jan: 365.

Fishes are likewise in abundance and variety. The black whale and fin-back are numerous. but I believe there are not any spermaceti whales here.

**1901** (Cape Adare) Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 206.

The mammals of the south polar regions are represented only by whales and seals. Of the former a great number of rorquals (finners) were seen in the summer months, but Ross's assertion that the black or Southern Right whale (*Balaena australis*) of highest commercial importance occurs in great numbers has never been confirmed.

**1906** Lönnberg, Einar in *Vetenskapsakademiens Handlingar* 40(5): 41.

During his stay at South Georgia Sörling had the opportunity of seeing 7 Black Whales shot and brought to the factory. They were all of them entirely dark, almost black, above and below.

**1953** (1894) Scholes, Arthur *Seventh continent: saga of Australasian exploration in Antarctica 1895-1950* George Allen & Unwin, London: 32.

Bull saw none of the black whales reported by Ross. Two blue whales were harpooned from the ship's side, the line breaking each time.

### blanket *Whaling, sealing*

[Blanket is recorded in 1885 (NOED) as a whaler's term for a layer of blubber.]

A sheet of **blubber**.

**1915** (Heard Island) Harvey, Rufus Watson *Thrilling adventures in the Antarctic wilds* Unpublished record, in possession of Tim Vasquez: 55.

With the knife made the same cuts through the blubber to the meat below and removed the blubber from the carcass in four blanket pieces.

**1949** Granville, Wilfred *Sea slang of the twentieth century* Winchester, London: 35.

Blanket: a whale's blubber (whaler's term).

**1993** Chater, Tony *The Falklands* The Penna Press, St Albans: 120.

The blubber 'blankets' were towed out to the ship for rendering down.

### blind crevasse

A **crevasse** covered by snow.

**1936** Byrd, Richard Evelyn *Antarctic discovery* Putnam, London: 287.

Blind crevasses — that is to say, crevasses roofed over with thin snow bridges, often so smoothly knit that the keenest eye can't mark the tell-tale shadowy hollowing — had safely passed the dog teams, which crossed all unsuspecting, then had dropped under the heavier tractors.

### blink *noun*

**Ice blink.**

**1778** Forster, Johann Reinhold in Thomas, N., Guest, H. and Dettelbach, M., eds (1996) *Observations made during a voyage round the world* University of Hawai'i Press, Honolulu: 222.

We observed, on the horizon, a white reflexion from the snow and ice, which the Greenlandmen call *the blink of the ice*: so that seeing this phenomenon appear, we were sure to be within a few leagues of the ice.

**1 Feb 1840** (nr 130°36'E, 65°24'S) Wilkes, in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 416.

The immense perpendicular barrier encountered yesterday was now in sight, trending as far as the eye could reach to the westward; it was of tabular form, from 150 to 180 feet in height, of solid, compact ice, resembling a long line of coast; wind moderate from the south-east. A brilliant blink extending along and elevated above the barrier.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 334.

[glossary] Blink.— *Ice-blink*: a peculiar whitish glare in the sky along the horizon over a large surface of ice which is too far distant to be visible.

**1915** (in Antarctic pack ice) Davis, J.K. in Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard. Being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911–1914* William Heinemann, London: 34.

By noon of January 11 loose pack came into view, with a strong blink of heavier pack to the south.

**1922** Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Picador, London: 80.

Gradually we could see either pack or the blink of it all along our port and starboard beam.

## **blizz** noun and attrib. Also **bliz**

[Abbreviation of **blizzard**.]

A storm.

**5–7 Nov 1911** Wilson, Edward (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912* Blandford Press, London: 196.

Shortly before camping for the following day it began to blow and from being overcast to the E. and W. only, became overcast everywhere, so we prepared for a blizz and it came. We therefore lay in all Monday — and Monday night and all Tuesday, turning out at intervals to see to the horses which includes feeding, rebuilding parts of their walls which they knock down, digging out snow drift accumulations, and knocking the lumps off their hoofs.

**1922** (Jan 1911) Bowers, Birdie, quoted in Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Picador, London: 122.

It clouded over almost at once and later in the day started to snow without wind. This often happens before a bliz.

**1971** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* June: 25.

Seven days of travel (plus six of blizz) for the 400 miles back to Mawson.

**1992** *45th ANARE Casey yearbook 1992* ANARE, Casey: 15.

Likes: Earl Grey tea, ovaltine, blizz days.

## **blizz** verb

[Abbreviation of **blizzard** verb]

To blow a blizzard.

**14 June 1911** Debenham, Frank, in Back, June Debenham, ed. (1992) *The quiet land: the Antarctic diaries of Frank Debenham* Bluntisham Books, Bluntisham: 107.

It came on to blizz badly so we depôté the sledge.

**21 Jan 1912** Bowers, Birdie in Seaver, George (1951) *'Birdie' Bowers of the Antarctic* John Murray, London: 252.

Wind increased to force 8 during night with heavy drift. In the morning it was blizzing like blazes and marching was out of the question.

**1950** (Cape Evans) Mountevans, Admiral Lord *The desolate Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 118.

The wind blew harder and harder until "the crowd" felt that they must indeed protest. Day was deputed to go in and protest. And this is what happened: Day, with his balaclava helmet all frosted up, and a cake of ice on his muzzle, said "It's blizzing. Boss, the wind's increasing, dark snowclouds are working up, and some of us are getting frostbitten." Shackleton smiled benignly, turned up a passage in the Bible which lay on his table and handed it to Day. "Read that," he said. Day read aloud "Many are called, but few are chosen." "Read it again," said Shackleton. Then he shut the book and looked quite sternly at Day, but with the faintest gleam of humour in his eye, and exclaimed "Many are cold, but few are frozen."

**1991** Venables, Stephen *Island at the edge of the world: a South Georgia odyssey* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 115.

We were taking turns to dip into Apsley Cherry-Garrard's *The Worst Journey in the World* and had adopted his use of the verb 'to blizz', establishing our own meteorological 'Blizzing Scale'. On Thursday we had '100 per cent blizzing', which meant that it was impossible to see the rocks thirty yards away on the far side of the scoop.

**1993** Hill, Kim in Clark, Linda and Wishart, Elspeth *66° South* Queen Victoria Museum, Launceston: 31.

I liked having a window that when it wasn't blizzing you could open the window and have a little bit of fresh air.

## **blizzard** noun

[Recorded as US from 1859– (NOED) for a furious blast of frost-wind and blinding snow.]

A high wind with drifting but not necessarily freshly falling snow.

**11 Jan 1917** Davis, John King in Quartermain, L.B. (1963) *Two huts in the Antarctic* Antarctic Division, DSIR Wellington: opp. 60.

Capt Mackintosh and V.G. Heyward perished on May 8th 1916 in a blizzard while attempting to cross the sea-ice from Hut Point to Cape Evans.

**1957** Dovers, Robert *Huskies* G. Bell and Sons, London: 29.

When the wind beats up above the seventy miles per hour mark and the drift becomes so intense that visibility is in the order of a yard, then, in Adélie Land, one begins to consider it a blizzard.

**1996** Hotz, Robert Lee in *Los Angeles Times* 14 Jan: A16.

On a continent normally too dry and too cold to support condensation — where a blizzard consists of existing snow churned violently by the wind — the appearance of new snow is a rarity.

## **blizzard** verb

To blow a blizzard. Hence **blizzarded**, affected by a blizzard.

**23 Dec 1908** Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 32.

Wind and drift got very bad again, blizzarded all night and could not stir out till 8 a m next day.

**4–5 Nov 1911** (Cape Evans to Corner Camp) Wilson, Edward (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912* Blandford Press, London: 195.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

Eventually Day's derelict car itself, with the 'big end' broken — part of the piston of one of the 4 cylinders. Also, a huge pit at another camp where the party had been blizzarded and the other car dug out. £1,000 by the wayside!

**blizzard line** Also **blizz line**

[As the 1909 quotation shows, a new name for an old concept.]

A rope strung between buildings to mark a path during blizzards.

[1909 (Cape Royds) Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907-1909* William Heinemann, London: 140.

As it was quite possible that the weather might be so thick that a person might be lost in making his way between the screen and the hut, a line was rigged up on posts which were cemented into the ground by ice, so that in the thickest weather the observer could be sure of finding his way by following this very substantial clue.]

**1 Sept 1959** Béchervaise, John (1963) *Blizzard and fire: a year at Mawson, Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 160.

They tell others precisely where they are going and for how long, and they never leave the blizzard lines that strain between all the buildings.

**1964** (Wilkes) *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(12) Dec: 538.

The blizzard lines provided to assist men moving between buildings were buried in the snow.

**1982** Ledingham, Rod *ANARE dog drivers manual* Antarctic Division, Department of Science and the Environment: 36.

It is easy to become disorientated and hopelessly lost in a blizzard, hence you should never deviate from the blizz line.

**1992** *Casey News [Casey Base, Antarctica]* May: [2].

Jeff also puts the blizzard lines out for us whenever the weather looks like blowing.

**1995** Greet, Pene and Price, Gina *Frost bytes* Doubleday, Sydney: 41.

Blizz-lines, or heavy ropes, are used if necessary to connect buildings.

**blizzardily** adjective

With a **blizzard** blowing.

**9 Aug 1959** Béchervaise, John (1963) *Blizzard and fire: a year at Mawson, Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 138.

Sunday also was blizzardily.

**blizzard mask**

A face mask to protect from bad weather.

**1963** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(8) Dec: 334.

The beginning of the Antarctic spring in September brought about a sudden and most welcomed change in climate, the most noticeable event being the putting aside of blizzard masks, with sunglasses taking their place.

**1992** Lied, Commander Nils *Oscar: the true story of a husky* Kerr Publishing, Sydney: 60.

We woke to the flapping of the tent, as if someone were standing outside shovelling gravel on to it. With terrible reluctance, I struggled into my frozen outer mukluks, wind-proof outer clothing, black felt blizzard mask, and two pairs of heavy, greasy-wool mittens, covered with a large overmitt of wind proof material with a leather palm.

**blizzed (in)** adjective

Confined to quarters by the weather.

**1951** Birdie Bowers in Seaver, George *'Birdie' Bowers of the Antarctic* John Murray, London: 221.

"The following day we were still blizzed and had to lie in our bags in enforced idleness."

**1963** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(8) Dec: 335.

Both parties were "blizzed" 55 miles and 20 miles respectively out from Mawson.

**1986** *Sydney Morning Herald* 15 Feb: 9.

"It's rotten when you miss out on a jolly because you're blizzed in," says Macca, looking glumly at the dense drifting snow.

**blizz line** See **blizzard line****blizzly** adjective, Aust.

Blizzardy.

**1996** *Icy News. Antarctic Division staff newsletter* 23 August: 2.

Hello from a rather blizzly Davis. Yes, it seems August is the month for them as howling winds and snow have plagued us almost all week.

**bloodless fish** Also **bloodless icefish**

[Bloodless is recorded for creatures pale from a diminished supply of blood to the body's surface from 1592- (NOED), here referring to the fish's paleness and lack of haemoglobin.]

Any marine fish of the fam. Chaenichthyidae: see **icefish**.

**1970** Burton, Robert *Animals of the Antarctic* Abelard-Schuman, London: 23.

"Bloodless" fish is not really a correct description of it as it does have blood. However, the blood does not have the red pigment, hemoglobin, that other animals have.

**1971** (Antarctic Peninsula) *Antarctic Journal of the United States* VI(2) Mar/Apr: 42.

After unfruitful efforts to catch these so-called bloodless ice fish on long lines, success was achieved by trawling off the coast of Brabant Island.

**1975** Wheeler, Alwynne *Fishes of the world: an illustrated dictionary* Macmillan Publishing Co., NY: 150.

*Chaenocephalus aceratus* Icefish 60 cm. (23\_ in.) Chaenichthyidae An Antarctic species found commonly in the area of S. Georgia, the S. Orkneys, and S. Shetland. This icefish is one of the so-called 'bloodless fishes' which lack the oxygen-carrying, iron-based haemoglobin in their blood.

**blubber** noun and attrib. *Sealing and whaling*

[Blubber for the fat of whales and other cetaceans is recorded from 1664- (NOED).]

The layer of fat beneath the skin of **seals** and **whales**, used mostly for extracting oil but in extremis (see 1914 quotation) for food.

**1748** (Juan Fernandez) Walter, Richard *A voyage round the world, in the years MDCCXL, I, II, III, IV* by George Anson Esq; *Commander in Chief of a Squadron of His Majesty's Ships, sent upon an Expedition to the South-Seas. The Third Edition* John and Paul Knapton, London: 190.

Their employment on shore was .. the making of oil from the blubber of the sea-lions. This oil served us for several uses, as burning in lamps, or mixing with pitch to pay the ships sides, or, when mixed with wood-ashes, to supply the use of tallow, of which we had none left.

**1777** Forster, George (Tierra del Fuego) *A voyage round the world, in his Britannic Majesty's sloop, Resolution, commanded by Capt. James Cook* B. White, London, vol 2: 513.

We killed with clubs a great number of the fattest sea-lions, which our crew carried on board, in order to boil their blubber into train-oil.

**1 Aug 1824** Earle, Augustus (1832) *A narrative of a nine months' residence in New Zealand, in 1827; together with a journal of a residence in Tristan d'Acunha, an island situated between South America and the Cape of Good Hope* Longman, Rees, Orme, Brown, Green, & Longman, London: 47.

Some of these wounds were still open and bleeding, so that we imagined him [sc. the sea elephant] to have been a champion on several occasions; but we proved too subtle for him at last, and made capture of this skin and blubber; the latter weighing three quarters of a ton.

**29 Jan 1893** Burn Murdoch, W.G. (1894) *From Edinburgh to the Antarctic* Longmans, Green and Co, London: 303.

The crew ... receive the principal part of their share of the profits from the blubber-money.

**1902** Beddard, Frank Evers *Mammalia. The Cambridge Natural History* vol X Macmillan and Co, London: 342.

The need for a furry coat is removed by the presence of a thick coating of fat immediately underlying the skin. This is known as the blubber, and is the main incentive to the pursuit of Whales.

**1914** (Inexpressible Island) Priestley, Raymond E. (1974 repr.) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* Melbourne University Press: 240.

Blubber had already become a regular ingredient in the hooshes, and was cut up into cubical dice about half an inch in section.

**17 Feb 1915** McNeish, Harry quoted in Sullivan, Walter (1957) *Quest for a continent* Secker & Warburg, London: 69.

We got 68 adieie and 1 Emperor penguins & a seal. So we have a much blubber [sic] as keep the pot boiling for a month at least. We had for ... supper stewed penguin heart liver eyes tongues toes & God knows what else with a cup of water.

**1929** (South Georgia) *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 235.

Beneath the skin of the elephant seal there is a layer of blubber so thick that when moving on the land "the whole body trembles like a bag of jelly." It is the presence of this blubber that has caused the elephant seal to be hunted nearly to extinction in many of its former haunts. At the end of the eighteenth century it was found on the coasts of Patagonia, Tierra del Fuego, and southern Chile, and was plentiful on the Falkland Islands, the South Shetland and South Orkney Islands, and at South Georgia. Further east it occurred in thousands at Tristan da Cunha and Gough Islands, Marion and Prince Edward Islands, the Crozet Islands, Kerguelen and Heard Islands and Macquarie Island, and it has also been seen on the coasts of South Africa ... By the indiscriminate slaughter of young and old they have been exterminated or reduced to a mere remnant in most of these places, but they are still found in numbers sufficient for hunting in South Georgia, Kerguelen, Heard and Macquarie Islands. At South Georgia the hunting was formerly so intense that by 1885 elephant seals were practically extinct.

**1988** (Heard Island) *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions newsletter* June: 7.

At the peak from 1858 to 1862, shore gangs employed over a hundred men on the island, hunting seals and preserving blubber during the spring and summer months.

### **blubber finger** *Sealing and whaling*

An infection suffered by sealers and whalers: see **seal finger**.

**1982** Panagis, K., Apps, P. and Knight, M.H. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* 12: 49.

Seal finger (spekkfinger or blubber finger) has been described in medical literature since 1907 ... Seals and possibly polar bears are the only known carriers.

### **blubber fire** *Hist.*

A fire fuelled by **seal blubber**.

**1829** (Falkland Islands) Barnard, Captain Charles H. *A narrative of the sufferings and adventures of Captain Charles H Barnard, in a Voyage Round the World, during the years 1812, 1813, 1814, 1815, & 1816* J Lindon, New York, for the author: 40.

Strong gales kept us close as possible on the 18th, under the boat, over a small blubber fire, the smoke of which turned the skin on all our faces pretty much of a colour.

**1978** (1916) Hurley, Frank *Shackleton's argonauts: the epic tale of Shackleton's voyage to Antarctica in 1915* McGraw-Hill Book Co Pty Ltd: 129.

A roaring blubber-fire was kindled and, since the floe was rocking badly in the increasing swell and might fracture again, the tents were struck.

### **blubber lamp** *Hist.*

[NOED records blubber-lamp a lamp which burns blubber oil, in an arctic usage of 1856.]

A lamp fuelled by **blubber** or **blubber oil**.

**22 Nov 1908** Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 23.

At Monzanite Id we cut down all sledge rations to and made up with seal meat cooked by blubber lamp.

**8 Mar 1912** (Inexpressible Island) Priestley, Raymond E. (1974 repr.) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* Melbourne University Press: 228.

Both tents have now a blubber-lamp made by suspending a few strands of lamp-wick from a safety-pin which is stretched as a bridge across the mouth of a small Oxo tin full of melted oil.

### **blubber oil** *noun phr. and attrib.*

Oil derived from **seal**, **whale** or **penguin** blubber.

**1919** (Macquarie Island) Mawson, Sir Douglas in *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society of Australasia (SA branch)* XX: 11.

The traffic in Antarctic blubber oils is on the increase. It has already assumed enormous proportions in the British sphere under the Governorship of the Falkland Islands; the gross value of the proceeds therefrom, for the year 1918 aggregating some ££3,000,000 chiefly, however, derived from whale blubber oils.

**1943** Mawson, Douglas *Macquarie Island: its geography and geology. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911-14. Scientific reports series A* vol V Government Printer, Sydney: 41.

Though vast numbers of penguins have been slaughtered for their oil at Macquarie Island, yet the sea-elephant has always been the main base of the Island's blubber-oil industry.

**1982** Ledingham, Rod *ANARE dog drivers manual* Antarctic Division, Dept Science and the Environment: 62.

Keep it [sc. the leather/whip] in the drum of blubber-oil when not in use.

### **blubber press** *Sealing*

A machine for pressing blubber to extract **blubber oil**.

**1994** Australian Antarctic Division *Heard Island and McDonald Islands draft management plan* Australian Antarctic Division, Department of the Environment, Sport and Territories: 43.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

The sealers' sites, including flensing platforms with trypots, are the least disturbed and among the best preserved in the subantarctic. An intact "blubber press" excavated from Heard Island (currently on loan to the Queen Victoria Museum and Art Gallery in Launceston) is the only known example worldwide.

**blubber stove** *Historical*

A stove, usually makeshift, fuelled by blubber, which burns with 'furious heat and stifling smoke' (Edward Wilson).

**11 Dec 1910** Griffith Taylor, Thomas in Hanley, Wayne, ed. (1978) *The Griffith Taylor collection: diaries and letters of a geographer in Antarctica* Geography Department, University of New England, Armidale: 34.

Atkinson has rigged up a fine *blubber* stove ... He had adapted a queer little stove (possibly an old iron laundry stove since there are external shelves for heating irons). A tall tin chimney is surrounded by a square tin affair in which the blubber is melted. It runs down the pipe X into a circular pipe which feeds the oil onto the fire. It works quite well, a cupful lasting some time.

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* London: 187. We reached the Discovery hut at 6.45, having made the journey in well under three hours, and soon had a hot meal sizzling on the fine blubber stove that Meares had built of bricks and a sheet of boiler-iron during his previous visits.

**1930** (nr Little America) Byrd, Richard Evelyn in *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 151.

Braathen made a blubber stove from a gasoline drum.

**1964** (Cape Roberts, 1957–58) Helm, A.S. and Miller, J.H. *Antarctica: the story of the New Zealand party of the Trans-Antarctic expedition* R.E. Owen, Government Printer, Wellington: 347.

On the cape was a cairn (built by Taylor's party in 1911) surmounted by a bamboo pole. Nearby they found a blubber stove, which must have been left by the same party.

**1995** (Cape Geology, 1910–13) *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 13(10) June: 405.

The construction was used mainly as a kitchen with cooking done on a sheet-iron blubber stove brought from Cape Evans.

**blue****A blue whale.**

**1982** (South Georgia) Bonner, Nigel in *BAS Club Newsletter* no. 12 (Christmas): 20.

The first whale I saw was a giant blue — nearly 90 feet of dead whale, a ponderous bulk, black against the grey corrugated iron of the guano shed.

**1984** Heath, Colin *Australians in Antarctica* Methuen Australia Pty Ltd, Sydney: 25.

The blue whale is the largest animal ever to live on earth, larger even than the prehistoric dinosaurs. An adult blue can eat four tonnes of krill a day.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 30.

We talk of the pod of thirty pilot whales we saw during the afternoon, and around which the ship circled several times. This gives us hope that we will some time see the great sperm whales, their heads patterned with scars from battles with the giant squids, and the mighty Blues, at seventy tons and eighty feet the greatest of creatures, blowing twenty feet into the air before they roll and dive. Poor fools we! Our fellow men have cleansed these seas.

**blue billy** *Also blue belly*

A *prion*, probably any of several species. Prions are difficult to tell apart, seen at sea.

**1888** Sir James Hector in Buller, Sir Walter Lawry *A history of the birds of New Zealand. 2nd edition* Published by the author, Westminster London, vol II: 220.

In the Pacific I saw .. large flocks of 'Whale-birds,' as the sailors call them, which were the Blue Billy (*Prion turtur*).

**1915** Davis, J.K. in Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard. Being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911–1914* William Heinemann, London, vol 2: 34.

"Blue Billys" flew in great numbers about the ship.

**1943** Hydrographic Office, US Navy Department *Sailing directions for Antarctica. H.O. no 138* Hydrographic Office, Washington: 57.

Broad-billed whalebird (*Pachyptila forsteri*). Sometimes called the Broad-billed Prion or Blue-belly. Frequents islands in sub-Antarctic zone and does not migrate to the belt of pack-ice. It is the largest member of the genus, being an exceedingly broad-billed or frog-mouthed species of whalebird.

**1978** (Campbell Island, 1909–16) Timms, Joe in Kerr, I.S. and Judd, N., eds *Marlborough whalers at Campbell Island: a narrative based on the recollections of J. Timms* Department of Lands and Survey, Wellington NZ: 73.

There were other birds on Dent Island too, apart from the muttonbird. One was like the little Blue Billy we often saw up at Tory Channel.

**blue-eyed shag** *Also blue-eyed cormorant*

Any of the subantarctic cormorants or shags, esp. *Phalacrocorax atriceps* (fam. Phalacrocoracidae) of the Falkland Islands, South America, and antarctic and subantarctic islands. These birds have brownish eyes with a blue eye-ring which is brilliantly coloured in the breeding season. They are also called **imperial** or **king shags**, and their scientific classification is both complicated and confused.

**[1669** (Port Desire, Falkland Islands) Wood in Dampier, William (1729) *A collection of voyages in Four Volumes*. James and John Knapton, London, vol 4: 85.

About a Mile and an half farther up lies another Island, which is much frequented by a Sort of Fowl which are called Shaggs, that live mostly upon Fish, whereof we killed a great many young ones, and found them to be very good Meat.

**1841** Darwin, Charles, ed. (1901) *The zoology of the voyage of H.M.S. Beagle, under the command of Captain Fitzroy, R.N. during the years 1832 to 1836. Pt III Birds, 2nd edn* John Murray, London: 145.

*Phalacrocorax carunculatus* ... I procured a specimen of this bird at Port St. Julian, on the coast of Patagonia, where, during January, many were building. I merely mention it here, for the purpose of describing the singularly bright colours of the naked skin about its head. Skin round the eyes "campanula blue".]

**22 Nov 1901** (Macquarie Island) Wilson, Edward in Roberts, Brian, ed. (1967) *Edward Wilson's birds of the Antarctic* New Orchard Editions, Poole [Dorset]: 151.

All this time, from 5.30 p.m., when we landed, to about 8 p.m., the others had scattered with guns and cameras to try and find anything in the way of eggs or birds or what not, and the result was a really splendid collection for my department. We got .. Blue-eyed Cormorant, Black-backed Gull, Giant Petrel, Rothschild's Landrail.

**1901** Saunders, in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 234.

There is a Cormorant of some kind which Webster, of H.M.S. *Chanticleer*, calls 'the Blue-eyed Shag', found breeding at Deception Island, South Shetlands.

**1922** (South Georgia) Murphy, Robert Cushman in *National Geographic* 41(4) Apr: 437.

Down below the eeries of the sooty albatrosses, on the lower ledges of South Georgia cliffs, the blue-eyed shags nest in popular rookeries. They are far more beautiful birds than our northern cormorants, having iridescent blue-green backs and snowy throats and breasts.

**1938** Ommanney, F.D. *South latitude* Longman, Green & Co., London: 60.

He said he wanted to shoot a "Shag" — a kind of blue-eyed cormorant which abounds in South Georgia.

**1949** (Heard Island) Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 120.

A blue-eyed shag, frightened by our approach, pushed out his long neck, beat the air swiftly with his wings and flew off over the water.

**1956** Rand, R.W. in *The Ostrich* XXVII(3) Oct: 127.

According to some authors the blue-eyed shags of the sub-antarctic belong to three species, *Phalacrocorax albiventer*, *P. atriceps* and *P. verrucosus*. ... All three species are typically white-breasted, have blue eye-lids and are 680–740 mm. long. Other characters of diagnostic value are the pink feet (sometimes dull brown in Kerguelen), white wing bars, white patches on the back, crest on the crown and extent of black plumage on the side of the head.

**1967** Gillham, Mary E. *Sub-Antarctic sanctuary. Summertime on Macquarie Island* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Wellington: 139.

The circle of bright blue skin round the brown iris links it [sc. the Macquarie Island cormorant, *Phalacrocorax albiventer purpurascens*] with its fellows in the rest of the sub-Antarctic — the group being referred to collectively as the blue-eyed cormorants.

**1991** (Anvers Island, Antarctic Peninsula) Barker, David *Antarctica: an artist's logbook* Random Century New Zealand, Auckland: 75.

Blue-eyed shag *con* pears is tonight's welcome dinner menu.

**1994** *Geol[Australia]* 16(5) Sept–Oct: 37.

[caption] A German couple get married at Port Lockroy witnessed by fellow passengers and crew and several hundred gentoo penguins and blue-eyed shags.

### blue fish *Tristan da Cunha*

[The back and head of the fish are bluish. NOED records the name blue-fish for various different saltwater fishes from 1782–.]

The large marine fish *Hyperoglyphe antarctica* (fam. Centrolophidae), which occurs most commonly in or near rocky areas. It is fished off Tristan da Cunha and Gough Islands (and is commercially fished elsewhere), and is a traditional food fish on Tristan. It grows to about 1.4 m (4 ft 7 in) long. The fish is known as **antarctic butterfish** in South Africa.

**9 May 1824** Earle, Augustus (1832) *A narrative of a nine months' residence in New Zealand, in 1827; together with a journal of a residence in Tristan d'Acunha, an island situated between South America and the Cape of Good Hope* Longman, Rees, Orme, Brown, Green, & Longman, London: 321.

His father and I caught the great number of large fish called *blue fish*, weighing twenty or thirty pounds each.

**1910** Barrow, K.M. *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 276.

The fish we saw at Tristan were .. Blue-fish (*Perca antarctica*) [etc.].

**1964** Jenkins, Geoffrey *A grue of ice* Fontana Books, London: 22. The islanders rely on the inshore crawfish and deepwater Blue Fish as a perennial source of food.

**1990** Thompson, Pat Forsyth in *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 7 (Sept): 8.

Blue Fish are large fish ranging from 15–100 lbs which are caught on handlines in a depth of about 30 fathoms of water. Traditionally the children dug out the eyes, dried them, scraped them, and used them as marbles.

### bluegill notothen *See blue rockcod*

### blue glacier ice

**Blue ice** on a glacier. *See also glacier ice.*

**8 Dec 1908** (nr 83°S) Shackleton, E.H. (1909) *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907–1909* William Heinemann, London: 316.

After lunch we still travelled up, but came on to blue glacier ice almost free from crevasses, so did much better, the sledges running easily.

**1923** Bayly, P.G.W. and Stillwell, F.L. *The Adélie Land meteorite Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911–14. Scientific reports series A vol IV Geology pt 1* Government Printer, Sydney: 2.

The surface level of the blue glacier ice at Cape Denison during the seven months from 2nd March to 3rd October, 1912, was lowered 5 inches by ablation.

**1982** Brewster, Barney *Antarctica: wilderness at risk* A.H. & A.W. Reed Ltd, Wellington: 2.

The accumulated snowfalls [sc. on the antarctic icecap] are gradually changed through the pressure of their own weight into blue glacier ice.

### blue hawk *Falkland Islands*

The bird of prey *Buteo polyosoma*, now generally called the **red-backed buzzard**. One of its several colour phases is a predominantly blue-grey plumage.

**1910** Cobb, Arthur F. *Wildlife in the Falkland Islands* Gowans & Gray, London: 67.

Red-backed Buzzard (*Buteo erythronotus*) .. Generally known as the Blue Hawk because of its blue-grey wings, this bird is not very numerous in the Falklands .. They build nests of sticks, from the diddle-dee and fachina bushes, lined with grass.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 155.

Red-backed Hawk *Buteo polyosoma* .. Local Names: Hawk, Blue Hawk ... Both sexes have variable body plumage colours, but the female has a rich chestnut-brown mantle and back in all colour phases.

### blue ice *noun phr. and attrib.*

[Blue ice is recorded in Canadian English from 1727 (DCanE) for clear, translucent ice.]

Hard, glacier ice which is often glassy-smooth and occasionally bright blue and is normally snow-free. *See also blue glacier ice.*

**1827** Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24, 2nd edn* David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 126.

Many pieces which appeared to be the bottoms of ice islands were about from 80 to 100 feet in superficial extent; and as they were 10 feet above the water, they must have been at least 40 feet in depth, as from the specific gravity of such sort of blue and solid ice, we judged that about 30 feet must be under water.

**9 June 1834** Darwin, Charles, ed. (1901) *The zoology of the voyage of H.M.S. Beagle, under the command of Captain Fitzroy,*

R.N. during the years 1832 to 1836. Pt III Birds, 2nd edn John Murray, London: 243.

Several glaciers descended in a winding course from the upper great expanse of snow to the sea-coast: they may be likened to great frozen Niagaras; and perhaps these cataracts of blue ice are fully as beautiful as the moving ones of water.

**21 Feb 1911** Wilson, Edward (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912* Blandford Press, London: 105.

We got too near in towards White Island and found ourselves running over irregular ice — snow drifts alternating with weathered blue ice surfaces, the sort of stuff that I knew would be crevassed.

**1935** Christensen, Lars in Jayne, E.M.G., transl. fr Norwegian *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 197.

He saw some huge capsized icebergs, the so-called “blue ice” icebergs, which in cloudy but clear weather appear to be black. They have a most disappointing way of resembling islands even when seen at a very short distance.

**1949** (Heard Island) Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 178.

Around them the blue ice was the colour of a tropic lagoon.

**1964** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Apr: 3.

David Dodd and his wife Jennie introduced a novel idea for their wedding in Melbourne on Thursday 7th May. David returned from Davis with some blue ice which was used for chilling their champagne.

**1970** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* 16(2) June: 4.

The helicopters were used .. to establish a depot on the blue ice slopes above Platcha in the Vestfold Hills.

**1974** van Zyl, C.Z. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* no 4: 15.

Another conspicuous feature of the blue ice fields is a secondary layering of alternating white bubbly ice and clear blue ice.

**1993** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XXVIII(5): 255.

In some mountainous regions in Antarctica, strong winds blow away the fallen snow and sublimate the firn, exposing areas of glacier ice, which are further ablated by sublimation. The exposed surface is often called “blue ice”, but its appearance might be better described as “blue-white,” because the ice contains numerous bubbles.

### blue ice runway Also blue ice airstrip

A stretch of blue ice used as a runway.

**1992** (Patriot Hills) Palin, Michael *Pole to Pole* BBC Books, London: 306.

“We’ll be landing on a blue-ice runway ... the ice is a little rough and the aeroplane wiggles around a bit ... Lots of engine noise.”

**1996** Antarctic Support Associates *Your stay at United States Antarctic Program stations* United States Antarctic Program: 2.

McMurdo includes .. a blue ice runway and a summer runway on the sea ice.

### blue petrel

The small greyish-blue and white seabird *Halobaena caerulea* (fam. Procellariidae), a petrel of southern waters, which breeds on subantarctic islands and in southernmost South America.

**23 Dec 1772** (nr 55° 16'S) Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's*

*Ships the Resolution and Adventure, In the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* W. Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970) vol 1: 30.

Mr. Forster, who went in the boat, shot some of the small grey birds before mentioned, which were of the peterel tribe, and about the size of a small pigeon. Their back, and upper side of their wings, their feet and bills, are of a blue grey colour. Their bellies, and under side of their wings, are white, a little tinged with blue. The upper side of their quill feathers is a dark blue tinged with black. A streak is formed by feathers nearly of this colour, along the upper parts of the wings, and crossing the back a little above the tail. The end of the tail feathers is also of the same colour. Their bills are much broader than any I have seen of the same tribe; and their tongues are remarkably broad. These blue peterels, as I shall call them, are seen no where but in the southern hemisphere.

**1806** (Amsterdam Island) Barrow, John *A voyage to Cochinchina, in the years 1792 and 1793* Oxford University Press facs, Kuala Lumpur (1975): 147.

The number of birds was likewise astonishing, and the two causeways were strewed with their eggs. During our short stay on shore we obtained the following birds: .. *Procellaria Pelagica*, Stormy Petrel, *Procellaria Forsteri*, Blue Petrel [etc.].

**5 Feb 1820** (nr 67° 16'S, 17° 00'E) Bellingshausen, Thaddeus in Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. (1945) *The voyage of Captain Bellingshausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819–1821* Hakluyt Society, London, vol 1: 128.

Near the ice we shot a few petrels, polar snow petrels, storm petrels and weather birds; this last bird is to be found in all latitudes. We saw one Egmont hen, a grey albatross and many blue petrels.

**1848** Gould, John *The birds of Australia* The author, 20 Broad St, Golden Square, London, vol VII: pl. 51.

*Procellaria caerulea*, Gould. Blue Petrel. ... Plentiful midway between Tristan d'Acunha and the coast of America.

**1862** Layard, E.L in *The Ibis* IV(XIV) Apr: 98.

Lat. 43°S., long. 107°E. — The small blue Petrel (*Prion vittatus?*) is very abundant here, but never comes near the ship. This species may be known by the W-like mark on the back when the wings are extended in flight.

**1879** Sharpe, R Bowdler in *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: 140.

The multitudes of Blue Petrels which breed in Kerguelen Island are hardly conceivable. Every dry hillside and knoll in the neighbourhood of Royal Sound was populous with them to a remarkable extent.

**1907** Clarke, William Eagle in *The Ibis* I(II) Apr: 326.

The birds observed between the Sandwich Group and the Antarctic Circle were Wilson's Petrels, “Blue Petrels” (*?Prion* or *Halobaena*)<sup>1</sup> [etc.].

<sup>1</sup>Footnote: Both *Prion banksi* and *Halobaena caerulea* appear under the name of “Blue Petrels” in the “Zoological Log,” and when specimens were not obtained it is impossible to say which species is intended.

**1954** (Marion Island) Rand, R.W. in *The Ibis* 96(2): 197.

Blue Petrels were first encountered in numbers in April when their continual vocal activity made their whereabouts unmistakable.

**1980** Parmelee, David F. *Bird Island in antarctic waters* University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis: 39.

Blue petrels are not known to many people, except perhaps bird enthusiasts who sail the Southern Ocean. They often confuse the beginner because they closely resemble the prions in size, shape, and plumage ... Fortunately for even the experienced observer, the blue petrel displays a conspicuous white-tipped tail that can be seen from far off. This particular characteristic makes at-sea observations of this bird quite easy, for the white tip is not present in any of the prions or other petrels.



1991 *Polar Record* 27(163) Oct: 359.

The keel, wings and tail of a blue petrel *Halobaena caerulea* were found on 12 February 1991 on a sandy beach of Fildes Peninsula facing the Drake Passage ... This petrel is circumpolar in southern oceans north to 20–30°S during the austral winter.

**blue rockcod** Also *bluegill notothen*

The marine fish *Notothenia cyanobrancha* (fam. Nototheniidae), which lives in shallow waters around Heard and Kerguelen Islands, and has a dark brown body with blue marks on its gill-covers. It grows to about 30 cm (1 ft) long.

1985 Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 348.

*Notothenia (Gobionotothen) cyanobrancha* ... Blue rockcod ... Colour: body uniformly dark brown, a little lighter ventrally; margin of opercular membrane dark-blue ... Species known only from the Kerguelen and Heard Islands in very shallow waters.

1990 Gon, O. and Heemstra, P.C. *Fishes of the Southern Ocean* J.L.B. Smith Institute of Ichthyology, Grahamstown: 303.

*Notothenia (Indonotothenia) cyanobrancha* Richardson, 1844. Bluegill notothen ... In life, uniform dark brown, paler ventrally.

**blue whale** noun *phr.* and *attrib.*

The bluish-grey **baleen whale** *Balaenoptera musculus* (fam. Balaenopteridae), the largest living or extinct (and nearly both, in our time) creature.

In the early 20th century, mainly the 1920s and 1930s, these whales were hunted for their oil. In the early 1990s their population was estimated at fewer than 500. The blue whale has also been known as **Sibbal's rorqual** and the **sulphur bottom**. See also **pygmy blue whale**.

1851 [source: NOED] Melville, H. *Moby Dick* I xxxi: 229.

There are a rabble of uncertain, fugitive, half-fabulous whales .. the Iceberg Whale .. the Blue Whale, &c.

1902 Beddard, Frank Evers *Mammalia. The Cambridge Natural History* Macmillan and Co, London, vol X: 356.

*B. sibbaldii*, the Blue Whale, is the giant of its race, reaching a length of 85 feet. Its colour is a dark bluish grey, with small whitish spots on the breast. The dorsal fin is small and low with straight margins.

1938 *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 47(2) 1 Feb: 20.

In this Regulation — The expression "Blue Whale" means a whale known by any of the names set out in Part II of the first Schedule to the Whale Fishery (Consolidation) Ordinance, 1936.

1950 (South Georgia) Saunders, Alfred A *camera in Antarctica* Winchester Publications, London: 29.

The Blue whale gets its name from the colour of its skin which is a mottled blue. The tongue, roof of the mouth and baleen plates are dark blue.

1972 Allen, Durward L., Cromie, William J. and Ames, William H. *The fascinating secrets of oceans and islands* Reader's Digest, Sydney: 175.

The largest baleen whale — and the largest creature that ever lived — is the blue whale. This species reaches a length of nearly 100 ft and weights up to 135 tons. Named after its bluish back.

1990 *Antarctica Sun Times [McMurdo]* IV(vii) 7 Dec: 3.

Blue whale calves can drink 130 gallons of their mother's milk each day.

1992 *Canberra Times* 8 July: 23.

At up to 33 m long and 140 tonnes — as heavy as 2000 people — the blue whale is the largest animal the world has known. It also emits the loudest sound produced by a living source — its whistle, more deafening, at 188 decibels, than a passing jet plane (usually between 140 and 170 decibels).

**blue whale unit** *Whaling.* Also *blue whale equivalent*

A unit designed to regulate whale catches, based on the oil yield from various whales. The yield from other whales was compared with the average from a **blue whale**, and this figure (121 barrels) was treated as 1. One blue whale equalled two fin whales, two and a half humpbacks or six sei whales (see 1929 quotation). Sperm whales were not included in the system, and there was no quota on them in antarctic waters.

The quotas arrived at by the method were voluntary, and the unit was superseded in 1972. It is sometimes shortened to **BWU**. See also **barrel**.

1929 *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 364.

Risting has used the total output of the whaling stations with the total number of whales caught to give a figure for the "fatness" of each season's catch in barrels of oil per "Blue whale unit." This unit is based upon the assumption that a Blue whale gives twice as much oil as a Fin whale, two and a half times as much as a Humpback, and six times as much as a Sei whale from the same field of operations.

1943 Hydrographic Office, US Navy Department *Sailing directions for Antarctica. H.O. no 138* Hydrographic Office, Washington: 64.

All the Norwegian companies and all but one of the English companies operated under a cartel during this season [sc. 1932–33]. It was drawn for the purpose of eliminating cut-throat competition, preventing the flooding of the whale oil market, and minimizing depletion of whale stocks. The agreement allocated oil quotas to be marketed; specified minimum lengths of whales captured at 60 feet for blue whales and 50 feet for fin whales; held gunners by contract to minimum lengths to be killed; set wages and lays of crews to size of whales taken; set date of 20 October as beginning of season; and set Blue Whale Equivalents in calculating quotas. (1 Standard Blue = 1 Blue = 2 Fin = 3 Humpback = 3 Sperm = 5 Sei = 121 barrels of oil).

1960 *Polar Record* 10(66) Sept: 291.

Pelagic operations for baleen whales began on 7 January and ended on 16 March (as in the previous season), when 15,300 Blue Whale units had been taken. The total pelagic catch was 30,824 baleen whales and 5437 Sperm Whales, from which were produced 1,798,449 barrels of whale oil and 251,794 barrels of sperm oil (at 6 barrels to the ton). By-products totalled 126,196 tons. The South Georgia catch from three shore stations totalled 2311 baleen whales and 215 Sperm Whales from which were produced 92,113 barrels of whale oil, 10,305 barrels of sperm oil, and 17,950 tons of by-products.

1972 Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 161.

Blue whales, now almost extinct, have joined the list of protected species ... The Blue Whale Unit, appropriately enough, has also disappeared, and each species is hunted to a quota which at last bears some relation to its estimated numbers.

**1990** Martin, Anthony R. *Whales and dolphins* Bedford Editions, London: 70.

During the 1930s, voluntary quotas on rorqual catching in the Antarctic were introduced by whaling nations. They were set in 'blue whale units', whereby a blue whale was considered equal to two fin whales, two and a half humpback or six sei whales. These quotas did nothing to protect the depleted blue whale, though, and were later abandoned.

### blue whiting *Falkland Islands*

[Whiting has been used for gadoid fish (NOED c1425-) and other fish.]

The marine fish *Micromesistius australis australis* (fam. Gadidae), which occurs around the Falkland Islands and southernmost South America. It grows to about 90 cm (3 ft) long and is commercially fished; it is a subspecies of *M. australis* which occurs more widely and is generally called the 'southern blue whiting'.

**1982** Barnes, James N. *Let's save Antarctica!* Greenhouse Publications, Melbourne: 20.

The most heavily fished zones are around South Georgia and Kerguelen Islands, and the most commercially attractive species appear to be Blue Whiting, Patagonian Hake in the south Atlantic, Antarctic cod and Ice-fish in all areas.

**1994** Falkland Islands Government Office *Introduction to the Falkland Islands* Falkland Islands Government Office, London: 6. The main resources which occur in the [sc. Falklands] fishery are *Illex* squid, which are fished principally by specialised squid jigging vessels from the Far East; *Loligo* squid which are fished mainly by trawlers from a number of European countries. In addition to the two squid species, a number of finfish including Blue Whiting, Hake and Hoki are taken.

### blunt scalyhead

The scaly-headed marine fish *Trematomus eulepidotus* (fam. Nototheniidae) of antarctic waters including those of the South Orkney Islands. It grows to about 34 cm (11 in), and has been caught as bycatch.

**1990** Gon, O. and Heemstra, P.C. *Fishes of the Southern Ocean* J.L.B. Smith Institute of Ichthyology, Grahamstown: 318.

*Trematomus eulepidotus* ... Blunt scalyhead ... Body and head almost entirely scaled ... In alcohol, ground colour buff, with a chequered pattern formed by staggered dark blotches.

**1993** Kailola, P.J., Williams, M.J., Stewart, P.C., Reichelt, R.E. et al. *Australian fisheries resources* Bureau of Resource Sciences/Fisheries Research and Development Corporation: 346.

In the CIS spiny icefish and blunt scalyheads are marketed as frozen fillets or headed and gutted fish.

### body *Tristan da Cunha*

A knitted bedjacket.

**3-10 Aug 1952** Elliott, Lady Elizabeth in *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* (1999) no 24 (Mar): 7.

I got no less than 4 "bodies" or bed jackets which are the peak of island knitting and require a great deal of wool and knitting, they were all white but trimmed with various colours and ribbons.

### bog balsam *Falkland Islands*

The plant *Bolax gummifera* (formerly *B. glebaria*): see **balsam bog**.

**1857** Snow, W Parker A two years' cruise off Tierra del Fuego, the Falkland Islands, Patagonia, and in the River Plate: a narrative of life in the Southern Seas Longman, Brown, Green, Longmans and Roberts, London: 122.

Scores of the globular bog-balsams were glowing with livid fire, while the fachinal and other shrubs crackled in the flames as they became readily ignited at the first touch of the burning element.

**1885** (Falkland Islands) Thomson, Sir C. Wyville and Murray, John Narrative, vol 1 pt 2: *Report on the scientific results of the voyage of H.M.S. Challenger*. Her Majesty's Government, London: 889.

A most interesting plant, the Bog Balsam (*Bolax glebaria*), occurs all over the moors, closely simulating in appearance the *Azorella selago*.

**1904** Vallentin, Rupert in *Memoirs and Proc of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no. 23: 10.

I also noticed on this occasion some of the largest specimens of that singular plant, the Bog balsam (*Bolax glebaria*). Although very common throughout the whole archipelago, it is very seldom one finds a plant of this species of any considerable size, such as were to be found in the early days of the colony. It is well known to the residents on these islands that on bruising or cutting the hard exterior of this plant, so as to allow the rain to lodge in the crevices, a rapid decay soon follows, and within about a twelve-month nothing but a heap of mould and fibres is left of a plant which took years to attain its previous size ... Sheep ... in their close search for food run over and bruise the smooth surface of the Bog balsam plants, and so they are easily destroyed.

### bog fern *Tristan da Cunha*

[Bog has been used in the names of plants growing in bogs from 1760- (NOED).]

The fern *Blechnum palmiforme* (fam. Blechnaceae), with a trunk-like stem and stiff fronds. It is usually 0.5 to 1 m tall but can grow to about 2 m (6 ft 7 in). It is not closely related to the tree ferns of Australasia and the Pacific.

**1958** Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 17.

In between the trees there are tree-ferns (*Blechnum palmiforme*), known on the island as 'bog-farn', and on the Base these form a thick jungle of stubby trunks up to three or four feet high, crowned by stiff, yellow-green fronds.

**1985** Verrill, G.E. in *Transactions of the Connecticut Academy of Arts and Science* 9: 15.

The tree-like fern *Blechnum palmiforme* or Bog Fern as it is known to the Tristan Islanders, is the other species characteristic of fern bush.

### boiling down verbal noun, sealing, whaling and penguinig

[To boil down, meaning to lessen the bulk of something by boiling, is recorded in English fr 1845- (NOED), but this sense is distinct from the earlier usage.]

The process of extracting oil from whale, seal or penguin blubber, flesh and bones by boiling. See also **digester**.

**1936** Guthrie-Smith, W.H. *Sorrows and joys of a New Zealand naturalist* AH & AW Reed, Dunedin: 218.

The boiling down of tens of thousands of the last named [sc. penguins] for the anticipated benefit of one person has now at last been stopped.

**1955** Taylor, B.W. *The flora, vegetation and soils of Macquarie Island ANARE reports Series B Vol. II Botany* Antarctic Division, Dept of External Affairs, Melbourne: 92.

Huts and boiling-down factories were erected at one time or another at many points.

**1993** Poncet, Sally in *Australian Geographic* 32 (Oct): 107.

Huge pieces of whale blubber were once hauled up this ramp at Grytviken for boiling down.

### **bolas** *Falkland Islands*

[From the Argentine, Uruguan Spanish *bolas* a missile of balls connected by strong cord (NOED 1843–), to throw and capture an animal.]

A cord attaching weights, thrown to bring down cattle, geese, etc. In the Falklands, the main users of bolas today are children, to catch geese.

**19 Apr 1842** McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 284.

A party of gauchos had been lassoing cattle, seven out of a herd of 135, of all sizes, ages, and sex — from the old bull and cow to the young calf. After throwing the bolas round the animal, they cut the ham-strings and then the throat.

**1879** Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 557.

The cattle are thrown by means of the lasso or bolas, and ham-strung, or "cut down," as the term is, and then killed and skinned at leisure. The bolas', as is well-known, is an apparatus consisting of heavy balls of stone, metal, or wood fastened at the ends of long thongs of raw hide. Footnote: Mr. Darwin's "Journal of Researches," pp. 44 and III, in his accounts of the bolas, calls it by this name as also other authors, Musters included. A hunter, however, from whom I bought one at Sandy Point, and also the Falkland Islanders, said the name was not bolas, but "boleaderos," or some word closely similar, and they considered the word bolas incorrect. Possibly the name has changed.

**1993** Chater, Tony *The Falklands* The Penna Press, St Albans: 90. The future lay not in beef but wool and while itinerant bands of bolas-swinging cowboys galloped the plains after wild cattle for meat, hides and tallow, shrewder businessmen were queuing for real estate.

**1994** (1910s–1930s) Rogers, Ellen, quoted in Simpson, Tim *Cooking the Falkland Island way* Peregrine Publishing, Bangor: 16.

Wild geese were plentiful and very good to eat. They were quite tame and caught by Bolas which consisted of a triangular piece of string approximately one metre length each, on two ends a 'tavo'.

### **bone oil** *Whaling*

[Bone oil is recorded by NOED (without examples) for 'a fetid, blackish-brown oil derived by the dry distillation of bones. The sense below is both more restricted (applying only to whales) and more inclusive (both flesh and bones are boiled to produce it).]

Oil from the bones and flesh of whales.

**1924** Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history* by Rupert Vallentin Clarendon Press, Oxford: 224.

Number 3 is produced from the flesh and bones, and is called bone oil ... Other whale products are whale-meat meal (a good cattle food), and whale guano, which contains about 8.50 per cent. of ammonia and about 21 per cent. tribasic phosphates.

### **bone plan** *Whaling* Also **bone platform**

A raised wooden platform or **plan** on which whale bones were sawn up, before **boiling down** to extract the oil.

**1929** (South Georgia) *Discovery Reports vol I* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 263.

The head is separated from the body at the condyles and drawn up to the "bone platform" which is built immediately above a set of pressure boilers. Here it is cut up by a steam saw and the pieces are dropped into the boilers beneath.

**1950** (Grytviken, South Georgia) Saunders, Alfred *A camera in Antarctica* Winchester Publications, London: 10.

There was also a second raised plan for sawing up the enormous heads and jawbones and separating the segments of the tremendous backbones, which were then treated to steam pressure boilers to extract the oil ... Sometimes a whaler missed his footing on the 'bone plan', as it was called, and came slithering down into the quagmire of blood, grease and flesh at the bottom.

### **boomerang** *verb and noun, US, NZ*

[The Australian English use of boomerang as a verb meaning 'to fly back to the starting point' is recorded in NOED from 1880 and in AND from 1891. Here, it is used more specifically, of aircraft flights.]

(Of an aircraft flight) To return to the point of takeoff without landing at the destination, usually (see 1996 quotation) as a result of bad weather; such a flight.

**1994** *Antarctic Times: the official newsletter of Scott Base 7* (3 Dec): [6].

Boomeranged flights with mail on.

**1995** *Nocte [Scott Base winter times]* Aug-Sept: [5].

The two aircraft flying south have to boomerang at PSR (Point of Safe Return).

**1995** *Antarctic Times: the official newsletter of Scott Base 12* (7 Jan): [6].

Our resident snail leaves the warm lush pastures of Canterbury — hides in a lettuce — cryogenisates for 4 days — is boomeranged twice.

**1996** Carroll, Valerie *United States Antarctic Program participant guide* National Science Foundation, Arlington Virginia: 65.

[glossary] Boomerang: A flight that departs and returns to its origin, due to weather or maintenance considerations.

### **borch**

[From a contraction of the scientific name of the fish, which was named by English naturalist Edward George Boulenger after the Norwegian explorer Carsten Egeberg Borchgrevink (1864–1934), who in 1898 was in the Belgica party which spent a winter beset in Antarctica.]

The fish *Pagothenia borchgrevinki*: see **bald rockcod**.

**1994** Macdonald, John in *Antarctic Times: the official newsletter of Scott Base 4* (12 Nov): [2].

Fishing has started with a multitude of 'borchs'.

### **bottlenose seal** *Obs.*

The seal *Mirounga leonina*: see **elephant seal**.

**1781** Pennant, Thomas *History of quadrupeds* B. White, London, vol. 1: 531.

**Bottlenose seal.** Sea lion. *Dampier's voy.* i. 90. iv. 15 ... Phoca Leonina .. Lin ... Inhabits the seas about New Zealand, the island of Juan Fernandez and the Falkland islands, and that of New Georgia, S. lat. 54–40.

**1817** (Tristan da Cunha) Carmichael, Captain Dugald *Transactions of the Linnean Society of London* (1818) 12(2): 495.

The Bottle-nosed Seal, or Sea-lion (*Phoca Leonina*). The colour of this animal is blueish-gray along the back, approaching to white on the belly ... The full-grown male measures from twenty to twenty-five feet in length, and yields seventy gallons of oil. The female is considerably smaller. When irritated it has a curious manner of protruding its snout, and inflating the skin over its nose.

**bottlenosed whale** Also **bottlenose (whale)**

[Spec. use of bottle-nose the bottle-nose whale, any of several species of *Hyperoodon* (NOED 1668-).]

The rarely-seen whale *Hyperoodon planifrons* (fam. Ziphiidae) of the southern hemisphere; it has a bulbous forehead. Most summer sightings are close to the antarctic ice edge. It grows to about 9 m (30 ft) long, and 8 tonnes weight, and is not well-known. It is also called the **southern bottlenose whale**.

**1894** Bruce, William in Burn Murdoch, W.G. *From Edinburgh to the Antarctic* Longmans, Green and Co, London: 356.

Whilst in the ice we met with three kinds [sc. of whale] — Finners, .. others strongly resembling the Pacific Hunchback Whale, and Bottle-nose Whale.

**1901** Lydekker, R. in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 208.

The bottle-nosed whale of the Southern seas was described, in 1882, by Sir W.H. Flower as a distinct species .. Bottlenosed whales, which must not be confounded with the dolphins of the same name, grow to thirty or forty feet in length, and are remarkable for the great elevation of the forehead of the old males above the beak.

**1922** Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Picador, London: 159.

I have a very distinct recollection that the whales were not all Killers, and that some, at any rate, were Bottlenosed whales.

**1930** Stead, David G. in *Australian Museum Magazine* 4: 126. Various species of dolphins, including the great Blackfish Whale or "Bottlenose" (*Hyperoodon*).

**1993** *BAS Club Newsletter* no. 30 (summer): 30.

Even rarer were the bottle nosed whales seen in a hole in the ice near [R]othera.

**bottom of the world**

[A beautiful example, like the word Antarctica, of the top-heavy northern orientation of the English language; one might expect that there would also be connotations of the arse-end of the world, but this isn't reflected in the quotations.]

Generally, Antarctica or the antarctic regions; specifically, the South Pole itself.

**1930** *The New York Times* 4 May: 6.

[caption] The bottom of the world in which we live: the towering mountains on the rim of the South Polar Plateau.

**1963** McKenzie, Douglas *Opposite poles* Robert Hale & Co, London/Whitcombe & Tombs, New Zealand: 69.

Hillary's run to the South Pole was, following Everest, as natural as night followed day: and it gave a global "first" which many better men might have found hard to resist — "from the top of the world to the bottom of the world".

**1968** Dukert, Joseph M. *This is Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 27.

The geographic South Pole is what Shackleton was after, however. This is the "bottom of the world", the place on all our globes at which the lines of longitude come together.

**1981** Land, Barbara *The new explorers: women in Antarctica* Dodd, Mead & Co, New York: 9.

"There are some things women don't do," Harry Darlington told his bride. "They don't become Pope or President — or go down to the Antarctic." A reasonable statement — in 1947 — but Jeannie Darlington was upset. Just a few weeks after their wedding, her husband was going away to the bottom of the world for a full year.

**1992** (South Pole) Palin, Michael *Pole to Pole* BBC Books, London: 319.

Eventually Clem and Nigel and Fraser and Rudy give up looking for the tent and we all stand together at the bottom of the world. Or the top. It depends which way you look at it.

**1995** Lyons, Keith in *Climber* Autumn: 25.

[caption] He had no idea he would end up winning the world's southern most climbing competition, the inaugural "Climb Up the Bottom of the World".

**1997** [McMurdo station] *The Ottawa Citizen* 26 Jan: A7.

It was one of those perfect Antarctic nights. No wind, clear sky. So Kathy Conlan set off for a trek at the bottom of the world.

**Bounty Islands**

The Bounty Islands were named *Bounty Isles* in 1788 by William Bligh after his ship the *Bounty*. The small group of about 20 rocky islands and rocks lie 620 km (385 miles) east of Stewart Island, New Zealand, at 47°43'S, 179°00'E.

**Bounty Island shag**

The rare black and white cormorant or shag *Phalacrocorax* (or *Leucocarbo*) *ranfurlyi* (fam. Phalacrocoracidae) which lives only on Bounty Island, where it is the only shag. Its estimated population in 1994 was less than 1200 birds.

**[1901** *The Ibis* 1 (III) Jul: 524.

The specimens of birds collected by the Earl of Ranfurly, Governor of New Zealand, during several trips round the outlying islands under his jurisdiction .. have now been received at the British Museum. They were preserved in formaline, but have been very successfully converted into skins. Besides two Southern Mergansers (*Mergus australis*) and the Flightless Duck (*Nesonetia aucklandica*), there are examples of a new Cormorant (*Phalacrocorax ranfurlyi*) and of other rare and little-known species.]

**1928** Mathews, Gregory M. *The birds of Norfolk & Lord Howe Islands and the Australasian South Polar Quadrant with additions to "The birds of Australia"* H.F. & G. Witherby, London: 138.

*Hypoleucus campbelli ranfurlyi*. (pl. 100). Bounty Island shag.

**1997** Southern Heritage Expeditions *Expedition cruising: Antarctica (the Ross Sea and King George V Land), Subantarctic islands of New Zealand Australia and the South Indian Ocean* (travel brochure) SHE, Christchurch: 4.

Other seabirds that can be seen include the rare Bounty Island shag and Fulmar prion.

**box** *Falkland Islands* As **Falkland box, native box(wood)**

[Box has been used for small evergreen shrubs of the genus *Buxus* since 931 (NOED); here, it is used for another neat evergreen plant.]

The shrub *Hebe* (formerly *Veronica*) *elliptica* (fam. Scrophulariaceae), which grows to about 3 m (9 ft 10 in) tall. It occurs on the subantarctic islands of New Zealand (as well as its mainland), the Falkland Islands, and southern South America. In New Zealand, it is known as **coastal veronica**.

**1904** (Falkland Islands) Vallentin, Rupert in *Memoirs and Proc of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no. 23: 9.

The side of all the estuaries and coves on this portion of the West Falklands are almost fringed with the bushes of the attractive 'Falkland box' (*Veronica decussata*). These beautiful shrubs were in full flower at the time of my visit, and the

flowers besides being beautiful possessed a delicate aroma, which was most pleasant, for it perfumed the air for some distance ... This plant is successfully employed as a shelter from the winds, numerous bushes placed closely together forming a splendid hedge in many of the gardens on these islands.

**1911** Skottsberg, Carl *The wilds of Patagonia* Edward Arnold, London: 13.

My intention was to look at and photograph the largest land plant of all Falkland, the *Veronica elliptica*, or Falkland box.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 163.

Common along beaches, particularly in dense woody growths of the shrub *Hebe elliptica*, known as 'Box' in the Falklands.

**1989** Davies, T.H. and McAdam, J.H. *Wild flowers of the Falkland Islands* Bluntisham Books, Huntingdon: 18.

Native box (*Hebe elliptica*) One of the tallest native plants on the Islands and one which, by all accounts, used to be much more common than it is today. Box is commonly used as a hedging plant around gardens in Stanley and the outlying settlements and it can grow up to 3 m tall.

**1992** Strange, Ian J. *A field guide to the wildlife of the Falkland Islands and South Georgia* Harper Collins, London: 31.

Native Boxwood .. is also quite common in some settlements, although in its wild state it is now only found on some unstocked offshore islands and in a few inaccessible coastal locations on West Falkland.

## boys, the

[An affectionate name for these creatures. Most sledge dogs were male.]

Sledge dogs.

**1966** Baum, Allyn *Antarctica: the worst place in the world* Macmillan Co, NY: 116.

With the command, "Are you ready, boys?" the dogs stand up alert in their traces.

**1995** Maggs, Tom in Robinson, Shelagh *Huskies in harness: a love story in Antarctica* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 14.

As your time passes at Mawson, and the nights return and lengthen, you learn the meaning of the soft short jingle of a chain in the wee hours — just one of the boys having a stretch.

## braai *Tristan da Cunha* Also *braaivleis*

[From the S African braaivleis a gathering at which meat is cooked outdoors on a braai (DSAfrE).]

A barbecue, a gathering at which meat is cooked on a braai.

**1960** *Tristan Topics* 5 (June): 4.

The South Africans on the Island gave a most successful dance and braaivleis in honour of the fiftieth anniversary of Union Day on May 31.

**1971** *Antarktische Bulletin* 2(5-6) Apr.-Sept: 51.

A braaivleis was held on Gamtoos point one evening. A friendly fire was started, but unfortunately this attracted the inquisitive night birds.

**1983** (Inaccessible Island) Fraser, Michael, Gilfillan, David, Hall, Nick et al. *Denstone Expedition to Inaccessible Island. Denstonian Supplement Autumn 1983* Denstone College, Uttoxeter: 20.

Harold's forte was barbeque cooking; hence our enjoyment of fried 'petrel' chicks on Salt Beach and the 'braaie' by the roaring surf for our final party on Blenden Hall Beach.

**1987** Hunter, Steven in *BAS Club Newsletter* 22 (Christmas): 46. Although there was no formal Saturday meal, as we had at South Georgia, being a South African base we had regular braais (barbeques) outside.

**branter** See **brent goose**

**brant goose** See **brent goose**

**brash ice** Also (often) shortened to **brash**

[The word brash has existed in English since before 1722 (NOED, perh. fr the French breche; cf Italian breccia), and was first recorded for ice in arctic usage in 1837.]

Fragments of ice in the sea, easily navigable and often covering large areas. The ice can be from icebergs or the debris of other forms of ice; the term is sometimes used specifically for ice fragments less than about 2 m (6 ft 7 in) across.

**12 Jan 1840 (1901)** Wilkes, James in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 368.

On the 14th, while still making much progress to the south, and passing occasionally icebergs and brash ice, the water appeared somewhat discoloured. ... Albatrosses, Cape Pigeons, and other birds about.

**9 Nov 1908** Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 19.

We have travelled these 2 days in heavy brash ice which has got snowed over partly.

**1928** Wordie in Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 380.

Brash. "Small fragments and rounded nodules," (of sea-ice), "the wreck of other kinds of ice."

**1949** Innes, Hammond (1953 edn) *The white south* Fontana Books, London: 161.

"There is a gap filled with — how do you say — loose pieces of ice?"

"Brash?"

"Si, si. Brash."

**1968** Herbert, Wally *A world of men: exploration in Antarctica* Eyre & Spottiswoode, London: 24.

There is no polar sound more soothing than the music of a wooden ship gliding slowly through loose brash ice on a dead calm day.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 83.

There can be few more exciting or beautiful experiences than entering pack-ice. The sea is glassy. The brash ice gives way to growlers, little bits and pieces of decayed ice, then to small floes.

**bread** *Tristan da Cunha*

Ship's biscuits.

**1910** Barrow, K.M. *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 280.

Some Tristan words .. Bog, a root or clump of tussock. .. Bread, ship's biscuits [etc].

**1961** Lavarello, Basil in Zettersten, Arne (1969) *Lund Studies in English* no 37: 147.

They gave us some supplies from the ship like bread and tin meat.

**breakbones**

[The name 'breakbones' is a direct equivalent of the former genus name *Ossifraga*: see also 1777 quotation.]

The carrion-eating **giant petrel**, previously known as *Ossifraga gigantea*.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

**1777** Forster, George (Tierra del Fuego) *A voyage round the world, in his Britannic Majesty's sloop, Resolution, commanded by Capt. James Cook* B. White, London, vol 2: 517.

Large grey petrels of the size of albatrosses, being the same species which the Spaniards name *que branta-huessos*, or the bone-breakers.]

**10 Jan 1823** (Falkland Islands) Morrell, Captain Benjamin (1832) *A narrative of four voyages, to the South Sea [etc.]* J. & J. Harper, New York: 64.

The great petrel ... is carnivorous, feeding on the carcasses of dead seals and birds. It is sometimes called the osprey-petrel, or breakbones.

**1879** (Marion Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 171.

The Giant Petrel or "Breakbones" was also wheeling about over the water, and a few large albatrosses.

**1922** (South Georgia) Murphy, Robert Cushman in *National Geographic* 41(4) Apr: 429.

The giant petrel, or "breakbones," alone obtaining part of its food on shore, since it has a relish for carrion.

**1982** Hosking, Eric and Sage, Bryan *Antarctic wildlife* Croom Helm, London: 116.

The giant petrels were well known to the sealers since crowds of them would invariably assemble, like vultures, when seal carcasses were being stripped of skin and blubber on the beach. The men referred to them variously as 'Break-bones', 'Nelly' or 'Stinker'.

**break out** *verb*

(Of ice) To move out of an area after disintegration (see **breakout** *n.*).

**27 Jan 1911** (Hut Point) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912: an account of Scott's last expedition* Blandford Press, London: 99.

We shall have to live here when we get back from this depot journey until the sea freezes over enough to take us back to Cape Evans — that is if the ice is going to break out to Hut Point this year.

**1995** *Age* [Melbourne] 14 Mar: 17.

John Tully is the chef at Mawson Base in Antarctica, where the ice is four kilometres thick and the wind-chill factor is deadly. At present, the supply ship is sitting 3.5 kilometres off shore, waiting for the ice to "break out", so food for the next year can be unloaded.

**breakout** *noun*

[Break out is recorded in Canadian English from 1854 for the thawing and dispersal of ice on rivers and lakes, and in Alaskan English (DALaskE) from 1870.]

The dispersal of ice after a **break-up**, esp. but not only from an enclosed area such as a bay. Often the two processes are simultaneous and, as a result, sometimes the terms are used interchangeably.

The ice breaking off is often fast sea-ice, but sometimes it comes from an ice shelf or glacier.

**1963** (McMurdo Sound) McKenzie, Douglas *Opposite poles* Robert Hale & Co, London/ Whitcombe & Tombs, New Zealand: 161.

On the night of February 15th it seemed that the great break-out was indeed beginning.

**1967** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] June: 29.

A single quick trip to Auster Rookery was made but further planned trips to Auster, Fold and Taylor rookeries had to be abandoned when repeated sea-ice breakouts occurred.

**1982** Ledingham, Rod *ANARE dog drivers manual* Antarctic Division, Department of Science and the Environment: 68.

Breakouts can occur without warning and with no apparent cause.

**1987** Lewis, David with Lewis, Mimi *Icebound in Antarctica* Secker & Warburg, London: 173.

As to massive breakouts, vast areas of apparently fast ice can and do disintegrate right up to the coast at any time of the year ... The precipitating breakout factor is, of course, a blizzard.

**1992** *Permanent Committee on Tides and Mean Sea Level* [newsletter, Department of Defence, Sydney] Dec: [4].

The sea ice has now blown out to within 50 metres of the tide gauge and the water is crystal clear to a depth of at least 10 metres. A rapid break-out of the remaining ice is now hoped for.

**break-up**

[The verb break up is recorded in Canadian English from 1715, of ice on rivers and lakes, meaning to melt and disperse.]

The disintegration of a solid extensive sheet of fast sea-ice. This is most often a seasonal phenomenon of summer, though it can happen at any time, and usually happens very quickly.

**1906** (South Orkneys) Eagle Clarke, W. in *The Ibis* 6(XXI) Jan: 148.

A camp was established on the northern shore of the island, which was productive of excellent ornithological results, but had unfortunately to be abandoned at an interesting period on account of the break up of the ice.

**1916** (McMurdo Sound) Doorly, Captain Gerald S. *The voyages of the "Morning"* Smith, Elder & Co., London: 168.

The ice broke up so rapidly the night before that the half-way camp went out to sea on a floe! The *Terra Nova* steamed after it and rescued it with some difficulty. Captain Scott came out again, and was highly satisfied with the fine break-up.

**1939** Byrd, Richard E. *Alone* Reader's Union Ltd and Putnam & Co Ltd, London: 25.

Toward the end of February, when from experience we had reason to expect a freeze, the pace of the break-up quickened instead.

**1956** Stinear, B.H. *Preliminary report on operations from Mawson Base, Australian National Antarctic Research Expedition, 1954-55* BMR Record 1956/44, Department of National Development, Commonwealth of Australia: 11.

The break-up of the sea-ice was rapid, and a few minutes later the bay was a mass of broken ice and detached floes, the largest of which measured about 20-30 feet, all heaving up and down in the heavy swell.

**1982** Brewster, Barney *Antarctica: wilderness at risk* A.H. & A.W. Reed Ltd, Wellington: 51.

For many years the Americans left their scrapped vehicles on the sea ice and waited for the summer break-up to take care of them.

**brent goose** *Falkland Islands. Also branter, and brant goose*

[The name was used first for the wild goose *Branta bernicla* of the northern hemisphere (NOED 1570-): the two birds have little resemblance, though perhaps when plucked and trussed the similarity is more apparent.]

The goose *Chloephaga rubidiceps*: see **ruddy-headed goose**.

**1840** Mackinnon, L.B. *Some account of the Falkland Islands, from a six months' residence in 1838 and 1839* A.H. Bailey & Co., London: 29.

The goose is also a very handsome bird, remarkably bold or stupid. I have killed several with a stick; they are found in immense numbers all over the islands. There are three kinds, the Upland and Brent, being very good eating, and the Kelp.

**1861** Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 158.

*Chloephaga rubidiceps* .. This bird, which is called in East Falkland the "Brent Goose," is not so common as the other varieties, except in some places in the North Camp, where I have seen very large numbers, probably a hundred, but always in pairs. The male is easily distinguished from the female by his larger size. The usual nesting-place of this bird is among dry bushes, — the male bird, while the female is sitting, usually being found on the edge of the nearest water (generally salt), which, however, is frequently not in sight of the nest. The eggs are generally five (sometimes, but rarely, six) in number. The young birds of the first year assimilate in plumage to the adults, except that the speculum of the wing is of a dull black instead of a glossy green. The time of laying of this Goose is the first week in October.

**1899** Brandon, Rev. Lowther, ed. in *The Falkland Islands Magazine* X(16) Jul: 9.

Their bag was as follows:— 106 snipe, 20 widgeons, 8 duck, 41 teal, 1 swan, 13 brent geese, 27 upland geese. Total, 219 head.

**1914** Beck, Rollo H. in *The American Museum Journal* XVII(7) Nov: 439.

[caption] The brant and upland geese swim about together well within camera range in some ponds on Bleaker Island.

**1924** Vallentin, Rupert in Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history by Rupert Vallentin* Clarendon Press, Oxford: 319.

*Chloephaga rubidiceps* .. 'Brent Goose or Branter'. A very striking bird of a rich golden hue and smaller than the preceding species [sc. upland goosel], weighing about five pounds. This species is so far as I am aware, scarce in the East Falklands, it being only fairly abundant on the Western Island. As this species is far more desirable for table purposes than the Upland goose, it is much sought after, and is more difficult to shoot.

**1994** Falkland Islands Government Office *Introduction to the Falkland Islands* Falkland Islands Government Office, London: 17.

In places where there are freshwater ponds, especially near the coast, the upland goose and ruddy-headed or "Brent" goose have contributed to the formation of fine green grass by continued cropping.

## bridled penguin

[Bridled has been recorded in the names of birds with bridle-shaped markings since 1869 (NOED); see also 1901 quotation.]

The penguin *Pygoscelis antarctica*: see **chinstrap penguin**.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 314.

Ringed or Bridled Penguin (*Pygoscelis Antarctic* [sic]): .. throat white with a thin blackish "bridle" from under the chin, ear to ear.

**1905** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* XV(CXIV): 58.

The following Lantern-slides were then exhibited:— By Mr. W. Eagle Clarke, a series of very fine slides taken by the Scottish National Antarctic Expedition in the South Orkneys and at Gough Island. The subjects were as follows:— ... Rookery and nesting-habits of the Bridled Penguin (*Pygoscelis antarctica*) [etc.].

**1950** Mountevans, Admiral Lord *The desolate Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 37.

Ringed or bridled penguins (*pygoscelis antarctica* [sic]) have been found in great numbers in the Falklands, and sub-

Antarctic islands, South Georgia, South Orkneys and South Shetlands, Louis Philippe Land and even as far south as Andvord Bay, which is only about one hundred miles north of the Antarctic Circle.

## broad-billed prion *Also broad-billed (dove) petrel, broad-billed whalebird*

[From the broad bill of the bird; NOED records a US usage of broad-billed in 1839.]

The small seabird *Pachyptila vittata* (fam. Procellariidae), occurring widely in southern waters. It is dark blue-grey, with a broad bill and large head, and breeds on subantarctic islands and in southern New Zealand. It has also been called a **nightbird**. The scientific classification of prions is confused, and subspecies or closely related species are called the **antarctic prion** and **Salvin's prion**.

**1848** Gould, John *The birds of Australia* The author, 20 Broad St, Golden Square, London: pl. 55.

*Prion vittatus* .. Broad-billed Prion. ... The seas washing the coasts of Van Diemen's Land, New Zealand and the Auckland Islands, are the localities whence most of the specimens in our museums have been obtained.

**1879** Sharpe, R Bowdler in *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: 136.

My conclusions are of a very different nature from those of recent writers on the broad-billed Petrels.

**1888** Buller, Sir Walter Lawry *A history of the birds of New Zealand. 2nd edn* Published by the author, Westminster London, vol 2: 212.

*Prion vittatus*. (Broad-billed Dove Petrel.) ... Two eggs of this species, collected by Macgillivray on the island of St. Paul, in the Indian Ocean, are pure white, and measure 2 inches in length by 1.5 in breadth.

**22 Oct 1901** Roberts, Brian, ed. *Edward Wilson's birds of the Antarctic* New Orchard Editions, Poole [Dorset]: 97.

Broad-billed Prion, *Pachyptila vittata*.

**1926** Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 211.

The Broad-billed Prion (*Pachyptila vittata keyteli*).

**1943** Hydrographic Office, US Navy Department *Sailing directions for Antarctica. H.O. no 138* Hydrographic Office, Washington: 57.

Broad-billed whalebird (*Pachyptila forsteri*). Sometimes called the Broad-billed Prion or Blue-belly. Frequents islands in sub-Antarctic zone and does not migrate to the belt of pack-ice. It is the largest member of the genus, being an exceedingly broad-billed or frog-mouthed species of whalebird.

**1963** Rand, R.W. in *Ostrich* XXXIV(3) Sept: 128.

Broad-billed Petrel (*Pachyptila desolata*) These petrels (prions) were observed on all the lines of stations. They were most abundant near the islands; at Marion several hundreds fluttered continuously over the kelp outside Transvaal Cove.

**1974** Robertson, C.J.R., ed. *Birds in New Zealand* A.H. & A.W. Reed, Wellington: 104.

The Broad-billed is the biggest [sc. of NZ's four prions] and is found from the Chathams to the Snares Islands.

## broken ice

[Despite the hopefully prescriptive tone of the 1987 Glossary of geology quotation, the term is not obsolete.]

Loose **pack ice**; occas. (see 1912 quotation) jumbled ice on land.

**30 Jan 1774** (nr 69°38'S, 108°12'W) Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in*

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

*His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, In the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facts, Adelaide (1970), vol 1: 267.

The outer, or northern edge of this immense field, was composed of loose or broken ice close packed together; so that it was not possible for any thing to enter it.

**19 Mar 1823** Morrell, Benjamin Jnr, quoted in Kenneth J. Bertrand (1971) *Americans in Antarctica* American Geographical Society special publication no. 39: 386.

From the second day after we left the "Island of Desolation," up to this date, March 19, we have not passed a day without seeing fields of broken ice, or ice-islands, or both combined; and during all that period of sixty-six days, we have had, every day, more or less snow or hail.

**1904** *The Canterbury Times [Christchurch]* 13 Apr ns 34 (1580): 32. We were confronted by a vast chasm of broken ice. This would seem a natural result of the great moving mass of Barrier ice grinding past the ice foot of the coast.

**4 Oct 1912** Blake, L.R. in Mawson, Douglas (1942) *Geographical narrative and cartography. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911-14. Scientific reports series A vol 1* Government Printer, Sydney: 242.

We topped the rise and stopped aghast! Through the next valley ran a deep chasm ... and broken ice.

**1931** *The New York Times* 17 May, suppl.: 8.

[caption] The Discovery Working Her Way Through a Sea of Broken Ice Off the Shore of MacRobertson Land.

**1967** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Mar: 2.

The broken ice which we could see south of us was largely made up of pressure ridges between floes, with very little or no open water between.

**1987** (Davis) Green, K. and Burton, H.R. in *Australian Wildlife Research* 14: 479.

From January to April 1984 .. inshore areas contained either broken ice or open water.

**1987** Bates, Robert L. and Jackson, Julia A., eds *Glossary of geology, 3rd edition* American Geological Institute, Alexandria: 87.

Broken ice: An obsolete term for sea-ice concentration of 5/10 to 8/10; now replaced generally by *open pack ice* and *close pack ice*.

## brood pouch

A pouch-like fold of skin on a penguin's lower front, which is esp. well-developed on an **aptenodytid penguin**, and is used to cover the egg during incubation and hold it against the body, in species which do not have a nest or an individual area of breeding territory.

**1989** Laws, Richard *Antarctica: the last frontier* Boxtree Ltd, London: 113.

The eggs are kept off the ice and incubated on the penguins' feet, protected from the cold by a brood pouch.

**1995** Kalman, Bobbie *Penguins* Crabtree Publishing Co, NY: 30. Emperor penguins have a flap of skin, called a broodpouch, near their belly. They rest the egg on their feet and cover it with their broodpouch to keep it warm.

## brown albatross Also brown mollymauk

A brown albatross, perh. in the 1806 quotation the **Amsterdam albatross** (now regarded as a distinct species, *D. amsterdamensis*), though the young **wandering albatross** is also brown.

**1806** (Amsterdam Island) Barrow, John *A voyage to Cochinchina, in the years 1792 and 1793* Oxford University Press facs, Kuala Lumpur (1975): 147.

The number of birds was likewise astonishing, and the two causeways were strewn with their eggs. During our short stay on shore we obtained the following birds: Diomedea Demersa, the White Albatross, Diomedea Exulans, the Brown Albatross [etc.]

**1953** Scholes, Arthur *Seventh continent: saga of Australasian exploration in Antarctica 1895-1950* George Allen & Unwin, London: 137.

At South Georgia the ship was refitted; repairs were completed and mails for Tristan da Cunha taken aboard. Here Douglas and Wilkins actively carried on their scientific work in their respective fields. Worsley and others surveyed the island and verified the position of the more salient points. Wilkins, a great collector, discovered the nest and egg of the brown mollymauk. Numerous collections were made for presentation to the museums.

## brown-backed petrel Also brown-back

The seabird *Thalassoica antarctica*: see **antarctic petrel**.

**1901** (Cape Adare) Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 205.

No eggs of the brown-backed petrel (*Thalassoeca [sic] Antarctica*) were discovered, but no doubt they nest somewhere on the Antarctic shores.

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 95.

Farther south [sc. than 63°S] the little snow-petrels appear, and the brown-backs are in greater numbers.

**1950** Mountevans, Admiral Lord *The desolate Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 42.

And turning from the repulsive to the dainty, one can find in and around Antarctica brown-backed and silver-grey petrels, pure-white ice-petrels, Wilson's petrels and stormy petrels, all of which or most of which fall within the "dainty series".

## brown-banded petrel

[The name was first used in 1785 by Latham (Gen. Synops. Birds 3: 409), and probably refers to the black to brownish band across the wings on the upperparts.]

The seabird *Pachyptila desolata*: see **antarctic prion**.

**1879** Sharpe, R Bowdler in *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: 138.

The name of *P. desolatus* was originally conferred by Gmelin on Latham's "Brown-banded Petrel." The latter is stated to have been in the collection of Sir Joseph Banks, from the "Island of Desolation." The description is apparently taken from a dried specimen, as the colours assigned to the soft parts show: — "The bill is black with the tip yellowish, the legs brown, webs yellow, claws black." These are the colours which dried skins exhibit, but they are not found in any species of Prion when alive.

**1901** Saunders in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 231.

Of the small grey Prions, with broad boat-shaped bills, known to sealers as 'Whale-birds', only one, the Brown-Banded Petrel of Latham (*Prion desolatus*), appears to reach the edge of the Antarctic circle — an example having been obtained by the *Challenger* at the ice barrier on 14th February 1874.

## brown grebe noun phr. and attrib., Falkland Islands

[Brown from its plumage and grebe, used for diving birds of the fam. Podicipedidae from 1766- (NOED).]



The small brown and white waterbird *Rollandia rolland* (fam. Podicipedidae) of the Falkland Islands and South America. The breeding adult has a white patch on either side of its head; it is also called a **white-tufted grebe**.

**20 Jan 1882** Wiseman, William in Layman, Rear-Admiral C.H. and Cameron, Jane (1995) *The Falklands and the Dwarf: the cruise of HMS Dwarf in the Falkland Islands 1881–1882* Picton Publishing, Chippenham: 130.

She [sc. Mrs Bartlett] had some tea ready for us and was so kind as to give me some lovely brown grebe skins.

**1910** Cobb, Arthur F. *Wildlife in the Falkland Islands* Gowans & Gray, London: 69.

Brown or Golden Grebe .. This handsome little brown bird looks almost golden in the sunshine.

**1926** (Falkland Islands) Bennett, A.G. in *The Ibis* (12th ser) II(2): 310.

*Podiceps rollandi* ... Brown Grebe. Quite common, though not abundant.

**1978** Trehearne, Mary *Falkland heritage: a record of pioneer settlement* Arthur H Stockwell, Ilfracombe: 70.

A day's shoot for geese provided another distraction, or for brown grebe or teal on the lagoon to make a change of diet.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 99.

White-tufted Grebe *Rollandia rolland* .. Local names: Brown, Black, Golden Grebe .. Adult breeding: recognised by a prominent triangular white patch streaked with black on each side of the peaked and crested black head and shiny black upperparts ... Breeding resident race *R. r. rolland* is confined to the Falklands and is larger than mainland South American races. It is found on freshwater ponds with emergent vegetation, streams and rivers when breeding.

## brown petrel

A petrel, sometimes but probably not only *Procellaria cinerea*: see **grey petrel**.

**1898** Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 277.

For about ten days hundreds of birds have remained near us. They are mostly white petrels, but there are also giant and brown petrels and a few brown sea-gulls.

**1900** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* X(lxxiii): cvi.

Mr. T. Parkin made some observations on the abundance of bird-life noticed by him in the Southern Oceans. The following is the list of birds obtained during a day's shooting in a calm on December 2nd, 1890, in the Cape Seas, when on a voyage to Australia in the clipper ship 'Sobraon,' South Atlantic Ocean, lat. 39°51'S., long. 8°49'E. .. Brown Petrel? (*Oestrelata incerta*) [etc].

**1967** Gillham, Mary E. *Sub-Antarctic sanctuary: summertime on Macquarie Island* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Wellington: 44.

A few grey (or brown) petrels (*Adamastor cinerea*).

## brown skua

a. The seabird *Catharacta skua lonnbergi* (fam. Stercorariidae), which breeds mainly on subantarctic islands. This large, dark-brown, scavenging bird roams widely in the Southern Ocean.

b. *Occas*. Any antarctic **skua** — all skuas are brown (see 1949 quotation).

**1949** Routh, Martin in *The Ibis* 91(4): 591.

I am using the name Brown Skua for all the brown skuas in the Antarctic.

**1972** Bennett, Isobel *Shores of Macquarie Island* Robert Hale & Co, London/ Rigby Ltd, Adelaide: 63.

The bird which perhaps, above all others, makes its presence felt in the vicinity of the Station is the brown skua, *Stercorarius skua lonnbergi* ... A large brown bird, with white markings under the wings and a body about the size of a small domestic fowl, but with a three-foot wing span, the skua is a noisy, aggressive scavenger.

**1982** (Macquarie Island) Jackson Andrew, ed. *ANARE field manual. 2nd edn* Antarctic Division, Department of Science and Technology: 13.

The Brown Skua will approach a person lying down within five minutes and attack any exposed parts — hands, face etc.

**1993** Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 156.

The Antarctic has two skua species, both of which are heavy, broad-winged birds, about the size of a large gull with a fiercely hooked beak. The Antarctic skua's remarkable breeding range includes all round the continent and the Peninsula, and extends further south than any other flying bird. The slightly larger sub-Antarctic or brown skua lives further to the north and breeds on the maritime and sub-Antarctic islands. The southern extension of its range also includes the Antarctic Peninsula where the two species overlap. Both tend to be brownish birds with flashes of white feather in their wings but they have a number of colour phases.

## brush-tailed penguin

[Brush-tailed from the long prominent tail of the penguin.]

A **pygoscelid** penguin.

**1985** Stonehouse, Bernard in Bonner, W.N. and Walton, D.W.H., eds *Key environments: Antarctica*: 276.

The brush-tailed penguins. The three species of the genus *Pygoscelis* form a closely-matched group. Similar in size, shape and general behaviour, they are all predominantly black and white birds, notable especially for their long, stiff tail feathers that stick out behind as they walk. No other penguins have so prominent a tail, and from its sweeping action comes the name *Pygoscelis*.

**1990** Naveen, Ron, Monteath, Colin, de Roy, Tui and Jones, Mark *Wild ice: Antarctic journeys* Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington: 123.

Only three species of penguins make the Antarctic Peninsula and the adjacent islands their home. All three are closely related and belong to the brush-tailed penguins, *Pygoscelis*. All three are medium-sized, feed substantially on krill, and share a number of traits such as the long, rigid tail feathers that give them their name.

## bubble-net

A method of concentrating and trapping prey: a net of encircling bubbles around prey, used by whales. Hence **bubble-netting**.

**1989** Laws, Richard *Antarctica: the last frontier* Boxtree Ltd, London: 151.

The humpbacks .. swim in an ascending spiral around the [sc. krill] swarm, releasing bubbles which rise to the surface and form a 'bubble net', through which they swim upwards.

**1993** (Antarctic Peninsula) Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 47.

When the krill were at greater depths and more widely spread, two humpbacks working together would dive simultaneously. For a few moments all would be quiet and then, mysteriously, bubbles would appear on the surface. From

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

the crow's-nest of our ship it was obvious that these bubbles were forming the edges of a circle. Suddenly, just as the two half circles of bubbles met to complete the trap, the two whales would thunder up through the centre of the circle with mouths open. In this bubble-netting method, two whales gradually release great columns of bubbles, creating a net to concentrate the krill. They then swim straight through the centre of their trap and feast on the enriched krill soup.

**bubbly** *adjective, Tristan da Cunha*

(Of the sea) Rough.

**1993** (Tristan da Cunha) Swales, Michael *Denstone Expedition to Tristan Island. Denstonian Supplement Autumn 1993* Denstone College, Utoxteter: 19.

The sea was what the Islanders call 'bubbly' and the rowing boat nearly got swamped at one time.

**buckthorn tree** *Tristan da Cunha*

The tree *Phylica nitida*, better known as the **island tree**.

**1905** (Gough Island) Clarke, William Eagle in *The Ibis* V: 250. On the lower ground and up to a height of over 1000 feet the island is thickly covered with tussock-grass (*Spartina arundinacea*) and buckthorn-trees (*Phylica nitida*) ... the latter gnarled and stunted, yet growing vigorously even on the most exposed ridges. These trees appear hardly to rise beyond twenty feet in height and generally bear a thick growth of lichens on their stems.

**1932** Gane, Douglas M. *Tristan da Cunha: an empire outpost and its keepers with glimpses of its past and consideration of the future* George Allen & Unwin, London: 101.

The gradual exhaustion of the timber has become a hardship. Already Tristan appears denuded of its trees, for in the neighbourhood of the Settlement the land has been cleared and the people now depend on brushwood — a sort of buckthorn<sup>1</sup> — which is good wood to burn, for it will burn in a green state, but they have to make long journeys up the mountain slopes to get it, and this is one of the chief trials of their life today.

<sup>1</sup>Locally known as the Island Tree (*Phylica nitida*). It is found only on the Tristan Group, on Gough Island, and on Amsterdam Island, three thousand miles away.]

**bukta** *South African. Pl. usu. (as in the orig. Norwegian) bukten*

[From the Norwegian bukta bay. The word is not used in general South African English.]

A bay — in antarctic English usage, often a bay in **sea ice**.

**1964** (Sanae) *Antarktise Bulletin* 5 (Sept): 3.

We should be able to inspect the frozen buktas in the vicinity.

**1973** du Plessis, A. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* no. 3: 11.

The ice-shelf terminates in a number of buktas to the north and extends some 140 km inland.

**1982** (Dronning Maud Land) Wolmarans, L.G. and Kent, L.E. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* Suppl 2: 9.

The ice-front, the seaward-facing margin of the ice-shelves, .. is a vertical cliff with an exposed height of up to about 50 m. Its course is sinuous and there are gulfs, peninsulas and bays, both large and small, the latter being known by the Norwegian term as "bukten". North and north-west of Sanae a number of these bukten occur in the ice-front.

**Buller's mollymawk** *Also Buller's albatross*

[Both scientific and common name honour New Zealand ornithologist and lawyer Walter Lawry Buller (1838–1906). The scientific name bulleri was given by Baron Rothschild (Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club 1893 vol 1: 58.)

The seabird *Diomedea bulleri* (fam. Diomedidae) of New Zealand; some of these birds breed on the Snares Islands. It has a grey head and neck, black back and pale underparts, and a yellow stripe on the bill.

**1936** Guthrie-Smith, W.H. *Sorrows and joys of a New Zealand naturalist* A.H. & A.W. Reed, Dunedin: 198.

The nest of a Buller's Albatross when new is raised on a stem slightly concave on top and a foot or so off the ground.

**1951** Sorensen, J.H. *Wild life in the subantarctic* Whitcombe & Tombs, Christchurch: 35.

Four species of mollymawk are common on our subantarctic islands and breed there. Buller's mollymawk breeds on the Snares.

**1962** Harrison, Peter P.O. *Seabirds of the South Pacific Ocean: a handbook for passengers and seafarers* Royal Naval Bird Watching Society, North Pembroke: 104.

Buller's Albatross (*Diomedea bulleri*) ... Breeds on Chatham and Snares Islands ... Also known as the Grey-backed Albatross: it is the rarest of the albatrosses.

**1985** Reader's Digest *Reader's Digest complete book of New Zealand Birds* RD, Sydney: 64.

The southern Buller's Mollymawk, which breeds at The Snares and Solander Island, builds a nest on steep tussock slopes or under *Olearia* forest, sometimes as far as one kilometre inland.

**bunny boots** *US*

[Bunny boot is recorded earlier (from 1954) in *Alaskan English*; DAlaskE notes that bunny boots were developed for cold weather and sold as army surplus in Alaska in the 1950s to 1970s. See also 1996 quotation.]

Large white boots, now usu. made of rubber and insulated by an inflatable air layer ('vapour barrier') in addition to other materials.

**1966** Baum, Allyn *Antarctica: the worst place in the world* Macmillan Co, NY: 63.

Every now and then they'd stamp about in their big, white, thermal "Bunny Boots" or flap their arms to keep warm in their worn, overstuffed parkas.

**1995** Johnson, Rebecca L. *Science on the ice* Lerner Publications Co, Minneapolis: 10.

Two pairs of wool socks inside the funny-looking, but rather warm, white rubber boots. Everyone calls them bunny boots. They have air bladders in the sides, with little valves to seal them off. The trapped air acts as extra insulation.

**1996** Dicks, Ethan *English, as She is spoke at McMurdo* <http://www.infinet.com/~erd/MCMslang.html>, printed 11 Jul. [glossary] Bunny boots: Extra Cold Weather boots resembling those worn by Mickey Mouse, large, white and featureless, named for the layer of rabbit fur that's reputed to be part of the insulation (it's really only wool felt). They are heavy, but very warm.

**bunting** *See Tristan bunting*

**burberry**

[Fr the name of English manufacturer Thomas Burberry (1835–1926) who made waterproof clothes from proofed yarns woven closely into cloth. 'The Burberry' was registered as a trade name in 1909.]

A closely woven cotton gabardine cloth, made from proofed thread; the clothes made from this cloth, used in polar expeditions as windproof outer garments. See also **jaeger**.

**1 Oct 1904** *The Canterbury Times* [Christchurch] Annual: [11].

Over their thick warm clothes they wore suits of Burbury, which kept out the cold winds.

**1908** Shackleton, E.H., ed. *Aurora Australis* Hut Point, Antarctica. Bay Books facs, Sydney (1988): [29].

The sledging party, arrayed in their antarctic costumes, including Burberry suits, then got into their sledging harness.

**19 Jan 1912** (Hut Point) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912: an account of Scott's last expedition* Blandford Press, London: 236.

A constant fall of minute snow crystals — very minute — sometimes instead of crystal plates the fall is of minute agglomerate spicules like tiny sea urchins. The plates glitter in the sun as though of some size, but [you] can only just see them as pin heads on your burberry.

**1915** Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911–1914* William Heinemann, London: 106.

During heavy drifts the cowl became choked with snow and ice, and the Hut would rapidly fill with smoke until some one, hurriedly donning burberrys, rushed out with an ice-axe to chip an outlet for the draught.

**1930** Bernacchi, L.C., ed. *The polar book: produced for the British Polar Exhibition 1930* E. Allom & Co Ltd, London: 105.

There is complete agreement amongst explorers of both the Arctic and Antarctic regions as to the indispensability of Burberry Gabardine in high latitudes. This remarkable material, made by Burberrys of Haymarket, London, is woven from extremely fine Burberry-proofed threads, and so closely compacted in the process of weaving to produce a fabric that is at once proof against penetration by rain, snow, wind and cold, whilst still maintaining natural ventilation. A further advantage lies in the fact that although it is extraordinarily light, it is almost as tough and hard-wearing as leather. Since the sailing of the "Fram" in 1893, on which expedition the late Dr. Nansen was equipped with Burberry Gabardine, many interesting and valuable reports have been received as to its service in Polar regions.

**1962** (Hut Point, McMurdo Sound) Richards, R.W. *The Ross Sea shore party 1914–17*. Scott Polar Research Institute Special Publication no. 2: 19.

We endeavoured to do some cleansing of our persons and clothing before setting out. Jaeger clothing and Burberry's [sic] were run through petrol, a mighty cold and painful job.

**1995** Crossley, Louise *Explore Antarctica* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 66.

British expeditions used a special very finely woven cotton 'Burberry' cloth for their outer windproof anoraks and trousers.

## burrowing petrel

Any of the many **petrels** (fam. Procellariidae) which excavate a nest in the ground. These birds are usually nocturnal, and leave their nests at sunset (see **night-bird**). See also **diving petrel**.

**25 Oct 1912** Blake, L.R. in Mawson, Douglas (1942) *Geographical narrative and cartography, Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911–14. Scientific reports series A vol 1* Government Printer, Sydney: 289.

At South Head I caught a burrowing petrel. They issue forth only at night.

**1952** (Marion Island) Rand, R.W. *Ostrich* XXIII(2) Sept: 121.

Among the burrowing petrels (*Pelecanoides* and *Pterodroma*), nest destruction is complete if banding takes place during the summer (October to February).

**1970** Gosman, R., ed. *Homers' Odyssey: Macquarie Island magazine* ANARE, Macquarie Island: [9].

The burrowing petrels — whiteheaded petrel and dove prion, and the uncommon sooty shearwater, blue and diving petrel — are seldom seen because they come and go at night (which helps them avoid predation by skuas), but they sometimes come to the camp lights at night in misty weather.

**1981** Scientific Committee on Antarctic Research *Twenty-third report to SCAR on South African Antarctic Research Activities April 1980 – October 1981* SCAR, Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, Pretoria: 11.

Physiology and energetics of burrowing petrels at the Prince Edward and Gough islands in relation to their roles as predators in the Southern Ocean.

**1993** (Marion Island) *New Scientist* vol 139 no 1882 (17 July): 6. [sc. In 1975] South African researchers estimated that the cats killed 450 000 burrowing petrels.

## bus *Tristan da Cunha*

[*NOED records bus in colloquial use for means of transport other than the omnibus (aeroplane, car and cycle), but the Tristan usage is earlier than these.*]

A wheelbarrow.

**23 May 1906** Barrow, K.M. (1910) *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 41.

To the delight of the boys, the bottom of the "bus" came out in crossing the stream, and all the stones fell into the water. I saw the little boys hurrying up to the house, each carrying a wet stone. "Bus" is the island word for "wheelbarrow".

**1963** Mackay, Margaret *Angry Island: the story of Tristan da Cunha (1506–1963)* Arthur Barker, London: 147.

A 'bus' [ɪs] a wheelbarrow.

## bush hawk NZ

[*Fr the New Zealand English name for the bird: see DNZE hawk 1873–*]

The falcon *Falco novaeseelandiae* (fam. Falconidae) of New Zealand including the Auckland Islands.

**1909** Waite, Edgar R. in Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington, vol 2: 555.

*Nesierax australis* .. (Bush-hawk.) .. One or more of these birds visited our camp at the Auckland Islands at different times, and proved to be most impudent.

**11 Feb 1945** (Auckland Islands) Sorensen, J.H. *The work journal of J.H. Sorensen, coastwatcher in the "Cape expedition", Campbell Island Original*, in possession of NZ Dept of Conservation and Wildlife, Wellington: 324.

A bush hawk was perched in our rigging in the morning at Erebus Cove.

## bustard *Falkland Islands, hist.*

The goose *Chloephaga picta*: see **upland goose**.

**27 Dec 1774** (Falkland Islands) Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, in the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970), vol II: 186.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

The geese too are there, and seem to be very well described under the name of bustards. They are much smaller than our English tame geese, but eat as well as any I ever tasted. They have short black bills and yellow feet. The gander is all white; the female is spotted black and white, or grey, with a large white spot on each wing.

**1776** Brown, Peter *New illustrations of zoology* B. White, London: 100.

The white winged antarctic goose ... Place, The Falkland Isles. This is the kind called by the French bustards.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 25.

Pernety described how the ships' companies of two frigates totalling 150 men, found sufficient game for a stay of more than two months in 1764, within three leagues (about 14 km or 9 miles) and remained in perfect health. Amongst other birds, they ate 150 'Bustards' (Upland Geese) and found them, 'exquisite either boiled, roasted or fricasseed.'

### **BWU** *Whaling*

A quota unit used in whaling until 1972 in an attempt to regulate catches; for more detail see **blue whale unit**.

**1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 160.

[sc. After 1931–32] British and Norwegian companies agreed to protect the market by restricting the amount of oil taken in a season, and to restrict the total catch of whalebone whales to a number of "Blue Whale Units" (BWUs). In this calculation one blue whale was considered equal in yield to 2 fin, 2 humpback or 6 sei whales, and the fleets were free to catch their quota in any convenient combination.

**1992** Campbell, David *The crystal desert* Secker & Warburg, London: 232.

The absurdity of the B.W.U. is illustrated by the fact that it remained the standard even after blue whales had become so rare that their hunting was banned.

**1998** *Britannica Online* Commercial fishing. <http://www.eb.com:180-cgi-bin/g?DocF=macro/5002/35/25.html>, 26 May 1998.

Modern scientific pressure, coinciding with commercial crisis, brought the BWU limit down to 2,300 by 1962 and protected the humpback (1963) and blue (1965); but it was not until 1972, when the United Nations voted in vain for a moratorium on whaling, that the BWU was replaced by a New Management Procedure.



## caa'ing whale

[The Scottish ca'ing (or caa'ing) whale is recorded for this animal from c1865 (NOED).]

The pilot whale *Globicephala melas*, better known as the **blackfish**.

**1879** *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: 98.

I can find no tangible osteological grounds for separating either the Kerguelen or the Tasmanian specimens from the well known Caaing Whale, *Globicephalus melas*, Traill, of the N. Atlantic.

**1 Jun 1910** Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912: an account of Scott's last expedition* Blandford Press, London: 262.

On the *St. Sunniva* I made friends with a Dutchman who was up there as an inspector of the herring fisheries. He tells me that the Caa'ing Whale! is good eating.

<sup>Footnote:</sup> Also known as the Pilot Whale or Blackfish, *Globicephala melaena* (Traill). Dr. F.C. Fraser of the British Museum (Nat. Hist.) associates the term 'caa'ing' with 'ca' which can mean both 'call' and 'drive'. It is not clear, he says, whether the word refers to the herding habits of these whales or to the method by which they are driven shoreward for slaughter. Personally he inclines to the latter explanation.

**1929** (South Georgia) *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 272.

Several other species not included in the above list have been taken from time to time in the Dependencies, but their value is negligible from the point of view of the whaling industry. Among these are ... the Lesser Rorqual (*Balaenoptera acutorostrata*) and the Ca'aing whale (*Globiocephala melaena*).

## cabbage

[Cabbage from the plant's appearance and its use as a vegetable.]

Either of two plants somewhat resembling the common cabbage, and edible at least in extremis:

1. The plant *Pringlea antiscorbutica*: see **Kerguelen cabbage**.

**[10 Jan 1823** (Kerguelen Islands) Morrell, Captain Benjamin (1832) *A narrative of four voyages, to the South Sea [etc.]* J. & J. Harper, New York: 63.

Near the base of the hills, in a boggy kind of soil, is another plant plentifully scattered about, which grows to the height of nearly two feet. It presents the appearance of a small cabbage that is shooting into seed, and has the watery acid taste imputed to it by Mr. Anderson.]

**1879** Hooker, J.D. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: 9.

Mr Anderson proceeds then to give some particulars .. of the cabbage (*Pringlea antiscorbutica*) [etc.].

**1961** Holdgate, M.W. and Wace, N.M. *Polar Record* 10(68) May: 483.

The distribution of all these plant communities has been greatly modified by the effect of rabbits, liberated on the island in 1874 by an [sic] British Transit of Venus expedition, in an area where the Kerguelen cabbage was abundant and seemed likely to provide suitable food for them. Now it is the rabbit that has become abundant, and the cabbages have

disappeared with many other plants whose absence has altered the appearance of the central part of the archipelago to an extent unbelievable to one who has not seen it with his own eyes.

2. The plant *Stilbocarpa polaris*: see **Macquarie Island cabbage**.

**1943** Mawson, Douglas *Macquarie Island: its geography and geology. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911-14. Scientific reports series A vol V* Government Printer, Sydney: 42.

Sheep, if of suitable breed, such as Romney Marsh, can be acclimatised, and will grow good wool, lamb satisfactorily and fatten on the tussock grass and cabbage.

**1973** (Macquarie Island) *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Sept: 12.

Wek-Wek [sic. a wekal] came around to the door several more times during the early evening but I stood my ground and after dark he vanished under the cabbage up the hill without the customary handout.

**caboose** *Brit., South African, Aust.*

[Canadian English records the same meaning of caboose ('a mobile hut or bunk-house moved on wheels or runners') from 1912 (NOED).]

A caravan (sometimes makeshift) mounted on a sledge, towed by a tractor, and used on traverse or as a field hut. This kind of shelter is known in US and NZ antarctic terminology as a **wanigan**.

**1953** *Polar Record* 6(46) Jul: 783.

During the winter of 1951 a small hut, known as a "caboose", was built on one of the cargo sledges described above. This provided accommodation for three or four men and the seismic instruments. It measured 3.9 m. long a 1.5 m. wide, and consisted of a timber framework and two layers of heavy canvas, with an air space about 5 cm. wide between them. A single, three-ply floor, a glass skylight and two rubber tube ventilators (6 cm. in diameter) in the roof were added. A canvas sleeve, which could be tied up, served as an entrance. Two spring bunks were fitted.

**1958** Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund *The crossing of Antarctica: the Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955-58* Cassell & Co, London: 144.

To this end we set to work to build a light but strong caravan on the back of one of the sledges. The 'caboose' as we called it, had an internal framework of one and a quarter inch piping ... The caboose was eleven feet long and only four feet wide, but we crammed a great deal into it ... To keep the caboose warm while we were travelling, Bates had constructed a simple heater which extracted the heat from the tractor exhaust gases.

**1972** Schaefer, T.G. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* no. 2: 53.

The equipment was installed in the expedition's Geophysical Caboose, this being a commercially manufactured caravan which had been suitably modified.

**1995** *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* no. 336 Aug: 9.

Al, Steve M and Adrian took advantage of one such period to get away to the caboose at Windy Creek for two nights.

**cake** *Tristan da Cunha*

[In contradistinction to the well-established usage of the word in British English, of baked goods specifically excluding bread (NOED c1230-).]

Bread.

**1910** Barrow, K.M. *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 280.

Some Tristan words .. *Bread*, ship's biscuits. .. *Cake*, bread.

**1926** Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 103.

Mrs. Fred Swain and Mrs. Charles Green came up to the Parsonage to bring us some bread that their men got by trading. Bread is much esteemed at Tristan and is usually spoken of as "cake." When they say bread they mean ship's biscuit.

**1940** Munch, P.A. in Christopherson, Erling, transl fr Norwegian by Benham, R.L. *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 38.

Flour is a great luxury on Tristan as the islanders do not grow corn themselves and have to be content with what they can obtain by barter from passing ships ... What they bake is bread, chiefly little rolls, and this they call "cake".

**1963** Mackay, Margaret *Angry island: the story of Tristan da Cunha (1506-1963)* Arthur Barker, London: 147.

'Cake' still means bread.

**cake ice**

Small floes of loose ice in **pack ice**.

**1849** Cooper, James Fenimore *The sea lions; or, the lost sealers* Richard Bentley, London, vol III: 10.

It was very desirable to get clear of all this cake-ice.

**1982** Hosking, Eric and Sage, Bryan *Antarctic wildlife* Croom Helm, London: 131.

The Crabeater ... is consistently more abundant in areas dominated by cake and brash ice.

**1986** Bester, M.N. and Roux, J-P. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* 16(1): 29.

The leopard seal *Hydrurga leptonyx* which is solitary and widely dispersed in the Antarctic pack ice, is most common in areas of brash or cake ice, within 100 km of its northern edge.

**calf**

[Recorded from 1818- (NOED) for an iceberg detached from a coast glacier, or a fragment of ice from an iceberg or floe.]

A piece split or calved off an iceberg or other large body of ice.

**1879** Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 236.

No doubt portions of the platforms below water are constantly being split off by the upward pressure and floating to the surface as "calves." The formation of a large platform under water must, however, depend on such a "calving" not taking place, unless on sides of the berg other than that on which the platform is formed.

**20 Feb 1933** (Bouvet area) Christensen, Lars, transl. fr Norwegian by Jayne, E.M.G. (1935) *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 86.

We encountered a mass of *small* ice — what some of the gunners call 'calves'; others call them *telegrams*, for if one comes across that sort of ice in a fog it is pretty certain that there is an iceberg near; to be sure there was no lack of them here.

**calve** *verb*

[Recorded from non-antarctic contexts in the same sense since 1837 (NOED).]

Of an iceberg: to break off from an ice shelf or glacier. See also **berg** *verb*. Hence **calving**, *verbal noun*.

**25 Jan 1902** (Great Ice Barrier) Scott, Captain Robert F. *The voyage of the "Discovery"* Macmillan and Co, London: 128.

Passed over fifty icebergs in course of the day, the first we have seen since leaving Cape Crozier. They were mostly irregular in shape, but two; close to the barrier, had evidently recently calved off that mass.

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* London: 56.

We passed a berg that had recently calved from one of the glaciers at the foot of Mt Terror — to "calve" being the geological term signifying the parting of a portion of a glacier from the parent body.

**1957** Anderson, W. Ellery *Expedition south* Evans Brothers, London: 37.

All round the coast-line of Antarctica bergs are calved to form immense plateaux of floating ice, sometimes hundreds, even thousands, of square miles in area.

**1957** Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund *The crossing of Antarctica: the Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955-58* Cassell & Co, London: 33.

Ice-bergs fifty to a hundred miles long are known to have calved from ice shelves.

**1965** *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* 5 (Jan): 6.

As soon as calving activity declined the ice cliff began to advance.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 144.

Did you know that 350 cubic miles of icebergs are calved off the ice-sheet in Antarctica every year? This is half the world's total water needs. ... Antarctica possesses 70 per cent of the world's supply of fresh water.

**1992** *Antarctic Science* 4(2): 223.

Nordenskjöld Glacier is a 12 km long valley glacier (estimated altitude range sea level-1450 m a.s.l.) terminating in a 3.5 km wide calving ice front in Cumberland East Bay.

**1995** *The Advertiser [Adelaide]* 25 Mar: 7.

The spectacular cracks follow the fracturing, or calving, of a gigantic iceberg from the [sc. Larsen] ice shelf last month.

**1995** Manhire, Bill *Hoosh* Anxious Husky Press, Wellington: [3].

The glaciers calve and thunder, melt-water of whatever was freezing here a million years before Christ.

**camp** *noun and attrib.* *Falkland Islands. Occas. (formerly) pl. camps*

[From the Spanish *campo countryside*. This term is used also by English-speaking South Americans in the same sense of 'outside town'.]

The countryside; 'anywhere out of town' (see 1933 quotation) — anywhere outside the Falkland Islands capital of Stanley.

**16 June 1842** McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 296.

Met Captain Ross at the observatory, and got on board again at four p.m., after an absence of ten days in the camp, as the surrounding country is here termed, and the whole aspect of which presented the same kind of moorland region as around Berkeley Sound.

**1857** (Falkland Islands) Snow, W. Parker *A two years' cruise off Tierra del Fuego, the Falkland Islands, Patagonia, and in the River Plate: a narrative of life in the Southern Seas* Longman, Brown, Green, Longmans and Roberts, London, vol I: 202.

It may be asked, however, what of the camp? the country? My reply unfortunately must be, — Nothing. I know nothing of it, beyond a few miles of Stanley, or about the various islands and places I visited. Not once did I go inland.

**1879** (Falkland Islands) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 555.

The most experienced "camp" men (Spanish campo) get lost sometimes, especially when a thick fog comes on, and then they trust entirely to their horses, which make their way when left to themselves back to their accustomed feeding-ground.

**1900** Brandon, Rev. Lowther, ed. *The Falkland Islands Magazine* XII(1) May: [10].

Over fifty passengers left by the mail and they and their numerous friends, as well as those Stanley residents who came in from the camps for the holiday, served to swell the numbers.

— XII(5) Sept: [9].

There is something deadly, fatal, and destructive in the air of Stanley to many living the happy, wholesome life of the camp.

**1924** Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history by Rupert Vallentin* Clarendon Press, Oxford: opp. 204.

[caption] Shepherds mustering sheep, with camp-fire behind. Camp-burning takes the place of heather-burning in Scotland. The progress of the camp-burners is marked by columns of smoke and flame as the grass catches fire.

**1952** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 61(14) (1 Oct): 145.

Tomlinson, R.R. [office] Camp Teacher.

**1993** (Falkland Islands) Poncet, Sally in *Australian Geographic* 32 (Oct): 103.

"Camp" — the countryside anywhere out of town — is sparsely inhabited grassland grazed by 700,000 sheep. Wool has been the islands' main produce since the early days of settlement in the 1860s.

**1994** Falkland Islands Government Office *Introduction to the Falkland Islands* Falkland Islands Government Office, London: 11.

The majority of the older Camp children attend school in Stanley and live in a boarding hostel with a staff of Deputy Head of Hostel, Matron and five houseparents.

## Campbell Island

Campbell Island and its smaller nearby islands are the southernmost of New Zealand's subantarctic islands. They lie at 52°33'S, 169°09'E, about 600 km (370 miles) south of Stewart Island. Campbell was named by Captain Frederick Hasselburgh after the shipowner Robert Campbell (originally Campbell's Island) of the Sydney firm of Campbell and Co., owners of the sealing ship *Perseverance*.

**Campbell Island cormorant** *See* **Campbell Island shag**

**Campbell Island duck** *See* **Campbell Island teal**

## Campbell Islander

An inhabitant or former inhabitant of Campbell Island.

**1969** *The Islander: the quarterly bulletin of the Campbell-Raoul Island association* 4 (Feb): [3].

Notice to all Campbell Islanders: Rugby game on Saturday next 14 December.

**1976** Kerr, I.S. *Campbell Island: a history* A.H. & A.W. Reed Ltd, Wellington: [dust-jacket note].

Mr Kerr ... regrets that he is not a Campbell Islander by virtue of "residential" qualification but hopes he is one by adop-

tion. He savoured some of the island's peculiar attractions during one short visit on the *Holmburn's* servicing voyage in 1960.

**Campbell Island flightless teal** *See* **Campbell Island teal**

**Campbell Island shag** *noun* *Also* **Campbell Island cormorant, Campbell shag**

The small black and white marine bird *Phalacrocorax* (or *Leucocarbo*) *campbelli* (fam. Phalacrocoracidae), which lives only on Campbell Island. It has pink legs and feet, and purplish eye-rings.

**1888** [source: DNZE] Buller *Birds NZ* II: 167.

*Phalacrocorax nyctheremus* (Campbell-Island Shag).

**1942** Sorensen, J.H. *The work journal of J.H. Sorensen, coast-watcher in the "Cape expedition", Campbell Island, 1942-44*. Original, in possession of NZ Dept Conservation and Wildlife, Wellington: 1.

At sea ... Birds noted — Wandering albatross and Royal Albatross, Auckland Island shags, Campbell Id. shags [etc.].

**1960** Westerskov, Kaj *Birds of Campbell Island*. Wildlife Publication no. 61, Wildlife Division, New Zealand: 61.

On 26 January I collected a Campbell Island shag [sc. *Phalacrocorax campbelli campbelli*]; it was sitting on a rock in low water, below the Ionosphere hut. I saw the bird swimming around, fishing, and it finally settled on a rock. When this shag swims, it lies low in the water, none of the white belly is seen, and it looks, accordingly, like a small black shag.

**1992** del Hoyo, Josep and others, eds *Handbook of the birds of the world vol 1: Ostrich to ducks* Lynx Edicions, Barcelona: 331.

In several Antarctic or subantarctic species, such as the Antarctic Shag, the Campbell Shag (*Phalacrocorax campbelli*) .. and the Bounty Shag (*Phalacrocorax ranfurlyi*), no 'Wing-spreading' has been observed.

**1997** Southern Heritage Expeditions *Expedition cruising: Antarctica (the Ross Sea and King George V Land), Subantarctic islands of New Zealand Australia and the South Indian Ocean (travel brochure)* SHE, Christchurch: 17.

At Campbell Island we'll take an easy walk to observe southern royal albatross nesting amongst flowering megaherbs and tussock. We'll also see Campbell Island cormorant.

**Campbell Island teal** *Also* **Campbell Island duck or flightless teal**

The small brown flightless duck *Anas aucklandicus nesiotis* (fam. Anatidae), which now lives only on Dent Island, a small island in the Campbell Island group. It is also called a **flightless duck**.

[**1895** (Campbell Island) Borchgrevink, C. Egeberg in *Geographical Journal: journal of the Royal Geographical Society, London* 5: 584.

Hunting for ducks, which were about in great numbers.]

**1936** Mathews, Gregory M. *A supplement to the birds of Norfolk & Lord Howe Islands to which is added those birds of New Zealand not figured by Buller H.F. & G. Witherby*, London: 134.

*Xenonetta nesiotis*. .. Campbell Island duck. ... Distribution. Campbell Island, New Zealand.

**1950** Scott, Peter *Key to the wildfowl of the world* Severn Wildfowl Trust, Slimbridge, Gloucestershire: [20].

Campbell Island flightless teal. *Anas aucklandica nesiotis*. Campbell Island (500 miles south of New Zealand and east of Auckland Islands). Very few in existence but probably never numerous.

**1960** Westerskov, Kaj *Birds of Campbell Island* Wildlife Publication no. 61, Wildlife Division, Wellington, New Zealand: 63.

Campbell Island teal (*Anas castanea nesiotis*): the first mention of the possibility of a flightless duck being present on Campbell Island is by Reischek ... It was undoubtedly Captain Fairchild who informed Reischek of the presence of flightless ducks on Campbell Island, as during the 1886 cruise of the *Stella* (January–February) he obtained a specimen.

**1962** Bailey, Alfred M. and Sorensen, J.H. *Subantarctic Campbell Island* Proceedings no. 10, Denver Museum of Natural History: 245.

In his several years' work on Campbell Sorensen had a possible sight record in 1943, a smallish duck which made a short flight from a brackish pool above highwater mark to the sea, between Windlass Bay and Northwest Beach. This was in failing light ... This may well have been a Campbell Island Teal.

**1978** (Dent Island, 1909–16) Kerr, I.S. and Judd, N., eds *Marlborough whalers at Campbell Island: a narrative based on the recollections of J. Timms* Department of Lands and Survey, Wellington: 73.

I can also vaguely recall the little brown duck there too. I can remember Captain Macbryde telling us about this little duck while we were sheltering at Stewart Island. We saw some while we were there and Macbryde told us that they were on the Auckland Islands and at Campbell Island too<sup>1</sup>.

<sup>1</sup>Footnote: The bird seen at Stewart Island would most likely have been the brown teal (*Anas chlorotis*) which is slightly bigger than the Campbell Island and Auckland Island flightless teals. It is a strong flier but is seldom seen flying. Campbell Island flightless teal (*Anas nesiotis*) once figured in a controversy as to its existence. It was rediscovered in 1975 by R. Russ of the Wildlife Service, Department of Internal Affairs.

**1985** *Geo [Aust]* 7(4) Dec 1985–Feb 1986: 97.

The saddest case of all is the flightless Campbell Island teal. In 1975 it was reported that this miniature duck was confined to Dent Island, 1.5 kilometres off the western shore of Campbell Island.

**1995** Department of Conservation *Draft conservation management strategy — subantarctic islands* Southland Conservancy Conservation Management Planning series no 6, Department of Conservation, NZ: [20].

Dent Island has the only wild population of the rare, endemic, Campbell Island teal.

### camper *Falkland Islands*

A **camp** resident.

**1994** Simpson, Tim *Cooking the Falkland Island way* Peregrine Publishing, Bangor: 112.

Scurvy-Grass Wine ... is known to all 'campers'.

### canary *Tristan da Cunha*

[Prob. from the South African use of the name canary for the small, yellowish birds of the genus *Serinus* (fam. *Fringillidae*), in turn from the older English canary(-bird) a singing bird of the fam. *Fringillidae* (NOED 1576-.)]

Either of two birds, *Nesospiza wilkinsi* or *N. acunhae* (fam. *Fringillidae*), occurring now only on islands other than the main island of the Tristan da Cunha group. *N. acunhae* is also called the **Tristan bunting**. See also **big canary**.

**1926** (Inaccessible Island) Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 169.

The solitary thrush or 'starchy' is plentiful and nests here, and we secured some eggs of it. There is also the Tristan finch, or 'canary' as they call it.

**1940** (Nightingale Island) Christopherson, Erling, transl. fr Norwegian by Benham, R.L. *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 96.

Canaries had flown around us every single day — greenish-yellow finches, which are found nowhere else in the world but on this group of islands ... All the small, greenish-yellow canaries .. were of the same size.

**1969** Zettersten, Arne *The English of Tristan da Cunha* Lund Studies in English no 37: 128.

Terms used with a new reference. These words can be best exemplified by birds, fishes, and plants. The following words are thus used of species which resemble British species: Canary, Nightbird, etc.

**1994** Rowan, Bunty in *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 14 (Mar): 9. From the moment we stepped out of our shack door, all along our walk, and all the way back at all times and at all places on Nightingale Island, we knew and enjoyed the companionship of the little thrush, called a "starchy" by the islanders. Not quite so abundant, but nevertheless very numerous are the "canaries", a little bunting which quite closely resembles the Cape Canary.

### cané *noun, Aust.*

A bamboo stick used to mark a route.

**1987** (Heard Island, 1951) Ledingham, Rod in *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* 6(4) June: 7.

A snow cane line was established across the Vahsel glacier by a party.

**1995** ANARE *Casey yearbook 1995* ANARE, Casey: 158.

[glossary] Cane: Bamboo cane used as marker, sometimes mowed down by bored Hagg drivers.

### cané *verb, Aust.*

To mark a route with **canes**.

**1996** *Icy News. Antarctic Division staff newsletter [Hobart]* 5 Jan: [1].

A new track has been caned to Gwam as the old route has become impassable over the last week with the thaw of the snow resulting in the odd river across the track.

### canvasback *Falkland Islands*

The duck *Tachyeres patachonicus*: see **flying steamer duck**.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 145.

Flying Steamer Duck .. Local name: Canvasback ... Will 'steam' across water like a Logger though the body often lifts clear of the surface and the wings barely touch, therefore producing much less spray.

### Cape Expeditioner *New Zealand*

One of the coastwatchers stationed on New Zealand's Auckland or Campbell Islands during World War II, in an operation called 'Cape Expedition', from March 1941 until October 1945. At least one of those selected for each three to five-man group was a scientist, who made valuable natural-history observations while on the islands.

**[1945** *Auckland Star* 23 Nov: np.

[headline] 'Cape Expedition' stood guard in southern waters.]

**1986** (Auckland Islands) Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 123.

On neighbouring Ocean Island, which is considerably smaller [sc. than Ewing Island], a number of goats liberated



in 1886 had apparently become numerous by 1903, and the island abounded in goats by 1907. They continued to thrive on it until they were shot out, as food and for environmental purposes by the Cape Expeditioners in the 1940s.

**1996** Southern Heritage Expeditions *Wildgardens of the sub-antarctic 11 December–21 December 1996* [travel booklet] SHE, Christchurch: [14].

Alone we climb through scrub and grassland, across bog and moor to the observation hut from where these young men The Cape Expeditioners watched for enemy shipping.

## Cape hen

[This bird is abundant in the seas around the Cape of Good Hope, and the same name is recorded first in South African English, from 1775 (DSAfrE).]

The large seabird *Procellaria aequinoctialis* (fam. Procellariidae), which is dark brown to blackish with some white on the chin. It nests in burrows, on subantarctic islands. It is also called the **black night hawk**, **black petrel**, **ring-eye**, **shoemaker** and **white-chinned petrel**.

**1821** (South Shetlands) Sherratt, Richard in *Imperial Magazine*, quoted in *Polar Record* (1952) 6(43) Jan: 364.

There are also sea-gulls, gannets, Cape hens, and a sort of pigeon.

**1879** Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 208.

Another petrel, *Majaquens aequinoctialis*, which also is often to be seen cruising after the ship, but then always solitary, is called the "Cape Hen" by ordinary sailors, and "Black Night Hawk" by the whalers. It makes a hole, larger a good deal than that of the Mutton-bird, and nearly always with its mouth opening on a small pool of water, or in a very damp place.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 316.

"The Cape Hen" (*Majaquens aequinoctialis* [sic]) is a sooty black bird, about 20 inches in length, with a variable amount of white on the chin and upper throat, sometimes around the eye. It is very common in the Cape seas, but rarely seen south of Latitude 60° south.

**16 Oct 1901** (between Cape Town and Macquarie Island) Wilson, Edward (1966) *Diary of the Discovery expedition to the Antarctic regions 1901–1904* Blandford Press, London: 60.

Spent the morning trying to catch a Cape Hen (*Majaquens*). There were a great number of them in our wake.

**1923** Macklin, A.H. in *Country Life* 6 Jan: 8.

We encountered the cheery Cape pigeons, which came chattering over our stern, mollymauks, giant petrels, sooty albatross and Cape hens.

**1929** (South Georgia) *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 574.

At the beginning of November, 1925, a Cape Hen was observed digging its burrow in the ground above the cliffs at North Bay in Ice Fjord. It was using the beak as a pick for digging out the soil and it then scratched the loose earth out of the burrow by scraping it back between the legs with the feet.

**1954** (Marion Island) Rand, R.W. in *The Ibis* 96(2): 192.

Cape Hen burrows were scattered irregularly on the eastern and northwestern side of the island. Theirs were the largest of the sea-bird burrows and were easily detected entering the lava outcrops or low moss-covered ridges.

**1984** (S of Cape of Good Hope) Fletcher, Harold *Antarctic days with Mawson: a personal account of the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929–31* Angus and Robertson, London: 54.

Coastal birds were left behind and subantarctic species began to make their appearance. Cape hens were with us all day, usually in flocks of about 40 and never less than 10 in number.

## Cape molly *Tristan da Cunha*

[This is the most common albatross in the waters of the Cape of Good Hope.]

The albatross *Diomedea melanophris*: see **black-browed albatross**.

**1951** Rowan, M.K. in *The Ostrich* XXII(3) Dec: 139.

All three islands of the group, Tristan, Inaccessible and Nightingale, form breeding stations for the Yellow-nosed Albatross. To the Tristan Islanders this species is known simply as "Molly" or "Mollymawk". Other albatrosses occurring in Tristan waters receive distinguishing names, such as "Cape Molly" for *Diomedea melanophris*, the Black-browed Albatross, which regularly visits the islands, but does not breed there.

**1969** Zettersten, Arne *The English of Tristan da Cunha* Lund Studies in English no 37: 93.

Cape Molly. The Black-browed Albatross.

## Cape pigeon Also *Cape petrel*

[This bird is abundant in the seas around the Cape of Good Hope, and the name is recorded first in South African English, from 1798 (DSAfrE).]

The small seabird *Daption capense* (fam. Procellariidae), a distinctive black-and-white to dark brown-and-white petrel often seen in large numbers from ships in southern waters, and a well-known southern hemisphere sea bird. It breeds on subantarctic islands, Antarctic islands and the Antarctic continent. It is also called the **pin-tado**.

**10 Nov 1821** (near 62°6'S, 58°7'W) *The Literary Gazette and Journal of Belles Lettres* 5, quoted in *Polar Record* (1946) 4(32) Jul: 390.

The other marine birds were Cape-pigeons, petterel, and several species of the gull, besides a shag, which has a singular mud nest on the rocks, close to the water.

**30 Dec 1840** McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 144.

Observed a petrel we have not hitherto met with, of a lighter colour, and somewhat larger than the Cape petrel.

**1848** Gould, John *The birds of Australia* The author, 20 Broad St, Golden Square, London, vol VII: pl. 53.

*Daption capensis*. Cape Petrel. It is the Martin among the Petrels, being extremely tame, passing immediately under the stern and settling down close to the sides of the ship, if fat of any kind or other oily substance be thrown overboard.

**1879** Sharpe, R. Bowdler in *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: 118.

Mr Eaton did not bring home a specimen of the Cape Petrel from Kerguelen Island, but he noticed it in the vicinity.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 315.

The well-known Cape Petrel, or "Cape Pigeon" (*Daption Capensis*), was occasionally seen within the Antarctic ice-pack and even at Cape Adare. It, however, does not seem to care to cross the ice. It is an exceedingly handsome bird. The head, neck and throat are blackish. The feathers of the mantle are mainly white, but tipped with black. The tail is broadly tipped with black. The under parts are white. It is a bird widely distributed all over the Southern seas.



## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

**1930** Kinnear in Bernacchi, L.C., ed. *The polar book. Produced for the British Polar Exhibition 1930* E. Allom & Co Ltd, London: 68.

The Cape Pigeon (*Daption capensis*) .. in spite of the misleading name given to it by sailors, is also a petrel.

**1955** Dalziel, Ken *Penguin road* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 44.

The most common bird we saw was the cape pigeon. It has black and white check markings on its wings and is seen in great numbers around the Cape of Good Hope.

**1956** Ealey, E.H.M. and Chittleborough, R.G. *Plankton, hydrology and marine fouling at Heard Island. ANARE Interim reports no. 15* Antarctic Division, Dept of External Affairs, Melbourne: 15.

Occasionally Cape petrels, *Daption capensis* .. could be seen picking these pale pink animals from the sea.

**1980** Parmelee, David F. *Bird Island in antarctic waters* University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis: ix.

The one Bird Island species of duck has been called a teal, but currently it is classified as a pintail and goes by that name. One would suppose that the same reasoning would apply to the Cape pigeon, which is a petrel, but the name pigeon is the most commonly and widely used.

**1992** (Davis station) Lied, Commander Niels *Oscar: the true story of a husky* Kerr Publishing, Sydney: 134.

We made our last geological journey in December to Bluff Island, where we climbed the steep cliff face to see if the cape pigeons had any eggs yet. The birds were sitting very tight on their first eggs, squirting a stinking, reddish spit on any intruder with amazing accuracy over a distance of two metres.

**1995** Heacox, Kim *Wildlife Conservation* 98(1) Jan–Feb: 28.

Cape, or pintado, petrels pinwheel through the air.

### Cape sheep *Historical*

[Probably a humorous use of the old South African name Cape sheep for a breed of sheep (DSAFre 1731–). See also 1982 quotation.]

The bird *Diomedea exulans*, commonly called the **wandering albatross**.

**1879** Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 137.

The ship took ten days to reach the Cape of Good Hope [sc. from Tristan da Cunha]; the only interesting feature of the voyage was the appearance of the various southern Oceanic birds which constantly were to be seen flying at the stern. The great albatross or Cape sheep, the Mollymauk [etc.].

**1982** Hosking, Eric and Sage, Bryan *Antarctic wildlife* Croom Helm, London: 94.

Sailors sometimes made feather rugs from albatross skins, this no doubt being the origin of the name 'Cape Sheep' that was sometimes applied to them.

### caracara *noun and attrib., Falkland Islands*

[Fr the South American Spanish (Argentina, Bolivia and Uruguay) caracará South American hawk.]

Either of two birds of prey, the **carancho** or the **johnny rook**.

**26 May 1842** (Falkland Islands) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 346.

About a quarter of a mile above it [sc. the head of the stream] shot three Caracara hawks, as they were watching my proceedings at a respectful distance, with the intent of making my geese their prize, I well knew, as soon as my back was turned.

**1988** (Falkland Islands) *National Geographic* 173(3) Mar: 409.

Flying around the colony are a score of caracaras, rare birds of prey noted both for omnivorous tastes and insatiable curiosity.

**1991** Riddy, Mike in *The Warrah. Newsletter of Falklands conservation [London]* 1 (Nov): 7.

Flocks of up to forty marauding caracaras, including adults and immatures, were preying on the large, well-feathered chicks.

### carancho *Falkland Islands*

[From the South America Spanish (Argentina, Bolivia and Uruguay) carancho carrion hawk.]

The large bird of prey *Caracara plancus* (fam. Falconidae), a streaked brownish bird with a black cap. It is also known as the **(crested) caracara**. Occasionally (see 1904 quotation), the name has been used mistakenly for the **johnny rook**.

**Mar 1834** Darwin, Charles quoted in Armstrong, Patrick (1992) *Darwin's desolate islands: a naturalist in the Falklands, 1833 and 1834* Picton Publishing, Chippenham: 105.

[Caracara] .. in general habits much resemble the Carrancha; same inelegant flight and patient watching position.

**1840** Mackinnon, L.B. (RN) *Some account of the Falkland Islands, from a six months' residence in 1838 and 1839* A.H. Bailey & Co., London: 30.

The birds of prey are both numerous and voracious, particularly the carancho, which has much the resemblance in body to a large English crow, with the beak and talons of an eagle.

**1904** (Falkland Islands) Vallentin, Rupert *Memoirs and Proc of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no. 23: 38.

*Ibycter australis*, "Carancho." Not very numerous. This species seems to have decreased considerably since Darwin's visit. I once found a nest on a ledge of rocks about two miles from Mount Vernet, near Berkley Sound.

**1957** (Punta Arenas) Holgersen, Holger *Ornithology of the "Brategg" Expedition. Scientific results of the "Brategg" Expedition 1947–48, no. 4* Kommandør Chr. Christensens Hvalfangstmuseum, Sandefjord: 73.

The Carancho, *Polyborus plancus* (Mill.), was recorded a few times.

**1985** Woods, Robin in *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation [London]* no 4 (Oct): 11.

Two other species that may be confused by visitors are the Striated Caracara (locally called Johnny Rook) and the Crested Caracara (known as Carancho). Both are large, dark, broad-winged birds of prey which scavenge on dead animals and take young penguins when they can ... The Carancho or Crested Caracara shows a large whitish patch on the outer wing and has a long whitish tail with a broad black tip.

### Caseyite *Aust.*

[Casey station, on the coast of Antarctica at 66°17'S, 110°32'E, 3430 km (2060 miles) southwest of Hobart, was established by Australia in 1969. It replaced the nearby station of Wilkes, built by the USA in 1957 and given to Australia in 1959. The station was named after Richard Gavin Gardiner Casey (1890–1976), Federal minister responsible for Australia's Antarctic work during the 1950s.]

An inhabitant of the Australian antarctic station of Casey.

**1990** *45th ANARE Casey yearbook* 1992 ANARE, Casey: 75.

Caseyites are well catered to when the need for a cool refreshing ale arises after a long, hard and hot days [sic] work.



**catabatic** See *katabatic*

**catcher** *Whaling*

A relatively small, fast ship used for chasing and catching whales, and transporting them to the processing factory — either on shore or on a larger **factory ship**. They are also more fully called **whale catchers**.

**1935** Christensen, Lars, transl. fr Norwegian by Jayne, E.M.G. *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Stoughton, London: opp. 37.

[caption] A catcher in a storm. These small boats of 120 tons make the voyage every year from Sandefjord to the South Polar Continent.

**1949** (South Georgia) Innes, Hammond (1953 edn) *The white south* Fontana Books, London: 11.

In a week of bad gales the catchers had brought in only 6 whale.

**1971** Bertrand, Kenneth J. *Americans in Antarctica* American Geographical Society special publication no. 39: 7.

By the 1912–13 season there were six shore stations, 21 factory ships, and 62 catchers in Antarctica, mostly Norwegian.

**catfish** *Tristan da Cunha*

[Prob. fr the S African English 'catfish' for several species of octopus of the genus *Octopus*, recorded from 1862– in DSAfrE, which also records 'sea-cat' for a cephalopod from 1785–, from the Dutch *zeekat* (inkfish). NOED records cat-fish meaning a cuttlefish or other cephalopod, in a West Indian context from 1678–.]

An octopus or squid — a cephalopod.

**18 Jul 1906** Barrow, K.M. (1910) *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 63.

Mrs. Lavarello gave us her catch of three crawfish and two small fish. She caught an octopus, which they call cat-fish, horrid-looking creatures: how she could handle them I do not know.

**1926** Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 87.

The 'Portuguese man-of-war,' and sharks and cat-fish abound.

**1957** Booy, D.M. *Rock of exile: a narrative of Tristan da Cunha* J.M. Dent & Sons, London: 168.

Small cuttle-fish or, as the islanders called them, 'catfish' were used as bait.

**centre trace method** *Dog-sledging*

A way of harnessing sledge dogs within a team: pairs of dogs are harnessed on short (about 1 m or 3 ft 3 in) leads to a long central lead, sometimes with a single dog on a longer lead at the head of the team. See also **trace**.

**1939** Rymill, John *Southern lights: the official account of the British Graham Land Expedition 1934–1937* Travel Book Club, London: 34.

When we eventually reached Graham Land we found that we would be driving over thin, treacherous sea-ice and on much-crevassed glaciers in a country where the snowfall is heavy for most of the year. The centre trace method was therefore ruled out, as it is most dangerous both on thin ice and among crevasses.

**1955** (Stonington base) Walton, E.W. Kevin *Two years in the Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 148.

Their general driving trace was based on the centre trace method that is so necessary and popular in North America. The complete set of traces and harnesses for the fifteen-dog team was a complicated and heavy affair.

**1982** Ledingham, Rod *ANARE dog drivers manual* Antarctic Division, Department of Science and the Environment: 36.

In the centre trace method, the dogs are attached in pairs to a centre trace by 1.2 metres side traces, the leader has a trace approximately 2.4 metres long.

**chaenichthyid** See **channichthyid**

**chain line** *Dog-sledging, Aust.*

A **dog line**.

**1966** MacKenzie, D., ed. *Fog 'N Bog [yearbook of Macquarie Island ANARE overwinterers]* ANARE, Macquarie Island: 24.

The take-off is far from impressive as the lead dogs run a full circle and head back to the chain lines.

**1995** Greet, Pene and Price, Gina *Frost bytes* Doubleday, Sydney: 23.

As working animals, the dogs were kept on a chain line overlooking the station.

**changeover** *Brit., Aust., NZ*

[Spec. use of changeover the action of changing over (NOED 1907–).]

The annual exchange of personnel and equipment by ship at an antarctic station; the time (usu. a few days) in which this happens.

**1946** *Polar Record* 4(32) Jul: 380.

The change-over of staff and the re-equipment of the various bases were quickly accomplished first at Hope Bay and then at Deception Island and Port Lockroy.

**1956** Stinear, B.H., Preliminary report on operations from Mawson Base, Australian National Antarctic Research Expedition, 1954–55 *BMR Record* 1956/44: 7.

The first annual changeover of Mawson Station was completed at 1415 hours on 1st. March, when the "Kista Dan" sailed for Melbourne via Heard Island and Iles de Kerguelen.

**1966** (Macquarie Island) Simpson, Ken in *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Nov: 24.

The framework of the "poppet-head", which had been broadly labelled "Telephones", to confuse visiting female scientists during changeovers, was towed away to the rubbish dump.

**1987** National Parks and Wildlife Service, Tasmania *Macquarie Island nature reserve: visitor's handbook* NPWS, Hobart: 29.

Antarctic Division resupply ships usually visit the reserve twice a year, during the summer months. This provides four working periods at the island:- a) changeover, when the main resupply is carried out, usually 3–4 days; b) the summer period, from five weeks to five months; c) when the summer personnel are picked up, usually 1–2 days; d) a full ANARE, lasting between twelve and thirteen months.

**channichthyid** Also **chaenichthyid**

A marine fish of the fam. Channichthyidae. These occur only in the waters around Antarctica and southern South America. They are more commonly called **ice-fish**, and occas. called **white-blooded fish**. See also **crocodile fish**.

**1968** Everson, Inigo and Ralph, R. in *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* 15 (Mar): 59.

A study on the respiratory metabolism of a chaenichthyid, *Chaenocephalus aceratus*.

**1971** (Palmer Station) Hemmingsen, Edvard A. in *Antarctic Journal of the United States* VI(4) Jul/Aug: 92.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

E.L. Douglas .. studied the respiratory physiology of chaenichthyids.

**1981** Guthridge, G.G. in *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XVI(4) (Dec): 6.

The blood of chaenichthyid fishes, or "icefishes", is cloudy white because it has no hemoglobin — the protein that makes other animals' blood red and transports oxygen and carbon dioxide.

**1985** Kock, Karl-Hermann, in Bonner, W.N. and Walton, D.W.H., eds *Key environments: Antarctica* Pergamon Press, Oxford: 178.

In contrast to red-blooded species such as cod and herring the blood of channichthyids is nearly translucent with a yellowish tint and the gill filaments appear to be creamy white. This has led to their common names 'ice-fish' or 'white-blooded fish'.

**1987** Miller, D.G.M. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* 17(2): 110.

The five .. samples yielded .. five channichthyid post-larvae.

### **che** *Exclam., Falkland Islands*

Then, well.

**1985** Winchester, Simon *The sun never sets* Prentice Hall Press, NY: 267.

Don set me down, and waved me goodbye. "Cheers che!" he cried.

### **chinstrap penguin** *noun phr. and attrib. Often shortened to chinstrap*

[Chinstrap, from the thin black line which runs from ear to ear under the penguin's chin.]

The black and white penguin *Pygoscelis antarctica* (fam. Spheniscidae), which grows to nearly 70 cm (2 ft 4 in) in height, and breeds in the Antarctic Peninsula and Scotia Arc regions. It is also called an **antarctic penguin, bridled penguin, pygoscelid**; until the 1950s, it was known mostly as the **ringed penguin**.

**1955** (Heard Island) Dalziel, Ken *Penguin road* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 64.

The South Orkney and South Sandwich Islands ... are the home of a penguin called the "chinstrap", also known as the ringed penguin, and only very rarely does he leave home. So it was a great surprise for us to receive one as a visitor from so far away. Of all the penguins they are the boldest and most courageous in defence of their nests.

**1959** (Heard Island) Downes, M.C., Ealey, E.H.M., Gwynn, A.M. and Young, P.S. *The birds of Heard Island. ANARE reports Series B vol 1 Zoology* Antarctic Division, Department of External Affairs, Melbourne: 9.

Following Rankin (1951) the name "chinstrap" has been adopted as the vernacular name of *Pygoscelis antarctica* as it appears to have good currency in the Weddell Sea area (the home of this species), and it is more apt than either "ringed penguin" or "antarctic penguin".

**1966** MacKenzie, D., ed. *Fog 'N Bog [yearbook of Macquarie Island ANARE overwinterers]* ANARE, Macquarie Island: 35.

The Chinstrap is an abundant penguin, but its distribution is limited to Northern Graham Land, South Orkneys and South Shetlands. As its name implies, it has a distinct ring of black feathers between its white breast and white throat.

**1988** *Antarctic Times: the official newsletter of Scott Base* no. 17 (29 Jan): 4.

The closest chinstrap penguin rookery to Cape Bird is on the inaccessible Balleny Islands, 1150 km to the north of Scott Base.

**1995** Heacox, Kim in *Wildlife Conservation* 98(1) Jan-Feb: 28.  
A curious chinstrap might peck at the bootstraps of a seated, motionless observer.

### **chompers** *Aust.*

[Chomp to eat noisily is recorded originally as English dialect and US, and now widespread (NOED: c1645). The earliest recorded American use of chomper a noisy eater (DARE 1969) is later than the first use here, and the meaning different.]

A snack; sometimes, a meal.

**1963** *Wilkes Hard Times [ANARE Wilkes, Antarctica]* 1(6) July: 3.  
Hot tip. Steve likes chillies for bar chompers.

**1970** Gosman, R., ed. *Homers' Odyssey [yearbook of Macquarie Island overwinterers]* ANARE, Macquarie Island: [21].

For chompers, instead of recurrant jelly,

Cover your bread with pâté of nelly.

**1982** (Mawson station) Ledingham, Rod *ANARE dog drivers manual* Antarctic Division, Department of Science and the Environment: 34.

If you are on the periphery of the station and don't hear the siren, then the dogs will certainly let you know it's time for chompers!

**1992** *45th ANARE Casey yearbook* 1992 ANARE, Casey: 54.  
Antarctic Diet: Cream buns, cakes, three meals a day, midnight chompers, chips, snacks, booze — and nothing else!

### **Christmas bush** *noun phr. and attrib., Falkland Islands*

[Christmas bush has been recorded in the names of various Australian and Bermudan plants since 1884 (NOED).]

The small shrub *Baccharis magellanica* (fam. Asteraceae or Compositae) of the Falkland Islands and southern South America. It has profuse yellow-white flowers in December and January.

**1987** Strange, Ian J. *The Falkland Islands and their natural history* David and Charles, Newton Abbot, Devon: 130.

Christmas bush (*Baccharis magellanica*) so named because of its fine yellowy-white flowers which appear in late December.

**1992** McAdam, J.H., ed. *Whitegrass. First international symposium held at the Faculty of Agriculture and Food Science, the Queen's University of Belfast, 1 August 1990* Department of Applied Plant Science, Queen's University, Belfast: 81.

Was there no significant increase in the proportion of Christmas bush cover over the trial?

**1994** Simpson, Tim *Cooking the Falkland Island way* Peregrine Publishing, Bangor: 119.

The low-growing Christmas Bush (*Baccharis magellanica*) common in the Falkland Islands has always been used in place of Mistletoe.

### **cinnamon grass** *Falkland Islands*

[Cinnamon from the fragrance of the plant's leaves.]

The grass *Hierochloa redolens* (fam. Poaceae or Gramineae), whose leaves smell aromatic when crushed. It grows in the Falkland Islands and elsewhere, and forms large clumps to about 1 m (3 ft 3 in) high in damp places.

**1987** Strange, Ian J. *The Falkland Islands and their natural history* David and Charles, Newton Abbot, Devon: 116.

[caption] Short-eared owl (*Asio flammeus*) in cinnamon grass.

**1989** Davies, T.H. and McAdam, J.H. *Wild flowers of the Falkland Islands* Bluntisham Books, Huntingdon: 45.

Cinnamon grass forms large, lax clumps arising from shortly spreading rhizomes. The broad, gloss-green leaves have a distinct smell when crushed and this gives rise to the plant's name.

**c1990** Roper, Patrick *Holidays in the Falkland Islands* Falkland Islands Tourist Board, London: 2.

The pounding of the surf, the crying of the wild geese, the scent of the Cinnamon Grass in the clear, sparkling air leave the visitor with an indelible and precious memory of one of the increasingly few places in the world where nature still seems to be in charge.

### cinnamon teal

[Cinnamon (or red-breasted) teal has been used as an American name for this bird from 1874 (DARE): cinnamon refers to the brownish plumage of the bird.]

The duck *Anas cyanoptera* (fam. Anatidae) of the Americas, which probably has a very small breeding population in the Falkland Islands. The adult male has a chestnut-brown head, neck and underparts. It is also called the **red teal**.

**1931** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 40(1) (1 Feb): 12.

The undermentioned wild animal and wild birds shall be added to the list of animals and birds contained in .. the aforesaid Ordinance:- Schedule II [sc. limited hunting season] Hare, Pampa Teal (*Querquedula versicolor*) Cinnamon Teal (*Querquedula cyanoptera*) [etc.].

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 150.

Cinnamon Teal *Anas cyanoptera*.. Local name: Red Teal ... Adult male in full plumage is unmistakable; head, neck and underparts are a rich glossy chestnut.

**1997** Source [www.falklands-nature.demon.co.uk/news/news0697.html](http://www.falklands-nature.demon.co.uk/news/news0697.html) *Falklands Conservation* September: 1.

A pair of cinnamon teal *Anas cyanoptera* have been spotted amongst a flock of Speckled Teal. This is a very uncommon duck, with a widespread distribution.

### circle *Often written with a capital, Circle*

The **antarctic circle**.

**1752** [source NOED] Johnson *Rambler* no 197, Para 11.

The seamen .. would talk of longitude and latitude and circles and tropicks.

**1879** Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 253.

Smaller cetaceans, probably of a kind of Grampus (*Orca*), were very common near the Circle

**1915** (Commonwealth Bay) Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911-1914* William Heinemann, London, vol II: 159.

The mean-temperature for the first year was just above zero; a very low temperature for a station situated near the Circle.

**1955** Walton, E.W. Kevin *Two years in the Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: [7].

No other Englishman who has wintered south of the Circle since the war has seen fit to write.

**1969** Keneally, Thomas *The survivor* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 244.

"In another fifty minutes or so," the lieutenant-commander told them, "we'll actually cross the circle."

### circumantarctic *adjective*

Around Antarctica. The word more commonly used for this is **circumpolar**.

**1855-60** [source: NOED] Maury *Phys. Geog. Sea* xi § 511.

In the circumantarctic regions, where all is sea.

**1965** Wace, N.M. *Biogeography and ecology in Antarctica Monographiae Biologicae* XV, Dr W. Junk, The Hague: 202.

The living circum-Antarctic continental plants will next be considered in relation to the floras of the scattered islands of the Southern Ocean.

**1976** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XI(2): 48.

Operation of ARA *Islas Orcadas* (formerly USNS *Eltanin*) is a 5-year cooperative effort between Argentina and the United States to complete the circumantarctic oceanographic survey began by *Eltanin* in the early 1960s.

**1998** *The Age [Melbourne]* 17 Oct: 11.

[sc. The iceberg] A-38 is likely to be very slow moving, and when it eventually leaves the Weddell Sea will be subject to circum-Antarctic currents.

### circumantarctically *adverb*

In a **circumantarctic** fashion.

**1966** Andriyashev, A.P. and Ushakov, P.V. *Biological reports of the Soviet Antarctic Expedition (1955-1958) Vol 1 Studies of Marine Fauna I(IX)* Israel Program for Scientific Translations, Jerusalem: 141.

Most of the [polychaete] species occurring along the coast of Antarctica are circumantarctically distributed ... The circumantarctic distribution of many species stems from the presence of circular currents and the absence of any faunistic barriers.

### circumpolar *adjective*

Around Antarctica (sometimes the word **circum-antarctic** is used); occas. (as in 1900 quotation), near Antarctica.

**1864** [source: NOED] *Sat. Rev.* 31 Dec: 819.

The opinion that there exists an Antarctic circumpolar continent.

**18 Feb 1898** Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898-1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 170.

It was the first really good view which we had had of the characteristic ice, which covers the limitless expanse of this circum-polar ocean.

**1900** Brandon, Rev. Lowther, ed. *The Falkland Islands Magazine* XII(4) Aug: [5].

The Scottish station completes a triangle of stations round the South Pole ... Thus a very considerable series of stations — circum-polar and polar — will be established round and in the Antarctic regions.

**1950** Saunders, Alfred *A camera in Antarctica* Winchester Publications, London: 120.

With fog and snow every day and the decks swirling with water, we eventually reached Cape Town to contemplate our second and final circumpolar cruise.

**1955** Rand, R.W. *The Ostrich* XXVI(2) June: 58.

King penguins are circumpolar in their distribution, being found at South Georgia and sub-antarctic islands from Marion to Macquarie, between 45°S. and nearly 65°S. latitudes.

**1992** *Age [Melbourne]* 4 July: 3.

Australia will keep pushing for the huge circumpolar Antarctic whale sanctuary despite progress by some nations at the IWC this week towards a resumed commercial kill.

### circumpolar current *See antarctic circumpolar current*



**circumpolar deep water**

A layer of oceanic water which is warmer, more saline and richer in nutrients than the layers above and below it. It flows south from the **antarctic convergence** and wells up at the **antarctic divergence**.

**1973** Gordon, Arnold in *Antarctic Journal of the United States* VIII(3) May/June: 61.

The asymmetry of Antarctica to the earth's spin axis and the bottom morphology create large variations in the circulation pattern with longitude and permit development of large cyclonic gyres within the Weddell Basin and southeast Pacific basins (northeast of the Ross Sea). Within these gyres may occur the bulk of the upwelling of the Circumpolar Deep Water.

**1995** Crossley, Louise *Explore Antarctica* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 54.

The Antarctic Surface Water is also cold and moves north. At the Antarctic Convergence it meets warmer Subantarctic Surface Water flowing south, and sinks below it. This produces a sharp temperature gradient of up to 2°C across the Convergence. Between these two cold north-moving masses a warmer, nutrient rich mass of Circumpolar Deep Water moves south, and wells up towards the surface around the Antarctic Divergence.

**circumpolarity**

The quality of spanning the southern part of the globe in high latitudes, of being **circumpolar**.

**1992** Campbell, David *The crystal desert* Secker & Warburg, London: 161.

Cook did not discover Antarctica, as he had set out to do, but by finding nothing save a few ice-locked islands in the high southern latitudes, he may have made his greatest discovery: the circumpolarity of the Southern Ocean.

**1996** (McMurdo Sound) Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 36.

Cook ... crossed the Antarctic Circle, the first man to do so, and discovered the circumpolarity of the Southern Ocean.

**circumpolar ocean**

[There is only one circumpolar ocean: the Antarctic is a continent surrounded by ocean, the Arctic a polar ocean surrounded by land.]

The ocean better known as the **Southern Ocean** or **Antarctic Ocean**.

**18 Feb 1898** Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898-1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 170.

It was the first really good view which we had had of the characteristic ice, which covers the limitless expanse of this circumpolar ocean.

**1982** Hosking, Eric and Sage, Bryan *Antarctic wildlife* Croom Helm, London: 18.

In 1488 Bartholomew Diaz and his crew passed the southern tip of Africa and sailed on into the circumpolar ocean beyond.

**clapmatch** Also **clap match**

[The name is recorded for northern hemisphere seals from 1743 (Greenland: NOED), apparently from the Dutch *klapmuts* a sailor's cap: see 1775 (1924) quotation below.]

A seal or sea lion, usually a **fur seal** and especially a (breeding) female. Males are sometimes called **wigs**.

**1775** Penrose, Bernard, quoted in Boyson, V.E. (1924) *The Falkland Islands, with notes on the natural history* by Rupert Vallentin Clarendon Press, Oxford: 235.

Penrose ... says the men at Port Egmont called the elephant seal the 'clap-match'; but, according to Morrell and others, writing between 1820-30, this name was given to the female fur-seal, the movements of which when roused or excited are very quick — like the flash of a gun on touching the match. <sup>Footnote: Apparently derived fr. Dutch *klapmuts*, a sailor's cap. See Phil Trans 1743 xlii: 612 "the klapyms, which has a cartilaginous Hood, which covers its eyes".</sup>

**1829** (Falkland Islands) Barnard, Capt. Charles H. *A narrative of the sufferings and adventures of Captain Charles H. Barnard in a voyage round the world, during the years 1812, 1813, 1814, 1815, & 1816* Printed for the author by J. Lindon, New York: 29.

While taking a short walk on the beach ... we also met with a number of clap matches, which we killed with our clubs.

**1857** (Falkland Islands) Snow, W. Parker *A two years' cruise off Tierra del Fuego, the Falkland Islands, Patagonia, and in the River Plate: a narrative of life in the Southern Seas* Longman, Brown, Green, Longmans and Roberts, London, vol I: 138.

The monstrous species of seal, with the trunk nose, is so well described in Lord Anson's voyage, that it requires little or no addition; it has been called by the Port Egmont colonists the clap-match, and we ought in justice to declare, that we found it a truly inoffensive creature ... It is of astonishing bulk, and 26 feet long.

**1910** Cobb, Arthur F. *Wildlife in the Falkland Islands* Gowans & Gray, London: 65.

Sea Lion or Hair Seal (*Otaria jubata*) .. is very plentiful in some parts of the Falkland Group, especially on the outlying and unfrequented islands. The photographs .. are of a big Sea Lion with his two wives or "Clapmatches".

**1958** Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 155.

There is a great difference in size between the adult male and female fur-seals. The males, which are called 'wigs' because of a tuft of longer fur on their foreheads, may be up to seven feet long and weigh three or four hundredweight ... The females or 'clapmatches' are much smaller, often reaching little more than four feet in length, and they are greyer on the back and lack the dark tuft on the head.

**1983** King, Judith E. *Seals of the world, 2nd edn* British Museum (Natural History), London, and Oxford University Press, Oxford: 9.

Sealers terms are wig and clapmatch, which are used for breeding males and females, respectively.

**1992** Campbell, David *The crystal desert* Secker & Warburg, London: 175.

"Clapmatch" is a reference to the frequent copulating that took place on the beach.

**clatch**

Clobber; 'the vast amount of junk — sorry, scientific equipment — glaciologists in particular carry around' (Rupert Summerson).

**1989** British Antarctic Survey *Glossary of FIDS terms* British Antarctic Survey, Cambridge (unpublished): [1].

Clatch: Personal gear.

**1989** Airey, Ric in *BAS Club Newsletter* 25 (Spring): 14.

It was heavy, so I expect it was glacio clatch!

**clipfish** See **klipfish**

**close pack (ice)**

**Pack ice** in which all floes are touching or almost so: where cover is more than 6/8ths or 8/10ths, and which may be unnavigable.

**1870** Hamilton, Captain R.V. in *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society* XIV(II): 155.

Sir James Ross was invariably almost beset in a close pack.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 248.

The heavy and close ice-pack in the Bay and the possibility of the ice not breaking up every summer is, I think, the only grave obstacle to hibernation in this locality.

**1928** Wordie, J.M. in Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 380.

[glossary] Close Pack ... "Pack composed of floes mostly in contact." Almost or quite unnavigable. One of the four principal forms of pack ice.

**1956** *Polar Record* 8(54) Sept: 260.

Close pack ice was encountered in Lemaire Channel and from 5 to 12 December the vessel had to push her way through fast ice.

**1972** Neethling, D.C. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* no. 2: 6.

The RSA was beset for more than 5 weeks in close pack only 180 km from Sanae.

**1987** David Lewis with Mimi Lewis *Icebound in Antarctica* Secker & Warburg, London: 81.

We subsequently made rendezvous with the Canadian supply ship *Lady Franklin* at the edge of the close pack and followed her to Davis.

## coastal veronica NZ

[The genus name *Veronica* has been recorded in English use for the shrubs since 1527.]

The shrub *Hebe* (formerly *Veronica*) *elliptica*: see **box**.

**c1949** Richdale, L.E. *Wild life on an island outpost. Expedition to The Snares Islands 1947-48* Otago Daily Times and Witness Newspapers, Dunedin: 110.

The last of the trio of woody plants on The Snares is the Coastal Veronica, which grows here and there, but is not plentiful. It is thought to be the same species that is found on the coasts of New Zealand further north, but to me it seems quite different. In fact, so different that I have been wondering if the botanists responsible for naming The Snares species have made a mistake.

**1967** (Snares Islands) *Antarctic Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 4(10) Jun: 519.

They report ... some changes in the vegetation, in particular the extension in certain areas of the Coastal Veronica.

## Cobb's wren Falkland Islands

[The species is endemic to the Falkland Islands, and was collected by Arthur Cobb: see 1997 quotation.]

The very small ground-dwelling bird *Troglodytes cobbi* (fam. Troglodytidae) of the Falkland Islands. It usu. has a reddish-brown back, and is paler greyish-brown underneath; it is also called the **rock wren**.

**1993** Chater, Tony *The Falklands* The Penna Press, St Albans: 57.

[caption] Cobb's Wren hunts for shoreline insects amongst boulders and beachtop debris.

**1997** Woods, Robin W and Anne *Atlas of breeding birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 145.

There are no certain records of Cobb's Wren until it was named as a species from a Carcass Island specimen collected by Arthur Cobb in July 1908.

## cod

[Specific use of cod, recorded in British English since 1357 for the marine fish *Gadus* and others resembling it (NOED).]

## The antarctic cod.

**1833** Fanning, Edmund *Voyages round the World; with Selected Sketches of Voyages to the South Seas, North and South Pacific Oceans, China, Etc., performed under the Command and Agency of the Author* Collins & Hannay, New York: 301.

Our lieutenant of marines .. had but just anchored his boat by the edge of the kelp, not dreaming of such luck in store, when a fine cod, some eighteen inches or so in length, was taken by him; this was followed by his frequently catching them in pairs. A mess of these were sent to our neighbors, the captain and officers on board the English ship Morse, who were equally astonished with ourselves at finding cod-fish in these waters ... These fish were found to be the largest in deep water, or the deeper the water the larger the fish; some were taken weighing between thirty and forty pounds.

**1955** (Heard Island) Dalziel, Ken *Penguin road* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 49.

As time passed we caught several of these peculiar fish, as well as many "cod" not unlike the rock cod we catch in Australia.

**1986** *The Age* [Melbourne] 8 June, suppl.: 15.

[advert] Driving skidoos and hauling 70 kg cod from fishing holes is all part of a day's work in Antarctica. And considering the sun doesn't go down for four months over the summer — that's a lot of work.

**1999** *New Scientist* no. 2174 (20 Feb): 25.

For the main course they [sc. Weddell seals] stalked metre-long cod.

## cojinilla Falkland Islands

[Cojinillos is used in central American and Mexican Spanish, for saddle-bags.]

A sheepskin covering used over a (wooden) saddle in horseriding.

**1911** Skottsberg, Carl *The wilds of Patagonia* Edward Arnold, London: 19.

Hour after hour one rides in the comfortable wooden saddle without getting tired, thanks to the soft sheepskin.]

**1985** Winchester, Simon *The sun never sets* Prentice Hall Press, NY: 267.

The sheepskin fleece on the farm horse is known by its gaucho word, the *cojinillo*.

**1995** Layman, Rear-Admiral C.H. and Cameron, Jane *The Falklands and the Dwarf: the cruise of HMS Dwarf in the Falkland Islands 1881-1882* Picton Publishing, Chippenham: 132.

[caption] He is riding without the normal Falkland Island saddle-covering of a cojinilla (sheepskin: pronounced "cock-ineasha") — one of the many words connected with riding, which along with place names are a legacy of the Uruguayan gauchos of the nineteenth century, and still in use in the Islands today.

## Commerson's dolphin

[Both scientific and common names honour French physician and naturalist Phillibert Commerson (1727-73), who first observed the species in 1767 near Tierra del Fuego, as naturalist on La Boudeuse, commanded by Louis de Bougainville. The dolphin was named *Delphinus Commersonii* by fellow Frenchman Count BGE de la V Lacépède in 1804.]

The small dolphin *Cephaloryhnchus commersonii* (fam. Delphinidae), which grows to about 1.7 m (5 ft 10 in) long. The adults are strikingly marked white and black. It is found in coastal waters around the Falkland Islands, southeastern South America, and around Kerguelen Island.

**1924** Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands, with notes on the natural history by Rupert Vallentin* Clarendon Press, Oxford: 229.

Mention must just be made of a little cetacean found in the seas about the Falklands and Magellan Strait — the beautiful silvery-white dolphin discovered by Philibert Commerson and bearing his name (*Cephalorhynchus Commersonii*). Its body is a shining silvery white, the head, tail and fins being a deep black. Its length is about from 3 to 4 feet.

Footnote: He sailed with Bougainville round the world. Unfortunately he never went to the Falklands. His work has never had justice done to it.]

**4 Feb 1968** Scott, Peter (1983) *Travel diaries of a naturalist: Australia, New Zealand, New Guinea, Africa, the Galapagos islands, Antarctica and the Falkland Islands* Collins, London: 255.

'What', someone asked me, 'are the dolphins with white over their backs?' They were unknown to me, and I began by suggesting they were really showing white bellies. But then I saw them myself. They had black heads, but the middle part of the body was all white — top and bottom — and the tail black again. We must have seen a hundred or more ... These black and white Commerson's Dolphins are apparently usually found in narrow straits, and almost always are seen in the narrows of the Magellan Straits.

**1979** Lewis, David *Voyage to the ice: the Antarctic expedition of Solo* Australian Broadcasting Commission/Wm Collins Sons & Co: 92.

I was cheered by seeing four black and white Commerson's dolphins playing around the ship. I had only previously seen these small beautiful creatures in Magellan Strait and off Cape Horn.

**1990** Adams, Richard (ed.) *Antarctica: voices from the silent continent* Montagne Jeunesse Co., UK: 17.

Fat little Commerson's dolphins swim between sea-booted legs, escort the boat and all but run themselves aground in their impulse to communicate and join the party. The more the applause, the more they love it, and with their unique communications system, they seem to send for their friends to come and join in.

## common diving petrel

The small seabird *Pelecanoides urinatrix* (fam. Pelecanoididae), which is blackish above and whitish below. There are four species of **diving petrel** and it is almost impossible to distinguish these at sea. They spend a lot of time under water feeding; above the waves, their flight is distinctively low and whirring.

One subspecies breeds on the Tristan da Cunha group and Gough Island (see **flying pinnamin**), and one subspecies on Kerguelen and other islands (see **Kerguelen diving petrel**). See also **diving petrel**.

**1976** (Tristan da Cunha) Ryssen, W.J. van *The birds of the Tristan da Cunha group and Gough Island* Board of Extra-mural Studies, University of Cape Town: 23.

Common diving petrel *Pelecanoides urinatrix* Flying pinnamin.

**1987** National Parks and Wildlife Service, Tasmania *Macquarie Island nature reserve: visitor's handbook* NPWS, Hobart: 21.

The blue petrels, fairy prions, sooty-shearwaters and common diving petrels are established in moderate to low numbers.

## compact ice

Unnavigable **close pack ice**.

**1839** (63°S, 176°E) Balleny, John quoted by Enderby, Charles in *Journal of the Royal Society* IX: 519.

Continuing to the southward over the very spot where compact ice had forced the Russian navigator to alter his course.

**1900** Amundsen, R. in Cook, Frederick A. *Through the first Antarctic night 1898-1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 449.

The honour of the earliest acquaintance with the antarctic region belongs to James Cook, who, in 1774, reached as far as to 70°10' south latitude, where a stop was put to his progress by compact ice.

**1953** Scholes, Arthur *Seventh continent: saga of Australasian exploration in Antarctica 1895-1950* George Allen & Unwin, London: 210.

By January 26 the *Norsel's* position was 69 degs 4 mins S., 4 degs 20 min E., she was drifting in compact ice at about a half to one and a half knots towards the Greenwich meridian.

## Condition One US

(The classification of) A gale weather alert: specifically, winds of more than 63 miles/hour, **windchill** of more than -100°F, and visibility of less than 30 m (100 ft). Under this condition, people are confined to the buildings they are in at the time.

**1966** Baum, Allyn *Antarctica: the worst place in the world* Macmillan Co, NY: 54.

"Now hear this ... The condition is One ... The condition is One." "Condition One," in Navy antarctic parlance, means gale winds, blowing snow, no visibility, and all hands stay where they are, with no exceptions.

**1979** Kilian, Crawford *Icequake* Futura Publications, London: 12.

'Katabatic' winds raging down the glacier valleys from the polar plateau, had brought day after day of Condition One: blizzards, bitter cold and whiteouts.

**1993** *Scott Base newsletter* 3 (winter): 4.

All areas of Ross Island were at Condition One, and had been all day. This means no outside travel unless absolutely necessary and then there must be at least two people with frequent radio contact.

**1998** *www: Environmental News Network* 27 Jan.

There are three stages of weather alert. When you're in condition one, there's a whiteout. Everything's white; you can't see and the winds are really strong.

## conflict, the noun and attrib., Falkland Islands

The name Falkland Islanders give to the **Falklands War**.

**1997** Wheeler, Sara *Antarctica, the Falklands and South Georgia* Cadogan Books, London: 42.

Some local guides offer the '82 Tour, which includes visits to many conflict sites (including Goose Green and San Carlos).

**c1998** *Falkland Islands briefing* Falkland Islands Government Office, London: 6.

Since the end of the Conflict 1,400 mines have been cleared., some 18,000 remain.

## congelation ice noun phr. and attrib.

[From congelation the act of freezing, recorded in English since 1536 (NOED).]

One of the first stages of sea-ice formation: in calmer waters, the ice forms long, uniform needle-like crystals. This kind of ice occurs more typically in arctic than antarctic waters: in antarctic waters, it forms underneath frazil ice.

**1989** May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica* Child & Associates, Sydney: 41.



Sea water of average salt content freezes at about  $-1.8^{\circ}\text{C}$  ( $28.8^{\circ}\text{F}$ ), forming first as small, hexagonal crystals on the surface of the supercooled brine. In stable waters, the crystals become stacked in long needles of congelation ice.

**1989** Nichols, P.D. et al. in *Antarctic Science* 1(2): 137.

Platelet communities analysed at early stages of the congelation ice algal bloom (mid-November) showed lipid distribution profiles similar to those observed in the overlying congelation ice communities.

**1996** Stevens, Jane Ellen in *National Geographic* 189(5) May: 41. We did encounter what he'd found there [sc. the Ross Sea] on a previous expedition: a mysterious belt of mostly congelation ice — long columnar crystals more typical of the calmer Arctic Ocean than the small, irregular frazil crystals that predominate in churning antarctic waters.

### conger *Tristan da Cunha*

[Congers is recorded for a large saltwater eel, from c1300 on (NOED).]

A marine fish.

**1958** (Gough Island, 1955) Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 153.

In the pools along towards Dell Rocks there are seaweeds of many kinds ... Small fish also abound in these pools; most of them 'klippies', but with one or two of what the islanders call 'congers' as well.

### consolidated pack (ice)

Pack ice in which there is no space between ice floes, and which was impenetrable before the use of ice-breaking vessels. See also **eighth** and **tenth, field ice** and **unbroken pack**.

**1928** Wordie, J.M. in Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 380.

[glossary] Consolidated Pack. (So called by Sir Ernest Shackleton.) Field ice, or the heaviest form of pack. Entirely devoid of water spaces, and usually covered with Pressure (which see). One of the four principal forms of pack ice. Also called "Conglomerated Pack" by Shackleton.

**1956** Armstrong, Terence and Roberts, Brian in *Polar Record* 8(52) Jan: 5.

Consolidated pack ice: Pack ice in which the floes are frozen together. Ice cover 8/8ths.

### continent *noun*

[NOED notes that 'geographers have speculated on the existence of an Antarctic Continent'. Since the time of this writing, the continent has become much more than a notion.]

The **antarctic continent**. This polar region is underlain by rock and land — by contrast, the Arctic is an ice-covered ocean.

**30 Jan 1774** ( $65^{\circ}42'S$ ,  $99^{\circ}44'$ ) Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, in the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970), vol I: 270.

Although I had proved there was no continent but what must lie far to the South, there remained, nevertheless, room for very large islands in places wholly unexamined.

— **6 Feb 1775** vol II: 230.

We were in the latitude of  $58^{\circ}15'S$ ., longitude  $21^{\circ}34'$  West, and seeing neither land nor signs of any, I concluded that what we had seen, which I named Sandwich Land, was

either a group of islands, or else a point of the continent. For I firmly believe that there is a track [sic] of land near the pole which is the source of most of the ice that is spread over this vast Southern Ocean. I also think it probable that it extends farthest to the North opposite the Southern Atlantic and Indian Oceans; because ice was always found by us farther to the North in these oceans than any where else, which I judge could not be, if there were not land to the South; I mean land of considerable extent. For if we suppose that no such land exists, and that ice may be formed without it, it will follow of course that the cold ought to be every where nearly equal round the pole, as far as  $70^{\circ}$  or  $80^{\circ}$  of latitude, or so far as to be beyond the influence of any of the known continents; consequently we ought to see ice every where under the same parallel, or near it: and yet the contrary has been found. Very few ships have met with ice going round Cape Horn; and we saw but little below the sixtieth degree of latitude, in the Southern Pacific Ocean. Whereas in this ocean, between the meridian of  $40^{\circ}$  West and  $50^{\circ}$  or  $60^{\circ}$  East, we found ice as far North as  $51^{\circ}$ .

**1908** ( $77^{\circ}32'S$ ,  $166^{\circ}12'$  E) Shackleton, E.H., ed. *Aurora Australis* Printed by Joyce and Wild, Antarctica. 'Julienne soup' edition, Christchurch Museum: [79].

If it happens to be a fruit day, i.e. a day when for second course fruit takes the place of meat, the next order given is, "Bowls up and lick spoons", there being only about fifteen of each article on the Continent.

**1930** Richard Evelyn Byrd in *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 156.

A forced landing in the South Polar regions, far away from base, is more serious than in the Arctic, as the continent is lifeless.

**1969** Keneally, Thomas *The survivor* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 44.

He would have liked to revolutionize the staid business of Antarctic writing. But behind the desire was a more basic passion to see the continent.

**1991** *The professional. The federal industrial news of the POA [Canberra]* 1 (Oct): 2.

Australia .. has had permanent stations on the subantarctic since 1947 and on the continent since 1954.

### continental

Belonging to the area of the **antarctic continent** (sense b).

**1996** Carroll, Valerie *United States Antarctic Program participant guide* National Science Foundation, Arlington Virginia: i.

This guide ... covers both the Continental and Peninsula areas.

### continental ice

Ice formed over land.

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 384.

[glossary] Ice Sheet. A convenient term used for any large area of ice, especially land ice, such as Continental Ice or Highland Ice.

**1953** Scholes, Arthur *Seventh continent: saga of Australasian exploration in Antarctica 1895–1950* George Allen & Unwin, London: 16.

We know to-day that the Antarctic continent is covered by the largest mass of continental ice in the world, forming an almost unbroken ice-dome larger in size than the whole of Europe. This immense ice-sheet, maintained by snow accretion, is moving outward in all directions.



## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

**1957** (Admiral Byrd Bay) Sullivan, Walter *Quest for a continent* Secker & Warburg, London: 334.

In all directions from the head of the bay the surface sloped up to the plateau in contours so gentle that they resembled those of a land feature, rather than one formed of ice. It was impossible to guess where the salty bay ice left off and the fresh-water continental ice began.

### continental ice cap

The antarctic ice cap: see **antarctic ice sheet**.

**1915** (Commonwealth Bay) Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911-1914* William Heinemann, London, vol I: 110.

The ores were present in small quantities, but gave promise of larger bodies in the vicinity and indicated the probability of mineral wealth beneath the continental ice-cap.

**1936** Byrd, Richard Evelyn *Antarctic discovery* Putnam, London: 280.

The thickness of the continental ice cap is absolutely unknown.

**1964** Helm, A.S. and Miller, J.H. *Antarctica: the story of the New Zealand party of the Trans-Antarctic expedition* R.E. Owen, Government Printer, Wellington: 38.

The earlier idea of proving whether Antarctica is one continent or two would now be examined by means of seismic shots to determine the depth of the continental ice cap.

**1995** *The Advertiser [Adelaide]* 25 Mar: 7.

The 1sc. ice] shelves help insulate the continental ice cap from warmer weather. While few scientists believe the entire ice cap can melt, even its partial disappearance could prove catastrophic.

### CONUS US

[Acronym from 'continental United States'. The term in full is recorded in other parts of the USA remote from the main populations: see, for example, DALashE.]

Continental United States, as distinguished from its antarctic bases.

**1996** Steele, Diana in *University of Chicago Magazine* Feb: 33.

Word of advice to women: Leave your hips in CONUS! (Antarctic lingo for "continental United States").

**1997** Cox, Jack in *Denver Post* 23 Nov: 6E.

Support workers ... receive room and board, medical care and transportation to and from anywhere in the continental United States, or 'CONUS,' the military acronym by which it's known on the ice.

### convergence, the

The antarctic convergence.

**1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 38.

The sudden mixing which occurs at the Convergence is enough to kill or incapacitate many tiny animals and plants of the plankton .. which cannot tolerate rapid changes in temperature or salinity of their environment.

**1993** Fiennes, Ranulph *Mind over matter: the epic crossing of the Antarctic continent* Sinclair-Stevenson, London: 279.

The Convergence is a turbulent area where the colder southern water sinks below the warmer waters of the Atlantic, Indian and Pacific Oceans.

### cookhouse Falkland Islands

[Cook-house for a building or room where cooking is done, is recorded in British English from 1795 (NOED).]

Eating quarters for single men and labourers; sometimes also sleeping quarters.

**1994** Simpson, Tim *Cooking the Falkland Island way* Peregrine Publishing, Bangor: 10.

I should perhaps explain here the terms 'cookhouse' and 'galley' as they are used in the Falkland Islands. All settlements have a cookhouse where the single men and shearing gangs eat, and in some places, sleep. In a few larger settlements they sleep in a separate bunkhouse. The cooking for these men is done in the 'galley' as the kitchen of the cookhouse is always called.

### corona Also auroral corona

A form of aurora: see **southern aurora**.

**c1928** Kidson, Edward *Meteorology. British Antarctic Expedition 1907-1909: reports on the scientific investigations* Government Printer, Melbourne: 59.

A corona was seen on one occasion. This was a brilliant double corona, the diameters of the red rings being 6° and 12° respectively.

**1949** Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 200.

The cosmic ray scientists were up for long periods, noting the structure, the rays, arcs, draperies, bands and the coronas. Other relevant details, such as the altitude and bearing of the centre, and the ends of the patterns were entered in the auroral observations.

**10 Apr 1991** Greet, Pene and Price, Gina (1995) *Frost bytes* Doubleday, Sydney: 198.

I went straight outside to see the most fantastic auroral corona [when the aurora is straight overhead and the rays extend back to a point directly above you] I have seen.

### coscoroba swan Falkland Islands

The white swan.

**1913** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 22(4) (1 Apr): 61.

White or Coscoroba Swan ... closed season 1 Oct - last Feb.

**1988** Madge, Steve and Burn, Hilary *Wildfowl: an identification guide to the ducks, geese and swans of the world* Christopher Helm, London: 151.

Coscoroba swan ... Generally shy and wary ... Breeds over southern South America from Cape Horn to approximately 45°S.

### crabbie Also crab

A crabeater seal.

**1961** *Falkland Islands Dependencies Survey Periodical Report* no 111 (Oct): 1.

Both Weddell and Crab pups were seen and photographed.

**1989** *British Antarctic Survey Glossary of FIDS terms* British Antarctic Survey, Cambridge (unpublished): 111.

Crabbie: Crabeater seal. *Lobodon carcinophagus*.

**crabeater seal** Also **crab-eating seal**, and often shortened to **crabeater**

[Crabeater is both the scientific and common name for the seal. The scientific name *carcinophagus* is from the Greek *καρκίνος* crab + *φαγός* eating — though in fact it is krill, not crabs, which the seals eat.]

The seal *Lobodon carcinophagus* (fam. Phocidae), which — as the quotations show — eats mainly krill, not crabs. This pale-bodied large seal is likely to be the first seal seen by visitors to Antarctica aboard ship: it is the most

abundant seal, and spends much of its time on floes in the **pack ice**. It is also called a **crabbie**, and was formerly called the **white seal**. Adults grow to about 2.6 m (8 ft 6 in) and 225 kg (500 lb). See also **lobodon**.

**1853** Zoologie par Mm Hombron et Jacquinot *Voyage au pôle sud et dans L'Océanie sur les corvettes L'Astrolabe et La Zélée; exécuté par ordre du roi pendant les années 1837–1838–1839–1840, tome troisième* Gide et J. Baudry, Paris.

Il se nourrit principalement de crevettes, ce qui donne une coloration rouge à ses excréments. C'est cette circonstance des moures de cette espèce qui a déterminé nos voyageurs à lui donner la dénomination qu'elle porte, dénomination que nous espérons bien lui voir conserver.]

**1894** Bruce, William in Burn Murdoch, W.G. *From Edinburgh to the Antarctic* Longmans, Green and Co, London: 359.

The so-called Crab-eating Seal or White Antarctic Seal (*Stenorhynchus carcinophaga*).

**15 Oct 1898** Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 368.

All of the seals which have been seen since the months of April and May are crab-eaters (*Lobodon Carcinophaga*). They seem to travel in groups of two to ten.

**1906** Rudmose Brown, R.N., Mossman, RC and Pirie, J.H. Harvey *The voyage of the "Scotia", being the record of a voyage of exploration in Antarctic Seas by Three of the Staff* William Blackwood and Sons, Edinburgh: 228.

A few specimens of the crab-eating seal (*Lobodon carcinophagus*) were seen. This seal is more typically found on the pack-ice of the open. Why it is called crab-eating is rather a puzzle, as Antarctic crabs are almost as rare as Iceland snakes. Its diet is chiefly the small crustacea which swarm about the ice-floes.

**10 Dec 1910** Griffith Taylor, in Hanley, Wayne, ed. (1978) *The Griffith Taylor collection: diaries and letters of a geographer in Antarctica* Geography Department, University of New England, Armidale: 30.

The seals were crab eaters — so called because they wouldn't know a *crab* if they saw it. They live on *Euphausia* a shrimpy beast about an inch long. Fancy feeding 9 foot odd of him. They have huge ordinary teeth but they are only used for straining off water etc. and are perfectly wasted except for occasional fish ... The seals were drab in color [sic] and their chief characteristic was their floppiness.

**1929** Matthews, L. Harrison in *Discovery Reports* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London, vol 1: 253.

In December 1926 and January 1927 the skeletons of three Crab-eaters were found in Stromness Bay, one in Husvik Harbour and two in Stromness Harbour. They were all near the beach and had evidently hauled out and died during the previous winter. They were all adult. Though the true home of this species is among the ice-pack far to the south, it will thus be seen that occasional stragglers reach South Georgia, this island probably being at the northern limit of its range in these regions, though further west it has been recorded from Patagonia and Rio de la Plata.

**1957** Anderson, W. Ellery *Expedition south* Evans Brothers, London: 112.

To bring back a couple of seals after several hours hunting was something of an achievement, as a good-sized crabeater represented about sixty dog feeds.

**1958** Bursley, Jack *Antarctic night* Longman, Green & Co., London: 47.

Crab-eating seals basked in the sun on pans of ice, looking up at us lazily and apparently without fear.

**1991** *Science* 253 (5 July): 66.

Almost 90% of the Antarctic seal biomass is composed of the crabeater seal (*Lobodon carcinophagus*).

**cranberry** noun and attrib., Falkland Islands and Tristan da Cunha

[Extended use of cranberry, which has been used for the fruits of *Vaccinium* since 1672 (NOED).]

The evergreen shrub *Empetrum rubrum* (or *E. nigrum* var. *rubrum*; fam. Empetraceae), and the edible red berries of the plant. It is also known on Tristan da Cunha as **crowberry**, and is generally now known in the Falkland Islands as **diddle-dee**.

**27 Dec 1774** (Tierra del Fuego) Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, In the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970), vol II: 187.

We found plenty of a berry, which we called the cranberry, because they are nearly of the same colour, size, and shape. It grows on a bushy plant, has a bitterish taste, rather insipid; but may be eaten either raw or in tarts, and is used as food by the natives.

**1829** (Falkland Islands) Barnard, Captain Charles H. *A narrative of the sufferings and adventures of Captain Charles H. Barnard in a voyage round the world, during the years 1812, 1813, 1814, 1815, & 1816* Printed for the author by J. Lindon, New York: 48.

With great labour we procured some withered grass and cranberry vines from under the cliffs.

**1857** (Falkland Islands) Snow, W. Parker *A two years' cruise off Tierra del Fuego, the Falkland Islands, Patagonia, and in the River Plate: a narrative of life in the Southern Seas* Longman, Brown, Green, Longmans and Roberts, London, vol II: 364.

A small cranberry plant, with an insipid berry, was abundant in some districts.

**1926** (Tristan da Cunha) Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 110.

Children go to Plantations to pick cranberries to make pudding or pie.

**1958** Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 152.

'Crowberry', as I have called it, is a species of a heath-like plant which creeps along the ground and bears many small red berries. It belongs to the genus *Empetrum* (we have an English crowberry of this genus), and is known on Tristan by the islanders as 'cranberry'.

**1990** Rogers, Edward in *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 7 (Sept): 10. In season we had for a sweet some of the cranberries that grow wild on the island.

## crawfish

[Variant of crayfish, initially a general name for all larger edible crustaceans (NOED, a 1400–50). In South Africa and the US, crawfish is the usual name. It applies in South Africa (DSAFrE) to the rock lobster *Jasus lalandii*, also known there as a crayfish, and the name probably came from there to the Tristan region.]

1. *Tristan da Cunha*. The rock lobster *Jasus tristani* (fam. Palinuridae), which is found in shallow marine waters (0–200 m, 0–660 ft) of the Tristan da Cunha island group. The lobster was fished for local consumption until about 1949, and has been fished for export since; it has also been called **Tristan crawfish**, and **rock lobster**.

**17 May 1906** Barrow, K.M. (1910) *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 38.

Crawfish, which answer to our lobsters, seem to be plentiful and are quite a treat. Rebekah the other evening caught about a bushel, and says she has caught as many as five bushels at a time.



**1964** Jenkins, Geoffrey *A grue of ice* Fontana Books, London: 21. "When I was twelve," he said, "we nearly all died of starvation on Tristan. You know how it is — without fish, we couldn't live. The kelp got some sort of disease and the crawfish disappeared."

**1987** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 1 (Sept) insert: [2].

The surrounding seas are rich in fish, providing Tristan da Cunha with one of its main sources of revenue — crawfish, which is caught, deep frozen and shipped via South Africa to the United States, where it is much appreciated as a delicacy.

2. The related *J. paulensis*, a rock lobster restricted to shallow (0–60 m, 0–200 ft) marine waters of St Paul and Amsterdam Islands, southern Indian Ocean, commercially fished sporadically since 1928.

**1961** Holdgate, M.W. and Wace, N.M. in *Polar Record* 10(68) May: 482.

île St Paul was the centre of a fishing industry from 1843 until 1853 and intermittently thereafter until 1914. In 1927 a crawfish fishery was based on the island, and about 120 people took up residence; after forty deaths from beri-beri and scurvy in 1931 the venture was abandoned in 1932.

**crawfishing** *verbal noun*

The catching of **crawfish**.

**1989** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 4 (Mar): 3.

The main activity on Tristan was crawfishing. This was undertaken by a fishing company based in those days in Cape Town, in which the Commonwealth Development Corporation had an interest. They ran two boats from Cape Town which fished the local waters during the summer using some of the Islanders as fishermen. The rest were Cape Coloureds.

**crèche** *noun*

[Specialised use of the French *crèche* a nursery for infants, recorded in English since 1854 (NOED).]

A gathering of **penguin** chicks, for protection against the weather and predators. The penguins which characteristically form crèches are **Adelie**, **chinstrap**, **emperor**, **gentoo**, **king** and **rockhopper**.

**1919** (Cape Adare) Levick, Murray in *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* XXXIX(ccxli): 67.

When the chicks are about a fortnight old a change takes place in the social arrangements of the rookery, and, in place of the individual care bestowed by each couple upon their own offspring, the chicks are gradually massed into small groups or crèches, each group being guarded by a few birds who keep a careful look-out to prevent their charges straying and so falling prey to the ever-watchful Skuas, while the rest of the parents go off to the water to procure food.

**1948** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* 69(1) 20 Oct: 5. The most conspicuous bird species is the Snares Penguin .. in which the young formed crèches under the care of a few parents.

**1954** (Marion Island) Rand, R.W. in *The Ibis* 96(2): 182.

On occasional visits to the rookeries, I witnessed the start of the casual creche-groupings.

**1968** Sparks, John and Soper, Tony *Penguins* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 89.

As the young penguins grow and become mobile they may assemble into small groups, the yellow-eyed species will collect on the pathways leading to the sea. These aggregations of young birds still dependent on their parents are a well-developed feature of rookery life of some penguin species,

and are known as crèches; however the term crèche does not cover the chance gatherings of juveniles to be found in .. socially-breeding birds such as gannets or gulls. Breeding emperor, king, adélie, chinstrap, gentoo and rockhopper penguins — in fact all those living in the more southerly latitudes — form these nurseries, but none of the burrow-nesting *Spheniscus* or *Eudyptula* species do so; nor do the more temperate or subtropical 'crested' penguins (*Eudyptes* species).

**1990** Nagle, Robin *Penguins* Mallard Press, New York: 29.

After about three weeks, the chicks are old enough to leave the nest, but they can't fend for themselves. This is the beginning of the crèche stage, when the young chicks gather together in one part of the rookery. Some researchers say the crèche is like a nursery, with adult relatives watching over the chicks. Other researchers believe the chicks are on their own, and that no adult protects them. Certainly the biggest advantage of the crèche is protection from cold and from skuas, the two biggest dangers to the young birds.

**crèche** *verb*

(Of penguins) To gather in a **crèche** (*noun*).

**1985** (South Orkneys) Lishman, G.S. in *The Ibis* 127(1) Jan: 96.

The crèching age and crèche size of Adélie and Chinstrap chicks may also be a consequence of the timing of breeding ... Some Chinstrap chicks crèched as late as 36 days old.

**1990** Marchant, S. and Higgins, P.J., co-ordinators *Handbook of Australian, New Zealand and Antarctic birds* Oxford University Press, Melbourne, vol 1A: 144.

The possible extinction of [sc. emperor penguin] colony on Stancomb-Wills Promontory probably caused by disappearance of glacier tongue, which sheltered birds against winds. Predators: Not important before fledging, except perhaps giant-petrels *Macronectes* spp, because chicks defend themselves when crèched.

**1996** (Macquarie Island) *Icy News: Antarctic Division staff newsletter* 1 Mar: [3].

The first Lusi [sc. Lusitania Bay] penguin chicks are creching with both the male and female out to feed the offspring.

**crested caracara** *Falkland Islands*

The bird of prey *Caracara plancus*: see **carancho**.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 26.

Three birds of prey also attracted condemnation from sheep farmers. The Striated Caracara, Crested Caracara and the Turkey Vulture were classified as vermin in 1908, when an Ordinance for the 'Destruction of Birds of Prey' authorized the payment of four pence for each Turkey Vulture beak and two pence for each beak of Crested and Striated Caracaras. All three species were condemned for their attacks on fallen sheep and new-born lambs, though the amount of damage they do remains a matter of debate.

**1994** *Falkland Islands Government Office Introduction to the Falkland Islands* Falkland Islands Government Office, London: 17.

Predators are Cassin's falcon (a race of the Peregrine), red-backed hawk and crested caracara.

**crested duck** *Falkland Islands*

The duck *Lophonetta specularioides specularioides*: see **grey duck** sense 2.

**1910** Cobb, Arthur F. *Wildlife in the Falkland Islands* Gowans & Gray, London: 58.

[caption] Nest and eggs of grey or crested duck ... The Grey Duck is very plentiful in many parts of the islands.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

**1917** Beck, Rollo H. in *The American Museum Journal* XVII(7) Nov: 439.

[caption] Crested and teal ducks, and the brant and upland geese swim about together well within camera range in some ponds on Bleaker Island.

**1924** Vallentin, Rupert in Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands. With notes on the natural history by Rupert Vallentin* Clarendon Press, Oxford: 320.

*Anas cristata* .. 'Crested duck' ... This species flies well, and, as those living in many of the fjords are good eating and make excellent shooting, a good many fell to my gun.

**1994** Falkland Islands Government Office *Introduction to the Falkland Islands* FIGO, London: 17.

The Falkland flightless steamer duck or "logger duck" can be found in coastal areas along with Kelp geese and Crested duck.

### crested penguin

A penguin of the genus *Eudyptes* (a **eudyptid penguin**); sometimes specifically a **rockhopper**. See also **erect-crested**, **Macaroni**, **royal** and **Snares penguins**.

**1806** (Amsterdam Island) Barrow, John *A voyage to Cochinchina, in the years 1792 and 1793* Oxford University Press facs, Kuala Lumpur (1975): 147.

During our short stay on shore we obtained the following birds: *Diomedea Demersa*, the White Albatross; *Diomedea Exulans*, the Brown Albatross; *Aptenodyta* [sic] *Chrysocome*, Crested Penguin [etc.].

**1817** (Tristan da Cunha) Carmichael, Captain Dugald in *Transactions of the Linnean Society of London* (1818) 12(2): 497.

The Crested Penguin (*Aptenodytes chrysocoma*) conceals itself among the long grass, and in the bottoms of the ravines where they open upon the shore. Here they assemble in countless multitudes, and keep up a moaning noise which can be heard at a great distance.

**1831** (49°03'56"S, northwest of South Georgia) Bellinghausen, Thaddeus in Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. (1945) *The voyage of Captain Bellinghausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819-1821* Hakluyt Society, London, vol 1: 86.

During the day we saw several albatrosses, a number of pestrushki and crested penguins or jumpers.

Footnote: These must have been the Macaroni penguin (*Eudyptes chrysolophus*).

**1848** Gould, John *The birds of Australia* The author, 20 Broad St, Golden Square, London, vol VII: pl. 83.

*Eudyptes chrysocome*. Crested Penguin. For a fine example of this singular Penguin I am indebted to my friend Ronald C. Gunn., Esq., of Launceston, Van Diemen's Land, who informed me that it had been washed on shore on the northern coast of that island after a heavy gale. It is less plentiful in that part of the world than in many others, for although it is occasionally found on the shores of Van Diemen's Land and the south coast of Australia, its great strongholds are the islands of Amsterdam, St. Paul's, and Tristan d'Acunha.

**1879** (Kerguelen Island) Sharpe, R Bowdler in *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: 103.

They [sc. Sheathbills, *Chionis minor*] are also very assiduous in their attendance upon colonies of Shags and Crested Penguins, whose eggs they greedily devour.

**1888** Buller, Sir Walter Lawry *A history of the birds of New Zealand. 2nd edn* Published by the author, Westminster London, vol II: 287.

*Eudyptes pachyrhynchus*. (Crested Penguin.) ... A streak of pale yellow with points of black passes over the eyes, widening backwards and extending to the hind head, where the

feathers are lengthened, but scarcely to a degree deserving the name of a crest.

**1902** Hutton, Captain F.W. in *The Emu* II(1): 2.

Sir John Murray, of the *Challenger* Expedition, says that a Crested Penguin placed in a basket and submerged was dead in a minute and a half. But this can hardly be taken as a fair test.

**1952** Serventy, D.L. and Whittel, H.M. in *The Emu* 52(1) Feb: 63.

The three species involved in the composite description [sc. of Forster 1781, Crested Penguin] were the birds now commonly known as the Thick-billed Penguin (*Eudyptes pachyrhynchus* Gray, 1845), the Macaroni Penguin (*Eudyptes chrysolophus* Brandt, 1837), and the Crested or Rockhopper Penguin.

**1985** Stonehouse, Bernard in Bonner, W.N. and Walton, D.W.H., eds *Key environments: Antarctica* Pergamon Press, Oxford: 281.

*The crested penguins* Macaroni and rockhopper penguins are the Antarctic representatives of the genus *Eudyptes*. Both wear the distinctive livery of the genus — blue-black dorsal feather merging to coal-black neck and head, mahogany bill and vivid yellow crests that are shaken and flourished during courtship.

**1990** Nagle, Robin *Penguins* Mallard Press, New York: 55.

Most of the crested penguins, however, share an odd reproduction habit. They usually lay two eggs, but the first is always smaller than the second, and is discarded shortly after incubation begins. The second egg will be nurtured to hatching. No one is quite sure why this happens.

**1994** Cunningham, Duncan M. and Moors, Philip J. in *The Emu* 94: 27.

Crested penguins (genus *Eudyptes*) are a characteristic element of seabird faunas in the Southern Ocean.

### crevasse noun and attrib.

[From the French crevace a crevice, recorded in English in northern hemisphere contexts since 1823 (NOED).]

A fissure in glacier or shelf ice (in Antarctica or other glaciated regions), the main physical hazard other than the weather in overland travel. Crevasses can be either open or covered, and are also called **slots**.

**23 Dec 1892** Burn Murdoch, W.G. (1894) *From Edinburgh to the Antarctic* Longmans, Green and Co, London: 223.

I thought the faint lines I could trace on the snow might be crevasses.

**1898** Arctowski, Henryk in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 476.

Along the coast there are deep crevasses in the ice, so that the cliffs have all the appearance of an icefall.

**1916** (Hut Point, McMurdo Sound) Doorly, Captain Gerald S. *The voyages of the 'Morning'* Smith, Elder & Co., London: 105.

Poor Wilson and Shackleton were confined to their bunks, so severely had the scurvy served them. The former's leg was badly swollen, and had not been improved by a fall in a crevasse.

**1942** Madigan, C.T. in Mawson, Douglas *Geographical narrative and cartography. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911-14. Scientific reports series A vol 1* Government Printer, Sydney: 171.

The colour of a crevasse is indeed beautiful, but so much depends on the point of view, the best position, in my opinion, being face-downwards on a level surface, and attached to an alpine rope with several strong men at the other end.

**1955** (Heard Island) Dalziel, Ken *Penguin road* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 36.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

Big Ben's rugged form is covered in glaciers that commence near its summit, nearly 10,000 feet above the station. Where they meet the sea, some of them are almost two miles wide. These glaciers often have wide cracks across them above trenches of great depth known as crevasses. Some of these crevasses are 300 feet deep and were caused by the irregular movement of the mountain's great sheet of ice over the rough underlying rocks.

**1957** Anderson, W. Ellery *Expedition south* Evans Brothers, London: 161.

I had already formulated a crevasse emergency plan which was to be put into operation the moment the need for it occurred. If a man fell down a crevasse, a tent was to be put up immediately and the Primus started to boil water for tea. Meanwhile, if I was not the unlucky one, I would go down with the others lowering me on a rope.

**1993** Fiennes, Ranulph *Mind over matter: the epic crossing of the Antarctic continent* Sinclair-Stevenson, London: 66.

This does not stop ignorant media reporters (who have never travelled through crevasse fields) ... from denouncing polar travellers of today as cosseted joyriders.

### crevasse bridge *See* crevasse lid

### crevassed *adjective*

1. Plentifully supplied with **crevasses**.

**1908** (77°32'S, 166°12'E) Shackleton, E.H., ed. *Aurora Australis* Printed by Joyce and Wild, Antarctica. 'Julienne soup' edn, Christchurch Museum: [28].

The only party who had ascended the foothills of Erebus had found their way barred by heavily crevassed ice. That party consisted of E.E. Joyce, F. Wild, and A. Pillbeam, of the National Antarctic Expedition of 1901–04.

**1922** Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Picador, London: 272.

On our right was a drop of great depth with crevasses at the bottom, on our left was a smaller drop also crevassed. We crawled along, and I can tell you it was exciting work in the more than half darkness.

**6 Nov 1934** Byrd, Richard Evelyn (1936) *Antarctic discovery* Putnam, London: 293.

Got through crevassed area extending about 6 miles O.K.

**1991** Crossthwaite, Peter in *Pal Digest* 1(4) August: 1.

Hauling heavy load through soft snow, over dangerously crevassed glaciers, and across thin broken sea ice, the dogs at times, through desperation, became sustenance for their handlers or for the rest of their team.

2. Trapped in a crevasse; **slotted**.

**1995** McCormack, Dave in *ANARE news* 76 (Spring–Summer): 41.

[caption] Weasel crevassed on the 1956 southern journey of Bill Bewsher.

### crevasse detector

[The 1995 quotation uses the term humorously.]

A device used when travelling for detecting the presence of a crevasse.

**1958** Barber, Noel *The white desert* Hodder and Staughton, London: 101.

Fuchs was not equipped with simple but fairly efficient crevasse detectors that could have saved much time on the trail. These had been developed by the Americans (who had also developed Fuchs' Sno-cats) and consisted of a mechanical-electrical device. As Dufek tells it in *Operation Deepfreeze*: "A

plate attached to a vehicle by a 12-foot pole rides ahead in the snow; another plate is towed behind. The plates are connected to make an electrical circuit. When the tractor travels over solid ice or snow, the voltmeter has a constant reading. When the leading plate passes over a snow bridge, the air in the crevasse changes that resistance of the circuit, and the voltmeter fluctuates, with enough warning to allow the driver to stop short of disaster."

**1995** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* 14(3) Mar: 25.

The Russian over-snow vehicles were huge when compared with ours. 'Yes, they are very good,' they boasted, 'they are the most powerful crevasse-detectors in the world. Ha! Ha!' We liked their humour.

### crevasse lid *Also* crevasse bridge

A thin and often fragile cover of snow over a crevasse, sometimes making the crevasse invisible.

**24 Jan 1911** (nr Cape Evans) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912: an account of Scott's last expedition* Blandford Press, London: 97.

They [sc. the horses] were constantly putting their feet through crevasse lids and just not getting in.

**1958** Barber, Noel *The white desert* Hodder and Staughton, London: 87.

The sun had so softened many crevasse bridges that they could no longer bear the weight of the Sno-cats.

**1958** (Vahsel Bay) Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund *The crossing of Antarctica: the Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955–58* Cassell & Co, London: 36.

On the way down to the sea ice the tractor again broke through some crevasse lids and in the evening a party went out to build wooden bridges over the open holes.

**1982** Ledingham, Rod *ANARE dog drivers manual* Antarctic Division, Department of Science and the Environment: 76.

A crevasse bridge will often make a hollow booming sound when struck or the snow under the weight of the dogs will break.

### crevasse probe

A long thin tool for probing a suspected crevassed surface.

**1968** Herbert, Wally *A world of men: exploration in Antarctica* Eyre & Spottiswoode, London: 34.

To the right hung alpine ropes and oiled ice-axes, crevasse probes, dog-whips and centre-traces.

**1982** Ledingham, Rod *ANARE dog drivers manual* Antarctic Division, Department of Science and the Environment: 78.

Four sharp prods with an ice axe point of crevasse probe/ice chisel usually considered reasonably safe.

### crevassing

An area where crevasses are plentiful.

**1955** (Marguerite Bay) Walton, E.W. Kevin *Two years in the Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 79.

In spite of the belts of heavy crevassing that had to be avoided, the first ten miles of North-East Glacier were relatively simple.

**1993** Budd, Bill in Clark, Linda and Wishart, Elspeth 66° *South* Queen Victoria Museum, Launceston: 54.

The dogs were very useful for the Vanderford Glacier expedition where there's a lot of crevassing, and the route down towards the glacier has to skirt the crevassed areas.

**crocodile fish** Also **crocodile dragon fish**

[Crocodile, probably from the long snout and plentiful teeth of the fish. Some of the icefish have names which translate into English from other languages as crocodile fish: the **South Georgia icefish** is draco cocodrilo in Spanish and crocodile de Georgie in French, and the **blackfin icefish** is krokodilovaya belokrovka in Russian.]

A fish of one of the Antarctic fish families of the order Nototheniformes, particularly a long-nosed, sharp-toothed fish of the fam. Bathydraconidae or Channichthyidae: see **channichthyid** and **dragonfish**. See also **nototheniiform**.

**1950** (South Georgia) Saunders, Alfred A *camera in Antarctica* Winchester Publications, London: 15.

At times there were plenty of fish in Grytviken which could easily be caught without bait. One fish which was not popular was the crocodile fish. It had an enormous gaping mouth much larger than the rest of its body, the whole of which was covered with slime.

**1971** (South Georgia) Brown, Nan *Antarctic housewife* Hutchinson of Australia, Melbourne: 44.

Fish, though plentiful, fell into two types. One, which we called a 'Crocodile fish', looked so repulsive that no one ever ate it.

**1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 52.

[caption] A heap of crocodile fish, *Priondraco evansi*.

**1993** Miller, Richard Gordon A *history and atlas of the fishes of the Antarctic ocean* Foresta Institute for Ocean and Mountain Studies, Carson City, Nevada: xix.

A viewer in such a complex would get to see Antarctic cods, crocodilefishes, plunder-fishes, snailfishes, and icefishes.

**1996** Soper, Tony and Scott, Dafila *Antarctica: a guide to the wildlife* Bradt Publications, Chalfont St Peter: 27.

[caption] Crocodile Dragon Fish *Parachaenichthys georgianus*.

**crowberry** noun and attrib., *Tristan da Cunha* and (historical) *Falkland Islands*

[Crowberry has been recorded in English for the same plant (of Europe and North America) and its fruit since 1597 (NOED).]

The shrub *Empetrum rubrum*: see **cranberry**.

**1879** (Tristan da Cunha) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 110.

The cliffs have a scanty covering of green, derived mainly from grasses, sedges, mosses and ferns, with darker patches of the peculiar trees of the island (*Phyllica arborea*), and the crowberry (*Empetrum nigrum* var. *rubrum*).

**1894** (Falkland Islands) Burn Murdoch, W.G. *From Edinburgh to the Antarctic* Longmans, Green and Co, London: 173.

It was not heather on which we reposed, but *Empetrum rubrum*, which is much the same at a distance, and is a sort of crowberry, and has little red fruit.

**23 May 1906** Barrow, K.M. (1910) *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 41.

There is a little berry (the crowberry) they eat here which I think rather nasty.

— **25 Dec 1906**: 106.

Our dinner was provided for us, the Greens sending stuffed sucking-pig and others crowberry open tarts.

**1935** Christensen, Lars, transl. fr Norwegian by Jayne, E.M.G. *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 252.

At higher elevations the southern variety of the crowberry (*Empetrum nigrum* var. *rubrum*) is abundant.

**1940** Brander, J. *Tristan da Cunha 1506–1902* Allen & Unwin, London: 18.

Other plants are .. the crowberry, producing an insipid red berry, a wild celery [etc.].

**1967** Pondus-Bøgerne, Lohse, transl fr Danish by Falk-Rønne, Arne *Back to Tristan* Allen & Unwin, London: 13.

Palm ferns, crowberries and the long tough grass called tussock are spread in a huge carpet against the bare rock, which is divided by huge deep clefts. Behind is the volcano, about 7,800 feet high.

**crowned rockcod**

The marine fish *Trematomus scotti* (fam. Nototheniidae), also known as **blackfin notothen**. It grows to about 16 cm (6 in) long, and is found in waters all round Antarctica, including the South Shetland and South Orkney Islands. See also **rock cod**.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 384.

*Trematomus scotti* ... Crowned rockcod ... Circumpolar species ... Though this species seems to be one of the most abundant circum-Antarctic species, it is not yet commercially exploited.

**crow's nest**

[The crow's nest was designed for polar conditions, and is recorded earlier in arctic usage (from 1818: NOED).]

A lookout on the main or foremast of a ship, enclosed from the weather (often orig. a barrel), and with a trapdoor for access from beneath.

**1 Jan 1841** McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 146.

During the first watch I went up to the crow's nest.

**1894** Burn Murdoch, W.G. *From Edinburgh to the Antarctic* Longmans, Green and Co, London: 209.

The crow's nest was sent aloft to-day: It is a cask, about five feet deep, painted white, with iron clamps that clasp on to the main-topgallant mast. In the bottom there is a trapdoor. To get into the nest you climb up a Jacob's ladder ... Round the top of the tub there is a small iron balustrade, on which a screen runs, so as to shelter the watcher from the wind.

**1925** Hurley, Captain Frank *Argonauts of the South* G.P. Putnam's Sons, NY: 42.

Mertz, aloft in the crow's nest, was in high ecstasy.

**1997** Edmonds, Jane, ed. *Oxford atlas of exploration* Reed, London: 187.

The "crow's nest" was a special feature of polar ships.

**Crozet Islands**

The Crozets, a group of about 20 mountainous islands, lie in the southern Indian Ocean at 46°27'S, 52°E. They were sighted by the French explorer Marc-Joseph Marion Dufresne on 21 January 1772; he claimed possession of them for France, and named after his second-in-command Jules Mane Crozet. The islands are part of the French Southern and Antarctic Lands.

**Crozet Island cormorant**

The black and white **blue-eyed shag** *Phalacrocorax melanogenis* (fam. Phalacrocoracidae), which lives on the Crozet Islands, and probably on Marion and Prince Edward Islands.

**1937** Falla, R.A. *Birds. BANZARE reports series B, vol 2* Hassell Press, Adelaide: 219.

*Phalacrocorax (Leucocarbo) albiventer melanogenis* (Blyth) .. Crozet Island Cormorant ... Cormorants flew out and around the ship from all the islands of the Crozet group passed by the *Discovery*.

### cruciger dolphin

[The dolphin was described and named in 1824 by French naturalists Jean Rene Quoy and Joseph-Paul Gaimard: they called it *Delphinus cruciger* from the Latin *crucis* cross and *gero* bear, referring to the striking black-and-white-markings on its sides. The Spanish call this dolphin *delfin cruzado*.]

The dolphin *Lagenorhynchus cruciger*: see **hourglass dolphin**.

**[14 Nov 1912]** Murphy, Robert Cushman (1948) *Logbook for Grace Robert Hale Ltd*, London: 130.

Porpoises of a new kind played across the cutwater. They were stunning creatures, marked with broad longitudinal bands of white, and had high and graceful back fins. Most porpoises are not known well enough to possess common names. These matched the picture, in True's book, of a species called *Lagenorhynchus cruciger*.]

**1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 135.

The *cruciger dolphin*, first noted and named in 1824, was never fully examined until a specimen — only the fourth on record — was caught by whalers and sent to the British Museum (Natural History) in London in 1960.

### cruelize verb, Tristan da Cunha

[DARE records *cruelize* meaning to treat brutally, or torture, in the New England region of the US, where the word is now old-fashioned.]

To tease or annoy.

**1957** Booy, D.M. *Rock of exile: a narrative of Tristan da Cunha* J.M. Dent & Sons, London: 92.

We often heard a mother's voice shrilling to her children the highly moral precept: 'Don't cruelize the cat.'

### culminated albatross

[The species name *culminatus* was given to the bird by English naturalist John Gould from the colour of the bird's culmen (part of the upper bill): see 1843 quotation.]

The albatross *Diomedea chrysostoma*: see **grey-headed albatross**.

**[1843]** Gould, John in *Proceedings of the Zoological Society of London* 107.

An Albatross nearly allied to, but larger than, *Diomedea chlororhyncha*, and which also differs from that species in the colouring of the culmen, he proposed to designate *Diomedea culminata*.]

**1848** Gould, John *The birds of Australia* The author, 20 Broad St, Golden Square, London, vol VII: pl. 41.

*Diomedea culminata*, Gould. Culminated Albatros ... This species appears to be more plentiful in the Australian seas than elsewhere.

**1900** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* X(lxxiii): cvi.

Mr. T. Parkin made some observations on the abundance of bird-life noticed by him in the Southern Oceans. The following is the list of birds obtained during a day's shooting in a calm on December 2nd, 1890, in the Cape Seas, when on a voyage to Australia in the clipper ship 'Sobraon,' South Atlantic Ocean, lat. 39°51'S., long. 8°49'E. .. Wandering

Albatrosses (*Diomedea exulans*) .. Culminated Albatrosses (*Thalassogeron culminatus*) [etc.].

### curtain

A drape-like form of **aurora australis**.

**1909** Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907-1909* William Heinemann, London: 203.

The lengthening nights also gave us indications that the mysterious Aurora Australis would soon be waving its curtains and beams over our winter quarters, and as information on this phenomenon was greatly needed, Mawson made preparations for recording the displays.

**1915** (Western Base) Wild, Frank in Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911-1914* William Heinemann, London, vol II : 73.

There were many fine displays of the aurora in June, the best being observed on the evening of the 18th. Curtains and streamers were showing from four o'clock in the afternoon. Shortly after midnight, Kennedy, who was taking magnetic observations, called me to see the most remarkable exhibition I have so far seen. There was a double curtain 30° wide unfolded from the eastern horizon through the zenith, with waves shimmering along it so rapidly that they travelled the whole length of the curtain in two seconds. The colouring was brilliant and evanescent.

**1916** Mawson, D. in *Transactions of the Royal Society of South Australia* 40: 153.

*Curtain*. — This is the idealized form of aurora phenomena, and contains all the elements of auroral manifestations. Curtains are in the form of somewhat convoluted (draped) bands and bars across the sky. Like the article of furnishing from which they take their name, they are narrow in lateral width, but the vertical extension is always considerable ... The elements of a curtain are vertical filaments, or *streamers*.

**1939** *National Geographic* LXXV(5) May: 689.

An Aurora may be defined simply as a luminosity of the night skies, usually seen to the northward by observers in the Northern Hemisphere and to the southward by observers in the Southern Hemisphere. It may consist of ill-defined patches of light only or may be in the form of streamers, arcs, straight or wavy bands, rays fanning out from a center, or "curtains" of light which seem to hang downward.

### cutting in verbal noun, whaling

The act of cutting up a whale before **trying out**.

**7 Feb 1840** Olmsted, Francis Allyn (1841) *Incidents of a whaling voyage* Charles E. Tuttle Co., Rutland, Vermont (1969 repr.): 113.

Great numbers of these birds float around a whale ship, when "cutting in" the whale.

**1938** Dakin, William John *Whalemen adventurers: the story of whaling in Australian waters and other Southern Seas Related Thereto. Revised second edn* Angus & Robertson, Sydney: 139.

A steamer, the *Southern Cross*, of the Newnes-Borchgrevink Antarctic Expedition, was discovered taking whales in the vicinity, although this ship was not fitted up for "cutting in" or "trying out".

**1971** Munch, Peter *Crisis in Utopia: the ordeal of Tristan da Cunha* Thomas Y. Crowell, NY: 54.

The whaling captains were obviously not too concerned if some of their crew had never seen a sail or a spar as long as they had muscles to pull an oar in the whaleboat or swing a flensing knife on the "cutting-in stage".



## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

**cut-ups** *Tristan da Cunha*

A dish prepared with joints of albatross or mollymawk chicks, usually fried; the chicks themselves.

**1951** Rowan, M.K. in *The Ostrich* XXII(3) Dec: 153.

Larger [sc. yellow-nosed albatross] chicks are nearly always served as "cut-ups", a dish prepared by frying the de-fatted legs and breasts in deep fat. At least 12 birds would be required to make an adequate meal for a family of eight when prepared thus.

**1958** Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 50.

The islanders quickly got a raging driftwood fire going in an attempt to dry things out a bit. They then cut up the Mollies, and the need for so many became apparent. For only five pieces were used from each bird. The breast muscles of each side made two joints, the others being the two legs and the livers ... The 'cut-ups' were boiled thoroughly, together with some potatoes Norman and Herbert had brought with them, and also proved excellent.

**1989** (Nightingale Island, 1950s) Thompson, Pat Forsyth in *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 4 (Mar): 4.

The men would go up the hill (only about 1,000 feet high) and collect Mollymawk chicks which they called Cut-ups to take home for eating. If eaten really fresh they were not too bad, but otherwise acquired a very fishy taste.

# — D —

## day

[In both the world's polar regions, the common words *day* and *night* have a different significance from their primary modern meaning in temperate regions, though (see 1921 quotation) the normal meaning of 24 hours also applies. The use of *day* as 'a time of sunlight' is recorded in British English from c1000 onwards (NOED), but in polar regions this meaning can be greatly extended, so that 'day' is a period of more than twenty-four hours.]

1. Generally, from sunrise to sunset: at the South (or North) Pole, this period is six months long. See also **antarctic summer** and **winter, night, winter**.

**1916** (in the Antarctic pack) Doorly, Captain Gerald S. *The voyages of the 'Morning'* Smith, Elder & Co., London: 16.

It was the wee sma' hours before the meeting broke up, but as it was now perpetual day one felt reluctant to go to bed in the daylight.

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* London: 40. This day — which was of course night so far as light was concerned — came in the midst of the only week of continuous calm we had throughout the winter. The mercury stood at 37°F below zero.

**7 Apr 1934** Byrd, Richard E. (1939) *Alone* Reader's Union Ltd and Putnam & Co Ltd, London: 74.

The six months' day is slowly dying, and the darkness is descending very gently. Even at midday the sun is only several times its diameter above the horizon.

**1967** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* June: 8.

There is only one sunrise per year at the Pole, and one long sunset; one long day, and one long night.

**1981** Land, Barbara *The new explorers: women in Antarctica* Dodd, Mead & Co, NY: 28.

"Day" and "night" are arbitrary terms in Antarctica. Residents set their watches by New Zealand time and try to ignore the eternal daylight of summer or darkness of winter. During the polar summer — November, December, and January — the sun never falls below the horizon. It moves around the sky in a circle that grows smaller and smaller until late December when it shines, almost directly overhead, twenty-four hours a day. Then the circle begins to widen and the sun moves lower in the sky until late March. After a long dusk, it disappears for six months. The Antarctic night ends with the gray-pink dawn of late September.

### 2. *Tristan da Cunha*

A day on which the weather allows a particular activity, such as fishing or sailing.

**1951** (Nightingale Island) *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* (1998) 22 (Mar): 5.

After a somewhat restless night thinking we would go off we were called by Gladys at 6.30 to hear it was the "day"... We .. came over to Nightingale at a good speed.

**1989** (Nightingale Island) *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 4 (Mar): 4.

As soon as the wind changed to south-westerly and it was a "day," the boats would be launched and sail set for home.

## decay

[Specific use of *decay* losing its characteristic quality.]

Of ice, the breaking down.

**1905** Scott, Captain Robert F. *The voyage of the 'Discovery'* Macmillan and Co, London: 112.

Very little snow had fallen on the surface of the floes, and except where some volcanic sand and rubble had been carried on to them by the wind, there was no sign of decay.

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* Duckworth, London: 83.

Though exhibiting signs of decay, the ice was holding well south of the Glacier Tongue.

**1985** Keys, Harry J.R. in *New Zealand Antarctic Record* 6(2): 1. Shapes of icebergs reflect berg source and decay.

**1991** Tingey, Robert J. *The geology of Antarctica* Clarendon Press, Oxford: 369.

Sea ice in the Southern Ocean now covers  $20 \times 10^6$  km<sup>2</sup> in winter and  $4 \times 10^6$  km<sup>2</sup> in summer ... In contrast to the Arctic, autumn growth is slow and spring decay is rapid.

## decayed *adjective*

Of ice, broken down

**16 Jan 1914** Davis, J.K. in Crossley, Louise, ed. (1997) *Trial by ice: the Antarctic journals of John King Davis* Bluntisham Books, Bluntisham: 87.

The floes, although much decayed, were some of them very large.

**1949** Routh, Martin in *The Ibis* 91(4): 595.

The choice of suitable icebergs for birds to rest on is usually very great. All birds that have been seen have been on a smooth surface ... "Decayed", "broken", or "spiky" icebergs are never chosen.

## Deep Freeze *verb*

To transport by Operation *Deep Freeze*, the US Navy's Antarctic operations (see **Deepfreezer**).

**1966** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 4(5) Mar: 254.

The station components, manufactured in Canada, were Deep Frozen to the Plateau.

## Deepfreezer US

[Operation *Deep Freeze* was given this name in 1956.]

A member of Operation *Deep Freeze*, the US's antarctic operations by the US Navy, begun in the 1955–1956 summer, and ended in 1999 when contractors took over this function.

**1962** (McMurdo) Henderson, Jim *One foot at the Pole* Whitcombe & Tombs, Christchurch: 128.

The chapel was built on this spot in the Antarctic winter of 1955. It was erected by the men of Operation *Deep Freeze I* during that first long night ... Since then the chapel has been added to and improved by various 'Deepfreezers'.

**deep South****Antarctica.**

**1990** Naveen, Ron, Monteath, Colin, de Roy, Tui and Jones, *Mark Wild ice: Antarctic journeys* Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington: 23.

If Antarctica and the Southern Ocean are the crown — the last relatively pristine ecosystem on earth — then the subantarctic outcrops rimming the seventh continent are this tiara's shining jewels: South Georgia, Bouvet, Macquarie, Enderby, Snares, Auckland. All are rich introductions to the vast repository of wildlife, history, dreams, and emotions metaphorically dubbed the Deep South, The Ice, or, more graphically, the Wild Ice.

**1993** Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 112.

For many seasoned hands, the snow petrel is the Antarctic's most beautiful bird, a real symbol of the deep south.

**degomble** *verb*

To disencumber of snow.

**1989** British Antarctic Survey *Untitled 3 pp glossary* British Antarctic Survey, Cambridge: [1].

Degomble: To untangle or shake snow off one's outer clothing or the dog's coats.

**dense pack**

[Dense closely compacted + pack.]

A general term for **heavy pack ice**.

**1916** (Elephant Island) Wild, Frank in *The Magellan Times [Punta Arenas]* 7 Sept (no. 122): 6.

On the 25th of April, the day after the departure of your boat, the island was beset by dense pack.

**1964** Styles, D.F. *Narrative. Coastal exploration of Kemp and Enderby Lands, Antarctica*. ANARE Reports series A vol. 1, Antarctic Division, Dept of External Affairs, Melbourne: 26.

We .. reached the open sea at 10.20 a.m. the following day, after traversing 25 miles of heavy dense pack.

**depot** *verb*

[Depot (from the French *dépôt*, and earlier Latin *depositum*) has been used as a noun from 1794 (NOED), but its use as a verb seems antarctic only.]

To cache supplies, esp. food and fuel, for later use.

**3 Nov 1908** (south of Hut Point) Shackleton, E.H. (1909) *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907-1909* William Heinemann, London: 267.

To-morrow morning we will depot nearly 100 lb. of oil and provisions, which will lighten the load on the supporting-party's sledge a good deal.

**7 Mar 1911** (Hut Point) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912: an account of Scott's last expedition* Blandford Press, London: 115.

Cherry, Gran, 3 seamen and myself killed 4 seals, and brought back 200 lbs of meat, 150 lbs of blubber and depoted 200 lbs more.

**1966** (Campbell Glacier, Scott Base area) Lowe, D.R. in *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 4(6) June: 277.

About half way down the Campbell we depoted again.

**1969** (Prince Charles Mountains) *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* June: 19.

After reconnaissance and depoting flights to Manning Nunataks, the first party to move out into the field was a geological party.

**depoted** *participial adjective*

Cached in a **depot**.

**1914** (Cape Adare) Priestley, Raymond E. (1974 repr.) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* Melbourne University Press: 134.

Campbell asked me to accompany Levick, Browning, and Dickason when they went to fetch in the depoted sledge.

**1991** Antarctic Division *Antarctic Treaty exchange information. Particulars for the Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions (ANARE)* Antarctic Division, Department of the Arts, Sport, the Environment, Tourism and Territories, Hobart: 55.

*Fuel* (depoted January 1990) 60 205 drums AVTUR (dated October 1989) [etc.]

**depot-laying journey**

An expedition to cache (**depot**) supplies, esp. food and fuel, for later use.

**1911** *Daily Mirror [London]* 10 May (no. 2,352): 1.

[caption] Captain Scott is seen just prior to his departure on a depot-laying journey.

**1943** Debenham, Frank in *Polar Record* 4(25) Jan: 21.

In the first season of depot-laying journeys Stareek was the most reliable of the leaders.

**1991** Bainbridge, Beryl *The birthday boys* Duckworth, London: 135.

On the depot-laying journey we'd got into a rhythm of marching, and when we camped we did so as a team, each man having routine duties to perform.

**DFA**

[An acronym, commonly believed to be from 'Diesel Fuel Arctic'. The 26<sup>th</sup> acronyms, initialisms & abbreviations dictionary gives 'Diesel Fuel with an Antarctic Additive'.]

Diesel fuel specially formulated for extremely cold conditions: see also SAB.

**1976** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XI(2): 90.

At such former drill sites as New Harbor, Lake Vida, and Don Juan Pond, soils contaminated with DFA (diesel fuel Arctic) or calcium chloride drilling fluids have begun to show signs of microbiological recovery.

**1990** *Antarctic Society of Australia newsletter* 21 (June): 9.

DFA contains high concentrations of semivolatle aromatic hydrocarbons such as naphthalenes and fluorenes as well as a range of aliphatic hydrocarbons.

**diamond dust**

[Diamond dust is recorded later (fr 1978: DALaskE) in *Alaskan English*.]

Tiny crystals of ice in cold air, brilliantly reflecting sunlight.

**1958** Armstrong, Terence and Roberts, Brian in *Polar Record* 9(59) May: 94.

[glossary] Ice prisms: A fall of unbranched *ice crystals*, in the form of needles, columns or plates, often so tiny that they seem to be suspended in the air. These crystals may fall from a cloud or from a cloudless sky. They are visible mainly when they glitter in the sunshine (diamond dust); they may then produce a luminous pillar or other halo phenomena. This hydrometeor, which is frequent in polar regions, occurs at very low temperatures and in stable air masses.

**1978** Béchervaise, John *Science: men on ice in Antarctica. Australian Life Series* Lothian Publishing Co., Melbourne: 24.

When the temperature is very low snow forms and falls as very small dry stars — 'diamond dust'.

**1996** Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 44.

I took off in a helicopter with Ben, a geophysicist and Nino. The air was full of diamond dust.

**diddle-dee** *noun and attrib., Falkland Islands*

[The 1684 quotation is possibly unrelated, but might have a lexical connection.]

The resinous small shrub *Empetrum rubrum* (fam. Empetraceae), which is widespread in the Falkland Islands and also occurs in southern South America and on Tristan da Cunha; the fruit of the shrub, which is used on the Falkland Islands in cooking preserves. See also **cranberry**, **crowberry**, **hard camp**.

**[28 Jan 1684]** Dampier, William in Day, Alan Edwin (1996) *The Falkland Islands, South Georgia and the South Sandwich Islands. World Bibliographical Series vol. 184* Clio Press, Oxford: 10.

These islands of Sibbel de Wards ... are all three rocky barren islands without any tree, only Dildoë-Bushes growing on them. And I do believe there is no water on any one of them, for there was no appearance of any water.]

**1836** Grey, Admiral George *unpublished diary*.

[The land] is covered with ... a small shrub ... this heath, not unlike our English heath, is called why I am sure I don't know "diddle-de-dee" by the sailors and makes a most excellent fire.

**1840** (Falkland Islands) Mackinnon, L.B. (RN) *Some account of the Falkland Islands, from a six months' residence in 1838 and 1839* A.H. Bailey & Co., London: 38.

There is also a small shrub, or rather creeper, called by the inhabitants 'Diddledee', for what reason I know not, of the most inflammable nature; it will burn furiously, and with an intense heat, even after being soaked for some time in water; this is found every where, and was very useful to us in preparing our meals when away from the vessel.

**1847** Hooker, J.D. *Flora Antarctica* Reeve Bros, London, vol 2: 345.

The stems and leafy branches are much used for fuel in the Falklands, where the plant is called "Diddle-dee", they are especially employed in kindling fire, for even when sodden with rain, they speedily ignite, and burn with a bright and hot flame.

**1904** (Falkland Islands) Vallentin, Rupert in *Memoirs and Proc of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no. 23: 37.

In the early summer, January, the young birds [sc. upland geese] make a welcome addition to one's table, and are most delicious eating. At this season the berries of the diddle-dee are ripe, and are devoured in quantities by these birds, and this food unquestionably fattens them, and adds to their delicate flavour.

**1917** (Falkland Islands) Beck, Rollo H. in *The American Museum Journal* XVII(7) Nov: 440.

I flushed one of the pretty brown-breasted plovers from its nest under a diddle-dee shrub.

**1980** (Falkland Islands) Parmelee, David F. *Bird Island in antarctic waters* University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis: 17.

Paraguayan snipes (*Capella gallinago magellanica*) in the wet pastures of Stanley and elusive rufous-breasted dotterels (*Zonibyx modestus*) on its coastal hills of diddle-dee took up some extra time.

**1989** Davies, T.H. and McAdam, J.H. *Wild flowers of the Falkland Islands* Bluntisham Books, Huntingdon: 26.

The white flowers of chickweed .. are often seen dotted through the drier whitegrass or diddle-dee camp.

**c1990** Roper, Patrick *Holidays in the Falkland Islands* Falkland Islands Tourist Board, London: 6.

Food in the Falklands is excellent. There is ample mutton and beef of fine quality and a wide range of home-grown fresh vegetables; local specialities include diddle-dee jelly which is made with the berries of this abundant plant.

**1997** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 20 (Mar): 2.

The news that Tristan is soon to have its own coat of arms means that it will soon be flying its own flag. It has a Yellow-nosed Albatross across the top, with a Tristan Rock lobster on either side and a Diddle-dee berry below, all surrounding the island with a longboat in the foreground.

**dieso** *Aust. Also dieso mechanic*

[Shortened from diesel mechanic. There is a tradition of adding -o as a final syllable to shortened forms of words, particularly in Australian English: see AND -o.]

A (diesel) mechanic.

**1967** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] June: 24.

To the Dieso Mechanics, it is well worthwhile getting housemaid knees for the sheer joy of obtaining lily white hands like the scientists.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 13.

My New Guinea girlfriend has too many brains for a dieso like me.

**1993** (Macquarie Island) *Station News* [Australian Antarctic Division, Hobart] Feb: 5.

DIESO (or H.A. Dieso) — The diesel mechanic who maintains the very large noisy and impressive diesel power generators. Keeps the power house spotless — one could eat off the floor except the DIESO would get very vexed about the mess.

**digester** *Subantarctic. Also digestor*

[Spec. use of digester used since 1874 for 'an apparatus in which carcases of beasts unfit for food are dissolved into their proximate elements, tallow, gelatine, earthy phosphates, etc.' NOED.]

A boiler for **boiling-down** penguins, seals etc. to obtain their oil.

**1894** (Macquarie Island) Hamilton, A. in *Transactions and Proceedings of the New Zealand Institute* XXVII Art LXV: 563.

The oil from the digesters passes into large vats, and the refuse is thrown out into heaps.

**1899** *The Falkland Islands Magazine* X(9) Jan: [3].

We call special attention to the annexed woodcut of our Standard Pattern of Modern Digester.

**18 Jan 1912** (Macquarie Island) Blake, L.R. in Mawson, Douglas (1942) *Geographical narrative and cartography. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911-14. Scientific reports series A vol 1* Government Printer, Sydney: 281.

The birds are then packed in huge boilers called 'digestors' and steam is turned on to the pressure of 30 lb. per square inch for 12 hours. The oil is then run into settling tanks and subsequently barrelled, while the refuse passes into chutes and into the sea.

**1925** (South Georgia) Hurley, Captain Frank *Argonauts of the South* G.P. Putnam's Sons, NY: 133.

Small pieces .. are mechanically fed to digestors which extract oil under steam pressure. The residue is made into

flesh-meal — a fattening food for cattle — and guano for fertilizing purposes.

**1966** (Macquarie Island) Simpson, Ken in *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] Nov: 26.

Blue/Orange went off with a big, bold weka, married him and settled down in a cosy little territory in the Digester Wallows.

**1986** *Aust Geo* 1(4) Oct-Dec: betw. 64–65.

[caption] Disused penguin and elephant seal digesters mark what was once the headquarters of sealing gangs.

**dingle** *adjective, Brit.*

[For unknown reasons.]

(Of weather) good.

**1989** British Antarctic Survey *Glossary of FIDS terms* British Antarctic Survey, Cambridge (unpublished): [1].

Dingle: Ace weather.

**1996** (Adelaide Island, 1975) Walton, Kevin and Atkinson, Rick *Of dogs and men: the illustrated story of the dogs of the British Antarctic Survey 1944–1994* Images Publishing, Malvern Wells: 124.

It was often the case that a calm 'dingle' day deteriorated into a full blown blizzard within an hour.

**1998** Swithinbank, Charles *Forty years on ice: a lifetime of exploration and research in the polar regions* The Book Guild, Sussex: 136.

"Dingle clear. Beautiful views down big glacier to east coast." ... In proper English dingle means a well wooded valley, but in Fids-speak it means good visibility and cloudless sky.

**diomedecide** *Humorous*

[Fr *Diomedea* the name of an albatross genus + -cide suffix signifying killing.]

Killing of an albatross.

**10 Nov 1912** Murphy, Robert Cushman (1948) *Logbook for Grace Robert Hale Ltd*, London: 129.

I am in fear that the charge of "diomedecide," or albatross murder, will be raised against me at any moment.

**diving petrel**

Any of the birds of the genus *Pelecanoides* (fam. Pelecanoididae), small oceanic birds which are usually dark greyish above and whitish beneath. These birds breed in burrows on subantarctic islands (and so are also called **burrowing petrels**); their short wings act like flippers underwater. See also **common diving petrel**, **Falkland diving petrel**, **flying pinnamin**, **South Georgia diving petrel** and **subantarctic diving petrel**.

**14 Feb 1774** (49°32'S, 95°11'W) Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, In the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970), vol I: 272.

After a few hours calm, having got a breeze at N.W., we made a stretch to the S.W. for twenty-four hours; in which route we saw a piece of wood, a bunch of weed, and a diving petrel.

**1848** Gould, John *The birds of Australia* The author, 20 Broad St, Golden Square, London, VII: pl. 60.

*Puffinuria urinatrix*. Diving Petrel ... This curious little bird was very abundant in Storm Bay, and off many parts of the coast of Van Diemen's Land; I have also seen specimens from New

Zealand and Cape Horn which were identical with those I procured in the localities above-mentioned.

**1879** (Nightingale Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 129.

The name given by northern whalers to the Little Auk is given in the South to the Diving Petrel of Kerguelen's Land.

**1904** Nicoll, M.J. *The Ibis* IV(13) Jan: 41.

On Jan. 27th, a few hours before we arrived at the entrance of the Magellan Straits, I saw numbers of Diving Petrels (*Pelecanoides urinatrix*) and a Penguin.

**1938** *National Geographic* LXXIV(2) Aug: 234.

The birds of the [sc. Procellariiformes] order fall into four families, of which one comprises the albatrosses, a second the more varied aggregation of medium-sized petrels, fulmars, and shearwaters, a third the little storm, Leach's, and Wilson's petrels, and a fourth, the peculiar diving petrels, which are birds of auklike form confined wholly to the Southern Hemisphere.

**1964** *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* 3 (May): 46.

At Bird Island the diet [of skuas] consists mainly of whale birds (*Pachyptila desolata*) and diving petrels (*Pelecanoides georgicus*), which nest in tens of thousands throughout the tussac-covered hills of the area.

**1983** *Family Circle* [Aust] 11 Nov: 115.

We hope all you Circle Club members who are petrels are strong swimmers, because petrels are known ocean wanderers, spending most of the year out in the open ocean, coming to land only to breed. You'd need to be good surfers, too, as there are four species of Diving Petrel, which skim along close to the surface of the water, then dive through the top of a wave to emerge on the other side still flapping their wings.

**1993** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XXVIII(5): 146.

All Procellariiformes, with the exception of diving petrels (*Pelecanoides* spp.) produce stomach oils and feed them to their young.

**dog**

1. *Dog-sledging*. A **sledge dog**. See also **eskimo dog**, **husky**, **malamute**.

**22 Feb 1911** (Hut Point) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912: an account of Scott's last expedition* Blandford Press, London: 107.

As for Amundsen's prospects of reaching the Pole, I don't think they are very good, for I don't think his dogs — though he has so large a number, 116, and good drivers with lots of experience — I don't think he knows how bad an effect the monotony and the hard travelling surface of the Barrier is to animals.

**1913** Amundsen, Roald in *Daily News and Leader* [London] 12 Feb: 1.

I used only dogs and I think this gave me a decided advantage over Scott.

**9 Jul 1916** Shackleton, Ernest, quoted in *The Sphere* [London] 13 Jul: 5.

I can tell you that fried dog is very fine.

**1931** O'Brien, John S. *By dog sled for Byrd: 1600 miles across Antarctic ice* Thomas S. Rockwell, Chicago: 21.

The dogs respond to our shouts of "gee" and "haw", but their animal sense of danger is far keener than our ability to direct them. Time and again, of their own accord they swerve sharply aside with breath-taking suddenness, escaping by a few inches some huge crack in the ice through which the oily sea water is lapping hungrily for us. Without their instinctive knowledge of danger we might have steered directly into those cracks.

**1955** (Marguerite Bay base) Walton, E.W. Kevin *Two years in the Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 43.

Labrador dogs are notably tough sturdy animals, with the ability to work hard, if necessary, on remarkably short rations. Bingham preferred them to the West Greenland variety who themselves were better than the smaller almost weedy East Greenland type.

**1982** Ledingham, Rod *ANARE dog drivers manual* Antarctic Division, Department of Science and the Environment: 84.

Dog blocks (1 lb — 1 per dog per day).

**1995** *Sunday Herald Sun [Melbourne]* 8 Jan: 20.

For 12 months we had heard the dogs bark constantly for various reasons, but we had never heard them howl. On the day of the burial (September 1, 1972) the dogs were chained up on their usual lines 400 metres from both the base and the burial site, obscured from view. Now, from the very moment we took the coffin containing the body from its storage place in the aeroplane hangar and drew it across the harbor ice to the burial site, those huskies howled in unison. It was a loud, mournful and haunting howl, which continued throughout the service to the instant when the hangar door was slammed shut again, service complete and sledge returned. Incredibly, they were never heard to howl again — not once — for the rest of our stay at Mawson.

## 2. A sun dog.

**1936** Byrd, Richard Evelyn *Antarctic discovery* Putnam, London: 341.

From the sun fell a pillar of cascading platinum, and there was a like splashing of radiance at the foot of the parhelic "dogs" on either side.

## dog driver *See* dog handler

### dogger *Dog-sledging, Aust.*

A person who travels in a **dog-sledge** team.

**1965** McKinnon, G.W., compiler *Gazeteer of the Australian Antarctic Territory* ANARE interim reports series A (II) Geography, no. 75, Antarctic Division, Dept of External Affairs, Melbourne: 44.

*Dogger nunataks* ... Named after the members of the 1958 ANARE dog-sledge party who were always referred to at Mawson as the "Doggers".

**1969** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* June: 29.

This article would never be written in what I consider an impartial tone, if keen doggers like Nils Lied, Leon Fox, Eric Macklin, Geoff Smith, Dave Traill and others knew it was being written.

### doggo *Dog-sledging, NZ*

A dog handler or **dog man**.

**1995** Harrowfield, D.L. *The tip of the iceberg*: 95.

The doggo's life was divided between sealing, feeding, tending the dogs, breaking up frequent fights, repairing gear, sewing custom-made lampwick harnesses, soaking leather collars in kerosene or reinforcing them with tin plate to discourage the animals from gnawing them and exercising the dogs.

### dog handler *Dog-sledging* Also **dog driver**

[*Dog driver is recorded in this sense in Canadian English from 1857 (DCanE), and Alaskan English (DAlaskE) from 1913.*]

A member of a **dog sledge** party, particularly one responsible for care of the dogs.

**14 Jan 1911** (Cape Evans) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912: an account of Scott's last expedition* Blandford Press, London: 95.

Captain Scott ... wants me to be a dog driver with himself, Meares and Teddie Evans, and this is what I would have chosen had I had a free choice of all. The dogs run in two teams and each team wants two men. It means a lot of running as they are being driven now, but it is the fastest and most interesting work of all and we go ahead of the whole caravan with lighter loads and at a faster rate. Moreover, if any traction except ourselves can reach the top of the Beardmore Glacier it will be the dogs, and the dog drivers are therefore the people who will have the best chance of doing the top piece of the ice cap at 10,000 feet to the Pole. May I be there!

**1938** Evans, Admiral Sir Edward R.G.R. *South with Scott* Collins, London: 8.

We included amongst us .. two Russians; a dog driver and a groom.

**1958** Barber, Noel *The white desert* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 28.

Ken Blaiklock, a surveyor and dog-handler, .. would be in charge of the wintering-over party.

**1966** Baum, Allyn *Antarctica: the worst place in the world* Macmillan Co, NY: 113.

The dogs were reintroduced to the Antarctic in 1957 by Sir Edmund Hillary. Since then, the original kennel of twenty-four dogs has grown to seventy, all bred on the antarctic continent. The dogs are a cross between malamutes from Alaska and Siberian and Greenland huskies. Since the breeding of the dogs in the Antarctic has been done scientifically, the New Zealand dog handlers are convinced they have developed an animal peculiar to the Antarctic.

**1990** Naveen, Ron, Monteath, Colin, de Roy, Tui and Jones, Mark *Wild ice: Antarctic journeys* Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington: 156.

[caption] Hurling down the icy slopes of Mount Erebus toward Cape Royds, these huskies become exhausted and dispirited by poor visibility and wind-driven snow that stings their eyes. One dog handler stays out in front to provide direction for the team while the other steadies the sledge from overturning on sastrugi ridges.

### dog line *Dog-sledging. Usu. in pl. dog lines*

[*Dog-line was used first (1856) in an arctic context, though NOED defines it differently from the antarctic sense. In Canadian English it has two meanings — in the sense given below, it is recorded from 1941.*]

A chain or wire on which **sledge dogs** are tethered when not working, out of reach of each other; a team of such dogs. The lines are also called **chain lines**, (**dog**) **spans** or **pickets**.

**1943** Debenham, Frank in *Polar Record* 4(25) Jan: 19.

The only time that they were really noisy was when a man came out of the hut with dog harness over his arm and the whole of the dog lines would leap forward as one dog with full-throated demand to be selected.

**1957** Dovers, Robert *Huskies* G. Bell and Sons, London: 17.

At the other side of the hut was the second dog line, Boss's team, as it was known then.

**1963** *Wilkes Hard Times [Wilkes, Antarctica]* 1(6) July: 7.

The dog .. was recaptured and chained back on the dog lines.

**1992** Lied, Commander Nils Oscar: *the true story of a husky* Kerr Publishing, Sydney: 24.

I rushed to the dog-lines, horrified at the sight that met my eyes.

**1993** (Casey station) Twigg, Doug in Clark, Linda and Wishart, Elspeth 66° *South Queen Victoria Museum, Launceston*: 53.

When the Australians took over the station they introduced Huskies for field work and maintained the teams there in dog-lines along a pole line. There's a chain between the poles and then each dog is on a chain but that chain is fixed and in a radius that one dog can't get at another dog. They love a fight.

## dogloo

[A single quotation from Hurley for a word worth preserving.]

An igloo for a dog.

**1925** Hurley, Captain Frank *Argonauts of the South* G.P. Putnam's Sons, New York: 168.

We began the transformation by first housing all the dogs in igloos on the ice in an extended circle round the ship — greatly to their delight. These huts were called dogloos by the men.

## dog man *Dog-sledging. Also dog woman*

[Dogman was recorded in 1879 as a general name for a man in charge of dogs.]

A person responsible for the care of **sledge dogs**. See also **dog driver**.

**1930** (South Victoria Land) Byrd, Richard Evelyn in *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 189.

The expedition owes a great debt to the dog men.

**1957** Sullivan, Walter *Quest for a continent* Secker & Warburg, London: 162.

Harry Darlington was radioman and dog driver.

**1966** MacKenzie, D., ed. *Fog 'N Bog [yearbook of Macquarie Island ANARE overwinterers]* ANARE, Macquarie Island: 22.

The good dog-man must not only think like, but also smell like one of his charges.

**1995** (Mawson station) Greet, Pene and Price, Gina *Frost bytes* Doubleday, Sydney: 54.

Being dogwoman you've got a fair bit of say in what will happen.

**1995** (Mawson Station) Maggs, Tom in Robinson, Shelagh *Huskies in harness: a love story in Antarctica* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 14.

Who but the dogman goes out in the blizzard, just to be in the blizzard?

## dog meat

[Dog-meat is recorded from 1854 in English usage in this sense.]

Not the expected sense of food for dogs, but dog flesh used as food.

**23 Jan 1913** Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 164.

Had a grand pem last night — taking out meat pem and adding lot dogmeat; then this morning had fine real pem, good half tin dry, a whole biscuit and decent tea and butter. I felt very full after but a most pleasant feeling.

**1969** Keneally, Thomas *The survivor* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 38.

He had slaughtered the four remaining dogs, and carried sinewy dog meat as well as the sledging rations.

## dog orchid *Falkland Islands*

[Dog has been used in plant names since 1548 (NOED), freq. denoting inferior or worthless plants, though there is no suggestion that this is so here.]

The orchid *Codonorchis lessonii* (fam. Orchidaceae) of the Falkland Islands. It grows to about 25 cm (10 in) tall, and has whitish flowers.

**1989** Davies, T.H. and McAdam, J.H. *Wild flowers of the Falkland Islands* Bluntisham Books, Huntingdon: 5.

The dog orchid (*Codonorchis lessonii*), violet (*Viola maculata*) and almond flower (*Luzuriaga marginata*) can .. be found.

## dog pemmican *Historical*

[Recorded earlier in Canadian English.]

A mixture of (dried) meat and a high proportion of fat, usually compressed with cereal, and intended as dog food. Dog pemmican was manufactured both outside Antarctica and on the continent itself, and the meat used varied accordingly, from beef to whale and seal. The daily ration for working dogs was one to two pounds (roughly half to one kg). See also **(man) pemmican**.

**23 Sept 1911** (Cape Evans) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912: an account of Scott's last expedition* Blandford Press, London: 171.

Meares and Demitri have left with the two dog teams for Hut Point where they will be for some weeks making dog pemmican of seal meat.

**1930** Byrd, Richard Evelyn in *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 191.

Man pemmican is made of ground beef, squeezed dry and then mixed with fat. Dog pemmican has meal mixed with it.

**1953** Robin, G. de Q. in *Polar Record* 6(45) Jan: 612.

Dog pemmican was manufactured from a mixture of whale meat powder, margarine and oats.

**1956** *Ross Sea Committee, Trans-Antarctic Expedition: newsletter [Wellington]* no 6 (Sept): 1.

The firm of Cadbury Fry Hudson's Limited in Dunedin is now busily engaged in the unusual task of manufacturing dog pemmican for feeding our dogs in the Antarctic ... Pemmican, comprised of dehydrated meat, meat meal, whole wheat meal, wheat germ, tallow, molasses and cod liver oil will prove of utmost advantage in weight for calory [sic] value when in Antarctica.

**1966** MacKenzie, D., ed. *Fog 'N Bog [yearbook of Macquarie Island ANARE overwinterers]* ANARE, Macquarie Island: [22].

The next problem to be faced is the feeding. These dogs are everlastingly hungry and must be fed well. A dubious looking substance known as dog pemmican is provided for emergencies and field trips. I would describe it as a mixture of the famous ANARE biscuit and pulverised bird guano.

**1974** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Dec: 28.

When the cache was discovered in 1971 it consisted of Hershey bars, dog and man pemmican, bacon, milk and pipe tobacco. Christie and Small consumed the chocolate on the spot and fed the man pemmican to their dogs. The dog pemmican had deteriorated and was thrown away.

## dog sledge *noun. Also dog sled*

[Dog sled has been used in North American English in this sense since 1697 (DCanE).]

A sledge pulled by a **dog team**.

**1958** (1949) Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund *The crossing of Antarctica: the Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955-58* Cassell & Co, London: 1.

Already we were working at the extreme range of an unsupported dog sledge party, for when we got back to our base at

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

Stonington Island our journey would have exceeded a thousand miles.

**1968** Duckert J.M. *This is Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 26.

Scott experimented with dog sleds and finally decided that it would be better for the men to haul the sledges themselves.

**dog sledge** *verb*

To travel by **dog sledge**.

**1967** *Antarctic Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 4(10) Jun: 485.

The 1962–3 northern party dog-sledged over part of this route and reported very soft snow with much whooshing snow.

**1992** Steger, Will and Bowermaster, Jon *Crossing Antarctica* Alfred A. Knopf, New York: 33.

Among us Geoff has had the most experience with crevasses, having dogsledded up and down much of the peninsula and more recently having studied thousands of reports by the British Antarctic Survey teams made over the past thirty years.

**dog span** *Dog-sledging*

A **dog line**.

**1957** Anderson, W. Ellery *Expedition south* Evans Brothers, London: 47.

As soon as they calmed down they were taken up the slope, to the dog spans near our hut. The spans consisted of a number of thick wire ropes strung between steel pickets set upright in concrete. Nine dogs were chained to each span, with sufficient space between them to keep clear of each other's teeth.

**1995** UK Antarctic Heritage Trust *Britain's Antarctic heritage* UK Antarctic Heritage Trust: 16.

One of the benefits of the field conservation programme should be the rescue of abandoned Antarctic artefacts such as sledges, food boxes, dog spans etc. from sites which are cleared or cannot be preserved.

**dog team** *Dog-sledging*

[Dog team has been used in the Arctic since 1856 in this sense.]

A group of dogs used in harness to pull a sledge, and having a designated leader.

**1905** Scott, Captain Robert F. *The voyage of the 'Discovery'* Macmillan and Co, London: 189.

We were impotent to prevent the murder of two of our dog team, though we actually witnessed it.

**15 Nov 1911** (One Ton Depot) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912: an account of Scott's last expedition* Blandford Press, London: 197.

Fine hot sunshine after the snowy night. Dog teams both up with us.

**1939** Byrd, Richard E. *Alone* Reader's Union Ltd and Putnam & Co Ltd, London: 19.

We came to the gloomy conclusion that not even the dog teams, much less the tractors, could safely pass through to Little America.

**1956** Stinear, B.H. *Preliminary report on operations from Mawson Base, Australian National Antarctic Research Expedition, 1954–55* BMR Record 1956/44, Department of National Development, Commonwealth of Australia: 8.

There is no satisfactory substitute for dog teams when working in mountainous Antarctic terrain.

**1992** *Age [Melbourne]* 30 June: 11.

When the last dog teams are withdrawn from the Antarctic continent either next summer or the summer of 1993–94, one of the few reminders of their existence will have been left by an explorer who never understood them.

**dogtooth grenadier**

The deepwater marine fish *Cynomacurus piriiei* (fam. Macrouridae), which grows to about 50 cm (20 in) long. It is circumpolar in antarctic waters, and is not fished commercially.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes*. Southern Ocean FAO, Rome: 296.

*Cynomacurus piriiei* .. 1909 ... Dogtooth grenadier ... Weddell Sea and Banzare Bank, but probably circum-Antarctic.

**Dollo's plunderfish**

[Named for the Belgian palaeontologist Louis Antoine Marie Joseph Dollo (1857–1931): curator of vertebrates at the Royal Museum of Natural History in Brussels (see 1993 quotation).]

The small, circumantarctic deepwater marine fish *Doloidraco longedorsalis* (fam. Artedidraconidae), which grows to about 14 cm (5 in) long. See also **kplunderfish**.

**1993** Miller, Richard Gordon *A history and atlas of the fishes of the Antarctic ocean* Foresta Institute for Ocean and Mountain Studies, Carson City, Nevada: 297.

"Dollo's plunderfish" ... Named for Dr. Louis Dollo of Brussels, who prepared the fish reports of the *Belgica* and parts of the Scottish National Antarctic Expedition.

**dolos** *Tristan da Cunha, usu. pl. dolosse*

[From South African English *dolos*(se) *poss. fr Tswana of N. Sotho in Dawula diviner's bones (etc.).*]

Interlocking concrete blocks used (worldwide) in harbour preservation.

**1985** Winchester, Simon *The sun never sets* Prentice Hall Press, NY: 80.

Great breakers would regularly .. wash right over the masses of concrete *dolos*e blocks (said to have been shaped after the design of a sheep's anklebone, and at the core of all new harbours constructed in the southern hemisphere, and to have made their South African inventor millions of rand.

**1992** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 11 (Sept): 2.

1,500 concrete *dolos*se had to be stored on dry land when the crane broke down.

**1993** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 13 (Sept): 4.

We have heard from several members on the origin of the word "Dolosse", the jagged-shaped interlocking concrete blocks used in the reconstruction of the extended harbour on Tristan da Cunha.

— 6.

When work starts again the inner wall on the west side of the harbour (in anticipation of a new patrol boat for the Island) and another 60ft of *Dolos*se will be added to the west arm.

**dolphin gull** *Falkland Islands*

The bird *Larus scoresbii* (fam. Laridae) which breeds in the Falkland Islands and southern South America. It is a black, grey and white gull with a red beak, legs and feet. It has also been called the **red-billed gull** and **Scoresby's gull**.



**1904** (Falkland Islands) Vallentin, Rupert *Memoirs and Proc of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no. 23: 41.

*Leucophaeus scoresbii*, "The Dolphin." Specimens of this gull were fairly common in the neighbourhood of Stanley, Port Louis, and also at Roy Cove ... At Roy Cove I have frequently observed them walking on the floating beds of kelp thrown into the numerous coves after gales of wind, feeding on crustaceans attracted thither by decaying sea weeds.

**1910** Cobb, Arthur F. *Wildlife in the Falkland Islands* Gowans & Gray, London: 68.

Blue, Grey or Dolphin Gull ... The Dolphin Gulls breed in the Falklands; nesting in December, they lay three greenish eggs ... They are pretty birds with their crimson bills and legs, dark and light-grey plumage and snow-white tails.

**1924** Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands. With notes on the natural history by Rupert Vallentin* Clarendon Press, Oxford: 305.

*Larus scoresbyi* ... 'Dolphin Red-legged Gull'. Although this species is uniformly distributed over the islands, it is by no means common.

**1958** Sladen, W.J.L. and Tickell, W.L.N. in *Bird-banding: a journal of ornithological investigation* 29(1) (Jan): 22.

In 1949–52 265 FIDS bands were put on the following 8 species of birds in the Falkland Islands: .. Dolphin Gull (*Leucophaeus scoresbii*) [etc.].

**1979** Peterson, Roger Tory *Penguins* Houghton Mifflin Co., Boston: 151.

The smaller dolphin gull, grayish with a bright red bill and red feet, is an even more aggressive egg-snatcher, but is more local in its distribution. It lives only around the southern tip of South America and in the Falklands.

**1997** Enticott, Jim and Tipling, David *Photographic handbook of the seabirds of the world* New Holland Publishers Ltd, London: 146.

Dolphin Gull *Larus scoresbii* ... A handsome gull, but an opportunistic scavenger.

### **dominican gull** *noun and attrib. Sometimes simply dominican*

[Presum. fr the black and white worn by the Catholic religion's Dominican order.]

The gull *Larus dominicanus* (fam. Laridae), which has a white head, black back and wings with a white wing margin, and an orange-red beak. It breeds widely in the subantarctic, and ranges from temperate waters south to the **antarctic circle**: it is the only gull found inside the circle. It is also called the **big gull**, **kelp gull** and **(southern) black-backed gull**.

**1900** Cook, Frederick A. *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 421.

The most common [birds] are the Dominican sea-gull (*Larus dominicanus*) [etc.].

**16 Mar 1904** (Auckland Islands) Roberts, Brian, ed. (1967) *Edward Wilson's birds of the Antarctic* New Orchard Editions, Poole [Dorset]: 153.

Ferrar, Mulock and Bernacchi went to Terror Cove and got me Dominican Gulls old and young.

**1910** Cobb, Arthur F. *Wildlife in the Falkland Islands* Gowans & Gray, London: 39.

[caption] Nest and eggs of dominican gull. These birds are locally called Big Gulls as they are the largest and most common of the Falkland Gulls.

**1929** (South Georgia) *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 582.

The Dominican Gull is three seasons in reaching maturity. In the first winter the plumage is grey-brown with buff specklings.

**1968** *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* 21 (Dec): 4.

Jim Conroy successfully hatched three dominican gull chicks in the boatshed.

**1970** Gosman, R., ed. *Homers' Odyssey [Macquarie Island magazine]* ANARE, Macquarie Island: [8].

**Skuas and Dominicans** have just hatched.

### **dong** *Tristan da Cunha*

[*Onomatopoeia* lives. Dong has been used in the echoic sense of sounding a bell, since 1587 (NOED).]

A gong struck to signify a fishing **day**.

**1969** Swain, Mary in Zettersten, Arne *The English of Tristan da Cunha* Lund Studies in English no 37, C.W.K. Gleerup, Lund: 141.

By the time we got up to Willie's, the dong hit again.

**1997** Ponticelli, Greg in *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 21 (Sept): 10.

A fishing day awakens as it has done for as long as the Islanders can remember, with the hitting of the dong. Two, more experienced, seamen go out shortly before sunrise and, judging from the physical weather conditions and the reading of the 'glass' (barometer), determine whether it is a favourable day for fishing. If it is, the dong (an empty gas cylinder with the end cut off) is sounded.

### **donga** *Aust.*

[From the Australian English *donga*, a makeshift or temporary dwelling. AND (1900–) gives the origin of the word as South African, because the South African sense of gully is also used in Australia. However, its earliest quotation meaning 'shelter' narrowly pre-dates the evidence for *donga* as a gully. There is no convincing reason to think that the origin of the Australian and antarctic uses of *donga* for dwelling has anything to do with the South African usage.]

Sleeping quarters: originally a hut or part of a hut, now also a bedroom in an air-conditioned building.

**1965** Macquarie Island winterers *Wind in the Wallows* ANARE, Macquarie Island: 51.

Pete Ormay who built a new *donga*,

Observed, "Just as well it aint longa,

If larger in size, The wind thrust would rise.

Amuch [sic] longa *donga* needs be stronga."

**1973** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* June: 34.

When did you last sleep in the same *donga* as a fanatical kiwi carpenter?

**1995** (Mawson Station) Maggs, Tom in Robinson, Shelagh *Huskies in harness: a love story in Antarctica* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 15.

You dream that your trip is a dream and you're back in your *donga* in a warm dry bed.

### **dongler** *Brit.*

A length of rope attaching the driver of a **dog-team** to the sledge.

**1996** Walton, Kevin and Atkinson, Rick *Of dogs and men: the illustrated story of the dogs of the British Antarctic Survey 1944–1994* Images Publishing, Malvern Wells: 60.

The driver's other fear was, of course, to have the team run off without him ... To reduce the risk, many tricks had to be learnt: for instance, never leaving the sledge to walk back along the trail, and making use of a short length of rope affectionately known as the 'dongler'; one end of this rope would be attached to a waist belt, the other looped over the handle bar upright.

**double-ringed plover** *Falkland Islands*

[Double-ringed from the two conspicuous black bars on the front of the breeding male + plover used from before 1312 (NOED) for birds of the fam. *Charadriidae*.]

The bird *Charadrius falklandicus*: see **plover**.

**1861** (Falkland Islands) Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 155.

*Ægialites falklandicus* (Lath.). (Double-ringed Plover.) This Plover is a spring visitor, arriving about the beginning of September, and breeding shortly afterwards, although I have also found a nest with fresh eggs in it in October. The eggs, three in number, are generally laid on a bank at a short distance from the beach, without any nest, being merely deposited in a hole.

**1913** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 22(4) 1 Apr: 61.

Double-ringed Plover (*Ægialitis falklandicus*) ... closed season 1 Oct–last Feb.

**dove prion** *noun and attrib.* Also *occas.* **dove petrel**, and formerly **dove-like prion**

[There is a thorough confusion in names of prions and petrels, to which dove prion subscribes.]

A **prion**, most often the bird *Pachyptila desolata*: see **antarctic prion**.

**1848** Gould, John *The birds of Australia* The author, 20 Broad St, Golden Square, London, VII: pl. 54.

*Prion turtur*. Dove-like Prion ... All the upper surface delicate blue-grey.

**1888** Buller, Sir Walter Lawry *A history of the birds of New Zealand*. 2nd edn Published by the author, Westminster London, vol II: 201.

This Petrel [sc. *Prion turtur*], like many of the others, feeds on squids and small jelly-fish, which contribute likewise to the support of our great cetaceans. The presence of large flocks at sea is regarded by whalers as a favourable sign on this account, and among sailors the Dove Petrel is generally known as the "Whale bird."

**1900** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* X(LXXIII): cvi.

Mr. T. Parkin made some observations on the abundance of bird-life noticed by him in the Southern Oceans. The following is the list of birds obtained during a day's shooting in a calm on December 2nd, 1890, in the Cape Seas, when on a voyage to Australia in the clipper ship 'Sobraon,' South Atlantic Ocean, lat. 39°51' S., long. 8°49' E. ... Dove Like Prions (*Prion desolatus*).

**1952** Gilchrist, Alan in *The Emu* 52(3) Aug: 202.

Their [sc. snow petrels'] speed and the length of their glide were very much greater than those of *Pachyptila desolata* (Dove Prion), a common species at Heard Island.

**1968** *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* 20 (Nov): 4.

The dove prion bird rafts have attracted Doug, Roger, Jim and Vaughan Spaul to evening boat trips under the pretence of collecting penguin eggs.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 115.

The Dove Prion is slightly larger than the other prions.

**down South** *adverbial phr.*

[The expression down South is recorded from 1834 in the USA, and in New Zealand since 1867. It is used far more widely and locally, and the antarctic sense is yet another specific meaning of the general expression.]

The **antarctic regions**.

**24 Jul 1913** (Glacier Tongue) Griffith Taylor, T. in Hanley, Wayne, ed. (1978) *The Griffith Taylor collection: diaries and letters*

of a geographer in Antarctica Geography Department, University of New England, Armidale: 136.

The somewhat frivolous tone of the above note is evidence that it was written when we had traversed the worst of the Piedmont [sc. Glacier]. It was always the case down south! One never got photographs or instantaneous pen pictures of anything really exciting.

**1922** Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Picador, London: 44.

The two huts which were to form the homes of our two parties down South had been brought out in the ship.

**1966** MacKenzie, D., ed. *Fog 'N Bog [yearbook of Macquarie Island ANARE overwinterers, 1966]* ANARE, Macquarie Island: 25.

There must be easier ways to earn a quid. No mate — it's dollars now. You've been down south too damn long.

**1966** (en route for Heard Island) Temple, Philip *The sea and the snow* Cassell Australia, Melbourne: 20.

Warwick was always careful, however, that no food be wasted and rations were conserved against the rainy day we might encounter 'down south'.

**1993** Fiennes, Ranulph *Mind over matter: the epic crossing of the Antarctic continent* Sinclair-Stevenson, London: 303.

As technology has increasingly trivialised the word 'remote', so it has become more important for all interested countries to reach a formal agreement as to what is and is not mutually acceptable behaviour 'down south'.

**draco** *NZ*

Abbrev. of **dracophyllum**.

**1977** *The Islander [quarterly bulletin of the Campbell-Raoul Island association]* 3(5) Sept: 112.

Later we found some [sc. sea-lions] on Auckland Island one mile inland through rata bush and draco that took us an hour of whacking to travel.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 48.

Below the tussock on Campbell Island the tall native *Dracophyllum* — or "Draco" as the meteorological station staff call it with perverse affection — is the main scrub, taking the place of rata on the Aucklands and *Olearia* on the Snares.

**dracophyllum** *NZ*

[From the Greek δράκων dragon, and φύλλον leaf, referring to the similarity of the plant to *Dracaena*. The name was given to the plant genus in 1798 by naturalist J.J.H. de Labillardière (see DNZE, where it is recorded from 1841–).]

A plant of the Australasian and South Pacific genus *Dracophyllum* (fam. Epacridaceae), which includes the shrub *D. scoparium* of Campbell Island and the taller shrub or tree *D. longifolium* of Auckland and Campbell Islands, and elsewhere in New Zealand.

**17 May 1942** Sorensen, J.H. *The work journal of J.H. Sorensen, coastwatcher in the "Cape expedition", Campbell Island, 1942–44* Diary in possession of NZ Dept of Conservation and Wildlife, Wellington: 14.

Royal Albatross nestlings were scattered here and there, never very many together, but a large number spread over a wide area. A few were noted in the very sheltered situations low down the ridges and under the lee of *Dracophyllum* scrub.

**1976** Kerr, I.S. *Campbell Island: a history* A.H. & A.W. Reed Ltd, Wellington: 3.

Unlike the Auckland Islands, Campbell Island has no forest trees. The only tall scrub consists of patches of the grass tree (*dracophyllum*) and a few *suttonia* and *coprosma*.

**dragonfish**

[The name is a partial translation of the family name for these fishes, which means 'dragon of the deep'. Dragon(-fish) has been used for various fishes since 1661, but the antarctic sense below is new.]

A fish of the fam. Bathydraconiidae, marine fishes occurring only in the Southern Ocean, usu. living near the bottom in water close to the antarctic continent. They are small to medium sized fish, with a long head and pointed snout; and are sometimes called **alligators** or **crocodile fishes**. See also **bathydraconid**, **naked dragonfish** and **nototheniiform**.

**1972** Mason, Theodore K. *All about the frozen continent: Antarctica* Paul Hamlyn, Sydney: 36.

Most fish in antarctic waters are called antarctic cod. Other common types are dragon fish, ice fish, and plunder fish.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 252.

The dragonfishes are a small but diverse family of strictly Antarctic fishes, living at rather great depths close to the Antarctic Continent. Some species are coastal fishes adapted to life under the ice.

**1993** Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 51.

Although the Antarctic has relatively few fish, most of those that do occur are endemic, or found only in the Southern Ocean. In the shallower, coastal waters over 85 percent of the species are endemic, cut off from other oceans by deep surrounding seas and specially adapted for life in the world's coldest waters. Most of these endemics belong to just one order, the Nototheniiformes, and split into four families — the Antarctic cod (Nototheniidae), the plunder fish (Harpagiferidae), the dragon fish (Bathydraconidae) and the ice fish (Channichthyidae).

**drift** Also **drift snow**

[Spec. use of drift a shower of rain, snow, etc., driven along by the wind, used since before 1300 (NOED).]

Wind-driven (rather than freshly fallen) snow, fine, powdery and penetrating, either flowing in the wind or accumulated in deposits which can quickly harden.

**1900** Bernacchi, Louis in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 54.

The South Pole is covered by .. a great permanent anticyclone, more extensive in the winter months than in the summer. Nothing more appalling than these frightful winds, accompanied by tons of drift snow from the mountains above, can be imagined.

**9 April 1902** Scott, Captain Robert F. (1905) *The voyage of the 'Discovery'* Macmillan and Co, London: 213.

At certain places it is undoubtedly calm, but at others the drift snow can be seen rising in clouds and sweeping furiously along.

**5 Apr 1934** Byrd, Richard E. (1939) *Alone* Reader's Union Ltd and Putnam & Co Ltd, London: 69.

Drift was still sifting through the outlet ventilator and past the stovepipe. A full two and a half feet of drift lay packed over the trapdoor.

**1957** Anderson, W. Ellery *Expedition south* Evans Brothers, London: 245.

Drifting snow that blew north across the face of the ice shelf was illuminated by the setting sun, forming an ankle-deep layer of fiery pink above the bluish surface of the ice ... To

wade through this fiery drift, which was moving with a hissing sound as far as one could see, was like a journey into Dante's Inferno.

**1994** Chester, Jonathan *Huskies: polar sledge dogs* Margaret Hamilton Books, Sydney: 7.

While blizzards may carry freshly fallen snow they are more frequently composed of drift snow that is picked up by the violent winds.

**drifted up** adjectival phr. Also **drifted in**

Partly or wholly covered by drift.

**4 May 1902** (Hut Point) Scott, Captain Robert F. (1905) *The voyage of the 'Discovery'* Macmillan and Co, London: 237.

The dogs do not like the idea of being drifted-up; very few had used their kennels during the storm, preferring to coil themselves down outside, where they could break out when the weight of snow got too great.

**1969** (Amery Ice Shelf) *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* June: 5.

The wind, slightly katabatic in effect, blew almost continuously down the ice shelf, causing the near permanent wall of drift ... Caravans and huts were soon drifted up and frequently the only entrance was the roof escape hatch.

**1982** Jackson, Andrew, ed. *ANARE field manual, 2nd edn* [Australian] Antarctic Division, Department of Science and Technology: 57.

By parking across the wind this provides minimum disturbance to drifting snow and minimum inconvenience for drifted-in trains.

**drift ice**

[Drift-ice has been recorded in British English since 1600, for detached pieces of ice drifting with the wind or ocean currents. Prince Edward Island English records drift ice loose masses of ice driven by wind or current, from 1853.]

Floating fragments or small floes of ice in the sea, sometimes affecting navigation of a ship.

**1772-84 (1790)** [source: NOED] Cook Voy 1892.

We spent the night standing off and on, among the drift ice.

**1827** (South Orkneys) Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822-24, 2nd edn* David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 21.

The ice bergs, which form in the bays in winter, and break away in the summer, now produced so much drift ice, that we had frequently to work ship to avoid striking it.

**26 Jan 1840** (nr 142°40'E, 65°54'S) Wilkes, Charles in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 387.

As it still blew fresh from the south-east, and the weather became a little more clear, we both bore away, running through much drift-ice, at the rate of nine knots an hour. We had the barrier in sight; it was, however, too thick to see much beyond it.

**1900** Cook, Frederick A. *Through the first Antarctic night 1898-1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 155.

Though we are eager to push landward and examine the coast carefully, the drift-ice forces us farther and farther away from the shore-line.

**1916** Doorly, Captain Gerald S. *The voyages of the 'Morning'* Smith, Elder & Co., London: 57.

When the first drift ice and stray bergs were met, the ship was approaching the Antarctic Circle on the 180th degree.

**1935** Rachlew, Mrs in Christensen, Lars, transl. fr Norwegian by Jayne, E.M.G. *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 70.

The drift-ice lay very thick during the whole way, and we could see the topmost peak of Proclamation Island, like a shining brown cone against the horizon, in the midst of all the whiteness.

**1952** Gilchrist, Alan in *The Emu* 52(3) Aug: 204.

Heard Island is 5 degrees south of the average northern limit of drift ice in long. 73°E. In April 1948 a berg 2 miles long and 300 feet high was reported at 44°0'S, 55°33'E.

**1965** Wendt, Herbert, transl. fr German by Winston, Richard and Clara *The sex life of the animals* Arthur Barker Ltd, London: 277.

The scientists on the Challenger did more than lower their dragnets into the oceanic trenches. They landed on the Marion Islands in the South Polar zone of drift ice, where they were the first men to encounter a breeding community of King penguins — about one hundred of them.

### dry camp *Falkland Islands*

[Dry from the nature of the ground and its vegetation + camp.]

Countryside on drier land; **hard camp**.

**1885** Thomson, Sir C. Wyville and Murray, John *Report on the scientific results of the voyage of H.M.S. Challenger during the years 1873–76 under the command of Captain George S. Nares, R.N., F.R.S., and the late Captain Frank Tour. Narrative, Vol 1, second part* Her Majesty's Government, London: 892.

The clastic sedimentary rocks of the island are volcanic grit, arkose, graphitic and other shales. Where the shales are inclined at a high angle the ground is much drier than at other places, and is known as "dry camp".

**1989** Davies, T.H. and McAdam, J.H. *Wild flowers of the Falkland Islands* Bluntisham Books, Huntingdon: 20.

One of the most common plants in the Islands, diddle-dee is often the dominant species on dry "hard camp".]

### dry valley *noun and attrib.*

[Spec. use of dry valley recorded since 1898 for a valley in which the original water has disappeared (NOED). Originally, in an antarctic context, this was the name given to a particular valley in Victoria Land (see 1911 quotation).]

A glacial valley in Antarctica, now free or almost free of ice and snow; often having lakes. These valleys are concentrated in Victoria Land. See also **oasis**.

**24 Oct 1911** (Cape Evans) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912: an account of Scott's last expedition* Blandford Press, London: 187.

Detailed maps have now been made of Dry Valley and its vicinity under the head of Ferrar Glacier ... The Dry Valley, for example, has with its barriers and defiles its counterparts in similar characteristic valleys of the southern Alps.

**1914** (nr Cape Adare) Priestley, Raymond E. (1974 repr.) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* Melbourne University Press: 183.

Our chief excursions from Duke of York Island as a base were to the raised moraine at the junction of the Dugdale and Murray Glaciers, to a dry valley which had formerly been filled by the ice from the latter, and to the Newnes Glacier.

**1959** *Polar Record* 9(63) Sept: 573.

During the southern summer of 1958–59 a four man expedition from Victoria University, Wellington, New Zealand, worked a dry valley at the foot of Wright Glacier, Victoria Land.

**1969** *The Polar Times [US]* 69 (Dec): 5.

The largest male sanctuary remaining on this planet is about to succumb to an incursion of females. The National Science

Foundation, after years of resistance, has finally agreed to let six women work out of American bases in the Antarctic during the season of exploration about to begin there. Four of the women make up a team of scientists that was formed at the Institute of Polar Studies of Ohio State University. They will study one of the snow-free "dry valleys" across McMurdo Sound from the main American base.

**1972** Mason, Theodore K *All about the frozen continent: Antarctica* Paul Hamlyn, Sydney: 16.

By airlifting their rubbish from Vanda Station to McMurdo Station where it can be disposed of, the New Zealanders are ensuring that this important dry valley area remains unpolluted.

**1989** May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica* Child & Associates, Sydney: 48.

The most extensive oases are the Dry Valleys in Victoria Land. Lying in the shelter of the Royal Society Range covering an area some 15 to 25 km by 150 km (9 to 15 mls by 93 mls), they consist of three main valleys that were once occupied by glaciers. They are the Taylor Valley, the Wright Valley and the Victoria Valley.

**1994** Waters, Tom in *Earth* Nov: 42.

The Dry Valleys vie with the South Pole as The Place Everyone Wants To Go in Antarctica — simply because they are so beautiful.

### duk *w Aust.*

[Acronym, apparently from code letters D (1942), U (body style utility: amphibious), K (all wheel drive) and W (dual rear axles). There is some suggestion of an alternative derivation of the acronym, in which the first two letters stand for Detroit Universal.]

An amphibious barge (developed in the USA during World War II) using either a propeller or wheels, and operated by Australian armed forces. These vehicles, used for loading and unloading supply ships at antarctic and subantarctic bases, were replaced on Australian bases in 1970 by **larcs**. See also **dukwy**.

**1949** (Macquarie Island) Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 147.

D.U.K.W.S. — amphibious landing craft — had been used with great success.

**1951** (Macquarie Island) *Walkabout. Australian Geographical Magazine* 17(9) Sept: 42.

When attempting to land supplies at Lusitania Bay, an amphibious dukw was wrecked on the rocky beach and Expedition men spent a cold night ashore before being picked up by a surf whaleboat next morning.

**1966** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* June: 23.

To settle those arguments which invariably crop up from time to time about the origin of D.U.K.W., here it is as taken from the U.S.A. War Department and M.G.O. Chart No. 150. "D" is the year of introduction, and in this case is 1942, "A" being 1939 and so on. "U", amphibious type body. "K", front axle drive. "W", rear wheel drive. It is known as Truck, amphibious, 2½ ton, D.U.K.W. Length 31 ft, width 8'3". Height with top up 8'10". Height with top down 8'2". Weight, unladen, 14880 lbs (6.65 tons).

**1994** *Australian Geographic* 36 (Oct-Dec): 26.

He knew that amphibious DUKWs (pronounce "ducks" — DUKW is the manufacturer's code) would be perfect for the job and he lobbied for their use ... The DUKW, best described as a truck with a propeller, handled the island's rocky shorelines exactly as Laurie had predicted.

**dukwy** *Aust.* Also **duky**

A **dukw** operator.

**1966** MacKenzie, D., ed. *Fog 'N Bog [yearbook of Macquarie Island ANARE overwinterers, 1966]* ANARE, Macquarie Island: 6.

I thought our agony complete but worse was yet to be,  
We had to go to Bauer Bay in a mighty treacherous sea.  
We got there quite early, but for dukys had to wait.  
The snow came down, the wind it howled, a really dismal fate.

**1970** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* June: 14.

Not only did the DUKWies have to content [sic] with bilge-pumps clogged with hay (horses, for the eating of), but also seasick natives. A few thousand sea miles later the hardy DUKWies came to the conclusion that the greater percentage of intrepid explorers are especially trained in the art of being seasick at the sight of anything rougher than a wet lawn.

**dusky albatross** *Obs.*

The **sooty albatross**.

**15 Feb 1841** (McMurdo Sound area) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London: 173.

The birds about us for the last few days have been white petrel, immature petrels, lestris, a dusky albatross or two, and a stormy petrel.

**1875** Kidder, JH *Contributions to the natural history of Kerguelen Island, made in connection with the American Transit-of-Venus expedition, 1874-75. 1. Ornithology* Government Printing Office, Washington: 23.

Although I have often observed the dusky albatross [sc. *Phoebastria fuliginosa*] sailing along very close to the surface of the water, or circling round rocky hill-tops, I have never seen it feed, except in captivity. Then both birds ate freely of fresh meat. The peculiar call (which can be heard for a very long distance) is most often given by the setting bird, and answered by its mate flying near by.

**dusky rockcod** *noun*

The marine fish *Trematomus newnesi* (fam. Nototheniidae) of antarctic waters. See also **rock cod**.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 382.

*Trematomus newnesi* ... Dusky rockcod .. Probably a circum-polar species ... Not commercially exploited, this species plays an important role in the diet of many Antarctic seabirds.

**1993** Miller, Richard Gordon *A history and atlas of the fishes of the Antarctic ocean* Foresta Institute for Ocean and Mountain Studies, Carson City, Nevada: 192.

"Dusky rockcod" ... Brownish, usually spotted or marbled.

# — E —

**eaglet** *noun and attrib.*, *Tristan da Cunha*. Also **haglet**  
[Contraction of **black eaglet**.]

The oceanic bird *Pterodroma macroptera macroptera*: see **great-winged petrel**.

**24 May 1906** Barrow, K.M. (1910) *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 42.

He brought back some eaglet eggs, and sent us three which we had for supper. They are about as big as a duck's egg, white in colour, and of a slightly fishy taste.

**1963** Mackay, Margaret *Angry island: the story of Tristan da Cunha (1506–1963)* Arthur Barker, London: 196.

Once John Glass swam around the Bluff and brought the missionary trio three eaglet eggs for supper.

**1984** (Tristan da Cunha) Richardson, M.E. in *Cormorant* 12(2): 189.

In 1950 and 1951, 50 and 125 "haglet" chicks were collected under licence.

**earth shadow** *Often pl., as earth shadows*

An area of shadow, or bands of shadow, seen in the sky; noted esp. in the region of Mt Erebus (see 1909 quotation).

**1909** (Cape Royds) Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907–1909* William Heinemann, London: 223.

We observed occasionally about this time that peculiar phenomenon of McMurdo Sound called "earth shadows." Long dark bars, projecting up into the sky from the western mountains, made their appearance at sunrise. These lines are due to the shadow of the giant Erebus being cast across the western mountains.

**1943** Hydrographic Office, US Navy Department *Sailing directions for Antarctica*. H.O. no 138 HO, Washington: 40.

Earth shadows, or aerial shadows, are believed to be produced by mountain peaks, and take the form of dark blue bands projected into the sky as straight or curved shadows.

**1950** Mountevans, Admiral Lord *The desolate Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 154.

The Aurora Australis, or Southern Lights, gave us something beautiful and awe-inspiring to look at and talk about, and Wilson managed to produce some realistic and dainty water-colour sketches of the aurora as well as of other natural phenomena, such as mock-suns, earth-shadows, opalescent clouds, and mirage at sunset.

**1959** Siple, Paul *90° South: the story of the American South Pole conquest* G.P. Putnam's Sons, New York: 242.

During this prolonged twilight from March 22 until May 4, when we walked outdoors we could distinguish an ominous and ever-increasing gray arc rising further from the horizon opposite the sun each day. It was the earth shadow, a phenomenon rarely noticed in temperate latitudes where the sun sets in a matter of minutes rather than weeks as at the Pole. This earth shadow is actually the portion of the atmosphere completely shaded from the setting sun by the earth, and here at the Pole was separated from the sunlit portion of

the atmosphere by a distinct gray line which rose higher in the sky each day.

**1962** (McMurdo) Richards, R.W. *The Ross Sea shore party 1914–17* Scott Polar Research Institute Special Publication no. 2: 9.

There was never-ending interest in watching the play of light and shadow on this mighty range, and as we learned later as the days shortened, a never-ending play of colour too, which not only tinged the land, but also suffused the sky with all shades from delicate pink to green and purple, slashed at times with deep toned "earth shadows" in the shadow.

**East Antarctica** Also **Eastern Antarctica**

The larger of the two distinct parts of Antarctica, also called **Greater Antarctica**, lying mostly east of the Greenwich meridian and containing the older rocks of Antarctica. East Antarctica has ancient pre-Cambrian continental shield rocks under younger sedimentary rocks. The Transantarctic Mountains roughly divide it from geologically different **West Antarctica**, and both parts are covered by the massive **antarctic ice sheet**.

**1902** Balch, Edwin Swift *Antarctica* Allen, Lane & Scott, Philadelphia: 13.

It is necessary ... to find some term in place of the cumbersome phrases "the lands south of Australia" and "the lands south of South America" and taking North America and South America as models, it seems as if "East Antarctica" and "West Antarctica" answered the necessity satisfactorily. It remains to be seen whether other geographers will see fit to adopt these terms, but they will be used in this monograph for the sake of convenience, brevity and clearness.

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 10.

Mr E. S. Balch informs me that he and Dr Nordenskjöld independently suggested that all Antarctica should be divided into two parts, termed East and West Antarctica, according to the position of each east or west of Greenwich.

**1959** Roberts, B. in *Polar Record* 9(61) Jan: 358.

The Antarctic continent comprises two main regions of different geological character, separated by the relatively low-lying area between the Weddell Sea and Ross Sea. These two regions are sometimes referred to by the rather vague names "East Antarctica" and "West Antarctica", originally proposed by E.S. Balch in his work *Antarctica ...* We do not yet know whether there is any clear morphological division of the continent into two parts, and until the nature and position of any supposed depression between the Weddell Sea and Ross Sea has been established, it seems wiser to use terms like Pacific sector, or the existing place-names which refer to smaller areas.

**1964** *Antarctic*. *Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(10) Jun: 451.

The Amundsen-Scott Pole station, also established in 1957, consists of 11 buildings on the inland ice 9,000 ft. above sea level at the South Geographic Pole on the high polar plateau of Eastern Antarctica.

**1985** Elliot, D.H. in Bonner, W.N. and Walton, D.W.H., eds *Key environments: Antarctica* Pergamon Press, Oxford: 39.

If the ice were to melt, East Antarctica would be largely above sea level and the sub-glacial Gamburtsev Mountains would become a range over 3000 m high; West Antarctica would form an archipelago with deep channels and basins between the various islands.

**1992** Steger, Will and Bowermaster, Jon *Crossing Antarctica* Alfred A. Knopf, New York: 46.

The continent is divided into regions known as East and West Antarctica (though every direction leading from the South Pole is actually north).

### East Antarctic ice sheet *Also East Antarctic ice cap*

[East Antarctic + ice sheet.]

The larger part of the **antarctic ice sheet**, a vast area of ice some 10 million km<sup>2</sup> (4 million miles<sup>2</sup>) up to about 4½ km thick, composed of this and the **West Antarctic ice sheets**. The Transantarctic Mountains form the landward boundary between the two areas.

**1975** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* X(2) Mar/Apr: 54.

Based on present knowledge, the east antarctic ice sheet — and even more the smaller ice sheets of West Antarctica and of Greenland — can be ruled out for the disposal of radioactive wastes that need to be isolated from the biosphere for several hundred thousand years.

**1995** Crossley, Louise *Explore Antarctica* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 13.

The East Antarctic ice sheet grew to about its present size by 15 Ma [sc. million years ago].

**1997** Robinson, Kim Stanley *Antarctica* HarperCollins, London: 108.

'The old view,' he explained, 'was that the East Antarctic ice cap is an old and stable feature.'

### east wind drift

A westward-flowing surface ocean current occurring between about 60°S and the antarctic continent, and driven by easterly winds. The current is also known as the **antarctic coastal current**. See also **west wind drift**.

**1958** David, P.M. *The distribution of the Chætognotha of the Southern Ocean* The Discovery Reports vol. XXIX, issued by the National Institute of Oceanography, Cambridge University Press, London: 209.

The antarctic zone was accessible from about 52°S to the ice edge in 65°S. Only Station 2812 in this line is within the area of the east Wind Drift.

**1988** Moss, Sanford and del Eiris, Lucia *Natural history of the Antarctic Peninsula* Columbia University Press, NY: 29.

The Peninsula almost blocks the East Wind Drift and deflects most of this current northward where it reflects to the east into the bosom of the West Wind Drift.

**1993** Fiennes, Ranulph *Mind over matter: the epic crossing of the Antarctic continent* Sinclair-Stevenson, London: 279.

The surface waters of the Southern Ocean which are close to the edge of Antarctica are driven by the East Wind Drift, and those further north by the West Wind Drift.

### Eaton's pintail *Also Eaton's teal*

[Presum. named after Rev A.E. Eaton, naturalist on the 1874–75 English expedition to observe the Transit of Venus in HMS Volage and Supply.]

The small duck *Anas eatoni*. The **Kerguelen pintail** is the subspecies found on Kerguelen: the duck is also present on the Crozet islands, and Amsterdam and St Paul where it has been introduced.

**1875** Kidder, J.H. *Contributions to the natural history of Kerguelen Island, made in connection with the American Transit-of-Venus expedition, 1874–75. 1. Ornithology* Government Printing Office, Washington: 4.

*Querquedula eatoni*, Sharpe. Eaton's Teal. I was entirely at a loss for a name for this teal; but, just as these sheets were going to press, I received, through the courtesy of Mr. Salvin, advance proof-sheets of the "Ibis", in which it is described as new ... A rather small duck, the sexes of which differ but little.

**1988** Madge, Steve and Burn, Hilary *Wildfowl: an identification guide to the ducks, geese and swans of the world* Christopher Helm, London: 223.

Eaton's pintail ... the most likely duck to be encountered on Kerguelen, Crozet, St Paul and Amsterdam Islands in the southern Indian Ocean.

### Eaton's skate

[See **Eaton's pintail**.]

The fish *Bathyraja eatonii* (fam. Rajiidae), occurring in shallow marine waters of Kerguelen and Heard Islands, and north of the Antarctic Peninsula. It is not fished commercially.

[1879 (Kerguelen Island) Günther, A. in *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society* 168: 166.

*Raja eatonii* ... Brownish black above, with indistinct round whitish spots; whitish below.]

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds. *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 224.

*Bathyraja eatonii* .. Eaton's skate ... Around the Kerguelen and Heard Islands, where it had originally been thought to be endemic, but in recent years specimens have been obtained also around the South Orkney and South Shetland Islands and even farther south in the Atlantic sector.

### ecstatic display *Also ecstatic attitude*

A display given by most species of penguin and some albatrosses, consisting of distinctive head, neck and flipper or wing movements and a distinctive call reaching a peak of intensity before finishing. In penguins it is generally given by males, probably primarily to attract females.

**1914** Leveck, G. Murray *Antarctic penguins: a study of their social habits* William Heinemann, London: 42.

Both [penguins] perhaps would then assume the "ecstatic" attitude, rocking their necks from side to side as they faced one another.

[1921 Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* Duckworth, London: 238.

Occasionally these lonesome females would indulge in an extraordinary practice. Standing upright in their excavations, they would gaze intently into the heavens, and, slowly waving their flippers, give throat to a soft, guttural, humming sound — as though abandoning themselves to a state of rapture. This ecstatic condition never lasted more than about fifteen seconds, but it seemed to be exceedingly infectious. As soon as one bird started, others in the vicinity would at once follow suit, but sometimes a score or more might be

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

seen in this state of beatitude, humming and flapping in unison. I first interpreted the performance to be a cry for a mate; but, later, I saw mated hens, with eggs, conducting themselves thus — and supposed they were calling for their husbands. Subsequently, as I saw both husbands and wives behaving so together, I had to 'give it up', and confess that I had no idea what the habit could mean, unless the birds were under the influence of some sensation that is common to both sexes, and peculiar to the breeding-season — for I never saw them perform thus except when nesting.]

**1957** Sullivan, Walter *Quest for a continent* Secker & Warburg, London: 11.

The collection of stones is done by the male [sc. Adeliel] and is actually part of the courtship ... Another aspect of the courtship is the assumption of an ecstatic attitude ... The bird tilts his head back and then stretches his neck, lifting the point of his bill as high as possible, somewhat like a seal balancing a ball on its nose. Meanwhile the flippers wave back and forth with the stately tempo of a heron in flight.

**1968** Stonehouse, Bernard *Penguins: the World of Animals series* Arthur Barker, London/Golden Press, NY: 66.

Males have a stronger site attachment than females. In many species, perhaps all, the lone male has a special display — a call with head raised and wings extended — indicating that he has a nest, but no partner. This announcement, mis-called the 'ecstatic' display by early observers, not surprisingly affects every female within sight and hearing.

**1993** Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 173.

Up to 13 younger wanderers have been seen together but usually a green contains just one or two males and the female they are trying to impress. Their courtship is often called the ecstatic display because that is exactly how the birds appear. Spreading their massive wings, they shake their heads at each other, whining all the time. Then, starting to vibrate the mandibles of its enormous beak, each bird gradually raises its head up to the sky and closes the bill with a loud snap as it reaches the vertical. This goes on for some time interspersed, often when another albatross is flying over, with the bird throwing its head up into the air and making sky calls. Eventually, with bills pointed vertically, the birds emit a powerful braying whistle followed by an inhaled sigh. This courtship ritual is one of the most impressive of any bird and it needs to be because the wanderers form permanent partnerships.

**1995** Kalman, Bobbie *Penguins* Crabtree Publishing Co, NY: 31. [glossary] Ecstatic display: A male penguin's movements to attract a mate.

## ECW gear US

[Acronym from 'Extreme Cold Weather'.]

Extreme cold weather clothing.

**1995** McFarling, Usha Lee in *Boston Globe* 27 Feb: 41.

Those reporting for an Antarctic flight wear government-issue "ECW" — or extreme cold weather gear — insulated boots, wind overalls and down parkas.

**1997** Cox, Jack in *Denver Post* 23 Nov: 6E.

An ECW outfit typically consists of long underwear, wool shirt and pants, down vest, wind pants and a down parka with a fur-lined hood, plus wool mittens with leather shells, a wool hat, face mask, goggles and a pair of air-insulated "bunny boots," developed for aviators and said to be warm down to 100 below.

**1998** USAP air ticket *Christchurch–McMurdo*.

To avoid being bumped from the flight wear the appropriate ECW gear. Parka, Wind pants, Bunny Boots. Do not arrive for transportation intoxicated.

**eelee** See *irre*

**eeouk, eeyuk** See *auk*

**egging** verbal noun. Subantarctic: esp. Falkland Islands, Tristan da Cunha. Often used adjectivally as **egging day**, **egging week**

[Egging collecting wild fowl eggs, is recorded from 1883. From the abundance of wildfowl eggs collected there, the Falkland Islands have been called 'the Egg Market'.]

The activity of gathering wild eggs — penguin or albatross.

**1915** (Heard Island) Harvey, Rufus Watson *Thrilling adventures in the Antarctic wilds* Unpublished record, in possession of Tim Vasquez: 58.

We had no soap nor had we any eggs so decided to go egging that day.

**1958** *Tristan Topics* 1 (June): 2.

Carrier pigeons are to be introduced to provide communication with "Fattening" and "Egging" parties.

**1970** Munch, Peter A. *The song tradition of Tristan da Cunha*. Indiana University Publications, Folklore Institute Monograph Series vol. 22: 159.

These "appling days" or "egging days" were quite informal, with no sharp separation of work and play. The Tristan Islanders did not perform anything like the elaborate harvest festivals or other work celebrations, usually performed after the work is finished, which are so frequently found among "primitive" as well as "civilized" peoples.

**1987** Strange, Ian J. *The Falkland Islands and their natural history* David and Charles, Newton Abbot, Devon: 142.

Until thirty years ago, several local vessels were employed in collecting large numbers of penguin and albatross eggs, both for use in the rural communities and for sale in Stanley. In the case of the latter, small boats, their holds full of eggs, would arrive after an egging trip at the public jetty, where the eggs would be sold. Today the tradition of egging remains, but has greatly diminished ... But it is still possible to sit down to a breakfast table in a few camp houses and be offered a fried penguin egg or a boiled albatross egg, the latter so large that a teacup takes the place of the conventional eggcup.

**1994** Simpson, Tim *Cooking the Falkland Island way* Peregrine Publishing, Bangor: 48.

People have traditionally gathered penguin eggs in the Islands for years. 'Egging Week' was in October and was a holiday for this purpose. Both Gentoo and Magellanic penguin eggs were collected ... Egging Week no longer exists and in fact the tradition of egg-gathering is dying out. There have been attempts to stop it altogether, but I think people are becoming more conservation-minded quite naturally without the need for a law against egging.

**Egmont hen** Historical. Also **Egmont fowl**

[Abbrev. of **Port Egmont hen**.]

The sea bird *Catharacta skua*: see **skua**.

**17 Nov 1820** (Macquarie Island) Bellingshausen, Thaddeus (1831) in Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. (1945) *The voyage of Captain Bellingshausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819–1821* Hakluyt Society, London, vol II: 336.

Mr Demidov, without moving from one spot, shot twenty Egmont hens.

**1867** [source: NOED] Smyth *Sailor's Word-bk*.



Egmont, or Port Egmont fowls, the large Antarctic gulls with dark-brown plumage, called shoemakers.

## eighth

[Spec. use of eighth one of eight equal parts, recorded since 1523 (NOED).]

A measure of the concentration of **pack ice** on the sea (see 1956 quotation), also known as an **octa**. See also **tenth**.

**1956** Armstrong, Terence and Roberts, Brian in *Polar Record* 8(52) Jan: 6.

[glossary] Ice cover: The amount of sea ice encountered; measured in eighths of the visible surface of the sea covered with ice.

**1979** Lewis, David *Voyage to the ice: the Antarctic expedition of Solo* Australian Broadcasting Commission/Wm Collins Sons & Co: 10.

Not until six hours later were we in the clear, in open pack that covered no more than one eighth of the sea's surface.

## elephant *noun*

[Transf. use of elephant the trunked land-mammal (NOED: c1300-), from the huge size of the seal and the inflated somewhat trunk-like proboscis.]

### An elephant seal.

**22 Jan 1786** (Falkland Islands) Portlock, Captain Nathaniel (1789) *A voyage round the world: but more particularly to the north-west coast of America: performed in 1785, 1786, 1787, and 1788, in the King George and Queen Charlotte*. N. Israel facs, Amsterdam (1968): 43.

The elephant was killed with all the ease imaginable, but at the North point of the bay a number of sea lions were drawn up in a kind of rank on the beach, and disputed our passage with the greatest ferocity.

**21 Dec 1811** (Tristan da Cunha) Lambert, Jonathan (1818) in *Blackwood's Edinburgh Magazine* IV (xxi): 283.

All this stock, together with ourselves, live at present on the flesh of the elephant. The pigs, however, may live altogether on *herbage*, where they are; for which purpose, indeed, I put them down there; but I give them an elephant once in ten or fifteen days to keep them in heart.

**1821** ("New Shetland") *The Literary Gazette and Journal of Belles Lettres [London]* vol 5, quoted in *Polar Record* (1946) 4(32) Jul: 389.

Some of the people, during their stay on shore, contrived to kill an elephant and two or three seals; while we were thus employed, the whale-boat pulled over to the main shore, likewise in search of water. There, as one of the men was attacking an elephant, he had the misfortune to receive a very severe bite on the hand from the animal, which threw itself back, and surprising its assailant behind, would certainly have bit his hand off had it been less exhausted.

**1831** (New Plymouth, South Shetlands) Weddell, James, quoted in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 333.

Understanding there were plenty of elephant on the beaches, I lost no time in looking for them, and on the 7th sent away two boats, which returned next day loaded, having met with about thirty elephant, which were killed.

**1832** (Macquarie and Campbell Islands) Captain Harvey, quoted in Kerr, I.S. (1976) *Campbell Island: a history* A.H. & A.W. Reed Ltd, Wellington: 27.

McQuarries is entirely cut up, I landed on both ends of the Island, but could see no sign of an Elephant whatever.

**15 Feb 1855** (Heard Island) Rogers, Erasmus Darwin, quoted in Richards, Rhys (1981) in *American Neptune* 41: 295.

At daylight raised land ahead ... Saw plenty of elephant on 3 different beaches.

**1879** (Kerguelen Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 187.

The Elephants, when stirred up, raised their heads and put on their usual savage expression which they exhibit when disturbed, which is effected by contracting the facial muscles about the nose, so as to throw it into a series of very prominent transverse folds.

**1906** Rudmose Brown, R.N., Mossman, RC and Pirie, J.H. Harvey *The voyage of the "Scotia", being the record of a voyage of exploration in Antarctic Seas by Three of the Staff* William Blackwood and Sons, Edinburgh: 261.

The seals and elephants are now practically exterminated, and Gough Island has, in consequence, long ceased to be visited.

**2 Nov 1941** Wilson, R.F., quoted in Kerr, I.S. (1976) *Campbell Island: a history* A.H. & A.W. Reed Ltd, Wellington: 105.

Went for a walk to Garden Cove. All the young elephants are now learning to swim in a small creek. They are worth watching as they race up and down. They now have beautiful silver and blue-grey coats.

**1957** Booy, D.M. *Rock of exile: a narrative of Tristan da Cunha* J.M. Dent & Sons, London: 171.

The twins had already been busy for some time on Big Beach, skinning the elephant.

**1972** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Apr: 23.

Scotland has its seals — the grey Atlantic seal, pupping in the autumn in secluded rocky geos of Shetland and other islands and the common or harbour seal lying up on inaccessible sand banks and skerries. Neither can compare with Macquarie's malodorous monsters, the ubiquitous elephants.

**1991** Venables, Stephen *Island at the edge of the world: a South Georgia odyssey* Hodder and Staughton, London: 90.

Julian and I found three great elephants wedged in the stream, sleeping blissfully with heads half-submerged.

## elephant *verb*

To make a meal of **elephant seal**.

**1915** (Macquarie Island) Ainsworth, GF in Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911-1914* William Heinemann, London, vol II: 251.

At 7.30 A.M. on the 20th the *Tutanekai* was observed coming up the east coast, and as we had "elephantened" at 6 A.M. we were ready to face the day.

## elephant blubber

The thick fat layer of the **elephant seal**, formerly used as a fuel and in manufacturing (see **blubber**).

**15 Jan 1786** (Falkland Islands) Portlock, Captain Nathaniel (1789) *A voyage round the world: but more particularly to the north-west coast of America: performed in 1785, 1786, 1787, and 1788, in the King George and Queen Charlotte*. N. Israel facs, Amsterdam (1968): 37.

Captain Dixon .. very readily undertook to pilot us to Swan Island, through the inner passage, as soon as he had got a quantity of elephant blubber on board, which then lay at one of the outer keys

**1919** (Macquarie Island) Mawson, Sir Douglas *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society of Australasia (SA branch)* XX: 9.

The elephant blubber or penguin carcasses, the latter having been clubbed (either stunned or dead) are packed in, the door screwed up and superheated steam turned on for 12 hours. The fat runs away into tanks and is barrelled for shipment; the bones, the flesh and the feathers are dumped as refuse.

**elephanter** *Also elephant oiler*

A ship used for sailing to a hunting ground and sealing there to collect **elephant oil**; a person (from such a ship) who hunts and kills **elephant seals** for their oil.

**1948** Murphy, Robert Cushman (1985 edn) *Logbook for Grace* McGill-Queen's University Press, Kingston: 167.

Among specialised elephanter .. it was common to boil the oil for ten to fifteen minutes, then put the scrap pieces through a special "scrap press".

**1985** Busch, Briton Cooper *The war against the seals: a history of the North American seal fishery* McGill-Queen's University Press, Kingston: 164.

The first American vessel specially fitted out as an elephanter, an authority on oils and skins, was the *Alliance* of New Bedford, which returned from Patagonia in 1804 with a full cargo of oil.

**1992** (Falkland Islands) Strange, Ian J. *A field guide to the wildlife of the Falkland Islands and South Georgia* Harper Collins, London: 37.

There are records of penguin skins being used for this purpose [sc. fuel for vessel's tryposts] by elephant oilers in South Georgia.

**1996** Downes, Max *Indexing sealer's logbooks from Heard Island* ANARE Research Notes no 97, Australian Antarctic Division, Kingston: 8.

Many elephanter's place names were perpetuated in the first official map of Heard Island — the British Admiralty Chart 802 of 1874, prepared after the visit of the *Challenger* Expedition.

**elephant hunting** *verbal noun phr. Also elephanting*

The occupation of hunting and killing **elephant seals** for their **blubber**.

**1876** Kidder, J.H. *Contributions to the natural history of Kerguelen Island, made in connection with the United States Transit-of-Venus expedition, 1874-75* Government Printing Office, Washington, vol II: 40.

The increasing scarcity of the sea-elephant, and consequent uncertainty in hunting it, together with the diminished demand for the oil since the introduction of coal-oil into general use, have caused a great falling-off in the business of elephant-hunting. The Crozet Islands, for example, had not been "worked" for five years, and at Kerguelen there was only one small schooner engaged in this pursuit, two others making Three Island Harbor their headquarters, but spending the "season" at Heard's Island, three hundred miles to the southward.

**5 Nov 1912** Murphy, Robert Cushman (1948) *Logbook for Grace* Robert Hale Ltd, London: 122.

Something tells me that the "elephanting" at South Georgia is going to shrivel the very marrow of my bones.

**1929** (South Georgia) Matthews, L. Harrison in *Discovery Reports* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London, vol 1: 246.

In the old style elephant hunting was combined with fur sealing, until the extinction of the fur seal confined the business to oil hunting alone.

**1992** (Falkland Islands) Strange, Ian J. *A field guide to the wildlife of the Falkland Islands and South Georgia* Harper Collins, London: 36.

Sealing for skins as distinct from sealing for oil (the latter was often referred to as 'elephanting'), was probably first conducted on a large scale in the Falkland Islands some years after Captain Cook's publication of his discovery of Fur Seals at South Georgia in 1775.

**elephant oil** *noun and attrib. Also elephant seal oil*

Oil from **elephant blubber**.

**1829** (Falkland Islands) Barnard, Capt. Charles H. *A narrative of the sufferings and adventures of Captain Charles H. Barnard in a voyage round the world, during the years 1812, 1813, 1814, 1815, & 1816* Printed for the author by J. Lindon, New York: vi.

The ulterior intentions, after arriving at the designated place, were to procure, in the first season, as many seal skins as practicable, stow them in the brig, complete her lading with elephant oil, (being well supplied with oil casks,) and despatch her for New York.

**1833** (South Georgia) Fanning, Edmund *Voyages round the World; with Selected Sketches of Voyages to the South seas, North and South Pacific Oceans, China, Etc.* Collins & Hannay, New York: 296.

An English elephant oil ship had touched at this bay, at the close of the past season.

**15 Aug 1842** Smyley, W.H. quoted in Bertrand, Kenneth J. (1971) *Americans in Antarctica* American Geographical Society special publication no. 39: 213.

My voige is for seal and Eliphant Oil and perhaps it might be in your power to give me Some information if you fell in with any and if not it might Save me much labour and trouble.

**5 Nov 1912** Murphy, Robert Cushman (1948) *Logbook for Grace* Robert Hale Ltd, London: 127.

The Old Man has not issued sufficient warm clothing. He probably won't get half a cargo of "elephant" oil.

**1924** Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history* by Rupert Vallentin Clarendon Press, Oxford: 238.

The number of fur-seals killed at the Shetlands between 1821-2 has been estimated at 320,000; while of elephant oil there was produced 940 tons.

**1950** Roberts, Brian in *Polar Record* 5(40): 580.

The first landing on Heard Island was subsequently made in March 1855 by Captain E. Darwin Rogers of *The Corinthian*, then on a whaling cruise from New London. He took 400 barrels of elephant oil and reported the new island to his employers, Perkins and Smith, urging them to dispatch a vessel to this exceptionally promising field.

**1988** (Heard Island) *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions newsletter* Jun: 7.

Commercial success of a voyage was generally measured in terms of the number of barrels of whale or Elephant Seal oil shipped home or trans-shipped to other vessels.

**1996** Downes, Max *Indexing sealer's logbooks from Heard Island* ANARE Research Notes no 97, Australian Antarctic Division, Kingston: 5.

Some of the vessels in the Heard Island elephant oil trade were listed in surveys of the whale fishery.

**elephant seal** *noun and attrib.*

[The name elephant seal is also used for the northern hemisphere *Mirounga angustirostris*, but its earliest recorded use is for the southern hemisphere animal *M. leonina*. By contrast, the earliest recorded use of the older term sea elephant is for the northern hemisphere animal.]

The seal *Mirounga leonina* (fam. Phocidae), a very large marine mammal which lives in southern circumpolar regions, especially in the subantarctic. The adult male has an inflatable nose or 'proboscis', can grow to 4.2 m

(14 ft) and weigh almost 4 tonnes (880 lb), and is the largest pinniped (seals, sea lions and walruses); the female is much smaller (2.6 m and 350 kg, or 8 ft 6 in and 770 lb). Though on land they are lumbering and often lethargic in behaviour, at sea they are agile hunters.

The seal was once hunted, on some islands to extinction, for its oil-yielding blubber. It is also known as the **southern elephant seal**, and equally commonly as a **sea elephant**, and was once called a **bottlenose seal**. See also **beachmaster**, **ellie**, **harem**, **slug**.

**1902** Beddard, Frank Evers *Mammalia. The Cambridge Natural History vol X* Macmillan and Co, London: 455.

The Elephant Seal is mild and inoffensive, unless enraged, and, of course, during the breeding season.

**1929** (South Georgia) Matthews, L. Harrison in *Discovery Reports* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London, vol 1: 244.

When lying on the beach elephant seal have a peculiar habit of throwing sand and shingle on to their backs ... In the writer's opinion it is to keep the skin moist that the habit has been developed.

**1950** *Polar Record* 5(40) Jul: 583.

More commercial interest in Heard Island dates from 1907, when application for a licence to exploit it was first made to His Majesty's Government in the United Kingdom. The Elephant Seals, which had recovered their numbers from the slaughter of 1855–75, were again killed in large numbers for their oil. For many years the island was exploited under licence from the British Government by the Kerguelen Sealing and Whaling Company of Cape Town, a subsidiary of Messrs Irvin Johnson (South Africa) Ltd.

**1963** Ley, Willy *The Poles: Life nature library* Time-Life International, Nederland: 92.

[caption] On Kerguelen Island, 2,600 miles below Australia, a bull elephant seal inflates its 15-inch snout in a lusty roar. The trunk usually hangs limp.

**1974** *Aurora: the official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Dec: 4.

On the island he made a point of collecting a sizeable elephant seal os penis to present to his University Choral Society for use as a conductor's baton.

**1991** Venables, Stephen *Island at the edge of the world: a South Georgia odyssey* Hodder and Staughton, London: 49.

The bull's sheer bulk and prodigious snout were awesome — small wonder that the early explorers called the beasts 'sea elephants', a term now proscribed to the official 'elephant seal'.

**1992** *Casey News* July: [2].

Pat and Chris amazed all with their dance style resembling a cross between Rudolph Nureyov [sic] on stilts and an elephant seal in agony.

**1997** Diski, Jenny *Skating to Antarctica* Granta Books, London: 145.

Elephant seal is one of those euphemistic names humans give creatures who remind them of what they don't want to be reminded of. If an honest name were to be given, they would be flaccid penis seal, because the wrinkled concert-inæd length and the bobbing, swinging floppiness of those extended noses is a satire on the male reproductive member.

**elephant sealing** *verbal noun phr.*

**Elephant hunting.**

**1982** (South Georgia) Bonner, Nigel in *BAS Club Newsletter* no. 12 (Christmas): 21.

When I returned to South Georgia in 1956 it was as a biologist with a special responsibility for the elephant sealing industry.

### elephant seal louse

[**Elephant seal** + louse *a parasitic insect, recorded from c725–(NOED).*]

The sucking louse *Lepidophthirus macrorhini* (fam. Echinophthiriidæ), an external parasite which lives only on the **southern elephant seal**, where it burrows in the skin of the hind flippers. The louse has been reported from seals around Kerguelen and Macquarie Islands, and in the South African region.

**1960** Carrick, Robert in *Polar Record* 10(66) Sept: 300.

The suspended animation of the Elephant Seal Louse (*Lepidophthirus macrorhini*) during prolonged immersion at sea .. offers information of fundamental importance on the extent to which anatomical, physiological, and behavioural mechanisms are perfectable.

**1992** Campbell, David *The crystal desert* Secker & Warburg, London: 62.

It is no small feat, .. like the elephant seal louse, to excavate and huddle within an air-filled sheath in scaly epidermis while being squeezed by 30 atmospheres of pressure at a depth of 300 metres.

**elephant seal oil** *See* **elephant oil**

**elephant seal wallow** *Also* **elephant wallow**

A **wallow** used by **elephant seals**.

**4 Dec 1930** (Macquarie Island) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 360.

At Lusitania Bay and back on slopes rising to hills, and on slopes N of the bay, are great many Elephant wallows, some of these 20 paces in diameter and occupied by thick peaty mud. A hopeless place for a human being to fall into, one could not get out — a quick-mud — and the stench would be injurious. But in there may be seen numbers of elephants almost submerged and evidently enjoying themselves no end.

**30 Nov 1942** Sorensen, J.H. *The work journal of J.H. Sorensen, coastwatcher in the "Cape expedition", Campbell Island, 1942–44* Diary, original in possession of NZ Dept of Conservation and Wildlife: 124.

Owing to the long fleeces carried, there is some mortality with sheep getting cast or falling into holes. Old elephant wallows claim a number, lambs as well as adults.

**1984** Headland, Robert *The island of South Georgia* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 3.

Another distinctive ground feature is found near many flatter areas of the coast behind beaches — elephant seal wallows. These are formed by the seals lying closely packed, in mud during their moulting periods. The wallows are often 1 m or more deep and become exceedingly foetid with skin, fur, faeces, combined with thin mud and the occasional dead seal. The wallows are at their worst during February and March, the height of the moulting season, when they emit rising clouds of noxious vapour. The author can testify to the extreme undesirability of falling into them.

**1991** (Davis station) Bowden, Tim *Antarctica and back in sixty days* Australian Broadcasting Corporation, Sydney: 151.

A group of us decided to go for a walk along the coast to an elephant seal wallow.

**ellie** Also *ellie seal*[Abbreviation of *elephant*.]An **elephant seal**.

**1990** (South Georgia) Naveen, Ron, Monteath, Colin, de Roy, Tui and Jones, Mark *Wild ice: Antarctic journeys* Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington: 26.

One's ears tune quickly to .. the belching, grunting, and defecating southern elephant seals. (The belching is extraordinary, suggesting that these "ellies" suffer from the worst imaginable cases of indigestion or gastroenteritis.)

**1995** ANARE *Casey yearbook 1995 ANARE*, Casey [Antarctica]: 159.

[glossary] Ellie seals: Big, fat, smelly seals, usually seen at Browning.

**1996** (Macquarie Island) *Icy News: Antarctic Division staff newsletter* 1 Mar: [3].

Clive & Tracy continue on the monthly ele seal count.

**ellie wallow****Elephant seal wallow.**

**1993** (Macquarie Island) *Station News* Feb: 4.

And now to return to the very serious business indeed of developing the readers' vocabulary [sic] of ANARE jargon. Please pay attention as an examination will be held later to determine whether you have done your homework. For those who pass with distinction the first prize will be a one hour therapeutic bath in an ellie wallow, second prize will be a two hour bath in an Ellie wallow, and for third prize a two hour bath in an Ellie wallow in company with the Ellie.

**emerald rockcod** Also *emerald notothen*

[Emerald, from the green spots on the fish + rock cod.]

The circumpolar marine fish *Pagothenia bernacchii* (fam. Nototheniidae) which grows to about 35 cm (14 in) length and is most common in waters to 200 m (650 ft) depth. It is not fished commercially.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 366.

*Pagothenia bernacchii* ... Emerald rockcod ... 3 green spots on upper part of pectoral fin base ... Circum-Antarctic species ... Not commercially exploited.

**1988** Williams, Richard in *Australian Natural History* 22(11) Summer: 520.

Among the Antarctic cods, the Emerald Rockcod (*Pagothenia bernacchii*) is an example of a completely benthic species, with a fully ossified (bony) skeleton, well-developed muscle blocks and few lipid deposits.

**1990** Gon, O. and Heemstra, P.C. *Fishes of the Southern Ocean* J.L.B. Smith Institute of Ichthyology, Grahamstown: 317.

*Trematomus bernacchi* ... Emerald notothen ... In life, body pale brown or pinkish-brown, darker dorsally ... 3 green spots anterior to pectoral-fin base.

**emperor penguin** noun and attrib. Also *emperor*

[Emperor is recorded in common names from 1773, perh. used here from the size of the penguin and its bearing, + penguin.]

The circumpolar penguin *Aptenodytes forsteri* (fam. Spheniscidae), the largest penguin and heaviest seabird, which breeds in winter on antarctic fast ice or coastal islands. The adult bird is predominantly dark grey-blue to black, with a white front and yellow patch on the

head and neck. It grows to more than 115 cm (3 ft 9 in) height. It has also been called **Forster's penguin**, **solitary penguin**. See also **aptenodytid penguin**.

**1884** McCormick, R. *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: opp. 250.

[caption] Emperor Penguin (*Aptenodytes forsteri*).

**1901** (Cape Adare, May 1899) Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 129.

About this time a very fine specimen of an Emperor Penguin was caught out on the ice-pack; a big, sad, solitary bird, over 4 ft. high. The presence of these birds so far south late in the year proves that they do not migrate far north during the Antarctic winter.

**3 Apr 1911** (Hut Point) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912: an account of Scott's last expedition* Blandford Press, London: 119.

Spent forenoon skinning the Emperor — a male, very fat. Half the breast and the liver was a substantial meal for 16 men with nothing else but some pease, cocoa and biscuit. We fried it in butter and it was excellent.

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* Duckworth, London: 228.

So great is the desire of the Emperor to incubate a chick, and so foolish is the creature, that Dr. Wilson averred he saw eggless birds thus brooding and endeavouring to hatch rounded lumps of ice just as, during the *Discovery* expedition, he found them incubate a dead and frozen chick if they were unable to secure a living one.

**1930** Kinnear in L.C. Bernacchi, co-ordinator *The polar book: produced for the British Polar Exhibition 1930* E. Allom & Co Ltd, London: 69.

When first hatched the Emperor chick is covered with white down with black marks on the head and throat, differing in this respect from its cousin the King, which is uniformly brown.

**1935** *National Geographic* LXVIII(1) Jul: 113.

[caption] Emperor penguins, the first to be brought alive to the United States, stroll with Admiral Byrd on the deck of the Bear of Oakland at Quantico, Virginia. These "little men" of the Antarctic ice lands have pink mouths, canary yellow necks, paler yellow bodies, and black heads and wings.

**1957** Anderson, W. Ellery *Expedition south* Evans Brothers, London: 13.

The desk, a solid Victorian piece, was at one end of the room, while at the other end a stuffed Emperor penguin peered down smugly at an egg nesting between its feet.

**1967** *Bokmakierie* 19(1) Mar: 22.

With the recent discovery of a new Emperor Penguin breeding colony, the total population of these birds in the Antarctic is now estimated at about 1 million.

**1968** Stonehouse, Bernard *Penguins: the World of Animals series* Arthur Barker, London/Golden Press, NY: 40.

Emperor eggs weigh a little less than one pound; one scrambled makes an excellent meal for three hungry men.

**1984** (Christmas 1929) Fletcher, Harold *Antarctic days with Mawson: a personal account of the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929-31* Angus and Robertson, London: 134.

The dinner was a great success. Our main course — baked emperor penguin breast — approached rather timidly by the fastidious, was generally voted as equal to any game bird.

**1993** Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 192.

The emperors are everything their name suggests, proud imperial penguins that seem altogether superior to their

smaller, squabbling cousins. They stand over a metre tall, weigh 30 to 40 kilograms, and are as big as a man round the chest.

1995 *New Scientist* 145 no 1962 (28 Jan): 9.

Last winter all 2000 of the emperor chicks at the French Dumont D'Urville base died.

**emperor penguin rookery** *Also emperor rookery*  
[See rookery.]

An area on **sea ice** where **emperor penguins** congregate, for breeding or moulting.

1904 *The Canterbury Times* Annual: 1 Oct: [17].

[caption] Emperor penguin rookery at commencement of Great Barrier.

1914 Levick, G. Murray *Antarctic penguins: a study of their social habits* William Heinemann, London: 135.

The only Emperor rookery known to man at the present day was discovered by Lieuts. Royds and Skelton, of Captain Scott's first Antarctic expedition, on the sea-ice beneath Cape Crozier.

1964 (Enderby Land) Styles, D.F. *Narrative. Coastal exploration of Kemp and Enderby Lands, Antarctica*. ANARE reports Series A vol. 1, Antarctic Division, Dept of External Affairs, Melbourne: 25.

We went searching in the launch among the icebergs for traces of an emperor penguin rookery which had been sighted from the aircraft flying the survey party to this area earlier in the season.

1990 Nagle, Robin *Penguins* Mallard Press, New York: 44.

There are twenty-three known emperor rookeries, all of which are found on ice surrounding the Antarctic continent. Eggs are laid in early June, and hatch in early August.

## enderbite

[Named from its occurrence in Enderby Land, Antarctica. Enderby Land, at about 50°E, was discovered in 1831 by John Biscoe (1794–1843), on an Antarctic sealing voyage for the British whaling company of Enderby Brothers, which was then run by Charles Enderby (1797–1876) and his brothers.]

A charnockite mineral (a granite).

1956 Stinear, B.H. *Preliminary report on operations from Mawson Base, Australian National Antarctic Research Expedition, 1954–55* BMR Record 1956/44, Canberra: 20.

A notable feature of Enderby Land, adjacent to Kemp Land, is the fairly widespread occurrence of charnockites, including a new variety "Enderbite", an acid member of the charnockite series characterised by rhombic [hypersthene] pyroxene and preponderating plagioclase among the feldspar constituents.

1987 Bates, Robert L. and Jackson, Julia A., eds *Glossary of geology*, 3rd edn American Geological Institute, Alexandria: 213.

Enderbite: A plagioclase-rich member of the 'charnockite' series containing quartz, plagioclase (commonly antiperthitic), hypersthene, and a small amount of magnetite. Most classification systems require that quartz constitute 10–65% of the felsic constituents and that the ratio of alkali feldspar to total feldspar be greater than 87.5%. Tobi (1971) has abandoned the term in favour of 'alkali charnockite'. The name, proposed by Tilley in 1936, is for Enderby Land, Antarctica. Not recommended usage.

## endolithic *adjective and noun*

[From the Greek prefix ενδον *within*, + λιθος *stone*. Endolithic organisms are a feature of both cold and hot deserts.]

(An organism) Living in the interstices within a rock or stone. Endolithic organisms are a significant life form in the antarctic **dry valleys**.

1977 Friedmann, E.I. in *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XII (4) Oct: 26.

A varied flora of endolithic microorganisms was found in light coloured porous rocks (Beacon sandstone, weathered granite, and marble) but not in dark volcanic rocks like dolerite: endolithic organisms in hot deserts were reported to show a similar preference.

1990 (Lake Vanda region) Naveen, Ron, Monteath, Colin, de Roy, Tui and Jones, Mark *Wild ice: Antarctic journeys* Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington: 200.

The majority of lichens are dull gray, yellow, or black, though some are more gaudy, ruddy, and rough. Welded to granite boulders or tucked away in tiny exfoliated cracks, they can imbibe moisture from a mere skerrick of snow. Flat, crusty, not daring to raise their heads to the wind, most are not the luxurious foliose varieties found on the Antarctic Peninsula. The cunning endolithic lichens avoid the wind altogether. They eke out a furtive existence inside the structure of rocks, hidden beneath the first few crystalline layers.

28 Dec 1997 Maxwell Davies, Peter [source: <http://www.maxopus.com/lists/antarcti.htm>, accessed 12 Mar 1999.]

In a soil core at extreme Antarctic conditions, cells can grow at 10 units of light, as opposed to 18,000 units of sunlight: there are even endoliths — extremely simple organisms, they live up to ten millimetres down in the coldest Antarctic rock, which have the slowest metabolic rate I have ever heard of — they take 10,000 years to transform a miniscule [sic] amount of carbon dioxide into proteins.

## epomophora

[The species name epomophora was given by French naturalist and surgeon René-Primevère Lesson (Annls Sci. nat. Paris 6 (1825): 95), perhaps referring to a somewhat hump-backed appearance of the bird in flight, and apparently from the Greek ερωμις *back and shoulders*, and φορειν *to bear*.]

The albatross *Diomedea epomophora epomophora*: see **southern royal albatross**.

1986 Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 158.

A midwinter's day feast on Campbell Island in 1944 featured "Roast Epomophora" — an albatross which had been chloroformed and proved to be inedible.

## erect-crested penguin *Also shortened to erect-crested*

[Erect-crested from the yellow crest on the head + **penguin**.]

The predom. black and white penguin *Eudyptes sclateri* (fam. Spheniscidae). Adult birds have stiff yellow bristles extending from above the eyes into a crest on either side of the head, and reach a height of about 65 cm (2 ft 2 in). This penguin occurs in subantarctic and cool temperate waters of New Zealand, and breeds mainly on Bounty and Antipodes Islands. It has also been called **big-crested penguin** and **Sclater's penguin**.

1953 Oliver, W.R.B. in *The Emu* 53(2) Jun: 185.

In one species, the Erect-crested penguin, commonly known as *Eudyptes sclateri*, the crest arises midway between the gape and the nasal groove and, after passing over the eyes,

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

the feathers turn upwards and thus no part of the crest comes below the level of the eyes.

**1979** Peterson, Roger Tory *Penguins* Houghton Mifflin Co., Boston: 68.

There are always a few Erect-crested among the Rockhoppers on Campbell Island, and at least one has been known to stray to Macquarie Island, where, lacking a mate of its own kind, it took up with a Rockhopper.

**1994** *New Zealand Geographic* no. 22 Apr/June: 13.

New Zealand can justly be called the penguin capital of the world. ... Five of the crested species .. breed here, and three of them — the Fiordland crested, Snares crested, and erect-crested — breed nowhere else.

## eskimo biscuit

[C] ship(s) biscuit (NOED: 1799-), hard biscuit prepared for use on board ship.]

### A sledging biscuit.

**1931** O'Brien, John S. *By dog sled for Byrd: 1600 miles across Antarctic ice* Thomas S. Rockwell, Chicago: 34.

Lying on the food box is our first course, brown Eskimo biscuits, larger than a graham cracker and much thicker. These are buttered, and upon each lie three crisp pieces of bacon. Although very tasty and satisfying, one must have good strong teeth to get the best of these biscuits ... One must protect his teeth a bit, for these biscuits are granite-hard. These biscuits are so called "Eskimo" biscuits of Canadian manufacture and constitute within themselves a good ration.

**1959** Siple, Paul 90° *South: the story of the American South Pole conquest* G.P. Putnam's Sons, New York: 57.

To stave off hunger we munched hard Eskimo biscuits.

## eskimo dog Also *Esquimaux dog*

[Eskimo dog is recorded from 1774 (DCanE) for a large powerful dog, a breed of *Canis familiaris borealis*, used in the Arctic to draw sledges.]

A husky, in the general sense.

**6 Aug 1897** Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898-1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: III.

Could I join your expedition at Montevideo will subscribe bring Arctic equipment and also eskimo dogs answer my expense — Dr Cook.

**1915** Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911-1914* William Heinemann, London, vol I: 20.

On leaving London there were forty-nine of these Greenland, Esquimaux sledging-dogs of which the purchase and selection had been made through the offices of the Danish Geographical Society.

**1930** (Little America station) Byrd, Richard Evelyn in *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 136.

We took 80 huskies and Malamutes (Eskimo dogs) to transport our tons of equipment.

**3-5 Jul 1959** Béchervaise, John (1963) *Blizzard and fire: a year at Mawson, Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 115.

Knucks may "go back" .. to an almost infinite line of Eskimo dogs, wolves and other canine ancestors.

**1994** Chester, Jonathan *Huskies: polar sledge dogs* Margaret Hamilton Books, Sydney: 10.

Although many different types of dogs are commonly called huskies, the best known official breeds are the Siberian Husky, the Alaskan Malamute, the Inuit or Eskimo dog and the Samoyed. The Siberian is the only breed that kennel club people regard as being properly entitled to be called a 'husky'. The term husky, however, is popularly used to refer

to all manner of snow dog, or northern breeds as they are also known.

## eudyptid penguin

[The bird genus *Eudyptes* was named by French naturalist Louis Pierre Vieillot (Analyse d'une nouvelle ornithologie elementaire (1816): 67, 70), from the Greek εὖ good, and δῦπτης a diver, referring to their ability to dive at sea.]

A penguin of the genus *Eudyptes*, many of which are known as **crested penguins**. See also **erect-crested penguin, macaroni penguin, rockhopper, royal penguin, Snares penguin**.

**1968** Stonehouse, Bernard *Penguins: the World of Animals series* Arthur Barker, London/Golden Press, NY: 47.

Eudyptid penguins are birds of the west wind zone, disposed almost symmetrically on either side of the fiftieth parallel of south latitude.

**1990** (South Georgia) Nagle, Robin *Penguins* Mallard Press, New York: 44.

[caption] Flowing head plumes are characteristic of all of the world's Eudyptid, or "erect-crested" penguins.

## euphausiid noun and attrib. Also *euphausia(n), euphausiacean, euphausid*

[The crustacean order Euphausiacea, occurring in both northern and southern hemisphere seas, was named by marine zoologist J.D. Dana from the Greek εὖ good, well + φῶς light, referring to their phosphorescence (see 1850 quotation).]

Any of the shrimp-like planktonic marine crustaceans of the order Euphausiacea: see **krill**; More specifically, any of those crustaceans of the genus *Euphausia*, or of the family Euphausiidae.

[1850 Dana, J.D. in *American Journal of Science and Arts*, 2nd series IX: 129.

Fam. 1. Euphausiidae— Antennæ primæ biramææ. ... Genus 2. *Euphausia*, (*Dana*).]

**1893** Stebbing, Rev. Thomas R.R. *A history of Crustacea. Recent Malacostraca* Kegan Paul, Trench, Trübner & Co Ltd, London: 265.

Tracing the Euphausid larva through seven stages.

**1905** (South Orkneys) Pirie, J.H. Harvey in *Scottish Geographical Magazine* 21: 34.

Egg-collecting is rather a disagreeable business, as the birds, instead of flying off when approached, remain on the egg and try to warn off the intruder by ejecting at him a noxious, evil-smelling reddish fluid, the partially digested Euphausiæ on which they feed.

**1906** (South Georgia) Lönnberg, Einar in *Vetenskapsakademiens Handlingar* 40(5): 96.

The stomachs of the specimens .. were filled with remains of shrimp-like crustaceans (perhaps large Euphausiids).

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* Duckworth, London: 48.

The largest of these surface crustaceans, *Euphausia* — a sort of shrimp an inch or more in length — form the diet of fish and penguins.

**1949** Routh, Martin in *The Ibis* 91(4): 581.

If the [sc. whale] guts were split, an enormous amount of "krill", the euphausian crustaceans eaten by the whales, would be freed — the full stomach of a blue whale was estimated to contain roughly 5,000,000 of these euphausians.

**1957** (Deception Island) Holgersen, Holger *Scientific results of the "Brategg" Expedition 1947-48, no. 4* Publikasjon nr. 21 fra

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

Kommandør Chr. Christensens Hvalfangstmuseum i Sandefjord: 13.

Stomach contents [sc. of gentoo penguin]: Nearly 1 pints (or 0.8 litre), large pieces of fish meat, vertebrae, skulls and other bones (medium sized fish, most probably *Notothenia* sp.), also a large quantity of euphausiaceans.

**1957** Sullivan, Walter *Quest for a continent* Secker & Warburg, London: 288.

Only on Euphausia, the tiny shrimps which are one of the chief whale foods, did the French cuisine fail. A bucketful, caught by the scientists in their plankton net, were served with a sauce Américaine, Barré recorded, and were "absolutely succulent," but that evening "the Euphausia took revenge" and for the next two days the work of the camp was brought to a standstill as they suffered from the effects of this meal.

**1963** *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* 2 (Dec): 56.

The most important food source in penguin colonies is, however, regurgitated "krill" (mainly euphausiids) which the penguins feed to their young.

**1985** *China Pictorial [Beijing]* no. 8: 3.

Euphausia, a delicious seafood high in protein, has attracted worldwide attention. According to a preliminary estimate, about one to five billion tons of euphausia live in the Southern Ocean.

**1992** Strange, Ian J. *A field guide to the wildlife of the Falkland Islands and South Georgia* Harper Collins, London: 24.

Species of euphausiaceans, collectively known as 'krill', are probably the most important food source for southern species of seabird and for marine mammals.

**1995** Menkhorst, Peter W., ed. *Mammals of Victoria: distribution, ecology and conservation* Oxford University Press, Melbourne: 255.

The Crabeater Seal feeds almost exclusively on krill — euphausiid crustaceans that teem in the waters of the Southern Ocean close to the ice edge.

### ex-Antarctican *Also ex-Antarctic expeditioner, ex-Antarctician*

[Ex a prefix used to denote 'former' since 1398 (NOED), + **Antarctican**.]

A former resident of the Antarctic.

**1963** *Wilkes Hard Times* 1(3) Apr: 4.

His desire to go to this bastard continent was the result of hearing the experiences of ex-Antarctican, Dave Norris.

**1964** *Aurora: the official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Apr: 19.

From time to time requests are received in the Antarctic Division for the provision of Lecturers from the ranks of the Ex-Antarcticians.

**1967** *Aurora: the official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Mar: 33.

Trevor Boyd and wife Beryl of Brisbane arranged a "Beerbecue" at their home late November last and no less than twenty ex-Antarcticians gathered to enjoy the evening.

**1993** *BAS Club Newsletter* no. 30 (summer): 2.

We ex-Antarctic expeditioners cannot be proud of the way we left our wilderness in our day either.

### ex-Campbellian *NZ. Also ex-Campbell Islander*

[From the name of Campbell Island, a New Zealand subantarctic island.]

A former **Campbell Islander**.

**1969** *News from the South [NZARP, Wellington]* 10(2) June: 2.

Allan and Robin our two ex-Campbell Islanders were able to speak to the lads there.

**1976** *The Islander [quarterly bulletin of the Campbell–Raoul Island association]* 3(3) Dec: 64.

It is easy for the ex-Campbellian to see and smell the various features common to the Auckland Islands and her more southern cousin.

### ex-expeditioner *Aust.*

A former **expeditioner**.

**1976** Moonie, Pat in *Aurora: the official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* May: 23.

I would like to express my thanks to all those ex-expeditioners who turn up to farewell the Dan ships, and welcome them back from the deep south.

**1995** Robinson, Shelagh, ed. *Huskies in harness: a love story in Antarctica* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 8.

One ex-expeditioner, Bob Tompkins, environmentalist, ornithologist, dogman, approached me with a persuasive request.

### ex-Fid *Brit.*

A former FID: a British resident of the Antarctic.

**1957** Anderson, W. Ellery *Expedition south* Evans Brothers, London: 22.

I knew nothing about the Antarctic apart from what I had picked up from talking to ex-F.I.D.S. men, reading the records at the Scientific Bureau in London, and attending a lecture Fuchs had given at the Scott Polar Research Institute in Cambridge.

**1982** *BAS Club Newsletter* no. 12 (Christmas): 3.

Over 40 ex-South Georgia Fids .. enjoyed a splendid buffet meal.

**1998** Swithinbank, Charles *Forty years on ice: a lifetime of exploration and research in the polar regions* The Book Guild, Sussex: 135.

Gerry Nicholson, his engineer, was also an ex-Fid.

### ex-glacio

Someone formerly working in the Antarctic regions as a glaciologist: see **glacio**.

**1985** *BAS Club Newsletter* no. 17 (Spring): 4.

Ex-glacio Mike Landy was best man.

### ex-Macquarian *noun, Aust.*

A former **expeditioner** to Macquarie Island.

**1965** *Aurora: the official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Nov: 23.

Bob Nunn, OIC Macquarie Island 1964, has kindly supplied the news of his band of ex-Macquarians.

### ex-Mawsonite *Aust.*

A former expeditioner to Mawson, one of the three Australian continental antarctic bases: see **Mawsonite**.

**1996** Johnson, Frank in *Aurora: the official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* 16(2) Dec: 19.

Back once more in Australia he .. spent the next three months building a new boat. A 36 ft. .. which he named *Rum-doodle*, a name familiar to all ex Mawsonites.

### expeditioner *Esp. Aust.*

[*Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions (ANARE) is the umbrella title for Australian government antarctic research activities.*]

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

A member of an antarctic expedition, including a government expedition. See also **ANARE, anareite, intrepid.**

**1949** Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 60.

A mixed party of seamen and expedition personnel had been landed at Atlas Cove.]

**1953** Scholes, Arthur *Seventh continent: saga of Australasian exploration in Antarctica 1895–1950* George Allen & Unwin, London: 93.

As they neared the pack, a gentle wind and sun brought a respite. Out struggled the sorry-looking expeditioners to dry their clothes and belongings on the deck.

**1966** *Aurora: the official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* June: 35.

While you have your diary at the ready, make a note that the Annual Ball and Farewell to 1967 Expeditioners will again be held at: The New Alexandra, 67 Alexandra St, East St. Kilda ... This is the social event of the year, when you can bring your wife, girl-friend, sisters and aunts. If you can't remember, show this to your social manageress. She will!

**1993** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XXVII(1) Mar: 21.

When they reached the South Pole, the South African expeditioner was transferred to the second airplane.

**1997** Diski, Jenny *Skating to Antarctica* Granta Books, London: 145.

'We have never suffered from a fatality up to this point in time,' he said with knitted brow, but that was because all previous expeditioners (that was us, we were no tourists) had followed orders 'to the letter and the spirit.'

**eyelock** verb, *Falkland Islands*

[In Australian English the word wig (AND, Australian shearing), is recorded from 1913, with the same meaning.]

To trim the locks of wool from over a sheep's eyes.

**1993** Chater, Tony *The Falklands* The Penna Press, St Albans: 90.

[caption] Where necessary, lambs are eyelocked at about six months. This prevents them becoming woolblind, a condition which impedes feeding and increases the risk of them falling into ditches and streams in the winter.



# F

**fachine** *Falkland Islands*. Also **fachima**, **fachina** (**bush**), **fachine bush**, **fasciné**

[Origin unknown. This name is also used in Tierra del Fuego.]

The aromatic shrub *Chiliodendron diffusum* (fam. Asteraceae or Compositae), which grows to about 1.5 m (4 ft 11 in) high and is found in the Falkland Islands, mainly along streams and where grazing pressure is absent.

**1840** Mackinnon, L.B. *Some account of the Falkland Islands, from a six months' residence in 1838 and 1839* A.H. Bailey & Co., London: 38.

There is also another kind of shrub that grows in most of the deep valleys, called there Thashire bushes; they grow to the height of about five feet, the largest being about an inch in diameter.]

**13 Dec 1842** McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 346.

The vegetation is for the most part herbaceous. The valleys and ravines are filled with the fascine, a bush of the composite order, bearing a white blossom, attaining a height of only three or four feet, and much resembling a rosemary bush.

**1904** Vallentin, Rupert *Memoirs and Proceedings of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no. 23: 6.

Fachina bushes (*Chilobothrium amelloides*) gave an agreeable finish to the landscape. On my way from the house the Fachina bushes were at least four feet in height, and presented an almost solid border on either side of the rough track which led to the sea-shore.

**1910** Cobb, Arthur F. *Wildlife in the Falkland Islands* Gowans & Gray, London: 67.

Red-backed Buzzard ... build nests of sticks, from the diddle-dee and fachina bushes, lined with grass.

**1924** Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history* by Rupert Vallentin Clarendon Press, Oxford: 271.

In full blossom at Christmas time is the Fâchima bush (*Chiliodendron diffusum*). In many valleys Fâchima bushes abound and grow to a considerable size — from 4 to 6 feet high. They are not nearly so plentiful as in the early days, being 'quite useless' in the eyes of sheep-farmers, and so are ruthlessly destroyed. The flowers are white, and at times so luxuriant that they almost obscure the green leaves on the branches; it has a curious aromatic scent.

**1978** (1893) Trehearne, Mary *Falkland heritage: a record of pioneer settlement* Arthur H Stockwell, Ilfracombe: 170.

As far as Rio Gallegos the track led them over grassland with dark low-growing clumps of diddle-dee and grey-green fascine bushes.

**1987** Strange, Ian J. *The Falkland Islands and their natural history* David and Charles, Newton Abbot, Devon: 128.

In some moister areas .. grows one of the islands' larger shrubs ... Clayton, who landed at Port Egmont on Saunders Island in March 1773, referred to this as wild myrtle, an ever-green, 1.5 m (5 ft) in height and at that time in full bloom. This was fachine or fachinal bush (*Chiliodendron diffusum*).

**1989** (1855) McAdam, Jim, quoting Snow, Captain W. Parker in *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation* no. 8 (Jan): 3.

The beaches along the north-east coast of Keppel are described as "being fringed with Tussac, Fachinal and Balsam Bog".

**factory ship** *Whaling*. Also **factory**

[Recorded, esp. in US English, from about the same time (NOED 1930-).]

A large whaling ship built to process at sea the whale carcasses brought from smaller, faster ships (**catchers**) which pursued and killed the whales. Early in the 20th century, such ships were often anchored in whaling ports like Grytviken, South Georgia; when they were not in secure harbour, factory ships were kept at sea at a safe distance from the coast. In the 1910s and still in the mid-1950s, about 20 such ships were in antarctic waters for the whaling season. A factory ship might have 500 workers aboard.

The whales were hunted for their **oil**, **baleen** ('whale-bone') and **whale meat**.

**1929** (South Georgia) *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 261.

The whale boats operate from one of two types of base. Either there is a shore station which is built at the water's edge in some cove or well-sheltered part of the coast, or there is a floating factory or factory ship which may be anchored throughout the season in a similar situation, or may operate at a distance from the land.

**1930** (Falklands/Ross Sea Dependencies) Rudmose Brown, R.N. in L.C. Bernacchi, ed. *The polar book. Produced for the British Polar Exhibition 1930* E. Allom & Co Ltd, London: 80.

The whaler's [sic] are generally towed to shore stations or factory ships anchored in bays.

**1935** Christensen, Lars, transl fr Norwegian by Jayne, E.M.G. *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Staughton, London: 48.

The transfer of oil from the factories, and of fuel-oil from the tanker to the factories, in the open sea, is naturally fraught with difficulties.

**1949** Innes, Hammond (1953 edn) *The white south* Fontana Books, London: 42.

"When was this ship last cleaned down. She smells dirty."

He grinned. "Och, that's whale, " he said. "Ye'll no worry about it once you get alongside o' the factory ship. "

**1965** *Australian Fisheries Newsletter* 24(5): 13.

In addition to the four factory ships and 54 catcher vessels operated by Russia in the Antarctic in the past season Norway had four factory ships and 36 chasers and Japan seven factory ships and 71 chasers.

**1971** Bertrand, Kenneth J. *Americans in Antarctica* American Geographical Society special pub. no. 39: 7.

Christen Christensen introduced the first factory ship, in the South Shetlands, in 1906.

**1984** (1930s) Fletcher, Harold *Antarctic days with Mawson: a personal account of the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929-31* Angus and Robertson, London: 250.

The frightful stench of whale emanating from the factory ship was indescribable; nothing in the world can be compared with it.

**1994** *Antarctic Society of Australia newsletter* 36 (Mar): 2.

In another example of Soviet deception, some factory ships were fitted with steam pipes on deck to create an obscuring cloud should an aircraft appear while protected species were being processed.

### fairy prion

[Fairy prion is the recommended ornithological name.]

The small circumpolar prion *Pachyptila turtur* (fam. Procellariidae), a bluish-grey and white seabird. It breeds in the Falklands, on subantarctic islands, and in southern Australia and New Zealand.

**c1948** Richdale, L.E. *Wild life on an island outpost: expedition to The Snares Islands 1947-48* Otago Daily Times and Witness Newspapers, Dunedin: n.p.

Of small Petrels, there were several kinds, including .. the Fairy Prion (*Pachyptila turtur*).

**1952** (Marion Island) Crawford, Allan B. in *The Emu* 252(2) May: 79.

Fairy Prion (Whale-bird), *Pachyptila turtur* ... The specimen collected was the only bird of the species we encountered. It was shot in May 1948, when flying low over the water near Transvaal Cove.

**1955** (Heard Island) Dalziel, Ken *Penguin road* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 53.

The tiny fairy prions weigh only five ounces when fully grown. Their backs are covered with blue-grey feathers, while the underparts are white. They are very restless in flight, seldom gliding like most sea-birds.

**1987** National Parks and Wildlife Service, Tasmania *Macquarie Island nature reserve: visitor's handbook* NPWS, Hobart: 21.

Fairy prions, sooty-shearwaters and common diving petrels are established in moderate to low numbers.

### Falkland Islands

The Falkland Islands are a group of windy, naturally treeless islands in the South Atlantic Ocean, about 480 km (300 miles) northeast of southernmost South America. The Islands are a self-governing overseas territory of Britain, and their English-speaking inhabitants (about 2000 in the year 2000) are almost entirely of British descent. There are two large islands (East and West Falklands) and more than 200 small islands, many unnamed. The government of the Islands also administers the British dependent territories of South Georgia and the South Sandwich Islands.

The first definite sighting of the islands was in about 1600, by the Dutch navigator Sebald de Weert. In 1690, the English ship *Welfare* sailed to the South Atlantic on a voyage of discovery, and the ship's commander, John Strong, made the first recorded landing on the islands. He named the main sound *Falkland Sound* after Viscount Falkland (Anthony Cary, 1656-1694), then Treasurer of the Navy. Captain Woodes Rogers sailed around some of the islands in 1708, and called the group *Falklands Land*.

The first settlement on the islands was French, in 1764 on East Falkland; the Spanish replaced them there in about 1767. The British settled on West Falkland in 1765. The South American name for the islands is *Islas*

Malvinas, from the French Isles Malouines, referring to early ships (including those of Louis de Bougainville in 1763) whose European point of departure was the French port of St Malo. The territory has been disputed for most of its history, in earlier times between Spain and Britain and most recently in the **Falklands War** of 1982 between Britain and Argentina.

### Falkland box See box

### Falkland current

A cold current which runs eastward from the Drake Passage and then flows north near the eastern South American coast, meeting the warm Brazil current north of the Falkland Islands. It is also called the Malvinas current.

**1959** (45°S, 60°E) Baker, A. de C. in *The Discovery Reports* vol. XXIX. National Institute of Oceanography, Cambridge University Press, London: 322.

This station .. lies in the path of the relatively cold Falkland current which runs northwards from Cape Horn and extends over the Patagonian continental shelf and slope.

**1997** (30 Apr 1998: [www.falklands-nature.demon.co.uk/news/news0697.html](http://www.falklands-nature.demon.co.uk/news/news0697.html)) *Falklands Conservation* June.

Long-finned Pilot Whales ... in the southern hemisphere .. are associated with the Humboldt, Falklands, and Benguela Currents, usually preferring deep waters.

### Falkland diving petrel

The seabird *Pelecanoides urinatrix berard* (fam. Procellariidae), brownish-black above and pale to white beneath, which breeds in the Falkland Islands. See also **diving petrel**.

**1957** Holgersen, Holger *Ornithology of the "Brategg" Expedition. Scientific results of the "Brategg" Expedition 1947-48, no. 4* Publikasjon nr. 21 fra Kommandør Chr. Christensens Hvalfangstmuseum i Sandefjord: 55.

A single bird flew on board at midnight. It is a male Falkland Diving Petrel, *Pelecanoides urinatrix berard*.

**1992** Strange, Ian J. *A field guide to the wildlife of the Falkland Islands and South Georgia* Harper Collins, London: 67.

Falkland Diving Petrel *Pelecanoides berard* ... Widely distributed on offshore islands ... Underparts and throat white.

### Falklander See Falkland Islander

### Falkland flightless steamer duck

The duck *Tachyeres brachypterus*: see **logger duck**.

**1950** Scott, Peter *Key to the wildfowl of the world* Severn Wildfowl Trust, Slimbridge, Gloucestershire: [16].

Falkland Flightless Steamer Duck *Tachyeres brachypterus*. Falkland Islands.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 144.

Falkland Flightless Steamer Duck *Tachyeres brachydactyla* ... Local names: Loggerhead, Logger ... A large mottled grey duck with a long bulky body ... Incapable of sustained flight but makes full use of its disproportionately short wings for propulsion across the surface of the water. In territorial chases, or when escaping from danger, it 'steams' rapidly over the water often for 50 m (55 yards) or more, kicking up

a great deal of spray with the combined effects of rapid wingbeats and strong paddling with its large feet.

**Falkland(s) fur seal** See **Falkland Island seal**

**Falkland Island** *attrib.* Also **Falkland(s)**

Belonging to, or characterising, the Falkland Islands.

**1844** Hooker, Joseph Dalton *The botany of the Antarctic voyage of H.M. Discovery ships Erebus and Terror in the years 1839-1843, under the command of Captain Sir James Clark Ross* Reeve Bros, London, vol 1: 23.

My specimens .. agree with numerous Falkland Island and other southern specimens of that plant.

**1900** Brandon, Rev. Lowther, ed. *The Falkland Islands Magazine* XI(22) Feb: [8].

If the Boer wins our trade will be shut out from South Africa and Falkland Island wool will fall to 2d. or 3d. per pound, as South Africa is a very large customer for the blankets and rugs made of the class of wool the Islands produce.

**1911** Skottsberg, Carl *The wilds of Patagonia* Edward Arnold, London: 2.

The Falkland group extends from S. Lat. 51 to 52°30' and from Long. 57°40' to 61°25'W.

**16 May 1982** Smith, John (1984) *74 days: an Islander's diary of the Falklands occupation* Century Publishing, London: 155.

Glory Hour is another Falklands tradition brought about by the licensing hours.

**Falkland Islander** Also — *but less often on the Islands* — **Falklander**

An inhabitant of the Falkland Islands, a **kelper**.

**1879** Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 557.

A hunter .. from whom I bought one at Sandy Point, and also the Falkland Islanders, said the name was not *bolas*, but "boleaderos".

**1899** *The Falkland Islands Magazine* X(13) May: [19].

The Falklander has a chance every six weeks to go to Europe via Montevideo.

**1911** Skottsberg, Carl *The wilds of Patagonia* Edward Arnold, London: 4.

It is remarkable and almost touching to observe with what faithfulness the 2300 Falklanders cling to the habits of the old country.

**1957** Anderson, W. Ellery *Expedition south* Evans Brothers, London: 25.

Without a newspaper the Falkland Islanders knew little of the outside world, nor apparently did they care.

**1983** Bertrand, Kitty in *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation* 1 (Oct): 2.

It would be of great interest not only to Falklanders but also to the armed forces.

**1991** Venables, Stephen *Island at the edge of the world: a South Georgia odyssey* Hodder and Staughton, London: 42.

The closest contact the *Endurance* made with Argentina later that season was a friendly football match at one of the Argentinian scientific bases on the Antarctic Peninsula. But even that modest gesture of friendship caused a storm of protest from the Falklanders.

**1995** *The Age* [Melbourne] 25 May: 12.

Argentina said yesterday it would consider a proposal to give \$A139,960 to all Falkland Islanders if they voted to transfer British sovereignty of the disputed archipelago to Argentina.

**Falkland Island fox** Also **Falkland fox**

The extinct mammal *Canis australis*, also known as the **warrah**.

**1911** Skottsberg, Carl *The wilds of Patagonia* Edward Arnold, London: 13.

Eventually we .. anchored again on the north side of Fox Island. Here, however, no foxes live, the name being all that is left of the Falkland fox.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 31.

The Patagonian Fox *Dusicyon griseus*, a close relative of the extinct Falkland Island Fox, was introduced to islands of the Hamilton Estate, probably towards the end of the nineteenth century. The Patagonian Fox now survives on Beaver and Weddell Islands where it probably kills lambs and on Staats and Split Islands, where it presumably preys on ground-nesting birds and Magellanic Penguins.

**Falkland Island seal** Also **Falkland(s) fur seal**

The generally greyish-black fur seal *Arctocephalus australis* (fam. Otariidae) of coastal South America and offshore islands and the Falkland Islands. It is now more commonly called the South American fur seal. See also **southern fur seal**.

**1781** Pennant, Thomas *History of quadrupeds vol 1* B. White, London: 521.

*Falkland Isle Seal*. Allied to this [sc. Long-necked Seal] is another *Seal* in the same Museum, sent of late years from the *Falkland isles*: its length is four feet: hair short, cinereous tipped with dirty white.

**1817** (Tristan da Cunha) Carmichael, Captain Dugald in *Transactions of the Linnean Society of London* 12(2): 496.

The Falkland Island Seal (*Phoca Australis*). This species grows to the length of five or six feet. The fur on the back is dark-brown, intermixed with long hairs tipped with white. The throat and breast are cream-coloured, the belly rufous.

**1827** (South Shetlands) Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822-24, 2nd edn* David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 137.

The species of seal, which inhabits these shores, is exclusively the fur-seal, or what is called, in zoology, *Phoca Falklandica*, the Falkland Island Seal. This species has been distinguished by naturalists for its peculiarity of shape; but the circumstance of its possessing a valuable fur, as well as the remarkable habits of the animal, have not been noticed in any description of the seal with which I have met. The fur, from the almost general use to which it is applied in the manufacture of caps, must be well known; and it is therefore unnecessary to describe it further, than merely to observe, that after the hair which grows through and over it is extracted, its natural appearance is of a fine and curly brown. Nothing in this class of animals, and more particularly in the fur-seal of Shetland, is more astonishing than the disproportion in the size of the male and female. A large grown male, from the tip of the nose to the extremity of the tail, is six feet nine inches, whilst the female is not more than three feet and a half.

**1984** Southby-Tailyour, Ewen *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation* no 2 (Aug): 9.

Whether or not the Falklands fur seal population was dwindling.

**1992** Reeves, Randall R., Stewart, Brent S. and Leatherwood, Stephen *The Sierra Club handbook of seals and sirenians* Sierra Club Books, San Francisco: 68.

South American Fur Seal *Arctocephalus australis* ... is also known as the southern fur seal and Falkland fur seal.

### Falkland Island sparrow

The small finch *Melanodera melanodera melanodera*, living only on the Falkland Islands, where it is usually simply called a **sparrow**. It is also called the 'black-throated finch'.

**1904** Vallentin, Rupert in *Memoirs and Proc of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no. 23: 43.

*Chlorospiza melanoderma*, "Falkland Island Sparrow" or "Sparrow." A little yellow bird resembling our English yellow-ammer [sic]. This is the only indigenous species that builds its nest close to human dwellings. A pair of these birds built their nest and successfully reared a family of four little ones close to my workroom in Stanley.

### Falkland Islands sector *Also Falkland (Island) sector, Falklands sector*

The area of antarctic and subantarctic waters and land between 20° and 50°W south of 50°S, and between 50° and 80°W south of 58°S: see **FID**.

**1933** Deacon, G.E.R. *A general account of the hydrology of the South Atlantic Ocean* in *Discovery Reports* vol. VII, issued by the Discovery Committee, Colonial Office London: 180.

Although it is only in the Falkland Sector that there are sufficient data to examine the seasonal changes in the speed of the surface currents and in the extent of the layer it can safely be assumed that there is a greater production of Antarctic surface water in summer than in winter.

**1935** Christensen, Lars, transl fr Norwegian by Jayne, E.M.G. *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Staughton, London: 148.

The first Norwegian whaling industry at South Georgia and South Shetlands was, as has been already said, carried out by means of concessions and licences from Great Britain, which claimed the Falkland Islands, South Georgia, South Orkney, South Shetland and Trinity Land as British possessions. In 1908 Great Britain accordingly established the so-called Falklands Sector, the Falkland Dependencies.

**1950** Saunders, Alfred *A camera in Antarctica* Winchester Publications, London: 122.

We were then working in the Falkland Islands sector.

**1996** Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 244.

The Falklands sector of the Antarctic is the richest whaling ground in the world.

### Falkland Islands skua *See Falkland skua*

### Falkland Islands thrush *See Falkland thrush*

### Falkland Island wolf *Also Falkland wolf*

The extinct mammal *Canis australis*, also known as the **warrah**.

[1833 (Falkland Islands) Fanning, Edmund *Voyages round the World; with Selected Sketches of Voyages to the South seas, North and South Pacific Oceans, China, Etc.* Collins & Hannay, New York: 93.

On the English Malone, which is the largest of the group, is the wolf, or rather the wild dog, that Commodore Byron makes so much mention of.]

**1904** Vallentin, Rupert in *Memoirs and Proc of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no. 23: 46.

When I left Stanley for the West Falklands, I felt fairly confident that although I should not see a living specimen of that unique mammal the Falkland Island Wolf (*Canis antarcticus*), at least I might be able to examine some of its burrows, and perhaps be lucky enough to procure a more or less complete skeleton. Shortly after my arrival at Roy Cove, I found to my regret that this quadruped was not only extinct, but not even a trace of its burrows or skeletons could be found anywhere ... The last known specimen of this species was killed at Shallow Bay, West Falklands, in 1876.

**1905** *Scottish Geographical Magazine* 21: 47.

The Falkland Island wolf (*Canis antarcticus*), an animal of considerable zoological importance, has now been completely exterminated.

**1987** *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation* no 6 (May): 2.

The warrah or Falkland wolf is gone for ever.

### Falkland lavender *See lavender*

### Falkland mullet *See Falklands mullet*

### Falkland pipit

The bird *Anthus correndera grayi*: see **pipit**.

[1841 Darwin, Charles *The zoology of the voyage of H.M.S. Beagle, under the command of Captain Fitzroy, R.N. during the years 1832 to 1836, pt III Birds* London: 85.

*Anthus correndera* ... This titlark is found in La Plate, Chile, and the Falkland Islands. I was informed by an intelligent sealer, that it is the only land-bird on Georgia and South Orkney (lat. 61°S.): it has, therefore, probably a further range southward than any other land-bird in the southern hemisphere.]

**1984** Woods, Robin in *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation* no 2 (Aug): 4.

The .. Falkland Pipit was present elsewhere on Carcass Island in very small numbers.

**1993** Chater, Tony *The Falklands* The Penna Press, St Albans: 56.

[caption] The Falkland Pipit, springtime minstrel of the whitegrass plains.

### Falklands *See Falkland Islands*

### Falkland sea lion

The sea lion *Otaria byronia* (also known as *O. flavescens*), more generally called the 'South American sea lion'. It breeds on the coasts of South America and the Falkland Islands.

**1940** Bertram, G.C.L. *The biology of the Weddell and crabeaters seals, with a study of the comparative behaviour of the Pinnipedia. BGLE 1934-37 scientific reports vol 1 (no 1)* British Museum (Natural History), London: opp. 134.

*Otaria byronia*, Falkland Sea Lion. Coasts of S. America. River Plate to south and west coast, south of 40°S Calapagos [sic] and Falkland Islands ... Some utilization for blubber oil at Falkland Islands. Killing controlled and confined to adult bulls. c. 10,000 per year.

### Falkland sector *See Falkland Islands sector*

### Falkland skua *Also Falkland Islands skua, Falklands skua*

The seabird *Catharacta skua antarctica*: see **antarctic skua**.

**1952** Hagen, Yngvar *Birds of Tristan da Cunha* Det Norske Videnskap Akademi i Oslo/Hos Jacob Dybwad, Oslo: 139.

In length of bill and tarsus, the northern Skua and Falkland Skua appear to be relatively small.

**1968** *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* 16(Jul): 15.

The great skua has been subdivided by Hamilton (1934) into five subspecies: *C. s. skua*: the great skua of the North Atlantic; *C. s. chilensis*: the Chilean skua of South America; *C. s. antarctica*: the Falkland Islands skua; *C. s. lönnerbergi*: the brown skua of sub-Antarctic and Antarctic islands; *C. s. mac-cormicki*: the South Polar skua of the Antarctic continent.

**1989** Woods, R.W. *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation* no. 8 (Jan): 7.

[caption] The Antarctic or Falkland Skua, one of the rather confusing great skua group, is restricted to the Falkland Islands and the coast of Patagonia. Other Antarctic skua races are found in the Antarctic and the Tristan da Cunha group.

**1994** *New Scientist* 11 Jun: 45.

According to Euan Young, "In terms of public relations, the skua is its own worse [sic] enemy." Having watched great skuas harrying hapless auks on Shetland, and Falkland skuas raiding rockhopper penguin colonies in the South Atlantic, I now have to agree with him. Skuas are powerful predators but messy killers.

### Falklands mullet *Also Falkland mullet*

The fish *Eleginops maclovinus*: see **mullet**.

**c1990** Roper, Patrick *Holidays in the Falkland Islands* Falkland Islands Tourist Board, London: 12.

In a few places you may catch our unique species of freshwater fish: 'local trout', *Aplochiton zebra* or one of the three species of smelt (*Galaxias*). The main inshore fish is Falklands mullet.

**1996** Bound, Graham *The Falkland Islands: beautiful and wild* Falkland Islands Tourist Board, London: 13.

You may come for the sea trout, but don't forget the Falkland mullet that lie in the shallower sea pools. When they strike, hang on to your rod!

### Falklands sector *See Falkland Islands sector*

### Falklands thrush *See Falkland thrush*

### Falklands war

The brief war between Argentina and Britain in 1982, beginning with an Argentinian invasion of the Falkland Islands in April and ending with an Argentinian surrender to occupying British troops in June. On the Islands themselves, it is often called **the conflict**.

**1985** Winchester, Simon *The sun never sets* Prentice Hall Press, NY: 267.

The Falklands "war" or "operation" or "recovery" has been well chronicled elsewhere.

**1999** Dalyell, Tam in *The Independent [London]* 9 Apr: rev 5.

Leave aside the Byzantine intricacies of the Lockerbie saga; they are so complex that some of those involved would qualify for the status of Professor of Lockerbie Studies. Like the Falklands war, it will doubtless become a special subject for those doing part two of their history degrees.

### Falkland thrush *Falkland Islands. Also Falkland Islands thrush, Falklands thrush*

The bird *Turdus falcklandii falcklandii* (fam. Turdidae), which has an olive-brown back and reddish fawn under-

parts, and occurs only on the Falkland Islands. It is also, especially on the Islands, called simply a **thrush**.

**[1841]** Darwin, Charles *The zoology of the voyage of H.M.S. Beagle, under the command of Captain Fitzroy, R.N. during the years 1832 to 1836*, pt III *Birds* London: 59.

*Turdus falcklandicus* ... I believe I saw the same species in the valleys of Northern Chile; I was informed that the thrush there lines its nest with mud, in which respect it follows the habit of species of the northern hemisphere. In the Falkland Islands it chiefly inhabits the more rocky and drier hills. It haunts also the neighbourhood of the settlement, and very frequently may be seen within old sheds.

**8 Feb 1859** *Proceedings of the Zoological Society of London* Feb-June: 94.

*Turdus falcklandicus*. The egg, which somewhat resembles that of the English Blackbird, is of a pale green, blotched all over, but particularly at the larger end, with reddish-brown. Length 1 3/8; breadth 15/16.]

**1958** Sladen, W.J.L. and Tickell, W.L.N. in *Bird-banding: a journal of ornithological investigation* 29(1), Jan: 22.

In 1949-52 265 FIDS bands were put on the following .. species of birds in the Falkland Islands: .. the Falkland Islands Thrush (*Turdus f. falcklandii*) [etc.].

**1979** Peterson, Roger Tory *Penguins* Houghton Mifflin Co., Boston: 172.

The home-coming Gentoos hastened across green lawns dotted with goose droppings where Falkland thrushes, *Turdus falcklandii*, resembling washed-out American robins, hunted for worms.

**1996** Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 249.

I followed a Falklands thrush to the end of the bay.

### Falkland wolf *See Falkland Island wolf*

### false sea leopard *Historical*

[*Prob. influenced by Weddell calling it a sea leopard, and perh. also by a Victorian desire to use pukka names.*]

#### A Weddell seal.

**1894** Bruce, William in Burn Murdoch, W.G. *From Edinburgh to the Antarctic* Longmans, Green and Co, London: 359.

The fours were .. Weddell's False Sea Leopard (*Stenorhynchus Weddellii*) [etc.].

**1901** Barnett-Hamilton, G.E.H. in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 209.

Leaving out of the question the Sea Elephant .. we find four species of true seals represented in collections from the Antarctic. These are the Crab-eating or White Seal (*Lobodon carcinophagus*), Weddell's Seal, or the False Sea Leopard (*Leptonychotes weddellii*), the Sea Leopard (*Ogmorhinus leptonyx*), and Ross' Seal (*Ommatophoca rossi*). All these are at home on the pack-ice of the extreme South Polar regions.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 318.

The Weddell seal, or false sea-leopard (*Leptonychotes Weddellii*) is found in great numbers along the coasts of the Antarctic lands, but rarely in the pack-ice.

### fan trace *Dog-sledging. Also fan formation, fan method*

[*Fan is used in northern Canadian English (from 1924, DCAnE) for a train of dogs fastened with a fan hitch, in which dogs are fanned and the leader has the longest trace.*]

An arrangement for harnessing **sledge dogs**, in which dogs are fanned out, singly or in pairs. See also **centre trace**.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

**1939** Rymill, John *Southern lights: the official account of the British Graham Land Expedition 1934–1937* Travel Book Club, London: 34.

The fan methods have none of these disadvantages.

**1954** Roots, E.F. in Gjaever, John, transl. fr Norwegian by Huggard, E.M. *The white desert: the official account of the Norwegian–British–Swedish antarctic expedition* Chatto & Windus, London: 245.

Dog drivers are always arguing about the best method of hitching dogs to a sledge: some prefer each dog on a separate rope — the ‘fan method’.

**1954** *Polar Record* 7(47) Jan: 35.

Most of the training was done with four or five dogs in paired fan formation.

**1982** Andrew Jackson, ed. *ANARE field manual, 2nd edn* [Australian] Antarctic Division: 41.

In the fan trace method, all dogs, except the leader, are attached to the sledge by equal length traces.

### far South *adverbial phr.* Also *attrib.*

[The northern equivalent, far North, is recorded in arctic and subarctic Canada from 1860 onwards (DCanE).]

Generally, Antarctica.

**1881** Klutschak, Heinrich W., quoted and transl. fr German by Boumphrey, R.S. in *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* (1967) 12 (May): 85.

The ship had by these somewhat illegal means obtained a full crew for the voyage to the far south.

**1899** *The Geographical Journal* 13 (May): 542.

The *Belgica*, under the command of Captain Gerlache, with a large scientific staff, sailed from Antwerp on August 16, 1897, and was last heard of in Magellan strait in December of the same year, when she left for the far south with the expectation of reaching an Australian port before winter.

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* Duckworth, London: 200.

Unlike its antipodes, on the Antarctic continent there are no Polar bears; neither are there wolves, foxes, nor any other fur-bearing creatures. In the Far South no land animals exist.

**1923** Macklin, A.H. in *Country Life* 6 Jan: 10.

The emperor, a “Far South” penguin, which nests on the Antarctic continent, .. has the most delicate shades of colouring.

**1930** Mill, H.R. in Bernacchi, L.C., ed. *The polar book. Produced for the British Polar Exhibition 1930* E. Allom & Co Ltd, London: 20.

Ross and Nares had reported a great abundance of whales in the Far South, but not until 1892 were British whalers disposed to try their luck.

**1964** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(11) Sept: 473.

He will be a dull New Zealander who will not follow with absorbed interest this half-hour raising of the curtain on the life our men are leading in the far South.

**1992** Steger, Will and Bowermaster, Jon *Crossing Antarctica* Alfred A. Knopf, New York: 45.

Until this century the far south has been inhabited only by some truly indomitable life-forms. Varieties of mosses and lichens and two rare flowering plants make up the totality of its flora.

### fascine *See* *fachine*

### fast ice *noun and attrib.*

[Fast ice is also recorded, later, in Canadian English for all types of ice beached or attached to shore (DCanE 1853).]

A solid sheet of **sea ice** attached to shore, either to **land ice** or to land.

**1778** Forster, Johann Reinhold, edited by Thomas, N., Guest, H. and Dettelbach, M. (1996) *Observations made during a voyage round the world* University of Hawai'i Press, Honolulu: 65.

The loose ice between 71° and 50° South latitude, must have come from the fast, solid ice beyond 71°.]

**20 Nov 1820** Fanning, Edmund, quoted in Bertrand, Kenneth J. (1971) *Americans in Antarctica* American Geographical Society special publication no. 39: 49.

The Island of South Georgia lies off the mouth of a very large bay, into which you cannot sail far I think without being obstructed by the solid and fast ice.

**1900** *The Falkland Islands Magazine* XII(4) Aug: 4.

I [sc. William S. Bruce] were seen fast land floe-ice in the Antarctic that could be travelled over with dogs, sledges, and ski.

**28 Feb 1911** Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912: an account of Scott's last expedition* Blandford Press, London: 110.

At 5 a.m. I awoke and as I felt uneasy about the party I went out and along the Gap to where we could see their camp, and I was horrified to see that the whole of the sea ice was now on the move and that it had broken up for miles further than when we turned in, and right back where they had camped, and that the pony party was now, as we could see, adrift on a floe and separated by open water and a lot of drifting ice from the edge of the fast Barrier ice.

**1928** Priestley, R. and Wordie, J.M. in Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 381.

Fast Ice. “Sea-ice while remaining fast in position of growth. True fast ice is met only along coasts where it is attached to the shore, or over shoals where it may be held in position by islands or stranded icebergs.” “Other names for this type of ice are ‘land-ice’ (Payer and Mill), ‘Shelfeis’ (Drygalski), ‘Shore ice’ (Nansen), ‘Bay-ice’ (Shackleton and David), and ‘Coast ice.’ If it is thought necessary to employ a special name for fast ice when it breaks adrift, ‘land-floes’ is the most suitable.”

**1956** (77°S) Fuchs, V.E. in *Polar Record* 8(54) Sept: 266.

As we flew west the even curve of the fast ice edge swept in to join the ice front at a point 25 miles west of Vahsel Bay.

**1961** Swan, R.A. *Australians in the Antarctic* Melbourne University Press, Parkville: 290.

It was found that not only did dense pack-ice extend to the south, but fast-ice extended some forty miles out to sea from Mawson.

**1978** Laws, R.M. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* 8: 3. Pack ice occasionally reaches the southern end of South Georgia in winter and although sheltered coves may freeze over there is no formation of fast ice.

**1985** Picken, Gordon B. in Bonner, W.N. and Walton, D.W.H., eds *Key environments: Antarctica* Pergamon Press, Oxford: 156.

Visible areas of shoreline may be abraded by fast-ice, pack-ice, brash ice and bergy bits, which may scour littoral and sub-littoral regions to a depth of 15 m.

**1993** Moyes, John Layton *A lifetime adventure in thirty days* Butterfly Books, Springwood [NSW]: [30].

We were cruising along the coast of Victoria Land into Terra Nova Bay, hoping to find a spot on the fast ice to hold a barbecue.

**1994** *Antarctic Science* 6(4) Dec: 456.

The species is also an organism typical of the “fast-ice” community.

### fat *noun and attrib., subantarctic islands. Usu in the plural. Also fat bird*

1. [Extended use of fat a prime lamb or cattle ready for slaughter, recorded in British dialect (1756). Australian (AND 1888) and New Zealand (DNZE 1907) English both use fat for cattle and sheep.]

A plump **penguin** — esp. a one year old — killed for its oil when it is ashore to moult in summer.

**1894** (Macquarie Island) Hamilton, A. in *Transactions and Proceedings of the New Zealand Institute* XXVII Art LXV: 563.

The chief industry now is the boiling down of the royal penguin (*E. schlegeli*). For the purposes of the party the fat birds are selected as they pass up and down from the sea to the "rookery", usually those of a year old ... The season for fat birds lasts only for about six weeks, and during that time the party are kept hard at work.

**18 Jan 1912** (Macquarie Island) Blake, L.R. in Mawson, Douglas (1942) *Geographical narrative and cartography. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911-14. Scientific reports series A vol 1* Government Printer, Sydney: 281.

About 2,000 birds are driven into a small wire-netted yard and the gates are closed; a couple of men then enter with sticks and picking out the 'one year olds' (which I might state are the only 'fat' ones at this time of the year) they give them a knock on the head. When all the fats have been picked out, the gates are opened and remainder are driven out none the worse for their adventure ... The 'one year olds' are 'fats' during the months of latter January, February. Towards the latter end of February the old birds become 'fats'; they having left their young some three weeks previously, go out to sea and return as 'fats' to moult, when they also are used for oil.

**13 Jan 1943** Sorensen, J.H. *The work journal of J.H. Sorensen, coastwatcher in the "Cape expedition", Campbell Island, 1942-45* Diary, in possession of NZ Dept of Conservation and Wildlife, Wellington: 155.

Numbers of last year's [sc. rockhopper] chicks are now coming ashore, very fat, and are commencing their moult. These "fats" of the oilers have no developed crest, only the yellowish streak over the eye. Some of them are enormously fat and hardly able to wobble around.

**1962** (Campbell Island) Bailey, Alfred M. and Sorensen, J.H. *Subantarctic Campbell Island*. Proceedings no. 10, Denver Museum of Natural History: 116.

There were many young [sc. *Eudyptes pachyrhynchus sclateri*] taking on their first plumage, and a few "fats" — the first year birds with poorly developed crests, which looked like giants among the smaller species.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 139.

The main penguin season began in February, when the year-old "fats" came out of the sea to moult. Adult birds returning to the sea after nesting were allowed to do so, as they in turn would fatten before coming ashore to moult in March, when they, too, could be slaughtered.

**1994** (rockhopper penguins, Campbell Island) *New Zealand Geographic* no. 22 (Apr-Jun): 66.

Yearling, sometimes appropriately called "fats," begin moulting.

## 2. *Tristan da Cunha*

Petrel, mollymawk or penguin oil, collected on special trips to outlying islands in the Tristan group (see **fatting party**). The oil was used for cooking, or in the case of **rockhopper penguin** oil, for home-made lamps, thinning paint, and treating canvas for boats.

**1952** Hagen, Yngvar *Birds of Tristan da Cunha* Det Norske Videnskap Akademi i Oslo/Hos Jacob Dybwad, Oslo: 43.

The Tristanites, according to what they said, usually got 1 liter oil from a young Peo in the fat stage.

**1993** (1950) Bunty Rowan in *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 12 (Mar): 9.

In December and January several trips may be made to fetch the guano, and at the end of the summer, the Islanders go for "fat", i.e. the oil which they obtain from thousands of petrels.

## **fatting party (or trip)** *Tristan da Cunha* Also **fat trip**

A trip made from Tristan to one of the outlying islands, usually in about March, to kill **petrels** (*Puffinus gravis*: see **great shearwater**) and collect their oil.

**1958** *Tristan Topics* 1 (June): 2.

Carrier pigeons are to be introduced to provide communication with "Fatting" and "Egging" parties.

**1971** Munch, Peter *Crisis in Utopia: the ordeal of Tristan da Cunha* Thomas Y. Crowell, NY: 118.

Most important of all these excursions is the "fatting trip" in March or April, when usually all the longboats go "for fat", that is, for cooking oil extracted from the rich blubber of the young petrels.

**1984** Richardson, M.E. in *Cormorant* 12(2): 163.

During the April and May 'fat trips' to Nightingale in 1973 and 1974 between 61 000 and 97 600 shearwater chicks were collected.

**1991** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 8 (Mar): 3.

During the "fatting trip" to Nightingale last year, when several longboats visited the island for petrel's fat, heavy swell conditions were encountered when the boats arrived, making landing impossible.

## **featherbed** *Macquarie Island*. *Usu. sing.*

[From the place name given by Mawson's expedition to a particular bog of this sort on Macquarie Island, referring to its yielding surface.]

A quaking bog, in this case on raised beach terraces beside the sea on Macquarie Island. Such bogs can be up to 5 m (16 ft 5 in) deep, tremble when you walk on them, and are hazardous to cross.

**[1915** Ainsworth, G.F. in Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911-1914* William Heinemann, London, vol. II: 180.

This tract was simply a raised beach covered with sodden peat and carrying a rather coarse vegetation. The ground was decidedly springy and shook to our tread; moreover, one sank down over the ankles at each step. Occasionally a more insecure area was encountered, where one of us would go down to the thighs in the boggy ground ... We ate our lunch and had a smoke, after which we decided to walk home along the "Feather Bed" terrace.]

**1 Dec 1930** Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 355.

On Lord Nelson reef — feather-bed terrace is raised about 40 ft above the sea and must certainly have been sea level at one time — it is a wide wave-cut terrace with numerous sea stacks over it ... Feather-bed is a peat growth — tiny red berry on ground.

**1966** *Fog 'N Bog: yearbook of Macquarie Island ANARE overwinterers* ANARE, Macquarie Island: 55.

Two days trudging through gale-force winds, fog, rain, and sleet. Two days of pulling leaden, muddy boots from sucking feather-bed.

**1986** *Australian Geographic* 1(4) Oct-Dec: between 64 and 65. [caption] Featherbeds, pockets of water carpeted with floating vegetation thick enough to support a human, are mostly

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

found between the beaches and cliffs from Aurora Point to Handspike Point.

**Felton's flower** *Falkland Islands*

[Sergeant-Major Henry Felton settled in the Falkland Islands in 1849. In 1910 one of his sons, Arthur, sent specimens of this plant to the naturalist Skottsberg, who first described it scientifically, and gave it the name of the finder.]

The fleshy, low-growing annual plant *Calandrinia feltonii* (fam. Portulacaceae) which has bright pinkish-purple flowers and is found only in the Falkland Islands. It was thought to be extinct in the wild, but has been recently found on some of the smaller islands of the group.

**1987** (Falkland Islands) *The Falkland Islands Magazine* no 6 (May): 2.

Felton's flower escaped extinction by the narrowest of margins.

**1997** *The Warrah* 11: 4 [source: [www.falklands-nature.demon.co.uk/warrah/warrah11/warrah11.html](http://www.falklands-nature.demon.co.uk/warrah/warrah11/warrah11.html)]

It has been a surprise to all concerned just how many private gardens across the Islands support flourishing populations of Feltons Flower.

**fernbird**

The bird *Bowdleria punctata caudata*: see **Snares fernbird**.

**1909** Waite, Edgar R. in Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington: 552.

*Bowdleria fulva*, Gray. (Fern-bird.) ... This bird is common at the Snares. It runs along the ground, and rapidly crosses open spaces to the cover of tussock or other shelter. It is comparatively fearless of man, and will pass close to one's feet; if alarmed, it flies heavily for a short distance, and settles either on the ground or on a low bush. The fern-bird builds in the heart of a fern.

**c1948** (Snares Islands) Richdale, L.E. *Wild life on an island outpost: expedition to The Snares Islands 1947-48* Otago Daily Times and Witness Newspapers, Dunedin: 114.

The commonest bush bird is the Fernbird (*Bowdleria punctata*), there being, as far as I could judge, four breeding pairs to the acre ... The Fernbird is brown and speckled all over, much smaller than a thrush, with a long tail, of which the feathers are all notched along the edges ... Fernbirds feed largely on the ground, foraging for and collecting insects under leaves and other small objects on the ground by lifting them with their feet.

**fernbush** *noun and attrib. Also fernbrake*

A plant community rich in ferns, tree-ferns and straggling heath-like trees, typically one of the vegetation types found on the Tristan group, Gough, Marion and Prince Edward Islands, and other subantarctic islands. Characteristic plants are *Histiopteris incisa* and *Blechnum palmiforme*; fernbush is usually up to 1 m (3 ft 3 in) in height.

**1940** Christopherson, Erling *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 94.

Impenetrable fern scrub on Tristan. We found that it sheltered at least one bird which on Tristan itself had long been considered extinct, viz., a thrush — "starchy" as it is called.]

**1965** Wace, N.M. in van Oye, P. & van Miegheem, J. eds *Biogeography and ecology in Antarctica* Monographiae Biologicae XV, Dr W. Junk, The Hague: 251.

The dominant species generally form thickets amongst the smaller herbaceous communities, in which ferns are often dominant. Such communities have been described as "fern bush" (Wace, 1960 and 1961). They occur in the islands on the New Zealand continental shelf, the Falklands, the Tristan-Gough group, and Amsterdam Island; and their southern limit marks the poleward extent of the temperate islands as recognised here.

**1985** Verrill, G.E. in *Transactions of the Connecticut Academy of Arts and Science* 9: 13.

The deciduous fern *Histiopteris incisa* forms the dominant climax assemblage in fern bush.

**1987** Smith, V.R. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* 17(2): 134.

Fernbrake is a conspicuous vegetation type covering many of the island's lowland slopes, especially those with northerly and easterly aspects. In contrast to fjældmark, fernbrakes are not ubiquitous throughout the sub-Antarctic. Although ferns are locally abundant in restricted areas at many sub-Antarctic (and southern cold-temperate) islands, it appears that only at Marion Island (and its nearby neighbour, Prince Edward Island) are fernbrakes an important component of the vegetation.

**1991** *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions newsletter* Sept: 10.

The south barrier contains a younger (late Miocene-Pliocene) volcanic sandstone sequence with a diatom and palaeological assemblage indicating a fern bush vegetation similar to that of some modern subantarctic islands.

**2000** (Tristan da Cunha) <http://home.wxs.nl/~beintema/moorhen.htm>, accessed 22 Feb.

The fernbush covers a belt of 2.5-3 km wide all around most of the island, on the cliffs and the Base.

**FID** *noun and attrib., Brit.*

[From the acronym of the Falkland Islands Dependencies Survey. The Falkland Islands Dependencies of the United Kingdom were formally defined by Britain in July 1908 and March 1917 as all islands and territories between 20° and 50°W, south of 50°S, and all islands and territories between 50° and 80°W, south of 58°S.]

A British antarctic worker with the Falkland Islands Dependencies Survey, which later (in 1962) became the British Antarctic Survey.

**1908** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 18(9) 1 Sept: 107.

The Governor and Commander-in-Chief of Our Colony of the Falkland Islands for the time being (herein-after called the Governor) shall be the Governor of South Georgia, the South Orkneys, the South Shetlands, and the Sandwich Islands, and the territory of Graham's Land (all of which are herein-after called the Dependencies).]

**1952** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 61(11) 1 Jul: 120.

F.I.D.S., Bases lexpenditurel £61,335.

**1954** *Polar Record* 7(48) Jul: 167.

With the help of working parties from the *John Biscoe*, various improvements were made at F.I.D.S. stations during the summer season.

**1966** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 4(7) Sept: 369.

W.W. (Wally) Herbert also an experienced F.I.D.S. man (1955-59) .. is attempting to capture the spirit of the Antarctic explorer.



**1980** (Bird Island, South Georgia) Parmelee, David F. *Bird Island in antarctic waters* University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis: 26.

With the shoes went a pair of canvas shin guards that, according to Peter, would ward off slick tussock mud. Fastening the guards securely to the shoes was a Fid trick I never did master.

**1996** Walton, Kevin and Atkinson, Rick *Of dogs and men: the illustrated story of the dogs of the British Antarctic Survey 1944-1994* Images Publishing, Malvern Wells: 13.

People who have worked with BAS, collectively referred to as 'Fids', are better known for their drive and enthusiasm than for their literary skills.

### fidlet *Brit.*

A new or first-year **FID**.

**1967** (Adelaide Island) *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* no. 1 (Apr): 2.

The Eliason was occasionally used to transport FIDS (Base members) and *fidlets* (young Base members) up to the aircraft park.

### fielders *Aust.*

A rum ration for field trips.

**1972** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* June: 28.

We finally arrived at our destination at 7.00 a.m. on 19 November celebrated with a couple of fielders (field rum issue).

**1995** Robinson, Shelagh *Huskies in harness: a love story in Antarctica* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 142.

[gloss] Fielders: Rum ration, carried on field trips.

### field ice *Historical*

[The term seems to have survived in the Arctic but not the Antarctic: the only late 20th century quotations found (except 1987) are arctic. Captain James Cook's 1772 quotation noted a difference in the term's use between himself and two men on his ship with Greenland experience. In *Canadian English*, though early records are only from 1850, the term is recorded into modern times (DCanE 1954).]

Unbroken or closely packed **pack ice**. See also **consolidated pack ice**, **ice field**, **unbroken pack ice**.

**18 Dec 1772** (55°16'S, nr 24° long.) Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, In the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970) vol 1: 27.

Dangerous as it is to sail among these floating rocks (if I may be allowed to call them so) in a thick fog; this, however, is preferable to being entangled with immense fields of ice under the same circumstances. The great danger to be apprehended in this latter case, is the getting fast in the ice; a situation which would be exceedingly alarming. I had two men on board that had been in the Greenland trade; the one of them in a ship that lay nine weeks, and the other in one that lay six weeks, fast in this kind of ice; which they called packed ice. What they call field ice is thicker; and the whole field, be it ever so large, consists of one piece. Whereas this which I call field ice, from its immense extent, consists of many pieces of various sizes both in thickness and surface, from 30 or 40 feet square, to 3 or 4; packed close together; and in places heaped one upon another. This, I am of the opinion, would be found too hard for a ship's side, that is not properly armed against it.

**28 Feb 1831** (first sighting of Enderby Land) Weddell, James in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 322.

Latitude 65°57'S., longitude 47°20'30"E. P.M., passed to the southward through much broken field-ice.

**2 Feb 1839** (67°37'S, 164°54'E) Enderby, Charles in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 339.

Still embayed in field-ice.

**1911** Hobbs, William Herbert *Characteristics of existing glaciers* The Macmillan Company, NY: 199.

The term "field-ice" in the Antarctic regions applies to the uniform sheet of frozen sea. During the formation of this surface ice, some of the sea salts are squeezed upward through capillary cracks to the surface and there freeze as cryohydrates, which become the nuclei for further growth from atmospheric water vapour. In this way, beautiful rosette-like aggregates of crystals are produced.

**1928** Wordie, J.M. in Hayes, J. *Gordon Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 381.

[glossary] Field ice. (This term is liable to confusion with the term "Ice Field" (which see). One of Sir Ernest Shackleton's terms for the heaviest unbroken pack is therefore suggested.)

**1987** Bates, Robert L. and Jackson, Julia A., eds *Glossary of geology, 3rd edn* American Geological Institute, Alexandria: 241.

Field ice (a) An obsolete term for *consolidated pack ice* consisting of very large, relatively flat floes many kilometres across. (b) A general term used for all types of *sea ice* except that newly formed.

### FIGAS *Falkland Islands*

[Acronym from *Falkland Islands Government Air Service*.]

The government-run air service of the Falkland Islands.

**1994** Simpson, Tim *Cooking the Falkland Island way* Peregrine Publishing, Bangor: 10.

Dogs, moggies and the occasional sheep are sometimes flown from place to place by FIGAS.

### fin *See fin whale*

### finback (whale) *See fin whale*

### finch *Tristan da Cunha*

[Finch has been used for small birds esp. of the fam. *Fringillidae*, since before 700 (NOED).]

The bird *Nesospiza acunhae*: see **Tristan bunting**.

**1879** (Inaccessible Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 121.

Hopping and fluttering about amongst the trees and herbage, were abundance of a small finch and a thrush; no other land birds were seen. The finch (*Neospiza Acunhae*) looks very like a green-finch, and is about the same size. ... The finch eats the fruit of the *Phyllica*.

**1935** Christensen, Lars, transl. fr Norwegian by Jayne, E.M.G. *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Staughton, London: 231.

I shot a few small birds whose name is given as finches; but they are more like yellow-hammers.

**1940** (Nightingale Island) Christopherson, Erling *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 80.

The tussock was their home; the petrels had their holes underneath it, the penguins sat in it whilst finches and thrushes sat on it.

### fingee *abusive noun, US*

[Loosely formed acronym of 'fucking new guy']

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

Someone new, and undesirably or at least not desirably so.

**1990** (McMurdo base) *Antarctica Sun Times* [McMurdo] 1V(iv) 14 Nov: 5.

My roommate is an OAE (Old Antarctic Explorer) so he is very knowledgeable if not smart ... I am called a "F-N-G," or "Fingy." I presume that means "Fantastic New Girl." I may be mistaken.

**1996** Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 73.

'So, what's it like being a Fingee?' he asked me when I sat down.

'What's a fingee?' I asked suspiciously.

'Fucking New Guy!' said John.

**1997** Cox, Jack in *Denver Post* 23 Nov: 1E.

First-timers are called FNGs (pronounced fin-jees), for "Fabulous New Guys."

**finner** See **fin whale**

**finneskoe** *stng. and pl. normally the same. Also finnesko*

[From Norwegian Finn Lapp, + *sko* shoe. The word is recorded in arctic English usage from 1890 onwards (NOED).]

A soft shoe for cold-climate travel, originally Lapp, made from reindeer skin and lined with grass for insulation and to absorb moisture. Soft shoes, unlike conventional leather boots, will not freeze hard and are therefore easier to put on the next day.

**2 June 1902** Scott, Captain Robert F. (1905) *The voyage of the 'Discovery'* Macmillan and Co, London: 244.

These fur boots are made of selected reindeer skin and sewn with gut; the sole is made from the covering of the forehead both on account of the thickness of the pelt in this part and also to obtain the twist in the growth of the hair which gives the boot a better chance of gripping on a slippery surface; the upper part of the boot is made from neck-pieces and is soft and pliable ... Some officers and men have already resoled their "finneskoes," as these fur boots are called, with sealskin.

**1908** Edgeworth David, T.W. in Shackleton, E.H., ed. (1988) *Aurora Australis*. British Antarctic Expedition, Antarctica. Bay Books facs, Sydney: [31].

Occasionally we came to blows, but these were dealt accidentally by a long armed finneskoe-shod cramponless sledge, who whirled his arms like a windmill in his desperate efforts to keep his balance after slipping. On such occasions the silence of our march was broken by a few words, more crisp than courteous, from the smitten one, and then once more nothing was to be heard but the soft pad of the finneskoes.

**26–28 Oct 1908** Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 14.

Mac lost a finnesko today and walked back after evening meal for it — found at noon camping place.

**22 Feb 1909** Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907–1909* William Heinemann, London: 363.

About 11 A.M. we suddenly came across the tracks of a party of four men, with dogs. Evidently the weather has been fine and they have been moving at a good pace towards the south. We could tell that the weather has been fine, for they were wearing ski boots instead of finnesko, and occasionally we saw the stump of a cigarette.

**1922** Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Picador, London: 258.

The effect of walking in finnesko is much the same as walking in gloves, and you get a sense of touch which nothing else except bare feet could give you.

**1940** *Polar Record* 3(19) Jan: 254.

"Finnesko" .. is the winter boot used by Lapps and Scandinavians living in the far north ... It is made of reindeer- (*Rangifer tarandus*) skin, with the hair intact ... If well lined with "sennegrass", finnesko are warm and extremely comfortable ... A finnesko is usually made with three pieces of reindeer-skin sewn together with dried leg sinew. The sole is cut in such a way that there is no seam beneath, or at the sides of, the foot.

Footnote: *Finnesko* or *Finsko* means simply "Lapp shoe" in Norwegian (*Finne* denoting both Lapps and Finns). The term has come into English polar literature through the Norwegian explorers.

**1977** Keneally, Thomas (1978 edn) *A victim of the aurora* Fontana Books/Wm Collins, Glasgow: 42.

'I want you all to put on finneskøe and windproofs. The wind has levelled at force 6, very fierce.'

**finneskoed** *adjective*

Clad in **finneskoe**.

**1922** Nelson (South Polar Times) quoted in Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Picador, London: 349.

With the pad, pad, pad, of fin'skoed feet.

**fin whale** Also **fin, finback (whale), finner (whale)**

[From the Norwegian finhval, appearing in other Scandinavian languages, for example in Icelandic as finnhvaler.]

The large **baleen whale** *Balaenoptera physalus* (fam. Balaenopteridae), formerly heavily hunted. It grows to about 25 m (80 ft) long, is greyish to blackish brown above and white beneath, and lives throughout the world's oceans. The southern hemisphere population lives in antarctic waters in summer and moves north to temperate waters to breed, following the normal migration pattern for baleen whales of moving from colder waters to warmer ones in winter. See also **razorback**.

**1821** (South Shetlands) Sherratt, Richard quoted in *Polar Record* 6(43) Jan: 363.

The first intimation you have of being near South Shetland, is meeting with a great quantity of whales, of the black kind, and what are called the fin-back; you may thence conclude you are about 150 miles from land.

**9 Feb 1841** (McMurdo area) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 170.

Whales were numerous here, spouting in all directions, and many white petrels. At four a.m. a whole line of finners were sending up jets of vapour so high as to appear above the barrier.

**1879** Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 252.

When we were off the pack ice, and especially when we neared the Antarctic Circle, whales were extremely abundant, apparently all of one species, a "Finback," probably the southern "Finner" (*Physalus Australis*). I saw no Right Whale amongst them at all.

**1895** (nr 69°S, 169°E) Borchgrevink, C. Egeberg in *Geographical Journal: journal of the Royal Geographical Society*, London 5: 588.

We shot fast in a small finned whale, whose flesh makes an excellent dish.

**5 Dec 1910** (56°41'S, 176°23'E) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912: an account of Scott's last expedition* Blandford Press, London: 69.

This evening we saw a Fin Whale (*Balaenoptera musculus*)<sup>1</sup>.  
<sup>1</sup>Footnote: Dr. F.C. Fraser writes: 'At the time of Wilson's writing the Fin Whale's specific name was *Balaenoptera musculus* and the Blue Whale's *B. sibbaldii*.'

**1922** (South Georgia) Murphy, Robert Cushman *National Geographic* 41(4) Apr: 416.

During the earlier years or whaling, the humpback was the mainstay of the industry, constituting more than 96 per cent of the catch; the finback whale next rose to importance as the humpbacks declined; and, finally, the blue whale has become the principal "fish".

**1942** Mawson, Douglas *Geographical narrative and cartography. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911–14. Scientific reports series A vol 1* Government Printer, Sydney: 23.

A Finner Whale was observed swimming alongside at 4 a.m.

**1949** Villiers, Alan *Whalers of the midnight sun* Angus & Robertson, Sydney: 128.

"Give her all she's got; we're after fins!"

**1971** (South Georgia) Brown, Nan *Antarctic housewife* Hutchinson of Australia, Melbourne: 73.

'Fin whale', said of the officer of the watch. Though solitary, it was a prize worth pursuing as in oil yield a Fin is the equivalent of two and half Sei whales.

**1984** Fletcher, Harold *Antarctic days with Mawson: a personal account of the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929–31* Angus and Robertson, London: 260.

Fin whales are a much smaller species than the blue whale and yield about 60 barrels of oil per whale, so that 3000 of them would have to be caught to fill the tanks of the *Kosmos*, which held 180,000 barrels. Six barrels equal about one tonne.

**1994** *Antarctic Society of Australia newsletter* 36 (Mar): 3.

Endangered and vulnerable species such as blues, fins and humpbacks.

### firebird *Esp. Falkland Islands*

[Fire-bird is recorded in British English for a bird which stays near the fire, since 1593 (NOED).]

A petrel or diving petrel, esp. *Pachyptila belcheri*: see **thin-billed prion**. See also **nightbird**.

**c11 Jan 1882** (New Island, Falkland Islands) Luscombe, Frederick in Layman, Rear-Admiral C.H. and Cameron, Jane (1995) *The Falklands and the Dwarf: the cruise of HMS Dwarf in the Falkland Islands 1881–1882* Picton Publishing, Chippenham: 104.

Came across some very curious birds called Fire Birds<sup>1</sup> who live underground, only coming out at night.

<sup>1</sup>[Footnote] These beautiful little birds, the Slender-billed Prions, still live and breed on New Island in large numbers. They may have become known as Firebirds because they seem to be attracted to light, and a fire burning as they return to their burrows at nightfall will reveal large numbers of them.

**1924** Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history* by Rupert Vallentin Clarendon Press, Oxford: 296.

This is only the second specimen of this petrel I ever saw, but I believe it nests in holes in the ground on some of the remote islands, being known locally as the 'fire bird'.

**1935** Mathews, Gregory M. *A supplement to the birds of Norfolk & Lord Howe Islands to which is added those birds of New Zealand not figured by Buller* H.F. & G. Witherby, London: 29.

Heteroprion belcheri. Thin-billed prion ... These birds are known as fire birds, because they fly to a fire or light.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 116.

Thin-billed Prion *Pachyptila belcheri* ... Local name: Firebird ... The commonest prion in Falkland waters.

**1992** del Hoyo, Josep and others, eds *Handbook of the birds of the world vol 1: Ostrich to ducks* Lynx Edicions, Barcelona: 276.

Sailors have traditionally known them [sc. diving petrels] as "firebirds", perhaps an allusion to their very fast flight.

### firn

[From the German firn last year's [snow], recorded in northern use from 1853 (NOED).]

Old granulated snow (becoming ice) with air spaces which are still connected; sometimes — but not always (see 1959 quotation) — identical to **névé**.

[1907 Ferrar, H.T. *Report of the field-geology of the region explored during the 'Discovery' Antarctic expedition, 1901–04, vol 1 Geology* British Museum, London: 64.

The mountain belt of South Victoria Land, quite 60 miles in breadth, buttresses a firnfield of vast but unknown extent.]

**1911** Hobbs, William Herbert *Characteristics of existing glaciers* The Macmillan Company, NY: 153.

In view of Nordenskjöld's observations in Spitzbergen and recent studies in Antarctica it is unlikely that firn or névé snow will be found within the interior except at some depths below the surface.

**27 Sept–25 Oct 1959** Béchervaise, John (1963) *Blizzard and fire: a year at Mawson, Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 165.

Névé, although the word means much the same as *firn* in Europe, in the Antarctic has come to connote that snow which has been consolidated by pressure, or deposited by wind under conditions remaining far below freezing. It has the consistency of chalk almost.

**1965** (King George Island) *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* 5 (Jan): 3.

Stakes .. were drilled into the ice or firn to a depth of 1 m.

**1989** May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica, 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 27.

Firn is less white than snow and it becomes translucent blue or green as it turns into glacier ice.

**1995** Crossley, Louise *Explore Antarctica* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 23.

As snow accumulates in deeper and deeper layers, it gradually turns into ice. Freshly fallen snow is fluffy and full of air pockets, with a density of only 0.1–0.2 g/cm<sup>3</sup>. As the layer gets thicker, the complex shapes of the snowflakes are packed more closely into spheres, and the density increases to about 0.55 g/cm<sup>3</sup>. At this stage the snow has become 'firn'.

### firnify *verb*

To change from snow into ice through the **firn** stage.

**1995** (Prydz Bay, 1955) Law, Phillip *You have to be lucky: antarctic and other adventures* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 78.

The snow had firnified or crystallised into ice, giving under us about a metre of granular ice like loose gravel. This overlaid the usual sea ice.

### first-year ice

Sea ice of less than two year's winter growth; **annual ice, one-year ice**.

**1987** Bates, Robert L. and Jackson, Julia A., eds *Glossary of geology, 3rd edn* American Geological Institute, Alexandria: 244.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

First-year ice: sea ice, not more than one winter's growth, developing from young ice; it is subdivided on the basis of thickness: "thin" (30–70 cm; also known as white ice); "medium" (70–120 cm); and "thick" (120 cm to 2 m).

**1995** Ives, Jack D. and Sugden, David, eds *Polar regions Reader's Digest*, Sydney: 14.

The ice thickens as the underlying water freezes and attaches to the base of the ice. Ice of not more than one year's growth is known as first-year ice.

### five-finger *Tristan da Cunha, Gough Island*

[Perhaps from the five or six dark bands on the fish's sides, or perhaps from the ribs on the fins. New Zealand English records this as a name for several fishes of the fam. Scorpaenidae (DNZE 1938–).]

The edible marine fish *Acantholatris monodactylus* (fam. Cheilodactylidae), greenish to brownish with dark banding, which grows to about 60 cm (2 ft) long. It occurs in the waters of Tristan da Cunha, Gough, St Paul and Amsterdam Islands, and off Australia and New Zealand.

**[1817]** (Tristan da Cunha) Carmichael, Captain Dugald (1818) *Transactions of the Linnean Society of London* 12(2): 500.

*Chelodon monodactylus* ... Colour varying from olive to bronze, with six broad, obscurely-marked black bars across the back, reaching half-way down the sides. Fins blackish; pectoral amber-coloured, extremely delicate. This fish is very common on the coast of Tristan da Cunha, and feeds on the leaves of the *Fucus pyrifera*.]

**1910** Barrow, K.M. *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 276.

The fish we saw at Tristan were:— Five-finger (*Chilodactylus Fasciatus lac*) [etc.].

**1940** Sivertsen, Erling and Baardseth, Egil in Christopherson, Erling *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 67.

In the summer, from December to March, their catch chiefly consists of five-fingers, a tasty fish resembling perch.

**1957** Booy, D.M. *Rock of exile: a narrative of Tristan da Cunha* J.M. Dent & Sons, London: 168.

There would be good catches, at this time of the year [sc. August], of snoek, blue-fish, red soldier-fish, cod, mackerel, 'five-finger'.

**1976** Wace, N.M. and Holdgate, M.W. *Man and nature in the Tristan da Cunha islands* IUCN monograph no. 6, Morges, Switzerland: 74.

Several species of Tristan fish, notably *Acantholatris monodactylus* ('fivefinger') [etc.] are caught by the islanders for food, but none has been the basis of any commercial fishery, although numbers are taken by the crews of crayfishing vessels and deep frozen for later sale.

**1994** Cooper, John and Ryan, Peter G *Management plan for the Gough Island wildlife reserve* Government of Tristan da Cunha: 22.

Voluntary minimum size limits of 250 mm for Fivefinger, 600 mm for Snoek and 400 mm for Bluefish in Tristan–Gough waters were set by the fishing company in July 1992.

### fixed ice

#### Fast ice.

**1843** Robertson, J. in *Tasmanian Journal of Natural Science* II(vi): 47.

It is probable that the main land does not suffer an equal degree of destruction, owing to the great quantity of fixed ice which in all parts lines the shore, protecting it from the rav-

ages of the ocean as well as the destructive powers of the atmosphere.

**1975** McPherson, John G. *Footprints on a frozen continent* Hicks Smith & Sons, Sydney: 17.

[caption] The coast of northern Victoria Land during mid-summer, showing fixed ice and ice-shelf projecting seaward for a few miles from the mountainous land edge.

### flax *noun and attrib., Tristan da Cunha. Also New Zealand flax*

[This plant has been called New Zealand flax in Australian English since 1777, New Zealand English since 1811, and British English since 1832. In New Zealand it is usually simply 'flax' (DNZE 1773–).]

The New Zealand plant *Phormium tenax* (fam. Agavaceae or Phormiaceae), a large, robust tufted perennial with long, tough leaves, introduced to Tristan da Cunha where it grew wild (as it does on St Helena) and was used until recently for thatching houses.

**3 Aug 1906** Barrow, K.M. (1910) *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 70.

It is not known who brought flax to the isle, but Betty says her father and his contemporaries brought it to the settlement from Sandy Point.

**1926** Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 99.

My husband .. paved the paths with flat stones and planted flax for shelter.

**1957** Booy, D.M. *Rock of exile: a narrative of Tristan da Cunha* J.M. Dent & Sons, London: opp. 119.

[caption] The roof is thatched with New Zealand flax and the ridge sealed with turf.

— 138.

The wind .. prowled through the village .. slinking away among the flax gardens.

**1963** Mackay, Margaret *Angry island: the story of Tristan da Cunha (1506–1963)* Arthur Barker, London: 149.

The garden ... had .. a hedge of the tall New Zealand flax which had been imported to supplement the thatching, since the wild tussock was growing scarce through carelessness and bush fires.

**1987** [travel leaflet] *Tristan da Cunha: the loneliest island in the world* Curnow Shipping Lines: [3].

The community was still no more than eleven flax thatched cottages built from blocks of volcanic rocks when, in 1867, HRH Prince Alfred, Duke of Edinburgh and second son of Queen Victoria, visited the island while voyaging round the world and gave the settlement of Edinburgh its present name.

**1993** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 13 (Sept): 6.

On the 5th of July came a turning point in Tristan's history. The last thatched house had it's [sic] roof replaced with a more modern material. Tristan must move with the times but I feel a certain sadness that a skill such as thatching with the New Zealand flax must almost certainly die out. How about thatching the Museum on Tristan and keeping tradition alive?

### fleunch *verb, sealing and whaling. Also fletch, flinch*

[Variant of flense from the Norwegian flense (which means the same as this). 'Flense' is recorded later than below (from 1814: NOED) in Arctic use.]

To remove the **blubber** from a **seal** or **whale** in order to extract the oil.

**1793** Colnett, Captain James *A voyage to the South Atlantic and round Cape Horn into the Pacific Ocean, for the purpose of extending the Spermaceti Whale fisheries, and other objects of commerce* Printed for the author by W. Bennett, London: c8.

Several of my people getting hurt in flinching (May 1793) them [sc. the whales], and others breaking out in boils from the bad state of the weather, I was obliged to pursue my voyage; but, by ordering the sick two oranges every day each person, with a large glass of lime juice and water every morning, they soon recovered.

**10 Nov 1821** ("New Shetland") *Literary Gazette and Journal of Belles Lettres [London]* vol 5, quoted in *Polar Record* (1946) 4(32) Jul: 389.

We pitched on the point where we were to commence operations in the morning, and in the mean time amused ourselves with walking about; and before we had marched far fell in with an immense shoal of elephants asleep. On waking, they were evidently so unaccustomed to the sight of man, that they eyed us with the utmost indifference, but when we attacked them with our lances, &., they betrayed their astonishment in a stifled bellow. Several were killed and fletched of their blubber, which was casked up.

**22 Jan 1893** Burn Murdoch, W.G. (1894) *From Edinburgh to the Antarctic* Longmans, Green and Co, London: 301.

A long day of hard grinding at the oars, killing and flinching seals.

**1912** (Falkland Islands) *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 22(7) (8 Jun): 136.

The Colonial Secretary .. may grant Floating Factory Licences, that is to say, licences to flench, render, boil down, treat or manufacture whale carcasses.

**1929** Joyce, Ernest E. Mills *The South Polar trail* Duckworth, London: 42.

Before many months had elapsed, and we were in the Antarctic regions, five minutes was all that was required to kill a seal and flinch it.

**1981** Richards, Rhys in *American Neptune* 41: 303.

In 1855 Captain Robinson wrote: One day I landed (at Heard Island) ... Here was a wonderful sight for stretching over a long low point for over two miles were scores of men killing and flinching sea elephants ... The men would kill one and skin it, or flinch the blubber and the thick skins off together ... the others would take no notice ... A cow elephant when it just comes ashore will yield nearly, or quite, two barrels. The March bulls .. will often make five barrels of oil. They are .. mostly shot through the roof of the mouth, while a very short lance is used for the cows.

### flensing plan *Whaling. Also flensing deck, flensing platform*

A **plan**: a wooden platform either on a factory ship or on shore for flensing whales on.

**1925** (South Georgia) Hurley, Captain Frank *Argonauts of the South* G.P. Putnam's Sons, NY: 128.

Numbers of whale carcasses inflated like balloons were moored to a buoy just off the cutting-up platforms or "flensing plan."

**1929** (South Georgia) *Discovery Reports* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London, vol 1: 228.

The whale boats usually bring in their catches during the night, and work on the flensing platform begins at 6 a.m. and continues with intervals for meals until 6 p.m., or until the day's catch has been disposed of.

**1938** Dakin, William John *Whalemen adventurers: the story of whaling in Australian waters and other Southern Seas Related Thereto. Revised second edn* Angus & Robertson, Sydney: 221.

The Larsen Company purchased its second factory-ship in 1926, a large oil-tanker of 15,000 tons which had been built at Wallsend, England. She was reconstructed with an enormous bowport about eighteen feet in diameter leading to a slipway up which the whales could be hauled by great winches to the flensing deck.

**1949** Innes, Hammond (1953 edn) *The white south* Fontana Books, London: 72.

My guide had taken me first to the flensing decks. This is the centre of activity in a factory ship when the whales are coming in. There are two flensing decks — the fore-plan and the after-plan. And both looked the sort of charnel house you might dream up in a nightmare. Men waded knee-deep in the bulging intestines of the whales, their long-handled, curved-bladed flensing knives slashing at the bleeding hunks of meat exposed by the removal of the blubber casing.

**1982** (South Georgia) Bonner, Nigel in *BAS Club Newsletter* no. 12 (Christmas): 20.

The work on the flensing plan fascinated me ... The flensers stalked about with their hockey-stick knives, the spikes on their boot heels raising splinters from the timbers.

**1991** Venables, Stephen *Island at the edge of the world: a South Georgia odyssey* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 55.

Every summer until 1964 the tall chimneys belched steam from specialised boilers lined up in the blubber, meat and bone cookeries and guano factory. But the visible heart of the operation, feeding the cookers, was the flensing plan — a huge wooden deck sloping gently up from the shore ... Once the carcass was on the plan the men set to with long flensing knives, shaped like hockey sticks, stripping the skin and blubber and carving it into small enough pieces for the blubber cookers.

### flightless duck *New Zealand*

Either of two ducks which do not fly:

1. The duck *Anas aucklandicus aucklandicus*: see **Auckland Island teal**.

**1901** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* XI(LXXX): 66.

Mr. W.R. Ogilvie-Grant sent for exhibition a pair of the nearly-extinct Merganser (*Merganser australis*), obtained on Auckland Island by Lord Ranfurly during a collecting trip to the islands south of New Zealand ... The collection of birds, which were all sent home preserved in jars of formaline, contained many interesting and valuable birds, such as the Flightless Duck (*Nesonetta aucklandica*).

**23 Mar 1904** (Auckland Islands) Roberts, Brian, ed. (1967) *Edward Wilson's birds of the Antarctic* New Orchard Editions, Poole [Dorset]: 156.

While I was on shore, Mulock shot 5 of the flightless duck, the *Nesonetta*.

**1909** Waite, Edgar R. in Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington, vol II: 583.

*Nesonetta aucklandica* .. (Flightless duck.) ... Though usually spoken of as "flightless," Captain Bollons tells me that these ducks are able to fly for short distances, and, as a matter of fact, they reach their nesting-sites by this means.

**1936** (Auckland Island) Guthrie-Smith, H. *Sorrows and joys of a New Zealand naturalist* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Dunedin: 209.

Within the vast bolster of dead and decaying seaweed, warmth must have been generated almost as in a hot bed. On its unctuous surface these Flightless Duck guzzled about our feet with all the unconstrained gusto of their domesticated kin.

**1942** (1912) Mawson, Douglas *Geographical narrative and cartography. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911-14. Scientific reports series A vol 1* Government Printer, Sydney: 54.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

During the day Waite captured six specimens of the flightless duck *Nesonetta aucklandica*. This is an endemic bird which lives among the kelp and along the shore of the Auckland Islands.

2. The related *Anas aucklandicus nesiotis*: see **Campbell Island teal**.

**1935** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* LVI(ccclxxxix): 19. Mr. Kinnear further exhibited a drawing belonging to Mr. J.H. Fleming of an apparently extinct Flightless Duck from Campbell Island closely allied to *Nesonetta aucklandica* and recently described by him as *Xenonetta nesiotis*.

**28 May 1944** (Campbell Island) Pollock, Laurie, quoted in Fraser, Conon (1986) *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 159.

Surprised to see two flightless ducks between NW Bay and Windlass Bay, and although (Balham and I) tried for an hour with stones to secure a specimen did not have any luck. Arrived back in dark. 29th May. Managed to shoot [a flightless duck]. 30th. Put Flightless Duck in pickle after weighing, and measuring.

**1976** *The Islander [quarterly bulletin of the Campbell-Raoul Island association]* 3(3) Dec: 55.

I noticed press reference at the time to sightings of the "flightless duck" or Campbell Island teal.

### flightless rail *Tristan da Cunha*

Any of three flightless birds found on the Tristan da Cunha-Gough Island group, all of which are also called **island cock**:

1. *Gallinula nesiois comeri* (fam. Rallidae) of Gough Island: see **Gough moorhen**.

**1904** *The Ibis* 4(XV) Jul: 482.

On her way to the Cape the naturalists of the 'Scotia' had landed on Gough Island, a remote outlier of the Tristan d'A-cunha group, and had obtained examples of the flightless Rail, *Porphyriornis comeri*.

**1982** (1888) Crawford, Allan *Tristan da Cunha and the Roaring Forties*. Charles Skilton, Edinburgh: 147.

He kept a diary, in which he recorded, among other things, the first sighting of one of the rarest birds in the world, the "mountain cock" or flightless rail, named *Porphyriornis Comeri* after its discoverer. This bird is about the size of a moorhen, which it resembles closely, but it has no powers of flight.

2. The bird *Atlantisia rogersi* of Inaccessible Island: see **Inaccessible (Island) flightless rail**.

**1928** (Nightingale Island) Lowe, Percy in Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 209.

Appendix II. Natural History specimens collected by Mr. and Mrs. Rogers in Tristan da Cunha and Inaccessible and Nightingale Islands and now at the British Museum (Natural History). 1. The Flightless Rail (*Atlantisia Rogersi*) of Inaccessible Island Special description by Dr. Percy Lowe ... I referred this rail to an entirely new genus and species, naming it in honour of Mr. Rogers, who was the first to procure specimens of it with the object of making it known to science. The bird will therefore now be known as *Atlantisia Rogersi*.

**1932** Gane, Douglas M. *Tristan da Cunha: an empire outpost and its keepers with glimpses of its past and consideration of the future* George Allen & Unwin, London: 70.

The mention of the bird [sc. by Earle on Tristan] is more especially interesting owing to the discovery, during his mission of 1922-25, by the Rev. Henry Martyn Rogers on Inaccessible Island of a flightless rail — a similar bird of smaller dimensions — several specimens of which he sent home to me and which I afterwards exhibited on the Tristan da Cunha stall of the British Empire Exhibition.

3. The bird *Gallinula nesiotis nesiotis* (fam. Rallidae), now probably extinct but formerly occurring on Tristan da Cunha.

**1958** Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 20.

He [sc. Augustus Earle] describes the flightless rail of Tristan; a bird about the size of a partridge, with a gait somewhat like that of a penguin. The male was glossy black, with a bright-red, hard crest on the top of his head, while the hen was brown. They stood erect, their legs were yellow and long, and they ran very fast. Their wings were small and useless for flying, but had a 'spear' used, as it was thought, for defence and as an aid in climbing about the rocks which they haunted. The flesh was plump, fat, and excellent eating. This bird is now extinct, but from the description must have resembled the rail of Gough Island quite closely in size, appearance, and habits.

**1961** (Tristan da Cunha) Holdgate, M.W. and Wace, N.M. in *Polar Record* 10(68) May: 479.

Great colonies of ground-nesting petrels and shearwaters were a feature of the island, and albatrosses and an endemic flightless rail (*Porphyriornis nesiotis*) were also abundant.

### flightless steamer duck *Falkland Islands*

The duck *Tachyeres brachypterus*: see **logger duck**.

**1976** Hill, Len and Wood, Emma *Penguin millionaire: the story of Birdland* David and Charles, Newton Abbot, Devon: 109.

A final Falkland Islands bird worthy of mention is the flightless steamer duck (*Tachyeres brachypterus*) which is unusual as it does not occur naturally in other parts of South America ... It is a large bird with ridiculously small wings for its body and is incapable of normal flight.

**1995** *BBC Wildlife Magazine* 13(2) Feb: 33.

Some [birds] are true endemics like the Flightless Steamer Duck while others, such as the Striated Caracara bird of prey, are very rare.

### floating factory *Whaling*

A **factory ship**, which is a large vessel with processing facilities, used in whaling and other forms of fishing. Floating factories were used for whaling in the Antarctic from 1905 until 1979. See also **shore station**.

**1911** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 21(3) (1 Mar): 46.

Each Whaling License shall be applicable to one floating factory and two steam whalers ... No greater number than ten Whaling Licenses shall be issued in any one year for the South Shetlands and Graham's Land.

**1922** (Deception Island) *The Sphere [London]* 16 Dec: 291.

The whales that are caught out in the ocean are brought in by the "catcher" boats, and are dealt with either by the big floating factories — steamers specially built for this work — or by the land factory.

1937 Lars Christensen (1938) *My last expedition to the Antarctic 1936-1937, with a review of the research work done on the voyages of 1927-1937. A lecture delivered before the Norwegian Geographical Society, September 22nd, 1937* Johan Grundt Tanum, Oslo: 4.

In the autumn of 1905 .. my father sent the first floating factory to the Antarctic and thus inaugurated Norwegian whaling in the Antarctic Ocean.

**1971** (South Georgia) Brown, Nan *Antarctic housewife* Hutchinson of Australia, Melbourne: 91.

We identified it as a helicopter used in whale-spotting, from the Salvesen vessel, *Southern Harvester*, a floating factory known to be in the area.

**1985** Walton, D.W.H and Bonner, W.N. in Bonner, W.N. and Walton, D.W.H., eds *Key environments: Antarctica* Pergamon Press, Oxford: 15.

The small steam-powered catching boats brought their whales back to a factory for processing. This could either be built ashore, as at South Georgia, or be brought down intact in an old steamer converted to a 'floating factory', as at the South Shetland Islands. In either case a sheltered anchorage and an abundant supply of fresh water were needed.

**1998** *Britannica Online* Commercial fishing. <http://www.oxford.com:180/cgi-bin/g?DocF=macro/5002/35/25.html>, 26 May 1998.

In 1979 floating factories were banned, except for minke whales.

### floe Also *floe-ice*

[Floe is recorded earlier (from 1817: NOED) in arctic English use, and the word was transferred to the antarctic from there. NOED suggests its origin could be the Norse flo level piece.]

A piece of free-floating sea ice, usually not much raised above the sea surface unless hummocked (see **floe-berg**).

**23 Jan 1840** Wilkes, Charles in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 377.

In the meantime, the position of the vessel was every instant growing worse, surrounded as she was by masses of floe-ice, and driving further and further into it, towards an immense wall-sided iceberg.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 37.

The ship having been temporarily stopped in her progress southwards by the openings in the ice closing up, these dogs were let loose upon the floes; how they enjoyed their liberty. They were in their native element, and scampered madly over the floes and rolled about in the snow.

**27 Dec 1910** Gran, Tryggve, transl fr Norwegian by McGhie, Ellen-Johanne, ed. Hattersley-Smith, Geoffrey (1984) *The Norwegian with Scott: Tryggve Gran's Antarctic diary 1910-1913* National Maritime Museum, UK: 38.

The warmth has had an influence on the pack; the floes have become perceptibly smaller and are getting more or less porous.

**1915** (Commonwealth Bay) Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911-1914* William Heinemann, London, vol 1: 64.

In landing cargo on Antarctic shores, advantage is generally taken of the floe-ice on to which the materials can be unloaded.

**1928** Wordie, J.M. and Priestley, R.E. in Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 382.

Floe. "Any area of [sea] ice, other than fast ice, whose limits are within sight." (See Ice Field, Sea-Ice.) "Floes up to two feet in thickness may, for convenience of description, be termed 'light floes'; floes thicker than this, 'heavy floes'."

**1951** Bowers, Birdie, quoted in Seaver, George *'Birdie' Bowers of the Antarctic* John Murray, London: 185.

The two sledges securing the other end of the line were on the next floe and had been pulled right to the edge. Our camp was on a floe not more than 30 yards across. I shouted to Cherry and Crean, and rushed out in my socks to save the two sledges; the two floes were touching farther on and I dragged them to this place and got them on to our floe. At that moment our own floe split in two, but we were altogether in one piece.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 32.

And ahead, a few hundred yards, is the pack itself, the tough icing on God's cake, the franc-tireurs before the massed forces behind. We thrust the floes out of our way, but not too contemptuously. "Remember", says someone quietly, "they're floating lumps of concrete".

### floeberg

[Floeberg is recorded earlier (from 1878: NOED) in arctic English use.]

(a) A thick raised floe or mass of floes, often hummocked, and standing up to about 15 m (49 ft) above the sea surface; occasionally, a **tabular berg**. (b) A thick floe of **multi-year ice**, standing no more than 2 m (6 ft 7 in) above sea level.

**1909** Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907-1909* William Heinemann, London: 68.

Towards evening we began to pass a number of small floe-bergs and pack-ice.

**1922 (1994)** Cherry-Garrard, Apsley *The worst journey in the world* Penguin Books Ltd, repr. Picador, London: 61.

The origin of the tabular bergs was debated until a few years ago. They have been recorded up to forty and even fifty miles in length, and they have been called floe bergs because it was supposed that they froze first as ordinary sea ice and increased by subsequent additions from below.

**1943** Hydrographic Office, US Navy Department *Sailing directions for Antarctica. H.O. no 138* Hydrographic Office, Washington: 22.

Floe berg — masses of thick heavily hummocked sea ice, usually detached from parent floe, of relative [sic] small horizontal dimensions.

**1953** Innes, Hammond *The white south* Fontana Books, London: 153.

We made for a floe-berg that stood up about a quarter of a mile to the north of us ... The floe-berg was perhaps twenty feet high. I imagine it was originally pack ice that had layered.

**1987** Bates, Robert L. and Jackson, Julia A., eds *Glossary of glology, 3rd edn* American Geological Institute, Alexandria: 248.

Floeberg .. (a) A massive piece of sea ice composed of a *hummock [ice]* or a group of hummocks, frozen together and separated from any ice surroundings, and floating with its highest point up to 5 m above sea level ... It resembles a small iceberg. (b) In the older literature, a thick mass of well-hummocked sea ice originating from an ice floe, and sometimes projecting more than 15 m above sea level.

### floed adjective

Put onto a **floe**.

**27 Oct 1915** Hurley, Frank (1948) *Shackleton's argonauts: the epic tale of Shackleton's voyage to Antarctica in 1915* McGraw-Hill Book Co Pty Ltd: 98.

By 8 p.m. all essential gear is 'floed', and though the destruction of the ship continues, smoke may be observed

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

issuing from the galley chimney — the cook is preparing supper.

**floe-hop** *verb*

To jump from **floe** to floe.

**1964** D.F. Styles *Narrative. Coastal exploration of Kemp and Enderby Lands, Antarctica. ANARE reports Series A Vol. 1 Antarctic Division, Dept of External Affairs, Melbourne: 45.*

Arthurson flew Gregory (geologist) and me to land on the fast ice just off Cape North. From there we floe-hopped to the foot of the towering cliffs, having trouble crossing from the sea-ice onto rocks owing to the surge of the ice back and forth in the swell and the rotten nature of the floes.

**1982** Ledingham, Rod *ANARE dog drivers manual* [Australian] Antarctic Division: 74.

If possible, floe-hop each time you get an opportunity to make progress towards an island or the coast.

**flying pinnamin** *noun*, *Tristan da Cunha*. Also **flying penguin**

[Flying + **pinnamin**.]

The diving petrel *Pelecanoides urinatrix dacunhae* (fam. Pelecanoididae), which has plumage dark brown to blackish above and white to greyish underneath. It breeds on the islands of Tristan da Cunha and on Gough Island, and is also called the **Tristan diving petrel**. See also **common diving petrel**.

**1952** (on Marion Island, used by Tristan Islanders) Crawford, Allan B. in *The Emu* 252(2) May: 80.

Diving Petrel (Flying Penguin), *Pelecanoides urinatrix exsul* ... These birds nest in burrows among grass and under stones, isolated and not in rookeries ... The under-wing coverts are mainly white, much whiter than skins from Tristan da Cunha.

**1958** Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 190.

The diving Petrel or 'flying pinnamin' of Gough had been erected into a new sub-species on the measurements of one specimen; a procedure which seems dubious at the best of times.

**1976** Rysssen, W.J. van *The birds of the Tristan da Cunha group and Gough Island* Board of Extra-mural Studies, University of Cape Town: 23.

Common diving petrel *Pelecanoides urinatrix* Flying pinnamin.

**flying steamer duck** *Falkland Islands*

[This bird is capable of sustained flight, but it more often 'steams' across water.]

The large grey and white scalloped duck *Tachyeres patachonicus* (fam. Anatidae) of the Falkland Islands and southern South America, is one of the two **steamer ducks** in the Falklands. It is also called a **canvasback**.

**1950** Scott, Peter *Key to the wildfowl of the world* Severn Wildfowl Trust, Slimbridge, Gloucestershire: [16].

Flying Steamer Duck. *Tachyeres patachonicus*. Coasts, rivers and interior lakes of southern South America from Valdivia, Chile on the west and Puerto Deseado, Argentina, on the east, south to Tierra del Fuego; Falkland Islands.

**1987** Martins, Rodney in *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation* [London] no 6 (May): 5.

Pebble Island, in addition, has an excellent series of freshwater wetlands, offering a superb opportunity for bird

watchers to see waterfowl such as silver teal, yellow-billed pintail, flying steamer duck.

**Forster's penguin** *Historical*

[From the name of Prussian naturalist Johann Reinhold Forster (1729–1798), who with his son Johann Georg Adam Forster accompanied Cook on his second voyage, in H.M.S. Resolution from 1772 to 1775. The penguin was given the specific name forsteri by zoologist J.E. Gray (Ann. & Mag. Nat. Hist. (1844) xiii: 315.)]

The penguin *Aptenodytes forsteri*: see **emperor penguin**.

**1900** Cook, Frederick A. *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 423.

The birds which were constantly present upon the ice-pack are not numerous: .. Forster's penguin (*Aptenodytes forsteri*) [etc.].

**fox** *Historical, Falkland Islands*

The extinct mammal *Canis australis*: see **warrah**.

**1771** Johnson, Samuel (1776) *Thoughts on the late transactions respecting Falkland's Islands* [bound in] *Political tracts Containing, The False Alarm, Falkland's Islands, The Patriot; and, Taxation no Tyranny* W. Strahan and T. Cadell, London: 78.

All the quadrupeds which he [sc. Captain MacBridel] met there were foxes, supposed by him to have been brought upon the ice.

**16 May 1834** Darwin, Charles (1901) *Journal of researches into the natural history and geology of the countries visited during the voyage round the world of H.M.S. 'Beagle' under command of Captain Fitz Roy, R.N.* 2nd edn John Murray, London: 194.

The only quadruped native to the island is a large wolf-like fox (*Canis antarcticus*), which is common to both East and West Falkland. I have no doubt that it is a peculiar species, and confined to this archipelago; because many sealers, Gauchos, and Indians, who have visited these islands, all maintain that no such animal is found in any part of South America ... These wolves are well known from Byron's account of their tameness and curiosity, which the sailors, who ran into the water to avoid them, mistook for fierceness. To this day their manners remain the same. They have been observed to enter a tent, and actually pull some meat from beneath the head of a sleeping seaman. The Gauchos also have frequently in the evening killed them, by holding out a piece of meat in one hand, and in the other a knife ready to stick them. As far as I am aware, there is no other instance in any part of the world of so small a mass of broken land, distant from a continent, possessing so large an aboriginal quadruped peculiar to itself. Their numbers have rapidly decreased; they are already banished from that half of the island which lies to the eastward of the neck of land between St Salvador Bay and Berkeley Sound. Within a very few years after these islands shall have become regularly settled, in all probability this fox shall be classed with the dodo, as an animal which has perished from the face of the earth.

**1904** (Falkland Islands) Vallentin, Rupert in *Memoirs and Proc of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no. 23: 46.

These "foxes" always lived in burrows, which were never very deep, and invariably made in the side of a sand-hill. This habit of burrowing in sand-hills seems to have been for warmth and dryness; peat-banks being invariably wet.

**1911** Skottsberg, Carl *The wilds of Patagonia* Edward Arnold, London: 13.

An old farmer on the settlement in front of the island told me that he killed his last fox in 1873.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 28.



Only one terrestrial carnivore was native to the Falkland Islands. This animal was known from the early days of settlement as the warrah and was variously described as a wolf, dog or fox. It was absurdly tame and apparently lived on geese, penguins, other birds and eggs before livestock were introduced. Settlers and visiting sealers regarded it either as fair game or a pest and the last warrah was killed at Shallow Bay, West Falkland in 1876, only a century after colonisation. Two recent investigations of museum skins and skeletons have both suggested that the Falkland Fox (warrah) *Dusicyon australis* was a close relative of South American foxes, wild dogs or wolves of the same genus.

### frazil ice *noun and attrib. Also frazil*

[Frazil's earliest recorded use for ice is arctic, in Canadian English (1870). Its origin in DCanE is given as the French fraïsil cinder, which it suggests might refer to the fragmented nature of the ice. However, I find only a tenuous connection between lumpy cinders and spicules of ice.]

Needles or plates of sea ice giving an oily or slushy appearance to seawater, often forming in rough water, or as precursor to ice floes.

**13 Dec 1930** Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 361.

Some of ice rafts later today were very young, only few days old. Much brash and frazil ice. Some of young soft pieces were slightly of pancake character.

**1956** Armstrong, Terence and Roberts, Brian in *Polar Record* 8(52) Jan: 6.

Frazil ice: Fine spicules or plates of ice in suspension in water. The first stage of freezing, giving an oily or opaque appearance to the surface.

**1964** Jenkins, Geoffrey *A grue of ice* Fontana Books, London: 114.

Anything to escape, with all the thrust of her great turbines, from the same platelike crystals of ice called by whalers frazil crystals, which now hung half-submerged in the sea everywhere, plates of ice which come together with uncanny speed and form the ice belt.

**1990** Naveen, Ron, Monteath, Colin, de Roy, Tui and Jones, Mark *Wild ice: Antarctic journeys* Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington: 100.

As the autumn days of March become shorter and the air temperature drops, the sea begins to freeze, unobtrusively, almost surreptitiously. Spicules of frazil ice start to grow and float to the surface, giving the sea a greasy appearance. Hesitant at first, the delicate crystalline needles form the foundation for the imminent expansion of Antarctica's frozen limits.

**1994** *Dallas Morning News* 12 Dec: 9D.

Antarctic winter sea ice is often born as a thin film of grease ice that, at a distance, looks like yards of black silk thrown across undulating waves. This film comprises frazil crystals that resemble transparent interlocking ginkgo leaves, no more than two-tenths of an inch in diameter.

### freezer, the

**Antarctica** (sense 1); sometimes, more specifically, the **South Pole** (sense 1).

**1993** [title] Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London.

**1994** *Looking South* [News] Australian Working Group on Antarctic Astronomy no. 2 (Apr): 4.

It was one of the many facts of life in the freezer which we are only going to discover (and learn to contend with) by going down to the Pole and trying things out.

**1996** (McMurdo Sound) Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 91.

I was becoming increasingly preoccupied with .. reaching the Pole, where they [sc. vertical boundaries on the maps] all converged. I decided to concentrate solely on getting there rather than dashing off anywhere else, and I got myself on a Fridge-to-Freezer fuel flight later in the week.

### freeze-up

[Freeze-up is recorded in Canadian English from 1910 (DCanE) for the freezing of bodies of water, or topsoil on land.]

The freezing over of **pack ice** into a solid sheet of **fast ice**.

**1939** (Little America) Byrd, Richard E. *Alone* Reader's Union Ltd and Putnam & Co Ltd, London: 27.

No sooner were we done than the seas abated, the outrush of the ice ceased, and the freeze-up set in almost at once.

**1957** (Weddell Sea) Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund *The crossing of Antarctica: the Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955-58* Cassell & Co, London: 20.

His only alternative to taking this risk was to move almost helplessly about in the ice hoping only that we should come clear before the freeze up.

**1987** Lewis, David with Lewis, Mimi *Icebound in Antarctica* Secker & Warburg, London: 101.

Freeze-up could not be very far off but there was no sign of ice forming yet.

**1993** (Port Lockroy) *BAS Club Newsletter* no. 30 (summer): 33.

Extensive collections of marine animals were made by Marr before freeze-up.

### freshies (always as plural), US

[Although the excitement about the arrival of fresh fruit and greens is not confined to US stations in Antarctica, this name for them seems to be.]

Fresh fruit or vegetables.

**[10 June 1902]** Scott, Captain Robert F. (1905) *The voyage of the 'Discovery'* Macmillan and Co, London: 248.

Perhaps the articles we miss most are fresh vegetables; tinned vegetables are always a poor substitute, and with the exception of the potatoes ours are unfit for food.]

**1990** *Antarctica Sun Times* [McMurdo] IV(ii) 31 Oct: 4.

'Wish I could go fishing, why are there no freshies?'

**1996** (South Pole Station) Warren, Stephen in *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] 16(2) Dec: 32.

The winter airdrop was scheduled for Saturday the thirteenth of June, the only delivery of mail and freshies between February and October.

**11 Dec 1997** Jensen, Katy in *New South Polar Times* [South Pole] <http://205.174.118.254/nspt/index/971211.htm> (printed 8 Apr 1998)

We sat down to a HUGE feast, after three days of preparations. Thank goodness we got a planeload of freshies and wine from McMurdo or we would have celebrated with spam and apple juice.

### frostbite

[Frostbite is not only antarctic — it is a feature of any cold place — but it is a hazard strongly associated with Antarctica. It is recorded in British English from 1813 (NOED).]

Damage to skin and flesh caused by intense cold which freezes flesh: in bad cases fingers and toes must be amputated.

**1905** Scott, Captain Robert F. *The voyage of the 'Discovery'* Macmillan and Co, London: 183.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

It may be of interest to those whose fortune has not taken them to the colder regions of the earth to say a word or two concerning frost-bites ... In the Antarctic Regions we were all so frequently frost-bitten that we learnt to regard such an evil as part of the ordinary course of events.

**1942** Greene, Raymond in *Polar Record* 3(23) Jan: 481.

Sudden frostbite is a true freezing of the skin, like that produced by an ethyl chloride spray.

**1968** Dukert, Joseph M. *This is Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 98.

The landing [sc. at the South Pole] proved safe enough. For three quarters of an hour the Deep Freeze commander and his men planted radar reflectors, set up a flag, and inspected the snow surface - until waxy, yellowish-white spots on their faces told them that frostbite was setting in.

**1996** Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 174.

We had covered feminism (this was not a success), religion (Imre said 'I know there is no God'), the Nicaraguan debt crisis, and methods of avoiding frostbite while taking a shit.

### frostbitten *adjective*

[Frostbitten is recorded in British English from 1593 (NOED).]

Affected by **frostbite**.

**1833** (nr South Georgia) Fanning, Edmund *Voyages round the World; with Selected Sketches of Voyages to the South Seas, North and South Pacific Oceans, China, Etc., performed under the Command and Agency of the Author* Collins & Hannay, New York: 295.

One of his most prominent remedies, was to rub the part, immediately on being frost bitten, with snow, or soft spongy ice, then immersing it in ice water for a few minutes, or as long as the patient could well bear it.

**6 Jul 1911** Debenham, Frank, in Back, June Debenham, ed. (1992) *The quiet land: the Antarctic diaries of Frank Debenham* Bluntisham Books, Bluntisham: 115.

The colder it is the friskier the ponies are and the less time one has to attend to one's frost-bitten features.

**1922** Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Picador, London: 241.

I started away from the Barrier edge with all ten fingers frost-bitten.

**1993** King, Peter in Clark, Linda and Wishart, Elspeth 66° *South* Queen Victoria Museum, Launceston: 52.

You don't realise that your cheeks are frostbitten until somebody tells you there is a white patch on your cheeks or that your nose is frozen.

### frost flower *Usu. pl.*

[Frost flower is first recorded in British English in the 1847 Jane Eyre (NOED) for formations on windows, an eloquent testimony to the cold British climate.]

Small growths of ice crystals on the surface of the ice or water.

**1948** (c1915) Hurlley, Frank *Shackleton's argonauts: the epic tale of Shackleton's voyage to Antarctica in 1915* McGraw-Hill Book Co Pty Ltd: 69.

As seawater freezes, salt is expressed in tiny nodules and if the air is calm these nodules become neuclēi [sic] about which the 'frost flowers' grow in exquisite, delicate crystals. When sea ice is pushed from the sea by pressure, salts drain out and the ice becomes quite fresh.

**1989** May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica, 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 41.

[caption] "Frost flowers" form on sea-ice around nuclei of salt excreted from freezing ice columns.

**1995** Stevens, Jane E. in *The Sciences* [US] Jul-Aug: 15.

Jeffries and I were lowered over the side of the ship in a basket to take a sample from a broad sheet of thin ice. Dotted by frost flowers, it looked as if a thousand bakers had spent the night daubing the ice with rosettes of cake frosting.

### frost smoke

[Frost smoke is recorded from 1748 in Canadian English (DCanE), in the same sense.]

### Sea smoke.

**28 Feb 1911** Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912: an account of Scott's last expedition* Blandford Press, London: 109.

We kept on the old tracks, still visible, by which we had come out in January, heading a long way out to make a wide détour round the open water off Cape Armitage, from which a very wide extent of thick black fog, 'frost smoke' as we call it, was rising on our right. This frost smoke completely obscured our view of the open water, and the only suggestion it gave me was that the thaw pool off the cape was much bigger than when we passed it in January.

**1930** (Little America) Byrd, Richard E. *Alone* Reader's Union Ltd and Putnam & Co Ltd, London: 167.

We peered at her [sc. the aeroplane] through the "frost smoke," caused by the cold barrier wind striking the warmer water.

**1958** Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund *The crossing of Antarctica: the Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955-58* Cassell & Co, London: 36.

All day, owing to the difference in temperature between air and water, frost smoke rose like steam from the sea and drifted away in the wind.

**1972** Neethling, D.C. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* no. 2: 6.

In the King Haakon VII Sea pack ice usually forms during autumn and breaks up in early spring when dense clouds of frost smoke and ever-widening leads appear as south-easterly winds break the hold of the pack on the ice shelf.

**1988** (Casey station) Butler, Rowan *Breaking the ice* Albatross Books, Sydney: 83.

Around the shoreline, the sea ice was broken from being raised and lowered by the tide and water would well up through these tide cracks in places. If it was calm and cold, this would produce frost smoke, a mist of ice crystals rising from the water which, being relatively much warmer than the air, 'steamed'.

### frozen chosen *US*

Those who work in **Antarctica**.

**1997** *Desert Sun* [Palm Springs] 10 May: B1.

Chuck Gallagher loved The Ice, as Antarctica is known by the "Frozen Chosen", the hearty bunch who thrive on the remote frigid continent.

### frozen continent

#### Antarctica.

**1849** Cooper, James Fenimore *The sea lions; or, the lost sealers* Richard Bentley, London, vol II: 92.

Wilkes, and his competitors, have told us that a vast frozen continent exists in that quarter of the globe; but even their daring and perseverance have not been able to determine more than the general fact.

**1930** Byrd, Richard E. *Alone* Reader's Union Ltd and Putnam & Co Ltd, London: 149.

The men continued the herculean task of moving from ship to Little America, setting up there a completely appointed and self-sufficing American village on the frozen continent.

**1977** *The Polar Times* 84 (Jun): 15.

"I'm only 80. Why shouldn't I go back?" asked explorer-turned-University of Arizona professor Laurence M. Gould. It was his sixth such trip to the frozen continent.

**1995** *Age [Melbourne]* 13 Oct: 9.

Some of the coldest weeds on earth — five carefully cultivated marijuana plants — have been found growing at Australia's Mawson Station in Antarctica. The find could give authorities a test case in applying national criminal law to our expeditioners on the frozen continent.

## frozen desert

[Referring to Antarctica's status as the coldest, driest continent.]

## Antarctica.

**1950** Mountevans, Admiral Lord *The desolate Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 137.

Before the actual South Polar flight .. test-hops were made and a base-laying flight carried out from which Byrd saw the Barrier, smooth, undulating and relentless, like a vast frozen desert stretching for ever southward.

**1968** Dukert, Joseph M. *This is Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 96.

Even though Ellsworth's route from the Antarctic Peninsula to Byrd's base on the Ross Ice Shelf was a "short-cut" from the Atlantic to the Pacific coasts, it showed that his plan was sound. He crossed the frozen desert in four hops.

**1991** Gaskin, Chris and Peat, Neville *The world of penguins* Hodder & Stoughton, Auckland: 38.

Penguins breed in habitats that range from the frozen desert shores of Antarctica and months of winter darkness to tropical warmth and light.

## frozen south

[The northern equivalent, Frozen North, is recorded considerably later in *Canadian English* (1958: DCAN E).]

### The antarctic regions.

**[1906]** Rudmose Brown, R.N., Mossman, R.C. and Pirie, J.H. Harvey *The voyage of the "Scotia", being the record of a voyage of exploration in Antarctic Seas by Three of the Staff* William Blackwood and Sons, Edinburgh: 1.

Notwithstanding the length of time during which the Arctic regions had engaged the attention and interest of navigators, it was not until comparatively recent years that any serious attempt was made to lift the veil overhanging the frozen regions of the South.]

**1909** Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907-1909* William Heinemann, London: 60.

The sight of this [sc. first iceberg], the first sentinel of the frozen south, increased Buckley's desire to stay with us, and it was evident that the thought of leaving our little company was not a pleasant one to him.

**1915** Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911-1914* William Heinemann, London, vol 1: 6.

From an economic aspect, the frozen South may not attract immediate attention. But who can say what a train of enterprise the future may bring?

**28 Apr 1933** Christensen, Lars, transl. fr Norwegian by Jayne, E.M.G. (1935) *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Staughton, London: 41.

So the famous little ship *Norvegia* has been crushed by ice in the White Sea and gone to her last rest. By a coincidence the ship that rescued the unlucky *Norvegia's* crew was none other than Shackleton's *Quest*. Strange that two little ships that both made history in the frozen South should meet like this in the North.

**1948** Hurley, Frank *Shackleton's argonauts: the epic tale of Shackleton's voyage to Antarctica in 1915* McGraw-Hill Book Co Pty Ltd: 17.

As we sever connexion with our fellow men to follow a mirage to the frozen south, doubt, apprehension, inspiration and determination come crowding. What tremendous events may transpire while we are locked away in the Great White Silence?

**1966** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 4(8) Dec: 420.

Whaling is no longer profitable and most of the husky Norwegians who spent half the year earning big money in stinking factory ships in the frozen south have become shore-based workers or are serving in Norway's merchant navy.

**1971** Young, Pamela *Penguin summer — or, a rare bird in Antarctica* A.H. & A.W. Reed, Wellington: 34.

This is the life, I thought happily. No children to worry about, free film, an unending supply of chocolate. Talk about the hardships of the Frozen South!

**1997** (Mawson station) *The Age [Melbourne]* 16 June: 6.

The Australian National Antarctic Research Expedition (ANARE) crew in the frozen south are usually busy thrashing out issues such as active volcanos and global warming.

## fulmarine petrel *Also fulmar petrel*

Any of four closely related surface-nesting seabirds in the family Procellariidae, the **antarctic petrel**, **antarctic fulmar**, **Cape pigeon** and **snow petrel**.

**26 Oct 1912** (Antarctic mainland) Wild, Frank in Mawson, Douglas (1942) *Geographical narrative and cartography. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911-14. Scientific reports series A vol 1* Government Printer, Sydney: 245.

During the day we saw several Adelle Penguins wandering about singly and one party of eleven. A Cape Pigeon, Fulmar Petrel and a Skua Gull also paid us a visit.

**1974** Harper, Peter C. and Kinsky, F.C. *Tuatara* 21(1,2): 26.

The fulmarine petrels comprise four species, three of which are largely confined to Antarctic waters, the other being widely distributed throughout the southern oceans. This latter species is the Cape Pigeon.

**1994** Australian National Committee on Antarctic Research *Australian Antarctic and subantarctic research program. Report to the Scientific Committee for Antarctic research no. 36*. Australian Antarctic Division, Kingston: 55.

Target species are fulmarine petrels (mainly southern fulmar) (*Fulmarus glacialis*) etc.].

## fulmar prion

The seabird *Pachyptila crassirostris* (fam. Procellariidae), which breeds on New Zealand subantarctic islands and is sometimes regarded as a subspecies (*P. turtur crassirostris*) of the **fairly prion**. The related *P. turtur eatoni* breeds on Heard Island and is also called a fulmar prion (see 1954 and 1988 quotations).

**1954** (Heard Island) Ealey, E.H.M. in *The Emu* 54(3) Aug: 206.

Most of the Fulmar Prions were captured about dusk when they were returning to the caves in which they roost and nest.

**1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 114.

Fulmar prions breed on Heard Island, mostly on inaccessible ledges on sea cliffs, and in similar situations on the New Zealand Subantarctic Islands.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 21.

[caption] On the Bounty Islands, the fulmar prion nests in crevices under the granite boulders. It also breeds at the barren Western Chain of the Snares, at the Auckland and Chatham Islands, and on Australia's Heard Island. It is the rarest of the three prions found in the New Zealand region.

**1988** *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions newsletter* June: 5.

The species [sc. of burrowing petrel] known to breed at Heard Island are Antarctic Prion (*Pachyptila desolata*), Fulmar Prion (*P. crassirostris*) [etc.].

### fumigator, the Brit.

[Bowdlerised version of 'the Fornicator'.]

A vicious local wind on the **Antarctic Peninsula**.

**1955** (Marguerite Bay) Walton, E.W. Kevin *Two years in the Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 18.

The wind seemed to blow the sea flat, such was its force, and the flying spray lay like a white blanket over the surface of the water. Drift snow was being whipped off the glacier above and thrown like desert sand on the ship beneath. The biting vicious wind that came without warning taught us an early lesson. From that time onwards we never trusted Antarctic weather, and the "fumigator", as we nicknamed this local wind, was ever watched for and guarded against.

**1993** Parfit, Michael in *National Geographic* Mar: 116.

The island's most common summer gale, an easterly the residents of Stonington called "the Fumigator" (among less printable names), would begin in the high air in towers of lenticular clouds above the mountains, pour silently down the glaciers, blurring their edges in a slow, imperial cascade of blowing snow, then hit us suddenly with salt spray and cold.

### fur See furry

### furious fifties

The stormy latitudes of 50–59° South, and the seas of these latitudes, also called the **howling fifties**.

**1906** (nr 52°S, 9°W) Rudmose Brown, R.N., Mossman, RC and Pirie, J.H. Harvey *The voyage of the "Scotia", being the record of a voyage of exploration in Antarctic Seas by Three of the Staff* William Blackwood and Sons, Edinburgh: 253.

If this wild waste of waters had lain on the regular track of any ships, it would have been named the "Furious Fifties," I should say. Compared with these latitudes the "roaring" of the "Forties" is as the bleat of a lamb to the melancholy howl of a hyæna or the dismal wail of a lost soul.

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* Duckworth, London: 9.

Beyond the Roaring Forties there are the 'Furious Fifties' and the 'Shrieking Sixties', for the storms which ravage these regions become more and more severe as one proceeds further south.

**1966** Baum, Allyn *Antarctica: the worst place in the world* Macmillan Co, NY: 12.

The men, their captain and their officers shivered and shook through the long voyage through the latitudes of the "Furious Fifties," and the "Screaming Sixties".

**1988** Butler, Rowan *Breaking the ice* Albatross Books, Sydney: 111.

I quickly gained my sea legs and survived the dirty weather the roaring forties and furious fifties hurled at us.

### furry Also fur

A **fur seal**.

**1976** (Macquarie Island) *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Spring: 28.

Nigel Brothers was counting the Furs at Hurd Point and later Peter McKenzie and John Forrester went to Brothers Point to count the remaining furs.

**1993** (Beauchêne Island) Chater, Tony *The Falklands* The Penna Press, St Albans: 12.

Hairs recovered from the peat profile, which in one place reach [sic] a depth of thirteen metres, reveal the presence of fur seal for 11,000 years. But in the last quarter of the 18th Century the 'furries' were detected, then decimated by sealers. Now there are none.

### fur seal noun and attrib.

[Fur seal is used for both southern and northern seals hunted for their pelts. It is not exclusively antarctic, but sealing for fur and oil in antarctic regions was, before whaling, the primary economic activity there in the eighteenth and earlier nineteenth centuries.]

Any seal of the southern genus *Arctocephalus* (fam. Otariidae). Fur seals have a thick undercoat of hair and an outer layer of guard hairs; their hind flippers rotate, allowing them to walk on land. Four of the eight species of *Arctocephalus* live in the subantarctic and antarctic regions: see **Amsterdam fur seal, antarctic fur seal, clapmatch, Falkland Island seal, Kerguelen fur seal, New Zealand fur seal, southern fur seal and subantarctic fur seal, wig**.

**15 Jan 1786** (Falkland Islands) Portlock, Captain Nathaniel (1789) *A voyage round the world: but more particularly to the north-west coast of America: performed in 1785, 1786, 1787, and 1788, in the King George and Queen Charlotte*. N. Israel facs, Amsterdam (1968): 37.

One of my mates .. returned with a message from captain Coffin, informing me that captain Hussey had on board the United States, six or seven thousand fur seal skins, and that he had reason to suppose they would be disposed of at a moderate price. An opportunity of procuring such a quantity of skins was by no means to be lost, especially as there was a great probability of their selling well in China.

— **21 Jan 1786**: 42.

As soon as the ship was secured I went in my whale-boat, accompanied by captain Dixon, on board the United States, to have some conversation with captain Hussey, respecting the purchase of his fur seals [sc. skins], but we found he was not disposed to part with them.

**23 Oct 1810** Hook, Charles quoted in *Polar Record* (1964) 12(78) Sept: 312.

Capt. H. [sc. Hasselborough] in his route to Campbell Island had discovered another island which he named Macquarie Island about 20 miles long by 5 broad on which he found the fur Seals altho' at so early a time of the year, so very abundant that he determined to return to Port Jackson for salt.

**1827** (South Orkneys) Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24, 2nd edn* David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 23.

In the evening the boats returned, having coasted these islands for fifty miles. They had found but one fur-seal, and some sea-leopards, the skins of which they brought on board.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

This examination, though unsuccessful, afforded some hope, as the seal was an earnest of our falling in with more.

**1879** (Marion Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 171.

A boat-load of explorers went on shore, everyone having a heavy stick, as it was expected that we might meet with Fur Seals.

**1902** Beddard, Frank Evers *Mammalia* The Cambridge Natural History vol X, Macmillan and Co, London: 451.

There can, however, be no doubt of the distinctness of the Northern Fur Seal, *O. ursina* (the "Seal" of commerce and the cause of international complications), of the Patagonian Maned Sea-Lion, *O. jubata*, of *O. pusilla* of the Cape, of the Californian *O. gillespiei*, of *O. hookeri* from the Auckland Islands, and of four or five others. The range of the genus is wide, but is mainly Antarctic. It is usual to speak of "Hair Seals" and "Fur Seals," the latter being the species which produce the "sealskin" of commerce. The difference is that in the Fur Seals there is a dense, soft under-fur, which is wanting in the other group. It is, however, impossible to make this character the basis of a generic subdivision.

**20 Feb 1933** Christensen, Lars, transl. fr Norwegian by Jayne, E.M.G. (1935) *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 86.

Suddenly two fur-seals bobbed up alongside. The Captain of the *Norvegia* cried out enthusiastically: 'Fur seals!' and immediately after the heads of three more seals came to the surface at the very side of the ship.

**1950** Roberts, Brian in *Polar Record* 5(40): 580.

They [sc. Cpts. Smith and Rogers: barque *Laurens* and 4 tenders] killed 500 Fur Seals and filled all the vessels with elephant oil, 3000 barrels in all, and were thus the first to bring back a full cargo from Heard Island.

**1963** (Heard Island) *Aurora*. *The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* June: 25.

The shore party was entertained by the Senior Vice President, Eric Macklin, who was in charge of the pyrotechnical display. This eventually resulted in a rocket landing ashore, narrowly missing bystanders, and badly frightening a slumbering fur-seal.

**1987** National Parks and Wildlife Service, Tasmania *Macquarie Island nature reserve: visitor's handbook* NPWS, Hobart: 5.

The exploitation of the fur seal population was rapid and ruthless. In the first 18 months after discovery at least 120,000 skins were taken from the island. Ten years later (1821) only four fur seal skins were obtained in the twelve months.

# — G —

## galley *Falkland Islands*

[Galley is recorded since 1750 (NOED) in British English for a kitchen aboard ship. It is also used on US antarctic bases, and prob. much more widely, for a kitchen and dining room area.]

The kitchen of a **cookhouse**.

**1994** Simpson, Tim *Cooking the Falkland Island way* Peregrine Publishing, Bangor: 10.

I should perhaps explain here the terms 'cookhouse' and 'galley' as they are used in the Falkland Islands. All settlements have a cookhouse where the single men and shearing gangs eat, and in some places, sleep. In a few larger settlements they sleep in a separate bunkhouse. The cooking for these men is done in the 'galley' as the kitchen of the cookhouse is always called.

## gallied adjective. *Orig whaling, also recorded from Tristan da Cunha*

[The verb galley to frighten or daze is recorded from 1605, though NOED noted that it is now only in dialect and whaling use.]

Frightened, flustered.

**1827** (South Shetlands) Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24, 2nd edn* David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 128.

At two in the afternoon, the Beaufoy having joined company, we stood to the westward, and at 4 o'clock we saw a sperm whale, which confirms Mr. Smith's report of such sort of whales being found on this coast, as stated by him in his account of South Shetland. The weather being now more settled, we lowered our boats, and set out in pursuit of the whale, but did not succeed. It was supposed that the fish having seen the copper of the vessel, had become what is technically called *gallied*, and disappeared.

**1910** Barrow, K.M. *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 280.

Some Tristan words .. Allow, to say. .. Gallied, flustered [etc.].

## gam Also *gamming*

[Recorded in *New Zealand English* (DNZE) from 1846 for a sociable display by young albatrosses and possibly other large seabirds; later recorded in *British English* (from 1889: NOED) for social gatherings of whales and of whalers. It applies here esp. to albatrosses, but not only to young ones.]

A social pattern of behaviour of a group of **albatrosses**, or the group itself.

**26 Nov 1912** Murphy, Robert Cushman (1948) *Logbook for Grace* Robert Hale Ltd, London: 152.

There were millions and millions of petrels and albatrosses, filling the air like snowflakes, or afloat. The albatrosses were mostly grouped in *gams*, in some instances with giant fulmars mingled peaceably among them. From six to twenty of the big birds might be together in such companies.

**1960** Westerskov, Kaj *Birds of Campbell Island* Wildlife Publication no. 61, Wildlife Division, New Zealand: opp. 24.

[caption] The gently-rolling tussock-covered slopes of Mt. Honey are a favoured nesting habitat for the royal alba-

trosses. Here a gam of three young birds, not yet breeding, are sham-displaying.

**1962** Bailey, Alfred M. and Sorensen, J.H. *Subantarctic Campbell Island*. Proceedings no. 10, Denver Museum of Natural History: 168.

Shuffling awkwardly, with body held horizontally, the great bird [sc. Royal Albatross] will usually thrust its head upward and with open beak send out a sonorous invitation for others to gather 'round. If the invitation is accepted, one or a half dozen may quickly settle down, and the "gam" ceremony takes place. ... Usually one albatross dominates the show, stepping awkwardly about, thrusting head and neck skyward with beak open as it gives a far-reaching neighing call — shaking the head vigorously — and culminating the performance with raised wings and a frenzy of calls, with an occasional savage snapping of mandibles at one of the other participants. Often there seems to be an individual in a group that tries to monopolize the "gam," and he or she may make a vicious attack on another of the party.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 18.

Another three or four years pass [sc. after the royal albatrosses are at sea for 4–6 years] before they start breeding, and during this time they form sociable groups for the highly stylised ritual of "gamming". In this ceremony, groups of adolescents and adults alternately bow, extend their huge wings, clapper their bills, and point their heads skywards, to the accompaniment of liquid rattlings, ecstatic shrieks, and melodious wheezings.

## gang line *Dog-sledging*

Part of the harness arrangement for **sledge dogs**: the centre line taking the main pull of the sledge, and to which the dogs are fastened.

**1958** Burse, Jack *Antarctic night* Longman, Green & Co., London: 156.

The gang-line was tied to it, and the dogs would be fastened to the gang-line in pairs except for the lead dog, who pulled alone, out ahead.

**1992** Steger, Will and Bowermaster, Jon *Crossing Antarctica* Alfred A. Knopf, New York: 30.

I find myself dragging out my chores — unpacking the sled, untangling gang lines, feeding the dogs.

## gansey *Tristan da Cunha*. Also *ganzey*

[*English dialect ganzey* (west Yorkshire) a jersey, a knitted woollen shirt, variant of gansey (Yorkshire, Suffolk) recorded from 1892 (EDD).]

A jumper, a jersey.

**[1949]** Granville, Wilfred *Sea slang of the twentieth century* Winchester, London: 106.

Ganzey: a guernsey, thick sweater worn in Merchant Navy.]

**1957** Booy, D.M. *Rock of exile: a narrative of Tristan da Cunha* J.M. Dent & Sons, London: 67.

When a girl received with favour the attentions of a young man, she would knit for him a pair of stockings, and — later — a ganzey.

**1967** Pondus-Bøgerne, Lohse, transl fr Danish by Falk-Rønne, Arne *Back to Tristan* Allen & Unwin, London: 21.

A pullover is a “gansey”, a word which seems to have come to the island via a Norwegian whale-fisherman, who gave a “ganser” to a Tristanite.

**1989** (1950s) Thompson, Pat in *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 5 (Sept): 8.

The wool was then washed, carded, spun and knitted by all the women on the island. They knitted all day long — stockings and jerseys which they called ganseys (after Guernsey) for all members of the family.

**gash** *noun and attrib. Brit.*

[Origin unknown, but in use as naval slang from 1925.]

Rubbish.

**1958** Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund *The crossing of Antarctica: the Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955–58* Cassell & Co, London: 128.

The most important feature was the ‘gash’ pit ... Now we made a deep waste pit by digging a small hole about 18 inches deep in the snow and pouring into it a pint of petrol. When this had soaked in and was ignited it burned slowly, melting a cavity.

**1967** *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* 2 (May): 2.

Others gave up, threw their efforts into the gash bin, and renewed the attack.

**1989** British Antarctic Survey *Glossary of FIDS terms* British Antarctic Survey, Cambridge (unpublished): [2].

Gash: Naval term for rubbish. To be ‘on gash’ or ‘Gashman’ means it is your turn for domestic chores such as laying tables, getting in coal, washing up, etc.

**gashman** *Also gash hand*

Someone rostered for kitchen and cleaning duties; a **housemouse** or **slushy**.

**1949** Granville, Wilfred *Sea slang of the twentieth century* Winchester, London: 107.

Gash hand: a man without a job.]

**1957** Ross Sea Committee, *Trans-Antarctic Expedition: newsletter* no 15 (1 May): 8.

Daily in rotation two “gashmen” do the Base chores. Their day begins with clearing away breakfast, sweeping living-room and washing up — washing up which looms large throughout the day. But there are other duties such as emptying the kitchen waste bucket, a huge twelve gallon affair always too full and apt to empty itself over the hindmost gashman as they struggle up the snow steps towards the surface.

**1965** von Brunn, Victor in *Antarktische Bulletin* 10 (Jul): 5.

No one member of an expedition, whether he be chief scientist or junior “gash-boy”, has the right to regard himself or his work more worthy than that of the other person.

**1968** (Hope Bay) Herbert, Wally *A world of men: exploration in Antarctica* Eyre & Spottiswoode, London: 54.

The meal was usually served by the cook’s assistant — the ‘gash-hand’ — who, like the cook, was an amateur.

**gash run**

The duty of regular removal and disposal of **gash** or rubbish.

**1992** *Casey News [Casey Base, Antarctica]* July: 2.

On Saturday everyone is also involved in Saturday station cleaning duties. Floors are mopped, rubbish emptied (we call

this the ‘gash’ run), carpets vacuumed and work/leisure areas cleaned.

**1996** *Icy News. Antarctic Division staff newsletter* 1 Mar: 2.

Sat. duties went ahead, except for the gash run, we didn’t want to spoil our good run, and distribute the weeks [sic] rubbish over eastern Antarctica.

**gathering** *verbal noun, Falkland Islands*

Mustering sheep.

**1994** Simpson, Tim *Cooking the Falkland Island way* Peregrine Publishing, Bangor: 51.

Falkland Island mutton ... was always cooked slowly in the peat-burning Rayburn (nowadays many Rayburns in Stanley have been converted to diesel or kerosene) to allow for gathering<sup>1</sup> or any other work on the farm which took a long time. <sup>1</sup>[Footnote] Gathering involves long hours, usually in the saddle, but sometimes these days on motorbikes or three-wheelers, moving the sheep from one place to another.

**gee** *verb, dog-sledging*

[Gee has been used to direct (a horse, etc.) by the call, since 1845 (NOED). It is used to mean ‘turn right’ as a dog command in both Canadian (DCanE: 1900) and Alaskan English (DALaskE: 1904).]

A **sledge dog** command: turn (left). There is much confusion with dog commands, some of which mean the reverse of their northern hemisphere meaning, at least sometimes.

**1930** (South Victoria Land) Byrd, Richard Evelyn in *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 189.

The drivers used the Alaskan gang hitch — that is, the dogs were harnessed to each side of a long line attached to the sledge. One dog is attached to the end of the gang line as leader, and to him the drivers yell their commands of “Gee” or “Haw”.

**1949** Hurley, Frank *Shackleton’s argonauts: the epic tale of Shackleton’s voyage to Antarctica in 1915* McGraw-Hill Book Co Pty Ltd: 74.

In turning the team, the order ‘Ha!’ swings them to the right, ‘Gee!’ turns them to the left.

**1958** Burse, Jack *Antarctic night* Longman, Green & Co., London: 174.

“That lead dog of mine,” he said, “will do just the opposite of what I tell him to do. When I say Haw, he goes Gee.”

**gee-pole** *Also G-pole*

[Gee-pole is recorded in northern Canada (DCanE) from 1899, in the same sense of a sturdy pole used for steering and support. DALaskE records the term from 1901, and notes that the pole is attached ‘usually to the right, hence the name’.]

A pole lashed to a dog sledge at one end, and held for skiing support and steering purposes (see 1931 (Gould) and 1958 quotations).

**1931** O’Brien, John S. *By dog sled for Byrd: 1600 miles across Antarctic ice* Thomas S. Rockwell, Chicago: 19.

We take our places at the gee-pole of our sledges.

**1931** Gould, L. *Cold*: 60.

The G-Pole is a sturdy stick about six feet long, which is securely lashed to the forward end of one of the runners and cross-pieces and elevated at the free end. When the sledges needed any attention, we used to hang onto the G-Pole with one hand, and push along beside the sledge with a ski stick in the other. It was easy to guide the sledges in this way and if it were necessary to make a quick stop the whole sledge could be swung around cross-wise to the trail using the G-Pole for a lever.

**1958** Burse, Jack *Antarctic night* Longman, Green & Co., London: 156.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

Each gee-pole was planed down to the last shaving to save weight ... A gee-pole was lashed to the front of each sled to be used as a support when skiing beside it, and as a means of steering the sled.

**gemin** *Brit.*

[From the name of the boat manufacturing company, Gemini Inflatables.]

An inflatable boat, a **zodiac**.

**1980** (South Georgia) Parmelee, David F. *Bird Island in antarctic waters* University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis: 14.

I soon appreciated the difficulties of going ashore by boat — even by modern rubber boats designed for tricky beach landings and called “gemin” by the British and “zodiacs” by Americans.

**1989** British Antarctic Survey *Glossary of FIDS terms* British Antarctic Survey, Cambridge (unpublished): [2].

Gemin: Inflatable raft.

**gentoo penguin** *noun and attrib. Also gentoo*

[As one of the Spanish names for this penguin is *juanito*, ‘little John’ or ‘Johnny’, this seemed to me the likely origin of both *gentoo* and the alternative English name of **Johnny penguin**. On reading *Beaglehole* (see 1961 quotation), I see that he had already come to the same conclusion, although his interpretation might differ slightly.]

The penguin *Pygoscelis papua* (fam. Spheniscidae), which has distinctive white triangular patches above its eyes. It lives in the subantarctic, occurring circumpolarly from Marion Island and the Crozets past Macquarie Island to the Antarctic Peninsula and southeastern coast of South America. There are two subspecies, the **northern** and the **southern gentoo penguin**, but to most people it’s just a gentoo. It is also called a **pygoscelid**.

**119 Feb 1820** (near 61°23’S, 63°59’W) Bransfield in *The Literary Gazette and Journal of Belles Lettres [London] vol 5* quoted in *Polar Record* (1946) 4(32) Jul: 388.

While rounding the island we observed its shore covered with penguins, whose awkward movement had the most strange appearance, and at the same time the most intolerable stench assailed our noses that I ever smelt, arising from these gentry.]

**1860** Abbott, Captain CC in *The Ibis* II(VIII) Oct: 337.

*Eudyptes papua* is the next Penguin that “hauls up” (to use a nautical term) at the Falklands to breed. They come up at about the same time as *Aptenodytes demersa* [sc. late September] ... This bird is called in the Falklands the Gentoo Penguin: whence the name I leave others to conjecture. I may mention, that the ground about the rookeries is covered with small round stones, which these birds eject, on coming up from the salt water, in green masses about the size of a shilling.

**1901** Saunders, Howard in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 227.

By far the most abundant species within the Antarctic circle is the smaller blunt-billed ADELIE [sic] LAND PENGUIN (*Pygoscelis adeliae*), named after the place of its discovery ... Its range does not appear to extend far to the north of the Antarctic circle ... Northward of lat. 63°S. its place seems to be taken by a slightly smaller Penguin with a white band across the crown, the ‘Gentoo’ of the Falklands, and the ‘Johnny’ of sealers (*Pygoscelis papua*).

**1915** (Macquarie Island: Hasselborough Bay) Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Aus-*

*tralasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911–1914* William Heinemann, London, vol 1: 37.

Gentoo penguins in numbers were busy hatching their eggs on the sloping ground beyond.

**1915** Harvey, Rufus Watson *Thrilling adventures in the Antarctic wilds* Unpublished record, in possession of Tim Vasquez: 60.

Gentle or Johnny-penguin of Kerguelen Island and the Falklands.

**1916** (Elephant Island) *Daily Mirror [London]* 5 Dec: 1.

[caption] Here some of the explorers are seen skinning Gento [sic] penguins, their principal food for four and a half months.

**1931** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 40(1) 1 Feb: 10.

The period for which Licences to take Penguins’ eggs may be issued shall be .. in the case of Gentoo Penguins from the 1st day of October to the 31st day of October in every year.

**1955** (Marion Island) Rand, R.W. in *The Ostrich* XXVI(2) June: 58.

Nine coves are utilised by the nesting Macaronis and sixteen by the Gentoos. Unlike those frequented by the King penguins, these “gentoo” coves are in very different parts of the island.

**1961** Beaglehole, J.C., ed. *The voyage of the Resolution and Adventure* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 93.

In the eighteenth century English-speaking sealers commonly called this bird the Johnny Penguin. The Spanish translation of this was ‘Juanito’, which has degenerated into Gento.

**1966** MacKenzie, D., ed. *Fog ‘N Bog [yearbook of Macquarie Island ANARE overwinterers]* ANARE, Macquarie Island: 35.

The Gentoo penguin is another Macquarie Islander. It occurs throughout the sub-Antarctic, its main breeding grounds being Macquarie, Heard, Kerguelen, Crozet, Prince Edward, South Georgia, Falkland, South Orkney, South Shetland and the west coast of Graham Land.

**1968** (Falkland Islands) Sparks, John and Soper, Tony *Penguins* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 198.

Gentoo eggs are said to be the favourite, and a rough estimate is that nowadays 10,000 a year may be harvested, under government licence. However there is not much doubt that a certain amount of unofficial collecting is done on the side; certainly there are fewer eggs for the taking. In 1911, 85,000 eggs were collected from the Kidney Islands, while in 1952 the result of an exhaustive search was 1,000.

**1994** *Geo [Aust]* 16(5) Sept-Oct: 37.

[caption] A German couple get married .. at Port Lockroy witnessed by fellow passengers and crew and several hundred gentoo penguins and blue-eyed shags.

**gentoo penguin rookery** *Also gentoo rookery*

[See **rookery**.]

A breeding ground for **gentoo penguins**.

**1904** (Falkland Islands) Vallentin, Rupert *Memoirs and Proc of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no. 23: 11.

I examined several scattered burrows occupied by the Jack-ass Penguin (*Spheniscus magellanicus*), before we reached the first Gento rookery (*Pygoscelis tenuata*).

**2 Nov 1912** (Macquarie Island) Blake, L.R. in Mawson, Douglas (1942) *Geographical narrative and cartography. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911–14. Scientific reports series A vol 1* Government Printer, Sydney: 289.

Visited a Gento rookery and collected 4 dozen eggs. These eggs are by far the best for eating.

**1954** (Heard Island) Ealey, E.H.M. in *The Emu* 54(2) June: 94.



In 1949 eggs appeared in the northern Gentoo rookeries several days earlier than in the southern rookeries where there was found to be more snow.

**1964** (Heard Island) Styles, D.F. *Narrative. Coastal exploration of Kemp and Enderby Lands, Antarctica. ANARE reports Series A Vol. 1* Antarctic Division, Dept of External Affairs, Melbourne: 29.

We therefore sent only three small parties ashore, ... one to examine the gentoo penguin rookery at South West Beach.

### geographic south pole *Also geographical south pole*

[The number of poles of the earth varies according to who is speaking, and when — see Shackleton 1909, below.]

The southernmost point of the globe, the earth's spin axis, where the lines of longitude converge: 90° south.

This region is occupied by the American Amundsen-Scott South Pole Station, the only antarctic station anywhere in the vicinity.

**1909** (Cape Royds, McMurdo Sound) Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907–1909* William Heinemann, London: 248.

I deemed it best to confine the efforts of the sledging-parties to the two Poles, Geographical and Magnetic.

**1963** McKenzie, Douglas *Opposite poles* Robert Hale & Co, London/Whitcombe & Tombs, New Zealand: 124.

Four hours after leaving McMurdo we were circling Pole Station. Below, dominating the station's buildings, was the black, round meteorological tower; away to one side stood the ring of drums encircling the geographic South Pole.

**1990** Naveen, Ron, Monteath, Colin, de Roy, Tui and Jones, Mark *Wild ice: Antarctic journeys* Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington: 157.

The vast Ross Ice Shelf, butting into Ross Island at Crozier, is commonly compared to the size of France: it is 300 meters thick near the sea and even thicker inland. Seawater flows beneath it all the way to the foot of the Transantarctic Mountains, only 600 kilometers from the geographic South Pole.

### geomagnetic pole

The southern point on the earth's surface which is the theoretical focus of the earth's magnetic field and around which the **auroral oval** is centred. This is distinct from the **south magnetic pole**, the point where the earth's magnetic field lines are aligned vertically.

**1953** Scholes, Arthur *Seventh continent: saga of Australasian exploration in Antarctica 1895–1950* George Allen & Unwin, London: 70.

The auroræ occur in the Antarctic regions on the circumference of a circle, twenty-three degrees from the geomagnetic, or magnetic axis pole.

**1968** Dukert, Joseph M. *This is Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 122.

Incidentally, the spots at which the lines of magnetic force come to earth are called the geomagnetic poles. The one in Antarctica is on the polar plateau, about 800 miles away from the geographic pole. Its location has nothing at all to do with the South Magnetic Pole, which is the one we think of in connection with compasses.

**1969** Keneally, Thomas *The survivor* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 47.

Of this second set of parties, one was to survey the central Victoria Land mountains, another to move in the totally unexplored direction of the geomagnetic pole (with some

hope of reaching it), a third to act as support party to the latter.

**1987** Bates, Robert L. and Jackson, Julia A., eds *Glossary of geology, 3rd edn* American Geological Institute, Alexandria: 272.

Geomagnetic poles. The points of emergence at the Earth's surface of the axis of the geocentric magnetic dipole that most closely approximates the Earth's magnetic field. These points are sometimes referred to as the magnetic poles.

### Georgian *adjective*

Belonging to or inhabiting **South Georgia**.

**1951** Bagshawe, R.W. and Goldup, John in *Polar Record* 6(41) Jan: 57.

We ran short of stamps and to meet the demand a few 6d. Georgian stamps were bisected and used.

**1966** (South Georgia) Harper, Peter C. in *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 4(1) Mar: 390.

Two Georgian Teal feeding in the valley stream proved very photogenic.

**1987** Harbison, G.R. in *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XXII(3) Sept: 5.

Ctenophores dominate the gut contents of such fish as the Georgian cod.

### Georgian diving petrel

The seabird *Pelecanoides georgicus*: see **South Georgia diving petrel**.

**1968** Beck, J.R. in *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* 18 (Dec): 82.

The bird found on Signy Island ... could be one of the following: ... Falkland diving-petrel (*Pelecanoides urinatrix berard*) — Falkland Islands; Georgian diving-petrel (*P. georgicus*) — South Georgia [etc.].

**1986** (Heard Island) Smith, Jeremy *Specks in the Southern Ocean* Department of Geography and Planning, University of New England, Armidale: 76.

The ground would frequently collapse beneath our feet. Underground there must have been a honeycomb of tunnels — the entrances, holes some five to ten centimetres across, were everywhere to be seen, usually beneath the edge of a stone. The tunnels belonged to a bird called the Georgian Diving Petrel. I never saw one.

**1996** Soper, Tony and Scott, Dafila *Antarctica: a guide to the wildlife* Bradt Publications, Chalfont St Peter: 83.

Georgian diving-petrels are probably somewhat sedentary and abundant in their range (some two million pairs breed on South Georgia).

### giant antarctic cod *Also giant cod*

The edible marine fish *Dissostichus mawsoni* (fam. Nototheniidae), a long-bodied brownish fish which is one of the largest antarctic fish. It grows to more than 2 m (6 ft 7 in) long and is widely distributed in antarctic waters, including the waters under the Ross ice shelf. It is also known as an **antarctic cod**, (**antarctic**) **toothfish** and **mawsoni**.

**1964** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(9) Mar: 397.

Late in December Stanford University biologists at McMurdo kept alive for 10 days a large fish, the first living Antarctic fish of its size and species ever to be studied. It has been tentatively identified as *Dissostichus mawsoni*, which is found only in the Antarctic and has no common name.]

**1974** de Vries, AL, de Vries, YL, Dobbs, GHIII and Raymond, JA in *Antarctic Journal of the United States* 1X(4) Jul/Aug: 107.

Using an oceanographic winch and set line, 210 of the giant antarctic cod, *Dissostichus mawsoni* .. were caught between September 11 and December 9, 1973. These fish were caught at several sites between depths of 400 and 600 meters on the McMurdo Sound ice 6 kilometers southwest of McMurdo Station. Their average weight was about 35 kilograms, with the largest weighing over 65 kilograms and the smallest weighing about 7 kilograms.

**1978** Macdonald, J.A. and Wells, H.M. in *New Zealand Antarctic Record* 1(1): 18.

The large fish is the giant "cod", *Dissostichus mawsoni*.

**1990** Stewart, John *Antarctica: an encyclopedia* McFarland & Co, Jefferson, North Carolina, vol 1: 30.

The giant Antarctic cod is *Dissostichus mawsoni*.

## giant fulmar

A bird of the genus *Macronectes*: see **giant petrel**.

**15 Dec 1912** (South Georgia) Murphy, Robert Cushman (1948) *Logbook for Grace* Robert Hale Ltd, London: 170.

The nearest beach of the bay shore, which is now in plain view from deck, seems to be covered with penguins and giant fulmars.

**1917** (Falkland Islands) Beck, Rollo H. in *The American Museum Journal* XVII(7) Nov: 440.

[caption] On Sea Lion Island a colony of giant fulmars was nesting. This bird, which is as large as some albatrosses, lays its single egg on the bare ground.

**1923** *The Oologists' Exchange & Mart* 1 Mar: 3.

W.A. Strong, 41, Grand Avenue, San Jose, California, U.S.A., wants eggs of Divers, Albatrosses and Giant Fulmar. Cash or exchange.

**1951** Holgersen, Holger *On the birds of Peter I Island. Proceedings of the Xth International Ornithological Congress, Uppsala, June 1950* Almqvist & Wiksells Boktryckeri AB, Uppsala: 615.

Other species observed were Stinker or Giant Fulmar (*Macronectes giganteus*), of which three specimens were seen, two young birds and one adult of the white phase.

**1976** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XI(2): 54.

[caption] Giant fulmar chick on nest at Bonaparte Point, Anvers Island.

## giant petrel *noun and attrib.*

Either of the two very large seabirds of the genus *Macronectes*, *M. giganteus* (the **southern giant petrel**) or *M. halli* (the **northern giant petrel**). These **molly-mawk**-sized brown scavenging birds are the largest birds in their family, Procellariidae. Until 1966 both birds were regarded as one species. They are also called **giant fulmars**, **gluttons**, **nellies** and **stinkers**.

**3 Apr 1842** (Falkland Islands) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 281.

Today the birds about us have been numerous, skimming in the wake, or wheeling round us. Cape pigeon, ash-backed petrel, giant petrel etc.).

**1848** Gould, John *The birds of Australia* The author, 20 Broad St, Golden Square, London, vol VII: pl. 45.

*Procellaria gigantea* .. Giant Petrel ... As is the case with several other species of the *Procellariidae*, this, the largest member of the family, is universally distributed over all the temperate and high southern latitudes.

**1879** (Kerguelen Island) Sharpe, R. Bowdler in *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: 144.

Giant Petrels are well known as scavengers.

**1894** Hamilton, A. *Transactions and Proceedings of the New Zealand Institute* XXVII Art LXV: 572.

*Ossifraga gigantea* — The huge and ungainly "nelly", handsome and even noble when wheeling round and round in the air, is on the land but a lumbering robber, and usually to be found skulking around the breeding places, trying to pick up a young penguin or wood-hen ... The whole surface of the island is covered with the bones of small Prions, swallowed and then ejected by these giant petrels.

**1901** Saunders, Howard in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 231.

Dr. McCormick states that when, after leaving Kerguelen, the bosun of the *Erebus* fell overboard and could not be saved, the Giant Petrels swooped at him as he struggled to keep afloat, and it is doubtful if they did not actually strike him with their bills; while Mr. Arthur G. Guillemard states that a sailor, who was picked up, had his arms badly lacerated in defending his head from the attacks of an 'Albatros' Isic!, which may well have been this Giant Petrel.

**18 Mar 1911** (Hut Point) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912: an account of Scott's last expedition* Blandford Press, London: 118.

A pure white Giant Petrel flew over the hut today.

**8 Nov 1912** (Macquarie Island) Blake, L.R. in Mawson, Douglas (1942) *Geographical narrative and cartography. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911-14. Scientific reports series A vol 1* Government Printer, Sydney: 290.

There were Giant Petrel rookeries along this part of the coast. Some of the nests contained young birds. We found a large prawn in one's puke.

**1921** (Cape Evans) Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* Duckworth, London: 217.

A few Giant petrels visited our promontory occasionally, but though several were shot, nothing was learned of their nesting habits, for they breed many hundreds of miles further north. When in the air they were an imposing sight, for they have a spread of wing some six feet or more from tip to tip; but aground they were ugly, ungainly, disgusting creatures — with big beaks — that would gorge to repletion on the refuse of a freshly-killed seal.

**1952** (Marion Island) Rand, R.W. in *The Ostrich* XXIII(2) Sept: 121.

The larger species, such as albatross and giant petrels, were more easily caught during the breeding season.

**1968** Sparks, John and Soper, Tony *Penguins* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 104.

About five million giant petrels breed on Victoria, one of the islands of the Tristan da Cunha group.

**1989** May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica, 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 86.

The giant petrels (*Macronectes giganteus* and *M. halli* — southern and northern species) are colloquially known as stinkers. When threatened, they project a stinking stream of oily vomit.

**1991** Venables, Stephen *Island at the edge of the world: a South Georgia odyssey* Hodder and Staughton, London: 148.

I walked up to the bluff above the hut where a giant petrel, the ugly yellow-eyed 'stinker' sat beside its downy white chick.

## glacial cranch squid

The squid *Galiteuthis glacialis* (fam. Cranchiidae).

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome, vol. 1: 142.

*Galiteuthis glacialis* (Chun, 1906) ... Glacial cranch squid ... The most abundant cranchiid taken in midwater trawls in the Antarctic.

## glacial ice

Freshwater ice in or from a glacier.

**1941** (Ruppert Coast) *Polar Record* 3(22) July: 430.

A small snow-covered island noted in about Lat. 74°30'S. and Long. 141°W., with a 300 ft. steep, rocky cliff to the north, proved to be one of the anchorages responsible for holding the heavy glacial ice near to the shore.

**1982** Hosking, Eric and Sage, Bryan *Antarctic wildlife* Croom Helm, London: 33.

The freshwater ice covering the continent represents the accumulation of snowfall over a period of something like 20,000 years, and it represents 90–95 per cent of all the glacial ice in the world.

**1995** (Commonwealth Bay) *The Sunday Age [Melbourne]* 23 April: Agenda 10.

That night the ship's barman was serving single malt Scotches on glacial ice. Chipped from a passing floe, its high gas content made it fizz.

## glacial squid

The squid *Psychroteuthis glacialis* (fam. Psychroteuthidae), which is restricted to antarctic waters.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome, vol. 1: 142.

*Psychroteuthis glacialis* ... Glacial squid .. Antarctic and sub-Antarctic sectors of the Atlantic; widespread in the Southern Ocean.

## glacier

[From the French glacier, used in English from 1744 on (NOED). Though the word is not exclusively Antarctic, glaciers are of greater significance in the antarctic regions than anywhere else in the world.]

A vast body of ice moving under gravity towards the sea or (once in the sea) spreading out in it. The largest glaciers in the world, the Lambert and Beardmore, are in Antarctica.

**29 Jan 1833** (Tierra del Fuego) Darwin, Charles (1901) *Journal of researches into the natural history and geology of the countries visited during the voyage round the world of H.M.S. 'Beagle' under command of Captain Fitz Roy, R.N., 2nd edn* John Murray, London: 225.

In many parts, magnificent glaciers extend from the mountain side to the water's edge. It is scarcely possible to imagine anything more beautiful than the beryl-like blue of these glaciers, and especially as contrasted with the dead white of the upper expanse of snow.

**1852** Eights, James in *Transactions of the Albany Institute* 2: 334.

This beautiful crustacean [sc. *Glyptonotus antarctica*] furnishes to us another close approximation to the long lost family of the *Trilobite*. I procured them from the southern shores of the New South Shetland Islands. They inhabit the bottom of the sea, and are only to be obtained when thrown far upon the shores by the immense surges that prevail when the detached glaciers from the land precipitate themselves into the ocean.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 334.

[glossary] Glacier.— A river of solid ice, descending from its source in the high *névé* of a snowfield.

**9 Dec 1930** Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 361.

In this case probably 5% of [sc. sea] surface (not more) covered with glaciers.

**1965** *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* 5 (Jan): 26.

In contrast to glaciers in most parts of the world, Antarctica is almost entirely an area of accumulation, maintaining its equilibrium by the calving of icebergs rather than by ablation.

**1990** Stonehouse, Bernard *North Pole, South Pole: a guide to the ecology and resources of the Arctic and Antarctic* Prion, London: 66.

Normally a hard, fairly elastic solid, ice flows under pressure, producing those splendid monuments to gravity called glaciers.

**1997** (South Georgia) Gurney, Alan *Below the convergence: voyages toward Antarctica 1699–1839* W.W. Norton & Co, NY/London: 236.

At the head of the bay lay a large glacier — Cook had no word for this and merely described it as a huge mass of ice and snow fronted by a perpendicular ice cliff of great height.

## glacieret

A miniature glacier.

**1922** (Cape Evans) Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Picador, London: 186.

In one or two places where the accumulation of snow is great enough there are little glacierets which do not travel far before they ignominiously peter out.

## glacier ice noun and attrib.

(Freshwater) ice that is or has been part of a glacier, and is therefore formed from snow, including ice now floating on the sea surface. See also **blue glacier ice**.

**1909** (Mount Erebus) Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907–1909* William Heinemann, London: 174.

The lower slopes ascend in a gentle but gradually steepening curve to the base of the first crater; the are largely covered with snow and glacier-ice down to the shore, where the ice either breaks off to form a cliff or, as at Glacier Tongue, spreads out seawards in the form of a narrow blue pier about five miles in length.

**1931** O'Brien, John S. *By dog sled for Byrd: 1600 miles across Antarctic ice* Thomas S. Rockwell, Chicago: 125.

The surface now became solid blue. We were moving over glacier ice that had poured down through the mountain passes and spread out over the barrier floor. It was a wonderful sight, this deep blue translucent floor.

**1950** (South Georgia) Saunders, Alfred *A camera in Antarctica* Winchester Publications, London: 34.

When the weather was calm and the bay clear of ice, rowing was easy though cold work, but it was difficult if the bay was frozen over, as it often was, or filled with glacier ice.

**1967** *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* 1 (Apr): 7.

No sign of sea ice yet so we can use glacier ice from the sea for our water supply.

**19 April 1987** (Cape Evans) Gaudian, Gudrun in May, John (1989) *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica, 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 165.

I'll start with the trip to Mount Erebus glacier ice tongue. We were going to start dead early in the morning of Tuesday, 7 April, but it took a couple of hours after waking before we were on our way across the hills towards the frozen sound.

**1993** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XXVIII(5): 255.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

Glacier ice is formed by compression of snow and, therefore, contains numerous bubbles that scatter light of all visible wavelengths. As the bubble content increases, the fraction of light reflected increases, and the perceived color changes from blue to white.

**glacierized** *adjective*

Covered by a **glacier**.

**1992** *Antarctic Science* 4(2): 215.

South Georgia is a highly glacierized island.

**glacier snout**

The terminating end of a **glacier** or **glacier tongue**.

**1907** (McMurdo Sound) Hodgson, T.V. in *National Antarctic Expedition 1901–1904. Natural history. vol III Zoology and botany (Invertebrata: marine algae, musci)* British Museum, London: 4.

A line drawn from the "Glacier Snout" to the southern boundary of New Harbour forms the southern limit of this area.

**1916** (Feb 1904) Doorly, Captain Gerald S. *The voyages of the 'Morning'* Smith, Elder & Co., London: 181.

Captain Scott then decided that the three ships should proceed to the glacier snout, ten miles north, to tranship the necessary coal and provisions.

**1996** (McMurdo Sound) Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 35.

On one side mountains sank into glacier snouts, and on the other the sea ice had melted into a berg-studded ocean.

**glacier tongue** *noun*

[The name was originally used for a particular formation called Glacier Tongue nr Ross Island.]

The extension of a valley glacier or ice stream into the sea, usually as a floating promontory of ice. This kind of formation is also called an **ice tongue**.

**1907** (McMurdo Sound) Hodgson, T.V. in *National Antarctic Expedition 1901–1904. Natural history. Vol. III Zoology and botany (Invertebrata: marine algae, musci)* British Museum, London: 4.

From Cape Bird to the so-called "glacier tongue".

**3 Mar 1912** Mawson, Douglas quoted in Mawson, Paquita (1964) *Mawson of the Antarctic: the life of Sir Douglas Mawson* Longmans, London: 61.

There within a gunshot is the greatest glacier tongue yet known to the world.

**1914** Priestley, Raymond E. (1974 repr.) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* Melbourne University Press: 33.

The natural ice-pier I have already mentioned is the floating extension of one of the most active glaciers which descend from the middle slopes of Mt. Erebus. Most of the border of Ross Island is fringed at or near sea-level with the terminal ice-cliff of such glaciers; but this particular one, being unusually well-nourished, has pushed its seaward end out into the water faster than the waves have been able to undermine and remove it, and so we have one of the floating tongues of ice which are peculiar to the Antarctic and which are known to us as glacier tongues, and of which this particular jetty is the type and name-giver.

Glacier Tongue, therefore, consisting as it did of fresh ice, was obviously the best place from which the *Terra Nova's* water-tanks could be filled.

**1924** Reid, Harry Fielding in *Geographical Review* 14: 613.

Two forms, the floating glacier tongue and the floating shelf ice, are peculiar to the Antarctic; they are unknown elsewhere.

**1968** Herbert, Wally *A world of men: exploration in Antarctica* Eyre & Spottiswoode, London: 185.

There was no tide crack where the glacier tongue met the sea ice for the whole tongue was floating.

**1982** Jackson, Andrew, ed. *ANARE field manual, 2nd edn* [Australian] Antarctic Division: 34.

Where glaciers meet the coast, glacier tongues extend seaward for distances varying from one to more than thirty kilometres.

**glacio** *noun and attrib. Brit., Aust.*

A glaciologist.

**[1985** *BAS Club Newsletter* no. 17 (Spring): 4.

Ex-glacio Mike Landy was best man.]

**1986** Jenkins, Adrian and Summerson, Rupert *Travel report – Sledge Golf. Glacier geophysics Ronne Ice Shelf traverse 17 Dec 1985–24 Feb 1986. BAS ref 1985-86/K4* British Antarctic Survey, Cambridge: 8.

The Depot spacing was also on account of the load of glacio poles to be carried on top of already heavy sledges.

**1993** (Casey station) *Station News* Feb: 1.

The Law Dome drillers finally reached bedrock at just over 1200 metres and we all anxiously await the analyses of the final cores. Vin Morgan, Jo Jacka and their fellow glacios are to be congratulated.

**1997** Craven, Mike in *Australian Geographic* 46 (Apr-Jun): 44.

Rob and I were aboard the glacio van, a specially constructed unit similar to a shipping container, accommodating scientific equipment, four bunks, a kitchen and cold-porch entry-way.

**glaciologise** *verb*

To undertake the duties of a glaciologist.

**1967** *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* 2 (May): 5.

Bob Thomas has been out "glaciologizing" around base.

**glare ice** *noun and attrib.*

[In Canadian English (DCaE), glare has been used since 1829 for lake and river ice which is smooth, slippery and translucent.]

Wind-scoured ice, blown clear of snow.

**1939** Rymill, John *Southern lights: the official account of the British Graham Land Expedition 1934–1937* Travel Book Club, London: 132.

Off the point itself there was new, glare ice which was bearing well — in fact, it looked so solid that we did not bother to test it.

**1955** (Marguerite Bay region) Walton, E.W. Kevin *Two years in the Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 79.

The bollards and ridges between the enormous crevasses were shiny glare ice, without any belays.

**1982** Jackson, Andrew, ed. *ANARE field manual, 2nd edn* [Australian] Antarctic Division: 96.

Glare ice areas close to mountains or on narrow glaciers indicate strong wind scours.

**glory hour** *Falkland Islands*

An hour of Sunday drinking at a public house: see quotation.

**16 May 1982** Smith, John (1984) *74 days: an Islander's diary of the Falklands occupation* Century Publishing, London: 155.

An unusually large number of folk turned out for Glory Hour in the pubs at lunch-time, taking advantage of the sunshine plus the entertainment — not only the British bombing but

also the Argentine confusion. Glory Hour is another Falklands tradition brought about by the licensing hours which only permit the pubs to be open for one hour on Sundays from 12 until 1 pm. The effects of the sometimes swift hard drinking are often quite spectacular on new arrivals in Stanley.

### glue water *Whaling*

[When glue water evaporated, it left a sticky glue: see 1982 quotation.]

The waste water, usually containing a small amount of oil and some solids (**grax**), left in the boiler at the final stage of boiling whale carcasses for oil, after the **whale oil** has been drawn off. The residual oil was usually extracted before the glue water was discarded into the sea, either with or without retrieving the **grax**.

1949 Routh, Martin in *The Ibis* 91(4): 602.

The penguins are said normally to be oiled before they come aboard. It would be only too easy for this state of affairs to arise near a whale factory, where oily whale refuse and large quantities of "glue water" are constantly being thrown over the side.

1951 Rankin, Niall *Antarctic isle* Collins, London: 348.

At the end of the 9 hours' cooking of the meat an evil-smelling residue remains in the boiler, consisting partly of solid and partly of "Glue water". The latter is run off into a tank where it is settled, adding yet another abominable odour to an already over-laden atmosphere, and a further small quantity of poor-grade oil may be recovered, the water then being discharged into the sea.

1955 *Polar Record* 7(51) Sept: 521.

The super-decanters remove the grax (from which a bone-protein meal can be made), and the separated glue water can be processed for the recovery of oil and protein.

1982 Tønnessen, J.N. and Johnsen, A.O. *The history of modern whaling* C. Hurst and Co, London/Australian National University Press, Canberra: 40.

The gluewater which was drawn off from the boilers evaporated, leaving a sticky, viscous mass of glue.

### glutton *Historical*

[Note that all three quotations are anecdotal; there is no other evidence of actual use of this name.]

A very large seabird of the genus *Macronectes* — the **giant petrel**.

1945 Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. *The voyage of Captain Bellingshausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819–1821* Hakluyt Society, London, vol 1: 122.

A great many white, polar and snow petrels, and one grey albatross, flew about the ship. [ed. footnote by Debenham: This would be the Giant petrel (*Macronectes giganteus*), as the true albatross never goes so far south as 68°S. It is known to sailors as the "Stinker" or the "Nelly" and to sealers as the "Glutton" [sic].]

1967 Gillham, Mary E. *Sub-Antarctic sanctuary: summertime on Macquarie Island* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Wellington: 43.

Giant petrels ... are well known to seamen in southern waters and are referred to by such scathing names as stinker, glutton and Nellie, probably because of their complete lack of eating manners.

1993 Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 155.

If the Antarctic's dustmen are sheathbills, then its vultures must be the giant petrels. Even uglier to human eyes than the sheathbills, they are the largest of the petrels, about the size

of a vulture with a 2 metre wingspan, and have a powerful hooked beak. The early whalers called them 'stinkers', 'stinkpots' or 'gluttons' and they continue to have a bad name.

### golden-crested penguin

#### A rockhopper penguin.

1879 (Marion Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 167.

The rookeries of King Penguins are entirely bare, and the grass is not more luxuriant around the nests of the Golden-crested Penguins than elsewhere.

1940 Christopherson, Erling *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 87.

The prevailing type on the Tristan islands is the little golden-crested penguin, which is called by the islanders, "pinamin", a corruption of penguin. Its special name in English is Rockhopper or Jumping Jack. The most striking thing about a flock of penguins is that they will hop away in battalions and in close formation, but completely out of step. The Rockhopper also lives in colonies on the coast of Patagonia, Falkland Island, Gough, Kerguelen and St. Paul, only to mention a few of the more important places.

### gony *noun and attrib. Esp. Tristan da Cunha. Also goney, gonie, goony*

[Possibly from the sense of gony simpleton (used since c1580) — see 1958 quotation — although the connection is not sumptuously convincing.]

An albatross, usually the albatross *Diomedea exulans* (see **wandering albatross**), and sometimes specifically the young bird.

1839 *Mocha Dick: or The White whale of the Pacific* repr. in Gilmore, R.M. (1969) *Oceans Magazine* 1(4): 76.

'May the 'Goneys' eat me, if he dodges us this time!'

13 Jan 1840 Olmsted, Francis Allyn (1841) *Incidents of a whaling voyage* D. Appleton & Co., NY, repr. 1969 by Charles E. Tuttle Co., Rutland, Vermont: 101.

The albatross, or "gony," as he is called by whalers, is an immense bird.

4 Aug 1851 Taylor, W.F. quoted in Brander, J. (1940) *Tristan da Cunha 1506–1902* Allen & Unwin, London: 172.

Though the weather was threatening, most of the young people had ventured up upon the mountain after young albatrosses (gonies, as they call them), which formed a great proportion of the winter's food.

1879 (Marion Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 171.

The whole place was everywhere dotted over with albatrosses, the large white albatross or goney (*D. exulans*). The birds were scattered irregularly all over the green in pairs, looking in the distance not unlike geese on a common.

1910 Barrow, K.M. *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 275.

There is nothing peculiar to Tristan in either its Fauna or Flora. Of the birds those we saw or hear most of were:— .. The Gony, the Wandering Albatross (*Diomedea exulans*). A few lay on Inaccessible but none on Tristan.

1952 Hagen, Yngvar *Birds of Tristan da Cunha* Det Norske Videnskap Akademi i Oslo/Hos Jacob Dybwad, Oslo: 46.

The common local name for the Wandering Albatross on Tristan da Cunha is simply "Albatross" without any distinction between the larger race *exulans* and the smaller *dabbenena*. The younger, darker birds, however, are usually called "Goony" ... The young "Goonies" even went ashore on the main island itself for short visits.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

**1958** Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 91.

We descended into the broad valley south of Mount Rowett, where there were several adult albatrosses as well as the young. Later we named this valley Gonydale, from the albatross whose Tristan and sailor's name is 'Gony'. The name refers to the 'stupid' habit of the bird in allowing itself to be approached and making little effort to escape, and the word derives from the same root as 'goon' applied to similarly silly human characters. The albatrosses in Gonydale did not believe their names.

— 109.

Most of us were in a state of torpor, for the lunch had been as vast and filling as any at home. Having no turkey, roast albatross chick was the main course, stuffed, of course, and accompanied by the usual vegetables. The young Gony turned out to be very good indeed, and the reason why there are none of this species left on Tristan was immediately apparent.

**1966** Temple, Philip *The sea and the snow* Cassell Australia, Melbourne: 59.

The huge Wandering Albatross was ugly, well-named Goony Bird, with a heavy body, bulbous head and lumpy neck. Though it glided marvellously well it was never as graceful as its smaller cousins — the Sooty, Black Browed or Shy.

**1967** Gillham, Mary E. *Sub-Antarctic sanctuary: summertime on Macquarie Island* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Wellington: 101.

The flesh of the adults is reputed to be dark, fishy and unpalatable, but that of the 'gooneys' or youngsters is pleasanter.

**1982** Hosking, Eric and Sage, Bryan *Antarctic wildlife* Croom Helm, London: 92.

For those approaching the Antarctic by ship, perhaps the most beautiful and exciting seabirds of the southern seas are the albatrosses, whose grace and power of flight have been commented upon by voyagers ever since ships first sailed south into these cold waters. They were generally referred to by sailors as gooneys or mollymawks, but the latter term is normally now used only when referring collectively to the smaller species.

**1988** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 2 (Mar): 12.

Inaccessible Island is the nesting ground for millions of seabirds, but the Wandering Albatross (Gony) population has been almost wiped out, remaining at only two to four pairs for the last 50 years. Despite an intensive search, none was found breeding.

## good ice year

A year in which conditions are good for travel on or through **sea ice**. See also **ice year**.

**1954** Gjaever, John, transl. fr Norwegian by Huggard, E.M. *The white desert: the official account of the Norwegian-British-Swedish antarctic expedition* Chatto & Windus, London: 51.

One talks of good and of difficult ice years. During certain summers it is possible to sail close up to the ice front in February–March without any appreciable hindrance from the ice. In other summers the belt of pack ice may be broad, compact and impenetrable.

**1962** Davis, J.K. *High latitude* Melbourne University Press, Melbourne: 74.

How much drifts south again to form the nucleus of next year's pack depends upon the strength and direction of the wind and current, as well as upon temperature, and these factors vary from year to year. These seasonal variations have come to be known as either 'bad ice years' when the pack has been retarded on its way to warmer waters, or as

'good ice years', when it has scattered more freely and melted early in spring.

## good time *Tristan da Cunha*

A moment at which the waves are favourable for launching a boat into the sea.

**1958** Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 31.

It was an education to watch the islanders as they judged the moment to launch or beach their craft. In launching, a great crowd of men surrounded the boat and, when a 'good time' arrived, walked it down into the sea, wading in until the water took it.

**1989** (1950s) Thompson, Pat Forsyth *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 4 (Mar): 4.

The boats would be loaded on Little Beach and, waiting for a good "time" when the waves were favourable, someone would shout "now" and the boat would be pushed into the water and quickly rowed out through the surf.

## googie hut *Aust.* Also simply *googie*

[From *googie* an egg, originally Scottish dialect and later (from 1903: AND) in Australian English.]

A large fibreglass field hut, usually orange, which is mounted on a steel frame in the manner of an egg in an egg-cup. The hut is a flattened sphere in shape, and looks remarkably like traditional images of a flying saucer. See also **apple hut**.

**1992** *Antarctic Society of Australia newsletter [Sydney]* 29 (June): 22.

Concrete was taken to Heard Island and was planned to be used for anchoring the legs of the Googie Huts.

**1993** Sayers, Jack in Handmer, John and Wilder, Martijn, eds *Towards a conservation strategy for the Australian Antarctic Territory* Centre for Resource and Environmental Studies, Australian National University: 121.

The Antarctic Division has .. developed a highly aerodynamic, helicopter transportable shelter of larger size (the 'Googie') which is currently being used for accommodation and laboratories at Mawson and Heard Island.

## gooney *See gony*

## goose beak *Falkland Islands*

The upper beak of the goose *Chloephaga picta* (the **upland goose**), which formerly earned a bounty in the Falkland Islands. The goose is regarded as a competitor for grass on sheep pastures, and many thousands were killed in the early twentieth century. The bird is still sometimes regarded as a pest.

**1905** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 15(10) (8 Sept): 82.

Order of His Excellency the Governor in Council with regard to the purchase of Geese Beaks ... On and after the 1st day of October next and during the remainder of the current year the number of geese beaks which may be purchased on the East and West Falklands respectively shall be: East Falkland not exceeding 25,000. West Falkland not exceeding 25,000.

**6 Feb 1968** (Falkland Islands) Scott, Peter (1983) *Travel diaries of a naturalist: Australia, New Zealand, New Guinea, Africa, the Galapagos islands, Antarctica and the Falkland Islands* Collins, London: 255.

We talked about the bounty on goose beaks (a fee paid for every goose shot), no longer paid by the Government, but still paid by some farmers to their employees.

## gorfoo

[From the French *gorfou* used from 1760 for penguins of the genus *Eudyptes*.]

### A rockhopper penguin.

**1901** Saunders, Howard in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 227.

None of the Crested Penguins (*Catarrhactes* [sic]) are known to breed in the South American area to the southward of the Falklands and South Georgia. In these the 'Gorfoo', or 'Rockhopper' (*C. chrysocome* [sic]), is found: a bird which has a very wide range, passing by the Tristan da Cunha group to the Cape Seas, the Marion, Crozet, Kerguelen and St. Paul Islands, South Australia, and the New Zealand waters as far as Campbell Island.

**1950** Mountevans, Admiral Lord *The desolate Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 37.

There are, of course, other breeds of penguins: crested penguins, "Gorfoos" or "Rock-Hoppers", "Macaroni" penguins and the "Jackass" penguins, but these are not denizens of the desolate Antarctic, and are found there very, very seldom.

## go South, to verbal phr.

To travel to the **antarctic regions**. See **South**.

**1894** Burn Murdoch, W.G. *From Edinburgh to the Antarctic* Longmans, Green and Co, London: 4.

Half of my acquaintances had heard of my intention of going south.

**4 Dec 1910** Taylor, Griffith in Hanley, Wayne, ed. (1978) *The Griffith Taylor collection: diaries and letters of a geographer in Antarctica* Geography Department, University of New England, Armidale: 18.

My books on the shelf were pulped also but I spose you can't go south without risking something and most of my things under myself and the mattress were not hurt so it might have been worse.

**1914** (Inaccessible Island) Priestley, Raymond E. (1974 repr.) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* Melbourne University Press: 285.

If I ever go South again I think seal's brain will become a regular item in the menu. The soup it made was really the best we had yet tasted.

**1921** *The Graphic* [London] 8 Oct: 424.

[headline] Why Shackleton has gone South.

**1964** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(12) Dec: 530.

Until he resigned to go south, he was a science teacher at Westland High School.

**1995** Tomkins, Bob in Robinson, Shelagh *Huskies in harness: a love story in Antarctica* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 71.

People ask why I went South. I went for adventure, to have fun.

## Gough Island

Gough Island was named I. de Gonçalo Alvarez on early maps, after its discoverer, Portuguese navigator Gonçalo Alvarez. The name was later corrupted to I. Diego Alvarez, and there was confusion about the locality. It was renamed after Captain Charles *Gough* of the British barque *Richmond*, who sighted the island in 1713.

The volcanic island (about 14 km × 6 km) lies at 40°21'S and 9°53'W, in the South Atlantic Ocean, about 2350 km (1500 miles) southwest of Cape Town and about 370 km (230 miles) southeast of Tristan da Cunha. It has been part of the British Crown Colony of St Helena since 1938; a small, manned weather station on the east of the island is leased and run by South Africa. It is often regarded as part of one entity with the Tristan da Cunha group of islands, despite its distance from Tristan. The island is a World Heritage Wildlife Reserve.

## Goughalite See goughel

## Gough bunting Also Gough Island bunting

The small landbird *Rowettia goughensis* (fam. Emberizidae) of Gough Island, which has an olive-green back and yellow belly, and nests in vegetation close to the ground.

**1904** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* XV(cx): 18.

On behalf of Mr. W. Eagle Clarke (who was unfortunately unable to be present), Dr. Sclater exhibited specimens of two new species of birds discovered during the voyage of the Antarctic ship 'Scotia,' and read the following descriptions:—1. *Nesospiza goughensis*, n. sp. General colour of upper- and under-parts olive-green, tinged with silvery grey. The middle of the abdomen, under tail-coverts, a stripe from the forehead to behind the eye, and the malar streak olive-yellow; chin, throat and lores black; primaries and secondaries dusky, with silvery-grey tips and the outer webs margined with bright olive-green, the rest grey margined and tinged with green: bill and feet, in life, clove-brown. Wing 4.15 inches. .. *Hab.* Gough Island, 200 miles south of Tristan da Cunha. 2. *Nesospiza jessiae*, n. sp. Above tawny ochraceous streaked with black; under surface orange-buff ... *Hab.* Gough Island.

**1956** *The Times* [London] 10 Sept: 9.

Another aspect of the work of the ornithologist was to study the island's other unique land bird, the Gough Island Bunting.

**1975** Watson, George E *Birds of the Antarctic and subantarctic. Antarctic Research Series* American Geophysical Union, Washington DC: 245.

The Gough Bunting is very tame. Its behaviour is said to be quite unlike that of the Tristan bunting.

**1982** Cooper, J. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* Suppl 2: 47.

M.K. Swales marked 'many' Gough Island buntings *Rowettia goughensis* in 1955–1956 with 'coloured celluloid bands'.

**1989** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 5 (Sept): 10.

The third and final set of stamps in the island series devoted to fauna duly appeared on 6th February 1989, this issue devoted to Gough Island ... The four bird subjects chosen from some 25 species found on the island are the Giant Petrel (5p value); Gough Moorhen (10p value); Gough Bunting (20p value) [etc.]

## Goughel South African. Also Goughalite

An inhabitant of, or expeditioner to, Gough Island, which has a weather station with a small permanent crew (of six, in 1999).

**1958** Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 8.

The common cormorant or shag  
Lays eggs inside a paper bag,  
runs the popular ditty, and the Expedition soon added the  
couplet:

The Goughalite is not so mean,  
He wraps *his* things in polythene.

**1972** *Antarktische Bulletin* 2 (7–8) Mar: 68.

To the new “Goughels” we the Marionites — Len, Henk,  
Allen, Greg, Farie, John and Koos — wish them a pleasant  
stay.

**1999** *Island life* <http://home.intekom.com/gough/life.htm>  
[accessed 3 Mar 1999].

One advantage that us Goughels have over our counterparts  
on Marion Island, is the abundance of fish around the Island.

### Gough Island bunting *See* Gough bunting

### Gough moorhen *Also* *Gough Island cock, moorhen* or *rail*

The flightless rail *Gallinula nesiotis comeri* or *Gallinula comeri* (fam. Rallidae) of Gough Island, which has been introduced to Tristan da Cunha. There are an estimated 2500 breeding pairs on Gough Island; the bird resembles the South African moorhen, but has red legs rather than yellow. It is also called a **flightless rail**, **island cock** and **mountain cock**.

**1957** *London Calling* 9 May: 10.

[caption] The Gough Island rail is found nowhere else in the world: it is similar to the British moorhen but has lost the power of flight since settling on Gough.

**1958** Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 177.

While climbing up the fern-covered slopes opposite the hut, Michael was staggered to see an adult rail pursued by two tiny, black, fluffy balls which could only be newly hatched chicks. So astonished was he that he simply stood gaping at them, and so missed the chance of catching the first specimen of the Gough Island rail chick ever to be obtained.

**1971** *Antarktische Bulletin* 2(5–6) Apr.–Sept: 56.

Les Genllood and Johann Coetzer went to much trouble in measuring and photographing the eggs and observing the activities of the Gough Island rails in a nest which was discovered nearby the house ... However, they became the laughing stock of the team when, after further observance, the nest proved to be that of a stray hen.

**1975** Watson, George E. *Birds of the Antarctic and subantarctic. Antarctic Research Series* American Geophysical Union, Washington DC: 191.

The Gough Moorhen bathes in freshwater but avoids salt-water.

**1976** Ryssen, W.J. van *The birds of the Tristan da Cunha group and Gough Island* Board of Extra-mural Studies, University of Cape Town: 28.

Gough Island gallinule *Gallinula comeri* Gough Island Cock.

**1988** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 2 (Mar): 10

Flightlessness is a phenomenon common to isolated islands whereby some species of birds and insects lose their power of flight. This is attributed to several possible causes; the abundance of food at ground level; the absence of predators and for species with rudimentary small wings, they cannot be blown out to sea in areas of strong winds and gales. The need for flight thus becomes less essential. The series of four stamps illustrate the Flightless Moth (10p); the Strap-winged Fly (25p); the Flightless Rail (35p) and the Gough Island Moorhen (50p).

**1994** Cooper, John and Ryan, Peter G. *Management plan for the Gough Island wildlife reserve* Government of Tristan da Cunha: 18.

Two bird species, the Gough Moorhen *Gallinula comeri* and Gough Bunting *Rowettia goughensis*, are the only native terrestrial vertebrates; both are endemic to the island. The moorhen is closely related to the Tristan Moorhen *G. nesiotis*, which is presumed extinct on the main island of Tristan. The current population of moorhens on Tristan is thought to be descended from six pairs of Gough Moorhens released near Edinburgh Settlement on 15 May 1956 ... Gough Moorhens are flightless and are restricted to the fern bush and coastal tussock grassland, where there is adequate cover.

### Goughwards *adverb*

In the direction of Gough Island.

**10 Oct 1955** Chambers, Robert in Holdgate, Martin (1958) *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 60.

Enquire possibility tankers Goughwards carrying maximum nine men and dinghy.

### grampus *Historical*

[Grampus is recorded from before 1529 (NOED) for the orca, apparently from the French: see 1902 quotation.]

The marine mammal *Orcinus orca*: see **killer whale**.

**1777** Forster, George A *voyage round the world, in his Britannic Majesty's sloop, Resolution, commanded by Capt. James Cook* B. White, London, vol 1: 96.

A grampus and several whales made their appearance among the ice.

**1806** (Amsterdam Island) Barrow, John A *voyage to Cochinchina, in the years 1792 and 1793* Oxford University Press facs, Kuala Lumpur (1975): 146.

Except on the coast of Spitsbergen, I never saw so vast an assemblage of whales, grampusses, porpoises, sea-lions, and seals, as were constantly either playing their gambols, or fighting and devouring each other, between the ships' anchorage and the entrance of the crater.

**6 Jun 1824** (Tristan da Cunha) Earle, Augustus (1832) *A narrative of a nine months' residence in New Zealand, in 1827; together with a journal of a residence in Tristan d'Acunha, an island situated between South America and the Cape of Good Hope* Longman, Rees, Orme, Brown, Green, & Longman, London: 333.

They [sc. the sea-elephant bulls] have many enemies, even in the water; one called the killer, a species of grampus, ... makes terrible havoc amongst them.

**1871** Smiles, Samuel, ed. *Round the world; including a residence in Victoria [etc.]*, by a boy Harper and Bros, New York: 53.

A still more interesting sight was that of a great grampus, which rose close to the ship.

**1902** Beddard, Frank Evers *Mammalia. The Cambridge Natural History* vol X Macmillan and Co, London: 375.

Of this genus [sc. *Orca*] there may be more than one species; but the best known is the Killer Whale, *O. gladiator* .. often spoken of as the “Grampus.”<sup>1</sup> It is marked with contrasting bands of white or yellow upon a black body-colour. The animal grows to a considerable length, as much as 30 feet. *Orca* is a powerful and rapacious Whale; and Eschricht has stated that from the stomach of one, thirteen Porpoises and fourteen Seals were extracted.

<sup>1</sup>Footnote: Grampus being a contraction of *grand poisson* is an obvious name to apply to any Whale.



**1915** Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911–1914* William Heinemann, London, vol 1: 57.

Crouched on a small projection near the water's edge was a seal, trying to evade the eyes of a dozen large grampuses which were playing about near our stern. These monsters appeared to be about twenty-five feet in length. They are the most formidable predacious mammals of the Antarctic seas and annually account for large numbers of seals, penguins, and other cetaceans.

## grand penguin

The penguin *Megadyptes antipodes*: see **yellow-eyed penguin**.

**1902** Hutton, Captain F.W. in *The Emu* II(1) Jul: 3.

*Megadyptes antipodum*, the Yellow-eyed Penguin — sometimes called the Grand Penguin — breeds on Campbell Island, the Auckland Islands, Stewart Island, and the south of New Zealand, generally in groups of about a dozen.

**1909** Waite, Edgar R. in Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington, vol 2: 580.

*Megadyptes antipodum*, Hombron and Jacquinot. (Grand penguin.) ... During our visit in February, 1907, I met with a few birds of this species at Campbell Island. They had yellow eyes, but, as the plumes were of pale-yellow colour and did not extend across the back of the head, I judged them to be birds of the year.

**1962** Harrison, Peter P.O. *Seabirds of the South Pacific Ocean: a handbook for passengers and seafarers* Royal Naval Bird Watching Society, North Pembrokehire: 104.

Grand, or Yellow-eyed, Penguin (*Megadypes* [sic] *antipodes*). Upperparts slaty-grey.

## grax Whaling Also graks

[From the Norwegian *grakse* the residue from the production of whale oil or fish liver oil, perh. derived fr Norwegian *dragse*, residue, fr Old Norse *dregg*. In the early 20th century, many whaling ships in Antarctica — and their crews — were Norwegian, giving rise to whaling words such as this in the English of the antarctic regions.]

The sludge or solids left at the final stage of boiling up **whales** for oil, sometimes re-boiled to collect additional oil, and sometimes discarded at sea.

**1943** Hydrographic Office, US Navy Department *Sailing directions for Antarctica*. HO no 138 Hydrographic Office, Washington: 68.

Bone extraction apparatus, cookers for "graks," and equipment for the purification of oil on board, have increased the quantity and quality of the yield.

**1950** (South Georgia) Saunders, Alfred *A camera in Antarctica* Winchester Publications, London: 17.

Walks round the beach were popular but arduous, for it was littered with piles of whale bones all covered with the slimy *graks* upon which we slipped and fell.

**1951** Rankin, Niall *Antarctic isle* Collins, London: 348.

The method of cooking the several parts of the body varies with the ease with which the oil can be extracted. The blubber, having the highest oil-content and being the easiest to reduce, is cooked in huge boilers about 16 feet high which are open to the atmosphere. By the end of 12 hours the bulk of the oil has been removed and the residue ("Grax") is run into other boilers where it is steamed for a further 10 hours under pressure; in this way every ounce of oil is extracted.

**1955** *Polar Record* 7(51) Sept: 520.

On the factory side of whaling, apart from an increase in the production and value of by-products like meat-meal, the last three seasons have seen the fitting of sludge-separators (called "super-decanters") into the three South Georgia factories, and onto some factory ships, for the treatment of the "grax and glue water" blown off the cookers and largely wasted in the past.

**1982** Tønnessen, J.N. and Johnsen, A.O. *The history of modern whaling* C. Hurst and Co, London/Australian National University Press, Canberra: 40.

Raking up grax was the job whalers loathed most of all: in many cases they had lower themselves into the still-warm boilers in order to remove the grax. The men who emptied the boilers were the least-respected members of the whaling community.

## grease ice

[Grease ice is recorded earlier in northern English with the same meaning, but even the earliest use there is relatively recent (DCanE, 1958).]

The second stage of new sea ice formation (the first being **frazil**), when small plates of ice begin to clump together, giving the sea's surface an oily appearance, and having a similar dampening effect on waves to that of oil.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 62.

That's grease ice. It looks like oil on the water. It means the water is making up its mind to freeze.

**1997** Gurney, Alan *Below the convergence: voyages toward Antarctica 1699–1839* W.W. Norton & Co, NY/London: 58.

The stages of newly formed sea ice make a chanted refrain that would appeal to the ears of a child: frazil, grease, slush, shuga, pancake.

## great albatross

The largest albatrosses, often specifically the **wandering albatross** or **royal albatross**, as distinct from others of the genus *Diomedea*. See also **great wandering albatross**.

**1879** Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 134.

The great Albatross (*D. exulans*) breeds at Tristan da Cunha, and on the top of Inaccessible Island. At Tristan da Cunha it nests actually within the crater of the terminal cone around the lake, 7,000 feet or more above the sea.

**1924** Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history* by Rupert Vallentin Clarendon Press, Oxford: 178.

With the war-ships went white-breasted birds — the great albatross and molly-mawk.

**1940** Hagen, Yngvar in Christopherson, Erling, transl. fr Norwegian by Benham, R.L. *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 187.

I have already spoken about the great albatross. The chicks, which have sat the winter out on their nests, would have been easy to take at this time of the year, but they were presumably all eaten up fifty years ago. This may or may not be so, but in any case they have long since departed from their native island.

**1974** Harper, Peter C. and Kinsky, F.C. in *Tuatara* 21(1,2): 16.

The Great Albatrosses [sc. Wandering and Snowy] .. are characterised by the impressive wing span (over 3 metres, 9 feet) and soaring flight.

**1990** Marchant, S. and Higgins, P.J., co-ordinators *Handbook of Australian, New Zealand and Antarctic birds vol 1A Ratites to Petrels* Oxford University Press, Melbourne: 264.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

The great albatrosses are huge, long-winged, long- and pale-billed, short-tailed birds that glide round the world in Southern Ocean [sic]. Until recently, there were thought to be two species: the more pelagic Wandering Albatross *D. exulans* breeding on most of the subantarctic islands, which is dark with a white underwing when young, becoming more or less white with dark wing-tips when adult; and the more coastal Royal Albatross *D. epomophora*, breeding round NZ, which resembles the extreme white adult Wanderer throughout its life but has a dark cutting-edge to the upper mandible. A few birds breeding in extreme immature *exulans*-type of plumage on Ile Amsterdam in the Indian Ocean have recently been described as a third species *D. amsterdamensis* but there is continuing debate whether this is justified owing to the occurrence of similar populations in South Atlantic and round NZ.

**1996** Soper, Tony and Scott, Dafila *Antarctica: a guide to the wildlife* Bradt Publications, Chalfont St Peter: 44.

In common language the 14 species are crudely divided into the 'great albatrosses', the wandering and the royal; and the 'small albatrosses', collectively better known to seafarers as mollymawks.

## Greater Antarctica

Generally, the **antarctic continent** and surrounding region. More specifically, and more commonly, the larger part of the continent, which is also called **East Antarctica**, an area of continental shield rocks which contains the oldest antarctic rocks. See also **Lesser** and **West Antarctica**.

**1961** Thiel, E. in *Polar Record* 10(67) Jan: 335.

In outline, the Antarctic continent crudely resembles a pear ... In the present paper we shall use the terms "Lesser Antarctica" and "Greater Antarctica". "Lesser Antarctica" designates the top of the pear. It includes the Palmer Peninsula (Graham Land), the Ross Ice Shelf, the Filchner Ice Shelf, and the intervening grounded ice areas of Marie Byrd Land and Ellsworth Highland. "Greater Antarctica" designates the bottom of the pear. It includes the greater part of the continent, and is largely high plateau. The demarcation line lies on the Pacific Ocean side of the mountains which extend across the continent from Cape Adare to Coats Land; the mountains themselves lie in "Greater Antarctica".

**1965** Wace, N.M. in van Oye, P. & van Mieghem, J. eds *Biogeography and ecology in Antarctica* Dr W. Junk, The Hague: 210.

The palm pollens from the Lower Tertiary of the McMurdo Sound area may also indicate that this cooling can be taken to apply to Greater Antarctica.

**1987** David Lewis with Mimi Lewis *Icebound in Antarctica* Secker & Warburg, London: 66.

The oceanic limits of what may be termed 'Greater Antarctica' are best defined as the Antarctic Convergence.

**1993** Miller, Richard Gordon *A history and atlas of the fishes of the Antarctic ocean* Foresta Institute for Ocean and Mountain Studies, Carson City, Nevada: 3.

Various suggestions have been made for describing geographical polar areas. The logical one to me is to notice the larger, rounded part (the "shield") as "Greater Antarctica" and the portion eastward of the Ross Sea indentation and westward of the Weddell Sea including the Antarctic Peninsula to be "Lesser Antarctic".

## greater hooked squid

The squid *Moroteuthis ingens* (fam. Onychoteuthidae) which is circumpolar in subantarctic waters. Its tenta-

cles are as long as its body (mantle), and have sharp hooks on them for seizing prey.

**1994** George, Magnus and Buxton, Nicole in *The Warrah. Newsletter of Falklands conservation* 5 (Apr): 6.

One species of squid which is widely distributed, frequently caught by fishing vessels, and which may be quite abundant is the Greater Hooked squid, *Moroteuthis ingens*.

**greater shearwater** *see* **great shearwater**

## greater sheathbill

The bird *Chionis alba*: *see* **sheathbill**.

**1985** (South Orkneys) Lishman, G.S. in *The Ibis* 127(1) Jan: 90.

The only direct cause of mortality was predation by .. Greater Sheathbills *Chionis alba*.

**1993** Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 154.

Various animals depend heavily on penguins for food, one of the most persistent and certainly the strangest of which is the greater sheathbill. All white and about the size of a small crow, this bird gets its name from a horny sheath that covers its short pink bill, at the base of which are some fleshy protuberances. Nobody except another sheathbill could describe it as attractive. Its habits are also far from endearing as sheathbills are the Antarctic dustmen.

## great goose

[Goose has been applied since 1772 to certain seabirds likened to a true goose.]

The albatross *Diomedea exulans*: *see* **wandering albatross**.

**1969** *The Isthmus* [ANARE, Macquarie Island] Mar: [6].

The wandering albatross of Macquarie Island suffered heavily from the hand of man during the nineteenth century. Sailors, shipwrecked on the treacherous reefs which surround this island, lived for months at a time on the meat of the 'great goose'.

**great grey shearwater** *Also* **great grey petrel**

The seabird *Procellaria cinerea*: *see* **grey petrel**.

**1848** Gould, John *The birds of Australia* The author, 20 Broad St, Golden Square, London, vol VII: pl. 47.

*Procellaria hasitata*, Kuhl. Great Grey Petrel ... This species, which is very similar to the *Puffinus cinereus*, enjoys so wide a range of habitat that it may be said to be universally diffused between the 30th and 55th degrees of S. latitude.

**1900** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* X(LXXIII): cvi.

Mr. T. Parkin made some observations on the abundance of bird-life noticed by him in the Southern Oceans. The following is the list of birds obtained during a day's shooting in a calm on December 2nd, 1890, in the Cape Seas, when on a voyage to Australia in the clipper ship 'Sobraon', South Atlantic Ocean, lat. 39°51'S., long. 8°49'E. .. Great Grey Petrel (*Puffinus cinereus*) [etc.].

**10 Aug 1910** Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912: an account of Scott's last expedition* Blandford Press, London: 35.

Great Grey Shearwater appeared today for the first time. The birds are most interesting and quite abundant.

**1963** Rand, R.W. in *The Ostrich* XXXIV(3) Sept: 128.

Great Grey Shearwater *Procellaria cinerea* These large shearwaters were noticed as solitary individuals on only three

occasions in the general vicinity of Marion and Prince Edward Islands.

### great ice barrier

A particular **ice barrier**, now known as the Ross Ice Shelf.

**14 Feb 1874** [source: NOED] Campbell, G. (1876) *Let. in Log Letters from 'Challenger'* vol II: 99.

We had hoped to see the great ice barrier, that endless wall of ice two hundred feet in height which fringes the southern continent.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 261.

Scarcely any natural feature of the Antarctic world has at any time so stirred the imagination and so roused scientific interest as the discovery of this Great Ice Barrier. The most surprising characteristics of the Great Ice Barrier are its unbroken uniformity, its vast extent, and the entire absence of visible land from its edge.

**1939** Ellsworth, Lincoln in *National Geographic* LXXVI(1) Jul: 129.

Sixty-five days passed after we left Capetown before we sighted the great ice barrier of the Antarctic Continent.

**1950** (South Georgia) Saunders, Alfred *A camera in Antarctica* Winchester Publications, London: 152.

The great ice barriers surrounding the Antarctic continent were the birthplaces of the tabular icebergs which drifted backwards and forwards year in and year out.

**1982** Crawford, Allan *Tristan da Cunha and the Roaring Forties* Charles Skilton, Edinburgh: 169.

We .. eventually entered that marvel of Antarctica, the open shore-lead of water several miles wide which at that time of the year surrounds much of the continent. As we sailed south through this open stretch of sea, a vast cliff of ice came slowly into view. It was the great ice barrier, with its one- to two-hundred-foot vertical face glistening in the sun. It is these cliffs which gradually break off to form icebergs.

### great penguin

Either one of two species of penguin: in the earlier quotation, probably the **emperor penguin**, which has grey chicks and is the largest living penguin; in the second quotation, the **yellow-eyed penguin**, which has brown chicks.

**27 Jan 1842** (67°39'S, 155°59') McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 265.

Both the birds were secured, when they turned out to be the young of the great penguin, still in their grey, immature plumage, and as such a highly interesting addition to the ornithological collection.

**30 Mar 1904** (Auckland Islands) Wilson, Edward in Roberts, Brian, ed. (1967) *Edward Wilson's birds of the Antarctic* New Orchard Editions, Poole [Dorset]: 158.

Great Penguin, *Eudyptes antipodum* Three were caught by the *Terra Nova* men. I saw one which was in full moult. There is a rookery, probably of these, on Ewing Island.

### great shearwater *Also greater shearwater*

[Shearwater has been used for birds of the genus *Puffinus* since c1671.]

The seabird *Puffinus gravis* (fam. Procellariidae) of the Atlantic Ocean, a dark-brown and white bird which breeds on Inaccessible, Nightingale and Gough Islands

in the Tristan da Cunha region, and in small numbers on the Falkland Islands. In the southern winter, this bird migrates to the far northern Atlantic Ocean.

In the Tristan group, where it is simply known as a **petrel**, it has been used as a source of cooking fat and of eggs: see 1982 quotation and **fating trip**.

**1910** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* XXVII (CLXIV): 22.

Dr. P.L. Sclater exhibited an egg of the Great Shearwater (*Puffinus gravis*, O'Reilly) which had been presented to him by Mr. Péringuey, of Cape Town. It was one of the specimens obtained at Tristan d'Acunha by Mr. P.C. Keytel, during his recent visit to that group of islands ... The egg, which was of a uniform dirty white, slightly stained, and pyriform in shape, measured 3.3 inches by 1.9.

**1938** *National Geographic* LXXIV(2) Aug: 238.

The greater shearwater follows whales and porpoises for excreta or for scraps from their tables.

**1958** (Penguin Island, off Gough Island) Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 191.

The man-high tussock grass proved to be riddled with the nesting tunnels of the Greater Shearwater. This bird is one of the most interesting in the Southern Ocean, for Nightingale, Gough, and Inaccessible are its sole known breeding places in the world, yet it is so numerous that it is one of the commonest birds off the east coast of North America.

**1982** Crawford, Allan *Tristan da Cunha and the Roaring Forties* Charles Skilton, Edinburgh: 94.

Cooking fat was a rare commodity on Tristan and the fat of the greater shearwater (a species of petrel which bred in vast numbers on neighbouring islands) was greatly prized, though, to foreign palates, this tastes unpleasantly of fish-oil. Special expeditions .. went to Nightingale Island every summer to capture the young birds in their nesting holes. The fat was rendered down in boilers and stored in drums for use throughout the year.

**1990** Adams, Richard, ed. *Antarctica: voices from the silent continent* Montagne Jeunesse Co., UK: 12.

It is early December. Great shearwaters are around, completing their yearly ocean circuit. These are birds that have passed Britain, moved on through the North Atlantic, spent the late summer days skimming the Davis Strait. They will have seen the massive Greenland icebergs in Melville Bay and the pack off Baffin Island. They have sped like little shadows in and out of the fog veils over the Grand Banks, passed Hatteras into the Gulf Stream, and on southward. Now in the late Austral spring, they are on their way to Tristan da Cunha to breed and a few to the Falkland Islands.

**1994** Cooper, John and Ryan, Peter G. *Management plan for the Gough Island wildlife reserve* Government of Tristan da Cunha: 19.

Two species, the Atlantic Petrel *Pterodroma incerta* and Great Shearwater *Puffinus gravis*, are wholly or virtually restricted as breeding species to the Tristan-Gough group of islands. Virtually the entire population of Atlantic Petrels breeds at Gough Island, with only a few hundred pairs remaining at Tristan (where they have been greatly reduced by human consumption in the past).

### great skua

[See **skua**. Great skua is also used for a related northern hemisphere bird.]

The large, dark brown, predatory seabird *Catharacta skua* (fam. Laridae), in antarctic regions most often the

subspecies *Catharacta skua skua* and *Catharacta skua lomnbergi*. There is much confusion about both common and scientific names for southern skuas: see **antarctic skua**.

**17 Mar 1906** Lönnerberg, Einar in *Vetenskapsakademiens Handlingar* 40(5): 7.

Even if the pipit and the teal during the summer find food enough on land and in the fresh water, the winter forces them down to the shore ... Only one species of bird appears to be migratory and that is the rapacious and parasitic Great skua.

**1930** Kinnear in L.C. Bernacchi, co-ordinator *The polar book. Produced for the British Polar Exhibition 1930* E. Allom & Co Ltd, London: 69.

McCormick's Skua, the most southerly representative of the Great Skua, which breeds in the South Shetlands, is a free-booter of the worst order, taking a heavy toll of the eggs and young of the Adelie Penguin.

**1968** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* III(6) Nov-Dec: 249. Unusual bird records at Crozier were .. a great skua, *Catharacta skua lomnbergi*, noosed and banded on December 12.

**1982** Brown, C.R. and Oatley, T.B. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* 12: 45.

There have been .. name changes since publication of the last report. The great skua, *Stercorarius skua lomnbergi*, is now called the subantarctic skua, *Catharacta antarctica*.

**1994** (Campbell Island) Cunningham, Duncan M. and Moors, Philip J. in *The Emu* 94: 31.

The colony was among enormous boulders, so it is unlikely that all eggs could have been taken by predators such as Great Skuas *Catharacta skua*.

### great wandering albatross *Also great wanderer albatross*

The seabird *Diomedea exulans*: see **wandering albatross**.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 316.

The Great Wanderer Albatross (*Diomedea exulans*) are common in the Cape seas and even to the edge of the ice-pack, but they very rarely go beyond. One, however, was seen far south, near the ice-barrier, by the *Southern Cross* Expedition in February of 1900, when most of the pack-ice had already drifted north and had disappeared.

**1949** Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 50.

Perhaps hundreds of feet high in the black cliffs might be the homes of the great wandering albatrosses of the Southern Ocean?

**1962** Davis, J.K. *High latitude* Melbourne University Press, Parkville: 128.

Except for the great wandering albatross with his hard round eye, the little *Nimrod* had no observers.

**1989** Beazley, Mitchell, ed. *The world atlas of birds* Colour Library Books Ltd, Godalming, Surrey: 223.

Great Wandering Albatross. Largest of all the world's flying seabirds, the Great Wanderer measures up to ten feet from wing-tip to wing-tip and may weigh up to 24 lb. Breeding mainly on the flat-topped sub-Antarctic islands, the species ranges far and wide across the southern oceans avoiding only the pack-ice zone to the south ... Great Wanderers from Iles Kerguelen have been recovered off Western Australia and Cape Horn and there is growing evidence that both young

and mature birds have regular wintering areas far from their breeding localities.

### great whale

A larger whale.

**1909** (Jan 1908) Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907-1909* William Heinemann, London: 74.

All around us were numbers of great whales showing their dorsal fins as they occasionally sounded, and on the edge of the bay-ice half a dozen Emperor penguins stood lazily observing us. We named this place the Bay of Whales, for it was a veritable playground for these monsters.

**1930** Stead, David G. in *Australian Museum Magazine* 4: 124.

I .. merely stress the fact of the annual movements of these great whales.

**1987** David Lewis with Mimi Lewis *Icebound in Antarctica* Secker & Warburg, London: 181.

The sounds of killer whales and great whales were both recorded on our tape.

**1994** Australian Antarctic Division *Understanding the Antarctic: Amazing Antarctica* Apr: 5.

Over 1.3 million great whales (blue, humpback, fin, sperm) have been taken from Antarctic waters this century.

### great white albatross

The albatross *Diomedea exulans*: see **wandering albatross**.

**1879** Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 254.

The Great White Albatross (*Diomedea exulans*) accompanied the ship only about 500 miles south of Heard Island, stopping at more than 200 miles from the edge of the pack.

### great white continent

Continental Antarctica.

**1964** Nieman, W.A. in *Antarktische Bulletin* 2 (Mar): 3.

On 24th January [sc. 1964], half-an-hour after midnight the midnight sun — we were more than 6°W — touched the horizon and at 04.30 GMT we finally broke through the pack ice to get our first glimpse of the ice shelf of the Great White Continent

**1982** Sage, Bryan *Antarctic wildlife* Croom Helm, London: 25.

Landing on the ice he [sc. Borchgrevink] and his party managed to advance some 26 kilometres from its edge to the record latitude of 78°50'S, thus setting the stage for the penetration of the great white continent.

**1990** Naveen, Ron, Monteath, Colin, de Roy, Tui and Jones, Mark *Wild ice: Antarctic journeys* Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington: 150.

Humans in Antarctica can only ever be transient. Some may stay for a few hours, others for months or even years. There are tourists, scientists and politicians, mountaineers, explorers, and adventurers. Poets, writers and artists have visited the great white continent.

**1997** Diski, Jenny *Skating to Antarctica* Granta Books, London: 24.

It would certainly .. have moved the decision slightly in the direction of the shrinks had my desire to get to the great white continent come after the box containing my mother had been opened.

### great white hell *Also white hell*

The antarctic regions.

**1958** Barber, Noel *The white desert* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 9.

Alone and apart, defiant and inexorable, Antarctica beckons to the mystic. For the man who cannot dream, for the explorer with no soul, it is a white hell.

**1983** Malachowski, Stan in *Davis yearbook 1983 ANARE*, Davis: 73.

The best parts of the year at Davis have been the brief interludes when it was possible to leave the monotony of the station and venture out into the white hell for the frivolous reasons of Science.

**1994** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* 13(4) June: 14.

Alliance members have been charmed and captivated ('seduced' might be a better term) by the pristine beauty, majesty and power of the Land of the Great White Hell.

**1996** Daniels, Jim in *Wild [Melbourne]* 61 (winter): 58.

I was excited at the prospect of visiting the Antarctic and was eager to dispel some of the myth and hype surrounding 'The Great White Hell'.

## great white south

The antarctic regions. See also **white south**.

**13 Mar 1916** (Cape Evans) Joyce, Ernest E. Mills (1929) *The South Polar trail* Duckworth, London: 191.

Eventually we arrived at the Hut. Stevens, Gaze and Jack came out to find out what all the commotion was about. They saw us in the distance. On coming up the first words we said were, "Have Mack and Hayward turned up?" The answer was in the negative. "Once more the Great White South has taken its toll."

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* Duckworth, London: 29.

I went on deck, and saw a gleaming white, floating island near the horizon ... As I gazed at the wonderful and, to me, novel sight, I felt that we were at last really at the threshold of that Great White South.

**1948** (Dec 1914), Frank *Shackleton's argonauts: the epic tale of Shackleton's voyage to Antarctica in 1915* McGraw-Hill Book Co Pty Ltd: 10.

In the following pages there will be found much to interest those with an abiding curiosity about the vast unexplored spaces of the 'Great White South'.

**1958** Bursley, Jack *Antarctic night*. Longman, Green & Co., London: 51.

It was still a long way off, but there it was: Scott's Great White South — the only coast line of its kind in the world; the great Ross Ice Barrier I had dreamed about, the mother of all southern icebergs, sheers cliffs of ice, from sixty to two hundred feet high, extending as far as the eye could see and for hundreds of miles beyond.

**1970** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* June: 26.

Antarctica, until recently, was considered the last bastion of masculine exclusiveness. But alas! No longer is the Great White South restricted to Men Only.

**1995** *Sunday Herald Sun [Melbourne]* 8 Jan: 20.

We are still dismayed at the decision last year to withdraw huskies from the great white south where they gave life-saving support and service to Argentina, New Zealand, Britain and Australia.

## great-winged petrel

[Great-winged (a translation of the scientific name *macroptera*) from the long wings of the bird + **petrel**.]

The blackish-brown oceanic bird *Pterodroma macroptera macroptera* (fam. Procellariidae) of subantarctic islands

and southern Australia, which breeds on Tristan da Cunha, Gough, Prince Edward, Marion, Crozet and Kerguelen Islands, and islands off New Zealand and south-western Australia. It is also called the **(black) eaglelet** and **long-winged petrel**.

**[12 Oct 1772** Forster, Johann Reinhold in Hoare, Michael E., ed. (1982) *The Resolution journal of Johann Reinhold Forster 1772-1775* vol 1: 175.

We got a *Petrel* with a black bill & legs Size of a common Crow, all over a sooty black ... It is a new species (*Procellaria fuliginosa*.)

**1913** *The Emu* XII, suppl: 29.

*Oestrelata macroptera*, Smith .. Great-winged Petrel ... Range: Seas of New South Wales, Victoria, and South Australia (probably), W. Australia, Tasmania.

**1954** (Marion Island) Rand, R.W. in *The Ibis* 96(2): 193.

In some places (especially at the base of Junior Kop and near Kaalkop), Great-winged Petrels and Blue Petrels burrowed together in mixed groups, sometimes using the same entrances.

**1976** Ryssen, W.J. van *The birds of the Tristan da Cunha group and Gough Island* Board of Extra-mural Studies, University of Cape Town: 18.

Great-winged petrel *Pterodroma macroptera* Black eaglelet.

**1993** (Marion Island) Marx, W.E., compiler *Marine and Antarctic conservation in South Africa: challenges and achievements* Dept Foreign Affairs, Pretoria: 22.

Control measures were introduced in 1977 but, although cat numbers were reduced to about 600 by 1982, the numbers and breeding success of several other bird species had decreased sharply, particularly of greatwinged petrels and grey petrels.

## green antarctic cod Also green notothenia

[This modest fish has been given several English names: I have used the one I like best.]

The marine fish *Gobionotothen gibberifrons* (fam. Nototheniidae), from the waters around Heard Island, the northern Antarctic Peninsula, and the islands of South Shetlands, South Orkneys, South Sandwich and South Georgia. It grows to 55 cm (1 ft 10 in) long, and is of minor commercial importance. It has also been called **humped rockcod**.

**1985** Kock, Karl-Hermann in Bonner, W.N. and Walton, D.W.H., eds *Key environments: Antarctica* Pergamon Press, Oxford: 190.

Due to a relatively high age at first maturity and low growth rates at least of mature specimens, Antarctic fish are vulnerable to overfishing even at low levels of fishing activity. The green notothenia (*Notothenia gibberifrons*) off South Georgia, for example, is a typical by-catch species.

**1989** May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 83.

[caption] Green Antarctic Cod *Notothenia gibberifrons*.

## greenfly *Tristan da Cunha*

A large fly, presumably a blowfly (fam. Calliphoridae).

**18 Jun 1908** Barrow, K.M. (1910) *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 213.

Mr. Keytel hopes to start a good trade in dried fish. It will keep the women busy, for they will have to clean and salt them. One obstacle, however, is the green-fly, which answers to our blue-bottle, and which will have to be dealt with.

**1963** Mackay, Margaret *Angry island: the story of Tristan da Cunha (1506–1963)* Arthur Barker, London: 151.

Flies, too, were a dense plague in the summer, including a big bumbling kind similar to a bluebottle, which the Tristanians called a 'greenfly'.

### green ice

Ice nearshore, coloured green by dissolved organic matter.

**1930** (Bay of Whales) Byrd, Richard Evelyn *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 144.

The barrier is snow until it reaches the water, where it becomes green ice, which probably extends several hundred feet below the surface.

**1990** Naveen, Ron, Monteath, Colin, de Roy, Tui and Jones, Mark *Wild ice: Antarctic journeys* Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington: 81.

Ice comes in infinite shapes and varieties, from the smallest spicule to the largest glacier. Over seventy-eight types have been specifically named: from pancake ice to bullet ice, green ice to grease ice, ice dust to ice flowers, ice haycocks to ice saddles.

**1993** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XXVIII(5): 255.

Green ice apparently forms by the freezing of seawater to the base of the ice shelves. It differs from sea ice at the ocean surface, however, in that it contains almost no salt and no bubbles. The reason for the absence of salt and bubbles probably has to do with a difference in the mechanism of freezing at the base of an ice shelf vs. at the surface ... The ice is green because some of the dissolved organic matter in the seawater, which absorbs blue light, is incorporated into the ice as seawater freezes to the base of the ice shelf.

### green iceberg

An **iceberg** with a distinct greenish hue, which can be from pale to bottle-green — such icebergs are relatively rare. They are also called **jade bergs**.

**[1798]** Coleridge, Samuel Taylor 'The ancient mariner' part 1, verse 13, first publ. in *Lyrical ballads*.

Listen, Stranger! Mist and Snow

And it grew wond'rous cauld:

And Ice mast-high came floating by

As green as Emerald.]

**18 Feb 1931** (in Antarctic pack) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 381.

Fine examples green icebergs. One beauty turned over whilst watching.

**1976** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XI(2): 95.

The green iceberg, however, is an oddity not readily explained.

### Greenland dog *noun and attrib. Dog-sledging. Also Greenland husky, Greenland sledge dog*

A sledge dog from Greenland or having Greenland ancestry. See also **dog, Greenlander**.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 58.

On February 6th the ice opened a little, and we made good progress to the north and north-east ... It was here that we lost one of our best Greenland dogs, one reputed to have formerly belonged to Astrup, the Norwegian explorer, who accompanied Lieutenant Peary in his great "White March" to the north coast of Greenland.

**1915** (Shackleton Ice-Shelf) Wild, Frank in Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911–1914* William Heinemann, London, vol II: 50.

Of the twenty-eight Greenland dogs that had reached Antarctica in the *Aurora*, nineteen were landed in Adelie Land and nine with us.

**1925** Hurley, Captain Frank *Argonauts of the South* G.P. Putnam's Sons, NY: 17.

We took on board thirty-eight Greenland sledge dogs.

**1942** Mawson, Douglas *Geographical narrative and cartography. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911–14. Scientific reports series A vol 1* Government Printer, Sydney: 225.

The nine Greenland sledge dogs landed with the [sc. Western Base] party were in such poor condition from exposure on the long voyage that they were not employed in sledging operations until several months later.

**1961** *News from the South [NZARP, Wellington]* 2(3) June–July: 4. The new Greenland husky, Sapangark .. is running loose, dragging his chain.

**1984** Millar, David P. *From snowdrift to shellfire: Captain James Francis (Frank) Hurley 1885–1962* David Ell Press, Sydney: 23.

For nearly two months he [sc. Mawson] had lived on dog meat, being slowly poisoned, unwittingly, by hypervitaminosis A, of which the carrier was the Greenland dog liver they had had to eat.

### Greenlander *Dog-sledging*

#### A Greenland dog.

**1939** Rymill, John *Southern lights: the official account of the British Graham Land Expedition 1934–1937* Travel Book Club, London: 68.

The Labrador dogs are on the whole of a more long-legged rangy type and faster than the Greenlanders on good surfaces.

**1949** Wiggins, Arch R. *Knights of the blizzard* Salvationist Publishing and Supplies, London: 54.

The leaders were a pair of dare-devil Siberians, the remainder Greenlanders. They tore off at an alarming speed.

**1976** Moonie, Pat in *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Spring: 10.

Greenlander. Good dogs, rough and sober.

**1992** Lied, Commander Nils *Oscar: the true story of a husky* Kerr Publishing, Sydney: 21.

Our dogs were crossbreeds, with the best characteristics of both the Greenlander and the Labrador breeds. Thousands of years ago, there was a land bridge between Asia and Alaska across the Bering Strait. It is thought that the Siberians occasionally crossed the land bridge and brought their dogs, Samoyeds, with them. The samoyeds mated with the Arctic wolves, and the resulting crossbreed is what is now known as the Arctic Husky. There were two strains: a squat, deep-chested dog with short legs — the Greenlander; and a big, long-legged dog, more like a wolf — the Labrador.

### Greenland sledge *Dog-sledging*

A strong **sledge** built for dog-hauling, especially of heavy cargo.

**1955** (Marguerite Bay Base) Walton, E.W. Kevin *Two years in the Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 59.

We brought back two Greenland sledges from the rafters, and they became our heavy-duty sledges from that time on.

**9 Mar 1961** Paish, P. in Robinson, Shelagh (1995) *Huskies in harness: a love story in Antarctica* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 27.

For training [sc. the dogs], Ray mostly uses the Greenland work sledge which is only 2.1 m (7 ft) long and more heav-

ily built than the Norwegian 'Nansen' sledge. The Greenland sledge has stainless steel capped runners which Ray stood on to operate the brake.

### greenout *Aust.*

[Although the phenomenon has excited comment for many years (see 1917 and 1993 quotations), the word itself doesn't yet have much currency, despite its obvious usefulness and attractive lexical link to **white-out**.]

The overwhelming sensation induced by seeing and smelling trees and other plants after spending some time in antarctic regions.

**[9 Feb 1917]** Richards, R.W., quoted in *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* (1967) 4(9) Mar: 479.

It was indeed a red-letter day for us when we arrived off the South island of New Zealand and steamed along the coast on our way to Wellington. For the first time since 1914 we saw green trees and pasture, and savoured the wonderful scent of the eucalyptus — which was something I had deeply longed for at times in the 'Sterile South'.]

**[1993]** Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 139.

Scientists who have spent a couple of years working in Antarctica are amazed on their return home to see trees again. Even on South Georgia there are no woody plants at all, not even the tiniest shrub. Excluding the sub-Antarctic islands, the landscape is almost entirely white. Black rocks break through in a few places but green is the colour of dreams.]

**Jan 1996** Nicki Gemmill [Australian Broadcasting Corporation radio program transmission.]

Kermit the cook says many expeditioners have a greenout when they return, because it's been so long since they've seen trees.

### green spider *Falkland Islands*

The bright green to greenish-brown orb-weaver spider *Araneus cinnabarinus* (fam. Araneidae) of the Falkland Islands.

**1992** Strange, Ian J. *A field guide to the wildlife of the Falkland Islands and South Georgia* Harper Collins, London: 156.

Green Spider *Araneus cinnabarinus* One of the largest and best known spiders.

### green sponge *Aust.*

[From the perennially wet and green nature of the island.]

A nickname for Australia's subantarctic Macquarie Island.

**1983** (Macquarie Island) *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions newsletter* no 32 (Dec): 152.

We have now been on the great green sponge for just over a month.

**1995** *Station News [Australian Antarctic Division]* (Macquarie Island) Dec: 6.

It's certainly not all fun and games on the green sponge.

### grey-backed mollymawk

[Grey-backed from the grey neck and mantle of the adult bird.]

The albatross *Diomedea cauta salvini*: see **Salvin's albatross**.

**1909** Waite, Edgar R. in Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington, vol 2: 575.

*Diomedea salvini*, Rothschild. (Grey-backed mollymawk.) ... I saw what I presumed to be this bird in large numbers off the Bounty Islands in February, 1907, but as we did not land I had no opportunity of seeing it on its known breeding-grounds.

**1936** Guthrie-Smith, H. *Sorrows and joys of a New Zealand naturalist* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Dunedin: 240.

On the heights of the particular portion of the Bounty Group visited, vestiges were found of what earlier in the season had been a large rookery of the Grey-backed Mollymawk (*Thalassarche salvini*). On the abraded cones of their few remaining nests were to be seen huge fully fledged youngsters in grey and brown, white below bill, tip of beak dark horn, legs and web of feet bluish brown, eye black.

### grey-backed storm petrel

The small seabird *Garrodia* (also known as *Oceanites nereis* formerly *Thalassidroma nereis*; fam. Hydrobatidae or Oceanitidae), which has a blackish-grey head, grey back and tail with black bar on tail, and white underparts. It breeds on South Georgia, the Falkland Islands, New Zealand subantarctic islands, Gough Island, Crozet, Kerguelen and possibly other subantarctic islands. See also **storm petrel**.

**1848** Gould, John *The birds of Australia* The author, 20 Broad St, Golden Square, London, vol VII: pl. 64.

*Thalassidroma nereis*, Gould. Grey-backed Storm-Petrel. Head, neck and chest sooty grey.

**1930** *The Oologists' Record* X(4) Dec: 79.

Nesting of the Grey-Backed Storm Petrel (*Garrodia nereis chubbi*). I am sending you the enclosed photo of a nest of the above. I think it is the first photo secured, and that nothing has hitherto been recorded as to the nesting of this species. I have four eggs — all I have been able to find in 18 years! On land the bird is nocturnal in its habits, by day a tight sitter, burying itself deeply in the Tussock Grass, *Poa flabelata*, and it is only by cutting this grass that a nest can be discovered ... It is found on small oceanic islands in the Falklands and South Shetlands.

**1954** (Marion Island) Rand, R.W. in *The Ibis* 96(2): 204.

*Garrodia nereis* (Gould). Grey-backed Storm-petrel. No storm-petrels nest on the island and they are presumably pelagic visitors only. This species breeds on Kerguelen but has not been seen nesting on low-latitude islands in the South Atlantic.

**1982** Sage, Bryan and Hosking, Eric *Antarctic wildlife* Croom Helm, London: 109.

The Grey-backed Storm Petrel *Garrodia nereis*, which seems to be uncommon throughout its breeding range, reaches its southern limit at South Georgia.

**1999** Pizzey, Graham and Knight, Frank *Field guide to the birds of Australia* Angus & Robertson, Sydney: 92.

Grey-backed storm-petrel *Garrodia nereis* .. very small, greyish storm-petrel.

### grey duck

1. The mainly brownish-grey duck *Anas superciliosa superciliosa* (fam. Anatidae) of Macquarie Island and New Zealand including its subantarctic islands. The related subspecies in Australia is also brownish-grey, but is known as the 'black duck'.

**7–8 Mar 1840** (Auckland Islands) Wilkes, Charles in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 423.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

No geese were seen, and the only game observed were a few grey ducks, snipe, cormorants, and the common shag.

**30 Mar 1904** (Auckland Islands) Wilson, Edward in Roberts, Brian, ed. (1972) *Edward Wilson's birds of the Antarctic* New Orchard Editions, Poole [Dorset]: 158.

Grey Duck, *Anas superciliosa* Fairly common. We shot and ate a good many and made 2 skins.

**1942** (Macquarie Island, 1912) Mawson, Douglas *Geographical narrative and cartography. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911-14. Scientific reports series A vol 1* Government Printer, Sydney: 282.

Other members of the party visited Eagle Cave on the west coast and returned with three young ducklings of the Grey Duck. Attempts to rear these failed. These birds were to be seen on the Island at practically all times of the year and regularly nested there.

**1962** Bailey, Alfred M. and Sorensen, J.H. *Subantarctic Campbell Island* Proceedings no. 10, Denver Museum of Natural History: 246.

Although there are abundant freshwater streams on Campbell Island, and the Grey Duck [sc. *Anas superciliosa superciliosa*] use them to some extent, the species seems to frequent the waters of the two major harbours of Perseverance and Northeast (or Penguin) for feeding purposes ... The Grey Ducks are as wild and wary on Campbell Island as elsewhere in their range.

**1984** (Macquarie Island) Fletcher, Harold *Antarctic days with Mawson: a personal account of the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929-31* Angus and Robertson, London: 244.

During our three days on the island Falla recorded 28 species of birds including two non-marine forms — a grey duck and the common starling.

## 2. Falkland Islands

The duck *Lophonetta specularioides specularioides* (fam. Anatidae), a brownish bird with mottled brown underparts and an inconspicuous crest. It is found in the Falkland Islands and southern South America, and is also called the **crested duck**.

**1861** Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 160.

*Anas cristata* .. (Grey Duck.) This Duck is very common everywhere, and although sometimes seen in freshwater ponds, generally frequents the vicinity of salt water. The old birds are always found in pairs in the same spot; they live upon shell-fish, and have certain boundaries of water along the coast, upon which they will not allow others of their species to encroach. They breed inland among the grass, and on the edges of ponds, laying five eggs in a beautifully made nest covered with down. The time of laying is the beginning of October, and frequently a month later. The crest on the back of the head of the male is larger than that of the female, but their plumage is otherwise similar.

**1904** Vallentin, Rupert in *Memoirs and Proc of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no. 23: 36.

*Anas cristata*, "Grey Duck." I have never seen this species alive or even examined its nest, although numbers are brought into Stanley dead by the schooners trading round the islands. They are excellent eating. A single egg of this species is in my possession. It is oval in outline, smooth, and cream coloured. It measures 66 mm. in length, and 46 mm. in breadth.

**1913** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 22(4) 1 Apr: 61.

An Ordinance To amend the law with regard to the preservation of wild animals and birds ... Wigeon. Pintail Duck. Grey Duck [etc]. ... closed season 1 Oct-last Feb.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 143.

Crested Duck *Lophonetta specularioides* ... Local name: Grey Duck ... In flight appears uniform dark brown above and paler below.

## grey-faced petrel

[Grey-faced petrel is recorded in New Zealand from 1871 onwards.]

The blackish-brown oceanic bird *Pterodroma macroptera* (fam. Procellariidae), or its subspecies *P. m. gouldi* which has a grey face and breeds in New Zealand. The other subspecies of *P. macroptera* is the **great-winged petrel**.

**1967** Roberts, Brian, ed. in *Edward Wilson's birds of the Antarctic* New Orchard Editions, Poole [Dorset]: 106.

Grey-faced Petrel, *Pterodroma macroptera*.

**1974** Harper, Peter C. and Kinsky, F.C. in *Tuatara* 21(1,2): 32.

Grey-faced Petrel (*Pterodroma macroptera*) Two subspecies: Grey-faced Petrel (*P. macroptera gouldi*); Great-winged Petrel (*P. macroptera macroptera*).

## grey-headed albatross noun and attrib. Also greyhead or grey-headed mollymawk

The albatross *Diomedea chrysostoma* (fam. Diomedidae), which has a grey head and neck and a yellow stripe on the bill. The bird occurs in antarctic and subantarctic regions in summer, and breeds on subantarctic islands.

**4 Aug 1910** Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912: an account of Scott's last expedition* Blandford Press, London: 33.

Saw ... a Grey Head Mollymawk — probably Gough Island Albatross. Ed. footnote [p. 265] Probably *Diomedea chrysostoma*, but at that time there was much confusion about the field identification of albatrosses.

**1922** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* XLIII(CCLXXI): 3. Captain George H. Wilkins, Naturalist on the Shackleton-Rowett Expedition to the Antarctic, who was the Guest of the Club, gave a most interesting outline of the voyage of the 'Quest,' which has resulted in the collection of a number of specimens of interest to science and considerable geographical information ... South Georgia was the next place from which birds were collected. The distribution of birds on this island is peculiar; for, while a number of species are found together at the north end of the island, very few are found in the south ... The nesting-place of the Grey-headed Mollymawk was discovered, and a number of eggs and young were collected.

**1929** (South Georgia) *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 570.

[heading] *Thalassogeron culminatus*, Gould. Grey-Headed Albatross [end head] ... is known to the South Georgia whalers as the "Blue Mollyhawk".

**23 Apr 1945** Sorensen, J.H. *The work journal of J.H. Sorensen, coastwatcher in the "Cape expedition", Campbell Island, 1942-45* Diary in possession of NZ Dept of Conservation and Wildlife, Wellington: 338.

Saw a grey-headed mollymawk near Terror Shoal in the morning.

**1960** Westerskov, Kaj *Birds of Campbell Island* Wildlife Publication no 61, New Zealand Wildlife Division, Wellington: 49.

I had good opportunity to see the grey-headed mollymawks at their nests. They were very tame and let one watch them at close quarters. The pairs had an interesting greeting cer-



emony, rubbing their bills, first one side, then the other. Their calling varied — sometimes it sounded like the bleating of sheep. This albatross is one of the prettiest of the group, especially seen closely when its softly merging shades of grey come to their full right.

**1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 109.

Grey-headed albatrosses have a distinctive blue-grey head and back, and a dark grey-brown bill with bright yellow culminicorn or central plate and a narrow line of yellow on the mandibles.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 19.

Mollymawks are the most numerous and gregarious of the albatrosses. Because the period from mating to the fledging of their young is eight to nine months, the birds nest every year, with the exception of the grey-headed mollymawk which breeds every two years.

**1990** Thompson, Kate in *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation* 10 (Oct): 5.

Red squid ... forms at least 90% of the squid diet taken by the Grey-headed albatross population during the chick-rearing period.

**1996** (Macquarie Island) *Icy News* 1 Mar: [3].

Fi & Al hike up & down tussucks [sic] all day checking on the black-browed & grey-headed albatross chicks.

**grey notothen** *see* **grey rockcod**

### grey petrel

The seabird *Procellaria* (formerly *Adamastor*) *cinerea* (fam. Procellariidae), which is circumpolar in the subantarctic. It is a large grey petrel with white underparts, and it breeds on the Tristan da Cunha group, Gough, Marion and Prince Edward Islands, Crozet, Kerguelen, Antipodes and Campbell Islands. It is also called a **brown petrel**, **great grey shearwater** and **pedi-unker**.

**[23 Dec 1773** (67°S, nr 138°W) Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, In the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970): 258.

While we were taking up ice, we got two of the antarctic petrels so often mentioned ... at the same time, we got another new petrel, smaller than the former, and all of a dark grey plumage. We remarked that these birds were fuller of feathers than any we had hitherto seen; such care has nature taken to cloath them suitably to the climate in which they live.]

**1806** (Amsterdam Island) Barrow, John *A voyage to Cochinchina, in the years 1792 and 1793* Oxford University Press facs, Kuala Lumpur (1975): 147.

The number of birds was likewise astonishing, and the two causeways were strewn with their eggs. During our short stay on shore we obtained the following birds: .. *Procellaria Puffinus*, *Puffin*, *Procellaria Grisea*, *Grey Petrel* [etc.].

**8 Jan 1820** (49°24', 79°18'W) Bransfield, Edward in *The Literary Gazette and Journal of Belles Lettres [London]* vol 5, quoted in *Polar Record* (1945) 4(32) Jul: 386.

All this evening, and more particularly the next morning, great quantities of albatrosses and grey petrel [sic], or sperm birds, were around us ... On the moderation of the weather, the latter entirely left us. These are seldom seen in great numbers, except where the sperm whale are to be found; hence the derivation of their name.

**19 Jan 1840** (near 64°S) Dumont Durville, J.S.C. in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 441.

Our corvettes were surrounded by white and grey petrels, petrels tchetés (*damiers*), some penguins, a whale, and two or three seals. This was another indication of being near land.

**20 Feb 1898** Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 178.

There are about us great numbers of white and grey petrels seeming to urge us on.

**1943** Mawson, Douglas *Macquarie Island: its geography and geology. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911–14. Scientific reports series A vol V* Government Printer, Sydney: 35.

The Grey Petrel (*Procellaria cinerea*) nests at North Head and other localities. This and the Lesson Petrel were known to the sealers as the "larger night birds."

**1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 115.

Grey petrels have brown wings and tail, and a delicate blue-grey head and chest.

**1995** (Marion Island) *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 13(10) June: 420.

Populations of greatwinged and grey petrels were particularly affected [sc. by cats].

### grey rockcod *Also* **grey notothen**

The greyish-green marine fish *Notothenia squamifrons* (fam. Nototheniidae) occurring around subantarctic islands, a commercial species extensively fished in the 1970s.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome, vol. 2: 358.

*Notothenia* (*Lepidonotothen*) *squamifrons* Gunther, 1880 *Grey rockcod* ... Common and abundant species over the shelves of the sub-Antarctic islands of the Indian sector of the Southern Ocean ... During the seventies, 20 000 to 30 000 t were reported annually from the Fishing Area 58. Since 1980, less than 2 000 t are reported annually.

**1990** Gon, O. and Heemstra, P.C. *Fishes of the Southern Ocean* J.L.B. Smith Institute of Ichthyology, Grahamstown: 296.

Grey notothen ... Distribution: Sub-Antarctic islands and intervening seamounts of the Indian Ocean sector; South Georgia Island and Bouvet Island in the Atlantic Ocean sector.

**1991** *South African Shipping News & Fishing Industry Review* 46(6): 21.

Grey rockcod *Notothenia squamifrons* has been heavily exploited only around the Kerguelen Islands and on Ob and Lena Banks.

### grounded (ice)berg

[Grounded iceberg is in arctic use from at least 1778: Forster records this in passing in his Observations made during a voyage round the world.]

Lodged aground.

**4 Mar 1843** McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 346.

Beset with strong currents, pent up between a chain of grounded bergs and a most dangerous coast.

**14 Feb 1898** Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 158.

Selecting a position in the lee of these islands, and close to a large grounded iceberg, the bark was brought up to the wind.

**16 Jan 1915** Hurley, Frank (1948) *Shackleton's argonauts: the epic tale of Shackleton's voyage to Antarctica in 1915* McGraw-Hill Book Co Pty Ltd: 56.

We were held up by a blizzard, after this magnificent run, and took shelter in the lee of a grounded iceberg.

**14 Jan 1930** (66°S, 40°E) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 315.

At intervals lines of grounded bergs seen.

**1950** (South Georgia) Saunders, Alfred *A camera in Antarctica* Winchester Publications, London: 10.

The seas around South Georgia were often filled with icebergs, but when we arrived only a few grounded bergs were visible.

**1958** (McMurdo Sound area) Hillary, Edmund in Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund *The crossing of Antarctica: the Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955-58* Cassell & Co, London: 85.

The mist cleared and we raced on past grounded icebergs, frozen in the sea ice.

**1984** (Winterover Bay, Filla Island) *National Geographic* 166(5) Nov: 661.

It was the Weddell seals that delighted us most, however. The first pup of the year was born October 7, on the fast ice by a tide crack between two monstrous grounded bergs.

**1991** Bowden, Tim *Antarctica and back in sixty days* Australian Broadcasting Corporation, Sydney: 136.

The bergs, grounded bergs, are like a vast ruined city and in the winter twilight they glow an unearthly and beautiful blue colour.

## ground ice

[Ground-ice has been used generally for ice formed at the bottom of water since at least 1694, and has been in arctic use since at least 1856 (NOED).]

### Anchor ice.

**5 June 1912** (Commonwealth Bay) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 88.

Great branching brown weed rises many feet, partly covered with rounded masses of ice plates. Great lumps of this weed float away continuously ... I got a sample of ground ice.

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 382.

[glossary] Ground Ice or Anchor Ice. "Ice formed on the bed of a river, lake, or shallow sea, while the water as a whole remains unfrozen."

**1943** Hydrographic Office, US Navy Department *Sailing directions for Antarctica. H.O. no 138* Hydrographic Office, Washington: 23.

[glossary] Ground ice — ice formed on the bed of a river, lake or shallow sea where there is a strong current, while the water as a whole remains unfrozen. This is better termed Anchor ice.

**1995** Ives, Jack D. and Sugden, David, eds *Polar regions* Reader's Digest, Sydney: 75.

"Polar desert" describes the simplest polar communities: areas of thin, patchy vegetation to be found in the northernmost Arctic (for example, the archipelagos of Siberia and northern Canada) and on practically all of the ice-free areas of Antarctica. The plants are mostly threadbare mats of algae, fungi, lichens, and mosses; there is little moisture-retaining soil beneath them, and for water they rely almost entirely on seasonal snow-melt and melting ground ice above the permafrost table.

## growler

[Growler is used in both polar regions; the earliest example so far noted in arctic use is also 1912.]

A piece of iceberg or other ice, almost submerged beneath the sea's surface and hence dangerous to ships; occasionally (see 1953 quotation) one frozen into the sea ice surface. These pieces are almost always regarded as smaller than **bergy bits** (though see 1990 quotation), but the main distinction is their lack of prominence above the water.

**23 Nov 1912** Murphy, Robert Cushman (1948) *Logbook for Grace* Robert Hale Ltd, London: 136.

Doubled lookouts for bergs and growlers were stationed at the bow.

**23 Jan 1914** (nr Antarctic pack) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 238.

Growlers and streams of brash are avoided or banged through, the ship, rearing its head like some incensed animal, delivers blow after blow upon these white surging streams of ice fragments.

**1928** Wordie, J.M and Priestley, R. in Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 382.

Growlers. Similar pieces of ice to Bergy Bits (which see), but barely showing above water-level.

**1953** (French Antarctic Expedition, 66°49'S, 141°24'E) *Polar Record* 6(46) Jul: 761.

Although rocks could be seen fairly well, irregularities in the surface of the sea ice, and in particular embedded icebergs, growlers, and bergy bits, were absolutely invisible. On several occasions the weasel crashed head on, without any warning whatsoever, into icebergs as high as 15 m.

**1956** Armstrong, Terence and Roberts, Brian in *Polar Record* 8(52) Jan: 6.

[glossary] Growler: A piece of ice almost awash, smaller than a bergy bit.

**1979** Lewis, David *Voyage to the ice: the Antarctic expedition of Solo* Australian Broadcasting Commission, in assoc. with Wm Collins Sons & Co: 60.

Their [sc. icebergs] days are numbered. The last stage is usually a growler, a rounded lump of very dense ice from the core of the iceberg, that wallows awash with a hollow roaring sound. Growlers are difficult to spot and a great menace to shipping. It was Fritz out of all the crew who came to worry about them the most. His 'formula' was to become familiar when he called me to come on watch. 'It is pretty shitty outside and there are a lot of *growlers*.'

**1989** Gell, Rob *Antarctica: future of a frozen wilderness* Houghton Mifflin Australia, Melbourne: 40.

'Growlers', pieces [of iceberg] about the size of a grand piano that float just below the surface — they're called 'growlers' because that's the noise they make as they slide along a ship's hull.

**1990** Stonehouse, Bernard *North Pole, South Pole: a guide to the ecology and resources of the Arctic and Antarctic* Prion, London: 58.

There is no standard rating for bergs, although small ones (cottage-sized) are called 'growlers' and lesser fragments 'bergy bits'.

**1997** Diski, Jenny *Skating to Antarctica* Granta Books, London: 223.

Nine-tenths of each berg is indeed below the waterline, and melts faster than the bit you can see, so that eventually they become top-heavy and turn turtle into the sea. The smaller,

most rounded bergs are actually upside down, tip-turned and unstable. Growlers, they are called, and not loved by sailors; they are the ones that creep up and scuttle ships in the dark, being harder to see and often invisible to radar.

### guano trip *Tristan da Cunha*

[From the Spanish guano 'the natural manure abundant on sea coasts, the excrement of sea-fowl'. (recorded by NOED since 1604).]

A journey made from Tristan to Nightingale or one of the other outlying islands in the Tristan da Cunha group, to collect guano for use on the Potato Patches.

**1971** Munch, Peter *Crisis in Utopia: the ordeal of Tristan da Cunha* Thomas Y. Crowell, NY: 121.

It is inconceivable that anyone would ever return from a trip to Nightingale in the bird season, be it a "guano trip" or a "fattening trip", without bringing home a quantity of "buds," not only for himself and his family but also for parents and grandparents, sisters, brothers, and cousins, and soon the delicious aroma of bird meat fried in its own fat will rise from every house and envelope [sic] the whole village.

**1984** Richardson, M.E. in *Cormorant* 12(2): 188.

There were up to 11 'guano trips' per year to Nightingale, and since the 1950s it has decreased.

**1989** (1950s) Thompson, Pat Forsyth in *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 4 (Mar): 4.

We always took part in all the Island activities. The first in the year were the Guano trips. There were eight longboats and each family on the Island had a share in one. Beginning in January, as soon as the weather was favourable, trips would be made to Nightingale Island, about 25 miles south of Tristan, for Bird Guano. Nightingale was inhabited only by birds.

### gulch *Tristan da Cunha, Falkland Islands, South Georgia*

[The earliest recorded use in any English context is from *Tristan da Cunha*. The word is also used in US English.]

A gully formed by an ephemeral stream, and often dry.

**1 May 1824** (Tristan da Cunha) Earle, Augustus (1832) *A narrative of a nine months' residence in New Zealand, in 1827; together with a journal of a residence in Tristan d'Acunha, an island situated between South America and the Cape of Good Hope* Longman, Rees, Orme, Brown, Green, & Longman, London: 320.

From the Peak, in the centre of the island, to the sea shore, the earth is cut into gullies, apparently by torrents. Those in the plains are deep, and cut straight to the sea. Two of these gullies, which are near our settlement, are, I should imagine, fifty feet wide, and as many deep, filled with huge masses of black lava. All the rocks on the island are of the same dismal hue, which gives a most melancholy aspect to all its scenery. The settlers call these ravines gulches.

**1833** (Falkland Islands) Fanning, Edmund *Voyages round the world; with selected sketches of voyages to the South Seas ... between the years 1792 and 1832* Collins & Hannay, New York: 297.

In the mountainous land which surrounds this harbor, there are a number of gullies (called gulches by the seamen); it is by these the gusts of wind in the heavy gales come rushing one after the other.

**1856** Taylor, W.F. quoted in Brander, J. (1940) *Tristan da Cunha 1506-1902* Allen & Unwin, London: 173.

They tried to hasten home, but found that a deep gulch which ran down from the mountain to the sea, and must be crossed before they could reach home, was filled with water rushing down the mountain-side.

**1868** (Falkland Islands: New Island) Holmsted, Ernest in Trehearne, Mary (1978) *Falkland heritage: a record of pioneer settlement* Arthur H Stockwell, Ilfracombe: 48.

Went to a grotesque gulch and read prayers over.

**12 Mar 1907** Barrow, Graham in Barrow, K.M. (1910) *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 129.

We got on to a grassy slope, and from that descended into a gulch, up which we went for about a mile.

**9 Dec 1912** (South Georgia) Murphy, Robert Cushman (1948) *Logbook for Grace Robert Hale Ltd*, London: 162.

About half past nine o'clock, however, a soft mist began to roll up the rocks out of the gulches.

**1926** Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 53.

Over the gulch we had a fine sight of Inaccessible Island in the far distance. The whole of Tristan is everywhere intersected by these deep gulches running from all sides of the Central Peak like spokes in a huge wheel. They are made by water floods washing out the gravel and big stones, and are often many feet deep with dangerous precipitous sides. They go right down towards the sea and break off high above it very steeply.

**1958** Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 46.

Gulches, the drainage channels of Tristan, spread out from the Peak like the spokes of a wheel, eventually dropping over the edge of the Base in gorges and waterfalls. When full of water, they are impossible to cross.

**1993** Swales, Michael *Denstone Expedition to Tristan Island* Densonian [Uttoxeter] Supplement Autumn: 1.

We explored the coast and nearby gulches, as well as going inland up 700 m onto the Base (top of the cliffs).

### guttersnake *Tristan da Cunha*

[Perh. a variant of guttersnipe recorded in dialect English — but only in 1874 — for various waterbirds of the genus Gallinago.]

The migratory waterbird *Porphyryla martinica* (fam. Rallidae), a predom. greenish-brown bird which breeds in tropical and subtropical America and the southeastern US (where it is usually known as the 'purple gallinule'). It is fairly often recorded as a visitor to Tristan da Cunha and other islands in the South Atlantic, and very occasionally breeds on Tristan.

**22 May 1951** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* (1997) 21 (Sept): 5.

We now have two birds to keep by feeding on worms, the starchie who has been with us for 6 weeks now and the new guttersnake who has flown here from S. America and is so far surviving.

**1952** Hagen, Yngvar *Birds of Tristan da Cunha* Det Norske Videnskap Akademi i Oslo/Hos Jacob Dybwad, Oslo: 201.

The islanders have put their own local name to the bird as they call it [sic] "Gutter-Snake". When asked, they explain the name as deriving from the habitat where the species normally occurs, and from the swift and gliding movement of the bird through the grass.

**1976** Ryssen, W.J. van *The birds of the Tristan da Cunha group and Gough Island* Board of Extra-mural Studies, University of Cape Town: 29.

Purple gallinule *Porphyryla martinica* Guttersnake ... Usually a vagrant from South America but in 1974 a pair raised three young in captivity. These birds were seen frequently near the settlement until September 1975.

**1984** Richardson, M.E. in *Cormorant* 12(2): 181.

American Purple Gallinules known as "Gutter Snakes" by the islanders, are now common annual strays to the northerly islands.



**ha** See **haw**

**hagg** *Aust.*

A **hagglund**.

**1992** *45th ANARE Casey yearbook 1992 ANARE*, Casey: 121.  
Our method of transport will of course be over snow,  
Quad, skidoo, Hagg and all things which our diesos make go.

**hagglund** *noun and attrib. Sing. either hagglund or hagglunds*

[From the Swedish manufacturer of the vehicle, AB Hägglunds, established in Sweden in 1922 as Hägglund & Söner.]

A tracked all-terrain diesel-powered vehicle with an enclosed cabin or cabins, used on modern antarctic bases.

**1984** (Davis) *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions newsletter* no 38 (June): 72.

The Hagglund all-terrain vehicle was taken out on a field trip for the first time, as the sea ice is well and truly set now and about a metre thick.

**1987** Chester, Jonathan in *Australian Geographic* 5 (Jan): 83.

My ride out to Lanyon in an articulated Haggglunds gave me an introduction to the latest in snow transport technology. Like a giant Matchbox toy with twin cabs, automatic transmission and driving tracks front and rear, the \$170,000 vehicle is as easy to drive as an FJ Holden. Today Haggglunds are found at most continental stations and are used for everything from rubbish collection to fire-fighting.

**1994** *Antarctic Times: the official newsletter of Scott Base* 7 (3 Dec): 5.

The rear compartment of the Hagglund amused themselves with some (thankfully) rare games.

**1995** Crossley, Louise *Explore Antarctica* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 74.

For longer trips in harsher conditions, 'Häggglunds' vehicles are very versatile. These are specially built in Sweden for military patrol work in the Arctic. They have two fibreglass cabs linked together and run on rubber tracks. They can carry four or five people and all their equipment and supplies for a week or more. They have a top speed of about 50 km/h on smooth ice and snow, and have excellent traction in difficult conditions. They even float if they go through a crack on the sea ice! Their main limitation is fuel capacity for long journeys. Even when towing fuel sleds their maximum range is about 1000 km.

**hagglunds** *verb*

To travel by **hagglund**.

**1 Sept 1990 (1995)** (Mawson station) Greet, Pene and Price, Gina *Frost bytes* Doubleday, Sydney: 141.

On Thursday after dawn obs four of us Haggglunds to Auster rookery for the day.

**haglet** See **eaglet**

**hake** *Falkland Islands*

[Hake has been used for gadoid fish since before 1310 (NOED).]

The marine fish *Merluccius hobbsii*: see **Patagonian hake**.

**1985** Winchester, Simon *The sun never sets* Prentice Hall Press, NY: 261.

Beyond it there was the bulk of a vessel that, according to a passing policeman, was a Polish fish-factory ship. Polish and East German fishing vessels crawled all over Falkland waters, he said, "stealing our hake".

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 18.

Offshore waters, mainly to the east of the Falklands, have attracted foreign deep-water vessels during the past 25 years and are now being fished heavily, particularly for squid and for some fin fish such as Blue Whiting and Hake.

**1994** Falkland Islands Government Office *Falkland Islands Government Office* Falkland Islands Government Office, London: 6.

The main resources which occur in the [sc. Falklands] fishery are *Illex* squid, which are fished principally by specialised squid jigging vessels from the Far East; *Loligo* squid which are fished mainly by trawlers from a number of European countries. In addition to the two squid species, a number of finfish including Blue Whiting, Hake and Hoki are taken.

**hairy daisy** *Falkland Islands*

The plant *Erigeron incertus* (fam. Asteraceae or Compositae), a rare plant with hairy foliage, growing only in the Falkland Islands.

**2000** <http://www.falklands-nature.demon.co.uk/publications>, accessed 16 Mar.

The Hairy Daisy is most appropriately named! It is found on dry heathland slopes.

**hangcher** *Tristan da Cunha*

A handkerchief.

**1963** Mackay, Margaret *Angry island: the story of Tristan da Cunha (1506-1963)* Arthur Barker, London: 146.

Two young women shyly offered their coloured kerchiefs — 'hangchers'.

**1967** Pondus-Bøgerne, Lohse, transl fr Danish by Falk-Rønne, Arne *Back to Tristan* Allen & Unwin, London: 22.

They have, too, a collection of special words which a modern Englishman finds hard to understand. ... A handkerchief has become a "hangcher", penguin is "pennerwin" and learning "larning".

**hard camp** *Falkland Islands*

[Hard referring to the vegetation + camp. There is an interesting comparison with the South African hard veld countryside of hard, infertile soil.]

Vegetation in drier countryside, where **diddle-dee** is often a dominant plant. See also **dry camp**, **soft camp**.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 18.

On ridges or where the subsoil is better drained, a resinous dwarf shrub known as Diddle-dee *Empetrum rubrum*, ferns and white grass occur with other low shrubby plants, forming what is known as 'Hard camp'.

**1989** Davies, T.H. and McAdam, J.H. *Wild flowers of the Falkland Islands* Bluntisham Books, Huntingdon: 20.

One of the most common plants in the Islands, diddle-dee is often the dominant species on dry "hard camp". It is a small shrub with red berries. The berries are eaten in large quantities by birds and are locally made into jams, jellies and tarts. They are not sweet but have a distinctive flavour which produces an astringent effect on the mouth. The leaves and twigs are resinous and therefore burn readily, even when wet.

**1992** Strange, Ian J. *A field guide to the wildlife of the Falkland Islands and South Georgia* Harper Collins, London: 26.

In general the soils covering the main islands are rather cold and acidic, tending towards a very peaty nature and low fertility. These peat soils vary from shallow, rather hard, dry forms overlying quartzite ridges, to soft black humus-type peat in lower, damper regions. The two types are often referred to as hard and soft 'camp'.

## hardy *Tristan da Cunha*

An exposed rock near the seashore; a sea-stack.

**1910** Barrow, K.M. *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 280.

Some Tristan words .. Hardy, a high rock in the sea at a little distance from the shore [etc.].

**1926** Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 78.

This is a high red cliff just beyond Hottentot Point and near the first Hardies (Hardies is a Tristan word for the high rocks standing up perpendicular out of the sea).

**1958** Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 37.

Tristan dialect is a mixture savouring somewhat of the American South, and somewhat of the Scottish ... It has relatively few unique words. A 'hardy' is a sea-stack and a 'watron' a small stream.

**1990** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 6 (Mar): 7.

Next morning we sighted Gough Island and the surrounding Hardies. Hardies are great pinnacles of rock sticking out of the sea detached from the mainland.

## harem

[Harem has been used for the family units of various animals since at least 1784, and NOED records its use for fur seals in 1898. Early antarctic quotations (below) describe the phenomenon using other words, including seraglio.]

A gathering on land of female **elephant** or **fur seals** or **sea lions** associated with one dominant male, assembled on a beach during the breeding season.

[**1748** (Juan Fernandez) Walter, Richard *A voyage round the world, in the years MDCCXL, I, II, III, IV* by George Anson Esq; *Commander in Chief of a Squadron of His Majesty's Ships, sent upon an Expedition to the South-Seas. The Third Edition* John and Paul Knapton, London: 175.

The Bashaw [sc. "sea lion", i.e. sea elephant] before-mentioned .. generally lay surrounded with a seraglio of females, which no other male dared to approach.

**1-4 Jan 1775** (54°46'S, 64°7'W) Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, in the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970): 203.

As this was the time for engendering as well as bringing forth their young, we have seen a male with twenty or thirty females about him, and always very attentive to keep them all to himself, and beating off every other male who attempted to come into his flock.

**1827** (South Shetlands) Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822-24, 2nd edn* David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 138.

The males of the largest size [sc. of Phoca Falklandica, the Falkland Island seal of Weddell] go on shore about the middle of November, to wait the arrival of the females, which of necessity must soon follow, for the purpose of bringing forth their young. These, in the early part of December, begin to land; and they are no sooner out of the water than they are taken possession of by the males, who have many serious battles with each other, in procuring their respective seraglios.]

**20 Jan 1913** Murphy, Robert Cushman (1948) *Logbook for Grace* Robert Hale Ltd, London: 203.

At Beckman Fiord we found an unusually large bull sea elephant surrounded by a harem of twenty-five cows.

**1929** (South Georgia) *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 235.

Elephant seals are polygamous, each bull gathering a harem of cows, which he jealously guards from his rivals.

**1930** *The Illustrated London News* 25 Jan: 123.

[caption] An angry bull sea-elephant preparing to defend his harem .. against the intrusion of the photographer.

**23 Sept 1942** (Campbell Island) Sorensen, J.H. *The work journal of J.H. Sorensen, coastwatcher in the "Cape expedition", Campbell Island, 1942-45* Original in possession of NZ Dept Conservation and Wildlife, Wellington: 73.

The fur-seals are a little simpler, the male having no common name, so far as I am aware, but the female is known as a "clapmatch" or sometimes as a sea-bear. They [sic] young, however, are afflicted with three common names — pups, cubs and kittens. When it is also considered that, in all those three species [sc. sea-lions, elephants seals, fur-seals], the males form harems and that all live on "rookeries", it will be seen how confusing it all is.

**1949** (Heard Island) Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 164.

He was asked by Expedition Headquarters to complete a census of all visible seals by the beginning of October. The instructions caused some amusement, reading like the orders of a desert sheik: "Number in each harem? How many bachelors?"

**1978** (Marion and Prince Edward Islands) Condy, P.R. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* 8: 43.

During the breeding season (August to December) adult elephant seals congregated in harems on the beaches.

**1993** (Macquarie Island) *Geo [Aust]* 15(1) Feb-Apr: 50.

Skirting the elephant seal harems on the beach, my feet sank in the soft black sand.

**1997** Diski, Jenny *Skating to Antarctica* Granta Books, London: 150.

They [sc. the bull elephant seals] huffed and puffed with every motion, but they did get along in their fashion when they really needed to. They only need to when they want to get back into the sea, on top of a cow or to defend their harem against some other encroaching liaviathan.

**harpagifer** *noun* Also **harpagiferid**

[The name was first used for the family Harpagiferidae by ichthyologist T.N. Gill in 1862 (who called it Harpagiferoidae). It comes from the Greek ἀρνύων, a hook, from the hooked operculum of the fish.]

A small marine fish of the subantarctic and antarctic family Harpagiferidae, which has a single genus, *Harpagifer*. See also **plunderfish**.

**1988** Williams, Richard *Australian Natural History* 22(11) Summer: 519.

The harpagiferids or plunder fishes are most common in the sub-Antarctic regions. They are small, naked, spiny fishes that occupy the littoral and shallow shelf waters. The closely related artedidraconids, also called plunder fishes, are more characteristic of the colder Antarctic shelf waters, from the coast to the deepest parts of the shelf.

**1993** Miller, Richard Gordon *A history and atlas of the fishes of the Antarctic ocean* Foresta Institute for Ocean and Mountain Studies, Carson City, Nevada: 255.

Harpagifers are largely inshore fishes and typically occupy littoral habitats.

**haul out** *verb*. Also **haul up**

1. (Of a seal or, rarely, a penguin) To leave the sea and lie on land, land ice or sea ice.

**1860** Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* II(VIII) Oct: 336.

*Eudyptes papua* is the next Penguin that "hauls up" (to use a nautical term) at the Falklands to breed.

**1876** Kidder, J.H. *Contributions to the natural history of Kerguelen Island, made in connection with the United States Transit-of-Venus expedition, 1874-75*. II Government Printing Office, Washington: 39.

The elephants ... still "haul up" every spring (October and November) and breed in considerable numbers.

**1879** (Heard Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 228.

Their duty is constantly to drive the Elephants from this beach into the sea, which they do with whips made of the hide of the Elephants themselves. The beasts thus ousted swim off, and often "haul up," as the term is, upon the accessible beaches elsewhere.

**20 Jan 1913** Murphy, Robert Cushman (1948) *Logbook for Grace Robert Hale Ltd*, London: 203.

After a while a second bull [sc. sea elephant] came swimming alongshore and hauled out near by, but the aggressive and jealous beachmaster at once attacked and drove him off.

**1929** (South Georgia) *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 235.

Elephant seals are polygamous, each bull gathering a harem of cows, which he jealously guards from his rivals. After the breeding season is over they return to the sea for several weeks, and then haul out again and spend two months on the land whilst the hair is shed and a new coat is grown.

**1954** (Marion Island) Rand, R.W. in *The Ibis* 96(2): 179.

Large numbers of sea-elephants *Mirounga* frequent the island during the early summer ... In August they haul out at the water's edge in all coves and bays.

**1995** Czordas, S. in *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club Melbourne* 15(1) Sept: 8.

The leopard seals hauling-out on Macquarie Island forage in the pack-ice region to the south.

2. *Tristan da Cunha*

Of the wind) to swing round.

**1958** Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 94.

'I think it'll be forggy on the mount'n today,' an islander might say, 'but if the wind haul out to the west'ard it may come fine.'

**haul-out** *noun and attrib*. Also **hauling**

An area where non-breeding elephants seals and other seals **haul out** (sense 1).

**1922** (South Georgia) Murphy, Robert Cushman in *National Geographic* 41(4) Apr: 419.

A moraine beach between two of the glaciers is famous in the unwritten history of Connecticut sealers as a popular "hauling-up" place for sea-elephants.

**1958** Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 158.

Many of these beaches seemed to be 'hauling grounds' frequented by bachelors and unmated wigs rather than true breeding beaches.

**1987** Green, K. and Burton, H.R. in *Australian Wildlife Research* 14: 478.

Haul-out areas of leopard seals, *Hydrurga leptonyx*, were few in number and did not overlap with areas of ice used by Weddell seals.

**1992** 45th ANARE Casey yearbook 1992 ANARE, Casey: 156.

Julian and Sharon counted the numbers of elephant seals at all of the haul out sites on Peterson Island and Browning Peninsula during March.

**1996** Stevens, Jane E. in *International Wildlife* Jan/Feb: 15.

[caption] Crabeater seals rest on an icy haul-out.

**haw** *verb, dog-sledging*. Also **ha, haw-haw**

[Haw is a call used to direct a horse or team of animals to the left (NOED, 1843-): below, the command means 'to the right'. Northern Canadian English has hew or hu (recorded from 1896, DCanE), in the Antarctic sense of 'turn right'. In Alaskan and general North American use (DALaskE) the command means 'turn left'.]

A **sledge dog** command: 'turn right'. There is much confusion with dog commands, some of which mean the reverse (at least sometimes) of their northern hemisphere meaning.

**1930** (South Victoria Land) Byrd, Richard Evelyn *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 189.

The drivers used the Alaskan gang hitch — that is, the dogs were harnessed to each side of a long line attached to the sledge. One dog is attached to the end of the gang line as leader, and to him the drivers yell their commands of "Gee" or "Haw".

**1948** Hurley, Frank *Shackleton's argonauts: the epic tale of Shackleton's voyage to Antarctica in 1915* McGraw-Hill Book Co Pty Ltd: 74.

In turning the team, the order 'Ha!' swings them to the right.

**1955** (Heard Island) Dalziel, Ken *Penguin road* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 28.

As Leon was trying out a few new dogs in the team he taught them by shouting "Haw-Haw" for a right and "Gee-Over" for a left turn.

**1958** Burse, Jack *Antarctic night* Longman, Green & Co., London: 174.

"That lead dog of mine," he said, "will do just the opposite of what I tell him to do. When I say Haw, he goes Gee."

**Heard Island**

Heard Island (53°S, 73°20'E) is an uninhabited volcanic island of about 135 square miles covered with snow and ice in the southern Indian Ocean about

halfway between South Africa and Australia. Its first known sighting was in November 1833 by British sealer Peter Kemp on the *Magnet*, but it was named after Captain John *Heard*, who rediscovered it in 1853 (see 1853 quotation).

The island was formerly the site of sealing operations, and since 1947 has been sporadically occupied or visited by **ANARE** expeditions. It was transferred from British to Australian government in 1953; it is not permanently inhabited.

**25 Nov 1853** Heard, Captain John J. *Log book of the barque 'Oriental', Boston to Melbourne 1853*

At ten o'clock the Capt. was walking on deck, and saw what he supposed to be an immense Iceberg. He came and called me, told me to .. dress up warm and come on deck to see it. I hastened to do so, but the atmosphere was hazy & then a heavy snow squall came up which shut it entirely from our view. Not long after the sun shone out again, & I went up again & with the glass tried to get an outline of it to sketch its form, the sun seemed so dazzling on the water, & on the top of the apparent Icebergs covered with snow, that the outline was very indistinct. We were all the time nearing the object & on looking again the Capt. pronounced it to be land. The Island is not laid down on the Chart, neither is it in the Epitome, so we are perhaps the discoverers if so the Capt. will have the privilege of endowing it with a name. I think it must be twin to Desolation Island for it is certainly a Frigid looking place. I suppose it is 15 miles off, & the Capt. judged the height to be 5000 feet, the length 25 miles.

### Heardian *adjective*

From or belonging to Heard Island.

**1970** Kuschel, G. in Gressitt, J. Linsley, ed. *Subantarctic entomology, particularly of South Georgia and Heard Island* Pacific Insects monograph 23: 258.

The first Heardian specimens, 3 altogether, were obtained by the British, Australian, and New Zealand expedition to the Antarctic, 1929–1931.

### Heard Island cormorant *Also* **Heard Island shag**

The black and white cormorant or shag *Phalacrocorax nivalis* (fam. Phalacrocoracidae), which lives only on Heard Island, where it is the only shag. It is a **blue-eyed shag**.

**1937** Falla, R.A. *Birds. BANZARE reports series B, vol 2* Hassell Press, Adelaide: 226.

The Heard Island cormorant is much nearer to *P. atriceps*.

**1957** Law, Phillip and Béchervaise, John *ANARE: Australia's Antarctic outposts* Oxford University Press, Melbourne: 116.

The Heard Island cormorants (*Phalacrocorax atriceps nivalis* Falla) .. are a distinct subspecies not found elsewhere. However, their most unusual feature, a vivid ultramarine marking round the eyes, is shared by other sub-Antarctic cormorants.

**1959** (Heard Island) Downes, M.C., Ealey, E.H.M., Gwynn, A.M. and Young, P.S. *The birds of Heard Island. ANARE reports Series B vol 1 Zoology* Antarctic Division, Department of External Affairs, Melbourne: 13.

The Heard Island shags (*Phalacrocorax atriceps nivalis*) feed entirely on the coastal fishes.

**1986** (Heard Island) Smith, Jeremy *Specks in the Southern Ocean* Department of Geography and Planning, University of New England, Armidale: 55.

I had stopped to admire the magnificent view when a Heard Island Cormorant flew past, wheeled, and flew in to settle next to me.

**1991** *ANARE News* (Sept) 9.

The Heard Island Cormorant (*Phalacrocorax atriceps nivalis*) is now considered to be a distinct species, separate from the cormorant of Iles Kerguelen.

**1992** del Hoyo, Josep and others, eds *Handbook of the birds of the world vol 1: Ostrich to ducks* Lynx Edicions, Barcelona: 332.

Invertebrates, particularly polychaetes, and to a lesser extent gastropods and octopods, predominate over fish in the Heard Shag's diet.

### Heard Islander *Also* **Heardite**

A present or past inhabitant of Heard Island.

**1982** Ledingham, Rod *ANARE dog drivers manual* Antarctic Division, Department of Science and the Environment: 4.

The 23rd January 1950 saw H.M.A.S. Labuan (L.S.T. 3501) depart Melbourne for Heard Island with 12 huskies, which were a mixture of Greenland and Labrador types. For the nostalgic Heard Islanders their names were: Harbottle, Zoe, Thurber, Shiela [sic], Pat, Willi, Boopus, Martan, Trevor, Buster, Judy and Phil.

**1987** (1951) Lied, Nils in *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* 6(4) June: 9.

It was up to the Heardites to pull Jack through.

**1996** Downes, Max *Indexing sealer's logbooks from Heard Island* ANARE Research Notes no 97, Australian Antarctic Division, Kingston: 15.

"Shanties" ... typify a characteristic of the successful "Heard Islander" of last century — an ability to survive every-day life in a rugged climate with an absolute minimum of facilities.

### Heard Island sheathbill

The bird *Chionis minor nasicornis* (fam. Chionididae) which lives only on the Heard and McDonald Islands group. It has white plumage and a black bill and — like other **sheathbills** — looks somewhat like a pigeon.

**1937** Falla, R.A. *Birds. BANZARE reports series B, vol 2* Hassell Press, Adelaide: 267.

*Chionarchus nasicornis* Reichenow. Heard Island Sheathbill ... All the sheathbills collected at Heard Island in December, 1929, were lost during re-embarkation, the specimens, with some other birds, being dragged from a box by their fellows and torn to pieces.

**1991** *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions newsletter* Sept: 9.

Breeding populations of the Heard Island sheathbill (*Chionis minor nasicornis*), easy prey for cats and rats on other islands, remain unaffected on Heard Island and the McDonald Islands.

**1994** Australian Antarctic Division *Heard Island and McDonald Islands draft management plan* Australian Antarctic Division, Hobart: 40.

The Heard Island sheathbill is now considered to be a strongly defined subspecies found only within the [sc. Heard and McDonald Islands] Territory. Sheathbills are poor fliers and at the subantarctic breeding localities of other sheathbills the ground-dwelling birds have been easy prey for cats and rats. As a result sheathbill numbers at the other subantarctic island groups have been greatly reduced. The birds on Heard Island and the McDonald Islands remain the only breeding population unaffected by introduced predators.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

Estimates indicate that there are approximately 1000 Heard Island sheathbills in the Territory.

**Heardite** See **Heard Islander****heavy ice** Also **heavy pack (ice)**, **heavy ice-pack**

[Heavy pack is recorded in Arctic use in 1850 and 1896 (NOED: see 'pack'). The earliest antarctic quotation so far found predates this by about two decades.]

Ice which is difficult or impossible to navigate by ship, and dangerous.

**1827** (61° 30'S) Weddell, James A *voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24*, 2nd edn David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 119.

We soon, however, found ourselves impeded by heavy compact ice, and the wind freshened from N.W. to such a degree as to oblige us to take in the foretop-sail.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 51.

We were compelled to steer northwards to more open water, as it was dangerous to remain in the vicinity of such heavy ice.

**2-3 Jan 1911** (Cape Crozier) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912: an account of Scott's last expedition* Blandford Press, London: 91.

Altogether it was a very exciting row, for before we got on board again we had the pleasure of seeing the ship shoved in so close to these cliffs by a belt of heavy pack ice that to us it appeared a toss up whether she got out again or got forced in against the rocks.

**1916** Doorly, Captain Gerald S. *The voyages of the 'Morning'* Smith, Elder & Co., London: 85.

After several days of steaming and penetrating some heavy ice-pack, a new land, named King Edward VII Land, was discovered.

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* Duckworth, London: 36.

The ship was brought to a stop by heavy pack.

**1956** Stinear, B.H. *Preliminary report on operations from Mawson Base, Australian National Antarctic Research Expedition, 1954–55* BMR Record 1956/44: 3.

During February and March 1948, the "Wyatt Earp" cruised along the coast of King George V Land, but owing to heavy pack ice conditions it was found impossible to approach the coast, hence no landing could be made.

**1957** Anderson, W. Ellery *Expedition south* Evans Brothers, London: 41.

It is impossible to estimate distance travelled when treading a winding course through leads and round areas of heavy ice.

**1988** Butler, Rowan *Breaking the ice* Albatross Books, Sydney: 153.

She [sc. *Nella Dan*] occasionally had difficulties with the heavy ice conditions which prevail at such times and some people incorrectly thought her unsafe.

**1990** Marchant, S. and Higgins, P.J., co-ordinators *Handbook of Australian, New Zealand and Antarctic birds. Vol. 1A Ratites to Petrels* Oxford University Press, Melbourne: 137.

[sc. Emperor penguins] in Weddell Sea: mostly in medium pack-ice (40–60%), with ample open water for feeding; also in light (10–30%) and heavy (70–100%) pack-ice.

**Hector's beaked whale**

[Scientific and common names honour New Zealand zoologist James Hector (1834–1907), curator at the museum housing the type specimen.]

*The whale was named in 1871 by J.E. Grey of the British Museum's zoology department.]*

The whale *Mesoplodon hectori* (fam. Ziphiidae) which is found in waters of the Falkland Islands, South America, southern Africa, Australia and New Zealand. It grows to 4.4 m (14 ft 6 in) or perhaps more, and is dark grey above and paler grey beneath.

**1990** Martin, Anthony R. *Whales and dolphins* Bedford Editions, London: 109.

Two lower beaks of the squid *Octopoteuthis* and a fragment of an unidentified invertebrate were reported from the stomach of an adult Hector's beaked whale.

**Herbie** US

[Origin unknown, though herby is used in New Zealand to mean 'strong, powerful' (DNZE).]

**A blizzard.**

**6 Apr 1987** (Cape Evans) van Dorp, Cornelius in May, John (1989) *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica*, 2nd edn Child & Associates, Sydney: 164.

At the moment I'm lying on my bunk thanking my lucky stars, and our good leader (he prefers this title to "base leader") Kevin, that we're safely home in our little green box and not out in the blizzard. Because that's what it is out there — our first genuine "Herbie". The wind is howling from the south at up to 70 knots and for the first time large snow drifts are building up outside.

**1995** Dietrich, Bill in *The Seattle Times* 30 Jan: Discovery 1.

In the direction of the South Pole are Black and White Mountains, so named because of the amount of bare rock and snow showing on each. The slot between them is a funnel for the fierce polar storms called "Herbies" — the origin of the slang is unclear — which can catch the unwary miles from shelter.

**1998** *Aviation Week and Space Technology* 25 May: 74.

Fast moving Antarctic storms .. blow like a hurricane and create blizzard conditions. Old-timers call them Herbis.

**heroic era** Also **heroic age**

[Heroic age has also been used to refer to the period of Grecian history during which the ancient heroes existed (NOED).]

The period of antarctic history spanning the end of the nineteenth century and the early twentieth century, when antarctic explorations first included long journeys under conditions of extreme hardship. Such journeys are still undertaken in Antarctica, but these early journeys had the cachet of being the first, and are now sufficiently removed from us for our admiration to be often uncomplicated. See also **mechanical era**, **period of averted interest**.

**1957** Sullivan, Walter *Quest for a continent* Secker & Warburg, London: 75.

The *Aurora* sailed into McMurdo Sound on January 10, 1917, where the survivors of the depot-laying operations had been forced to spend another winter. Before embarking, they erected a cross in memory of their three lost comrades and penned an epitaph which they placed in a copper cartridge at the foot of the cross ... It seemed a fitting epitaph, as well, for the "Heroic Era" of Antarctic exploration which had drawn to an end. From now on modern techniques of communications and travel would not eliminate the dangers of penetrating the unknown, but never again would explorers



cast off all ties with the outside world when they ventured into the polar regions.

**7 June 1959** Béchervaise, John (1963) *Blizzard and fire: a year at Mawson, Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 79.

How much more probable the penguin tales sounded in the heroic age, when we could attribute some god-delegated intelligence and conscious purpose to the birds' ceremony and comprehensible behaviour!

**1965** Hedblom, Captain E.E. *Polar manual, 4th edn* US Navy, Bethesda, Maryland: 153.

During the "heroic" era of man-hauling and dog-sledging, from 1839 through 1917, disease claimed 4, starvation 9, drowning 4, and a ship accident, a suicide and a crevasse accident one each. Blizzards were directly involved in 8 of these 20 deaths.

**14 Jan 1966** Scott, Peter (1983) *Travel diaries of a naturalist: Australia, New Zealand, New Guinea, Africa, the Galapagos Islands, Antarctica and the Falkland Islands* Collins, London: 237.

Do you feel as if you were on the frontier? A part of the heroic age.

**1980** Neider, Charles *Beyond Cape Horn: travels in the Antarctic*. Sierra Club Books, San Francisco: 10.

It is debatable when the heroic era ended, whether it was with the death of Ernest Shackleton on South Georgia in 1921 [sic], or with the completion of one of Richard E. Byrd's expeditions. In 1957 came the age of science.

**1991** Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: xxiv.

The 'heroic era' of Antarctic exploration was initiated by Sir John Murray, a biologist who had been on the *Challenger* expedition. In 1893 Murray presented to the Royal Geographical Society a paper based on the reports of the expedition and entitled 'The Renewal of Antarctic Exploration'.

**1993** Fiennes, Ranulph *Mind over matter: the epic crossing of the Antarctic continent* Sinclair-Stevenson, London: 66.

Crevasse are today, just as in the time of Scott and Mawson, the chief threat to Antarctic travellers, and the danger has not lessened one iota over the intervening years. This does not stop ignorant media reporters (who have never travelled through crevasse fields), nor old buffs (who have, but regard their own heyday in the 1930s, 1940s or 1950s as being the end of the heroic era of no gadgetry), from denouncing polar travellers of today as cosseted joyriders.

**hinge** noun, usu. attrib., as **hinge zone**, ~**crack**, ~**line**, ~**area**

The (extensive) junction where **shelf ice** subject to the rise and fall of the tide meets an inland ice sheet, or (see 1943 quotation) a similar zone in disturbed **sea ice**.

**1943** Hydrographic Office, US Navy Department *Sailing directions for Antarctica*. H.O. no 138 Hydrographic Office, Washington: 23.

[glossary] Hinge crack — a longitudinal crack adjacent to a pressure ridge in sea-ice.

**1982** (Dronning Maud Land) Wolmarans, L.G. and Kent, L.E. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* Suppl 2: 9.

Southwards it [sc. the ice shelf] rises gradually in elevation and increases in thickness until, about 110 km from Sanae at the so-called "hinge area", where it ceases to float, it has a surface elevation of about 100 m and is some 600 m thick.

**1985** *BAS Club Newsletter* 17 (Spring): 14.

Visits were made ... from Halley to the ice front and hinge-zone of the Brunt Ice Shelf ... A Skidoo, left in a crevasse at the hinge-zone in December, was located and recovered in February in spite of bad weather.

**1989** *Antarctic Science* 1(1) Mar: 65.

Halley is located towards the seaward edge of the Brunt Ice Shelf ... Fifty km to the south-east, the shelf meets the land

at the so-called 'Hinge Line'. Beyond this, the land rises steeply to the Antarctic plateau.

### **hoki** *Falkland Islands*

[*New Zealand English records hoki from 1872 (DNZE) for the fish Macruronus novaezelandiae of New Zealand and southern Australian deep waters.*]

The Patagonian grenadier *Macruronus magellanicus* (fam. Merlucciidae) of southern South American waters. This fish grows to about 110 cm (3 ft 9 in) long and is commercially fished off southernmost South America.

**1990** Thompson, Kate in *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation* [London] 10 (Oct): 7.

Various fish, most notably Notototheniids (rock cod) and hoki (*Macruronus magellanicus*).

**1994** *Introduction to the Falkland Islands* Falkland Islands Government Office, London: 6.

In addition to the two squid species, a number of finfish including Blue Whiting, Hake and Hoki are taken.

### **homers** *Aust.*

Beer home-brewed at an Australian antarctic station.

**1970** Gosman, Ron, ed. *Homers' Odyssey: Macquarie Island magazine* ANARE, Macquarie Island: [23].

You can't get pissed on homers.

**1995** Maggs, Tom in Robinson, Shelagh, ed. *Huskies in harness: a love story in Antarctica* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 14.

All those nights in Balleny, amidst the hanging washing and the stacks of homers bottles.

### **Hooker's sea lion** Also **Hooker sea lion**

[*The scientific name and, much later, the common name for this animal were given in honour of the British botanist Joseph Dalton Hooker (1817–1911), who collected the first specimens. During the British Antarctic Expedition of 1839–43, he was assistant surgeon on Ross's Erebus. He later became director of Kew Gardens and president of the Royal Society.*]

The sea lion *Phocarctos hookeri* (fam. Otariidae) which lives on the Auckland Islands and other New Zealand subantarctic islands, and occasionally strays north to the New Zealand mainland and south to Macquarie Island. The mature males are large (to 400 kg or 880 lb) and dark brown, the females are pale fawn to golden and — as with other sea lions — far smaller (to 160 kg or 350 lb). It is also known as the **New Zealand sea lion**. See also **sea lion**.

**1940** Bertram, G.C.L. *The biology of the Weddell and crabeaters seals, with a study of the comparative behaviour of the Pinnipedia*. BGLE 1934–37 scientific reports British Museum (Natural History), London, vol 1 (no 1): opp. 134.

*Phocarctos hookeri* Hooker's sea lion. Auckland Islands and other islands of that region.

**1967** (Snares Islands) *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 4(10) Jun: 519.

Male Hooker's Sea-lions occurred with increasing frequency during the expedition's stay.

**1977** (Macquarie Island) *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] Jan: 38.

Hooker sea lions were frequent visitors, and one friendly character even allowed his chin to be scratched.

**1993** (Campbell Island) Moyes, John Layton *A lifetime adventure in thirty days* Butterfly Books, Springwood [NSW]: [53].

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

On a long walk of nearly 15 km the adventurous ones were frequently attacked by Hooker's sea lions.

**hoosh** *noun and attrib., mainly historical. Also hooch*  
[Origin unknown. Though NOED describes the word as slang, in fact the usage is not slang but standard in antarctic English, and Antarctica is the only place where the word has been recorded.]

A hot soupy stew eaten during sledging expeditions or field trips. It was usually made from **pemmican** or other meat — *in extremis*, horse or dog meat was used — thickener (biscuit or oatmeal) and water, sometimes with added flavourings such as curry or onion powder. Hoosh could also be a sweet dish. It was principally eaten by men, but also by horses and dogs.

**1905** [source: NOED] Scott, R.F. *Voy. 'Discovery'* I: 445.

The cook .. proceeded to prepare the ingredients of the hoosh, by which term the hot, thick soup that constituted the sledging meal was generally known.

**8 Nov 1908** (nr White Island) Shackleton, E.H. (1909) *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907–1909* William Heinemann, London: 274.

At lunch we had only a couple of biscuits and some chocolate, and used our oil to boil some Maugee ration for the horses, so that they had a hot hoosh ... We had a hot hoosh tonight, consisting of pemmican, with emergency ration and the cocoa. This warmed us up, for to lie from breakfast time at 6 A.M. for twelve or thirteen hours without hot food in this temperature is chilly work.

**25 Dec 1911** Bowers, Birdie in Seaver, George *'Birdie' Bowers of the Antarctic* John Murray, London: 245.

"We have had a great feed which I had kept hidden and out of the official weights since our departure from Winter Quarters. It consisted of a good fat hoosh with pony meat and ground biscuit. A chocolate hoosh made of water, cocoa, sugar, biscuit, raisins, and thickened with a spoonful of arrowroot."

**1914** (nr Cape Adare) Priestley, Raymond E. (1974 repr.) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* Melbourne University Press: 119.

On one or two occasions the cook has been so unfortunate as to drop the hoosh-pot and upset the pemmican when he was serving out, and this is a catastrophe which ranks in the minds of a sledging party with the fall of empires.

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* Duckworth, London: 176.

Pemmican is a preparation of the finest dried lean beef, ground to powder and mixed with 6 per cent of beef fat. It is the mainstay for the support of life in all Polar exploration. It is eaten as a thick soup, stiffened with biscuit and, whenever possible, with chopped seal meat. This is called "Hoosh".

**1929** Joyce, Ernest E Mills *The South Polar trail* Duckworth, London: 218.

Their [sc. the horses'] staple food was 1lbs. of Spratt's cod liver oil biscuits a per day; this ration, with a hot hoosh every three days, keeping them in splendid health.

**1938** Ommanney, F.D. *South latitude* Longman, Green & Co., London: 216.

We scrambled out again into the cold sunshine and made a perfectly disgusting hooch, which we boiled successfully over the "primus". The taste of it was indescribable, but it was hot and made a glow inside us.

**1958** Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund *The crossing of Antarctica: the Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955–58* Cassell & Co, London: 218.

Once every two weeks they mixed vitamin capsules in a hoosh of dog pemmican and took this outside to feed two spoonfuls to each husky.

**1966** (Heard Island) Temple, Philip *The sea and the snow* Cassell Australia, Melbourne: 102.

Though we had a delectable variety of sausage, beef mince and curried mince we usually threw them altogether in a hoosh since we could not tell the difference. The other ingredient of the hoosh was potato powder.

**1989** Crossley, Louise in *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions newsletter* 57 (Mar): 5.

In the restaurant nearby, visitors will be able to sample dishes such as Pemmican Hoosh, Omelette Mertz or Potage Antiscorbutique.

**1991** Hooper, Meredith *A for Antarctica: facts and stories from the frozen South* Pan Books, London: 68.

Different hooshes were made by adding new ingredients — like seal, horse, curry powder, sugar, oatmeal, or chocolate — to the mixture. ... Hoosh is the hot meal that used to be eaten on a sledging journey.

**1994** *Age* [Melbourne] 31 Mar, suppl.: 2.

A man would be out of his mind to eschew radio communications or go back to wearing tweed jackets and cooking up some hooch on a frightful little paraffin stove.

## hourglass dolphin

The small black-and-white dolphin *Lagenorhynchus cruciger* (fam. Delphinidae) of circumpolar antarctic and subantarctic waters. It has a roughly hourglass-shaped white pattern on its black sides, and a prominent dorsal fin, and grows to about 1.8 m (5 ft 11 in) long. It has also been called the **cruciger dolphin**.

**6 Dec 1910** Griffith Taylor, Thomas in Hanley, Wayne, ed. (1978) *The Griffith Taylor collection: diaries and letters of a geographer in Antarctica* Geography Department, University of New England, Armidale: 20.

Soon Debenham saw a .. giant whale, but this turned out to be an hourglass dolphin.

**1983** Scott, Peter *Travel diaries of a naturalist: Australia, New Zealand, New Guinea, Africa, the Galapagos islands, Antarctica and the Falkland Islands* Collins, London: 267.

[caption] Wilson's Hour-glass Dolphin, *Lagenorhynchus wilsoni*, was described by Dr Edward Wilson who saw them from the *Terra Nova* on my father's expedition to the Antarctic in 1910. It now seems probable that this is a synonym for the Hour-glass Dolphin, *L. cruciger*, which was described in 1824; the distribution of the black and white patterns on dolphins is subject to considerable individual variation.

**14 Jan 1988** Hall, Lincoln (1989) *The loneliest mountain: the dramatic story of the first expedition to climb Mt Minto, Antarctica* Simon and Schuster, Sydney: 21.

'Hourglass dolphins,' says Pete. 'My favourite kind.' The animals break the crest in unison and surf down the face of the wave towards us. I see how the white shape on their sides narrows in the middle to form the shape of an hourglass.

**1992** Priddle, Julian *Antarctic whales and seals* British Antarctic Survey, Cambridge: 1.

Eighteen species of cetaceans are found in the Southern Ocean. These range in size from the blue whale, at 30 m long and weighing 150 tonnes, the largest animal ever to live on earth, to the hourglass dolphin at 1.7 m long and weighing 70 kg.

## housemouse *noun and attrib.* US, NZ

Someone rostered on to domestic duties, esp. cleaning; a **slushy**.

**1958** (South Pole) Siple, Paul in *National Geographic* 113(4): 460.

In any case there were many communal chores that had to be shared ... keeping buildings and passages clean (or, as locally expressed, acting as "house mouse") [etc.].

**1960** (Scott Base) *News from the South* [NZARP, Wellington] 1 (9 May): 4.

Everybody except the cook takes his turn at night watches and as 'housemouse' — doing the domestic duties for the day.

**1979** Kilian, Crawford *Icequake* Futura Publications, London: 19.

Terry and Suzy Dolan were noisily preparing breakfast. Today's housemouse was Sean McNally, but he wasn't around. Probably he was down in the snow mine, feeding the melter.

**1998** United States Antarctic Program *Amundsen-Scott South Pole station guide* National Science Foundation, Arlington Virginia: [6].

The 'house mousing' duties primarily consist of cleaning the dishes and the dining room.

## howling fifties

The **furious fifties**.

**1962** Bailey, Alfred M. and Sorensen, J.H. *Subantarctic Campbell Island* Proceedings no. 10, Denver Museum of Natural History: 15.

The run through the Roaring Forties and into the Howling Fifties coincided with the finest stretch of weather Captain Boney had encountered in his many months of picket duty on the edge of the antarctic.

**1976** Hill, Len and Wood, Emma *Penguin millionaire: the story of Birdland* David and Charles, Newton Abbot, Devon: 76.

The Antarctic latitudes are known to sailors as the 'roaring forties, howling fifties and screaming sixties'.

## huddle

[Adapted from huddle, from the verb to gather, flock, or nestle closely (NOED: 1596-).]

A mass of penguins, usually of incubating adult male emperor penguins, tightly crowded for warmth in extreme cold. Sometimes (as in the 1971 quotation) this term is used for a group of penguin chicks more commonly called a **crèche**.

**1953** (Marguerite Bay, Graham Land) Stonehouse, Bernard *The emperor penguin Aptenodytes forsteri Gray. 1. Breeding behaviour and development*. Falkland Islands Dependencies Survey scientific report no. 6: 4.

A tendency towards group formation characteristic only of Emperor Penguins could clearly be distinguished from the outset. In the rookery the birds showed a marked preference for standing together in irregular lines or masses, so that on no occasion were birds found in more than about one third of the available space. The most highly developed manifestation of this tendency was seen in the "huddle," a formation which occurred only during the incubation period and depended for its existence on extreme lethargy in the birds themselves. Huddles tended to form overnight in particularly cold weather.

**1971** (Cape Bird) Young, Pamela *Penguin summer — or, a rare bird in Antarctica* A.H. & A.W. Reed, Wellington: 144.

During normal copulation the male treads the back of the female, but during the attentions of these gay lotharios the poor chicks were flattened to the guano-stained ground. Completely unguarded by the busy parents in most cases, they had no protection from this sort of thing. Slowly they formed themselves into huddles. On cold days or during dis-

turbances the huddles were large as the [adelie] chicks bunched tightly for warmth or protection.

**1990** Robertson, Graham in *Australian Geographic* 20 (Oct-Dec): 84.

Previous counts had been wildly inaccurate, such is the mind-numbing difficulty of counting birds in huddles at 30 below zero.

## huit verb, dog-sledging. Also veet, weet

[An Eskimo word, from the Labrador region.]

'Start' or 'pull', a sledge dog command.

**1943** Bingham, E.W. in *Polar Record* 4(25) Jan: 41.

Words of command. To start the team the words "all right" are recommended. I consider a single word better, but agree that "mush" is not incisive enough. In Labrador "Huit" is used.

**1953** Adie, Raymond J. in *Polar Record* 6(45) Jan: 641.

The words of command used by the Falkland Islands Dependencies Survey are corruptions from arctic terms. In order to standardize them the following terms were used at Stonington Island: To start 'UP DOGS— WEET'

**1954** Gjaever, John, transl. fr Norwegian by Huggard, E.M. *The white desert: the official account of the Norwegian-British-Swedish antarctic expedition* Chatto & Windus, London: 144.

The drivers shouted themselves hoarse in many languages — with Peter's Greenlandish 'Tamma, Kernek', Roer's Norwegian 'Marsj, Tony', Fred's Indian 'Moosh, Rachel' and Alan's Labrador 'Weet, King'.

**1955** (Marguerite Bay base) Walton, E.W. Kevin *Two years in the Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 45.

In general it was merely necessary to pull all the dogs back with the main trace a distance of a couple of feet, give the cautionary "Now, dogs," and at "huit", the dogs would leap forward as one and the whole load would be jerked on its way.

**1956** *Ross Sea Committee, Trans-Antarctic Expedition: newsletter* [Wellington] no 9 (Oct): 4.

There are four basic commands which are 'veet' meaning go or pull, 'yuk' for a right hand turn, and 'errrr' for a left hand turn, with 'ahhh' for stop. This latter command is usually accompanied by the application of the sledge brake.

**1962** (Scott Base) Hendersen, Jim *One foot at the Pole* Whitcombe & Tombs, Christchurch: 155.

'Do you sing out "Mush!" to get them going? I remember adventure books of the Frozen north ringing with "Mush! Mush!"'

'Ha ha! That's good! Nah! There just a "Now dogs", and the dogs come to the alert, to the ready, a beautiful sight like a keen squad all poised and eager to go, and then you say "Hweet!" And she's away, you're on the trail.'

**1969** (Scott Base) Billing, Graham *South. Man and nature in Antarctica: a New Zealand view, 2nd edn* A.H. & A.W. Reed, Wellington: 65.

They shout encouragement to the dogs ("Huit Apolotok! Huit Peabrain! Huit Suzie!").

**1993** *BAS Club Newsletter* no. 30 (summer): 21.

He offered me introductions as a draughtsman. I shuddered and said 'no', but little did I think that I would spend my remaining years saying 'Huit' to various IBM monsters.

## hummock

[Hummock, whose origin is 'nautical, source obscure' (NOED 1555-), was used in arctic regions to describe ice as early as 1818; the process of hummocking was also recorded earlier (1853) in the Arctic than Antarctic. Hummocked ice is recorded in Canadian English from 1850 on (DCanE).]

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

Used in various combinations to describe **sea ice** forced into rough mounds by pressure: **hummock** (or **hummocked**) **ice**, **hummocky floes** or **ice**, and the process by which this happens, **hummocking**.

**30 Apr 1898** Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 273.

The field, usually about two miles in diameter, was everywhere dotted by pyramidal and dome-shaped miniature mountains, which arose above the surface from two to twenty feet. These are technically called "hummocks."

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 334.

[glossary] Hummock.— A rough hillock of ice, whether formed by *séracs*, pressure ridges, or otherwise.

**20 Dec 1910** (68°41'S, 179°28'W) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912: an account of Scott's last expedition* Blandford Press, London: 82.

One of the Sea Leopards was in the water swimming about amongst the ice floes and constantly raising his head high out of the water to look over a floe and find his mate — who was fast asleep among some hummocky ice and took no notice of him at all.

**1916** Doorly, Captain Gerald S. *The voyages of the 'Morning'* Smith, Elder & Co., London: 66.

The heavy floes and hummocked blocks, so beautiful and peaceful-looking only a few days before, now assumed a totally different aspect. The sea was gradually rising, a swell perceptible, and the ship bumping with increasing thuds against these rolling spur-projecting dangers.

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 382.

[glossary] Hummock. An obsolete term. (See Pressure Ice.). Hummocking. "The result of pressure upon sea-ice."

**1948** (Weddell Sea) Hurley, Frank *Shackleton's argonauts: the epic tale of Shackleton's voyage to Antarctica in 1915* McGraw-Hill Book Co Pty Ltd: 53.

Sometimes the floes are too massive and all our battering is futile. Then the best that can be done is to make the ship fast to a hummock, and await the opening up of the floes under the influence of winds or tides.

**1956** (south of Grytviken) Fuchs, V.E. in *Polar Record* 8(54) Sept: 264.

Many of the older hummocked floes were as much as 15 or 20 ft. thick, including snow cover.

**1964** (57°48'S, 0°26'W) Nieman, W.A. in *Antarktische Bulletin* no. 2 (Mar): 3.

We entered a very thick patch of hummocked pack ice.

**1968** Herbert, Wally *A world of men: exploration in Antarctica* Eyre & Spottiswoode, London: 87.

As far as the eye could see the channel was choked with hummock ice and angular brash.

**1994** Kobak, Annette in *New York Times Book Review* 5 Jun: 47.

And that was without the crevasses, windstorms, hummocky floes, drag-anchor crud and bergy bits (the polar vocabulary is colorful, even if the land is not).

### **humpback whale** *noun and attrib. Also often simply humpback*

[The whale has a distinctive hump in front of its low dorsal fin, and it raises and bends its back when preparing to dive. Humpback whale is recorded earlier (from 1725) in arctic usage than antarctic; and from about the same time as the earliest quotation below, in *Canadian English* (DCanE: 1832).]

The dark grey to black **baleen whale** *Megaptera novaeangliae* (fam. Balaenopteridae), which grows to about 16 m (52 ft) and 25–30 t. The humpback was formerly hunted for its oil, and is now protected. Its populations around the globe seem fairly distinct from each other, but each migrates long distances during the year from tropical to polar waters to feed.

**4 Feb 1831** (nr 68°50'S) Weddell, James in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 316.

Passed either a large seal or an elephant, but it was too far off ... Many snow birds and brown eagles about us, with some fin and hump-backed whale ... The field-ice about one mile to the southward.

**1901** Lydekker, R. in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 207.

Mr Bull records numbers of rorquals from the Antarctic, but there is practically no definite information as to the species to which these belong ... Humpback whales (*Megaptera*) are known to range into the Antarctic .. How far south the humpback ranges is at present unknown.

**1906** (South Georgia) Lönnberg, Einar in *Vetenskapsakademiens Handlingar* 40(5): 33.

Humpbacks have been more often observed in southern waters and by the different antarctic expeditions than any other species of whalebone-whales.

**1929** *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 272.

At South Georgia it [sc. the Blue whale] was caught in comparatively small numbers from 1904, when the industry started there, until about 1913 when the Humpback fishery began to decline.

**1938** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 47(2) (1 Feb): 20.

In this Regulation — The expression "Humpback Whale" means any whale known by any of the names, bunch, humpback, humpback whale, humpbacked whale, hump whale or hunchbacked whale;

**1940** *Polar Record* (19) Jan: 282.

The Japanese expeditions hunted Humpbacks up to the beginning of February and caught altogether 860 animals. Only the Japanese operated without any restriction.

**1982** Tønnessen, J.N. and Johnsen, A.O. *The history of modern whaling* C. Hurst and Co, London/Australian National University Press, Canberra: 164.

Based on the quantities of predominant species, total Antarctic catching can be divided into the following five periods: the humpback period, from 1904 to c. 1912; the blue whale period, from c. 1913 to c. 1937; the sei whale period from c. 1937 to 1965; the sei whale period from c. 1965 to 1975; and the minke whale period up to the present.

**1990** Adams, Richard, ed. *Antarctica: voices from the silent continent* Montagne Jeunesse Co., UK: 47.

The humpback whale is so called because it arches its back before diving.

### **humped rockcod** *Also humphead notothen*

The marine fish *Gobionotothen gibberifrons*: see **green antarctic cod**.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 350.

*Notothenia* (*Gobionotothen*) *gibberifrons* Lönnberg 1905 .. Humped rockcod. Reported from shelves of all islands of the Scotia Arc: South Georgia, South Sandwich, South Orkney,

South Shetland Islands, and the northern part of the Antarctic Peninsula.

**1990** Gon, O. and Heemstra, P.C. *Fishes of the Southern Ocean* J.L.B. Smith Institute of Ichthyology, Grahamstown: 290.

Humphead notothen ... Yellowish, upper part of head and body with irregular dark spots and blotches.

**husky** Also *huskie, husky dog*

[The arctic word husky was supposed by NOED to be a 'corrupted contraction' of Eskimo, and is recorded since 1743 for Eskimo people, and from 1852 for the 'Eskimo dog'. It is recorded for the dog from 1900 in Alaskan English (DALaskE).]

In general, any **sledge dog** with a working role; more particularly — though this precision of meaning does not apply in antarctic usage — a particular breed of dog. See also (**eskimo**) **dog, malamute**.

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* Duckworth, London: 177.

The dogs were strange beasts. They harked back to a wild ancestry — wolves. Some of them even now were more like wolves than dogs; others seemed nearer akin to coyote — with their sharp snouts and foxy-looking eyes. Only in their massive forelegs did they resemble the heavier North American 'husky' ... The leader was instructed entirely by shouts, delivered in Russian — the only language the dogs understood.

**1931** O'Brien, John S. *By dog sled for Byrd: 1600 miles across Antarctic ice* Thomas S. Rockwell, Chicago: 19.

My own brown and white Labrador huskie, Pete, looks anxiously at me from his position at the head of the team.

**1946** *Polar Record* 4(32) Jul: 401.

Although the expedition will have the benefit of special equipment developed during the war, the primitive dog-drawn Eskimo sled and teams of husky dogs will be indispensable. Thus, the oldest and the newest forms of transportation and communications will be joined in accomplishing the expedition's objectives.

**1968** Herbert, Wally *A world of men: exploration in Antarctica* Eyre & Spottiswoode, London: 29.

He was six foot seven inches tall. He had bent a steel HALT sign in Port Stanley and could pick up a fully-grown husky dog under each arm.

**1994** Chester, Jonathan *Huskies: polar sledge dogs* Margaret Hamilton Books, Sydney: 10.

Although many different types of dogs are commonly called huskies, the best known official breeds are the Siberian Husky, the Alaskan Malamute, the Inuit or Eskimo dog and the Samoyed. The Siberian is the only breed that kennel club

people regard as being properly entitled to be called a 'husky'. The term husky, however, is popularly used to refer to all manner of snow dog, or northern breeds as they are also known.

**Hutton's albatross** Also *Hutton's sooty albatross*

[Both common and scientific names of the bird honour New Zealand ornithologist Frederick Wollaston Hutton (1836–1905), curator of Canterbury Museum, Christchurch. Ornithologist G.M. Mathews named the bird *Phoebetria palpebrata huttoni* (Birds of Aust. vol. 2: 297, 1912).]

A variety of the **sooty albatross**, no longer recognised as a distinct species or subspecies.

**1906** Rudmose Brown, R.N., Mossman, R.C. and Pirie, J.H. Harvey *The voyage of the "Scotia", being the record of a voyage of exploration in Antarctic Seas by Three of the Staff* William Blackwood and Sons, Edinburgh: 232.

When stopped for sounding, we obtained a specimen of Hutton's albatross (*Phoebetria cornicoides*). This species differs from the sooty albatross only slightly, in having the plumage of the black and breast greyer, and the stripe on the mandible is pale-blue, and not yellow as in the better known sooty albatross.

**1907** Clarke, William Eagle in *The Ibis* 1(II) Apr: 326.

During the run from the South Orkneys towards the Sandwich Islands the following birds were either obtained or came under notice:- Banks's Whale-Bird (*Prion banksi*), .. Hutton's Sooty Albatross (*Phoebetria cornicoides*) [etc.].

**1923** (Gough Island) Rudmose Brown, R.N. *A naturalist at the poles: the life, work & voyages of Dr. W.S. Bruce the polar explorer* Seeley, Service & Co, London: 198.

Most noticeable were the blue petrel .. and Hutton's sooty albatross.

**hypertat** *Esp. US*

An aluminium **jamesway** hut.

**1996** Antarctic Support Associates *Your stay at United States Antarctic Program stations* United States Antarctic Program: 20.

Housing facilities at South Pole Station are very limited but now include four state of the art 'Hypertats' in summer camp. Resembling Jamesways (canvas quonset huts) they are highly insulated modular buildings. Blue in color, these buildings are complete with windows in each room and central heating systems.

**1997** Roach, Mary in *Reader's Digest* Nov: 129.

I'm escorted to my quarters — a blue metal, Quonset-hut-type structure outside the dome, called a hypertat. A sign over my room reads "Shemp"... You need a sense of humor if you spend much time in a hypertat.

## Ice, the

[Most of the world's ice is in Antarctica. It is difficult to identify early uses of the ice as definitely referring to Antarctica rather than just to sea ice. The term 'the ice' is recorded in Canadian English from 1819 (DCanE), for the seal-hunting grounds on the North Atlantic icefields.]

A general and informal term for **Antarctica**, and her ice-bound regions.

**21 May 1834** Rea, Henry quoted in *Polar Record* (1946) 4(32) Jul: 394.

I have the honour to inform you of the arrival of this vessel in 73 days from the Falkland Islands having lost our tender among the Ice in Lat. 60°17' South, Long. 53°26'W. and found the field Ice so solid that a passage to the southward could not be found although every exertion was made.

**1840** *Sydney Herald* 12 Mar: 2.

The *Peacock*, (which ship arrived in our harbour on the 22nd ultimo, much disabled from her contact with the ice,) we learn, obtained soundings in a high southern latitude, and established beyond doubt the existence of land in that direction.

**1874** Thomson, Prof. C. Wyville in *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London* XXIII no. 156: 39.

It may be convenient to pass on to the stations 158, 159 and 160 .. on our return voyage from the ice.

**1908** Shackleton, E.H., ed. *Aurora Australis* British Antarctic Expedition: [110].

On the fifteenth day we sighted the ice;

So the "Koonya" cast us free.

**1912** *Mercury* [Hobart] 8 Mar: 5.

Captain Amundsen, while speaking in very high terms of the work carried out by Captain Neilsen and his companions at sea, gently, but firmly, resisted the most pertinacious efforts to turn the conversation to what he himself, and those with him, had been doing on land, or on the ice, while the vessel was away.

**1950** (South Georgia) Saunders, Alfred A *camera in Antarctica* Winchester Publications, London: 155.

I had no love for waltzing on a storm-lashed ocean ... It was the ice that called, and it was to the ice that I returned.

**1964** Nieman, W.A. *Antarktische Bulletin* 2 (Mar): 3.

When we entered the ice, no one, not even Johan Look .. could match Trevor's appetite for bread.

**1994** *Looking South* [Newsletter of the Australian Working Group on Antarctic Astronomy] no. 2 (Apr): 4.

Having been back from the Ice now for nearly two months, our expedition to the Pole went well for a first trip.

**1997** *Desert Sun* [Palm Springs] 10 May: B1.

The man whose height, tattoos and generosity made him a virtual legend among Ice regulars.

## ice anchor

[Ice-anchor is originally arctic (where it is recorded from 1774: NOED) in the sense of holding a ship. In the dog-sledging sense, the term is also recorded in Alaskan English in 1949 (DALaskE).]

A grapnel for holding a ship to an ice floe, or (see 1992) a post to hold a sledge dog team.

**23 Jan 1840** Wilkes, Charles in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 377.

All attempts to get the vessel on the other tack failed, in consequence of her being so closely encompassed, and it was therefore thought expedient to attempt to bring her head round, by hanging her to an iceberg by the ice-anchors.

**29 Dec 1908** (Antarctic Peninsula) Charcot, Jean Baptiste Auguste Etienne *The voyage of the 'Pourquoi-pas?', the journal of the second French South Polar Expedition, 1908-1910* Australian National University Press facs, Canberra (1978): 60.

We run out three ice-anchors to starboard astern, three to port astern, and six from the bows.

**1939** Rymill, John *Southern lights: the official account of the British Graham Land Expedition 1934-1937* Travel Book Club, London: 85.

The ice-anchors and various mooring-ropes were soon taken in, and the *Penola*, with the *Stella* acting as a tug, moved slowly out of the creek to the lagoon on the west side of Winter Island.

**1964** Jenkins, Geoffrey A *grue of ice* Fontana Books, London: 150.

*Aurora* was held against a small berg by a couple of ice-anchors.

**1992** (Antarctic Peninsula) Steger, Will and Bowermaster, Jon *Crossing Antarctica* Alfred A. Knopf, New York: 16.

Bob Beattie was going to make an on-camera farewell as Victor released the ice anchor that held my frantically tugging dogs, who were desperate to chase after Geoff's already bounding sled. The force of my dogs' exuberance bent the anchor at a ninety-degree angle and pulled it out of the ice, launching the steel projectile at an unsuspecting Beattie's head. Fortunately it missed, but just by inches; if it had struck him, it would have killed him.

## ice anchored adjective

Fixed with an **ice anchor**.

**1922** (Jan 1911) Priestley, Raymond, quoted in Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Picador, London: 101.

His ship proved to be the *Terra Nova* ice-anchored off the Skuary.

## ice apron

[Ice-apron is recorded in English for a structure protecting a bridge pier from stream-carried ice, a meaning quite distinct from the one here.

It is used in the following sense generally in glaciology, and is not restricted to antarctic regions.]

A fan-shaped accumulation of ice in front of a glacier or on a mountain.

**1911** Hobbs, William Herbert *Characteristics of existing glaciers* The Macmillan Company, NY: 257.

At the foot of each active outlet, the ice is discharged upon the shelf-ice in an *ice-apron* which spreads out laterally as well as in front ... In front of the Beardmore outlet this apron rises to a height near its medial line of between 400 and 500 feet above the general level of the barrier surface.

**1958** Armstrong, Terence and Roberts, Brian in *Polar Record* 9(59) May: 93.

[glossary] A thin mass of snow and ice adhering to a mountain side.

## ice barrier

Ice obstructing the passage of a ship, either a glacier extending to sea, or the cliffed, seaward edge of an **ice shelf**. The first known ice barrier was the Ross Ice Shelf (see **Great Ice Barrier**).

**16 Dec 1820** (nr 65°51'S, 165°41'W) Bellingshausen, Thaddeus in Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. (1945) *The voyage of Captain Bellingshausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819–1821* Hakluyt Society, London: 390.

The fog was so dense that we had to keep a most careful watch in order not to run into the ice. Under these conditions we proceeded among small icebergs and large stretches of ice in a thick fog ... Soon afterwards we suddenly saw a whiteness on the horizon through the fog and then an ice barrier appeared, so near that we had to turn without setting the foresail. Our ship turned very well on the very edge of an immense solid icefield.

**1827** Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24*, 2nd edn David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 291.

The ice-islands seen in the latitude of 74° were much less than others we know to have been formed in the latitude of from 60 to 65 degrees. If we may draw an analogy for the south from the observations made by Captain Phipps on the northern glacier or ice barrier (the southern not having been seen by me), it appears evident, that there is no coincidence between the northern glacier, which Captain Phipps (see his voyage, p. 60) found to be twenty-three feet deep, and those fragments mentioned by St. Pierre, of 1500 and 1800 feet high.

**9 Feb 1840** Wilkes, Charles in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 397.

Our longitude was 125°19'E., latitude 65°08'S. .. I never saw a clearer horizon, or one better defined than we had to the northward. The ice barrier was really beautiful. At midnight we had a splendid display of the Aurora Australis.

**1901** (Cape Adare) Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 221.

The ice and snow which form on the slopes of the mountain ranges, facing the interior of Victoria Land, descend to the lower reaches, where they accumulate in vast undulating fields and plains, hundreds of feet in thickness, and ultimately this great glacier, or ice-cap, is pushed out over all the low-lands into the ocean, forming there the true ice-barrier, a solid perpendicular wall of ice, probably from 1,200 to 1,500 feet in thickness, rising from 150 to 200 feet above, and sinking 1,100 to 1,400 feet below, the level of the sea.

**1913** *Mercury* [Hobart] 10 Jan: 5.

Lieutenant Filchner, who led the German expedition to the Antarctic, and has returned to Buenos Ayres, where he reported having discovered a new land which he christened Prince Luitpold Land, and a new ice barrier which he has called Wilhelm II.

**9 Jun 1926** Christensen, Lars in Jayne, E.M.G., transl. (1935) *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 27.

The idea under contemplation is to catch whales outside and along the ice barrier stretching from the entrance to the Ross Sea and to the point where the South Shetland district begins.

**1965** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 4(1) Mar: 29.

The ice barrier on to which supplies for Molodezhnaya were unloaded last year has crumbled away and the expedition is now looking for a suitable place to land supplies.

**1991** Venables, Stephen *Island at the edge of the world: a South Georgia odyssey* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 14

As the massive ice barriers around the continent melt they cool the surrounding ocean.

## iceberg

[Icebergs and penguins are the two greatest symbols of Antarctica. Icebergs are also found in high northern latitudes, but the earliest use I have found of the word is in an antarctic context (see 1738 quotation below).]

1. A very large piece of glacier of shelf ice (usu. more than 5 m or 16 ft above sea level), usually floating in the sea but sometimes **grounded** and occasionally frozen into **pack ice** — essentially, a piece of **land ice** which is now at sea.

Although the Arctic has icebergs, antarctic icebergs are generally larger. Arctic icebergs mostly come from glaciers, and indeed *glacier* is an early sense of the word *iceberg* (see below). In both the Arctic and Antarctica, immense flat **ice shelves** can **calve** huge areas of ice in one berg. Antarctica has far larger ice shelves than the Arctic, and flat-topped, massive **tabular bergs** are characteristic of Antarctica but rare in the Arctic. See also **ice island**.

**1738** Behrens, Carl Friedrich quoted in Balch, Edwin Swift (1902) *Antarctica* Allen, Lane & Scott, Philadelphia: 61.

These icebergs, which one sees here at the height of Cape Horn or in more southern latitudes, show that the southern lands extend towards the Pole, as do the lands towards the North Pole; for one can easily see, that the icebergs cannot grow in the sea, nor would such monsters increase from any greater distance than ice could freeze.

**25 Jan 1820** ("New Shetland") *The Literary Gazette and Journal of Belles Lettres* [London], quoted in *Polar Record* (1946) 4(32) Jul: 389.

On the night of the 25th there was a heavy fall of snow and a swell from the eastward, and an immense iceberg was drifted nearly upon the vessel.

**11 Apr 1842** Davis, J.E. quoted in *Polar Record* (1961) 10(69) Sept: 588.

I think the first sight of a large iceberg is one of the most magnificent and stupendous in nature, but the novelty soon wears off.

**1901** (nr Cape Adare) Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 157.

That night, as there was every prospect of a gale reaching us in a few hours, we made everything snug; tightened up the tent, attended to the dogs and sledges, and then had supper, smoked, and speculated upon the commercial value of the iceberg in a warm climate such as Australia, where ice sells for sixpence a pound.

**1911** Hobbs, William Herbert *Characteristics of existing glaciers* The Macmillan Company, NY: 235.

The normal iceberg of Antarctic seas is as different as possible from the Arctic type, and for reasons which are now sufficiently obvious. In Greenland, true glacier ice descends to the fjord heads, and there gives birth to bergs of blue ice which are limited in size both by the size of the fjord and by the crevasses upon the ice. In the Antarctic, so far as yet known, glacier ice descends directly to the open sea at few points only, but in its place appears the shelf-ice, and tabular bergs separate along broad sea fronts which are meas-

ured sometimes in the hundreds of miles. The size of Antarctic bergs is in consequence many times greater, and their form is tabular like the ice-shelf from which they have been born.

**1958** Burse, Jack *Antarctic night* Longman, Green & Co., London: 111.

I counted five whales and 170 icebergs as we sailed through the Devil's Graveyard on January 2, 1940. Some of the bergs were tabular in shape and others looked like old forts or big castles.

**1984** Lye, Keith *Let's go to Antarctica* Franklin Watts, Sydney: 7. Many icebergs from Antarctica have flat tops and steep-sided cliffs. The world's biggest known iceberg came from Antarctica. It covered an area larger than Belgium.

**1991** Venables, Stephen *Island at the edge of the world: a South Georgia odyssey* Hodder and Staughton, London: 103.

The first course was our now well-rehearsed formula of stuffed eggs with caviar, Parma ham, artichoke hearts and olives, washed down with a couple of bottles of Champagne chilled on fragments of iceberg.

**1995** *The Advertiser [Adelaide]* 25 Mar: 7.

The giant iceberg, which measures 78 km by 37 km by 200 m thick, calved from the Larsen Ice Shelf — the same area where the cracks have been found by an Argentinian research team.

## 2. Historical

### A glacier.

**1827** (South Shetlands) Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24, 2nd edn* David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 133.

The appearance which these islands would assume, were they divested of ice, would be very different from what they at present exhibit. In Smith's Island, an ice-berg runs through from north to south; indeed, almost all of them are so interspersed and intersected with ice-bergs, that the earthy, or rather rocky, parts of the country are much smaller in bulk than would be supposed from a distant view.

**1879** (Heard Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 227.

On the more exposed side of the island there is an extensive beach, called Long Beach. This is covered over with thousands of sea-Elephants in the breeding season, but it is only accessible by land, and then only by crossing two glaciers or "ice-bergs" as the sealers call them.

### icebergology *Humorous*

Glaciology.

**1986** Hamley, T. in *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* 5(3) Mar: 19.

[heading] Icebergology.

### iceberg tongue *Apparently recorded only in technical literature*

An accumulation of icebergs projecting from the coast: see 1961 quotation.

**1961** *Polar Record* 10(67) Jan: 409.

P.G. Law .. proposed the new term "iceberg tongue". After consultations, this term has now been adopted for official use. The agreed definition is as follows: "ICEBERG TONGUE A major accumulation of icebergs projecting from the coast, held in place by grounding, joined together by fast ice, and extending at least 10 miles (16 km.) seawards".

**1987** Bates, Robert L. and Jackson, Julia A. eds *Glossary of geology, 3rd edn* American Geological Institute, Alexandria: 324.

Iceberg tongue: A major accumulation of icebergs projecting from the coast, held in place by grounding, and joined together by fast ice.

### ice bird

A prion.

**1871** Smiles, Samuel, ed. *Round the world; including a residence in Victoria [etc.]*, by a boy Harper and Bros, New York: 57.

An ice-bird was caught, and a very pretty bird it is, almost pure white, with delicate blue feet and beak.

**1909** Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907–1909* William Heinemann, London: 61.

The Cape pigeon and Wilson's petrel were occasionally to be seen, also a small grey-coloured bird, which is generally found near the pack, the name of which I do not know. We called them "ice-birds". Another sign of the nearness of the ice was that the temperature of the air and water had dropped to 32° Fahr.

**1943** Hydrographic Office, US Navy Department *Sailing directions for Antarctica. H.O. no 138* Hydrographic Office, Washington: 60.

Antarctic Whale-bird (*Pachyptila desolata*). Sometimes called Ice-bird or Dove Prion. Breeding range confined to Antarctic zone.

**1979** Lewis, David *Voyage to the ice: the Antarctic expedition of Solo* Australian Broadcasting Commission/Wm Collins Sons & Co: 43.

Saw hundreds of prions (ice birds) today and I am sure they are feeding above acres of fish.

**1988** Porter, Eliot *Antarctica, 2nd edn* Arch Cape Press, NY: 39.

Below the roaring forties of the far South Pacific, as we approached Cape Horn, flocks of whalebirds, known also to mariners as icebirds, would circle the *Hero* for minutes on end.

### ice blink

[The 1774 quotation suggests that the term was unknown at the time of Cook's writing. Ice blink in the same sense is recorded in Canadian English from 1850, a few years after the first quotation below using the term.]

A bright white to yellowish glare or light in the sky above the horizon, reflected upwards from extensive areas of ice beyond the viewer's sight, and therefore indicating its presence. Also simply **blink**. Cf. **water sky**.

**[30 Jan 1774** (nr 69°38'S, 108°12'W) Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, In the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970), vol I: 267.

On the 30th, at four o'clock in the morning, we perceived the clouds, over the horizon to the South, to be of an unusual snow-white brightness, which we knew announced our approach to field-ice.]

**1821** Bellingshausen, Thaddeus in Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. (1945) *The voyage of Captain Bellingshausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819–1821* Hakluyt Society, London, vol II: 419.

At 8 o'clock we saw the ice blink from solid icefields to the south-east. Toward noon the weather cleared and we fixed our position as Lat. 69°09'42"S., Long. 77°43'21"W.; there was 1° of frost. At 2.0 p.m. from the look-out we saw continuous ice, in the middle of which several large icebergs were wedged.

**26 Feb 1842** McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 272.



An "ice-blink" all along the horizon to leeward, indicating the situation of the pack.

**28 Feb 1898** Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 195.

On the southern sky there is a bright pearly zone. This is an ice-blink, a reflection of the ice beyond our horizon upon the particles of watery vapour suspended in the air.

**9 Dec 1910** (65°8'S, 177°40'W) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912* Blandford Press, London: 73.

We also saw the enormous blow of a great many huge Blue Whales (*Balaenoptera sibbaldi*) and their great grey backs occasionally appeared with the little fin well aft; the blows were very high and looked almost like factory chimney smoke as they rose dark grey against the white ice blink of the pack ice sky.

**1949** Innes, Hammond (1953 edn) *The white south* Fontana Books, London: 67.

Away to the south-east I got my first sight of the ice blink. This was the light striking up from close pack ice, its surface mirrored in the cloud. The effect was one of brilliant whiteness, criss-crossed with dark seams. The dark seams were the water lanes cutting through between the floes, all faithfully mapped out in the cloud mirror above it.

**1995** Orsman, Chris *Sport [NZ]* 14 (Apr): 5.

Ice-blink some sixty miles out flickers like a heliograph on all who approach as immigrants the mineral heart of the south.

## ice block

[Specific use of ice-block a block of ice, recorded in arctic usage from 1853 on (NOED).]

A large chunk of ice (up to house-size: see 1949 quotation) in the sea, frozen into sea ice, or on land, and often associated with **pressure**.

**1879** Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 254.

Penguins were common at the edge of the ice. They progressed through the water like Rock-hoppers, and probably were the *Eudyptes Adelæ* of Ross's Expedition, since they had black heads; we could not catch any, though we tried to get some which were on an ice-block; they seemed shy.

**1901** (Cape Adare) Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 85.

The helm swung round until the staunch little ship headed northwards towards home. We went down to the water's edge and fired a parting volley from our rifles to which they responded with their guns; slowly she passed out, threading her way among the ice-blocks and gently rising and falling in the swell.

**2–3 Jan 1911** Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912* Blandford Press, London: 90.

On the right, where the Barrier was jammed against Cape Crozier, we had a splendid view of the biggest pressure ridges known down here. There are five main ridges and they are a chaos of ice blocks and crevasses in ridges and hollows, 40 feet from the top of a ridge to the bottom of the hollow on each side.

**1949** Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 178.

They ran into difficult crevasses at the thousand-foot level. Some of the ice blocks were as big as two-storey houses. They were all shapes and sizes.

**1984** (Winterover Bay, Filla Island) Lewis, David in *National Geographic* 166(5) Nov: 660.

We forged a path on foot to the bluffs through the indescribable jumble of bergs, ice blocks, ridges, and six-foot-wide shear-line tide cracks that extended for miles over the ice.

**1994** Waters, Tom in *Earth* Nov: 40.

The middle of the stream, he said, was as smooth as stagnant ice, but the incredible shearing forces along its edge had torn it into a chaotic jumble of crevasses and ice blocks.

## ice-bound adjective

(Of a ship) Trapped in pack ice, **beset**.

**1906** (South Orkneys) Eagle Clarke, W. in *The Ibis* 6(XXI) Jan: 148.

After having been icebound for eight long months, the 'Scotia' was liberated on November 23rd, 1903, and immediately departed for the Falklands and Buenos Ayres to refit.

**1964** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(10) Jun: 457.

The icebreaker was ice-bound in Erebus and Terror Gulf for 17 days.

## ice breaker noun and attrib.

[Recorded first in arctic use, from 1875.]

A ship designed to break its way through **sea ice** by rising up onto the ice in its path and crushing it under its weight; the reinforced hull of such a vessel is rounded and steeply raked at the bow.

**1909** Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907–1909* William Heinemann, London: 80.

Even the *Yermak*, the most powerful ice-breaker ever built, would have made no impression upon the cemented field of ice.

**1950** *Polar Record* 5 (39) Jan: 461.

Two American naval icebreakers of Task Force 39 (Operation "Windmill"), U.S.S. *Edisto* and U.S.S. *Burton Island* arrived at Neny Fjord.

**1958** (Weddell Sea) Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund *The crossing of Antarctica: the Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955–58* Cassell & Co, London: 65.

Frede once more, we pushed on in ice-breaker style through close but thin pack ice two feet thick.

**1963** *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* 2 (Dec): 2.

Icebreakers work by ramming ice, rising up on to it, and crushing and breaking it under their weight.

**1996** Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 174.

The icebreaker had finally struggled into McMurdo, and it was squatting on the Sound opposite the station, a trail of cracked ice like a runway behind it.

## ice cake

[Recorded first in arctic use, from 1870 on (NOED, DCANe). PEI English records ice cake, a large chunk of floating sea ice, from 1892.]

A small ice floe.

**1930** (Little America) Byrd, Richard Evelyn *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 139.

Aloft, the lookout for bergs and ice cakes had a dizzy time.

**1964** (Oates Land) Styles, D.F. *Narrative. Coastal exploration of Kemp and Enderby Lands, Antarctica. ANARE reports Series A Vol. I* Antarctic Division, Dept of External Affairs, Melbourne: 40.

We reached the edge of the close pack. From there on we proceeded through strips of ice cakes and thin brash at good speed.

**1987** Bates, Robert L. and Jackson, Julia A. eds *Glossary of geology, 3rd edn* American Geological Institute, Alexandria: 324.

Ice cake: A *floe* or piece of floating sea ice less than 10 m across.

## ice caldera

A large sunken crater-like formation in ice, to at least 3 km across, apparently resulting from the drainage of an ice-covered lake on an ice shelf, and also called an **ice doline**.

**1943** (Charcot Island) Hydrographic Office, US Navy Department *Sailing directions for Antarctica. H.O. no 138* Hydrographic Office, Washington: 169.

Near the western shores of the Sound, is a region of disturbed ice in which huge ice calderas have been observed. These are huge bowl-shaped basins, some nearly a mile in diameter, bordered by ice cliffs 100 feet (30.8 m) high. In the bottom of the depressions are mounds of ice blocks thrown up to a height of 30 or 40 feet (9.1 to 12.2 m) above the floor of the basin. The basins are sprinkled with a number of mounds formed by tilted slabs of ice projecting upward to a common apex. The basins are isolated and bear no apparent relation to glaciers entering the Sound from either side, nor are they connected to other pressure areas within the Sound. Stephenson suggests that these phenomena may be due to the shelf ice moving over submerged obstacles, or perhaps due to lateral pressure. Similar mounds seen in South Victoria Land are said by Wright and Priestley to be due to entrapped gas beneath the shelf ice.

**1963** (Graham Land) *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* 1: 9.

Of the various names — ice doline (Mellor, 1960), ice cauldron and ice caldera — which have been given to these features, the last term is used here because it implies the mode of circular collapse which is thought to have taken place.

## ice cap

The thick continuous layer of ice covering the **antarctic continent**; *occas.* (generally *sci.*) the smaller ice cover — in the form of a dome-shaped glacier — of an antarctic or subantarctic land mass. See also **antarctic ice cap** or **sheet**, **continental ice cap** or **sheet**, **East Antarctic ice sheet**, **inland ice sheet**, **polar ice cap**, **West Antarctic ice sheet**.

**1875** [source: NOED] Croll *Climate and T.* App: 543.

[To] cover the antarctic regions with an enormous ice-cap.

**1901** (Wood Bay) Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 250.

Unless one has actually seen it, it is impossible to conceive the stupendous extent of this ice-cap, its consistency, utter barrenness, and stillness, which sends an indefinable sense of dread to the heart. There is nothing beautiful to contemplate, no contrasts, absolutely no diversity, but for all that it is majestic and affords a profitable theme for meditation.

**1911** Hobbs, William Herbert *Characteristics of existing glaciers* The Macmillan Company, NY: 209.

The low islands in high southern latitudes are always snow-covered, so that no land is visible — the land is entirely enveloped in an ice-cap.

**1930** Debenham, Frank in L.C. Bernacchi, co-ordinator *The polar book. Produced for the British Polar Exhibition 1930* E. Allom & Co Ltd, London: 45.

Of all the forms of polar ice, the most impressive yet the least known, are the ice caps. In the north the major example is

the ice covering of Greenland. ... The very much larger ice cap of Antarctica is much less known.

**1957** Anderson, W. Ellery *Expedition south* Evans Brothers, London: 14.

Graham Land, the part we occupy, is about the size of England and Scotland together, a drab, white wilderness with peaks of snow-free rock projecting out of the primordial ice-cap that covers the land.

**1976** *Current Affairs Bulletin [Sydney]* 53(1) Jun: 12.

The idea of mining the antarctic ice cap merits closer study.

**1993** Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 191.

The two icecaps of East and West Antarctica between them cover 14 million square kilometres. Nowhere else on Earth can make people feel so totally insignificant as this high polar plateau.

**1995** *The Advertiser [Adelaide]* 25 Mar: 7.

The ice cap covers the continent like a giant wedding cake and is about 2 km thick. It contains 70 per cent of the world's fresh water and if it all melted away sea levels would rise by between 36 m and 90 m.

## ice-capped *adjective*

Covered in an **ice cap**.

**1949** Innes, Hammond (1953 edn) *The white south* Fontana Books, London: 14.

The Antarctic winter closed in on the ice-capped island of South Georgia.

**1964** (Vahsel Bay) Helm, A.S. and Miller, J.H. *Antarctica: the story of the New Zealand party of the Trans-Antarctic expedition* R.E. Owen, Government Printer, Wellington: 118.

Six weeks of beating up the Atlantic past ice-capped Southern Thule in the South Sandwich Islands.

## ice captain *Also ice master, ice pilot*

[Ice-master is recorded later in arctic use (from 1851, NOED), and ice pilot in Canadian English from 1934 (DCanE).]

The master of a vessel in ice-covered waters; one qualified to command a vessel under such circumstances.

**6 Jan 1841** McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 148.

Abernethy, our able and experienced ice-master and gunner, was on the look-out.

**1936** Byrd, Richard Evelyn *Antarctic discovery* Putnam, London: 364.

Captain Johansen, first officer and ice pilot.

**1949** Villiers, Alan *Whalers of the midnight sun* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 63.

The *Pelagos* steamed slowly on, grinding, pushing, forcing her way into that cold, quiet ice. The orders came faster now from the ice-pilot overhead.

**1964** Helm, A.S. and Miller, J.H. *Antarctica: the story of the New Zealand party of the Trans-Antarctic expedition* R.E. Owen, Government Printer, Wellington: 81.

Captain Harry Kirkwood .. one of the most experienced of British ice captains, was chosen to command HMNZS *Endeavour*, which was manned by the Royal New Zealand Navy.

**1967** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Mar: 4.

Captain Mike Benkert of the Eastwind, who we were to meet later, is a very experienced ice captain. He is a solid, robust man with a direct and rather brusque manner.

**1979** Lewis, David *Voyage to the ice: the Antarctic expedition of Solo* Australian Broadcasting Commission/Wm Collins Sons & Co: 29.

His qualifications as an ice pilot, polar mountaineer, skilled engineer and his staunch character added up to something unique.

**1993** *New Scientist* no. 1895: 45.

I was walking along the dock at Ushuaia, in the Beagle Channel, with the two Swedish ice masters from the ship I was on.

## ice cliff

A steep or vertical cliff of ice where **shelf ice** or **glaciers** meet the sea, either on the **antarctic continent** or on glaciated islands such as South Georgia and Heard Island. Most of the antarctic coastline is ice-cliffed.

**17 Jan 1775** (South Georgia) Cook, Captain James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, In the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970), vol II: 213.

The head of the bay, as well as two places on each side, was terminated by perpendicular ice-cliffs of considerable height. Pieces were continually breaking off, and floating out to sea; and a great fall happened while we were in the bay, which made a noise like cannon [sic].

**1879** (Heard Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 220.

A small cascade poured out of the ice-cliff on to the seashore from an aperture about half-way up it.

**2-3 Jan 1911** Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912* Blandford Press, London: 89.

It was a very beautiful day and a very beautiful sight as we saw first a brilliant white line appear on the horizon to the left of Mount Terror and then, as we came nearer, this white line developed into a long irregular line of white ice cliff standing out of the dark inky water.

**1952** *Walkabout. Australian Geographical Magazine* 18(10) Oct: 22. [caption] Cape Arcona and the Gotley Glacier, typical of most of the coast about Heard Island, where headlands or promontories of volcanic rock are separated from each other by glaciers, their ice cliffs extending to the water's edge.

**1953** (Norwegian-British-Swedish expedition) *Polar Record* 6(46) Jul: 766.

In February 1951 one of the Weasels was lost when it was driven in dense fog over an ice cliff in "Norselbukta" into the sea. Three of the four men on board were drowned.

**1982** (Bouvet Island) Crawford, Allan *Tristan da Cunha and the Roaring Forties* Charles Skilton, Edinburgh: 148.

Ice cliffs a hundred feet high drop vertically to narrow, black shady beaches and several glaciers radiate from the interior, terminating in the sea.

## ice core

A core of ice drilled out of **sea ice**, **glacier ice** or other ice, and stored so that its composition can be analysed for information about past temperatures and climate, the changing composition of the atmosphere, and physical conditions at depth in the ice.

**1954** Gjaever, John, transl. fr Norwegian by Huggard, E.M. *The white desert: the official account of the Norwegian-British-Swedish antarctic expedition* Chatto & Windus, London: 119.

They are to start on the actual investigations — which mean hauling up the ice-cores with the thick drill. They have my full sympathy.

**1985** Reader's Digest *Antarctica: great stories from the frozen continent* RD, Sydney: 19.

Expeditions from a number of nations have been involved in drilling ice cores from Antarctica.

**1996** Kiernan, Vince in *New Scientist* 13 Jan: 10.

The project has produced the oldest existing ice core, extending back more than 300 000 years. The core, from the East Antarctic ice sheet, is expected to chart the changes in the climate over the past 30 millennia.

## ice cubing *verbal noun*

(Of a piece of ice) Disintegration into blocks.

**1995** Begley, Sharon in *Newsweek* 3 Apr.

If the ice-cubing of Antarctica means what del Valle thinks it does, there is reason to worry.

## ice desert

An ice-covered tract of land, or Antarctica in general. Other similar phrases evoking the lifelessness, perceived uselessness or hostility of the continent are **great white continent**, **great white hell**, **great white wastes**, **icy wastes**.

**13 Apr 1911** (between Cape Evans and Hut Point) Gran, Trygve in McGhie, Ellen-Johanne, transl fr Norwegian, and Hattersley-Smith, Geoffrey, ed. (1984) *The Norwegian with Scott: Trygve Gran's Antarctic diary 1910-1913* National Maritime Museum, UK: 77.

When daylight [on 12 April] began to filter through the canvas, and we stuck our heads out of our wet, icy bags, a storm was raging so savagely that the tents looked like blowing away, and the ice desert was a turmoil of snow and wind.

**1935** Christensen, Lars in Jayne, E.M.G., transl. fr Norwegian *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Staughton, London: 150.

Further in there lay a whole continent, with great masses of mountains and the largest ice-deserts in the world.

**1968** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] Jun: 21.

Macquarie Island, a tiny splinter of rock halfway between Hobart and the ice-desert of Antarctica, has a population problem.

**1992** Lied, Commander Nils Oscar: *the true story of a husky* Kerr Publishing, Sydney: 142.

Sitting there with Oscar, I was reminded of the moonlit nights when he let out a long, mournful howl, gradually joined by the whole team. It was the sound of the ice desert, the vast loneliness of Antarctica.

## ice doline

[Transferred use of doline a basin in limestone country.]

## An ice caldera.

**1960** Mellor, Malcolm in *Polar Record* 10(64): 92.

It is likely that the depressions result from collapse of the surface ice after bodies of englacial water are drained, the mode of formation being similar to that of the smaller holes found on Greenland glaciers ... The earlier names used for these features are inappropriately suggestive of volcanism and it seems better to draw a parallel with the subsidences which occur in karst country after the collapse of underground chambers. The name "ice doline" was suggested by

Dr F. Loewe and I would now like to propose this term as an addition to Antarctic nomenclature.

**1986** (Amery ice shelf) Corry, Max in *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] 5(5) Sept: 18.

Mellor ... noted the existence of "ice dolines" .. large steep depressions in the glacier ice around the southern edge of the ice shelf.

## ice dome

[The 1827 quotation describes the phenomenon without applying this name to it.]

A gently-sloping rounded glacier or **ice cap**, often very extensive and without definite edges.

**1827** (Weddell Sea) Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24, 2nd edn* David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 41.

The excessive cold of the southern hemisphere has been variously accounted for, every philosopher adopting that theory which best suited his own hydrographical system. Saint Pierre supposes it to proceed from a cupola of ice surrounding the South Pole, and stretching far northward.]

**1914** (King Edward Land coast) Priestley, Raymond E. (1974 repr.) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* Melbourne University Press: 38.

The presence of land beneath the ice-dome was only to be inferred from its height and from the crevasses, which suggested that it rested directly on a somewhat uneven surface.

**1964** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(12) Dec: 539.

The Wilkes dome is of special interest to glaciologists as its shape and glacial behaviour are considered in many ways to be characteristic of the Antarctic continent, which has the very large area of 5 million square miles and is now generally held to be a huge ice dome.

**1954** Gjaever, John, transl. fr Norwegian by Huggard, E.M. *The white desert: the official account of the Norwegian-British-Swedish antarctic expedition* Chatto & Windus, London: 69.

That night we lay in an open pool close up to the ice dome of Kapp Norvegia.

**1965** *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* 5 (Jan): 1.

King George Island, the largest of the South Shetland Islands group, is 80 km. long and 30 km. wide with its major axis in an east-north-east direction. Most of the island is covered by an ice dome rising to 600 m. above sea-level.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 11.

The ice dome which rides down hard on the rocky base of the continent is up to 4800 metres thick.

## ice edge *noun and attrib.*

The seaward edge of either **land ice** or the **pack ice** zone.

**19 Jan 1911** (Cape Evans) Gran, Tryggve in McGhie, Ellen-Johanne, transl. fr Norwegian, and Hattersley-Smith, Geoffrey, ed. (1984) *The Norwegian with Scott: Tryggve Gran's Antarctic diary 1910–1913* National Maritime Museum, UK: 46.

By lunchtime *Terra Nova* had crept along the ice edge and now lies about a cable length from the hut.

**1940** *Polar Record* 3(19) Jan: 282.

The fattest whales are usually found nearest to the ice-edge.

**1964** (near Ferrar Glacier) Helm, A.S. and Miller, J.H. *Antarctica: the story of the New Zealand party of the Trans-Antarctic expedition* R.E. Owen, Government Printer, Wellington: 103.

By 3.30 p.m. they were back in the shipping zone, after making a double run over a large school of killer whales which were thrashing the water at the ice edge.

**1994** Department of the Environment, Sport and Territories *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions strategic plans 1995–2000* Department of the Environment, Sport and Territories: 19.

On ice-edge voyages it may be possible to deliver cargo over the sea ice from ship to shore.

## icefall

[Ice-fall is recorded from 1817 (NOED), the first published source so far found being Coleridge.]

A steep, rough and usually crevassed area of land ice associated with a glacier.

**26 Jan 1898** (nr 63°57'S, 61°47'W) Arctowski, Henryk in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 476.

Where we landed the shore was bordered by *roches moutonnées*, either awash or rarely rising so much as a yard or two above the surface. A little snow rested even on these rocks, and the sea-leopards were sleeping upon them very tranquilly. Along the coast there are deep crevasses in the ice, so that the cliffs have all the appearance of an icefall.

**14 Mar 1912** Wild, Frank in Mountevans, Admiral Lord (1950) *The desolate Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 81.

After the first day's sledging new land was reached when "numerous crevasses appeared and camp was pitched on the lower slopes of the hills with magnificent ice-falls on each side".

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 383.

[glossary] Ice Fall. A relatively steep and sometimes precipitous mass of land ice, which is consequently much disturbed. Ice falls have usually, if not always, some connection with glaciers.

**1964** (Ross Ice Shelf) *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(9) Mar: 375.

Le Coureur and Barrett reconnoitred a route across the Liv to its western side and reached a clear area above the lower ice falls.

**1991** Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 397.

[glossary] Icefall — a much-crevassed area of a steeply descending glacier.

## ice field

[Ice-field has been recorded for marine expanses of ice, since 1694 (NOED).]

An extensive area of unbroken **pack ice**, *occas.* (see 1987 quotation) used with fine distinction. Sometimes (see 1943 quotation) it is applied to **land ice** or to an **ice cap**, and sometimes it is synonymous with **field ice**.

**21 Jan 1820** (69°25'S, 1°11'E) Bellingshausen, Thaddeus in Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. (1945) *The voyage of Captain Bellingshausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819–1821* Hakluyt Society, London, vol I: 121.

As we surveyed the extent of the icefield around us to the east, south and west, we were unable to see its limits.

**1901** (in the Antarctic pack, Jan 1899) Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 56.

The ice fields of the *Southern Cross* remaining still undisturbed, some of us went that night for a long *ski* run to a large iceberg about seven miles away.

**1921** *The Graphic* [London] 20 Aug: 219.

A two blader propellor of finer pitch .. will be much less liable to be damaged when the ice-fields of the far South have been reached.

**1928** Wordie, J.M. and Priestley, R.E. in Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 383.

[glossary] Ice Field. (a) When applied to sea-ice, is "an area of pack ice of such an extent that its limits cannot be seen from a ship's masthead." (b) The term is also used for any large area of land ice, as snow-field, firn-field or névé-field. Field ice is a different term.

**1943** Hydrographic Office, US Navy Department *Sailing directions for Antarctica. H.O. no 138* Hydrographic Office, Washington: 23.

Ice field — an area of unbroken sea ice of such extent that its limits cannot be seen from the masthead. This term is not synonymous with Field ice. The term is sometimes applied to a large area of land ice, as snow field, firn field, or névé field.

**1968** Herbert, Wally *A world of men: exploration in Antarctica* Eyre & Spottiswoode, London: 26.

It was a low outcrop some twenty feet above sea-level, and only about thirty yards from the seafront of the ice-field through which it protruded.

**1987** Bates, Robert L. and Jackson, Julia A. eds *Glossary of geology, 3rd edn* American Geological Institute, Alexandria: 325.

Ice field .. An extensive area of pack ice, consisting of floes, and greater than 10 km (6 mi) across; the largest areal subdivision of sea ice. Ice fields are subdivided according to horizontal extent as follows: "large" (over 20 km); "medium" (15–20 km); "small" (10–15 km).

## icefish

[From the habitat and paleness of the fishes.]

Any fish of the marine fam. Channichthyidae, which occurs only in antarctic and subantarctic waters. These scaleless fish are unique: they are the only vertebrates without red blood cells. Some of the 17 or so kinds, such as the **mackerel icefish** and **South Georgia icefish**, have been fished commercially.

Fishes of this family are sometimes called **channichthyids** (in more technical publications), and **bloodless** or **white-blooded fishes** (in less scientific ones).

**1968** Dukert, Joseph M. *This is Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 63.

The fish of the Antarctic Ocean are a strange lot. Some have colourless blood in their veins. Since so much oxygen is dissolved in the cold waters, perhaps the oxygen-processing red blood cells are unnecessary; but this wouldn't explain why all fish in the area haven't adapted themselves in the same way. The "ice fish" are a mystery.

**1975** Wheeler, Alwynne *Fishes of the world: an illustrated dictionary* Macmillan Publishing Co., NY: 152.

Channichthyidae: A small family of mainly Antarctic and coldwater S. Hemisphere fishes related to the Antarctic cods (Nototheniidae). They can be recognized by their total lack of scales, and by having an anterior spiny dorsal fin; most species have a flattened snout and very large, often spiny head ... Most icefishes are sedentary, rather inactive animals, living close to the sea bed and feeding on fishes and crustaceans.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 261.

All icefishes are strictly marine and confined (except one sub-Antarctic species) to the cold waters of the Southern Ocean.

**1990** Monica Byles *Life in the polar lands* Puffin Books, Great Britain: 14.

Strange ghostly fish live here too, like the pale ice-fish.

**1993** Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 51.

Most Antarctic fish have half the haemoglobin count of fish living in temperate seas, while one group, the ice fish, have no haemoglobin at all. They are the only vertebrates on earth that completely lack haemoglobin. There are about 15 species of Antarctic ice fish and most are active, predatory animals. They lack scales and have large spade-shaped heads with strong jaws armed with sharp teeth. Their colourless blood gives them an extraordinary appearance, leaving them ghostly white with large cream-coloured gills.

## ice floe

A more or less flat-topped piece of ice, other than **fast ice** or **glacier ice**, floating in the sea. See also **ice pan**.

**27 Jan 1821** (South Shetland Islands) Bellingshausen, Thaddeus in Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. (1945) *The voyage of Captain Bellingshausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819–1821* Hakluyt Society, London, vol II: 429.

The penguins which were brought back by the boat were of three species, and among them were some young birds. Throughout our two years' voyage in the ice of the Southern seas where penguins are very numerous, we saw only three species of them, and probably there are no other kinds, for otherwise we should have found them in the neighbourhood of South Georgia, the South Sandwich Islands, Macquarie Island, or on the ice floes, where they are always to be seen in great numbers.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 334.

[glossary] Ice floe.— A sheet of ice on the surface of the sea, the termination of which can be easily seen from the ship.

**20 Feb 1948** Law, Phillip (1995) *The antarctic voyage of HMAS Wyatt Earp* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 83.

Let me explain the appearance of the pack. As one sails in toward the continental land mass of Antarctica, one meets first of all large icebergs which, because of their size, are able to drift a long way north before melting. Further south the sea has, bobbing about in it, small irregular pieces of ice, remains of ice floes or bits broken from the bergs. Further south still one meets ice floes, flat chunks of ice varying in size from a few square yards to half an acre or so across the top. One or two feet of their thickness is above water and the other five or ten feet are below. The tops are perfectly flat.

**1954** *Polar Record* 7(47) Jan: 52.

Pools of fresh water are occasionally found on ice floes in the Antarctic: in the Arctic they are very common.

**1992** Lied, Commander Nils *Oscar: the true story of a husky* Kerr Publishing, Sydney: 79.

Ahead of us a barrier of ice appeared to block our path, but the little ship merely slowed down, as if pausing for breath, then steamed steadily on. The flared bows rose steeply, then sank, as the first wide ice-floe in front of the ship split with a crack, like a rifle shot.

## ice flower

[Ice-flowers is recorded much earlier in English (NOED 1694) in a different sense, of ice crystals growing in a pattern on a window pane.]

Flower-like rosettes of ice which grow on new sea-ice or occasionally (see 1991 quotation) on **land ice**. These flowers are about 50 mm (2 in) across and usually occur in great numbers.

**30 Mar 1902** (sea ice) Scott, Captain Robert F. (1905) *The voyage of the 'Discovery'* Macmillan and Co, London: 198.

This is a season of flowers and behold! they have sprung up about us as by magic: very beautiful ice-flowers, waxen white in the shadow, but radiant with prismatic colours where the sunrays light on their delicate petals ... The ice-flowers stand up clear-cut and perfect in form. In some places they occur thickly, with broad, delicate, feathery leaves; in others the dark, clear ice surface is visible with only an occasional plant in it; in others, again, the plants assume a spiky appearance, being formed of innumerable small spicules.

**1907** Ferrar, H.T. *Report of the field-geology of the region explored during the 'Discovery' Antarctic expedition, 1901-04. National Antarctic Expedition 1901-1904, Natural history vol 1: geology* British Museum, London: 56.

When the open sea first freezes, part of the concentrated solution left yields well-crystallized rosettes (ice-flowers) on the upper surface of the ice. The rosettes are usually two to three inches across and about an inch high and are scattered thickly over the surface; they are always extremely saline.

**23 Sept 1913** (Commonwealth Bay) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 209.

Some true ice flowers on sea ice. A very fine show of true ice flowers to west of near island.

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 19.

Some of the most beautiful forms taken by ice crystals are known as ice flowers. These are due to some of the salt in the sea not freezing until the temperature is cold enough to form thin ice on the surface. This salt is extruded on to the surface of the newly formed ice and accretes by moisture from the air.

**1938** Evans, Admiral Sir Edward R.G.R. *South with Scott* Collins, London: 99.

He [sc. Wright] photographed ice flowers formed in the sea.

**1991** Venables, Stephen *Island at the edge of the world: a South Georgia odyssey* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 136.

The snow had faded to a dull blue-grey, but I could still make out the texture underfoot — little ice flowers, each about two inches across, carpeting the slope in millions.

## ice fog

A mass of tiny ice crystals suspended in cold air, forming a fog-like cloud.

**1958** Armstrong, Terence and Roberts, Brian in *Polar Record* 9(59) May: 93.

[glossary] Ice fog: A suspension of numerous minute ice crystals in the air, reducing visibility at the earth's surface. The crystals often glitter in the sunshine. Ice fog produces optical phenomena such as luminous pillars, small haloes, etc.

**1959** Siple, Paul 90° South: *the story of the American South Pole conquest* G.P. Putnam's Sons, New York: 246.

An ice fog is a mass of crystals of ice that float and form a fog.

**1967** (Plateau Station, US) *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Nov: 25.

The weather here is as cold as befits the supposedly coldest place on Earth, and although the deadly katabatic only whispers, conditions are frequently unpleasant when there is ice fog.

**1988** Butler, Rowan *Breaking the ice* Albatross Books, Sydney: 37.

We saw in the new year, 1985, sitting around a fire on the snow with the sun near the horizon and glowing pale yellow through an ice fog.

## ce foot

Ice-foot is recorded earlier (DCanE 1854) in the northern hemisphere, in the same sense.]

A fringing line of ice attached to the coastline, which remains after **fast ice** has broken out, or a protruding piece of ice from shore, or occas. (as in 1921 quotation) on an **iceberg**.

**15 Feb 1898** Arctowski, Henryk in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 495.

In Alexander Land the glaciers thus fail to reach the sea, for they coalesce together into one great ice-foot, the existence of which fully explains the numerous tabular bergs which we encountered during the last two days. ... The continuous coast-line seen from a distance may indeed be broken into bays and capes in detail, but, even if so, all these irregularities are buried under the uniform plain of the ice-foot.

**2-3 Jan 1911** Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912* Blandford Press, London: 90.

We were to examine the possibilities of landing, but the swell was so heavy in its break among the floating blocks of ice along the actual beach and ice foot that a landing was out of the question — we should have broken up the boat and have all been in the water together.

**1914** Levick, Dr G. Murray, R.N. *Antarctic penguins: a study of their social habits* William Heinemann, London: 10.

The shores of this beach are protected by a barrier of ice-floes which are stranded there by the sea in the autumn. These floes become welded together and form the "ice-foot".

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* Duckworth, London: 29.

From our maintop we could discern a long ice-foot that projected like a warship's ram from the submarine part of the berg.

**1957** Anderson, W. Ellery *Expedition south* Evans Brothers, London: 39.

Next morning was fine and clear, and we began loading supplies for the base into the *John Biscoe's* scow, to be ferried to the icefoot where they were landed.

**1974** Savours, Anne, ed. *Scott's last voyage through the Antarctic camera of Herbert Ponting* Sidgwick & Jackson, UK: 128.

[caption] The icefoot, looking towards Cape Royds, from the *Terra Nova*, January 1911.

**1997** Preston, Diana *A first rate tragedy* Constable, London: 46.

On 8 February the *Discovery* was secured to an ice-foot off Mount Erebus.

Footnote: An ice-foot is a strip of frozen sea or blocks of ice along the shoreline.

## ice-free adjective

(Used of land or sea which you might expect to be covered in ice)

Clear of ice.

**1916** (McMurdo Sound, Jan 1903) Doorly, Captain Gerald S. *The voyages of the 'Morning' Smith, Elder & Co.*, London: 92.

As far as could be seen the sound was apparently ice-free, and this, after six days' imprisonment, was a delightful change.

**1954** Schytt, Valter in Giaever, John, transl. fr Norwegian by Huggard, E.M. *The white desert: the official account of the Norwegian-British-Swedish antarctic expedition* Chatto & Windus, London: 233.

The shape of the crags was clearly visible under the ice. It was plain that there were no ice-free areas here.

**1992** Department of the Arts, Sport, the Environment and Territories *Impact of climate change on Antarctica—Australia* AGPS, Canberra: 8.

The ice free zone extends from the Antarctic Convergence south to the zone of seasonal seaice.

**1994** Department of the Environment, Sport and Territories *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions strategic plans*

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

1995–2000 Department of the Environment, Sport and Territories: 37.

Antarctica differs from the other continents in being almost completely (98 per cent) covered by ice but it has been ice-free for most of its geological history.

### ice-free area

An **oasis**.

**1966** Brown, D.A. *Breeding biology of the snow petrel* *Pagodroma nivea* (Forster) ANARE Scientific Reports Series B Zoology: 7.

Davis (68°35'S, 77°58'E) is situated on the east side of Prydz Bay in Princess Elizabeth Land, Antarctica ... Eastwards from the station is a roughly triangular ice-free area, about 500 sq km in extent, known as the Vestfold Hills.

**1966** Sisco, Joseph J. *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Jun: 17.

Our nearly completed geological reconnaissance of the major ice-free areas of Antarctica will define those which contain substances of use to our society.

**1967** Gressitt, J. Linsley, ed. *Entomology of Antarctica* Antarctic Research Series, American Geophysical Union, Washington DC, vol 10: 9.

They and others attempted to find life at the upper end of the Beardmore Glacier, but found the ice-free area a desert.

**1982** (South Orkneys) Hosking, Eric and Sage, Bryan *Antarctic wildlife* Croom Helm, London: 37.

On Laurie Island an ice-free area is the site of Orcadas, the oldest-established human settlement in the Antarctic, founded by the Scottish National Expedition in 1903.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 218.

The Bunger Hills, of some 900 square kilometres, comprise one of the remarkable ice-free areas which make up about three per cent of the Antarctic continent, and which excite scientists because their secrets are accessible and not secluded under a couple of kilometres of ice. These areas, "dry valleys" as they used to be called, were first investigated by the Australian Griffith Taylor in the Ross Sea area during Scott's expedition of 1911–12.

### ice-free valley

A **dry valley**.

**1968** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* III(6) Nov-Dec: 225.

The site of the fourth project is the ice-free valleys on the other side of McMurdo Sound.

### ice front

The floating, seaward-facing side of an **ice shelf**.

**1953** *Polar Record* 6(46) Jul: 838.

As a result of discussions between the United Kingdom Government departments concerned, representatives of the Governments of Australia and New Zealand, and the Royal Geographical Society, and taking into account views expressed by the United States Board on Geographic Names, it has been agreed that the following terminology shall be adopted for United Kingdom official use for describing those ice formations in the Antarctic to which the terms "ice barrier", "ice shelf" etc. have been variously applied: 1. a. The general term describing any such formation shall be *ice shelf*. ... 2. a. The general term describing the floating seaward-facing cliffs of an ice shelf shall be *ice front*.

**1981** Scientific Committee on Antarctic Research *Twenty-third report to SCAR on South African Antarctic Research Activities April 1980–October 1981* SCAR, Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, Pretoria: 15.

Station located on a floating ice-shelf 17 km from the ice-front at Sanae.

**1993** Fiennes, Ranulph *Mind over matter: the epic crossing of the Antarctic continent* Sinclair-Stevenson, London: 48.

Our Twin Otter briefly roared over the ice-front of the Weddell Sea, a vertical cliff forming the seaward face of the Filchner Ice-Shelf.

### ice fumarole

An **ice mound**.

**1909** Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907–1909* William Heinemann, London: 199.

Two features of the geology of Erebus which are specially distinctive are the vast quantities of large and perfect feldspar crystals, and the ice fumaroles ... The ice fumaroles are specially remarkable. About fifty of these were visible to us on the track which we followed to and from the crater, and doubtless there were numbers that we did not see. These unique ice-mounds have resulted from the condensation of vapour around the orifices of the fumaroles. It is only under conditions of very low temperature that such structures could exist. No structures like them are known in any other part of the world.

### ice-hardened *See ice-strengthened*

### ice island *noun and attrib.*

Either of two geographic features: a **tabular iceberg**, or *occas*. an island completely covered in ice.

**1777** (54°S) Cook, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, in the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970), vol I: xvii.

It is, therefore, very probable, that what Bouvet saw was nothing more than a large ice-island.

**1827** Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24, 2nd edn* David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 3.

On the 2d of January 1774, Captain Cook again arrived with the Antarctic Sea, and having been beset with ice islands and loose ice, in the latitude of 68° and longitude 138° west, he bore up north-west, and re-crossed the Antarctic Circle, steering various courses to the north and east, and then to the south.

**1840** *The Sydney Herald* 12 Mar: 2.

The *Peacock*, (which ship arrived in our harbour on the 22nd ultimo, much disabled from her contact with the ice,) we learn, obtained soundings in a high southern latitude, and established beyond doubt the existence of land in that direction. But the *Vincennes*, more fortunate in escaping injury, completed the discovery, and run down the coast from 154°18' to 97°45' east longitude, about seventeen hundred miles, within a short distance of the land, often so near as to get soundings with a few fathoms of line, during which time she was constantly surrounded by ice islands and bergs, and experiencing many heavy gales of wind, exposing her constantly to shipwreck.

**1894** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 4(38): 385.

He observed an ice island, about 10 miles in length and apparently aground, in approximately lat.45 deg. 45 min. S., long. 60 deg. 45 min.W., or about 330 miles northward of the Falkland Islands.

**1942** Mawson, Douglas *Geographical narrative and cartography. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911–14. Scientific reports series A vol I* Government Printer, Sydney: 42.

The pack was heavy, with many large bergs in it. The latter were generally tabular of ice-island form; many were tilted and others wave-worn bergs.

**1971** (South Georgia) Brown, Nan *Antarctic housewife* Hutchinson of Australia, Melbourne: 70.

Time after time the keen eyesight of lookouts, coupled with the quick action of the helmsman, saved the ship from coming to grief on one of the ice islands.

**1984** Fletcher, Harold *Antarctic days with Mawson: a personal account of the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929-31* Angus and Robertson, London: 134.

For several days we had sighted what appeared to be an ice island in the distance and we were now on a course towards it. We finally passed it some distance to the north. Sir Douglas studied it from the crow's nest with strong binoculars and estimated its height to be at least 90 metres, bounded by cliffs about 20 metres high and a length of five kilometres in a south-easterly direction.

## ice krill

[See krill.]

The crustacean *Euphausia crystallorophias* (fam. Euphausiacea).

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 75.

*Euphausia crystallorophias* ... Ice krill ... Breeds from the end of December to February under the ice.

**1991** Hubold, G. in di Prisco, Guido, Maresca, Bruno & Tota, Bruno, eds *Biology of Antarctic fish* Springer-Verlag, Berlin: 6.

Principal species in the southern Weddell Sea are calanoid copepods of 1-5 mm size and the ice krill *E. crystallorophias* of > 15 mm.

**1992** Campbell, David *The crystal desert* Secker & Warburg, London: 98.

The ice krill (*E. crystallorophias*) .. is also abundant under the light tonight.

## ice lead

A (navigable) channel through sea ice cover: a **lead**.

**7 Apr 1911** (Hut Point) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912* Blandford Press, London: 120.

Several people walked on sea ice to the Sulphur Cones today and Taylor went in through a thin ice lead.

**1964** Jenkins, Geoffrey *A grue of ice* Fontana Books, London: 185.

The boat gathered way swiftly towards an ice-lead running to the gaunt, sulphur-coloured north-westerly shoulder of Bouvet which is known as Cape Circumcision.

## ice master See ice captain

## ice mound

An ice rim around a volcanic vent in antarctic conditions, also called an **ice fumarole**.

**1908** Shackleton, E.H., ed. *Aurora Australis* British Antarctic Expedition: [43].

Ice mounds, somewhat similar in shape to the sinter mounds framed by the geysers of New Zealand, of Iceland, and of Yellowstone Park, are built up around the orifices of the fumaroles of Erebus.

**1909** Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907-1909* William Heinemann, London: 185.

In ordinary climates, a fumarole, or volcanic vapour-well, may be detected by the thin cloud of steam above it, and usually one can at once feel the warmth by passing one's hand into the vapour column, but in the rigour of the Antarctic climate the fumaroles of Erebus have their vapour turned into ice as soon as it reaches the surface of the snow-plain. Thus ice-mounds ... are built up.

## ice pack

### Pack ice.

**23 Jan 1840** (off Adelie Land) Dumont Durville, J.S.C. in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 451.

The man on the look-out sighted fresh ice-islands which were soon seen to be linked together by a continuous pack. This ice barrier, resting on the land to the south, stretched northwards ... I hoped that the pack would not stretch far to the north, and that we could thus soon double it, and by sailing along it keep our course westwards. For a moment I thought that the ice-pack, ending about the 66th parallel, would leave us a free passage towards the west.

**1874** Thomson, Prof. C. Wyville in *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London* XXIII no. 156: 48.

All along the edge of the ice pack — everywhere in fact to the south of the two stations, that of the 11th of February, on our southward voyage, and that of the 3rd of March, on our return, we brought up fine sand and greyish mud, with small pebbles of quartz and felspar.

**1916** Doorly, Captain Gerald S. *The voyages of the 'Morning'* Smith, Elder & Co., London: 62.

In a few hours' time the dense ice pack was encountered, and varied progress was made through the night ... This great belt of ice, which has to be penetrated for one to two hundred miles before gaining the comparatively open sea once more, is the result of the winter's ice on the outskirts of the Antarctic shores, which drifts to the north until, reaching the warmer latitudes, it ultimately melts away.

**1948** Hurley, Frank (1979) *Shackleton's argonauts: the epic tale of Shackleton's voyage to Antarctica in 1915* McGraw-Hill Book Co Pty Ltd: 10.

While exploring in South Polar Seas, Sir Ernest Shackleton's expedition ship, *Endurance*, was crushed by ice-packs and sank in unknown waters hundreds of miles from the nearest Antarctic shores.

**1967** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Nov: 1.

The big query this year is; what is the ice situation around Wilkes? There is only one sure way to find out, and that is to have a look at it from close up. One day perhaps we will have a satellite hovering over the area, and sending back pictures of the ice pack.

**1992** Lied, Commander Nils Oscar: *the true story of a husky* Kerr Publishing, Sydney: 30.

Once we were stuck in the grinding ice pack for eleven days, and time had begun to hang heavily on my hands.

## ice pan

[Neither ice floe nor ice pan is precise in meaning. Glossaries (for example, see the 1987 quotation) attempt to impose precision and standardise use of terms, but they are never wholly successful in such attempts. Some, and perhaps all, of the early recorded uses of ice-pan in NOED (which gives quotations from 1901 on) are northern: the first of these is given below.]

### An ice floe.

**1901** [source: NOED] *Geog. J.* July: 40.

The ice-pans appear to drift capriciously backward and forward.



**1941** (Graham Land) *Polar Record* 3(22) July: 402.

The boat, however, was not as easy to work through ice pans as had been hoped.

**1958** (Bay of Whales area) Bursey, Jack *Antarctic night* Longman, Green & Co., London: 61.

The ship came into view, her nose stuck up against the bay ice which was breaking off. Small ice pans slapped and drifted along by her side.

**1987** Robert L. and Jackson, Julia A. eds *Glossary of geology, 3rd edn* American Geological Institute, Alexandria: 326.

Ice pan. A large flat piece of first-year ice protruding several centimeters to a meter above the sea surface. Syn: *pan lce*.

## ice petrel

The bird *Pagodroma nivea*: see **snow petrel**.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 35.

We were no sooner well in the pack than the beautiful white ice-petrel (*Pagodroma nivea*) appeared. It is one of the most graceful birds on the face of the globe, and is never to be found far from the southern ice-fields. It resembles somewhat a pure white dove, and is of about the same size, with jet black feet and bill. Soon after the long polar night, when we were badly in want of fresh food, we endeavoured to eat some of these beautiful creatures. Alas! although so fair to look upon, a closer acquaintance proved altogether undesirable, for the flesh was tough, dark, and utterly flavourless.

**1901** Saunders, Howard in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 229.

Passing to the large family which comprises the stouter Petrels, known as the Puffinidae, among the species especially characteristic of the Antarctic seas is the snow-white ICE PETREL, *Pagodroma nivea*, with satin-like plumage, jet-black eyes and bill, and graceful flight. ... It can be traced as far southward as man has penetrated.

**1950** Mountevans, Admiral Lord *The desolate Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 21.

What with new species of birds, skua gulls, dainty white ice petrels, brown-backed and little black petrels, and clumsy giant petrels, who ate so much that they could not always "take off" from the ice fields, the zoologists soon had their note-books filled.

## ice pilot See ice captain

## icequab

The deepwater marine fish *Lycodichthys dearborni* (fam. Zoarcidae), which lives only in the Ross Sea and grows to about 23 cm (9 in) long.

**1985** (McMurdo Sound) Wells, Rufus M.G., Macdonald, John A. and Warren, Lynda M. in *New Zealand Antarctic Record* 6(3): 7.

Icequabs live on the sea floor in the deeper waters of the Sound.

## icequake

[Ice-quake, in the sense of a convulsion which accompanies the break-up of an ice-field or ice-floe, is recorded earlier in arctic usage (NOED 1891).]

A tremor or explosion-like shudder felt on a solid ice surface such as an **ice shelf**, and also known as a **barrier quake**. See also **snowquake**.

**1915** Wild, F. in Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911–1914* William Heinemann, London, vol II: 103.

Propelled by the immense forces of the hinterland, this stream of ice is squeezed down through a steep valley at an accelerated speed, and, meeting the slower moving Shackleton Shelf, rends it from top to bottom and presses onward. Thus chaos, icequake, and ruin.

**1958** Bursey, Jack *Antarctic night* Longman, Green & Co., London: 176.

It was, in any case, an icequake. Some great disturbance had caused the ice of the great plateau and Barrier to shiver and shake for at least sixty seconds.

**1979** Kilian, Crawford *Icequake* Futura Publications, London: 28. He had recorded 'seismic swarms' in the Queen Maud range for two years running now — micro-earthquakes that often foreshadowed a major quake. As far back as the late '50s, the Kiwis and others had recorded similar tremors around Ross Island; they'd called them 'icequakes' on the assumption that they were caused by big tabular icebergs calving off the edge of the Shelf.

**1986** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XXI(5): 109.

Approximately 25 microearthquakes per hour were detected and recorded, 16 events were true "icequakes" associated with crevassing near the surface, and presumably near the margins, of the ice stream.

**1997** *Popular Science* Feb: 40.

Cal Tech scientists at Upstream Bravo Camp are ... burying seismic monitors in snow fields to listen for "ice quakes" set off by colliding ice sheets.

## ice rise

A large mass of ice, often domed, reaching to about 1000 m height and 100 km width, resting on rock.

**1955** Roberts, Brian, Roots, E.F. and Swithinbank, C. in *Polar Record* 7(49) Jan: 331.

*Ice rise*. A mass of ice resting on rock and surrounded either by an ice shelf, or partly by an ice shelf and partly by sea. No rock is exposed, and there may be none above sea-level. Ice rises often have a dome-shaped surface. The largest known is about 100 km. across. Of these terms, *ice rise* has been suggested by some examples in the Shackleton Ice Shelf named "Harrison Ice-Rises" by Sir Douglas Mawson.

**1972** (Princess Martha Coast) Neethling, D.C. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* no. 2: 6.

Base and traverse glaciological studies were made on the Fimbul Ice Shelf in the vicinity of past and present wintering bases, across nearby ice rises and along the main traverse routes onto the inland ice.

**1989** Swithinbank, C. in May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 154.

"What are you describing? Do you call it a peak, a promontory, a peninsula, an ice rise?"

## ice runway

[The US and NZ antarctic programs rely on ice runways for regular operations of flights to Antarctica from New Zealand.]

A runway on sea ice, where accumulations of drifting snow are regularly graded flat.

**1960** (Hallett station) *News from the South* [NZARP, Wellington] 5 (Sept): 4.

Preparation work to the ice runway for the first planes of the new season has commenced.

**1971** Young, Pamela *Penguin summer — or, a rare bird in Antarctica* A.H. & A.W. Reed, Wellington: 32.

Exactly five hours after we had left Christchurch there was a slight bump as we landed on the long ice runway at Williams Field.

**1996** Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 91.

The 'ice runway', another facility at McMurdo, is sea ice stripped of its snow.

## icescape

A landscape dominated by ice; a representation of such a landscape.

**6 Feb 1893** Burn Murdoch, W.G. (1894) *From Edinburgh to the Antarctic* Longmans, Green and Co, London: 317.

The doctor took his photographic apparatus up to the crow's-nest and photographed the ice-scape.

**1964** *Antarctic Society of Australia newsletter* no 6 (June): 4.

The exhibition consists of 18 paintings, each 122 B 122 cm in size, executed in oil on hardboard. Most are landscapes or seascapes (perhaps better described as icescapes).

**1993** Fiennes, Ranulph *Mind over matter: the epic crossing of the Antarctic continent* Sinclair-Stevenson, London: foll. 262.

[caption] A wealth of beauty but also danger can be detected in an icescape by the practised eye.

## ice sheet

[Used earlier in the northern hemisphere (from 1873), but perhaps now more closely connected with the Antarctic.]

An extensive area of ice, such as the **ice cap**, often specifically ice over land, but not always. See also **polar ice sheet**.

**1905** Scott, Captain Robert F. *The voyage of the 'Discovery'* Macmillan and Co, London: 116.

Every floe was a rectangle and looked as though it had been purposely shaped with accuracy and precision; it is difficult to comprehend how an irregular ice-sheet can be broken naturally in this manner.

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 384.

[glossary] Ice Sheet. A convenient term used for any large area of ice, especially land ice, such as Continental Ice or Highland Ice.

**1935** Byrd, Richard in *Nat Geographic* LXVIII(1) Jul: 111.

The ice sheet down there varies probably from about two miles thick to a few feet.

**1949** (Heard Island) Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 228.

The main part of the island comprised the great mass of Big Ben and its surrounding ice sheet.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 144.

Did you know that 350 cubic miles of icebergs are calved off the ice-sheet in Antarctica every year? This is half the world's total water needs. ... Antarctica possesses 70 per cent of the world's supply of fresh water.

**1991** Tingey, Robert J. *The geology of Antarctica* Clarendon Press, Oxford: 323.

Approximately 97 per cent of the Antarctic continent is covered by its ice sheet.

## ice shelf *noun and attrib.*

An extensive area of very thick (to several hundred metres), more or less flat and slowly moving ice, floating on the sea but attached to land on one side, and fed

by glaciers. Ice shelves rise and fall with the tide, fringe much of the antarctic coast, and calve the large **tabular icebergs** so characteristic of Antarctica. The Ross Ice Shelf (see **great ice barrier**) is the largest in the world. See also **ice barrier**, **ice front**, **shelf ice**.

**1914** [source: NOED] David, T.W.E. in *Geographical Journal* XLIII: 606.

If the meaning of the term 'shelf' can be extended to include old pack ice, old bay ice, 'schollen-eis', piedmonts aground or afloat, glacier tongues, etc., it may be termed the ice shelf coast, or, as it is hardly a true coast at all, simply ice shelf.

**1953** *Polar Record* 6(46) Jul: 838.

As a result of discussions between the United Kingdom Government departments concerned, representatives of the Governments of Australia and New Zealand, and the Royal Geographical Society, and taking into account views expressed by the United States Board on Geographic Names, it has been agreed that the following terminology shall be adopted for United Kingdom official use for describing those ice formations in the Antarctic to which the terms "ice barrier", "ice shelf" etc. have been variously applied: 1. a. The general term describing any such formation shall be *ice shelf*.

**1963** *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* 2 (Dec): 82.

For an ice shelf station such as Maudheim inversion conditions prevail for nine months of the year within the 2.5 m layer next to the surface.

**1992** Smith, David *Freeze frame* Penguin Books Australia, Melbourne: 250.

The Ross ice shelf is larger than France.

**1998** Pearce, Fred in *New Scientist* no 2131 (25 April): 13.

Ice shelves are floating appendages of the ice sheets covering Antarctica's landmass, so they are naturally unstable.

## ice ship *noun*

[Ice-ship is used earlier (from 1885: NOED) in an arctic context.]

Quite simply, a ship taken into polar pack ice; sometimes specifically an **ice strengthened** ship or **ice-breaker**.

**1922** Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Picador, London: 61.

The *Terra Nova* proved a wonderfully fine ice ship.

**1936** Byrd, Richard E. *Antarctic discovery* Putnam, London: 14.

Locating a trustworthy ice ship was more difficult. Not many are available.

**1957** Anderson, W. Ellery *Expedition south* Evans Brothers, London: 44.

The *John Biscoe* possessed none of these refinements, but she had as good a crew as any ice-ship in the world.

**1968** Dukert, Joseph M. *This is Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 148.

In 1953, a new ice ship, the *Kista Dan*, was chartered, and plans for a new Antarctic continental expedition were drawn up.

**1987** *Antarctic Society of Australia newsletter* no 11 (Dec): [11].

She [sc. the Dick Smith Explorer] is not an ice-ship, but is safe, sea-kindly and easily handled.

## ice ship *phr. verb*

To gather unsalted ice to melt down for a vessel's water supply. See also **water ship**. Hence **icing ship**.

[**1827** Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822-24*, 2nd edn David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 45.

Ice islands now became more numerous, and our consort took on board a quantity of fallen ice for water for present use.]

**10 Dec 1910** Debenham, Frank in Back, June Debenham, ed. (1992) *The quiet land: the Antarctic diaries of Frank Debenham* Bluntisham Books, Bluntisham: 22.

Ship's company have been 'icing' ship all morning, which means hacking off large blocks of ice and passing them aboard.

**1915** Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911–1914* William Heinemann, London, vol I: 54.

On January 2, when driving through a tongue of pack, a halt was made to "ice ship".

**1984** Fletcher, Harold *Antarctic days with Mawson: a personal account of the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929–31* Angus and Robertson, London: 182.

As our freshwater supply was diminishing, Sir Douglas suggested that while in the pack we should "ice ship". A large piece of floe was selected as ideal for the task; its height was level with the gunwale and with the ship resting alongside, ice and snow could be thrown from the floe surface directly onto the deck. They could then easily be stacked in the condenser tanks.

## ice stream

[Ice-stream in the sense of a valley glacier, is recorded first (from 1853) in arctic usage.]

1. A stream of **broken ice** on the sea's surface.

**8 Jan 1893** Burn Murdoch, W.G. (1894) *From Edinburgh to the Antarctic* Longmans, Green and Co, London: 284.

In the south the sea was crossed and patched with ice streams.

2. A **glacier** ending in the sea.

**1907** (Ferrar Glacier) Ferrar, H.T. *Report of the field-geology of the region explored during the 'Discovery' Antarctic expedition, 1901–04. National Antarctic Expedition 1901–1904, Natural history vol 1: Geology* British Museum, London: 63.

[glossary] Glaciers of Greenland type, or ice-streams, drain an ice-sheet and end in the sea.

**1911** Hobbs, William Herbert *Characteristics of existing glaciers* The Macmillan Company, NY: 221.

In part the Ross Barrier clearly derives its nourishment from the inland plateau ice lying to the south and west. The outlets for this material are great ice streams (one of them fifty miles in width), and so unlike any other known type of glacier that they are deserving of a new and technical name. In the reports of the British expeditions they have been referred to as "inlets" because they offer a possible ingress to the plateau. The term "outlet" would better describe their function in the ice economy, and they will hereafter be referred to by that term. Off these great outlets from the inland plateau ice, the surface of the shelf ice is found to be thrown into long undulations which are recognizable for a distance of twenty miles or more.

**1954** *Polar Record* 7(48) Jul: 185.

"Ice streams". There is at present no generally accepted term to describe an outlet glacier of an inland ice sheet where there is no exposed rock to define its marginal limits. The feature is well known in Antarctica, and consists of part of an inland ice sheet in which the ice flows more rapidly than, and not necessarily in the same direction as, the surrounding ice. The fast-moving part is often intensely crevassed ... The terms "depression glacier", "channel glacier", "glacial

valley", and "ice stream" have been used. Depression glacier could only qualify if a depression were an essential surface characteristic, and it is not. A glacial valley would be liable to confusion with a glaciated valley. This reduces the choice to channel glacier or ice stream. The latter seems better on account of the impression it conveys of movement, and it was the term first used in describing these features. Valley glaciers draining an inland ice sheet and ending in the sea (the Greenland type) have been referred to as ice streams, but this use is unnecessary and in fact not common in more recent literature. At sea an ice stream is an isolated strip of brash ice or pack ice pressed together by wind, swell, or tide, but the risk of confusion seems remote.

3. A stream of ice within a larger ice body, flowing faster than the surrounding ice sheet or glacier, and often very wide. A stream might flow at a metre a day, while the surrounding ice flows at a few metres a year. The **West Antarctic ice sheet** contains several such streams.

**1963** *Antarctic Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(8) Dec: 346.

A six-man party from the University of Wisconsin's geophysical and polar research centre was to investigate the existence of a large ice stream which they think drains the Antarctic plateau before moving out to the Filchner Ice Shelf through a gap between the Pensacola and Thiel Mountains, moving at a rate of perhaps 200 to 300 metres a year.

**1993** Fiennes, Ranulph *Mind over matter: the epic crossing of the Antarctic continent* Sinclair-Stevenson, London: 116.

The ice-sheet at this point was pouring down from the high inland plateau with greater velocity than further north. Not so fast that it became an *ice stream* but enough to provide a gradient angled to the sun.

**1994** *Antarctic Society of Australia newsletter* 36 (Mar): 15.

Much of that ice is transported from the interior by fast-moving ice streams and then tipped out onto the ocean surface to form part of one of two vast floating ice shelves — the Ross and the Ronne shelves.

**1996** (McMurdo Sound) Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 166.

'Most of the drainage of this unstable western ice sheet occurs through ice streams. The mechanics' — tapping — 'of ice streaming play a role in the response of the ice sheet to climatic change.'

**ice-strengthened** *adjective*. Also **ice-hardened**

(Of a vessel) Reinforced in order to make a passage through **pack ice**, but not designed as an **icebreaker**.

**1956** *Polar Record* 8(52) Jan: 46.

Ice breakers .. are specially designed ships with the following characteristics: strongly-built hull with wedge-shaped bow, short and broad, small cargo space and a ratio of horse-power to normal displacement of one, or more than one, to one ... Ice strengthened ships .. may either be ships specially designed for polar work, or ordinary freighters with strengthening added.

**1988** (in Antarctic pack ice) Butler, Rowan *Breaking the ice* Albatross Books, Sydney: 124.

*Shirase* was a true icebreaker — unlike *Nella Dan* and *Icebird* which were only ice-strengthened ships.

**1994** Selkirk, Patricia in *Search [Australia and New Zealand Association for the Advancement of Science]* 25(10) Nov/Dec: 292.

Early Antarctic expeditions operated with one ice-strengthened supply ship per season (*Kista Dan*, *Magga Dan*).

1997 *Seattle Times* 6 Apr: A14.

America's Antarctic research program centers on three land bases and two ships, the Nathaniel B. Palmer and the Polar Duke. Of these five components, the Duke is the smallest, cosiest and most modest: a 200-foot, ice-hardened vessel with twin turbine engines and a bright-red hull.

## ice tongue

[See **tongue**.]

A promontory of ice into the sea, usually floating and esp. a **glacier tongue**.

29 Jan 1893 Burn Murdoch, W.G. (1894) *From Edinburgh to the Antarctic* Longmans, Green and Co, London: 303.

The blue waves surge up behind the white reefs and come pouring over the ice tongues, green as emerald.

1907 (Ferrar Glacier) Ferrar, H.T. *Report of the field-geology of the region explored during the 'Discovery' Antarctic expedition, 1901-04. National Antarctic Expedition 1901-1904, Natural history vol 1: geology* British Museum, London: 83.

Near the sea, where the ice-tongue floats in its valley, the tide-crack follows the side of the glacier for a distance of at least 10 miles.

1928 Mawson, Douglas in Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 384.

[glossary] Ice Tongues. "Narrow prolongations or peninsulas of the shelf ice."

1941 (King George VI Sound) *Polar Record* 3(22) July: 442.

Two large ice tongues project north-west from the mountainous cape of the mainland near Lat. 74°S, Long. 77°W.

1969 Keneally, Thomas *The survivor* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 132.

He went to the sledge and stood stiffly looking east, where, the maps had it, was the ice-tongue and the sound still ice-free (perhaps) and the *Westralis*.

1982 Brewster, Barney *Antarctica: wilderness at risk* A.H. & A.W. Reed Ltd, Wellington: ii.

Many of Antarctica's glaciers terminate as "ice tongues", floating on the sea but buffered by permanent sea ice.

1987 Bates, Robert L. and Jackson, Julia A. eds *Glossary of geology, 3rd edn* American Geological Institute, Alexandria: 327.

Ice tongue: Nonpreferred syn. of *tongue* [glaciol].

## ice watch

[Watch has been recorded since 1585 for a period of time in which ship's company remains on deck (NOED).]

The duty of standing watch to record the condition of the **sea ice**, presence of **icebergs** etc.

1954 Giaeaver, John, transl. fr Norwegian by Huggard, E.M. *The white desert: the official account of the Norwegian-British-Swedish antarctic expedition* Chatto & Windus, London: 63.

We arranged a round-the-clock ice-watch, to record amount of ice, thickness and type of floes and so on.

1995 *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] 14(3) Mar: 7.

I reflected briefly on the night when I was on "Ice Watch" on the *Thala Dan*, way below and all those years before, sharing the bridge and hot cocoa with Captain Nielsen and the helmsman ... The little angle-of-roll gauge on the aft bulkhead kept slamming from one stop to the other (it only went to 30°!) in a disconcerting, clock-ticking way. Hans Nielsen, with a sly grin on his face turned to me and said: "Ah my little ship! She is very good in ze ice; she is not so good in ze water!"

## ice wharf

A constructed or natural wharf of ice.

1976 *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XI(2) Jun: 109.

The season saw the demise of the manmade ice wharf constructed in the 1973 winter.

9 Feb 1987 de Poorter, Maj in May, John (1989) *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica, 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 163.

A bit further down the road, near the ice-wharf, we found a similar scene: a pile of truck skeletons, wheels, oil drums, and a pipe discharging brightly coloured liquid straight into the water.

## ice widow

[Similar expressions such as golf-widow have been known since at least 1928 for a woman whose husband spends much of his time playing golf etc. (NOED).]

A woman deprived of her husband while he is in Antarctica.

1971 Young, Pamela *Penguin summer — or, a rare bird in Antarctica* A.H. & A.W. Reed, Wellington: 116.

I sent the longest, rudest telegram in my entire career as an ice-widow, demanding to know if the comfort-loving, celebrity-hungry layabouts who inhabited Scott Base had enjoyed Cape Bird's Christmas cakes in addition to their own twelve-course Christmas dinner as I could think of no other explanation for their non-arrival at the correct address.

## ice year

A general description of the extent and compaction of the **pack ice** during the summer season, a **good ice year** being one with comparatively little pack ice, and a **bad ice year** being the opposite.

1939 Ellsworth, Lincoln in *National Geographic* LXXVI(1) Jul: 129.

It must have been an exceptional ice year, for during those 45 days we passed through pack ice extending a distance of 813 miles north and south, and much of it was heavy two-year-old ice.

1960 Priestley, Sir Raymond in *Polar Record* 10(64): 13.

1959 was a bad "ice" year. In the American convoys I passed through more pack ice than I had ever seen before.

## icing verbal noun

[Icing in nautical and aeronautical use, has been recorded since 1881 in arctic use, for the process of becoming covered with ice (NOED).]

The forming of ice on exposed objects.

1957 Sullivan, Walter *Quest for a continent* Secker & Warburg, London: 181.

A legend had developed that the Antarctic air was too dry to deposit ice on aircraft. The reason for the myth was that no one had flown through fog or clouds in that area if it could be avoided. Highjump demonstrated over and over that icing is as much of a hazard in Antarctica as in the North.

1964 Helm, A.S. and Miller, J.H. *Antarctica: the story of the New Zealand party of the Trans-Antarctic expedition* R.E. Owen, Government Printer, Wellington: 380.

An attempt on December 30 to fly from South Ice to Scott Base broke down when icing and turbulence were met in thick cloud about halfway on the leg from South Ice to the South Pole, and the plane had to turn back.

**1982** Ledingham, Rod *ANARE dog drivers manual* Antarctic Division, Department of Science and the Environment: 17.

Icing: Long haired dogs become iced in blizzards, and may have to be cut free or they may lose hair pulling themselves free.

## icy wastes *Also ice wastes*

### The antarctic regions.

**[17 May 1911]** Gran, Tryggve in Hattersley-Smith, Geoffrey, ed. and McGhie, Ellen-Johanne, transl. (1984) *The Norwegian with Scott: Tryggve Gran's Antarctic diary 1910-1913* National Maritime Museum, UK: 91.

At midnight, I went out in the storm, gave a cheer for Norway and sang: 'Ja, vi elsker' to the echo over the icy wasteland.]

**1930** Villiers, A.J. *By way of Cape Horn* Garden City Publishing Co., NY: 165.

With the thermometer at four or five Fahrenheit, a living gale blowing from the ice-wastes of the Antarctic not many miles away.

**1931** (Ross Barrier) O'Brien, John S. *By dog sled for Byrd: 1600 miles across Antarctic ice* Thomas S. Rockwell, Chicago: 16.

The geological party that forms part of Admiral Byrd's South Polar Expedition is preparing to drive across the icy wastes of that treacherous barrier that has snuffed out the lives of many brave men.

**1967** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* June: 28.

The further south we ventured, the more we found that a previous trip to the icy wastes gives one a certain licence to "fiddle" with the truth.

## igloo

*Igloo has been recorded since 1662 in Eskimo use: DCaNE gives iglu as East Eskimo for dwelling, recorded in English there since 1832 for a domed structure of blocks of hard snow. Alaskan igloos (DALaskE: 1887-) are often not dome-shaped, and can be partly underground; they can be made of other materials than snow blocks. DALaskE gives the origin as northern and eastern Eskimo, for example, the Inupiaq iglu house.]*

1. A temporary dwelling or shelter of ice or snow blocks, or one partly of these.

**1900** Cook, Frederick A. *Through the first Antarctic night 1898-1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 357.

I have always found that a small saw was better adapted for the purpose [sc. than a walrus tooth]. With this, one can improve on Eskimo methods and build a much stronger igloo.

**1913** (Terra Nova Bay) *Daily Mirror [London]* 12 Feb (no. 2903): 4.

Duly considering the resources at his disposal, he selected for the home of his party a snowdrift, and into this they cut and burrowed, eventually completing an igloo, 13 ft. by 9 ft. in its dimensions. This they insulated with seaweed.

**1922** Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Picador, London: 266.

Our scheme was to build an igloo with rock walls, banked up with snow.

**1949** (Heard Island) Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 133.

When the men returned to the mountain camp, Johnny Abbottsmith went along to show them how to build an igloo. The temperature was four degrees below, but not cold enough for the snow-house to freeze solid. Despite dripping water from the roof, the inside of the igloo, eight feet by four feet, was roomier than the nylon tent.

**1964** (Scott Base) *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(10) Jun: 423.

Three men have been constructing an igloo to "Eskimo specifications" and claim that it is to be used for "contemplation of the Antarctic Silence".

**1991** Bainbridge, Beryl *The birthday boys* Duckworth, London: 146.

At last we reached the Cape, and in a snowy dip between the twin peaks of the Knoll, 800 feet above the sea, we pitched our last camp and set to work to build the igloo.

2. *[This sense is recorded from 1956 (NOED) but not in an antarctic context.]*

A dome-shaped building — in the antarctic regions, spec. a prefabricated fibreglass one used for shelter.

**1981** (Cape Crozier) Land, Barbara *The new explorers: women in Antarctica* Dodd, Mead & Co, New York: 28.

One day a helicopter arrived from McMurdo bringing a collapsible fiber glass igloo.

**1991** *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions newsletter* Sept: 11.

There are also five field shelters (glass fibre "igloos" established in 1986) for use by ANARE field parties.

## illex squid *Falkland Islands*

The reddish-brown squid *Illex argentinus* (fam. Ommastrephidae), the Argentine short-finned squid, which is commercially fished around the Falkland Islands and also occurs along east coastal South America.

**1988** *National Geographic* 173(3) Mar: 394.

"There are two kinds of squid fished here, *Loligo gahi* and *Illex argentinus*," he told me. "*Loligo* is found to the south and is fished by the Spanish, Italians, and Poles. Asians favor the *Illex*, which can bring \$1,800 a ton in Japan."

**1993** (Falkland Islands) *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 12 (Mar): 12.

The Argentine is issuing cut-price fishing licences to foreign fishing fleets in the South Atlantic under terms far less favourable for illex squid stocks.

**1997** *Falklands Conservation: news from the Falklands* June: 2.

A total of 91 Jigging Vessels are fishing for Illex squid in the north west of the Falklands Fishing Zone, most of these are Korean or Japanese. This year the average catch is about 20 tonne per night, but catches as high as 99 tonnes per night have been recorded.

## illi, illie *See irre*

## immersion foot

*Immersion foot has been recorded since 1941 in general English use (NOED.)*

Damage to the feet brought on by prolonged cold and wet conditions.

**1942** Greene, Raymond in *Polar Record* 3(23) Jan: 482.

Immersion Foot. This is of like cause with trench foot [sc. symptoms like frostbite] and occurs in those who, after shipwreck, are forced to spend hours or days in water-logged boats. There have been, at the time of writing, no published descriptions of the condition, and I personally have seen only one case. It appears to be identical in all respects with trench foot.

**1957** (Ross Sea) Findlay, Dr J.F. *Medical report for summer 1956-1957 to Ross Sea Committee* Royal Society of New Zealand: 3.

Of considerable interest was the occurrence of immersion foot in the summer of 1955-56 among one of the New Zealand Base Reconnaissance observers with the Americans. This must be accepted as a hazard among personnel operating on foot on sea ice during the warmest period of the summer when constant wet feet from frequent immersion in thaw pools must be expected.

**1964** Helm, A.S. and Miller, J.H. *Antarctica: the story of the New Zealand party of the Trans-Antarctic expedition* R.E. Owen, Government Printer, Wellington: 95.

The journey had ended with a 19-hour, 30-mile haul through rotten ice across the northern limit of the ice shelf. They all arrived in good condition except for sunburn and "immersion foot"<sup>1</sup>.

<sup>1</sup>Footnote: Caused by continually wet feet.

### **impenetrable pack** Also *impenetrable ice*

**Pack ice** which cannot be broken by ship.

**1777** Forster, George *A voyage round the world, in his Britannic Majesty's sloop, Resolution, commanded by Capt. James Cook* B. White, London, vol 1: 100.

The quantity of impenetrable ice to the south did not permit us to advance towards that quarter.

**1870** Hamilton, Captain R.V. in *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society* XIV(II): 149.

Not one of the novices in ice-navigation would have attempted it. They would have returned and swelled the number of "impenetrable packs."

**1906** Rudmose Brown, R.N., Mossman, RC and Pirie, J.H. Harvey *The voyage of the "Scotia", being the record of a voyage of exploration in Antarctic Seas by Three of the Staff* William Blackwood and Sons, Edinburgh: 67.

About 6 P.M. we crossed Weddell's track, but under very different conditions from those experienced by him; for while he was favoured with open sea, we had the impenetrable pack under our lee.

**1907** (Weddell Sea) Clarke, William Eagle in *The Ibis* I(II) Apr: 327.

At the beginning of March the old track of the previous year was crossed, and a few days afterwards the 'Scotia' broke her southern record of 1903, and that of Ross in 1843. Skirting, more or less, the open pack for 300 miles, the ship met with no obstacle to her progress southward, whereas in 1903 all had been impenetrable ice.

**31 Dec 1929** (66°S, 65°E) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 297.

Capt Davis's] ... instructions are to wake him when ship reaches heavy impenetrable ice on southerly course.

**1950** Saunders, Alfred *A camera in Antarctica* Winchester Publications, London: 102.

When we reached seventy degrees south our progress was brought to a stop. Before us was an impenetrable pack — thick, heavy, hummocky and cemented into one vast, solid mass.

### **imperial shag** Also *imperial cormorant*

The bird *Phalacrocorax atriceps*: see **blue-eyed shag**.

**1978** (Marion Island) Siegfried, W.R. and others in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* 8: 75.

Of the 13 species considered here, only the king and gentoo penguins, imperial cormorant, sub-Antarctic skua and kelp gull are capable of laying replacement clutches.

**1987** Harrison, Peter *Seabirds of the world: a photographic guide* Christopher Helm, London: 230.

Imperial Shag *Phalacrocorax atriceps* .. a widespread black and white sub-Antarctic cormorant formerly treated as several species (Blue-eyed, King, Kerguelen etc.) but now generally regarded as a single species with dimorphic plumage.

**1990** Nagle, Robin *Penguins* Mallard Press, New York: 37.

[caption] The imperial or blue-eyed shag .. dwells on the tip of South America and the Antarctic peninsula. It's [sic] neighbors include banded and Antarctic penguins.

### **inaccessibility, pole of** See **pole of inaccessibility**

### **Inaccessible Island**

Inaccessible Island, 37°19'S, 12°44'W, an uninhabited island lying 19 km (12 miles) southwest of Tristan da Cunha, is one of the Tristan group of islands. It was originally named *t' Nachtglas* after the Dutch ship which discovered it in 1656. According to Paul Carroll [source: <http://www.wndrland.demon.co.uk>, 11 Mar 1999], their note of it added in brackets "inaccessible", signifying the difficulties of access to its coast.

### **Inaccessible (Island) flightless rail** Also *Inaccessible (Island) rail*

The dark-coloured flightless bird *Atlantista rogersi* (fam. Rallidae), the smallest flightless bird in the world. See also **flightless rail** (2).

**1926** Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 210.

Inaccessible, like Tristan, has its 'Island Hen,' and it is one of very few regrets that we found it impossible to get a specimen of it. It is probably a gallinule, but it is certainly a different species from the Tristan bird. It is only about a fourth the size ... It [is] exactly like a black chicken two days old, the legs and beak black, the latter long and slender, the head small, the wings short and soft and useless for flight. It is common on the plateau, and runs like a partridge among the long grass and ferns, feeding upon insects and seeds.

**1952** Hagen, Yngvar *Birds of Tristan da Cunha* Det Norske Videnskap Akademi i Oslo/Hos Jacob Dybwad, Oslo: 191.

There are quite a number of "flightless" rails in the world, but none of them possesses a structure of the barboles like that in the Inaccessible Rail.

**1975** Watson, George E. *Birds of the Antarctic and subantarctic* Antarctic Research Series, American Geophysical Union, Washington DC: 188.

The movements of the Inaccessible Island flightless rail are deliberate, but it runs with great speed and takes cover in tussock.

**1976** Ripley, S. Dillon *Rails of the world* David R. Godine, Boston: 140.

Inaccessible Island rail ... This small (length 5 inches or 12.5 cm), blackish-brown rail is found on one of the islands in the Tristan da Cunha group, a remote assemblage of reefs, stacks, and volcanic cones lying in the South Atlantic Ocean almost 2000 miles east of South America and about 1800 miles west of the Cape of Good Hope.

**1988** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 2 (Mar): 12.

Inaccessible Island is home to the world's smallest flightless rail, the Inaccessible Rail ... The rails resemble miniature kiwis with soft, fluffy plumage and very small wings and spend much of the time in burrows.

**1996** Woolley, John in *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 19 (Sept): 8.

The omnipresent but invisible Inaccessible Flightless Rail whose 'cheep cheep cheep' in the depths of the tussock was constant source of entertainment for the next month.

### **inland ice** Also *inland ice sheet*

[Inland ice (sheet) is recorded first in arctic, specifically Greenland, use, from 1853 (NOED).]

The land-based **ice sheet** of Antarctica inland from its coast and (occas.) that of antarctic islands (see 1912 quotation).

**1900** Cook, Frederick A. *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 141.

In our preparations for this ascent we made arrangement to camp on the inland ice for a week.

**1901** Gregory, J.W. and Bonney, T.G. in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 197.

The Land Ice will probably be found to consist of inland ice sheets and of tributary valley glaciers.

**1907** Ferrar, H.T. *Report of the field-geology of the region explored during the 'Discovery' Antarctic expedition, 1901–04. National Antarctic Expedition 1901–1904, Natural history vol 1: geology* British Museum, London: 63.

[glossary] Ice-sheet, or Inland-ice, is the name applied to a mass of ice which covers a continental area of land. In South Victoria Land the sheets are of unknown extent, and enwrap and obliterate the inequalities of the interior land-surface, leaving coastal land-fringes comparatively free of ice.

**9 Dec 1908** (nr 84°S) Shackleton, E.H. (1909) *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907–1909* William Heinemann, London: 318.

We are anxiously hoping to find soon a level and inland ice-sheet so that we can put on more speed.

**1912** (South Georgia) Skottsberg, Carl in Nordenskjöld, Otto *Wissenschaftliche ergebnisse der Schwedischen Südpolar-Expedition 1901–1903* Lithographisches Institut des Generalstabs, Stockholm: 3.

The inland ice does not form an ice-cap as on many of the small islands near the Antarctic continent, but is of an Alpine type.

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 384.

[glossary] Inland Ice. An obsolescent term for Continental, Highland or Island Ice.

**1943** Hydrographic Office, US Navy Department *Sailing directions for Antarctica. H.O. no 138* Hydrographic Office, Washington: 23.

Highland ice — a comparatively thin but continuous ice cover conforming to a considerable extent to the irregularities of the land upon which it rests. Sometimes referred to as "Ice cap," or "Inland ice".

**1958** (Halley Bay) Fuchs, Sir Vivian in Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund *The crossing of Antarctica: the Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955–58* Cassell & Co, London: 25.

I hoped to see the junction of the floating ice shelf with the inland ice, for there too an impassable crevassed area could be expected.

**1963** *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* 2 (Dec): 74.

The Brunt Ice Shelf is maintained by outflow of the inland ice and the net annual snow accumulation on the ice shelf.

### **inside man** noun and attrib. Also *man inside*

The person responsible for setting up the inside of a tent and cooking the evening meal. See also **outside man**.

**1915** Bickerton, in Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911–1914* William Heinemann, London: 12.

Several times fault had been found with the way the tent was pitched. I had not yet tried my hand at being the "man inside" during this operation.

**1955** (Marguerite Bay base) Walton, E.W. Kevin *Two years in the Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 71.

To save brushing the drift snow off it was only necessary to push the open end of the bag into the tent entrance and the inside man could draw the bedding inwards, leaving the bag to be shaken free from snow outside the tent.

**1963** McKenzie, Douglas *Opposite poles* Robert Hale & Co, London/Whitcombe & Tombs, New Zealand: 58.

Once the poles were wriggled in .. the surplus outer skirt of the double-skinned tent was settled as a foot around the perimeter and loaded thickly with shovels of ice dug from alongside. This was primarily the task of the "outside man"; he also fed the camping gear in through the flap of the tent as required by the "inside man", who was now moving about on one knee in the shadowy cavern to produce a form of domestic snugness.

**1982** Ledingham, Rod *ANARE dog drivers manual* Antarctic Division, Dept Science and the Environment: 88.

The inside man/outside man system works very well. Each member of the party clearly understands what his job is.

**1996** Bertram, Colin in *Polar Record* 32(181): 155.

While the 'inside' man made ready within, the 'outside' man would pass in the floor cover, the reindeer skins and the sleeping bags.

### **inter-nunatak** adjective

Between **nunataks**.

**1982** Wolmarans, L.G. and Kent, L.E. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* Suppl. 2: 4.

In 1971 radio-echo sounding to determine the thickness of the ice on the shelf and in inter-nunatak areas was commenced.

### **intra-Antarctic** adjective

Within continental Antarctica.

**1993** *Age [Melbourne]* 20 Aug: 5.

The runway, planned close to Davis Station, would cater for intra-Antarctic flights.

### **intrepid** Aust, usu. somewhat jocular

[From intrepid fearless.]

An **expeditioner**.

**1963** *Wilkes Hard Times [Wilkes, Antarctica]* 1(8) Sept: 3.

Seeing an ad. that [sc. said] "Intrepids wanted in Antarctica", I applied, was accepted, and the rest you know.

**1966** (Mawson) *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 4(6) June: 281.

The ice in the harbour, now being more than two feet thick, some intrepids endeavoured to find their sea legs under the delusion that the ice extended all the way to Australia.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 214.

One trip with a difference .. set off for the central Massons on the polar plateau with all the usual tents and safety gear,

plus a portable gas barbie and ample supplies of steaks and sausages. ... Unfortunately a huge snowstorm compelled the intrepids to cook inside their polar pyramid tents.

## iron dog

[DAlaskE records the iron dog in use from 1960-.]

### A motor toboggan or tin dog.

**1964** *News from the South* [NZARP, Wellington] 5 (1) Feb: 1.

Vic McGregor .. is 'sold' on motorised toboggan travel. Dave Massam ... is still a dog fancier but now has a bias towards the 'iron dog'.

**1995** Tomkins, Bob in Robinson, Shelagh, ed. *Huskies in harness: a love story in Antarctica* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 78.

Do lovers of the Iron Dogs feel sentimental about their charges, too? Do they get distressed when a snowcat gets slotted?

### irre verb, dog-sledging. Also *eelee, illi, illie, irra, rrrrr*

[Perhaps from the Greenland *harru harru* dog command, meaning 'turn left' (Fortescue 88).]

A dog command, delivered as a long, rolling 'r'. Its usual meaning is 'turn left', but sometimes it is used for 'turn right': see quotations.

**1953** Adie, Raymond J. in *Polar Record* 6(45) Jan: 641.

The words of command used by the Falkland Islands Dependencies Survey are corruptions from arctic terms. In order to standardize them the following terms were used at Stonington Island:

To start "Up dogs — weet"

To stop "A-a-a-a"

Turn right "Auk, Auk" ("au" pronounced as "ou" in loud)

Turn left "l-r-r-re" (with a long rolling "r").

**1957** Anderson, W. Ellery *Expedition south* Evans Brothers, London: 54.

By the end of the day I had learnt my *irra* from my *auk*, and was delighted to find I could drive the team from the hut to the icefoot, halt it, load the sledge and drive back.

**1957** Dovers, Robert *Huskies* G. Bell and Sons, London: 21.

The commands were quite simple. 'Ee ee' for 'go'; 'Heely!' for 'right'; 'Yuck' for 'left'; and 'Whoa!' for 'stop'.

**1962** (Scott Base) Henderson, Jim *One foot at the Pole* Whitcombe & Tombs, Christchurch: 160.

You don't have to learn much dog language to take over a team: 'Owk or 'Auk' for 'Right', a long rolling 'Rrrrrrrr' for 'Left', 'Hweet' for starting or speeding up, and soft gentle soothing 'Ah-h-h-h-h, boys' for stopping.

**1963** McKenzie, Douglas *Opposite poles* Robert Hale & Co, London/Whitcombe & Tombs, New Zealand: 31.

The dogs had been reared to understand instruction in Greenland Eskimo, and while this language might have meant everything to the dogs it was a harsh and confusing tongue for many observers on the glacier who did not speak Greenland Eskimo very well. Four words and expressions were in common use ... A merciless vibration of the tip of the tongue — "R-r-r-r-r!" — was used for "Turn left!".

**1963** Wilkes *Hard Times* [Wilkes, Antarctica] 1(8) Sept: 5.

[cartoon caption] Look! The confounded idiot just gave an order "Illie eeouk"!

**1966** MacKenzie, D., ed. *Fog 'N Bog* [Yearbook of Macquarie Island ANARE overwinterers]: 23.

If the lead dogs are perfect gentlemen they will turn left or right on command at hearing the words *eelee* and *eeyuk*.

**1966** Baum, Allyn *Antarctica: the worst place in the world* Macmillan Co, NY: 117.

For a left-turn, "Rrrrrrruck," with a rolled "r."

**1992** Lied, Commander Nils Oscar. *The true story of a husky* Kerr Publishing, Sydney: 89.

To teach the team the difference between right and left, I used the Eskimo words 'illi' for right and 'eeouk' for left, commands learnt in my youth from Ajungilak, my Eskimo friend.

**1995** Ledingham, Rod in Robinson, Shelagh, ed. *Huskies in harness: a love story in Antarctica* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 22.

This was to be my introduction to dog driving. I was given a team called the Picts, and shown the commands: the one for left was *auk*, the one for right was *irrrrrrrh*, *ahhhhhhhnow* was to stop, *up dogs* and *wheet* was to go.

## isabelline adjective

Isabelline greyish yellow, perhaps from an association with Queen Elizabeth I, is recorded in English from 1859 (NOED). Note that in the Wilson quotation, the word is used in 1967 by the editor, not in 1902 by Wilson.]

(Of a penguin), paler than normal in colour.

**1937** Falla, R.A. *Birds*. BAZARE reports series B, vol 2 Hassell Press, Adelaide: 101.

No. 14-48 (Otago Museum [sc. a royal penguin]) is isabelline brown on the parts that are normally dark.

**1953** (Macquarie Island, 1950) Gwynn, A.M. *The egg-laying and incubation periods of rockhopper, macaroni and gentoo penguins*. ANARE Reports Series B vol. 1 Zoology Antarctic Division, Department of External Affairs, Melbourne: 5.

In one [sc. penguin] egg the newly hatched chick was noted as "puny and isabelline" but nine days later it was "healthy ... rather light coloured".

**1967** (9 Nov 1902, Cape Crozier) Roberts, Brian, ed. *Edward Wilson's birds of the Antarctic* New Orchard Editions, Poole [Dorset]: 63.

Adélie Penguin, *Pygoscelis adellae* ... 75. Adult in normal plumage 76. Adult. isabelline variation.

**1985** Stonehouse, Bernard in Bonner, W.N. and Walton, D.W.H., eds *Key environments: Antarctica* Pergamon Press, Oxford: 272.

[caption] Gentoo penguin nesting site in tussock grassland at South Georgia. Note the pale (isabelline) penguin in the centre.

**1996** Soper, Tony and Scott, Dafila *Antarctica: a guide to the wildlife* Bradt Publications, Chalfont St Peter: 39.

The occasional coffee-coloured (isabelline) penguin may be seen amongst the hordes of chinstrap or even other penguins. These leucistic penguins are not a different species, but the result of a dilution of normal pigmentation.

## island boat *Tristan da Cunha*

A canvas-covered painted boat equipped with oars and sail, with a wooden frame traditionally of driftwood and the wood of the **island tree**, formerly built and used on Tristan da Cunha; these are also known as **longboats**.

**24 Nov 1901** Elliott, H.V. quoted in Tristan da Cunha (1903) *Further correspondence relating to the island of Tristan da Cunha*. In continuation of [C8357] February 1897. *Parliamentary papers presented to both Houses of parliament by Command of His Majesty*. June 1903 His Majesty's Stationery Office, London: 8.

The stores were taken by ship's boats to within a couple of hundred yards or so of shore when they were turned over to the Island boats — these boats being handier for hauling up on the beach, a practice that on account of swell always has to be carried out landing on the Island.

**1926** Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 36.



The island boats, built of canvas and thin planking, looked very frail and small and much in need of paint.

**1943** *Tristan Times* no 1 (6 Mar): [1].

Six island boats returned from Nightingale Island with guano.

**1959** *Tristan Topics* 2 (Jan): 4.

70 tons of cement for instance has to be got ashore in canvas covered island boats.

### island cock *Tristan da Cunha*. Also *island hen*

[George Comer (1858–1937) collected the first specimens of *Porphyriornis comeri*, one of the island cocks. Comer was second mate of the Francis Allyn 1887–89, and was 'something of a naturalist'.]

Any of three **flightless rails**.

**[11 Oct 1824]** Earle, Augustus (1832) *A narrative of a nine months' residence in New Zealand, in 1827; together with a journal of a residence in Tristan d'Acunha, an island situated between South America and the Cape of Good Hope* Longman, Rees, Orme, Brown, Green, & Longman, London: 336.

Besides our albatross, the dogs caught some small birds, about the size of our partridge, but their gait was something like that of the penguin. The male is of a glossy black, with a bright red, hard crest on the top of the head. The hen is brown. They stand erect, and have long yellow legs, with which they run very fast; their wings are small and useless for flying, but they are armed with sharp spurs for defence, and also, I imagine, for assisting them in climbing, as they are found generally among the rocks. The name they give this bird here, is simply "cock", its only note being a noise very much resembling the repetition of that word. Its flesh is plump, fat, and excellent eating.]

**1905** (Gough Island) Clarke, William Eagle in *The Ibis* 5: 253.

The Gallinule or 'Island Hen' (*Porphyriornis comeri*) appears to differ only slightly from the species (*P. nesiotis*) found on Tristan Island.

**1922** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* XLIII(CCLXXI): 4.

The 'Island hen' (*Porphyriornis comeri*) was found to be plentiful, though difficult to collect in the thick growth of tussock and fern.

**1926** Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 169.

The most interesting bird of all is the island cock, of which I was fortunate in procuring the first specimen known to science, and which we are going to send to South Kensington and the Cape. It is a small wingless bird of the rail species, I think, wingless, unable to fly, but can run with great speed, shelters in the tussock, and lives in a burrow. Its eggs are not known, it does not migrate, and it feeds, I understand, on insects and worms. Its radius once extended to Tristan, but it is now solely found on Inaccessible. There was also a large species on Tristan, but it is now extinct, though only in recent years. It is black and brown in colour with pink eyes, The Shackleton–Rowett Expedition knew of the island cock from the islanders, but Mr. Wilkins, the naturalist, was unable to procure skins on his visit to Inaccessible, and he left me some materials and directions in case I should be able to capture specimens of this very remarkable bird.

Footnote: The scientific name given to the bird is *Atlantisia Rogersi*.

**1940** Christopherson, Erling, transl. fr Norwegian by Benham, R.L. *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 113.

Turning on the lights again, I suddenly heard a twittering from a number of creatures. I then felt sure that the sound must proceed from *Atlantisia* ... Then I saw one of them! First of all only two fiery, deeply-set eyes were visible, then the light suddenly shone on so tiny and frail a creature that I felt I must be dreaming ... For an instant I was reminded of a little

photograph of a kiwi — both had the same loose cluster of feathers ... Then I grabbed! *Atlantisia*, the most remarkable bird in existence, was at last in my clutches ... I think that .. only Ducane and I had the experience of seeing an "island cock" in its natural surroundings.

**1964** Jenkins, Geoffrey A *grue of ice* Fontana Books, London: 24.

The bird was shiny black, with fiery bloodshot eyes ... "Island Cock!" he yelled. "Luck! It's as old as the Dodo. The wind blew it clean off the island! Lucky! Lucky!"

Lucky! We would need every bit of luck, I thought grimly, looking around. The bird's over-size talons gripped the gratings. The Flightless Rail, the bird that can't fly and lives in burrows in the ground. It's in the same category as the New Zealand kiwi. I had no interest in ornithological curiosities at that moment.

**1997** Woolley, John (quoting Nolloth, Captain H.S., 1856) in *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 21 (Sept): 6.

The only land birds are said to be a thrush, a kind of partridge, and the "island cock".

The latter is a carrion bird about half the size of a fowl, — plumage black, excepting one or two white feathers in the tail; feet green; beak red, with, in its upper part, a red waxy-looking protuberance. This bird is frequently hunted with dogs, and is considered a great delicacy by the islanders.

### island tree *noun and attrib., Tristan da Cunha*

The evergreen tree *Phylica nitida* (fam. Rhamnaceae), the only tree native to Tristan da Cunha. The tree rarely grows as tall as 6 m (20 ft), is twisted and gnarled, and burns well even when green. It occurs on the Tristan da Cunha group, Gough and Amsterdam Islands, and Mauritius. It is also sometimes called the **buckthorn tree** or **phylica**.

**[16 Dec 1817]** Carmichael, Captain Dugald in *Transactions of the Linnean Society of London* (1818) 12(2): 498.

The only plant on the island that approaches to the size of a tree is a species of *Phylica*. This plant occupies not only the whole of the plain, but has also spread over the face of the mountain, wherever its roots could insinuate themselves into the crevices of the rock. In favourable situations it grows to the height of twenty feet and upwards, measuring from twelve to eighteen inches in diameter.

**1901** Commander of the 'Beagle' in Tristan da Cunha (1903) *Further correspondence relating to the island of Tristan da Cunha. In continuation of [C8357] February 1897. Parliamentary papers presented to both Houses of parliament by Command of His Majesty. June 1903 [UK parliaments]* His Majesty's Stationery Office, London: 9.

The tree of the Island which, I think, is a Juniper and upon which the Islanders are dependent for their wood for fuel, is getting scarce in the neighbourhood of settlement, but is abundant further off, and there is no fear of supply failing.]

**1910** Barrow, K.M. *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 276.

Of the trees and plants those we most frequently met with were:— .. The Island Tree (*Phylica nitida*). Found also on the islands Gough, Amsterdam, Bourbon, and Mauritius [etc.].

**1940** Brander, J. *Tristan da Cunha 1506–1902* Allen & Unwin, London: 17.

The only indigenous tree on the island is one of the Rhamnaceae (the buckthorn family), the *Phylica nitida*; it has no English name, and is called "Island tree" by the Tristanites. It is a small tree, medium in height, of not more than twenty or at most thirty feet, sending out long spreading branches over the ground. It grows singly and in close thickets or clumps. In some sheltered situations on the island the

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

*Phylica* grows to a size which would provide knees and timbers for boats. It burns well even in a green state.

**1957** Booy, D.M. *Rock of exile: a narrative of Tristan da Cunha* J.M. Dent & Sons, London: 91.

The twisting 'island-tree' rafters, the sagging thatch, and barefaced walls contributed a byre-like effect to the inside of the building.

**1958** Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 17.

Except near the Settlement, the Base and the cliffs are covered in a scrub of the 'island tree' (*Phylica arborea*). This is an evergreen, with small leaves, and it rarely attains a height of much over fifteen feet. The trunks grow along the ground

and the branches intertwine, to form a dense tangle in which a walking pace of a quarter of a mile an hour is a good speed.

**1963** Mackay, Margaret *Angry island: the story of Tristan da Cunha (1506-1963)* Arthur Barker, London: 148.

Soap had to be brewed from blubber or from the sap of island-tree, while a broom was an island-tree whisk.

**1986** Perry, Frances in *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* (1995) 16 (Mar): 5.

Altogether there are 34 endemics (plants peculiar to Tristan), there appears to be only one island tree. Called *Phylica arborea* it is evergreen and flowers in late summer (February/March) with small scarlet fruits which do not ripen until the following summer.



**jackass penguin** *Falkland Islands. Also simply jackass*

[There are two penguins of the genus *Spheniscus* with a loud, braying call known as jackasses, the other being the southern African *S. demersus*.]

The burrowing penguin *Spheniscus magellanicus* (fam. Spheniscidae), which has two distinctive black bands across the upper breast. It breeds along coastal southern South America and in the Falkland Islands, and is also called the **magellanic penguin**, the name recommended by ornithologists.

**1833** (Falkland Islands) Fanning, Edmund *Voyages round the world; with selected sketches of voyages to the South Seas ... between the years 1792 and 1832* Collins & Hannay, New York: 22.

There are four different kinds of this amphibious bird, viz. the King penguin, which is the largest, the Jackass penguin, the John penguin, and the Mackaronie.

**19 May 1834** (Berkeley Sound, Falkland Islands) Darwin, Charles (1901) *Journal of researches into the natural history and geology of the countries visited during the voyage round the world of H.M.S. 'Beagle' under command of Captain Fitz Roy, R.N., 2nd edn* John Murray, London: 200.

Having placed myself between a penguin (*Aptenodytes demersa*) and the water, I was much amused by watching its habits. It was a brave bird; and till reaching the sea, it regularly fought and drove me backwards. Nothing less than heavy blows would have stopped him; every inch he gained he firmly kept, standing close before me erect and determined. When thus opposed he continually rolled his head from side to side, in a very odd manner, as if the power of distinct vision lay only in the anterior and basal part of each eye. This bird is commonly called the jackass penguin, from its habit, while on shore, of throwing its head backwards, and making a loud strange noise, very like the braying of an ass.

**1860** (Falkland Islands) Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* II(VIII) Oct: 336.

The Falkland Islands, situated in 51° south latitude, are yearly visited by thousands of Penguins, who come there for the purpose of breeding. The first of these is the jackass Penguin (*Aptenodytes demersa*), so called from its braying noise. These birds occupy their burrows in the ground, in which they deposit their eggs, towards the latter end of September, and commence laying, almost to a day, on the 7th of October ... They lay two eggs, of a white colour.

**1904** (*Spheniscus magellanicus*, Falkland Islands) Vallentin, Rupert in *Memoirs and Proc of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no. 23: 25.

A sitting "jackass" will frequently, without any remonstrance, allow the eggs to be removed from beneath her with the crooked handle of a walking stick, if the operation is performed gently.

**1917** (Falkland Islands) Beck, Rollo H. in *The American Museum Journal* XVII(7) Nov: 432.

I ... discovered also two turkey vultures' nests tucked away down at the foot of clumps of tussac grass each within a few feet of jackass penguin burrows.

**1979** Peterson, Roger Tory *Penguins* Houghton Mifflin Co., Boston: 7.

It is especially inadvisable to handle penguins of the Jackass group. Their bills have a hook-tipped maxilla that dovetails between sharp double blades.

**1991** Gaskin, Chris and Peat, Neville *The world of penguins* Hodder & Stoughton, Auckland: 37.

The braying calls of the African and South American penguins earned for the Black-footed and Magellanic species, in particular, the unflattering title of Jackass.

**Jack rook** *Falkland Islands*

[From Jack a variant of John.]

The bird *Phalacrocorax australis*: see **Johnny rook**.

**1910** Cobb, Arthur F. *Wildlife in the Falkland Islands* Gowans & Gray, London: 68.

[caption] Jack rook and dead goose. The Johnny Rook has decreased in numbers in the Falklands of late years.

**1930** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 39(9) (1 Sept): 121.

In view of the increasing rarity of the bird locally known as the Jack or Johnnie Rook which has been reported the payment by the Government for the beaks of this bird will be discontinued in the future.

**jacopever** *Tristan da Cunha and Gough Island. Also jacopever*

[From South African jacopever or jacopewer, any of several bulging-eyed, red fish including *Sebasichthys capensis*. The name comes from Jacob Evert(sen), a seventeenth century Dutch sea captain.]

The reddish-brown marine fish *Sebasichthys capensis* (fam. Scorpaenidae), which grows to 37 cm (15 in) long and occurs in the nearshore waters of Tristan da Cunha and Gough Island, as well as in South African waters. See also **soldier**.

**1817** (Tristan da Cunha) Carmichael, Captain Dugald in *Transactions of the Linnean Society of London* (1818) 12(2): 494.

The coast abounds in a variety of excellent fish, which will prove a valuable source of subsistence should the island come to be permanently inhabited. Among these are several species well known at the Cape of Good Hope. The Snook (*Scomber serpens*), the Horse-mackarel (*Scomber Trachurus*), the Roman fish (*Sparus*), and the Jacobeever (*Scorpaena Capensis*).

**1886** Smith, Margaret M. and Heemstra, Phillip C. *Smiths' sea fishes* Springer-Verlag, Berlin: 477.

*Sebastes capensis* ... False jacopever ... Also occurs at Gough and Tristan da Cunha islands and possibly off southern and western South America.

**1999** *Island life* <http://home.intekom.com/gough/life.htm> [accessed 3 Mar 1999].

Marine life around Gough Island is abundant. The most common inshore fish are the Jacopewer (*Sebasichthys capensis*) and the Fivefinger.

**jade berg** *Also jade ice, jade iceberg*

A **green iceberg**.

**1986** Pyne, Stephen J. *The ice: a journey to Antarctica* University of Iowa Press: 9.

The origin of the jade-green ice is uncertain. Green ice includes a mixture of contaminants, especially particulate protein-nitrogen, but its peculiar appearance seems to derive from a pure, bubble-free ice fabric that apparently originates in the vigorous shear zones found in mountain glaciers.

**1988** Porter, Eliot *Antarctica*, 2nd edn Arch Cape Press, NY: 156. [caption] Jade iceberg, colored by algae and plankton, stranded off Livingston Island.

**1990** *Antarctic Society of Australia newsletter [Sydney]* 23 (Dec): 19. Graham's work captures the isolated and pristine splendor of Antarctica: the rare bergs of 'jade' ice, Emperor penguins at various stages, and their endearing and sometimes humorous behaviour.

**1992** Crossley, L. in *Antarctic Society of Australia newsletter [Sydney]* 28 (Mar): 6.

The most magnificent are the rare jade bergs, a deep translucent green.

**1995** *Station News [Australian Antarctic Division]* Oct: 3.

A spectacular day in perfect weather, including .. a jade berg and the maturing chicks at Auster.

**Jaeger** *Usu. adjectival. Historical in the antarctic context.*

[In 1884 English manufacturer Lewis Tomalin began making woollen underclothing under the patented name of Jaeger, after Dr Gustav Jaeger who in the 1880s advocated the health benefits of wool next to the skin.]

Woollen clothing made by the Jaeger Company of England, used on polar expeditions underneath a wind-proof external layer such as a **burberry**. See also **polar clothing**.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 333.

The Jaeger wool clothing is the very best that can be recommended for underwear, but it is absolutely useless as an outer covering, as it allows the wind to penetrate and gathers the snow.

**1930** L.C. Bernacchi, co-ordinator *The polar book. Produced for the British Polar Exhibition 1930* E. Allom & Co Ltd, London: 109.

The name of Jaeger has been associated with almost every Arctic and Antarctic Expedition of importance during the last fifty years. Nansen, Shackleton, Scott, Wilkins, and Mawson are among the illustrious leaders who have outfitted their crew from head to foot in "Jaeger," and only the other day the Company received a letter from the last named, in which he referred to this famous clothing as "our sure shield" during the recent voyage of the "Discovery" to the Antarctic.

**1963** *Wilkes Hard Times [ANARE, Wilkes]* Sept: [3].

Uncle Homer

Most intrepid of them all!

In his Jaeger hat,

A new ice axe

On the bridge of the Nella southward bound.

**1995** (1948) Law, Phillip *The antarctic voyage of HMAS Wyatt Earp* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 16.

For headware we were supplied with brushed wool Jaeger balaclavas from England.

**jafa, jaf** *abusive noun, Aust.*

[Acronym formed from 'just another fucking academic' or 'observer'. I am puzzled by its lack of wider application.]

An egghead, an academic, a scientist: an antithesis of the manual labourer or skilled tradesman.

**1987** Keenan, Jim in *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Sept: 9.

During the 'Jaf Megajolly' on the MV *Icebird* a couple of Jafos (Accas) discovered what they thought was a hitherto unreported Australian dialect. They immediately christened it 'Anarese' and decided to publish.

**1988** Caldwell, John, Maddock, Bea and Senbergs, Jan *Antarctic journey: three artists in Antarctica* AGPS, Canberra: 19.

I realised I was just another "jafa" — meaning "just another fucking academic".

**1997** Gemmell, Nicki *Shiver* Vintage Books, Random House: 77.

'Here comes another bloody JAF0 they'll say, and no-one'll tell you what it means.'

'What is it?'

'Just Another Fucking Observer.'

'Oh, great.'

**Jamesway** *US, NZ, Aust. Also Jamesway hut*

[Apparently so-called from the name of its inventor.]

A prefabricated insulated canvas building, semicircular in cross-section, with a wooden frame and floor, easily put up and taken down. See also **hypertat**.

**1962** Henderson, Jim *One foot at the Pole* Whitcombe & Tombs, Christchurch: 78.

This Jamesway hut we're sleeping in, simplicity itself, has two skins of waterproofed canvas with air pockets in between and a slender bolted wooden frame inside to hold it up. That's all.

**1963** (South Pole) McKenzie, Douglas *Opposite poles* Robert Hale & Co, London/Whitcombe & Tombs, New Zealand: 128.

Our hut was the type known as Jamesway, which was the sort of shelter the Americans were prepared to parachute down to Fuchs if he needed to spend the winter out. Our canvas Jamesway was one of the Pole's disaster huts, and it was set about a hundred yards from the main hut. It was a place into which the men could move if they had that fire. Its shape was that of a sausage split longitudinally and placed with its raw section on the ground. The ends of the hut were of wood, each fitted with a door; the rear door was, however, never opened because of the obeisance we paid at all times to the conservation of heat.

**1966** Baum, Allyn *Antarctica: the worst place in the world* Macmillan Co, NY: 82.

The second type of building at McMurdo, also used for living quarters, are insulated canvas Quonsetlike huts, called Jamesways, after their inventor. The Jamesways are windowless except for small transoms built into the walls over the doors at either end of the huts. Many visitors are perplexed by the built-in screens over the transoms. They are there because the Jamesways were originally designed for use in the tropics.

**1982** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XVII(1) (Mar): 8.

[caption] Five Jamesways — prefabricated, wood-framed and wood-floored buildings covered with insulated canvas blankets — provided living quarters, galley facilities.

**1994** (South Pole) *Looking South [Newsletter of the Australian Working Group on Antarctic Astronomy]* no. 2 (Apr): 4.

At first it seems disturbing to sleep in a 'Jamesway', a canvas and plywood building rather like a tent, but they are dark and warm and quiet.

**Johnny penguin** *Also Johnnie penguin* *Freq. shortened to John or Johnny*

The penguin *Pygoscelis papua*: see **gentoo penguin**.

**1833** (Falkland Islands) Fanning, Edmund *Voyages round the world; with selected sketches of voyages to the South Seas ... between the years 1792 and 1832* Collins & Hannay, New York: 22.

There are four different kinds of this amphibious bird, viz. the King penguin, which is the largest, the Jackass penguin, the John penguin, and the Mackaronie.

**1875** Kidder, J.H. *Contributions to the natural history of Kerguelen Island, made in connection with the American Transit-of-Venus expedition, 1874-75*. 1. *Ornithology* Government Printing Office, Washington: 41.

*Pygoscelis teniata*, (Peale) Coues. "Johnny" of sealers and whalers ... On the arrival of the Swatara at Kerguelen, these birds had already begun to lay and we had their eggs for breakfast on the morning of September 10.

**1879** (Kerguelen Island) Sharpe, R Bowdler in *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: 154.

The Johnnie (as the whalers call this bird) is common in Royal Sound. It builds in communities, some of only a dozen, others from 30 to 150 families.

**1902** Hutton, Captain F.W. in *The Emu* II(1) Jul: 1.

So rapid is their flight under water that the Crested Penguins (*Catarrhactes*) and the Johnnies (*Pygoscelis*) spring out of the water, with their wings close to their sides, and take a long leap through the air like porpoises.

**1922** (South Georgia) Murphy, Robert Cushman in *National Geographic* 41(4) Apr: 438.

In the December of Antarctic springtime, when the *Daisy* dropped anchor in the Bay of Isles, the Johnny penguins were the first creatures to greet us on the strand.

**1967** Gillham, Mary E. *Sub-Antarctic sanctuary: summertime on Macquarie Island* A.H. and A.V. Reed, Wellington: 42.

The fourth penguin species here was the portly gentoo or Johnnie, with black and orange bill and triangular white eyebrow.

### Johnny rook *Falkland Islands*

[Rook from the bird's call and general appearance.]

The large dark bird of prey *Phalacrocorax australis* (fam. Falconidae), of the Falkland Islands, where it was formerly very common, and southernmost South America. It was classified as a pest in the Falkland Islands in 1908, and is still hunted there today. It is also called the **(Jack) rook** and **(striated) caracara**. See also **carancho**.

**1861** (Falkland Islands) Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 152.

On my return next day with an old tin pot, some string, and two ramrods belonging to my friends, I was glad to find the eggs still there, not having been eaten by the Johnny Rooks, as I had rather expected.

**1909** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 19(1) 1 Jan: 9.

Diminution of Turkey Buzzards, Carranchos, and Johnny Rooks. It is hereby notified that during the year 1909 the sum of £25 will be expended from the Stock Fund in the purchase of beaks of the following birds:— Turkey Buzzards, 4<sup>d</sup>. per beak. Carranchos and Johnny Rooks, 2<sup>d</sup>. per beak.

**1910** Cobb, Arthur F. *Wildlife in the Falkland Islands* Gowans & Gray, London: 68.

[caption] Jack rook and dead goose. The Johnny Rook has decreased in numbers in the Falklands of late years.

**1979** Peterson, Roger Tory *Penguins* Houghton Mifflin Co., Boston: 63.

As we watched the scene, a dark hawklike bird swooped in and grabbed a half-grown chick. It was a striated caracara, or "Johnny Rook", one of the world's rarest as well as most southern birds of prey, found only in the Falklands and on islands in the vicinity of Cape Horn.

**1990** (Falkland Islands) Adams, Richard, ed. *Antarctica: voices from the silent continent* Montagne Jeunesse Co., UK: 16.

Once I watched powerless as a Johnny rook removed a pair of binoculars, examined them critically and dragged them a short distance over the rocks by the strap before it took off with an air of derision and dropped them into the sea!

### jokulhlaup *noun and attrib.*

[From the Icelandic jökull (Norwegian jøkel) ice, glacier + hlaup outflow.]

A flood of meltwater from beneath a glacier or icecap. Mud, ice and rocks are picked up and carried downstream as the water emerges from a glacier.

**1988** *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions newsletter*. 55 (Sept): 15.

A jokulhlaup event of 6 months duration occurred near Casey Station, Law Dome, Antarctica, in late March (austral autumn) 1985.

### jollier *Aust.*

A person indulging in a **jolly**.

**1986** (Davis station) *Station News* Nov: 7.

Their palatial Melon Hut .. is proving a popular R&R location for weekend jolliers.

**1995** Maggs, Tom in Robinson, Shelagh, ed. *Huskies in harness: a love story in Antarctica* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 89.

'Counting the emperors' became our death-and-glory goal, and kept us going over the following weeks when mere jolliers would have turned for home.

### jolly

[Prob. from jolly boat — see the earlier quotations — but perhaps also connected with the army sense of jolly a thrill of enjoyment or excitement (recorded in NOED from 1905 onwards).]

An excursion away from base, either for recreation or work.

**[15 Dec 1772 (55° 10S)]** Cook, James quoted in Beaglehole, J.C., ed. (1961) *The voyage of the Resolution and Adventure* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 60.

Bro't too, hoisted the Jolly Boat out to try the Current.

**1850** Gould, John in *Jardine's contributions to ornithology*: 93.

I was rather fortunate in procuring specimens of *Procellariidæ*, by dint of fishing, and going out in the jolly boat whenever there was an opportunity.

**1949** Granville, Wilfred *Sea slang of the twentieth century* Winchester, London: 135.

To take the jolly boat: go on leave without permission.]

**1967** *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* 8 (Nov): 4.

Andy Williams and Mac McKerrow have, using dogs, been surveying and "jollying" within 30 miles of base.

**1986** *Sydney Morning Herald* 15 Feb: 9.

"It's rotten when you miss out on a jolly because you're blizzed in," says Macca looking glumly at the dense drifting snow.

**1992** *45th ANARE Casey yearbook 1992 [Casey ANARE, Antarctica]*: 56.

[glossary] jolly: A jaunt away from the station into the wilderness, including work 'jollies'.

### jumping jack

A **rockhopper penguin**.



## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

**1777** Forster, George (Tierra del Fuego) *A voyage round the world, in his Britannic Majesty's sloop, Resolution, commanded by Capt. James Cook* B. White, London, vol 2: 519.

The English at the Falkland Islands have named them [sc. the penguins] jumping-jacks.

**1848** Gould, John *The birds of Australia* The author, 20 Broad St, Golden Square, London, vol VII: pl. 83.

*Eudyptes chrysocome*. Crested Penguin. For a fine example of this singular Penguin I am indebted to my friend Ronald C. Gunn., Esq., of Launceston, Van Diemen's Land, who informed me that it had been washed on shore on the northern coast of that island after a heavy gale. It is less plentiful in that part of the world than in many others, for although it is occasionally found on the shores of Van Diemen's Land and the south coast of Australia, its great strongholds are the islands of Amsterdam, St. Paul's, and Tristan d'Acunha. As I had no opportunity of seeing the bird in a state of nature, I

cannot perhaps do better than transcribe the account given by Latham, who states that "it is called Hopping Penguin and Jumping Jack, from its habit of leaping quite out of the water on meeting with the least obstacle."

**1940** Christopherson, Erling in Benham, R.L., transl. fr Norwegian *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 87.

The prevailing type on the Tristan islands is the little golden-crested penguin, which is called by the islanders, "pinamin", a corruption of penguin. Its special name in English is Rock-hopper or Jumping Jack. The most striking thing about a flock of penguins is that they will hop away in battalions and in close formation, but completely out of step. The Rock-hopper also lives in colonies on the coast of Patagonia, Falkland Island, Gough, Kerguelen and St. Paul, only to mention a few of the more important places.

# — K —

## kamik

[The Eskimo word *kamik* (see 1940 quotation) is recorded in the north from 1861 (DCanE) in the eastern Arctic, for a knee-high waterproof sealskin boot. DALaskE records it in English from 1894, giving its origin as the Inupiaq *kamik* boot. Both the word and the object it signifies were later taken south to antarctic regions.]

A hard-soled sealskin boot used in antarctic travel.

**1900** Cook, Frederick A. *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: opp. 224.

[caption] The Eskimo “Kamik”.

**1940** *Polar Record* 3(19) Jan: 250.

Kamik. Provided it is well made, this hairless (i.e. shaved) seal-skin Eskimo footwear is probably the best all-round type for polar travel.

Footnote: Sing. *kamik*, plur. *kangmit* in W. Greenland and *kamiker* in E. Greenland. Commonly called “kamiks” in English.

**1943** Hydrographic Office, US Navy Department *Sailing directions for Antarctica*. H.O. no 138 Hydrographic Office, Washington: 49.

The Eskimo *kamik* of sealskin with hard sole, worn with a fur or felt inner sole, will be found useful for running with sledge dogs and for work about camp. The Siberian *mukluk*, with or without its fur scraped off, provides light footwear easily used with many socks and inner liners but is not practical for travel ... The Lapland *finnesko*, an ankle high boot of reindeer fur, is useful when sledge riding or for short trips. In each of these types of footwear dry sennagrass is often used, since it collects moisture from the feet in the form of rime crystals, and upon removal of the boots the grass can be crushed in the hand whereupon the accumulated ice crystals fall away.

**1968** Herbert, Wally *A world of men: exploration in Antarctica* Eyre & Spottiswoode, London: 199.

Dressed as immaculate as a man can be in brand new windproofs, Eskimo ‘kamiks’, and an après-ski sweater of elaborate design, I drove the three-miles in a rattling weasel.

## katabatic adjective

[See **katabatic wind**.]

Of great strength.

**1972** *Aurora*. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne] Apr: 13.

A roaring, catabatic blast of approval and relief sweeps the gathered throng.

## katabatic wind

Often just *katabatic*, also *catabatic* [NOED records *katabatic* from 1918 from the Greek *καταβατικός* descending. The word is not exclusive to Antarctica, but it is here that the strongest *katabatics* in the world occur.]

A wind produced when cold dense air falls by gravity downslope. Because the antarctic icecap is so high and there is little impediment to falling wind, by the time such winds reach the coast they can be very strong, and can last several days, making Antarctica the king of

*katabatics*. In Commonwealth Bay, George V Land, the highest wind speeds in the world have been recorded.

**1949** Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 64.

Gotley could only conjecture that it was a *katabatic* wind off the glaciers in Corinthian Bay.

**1964** (Mawson station) *Aurora*. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne] Nov: 5.

At Mawson the “*katabatic*” is the ever-present factor. What is the “*katabatic*”? Well, what happens is roughly this: The surface air over the plateau loses heat by radiation, and becomes colder. Air has weight, i.e. the colder the air, the denser and heavier it becomes. Air must go somewhere, so it starts flowing down the ice slopes of the Antarctic plateau by gravitation, reaching its maximum velocity near the foot of the slope, at Mawson and Wilkes, as the case may be. This stream of cold air is very shallow, in winter no more than 600–1000 feet thick, but it can attain some incredible speeds — well over 100 m.p.h. If the *katabatic* is accelerated by the prevailing synoptic system, such as a LOW off the coast to the east of your base, then you’re for it. It was during one of those “favourable” conditions that a friend of mine, somewhat light in stature, was observed hanging by both hands from a blizzard line, his feet blown off the ground, and his wind-proof trousers blown clean off him. He returned to the rec. hut somewhat battered, proudly displaying the tying-cord of his trousers, with a few tattered pieces flapping in the wind.

**1965** *Aurora*. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne] June: 13.

Good old Mawson! When the *katabatic* stops at Mawson, the wind starts.

**1991** Hooper, Meredith *A for Antarctica: facts and stories from the frozen South* Pan Books, London: 139.

Antarctica is the windiest country on Earth. The winds are dry and cold. But some are different from anywhere else. Cold air flowing off the high ice plateau sweeps down the coastal slopes in fierce, raging winds (called ‘*katabatic*’ which means ‘downflowing’).

**1997** *Chronicle of Higher Education* 24 Jan: A10.

It’s not the isolation, the high altitude, or even the bitter cold that makes living on this barren, snow-strewn sheet of ice seem like pure hell. It’s the wind. For the past week, the relentless *katabatic* wind — generated by cold, dense air rushing down the slopes of the East Antarctic ice sheet — thundered past the camp with the roar of a jet engine. Traveling at 40 to 45 miles an hour, it pounded the tent walls like a jackhammer and sent stinging sheets of snow across a landscape that resembled a desert in a sandstorm.

## kelper Falkland Islands

1. Obs. The goose *Chloephaga hybrida*: see **kelp goose**.

**30 Dec 1842** McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 346.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

I also found two tern's eggs laid in the same way in the shingle, a steamer's, with five eggs, and kelper's nests, one having five and the other four eggs.

2. [Generally thought to be from the large quantities of kelp on the shores of the islands, rather than any association with sense 1.]

**A Falkland Islander** — the name inhabitants of the Falkland islands call themselves. Now (1999) not much used, and replaced in part after 1982 by **benny**.

[1899 *The Falkland Islands Magazine* XI(20) Nov: [16]. [advnt] Kelper's Store. For the best selection of Fancy Goods in Stanley pay a visit to the Kelper's Store.]

1900 *The Falkland Islands Magazine* XI(24) Apr: 10.

I was born in a British Colony,  
The Falklands are my home; ...  
Our nickname it is Kelpers,  
But we're British to the back;  
And if anyone insults us,  
We with honour pay them back.

1916 *The Magellan Times* 21 Sept: 3.

An old kelper is said to have remarked " 'E [sc. Shackleton] ought ter 'ave been at the war long ago, instead of messing about on icebergs".

1950 Saunders, Alfred A *camera in Antarctica* Winchester Publications, London: 98.

We arrived at Port Stanley in November 1931, six weeks after leaving England, and stayed a week renewing old acquaintances. The 'kelpers' as they call themselves, are kind and hospitable people and made us very welcome.

1991 Phipps, Colin in *The Warrar. Newsletter of Falklands conservation* 1 (Nov): 3.

What has not changed is the nature of the Kelpers themselves. They remain a fiercely independent bunch, as resourceful as ever.

## kelp goose *Falkland Islands*

[From the beaches where the bird feeds.]

The goose *Chloephaga hybrida* (fam. Anatidae) of the Falkland Islands and coastal South America: the Falkland Islands subspecies is *Chloephaga hybrida malvinarum*. The male has white plumage and is larger than the female, which is mainly dark brown to black with black and white barring on the breast. It eats seaweeds, including *Ulva* and *Iridea*. See also **KELPER** 1.

1840 Mackinnon, L.B. *Some account of the Falkland Islands, from a six months' residence in 1838 and 1839* A.H. Bailey & Co., London: 29.

The goose is also a very handsome bird, remarkably bold or stupid. I have killed several with a stick; they are found in immense numbers all over the islands. There are three kinds, the Upland and Brent, being very good eating, and the Kelp, so called from breeding and feeding close to the shores, were [sic] kelp is abundant. The plumage of the hen is most beautiful, not resembling the common wild goose.

1861 (Falkland Islands) Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 159.

*Bernicla antarctica* .. (Kelp Goose.) A very common bird along the coast. Its breeding-time is the same as that of the Upland Goose, and, as the nest is placed a few yards from the shore and quite exposed, I have frequently seen the female sitting from a distance. The male bird is generally also stationed very close by, as is the case with the Upland Goose. The interior of the nest of this bird is covered with down, taken from the female only, as I have ascertained by the colour. The eggs

are generally six or seven in number, and are carefully covered over with down when the bird is away at feed.

27 Dec 1881 Wiseman, William in Layman, Rear-Admiral C.H. and Cameron, Jane (1995) *The Falklands and the Dwarf: the cruise of HMS Dwarf in the Falkland Islands 1881-1882* Picton Publishing, Chippenham: 46.

On the way round to the pond I shot a kelp goose, a pure white bird with the most beautiful down under his feathers. They are not good eating but the skins are such as ladies do admire.

1904 Vallentin, Rupert *Memoirs and Proc of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no. 23: 36.

*Chloephaga hybrida*, "Kelp Goose." Universally distributed around the shores of the Falkland isles. This species never appears to go in flocks, six is the largest number I have ever seen together. They seem to pair for life.

1913 *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 22(4) 1 Apr: 61.

An Ordinance To amend the law with regard to the preservation of wild animals and birds ... Kelp Goose (*Bernicla antarctica*) ... forbidden to kill.

1926 *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* XLVI (cccvi/cccviii): 120.

Slides were shown of the Chilean Penguin (*Spheniscus magellanicus*), Kelp Goose (*Chloephaga hybrida*), and Steamer-Duck (*Tachyeres cinereus*).

1990 (Falkland Islands) Adams, Richard, ed. *Antarctica: voices from the silent continent* Montagne Jeunesse Co., UK: 16.

Family parties of steamer ducks, kelp geese and crested ducks swim offshore with their rapidly growing young, coaxing little, fluffy flotillas through fronds of weed.

## kelp gull

[From the seashore area where the bird feeds.]

The seabird *Larus dominicanus*: see **dominican gull**.

1922 (South Georgia) Murphy, Robert Cushman in *National Geographic* 41(4) Apr: 432.

The penguins, albatrosses, giant petrel, shag, kelp gull, and tern all nest in the open.

1932 *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* LII(ccclix): 115.

The subantarctic Dominican or Kelp Gull (*Larus dominicanus*) is an even more remarkable invader, for it finds centres of maximum abundance, as a nesting bird, at localities so utterly unlike as the Strait of Magellan and Lobos de Tierra Island.

1967 Gillham, Mary E. *Sub-Antarctic sanctuary: summertime on Macquarie Island* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Wellington: 148.

The southern black-backs' principal food is gathered along the shoreline — shellfish from among the rocks and small swimming creatures from the shallows, although nothing edible comes amiss. Not for nothing is the bird sometimes called the kelp gull.

1978 Burger, A.E., Lindeboom, H.J. and Williams, A.J. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* 8: 67.

There were 923 kelp gulls present at Marion Island all year. The gulls roost at night and often feed by day at offshore kelp beds.

1993 Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 132.

The exact distribution of kelp gulls on the Peninsula is directly related to the occurrence of their main prey, limpets. The gulls hunt these molluscs, the only large, abundant invertebrates available to them, between the high- and low-tide marks.

## kelp pigeon

The bird *Chionis alba*: see **sheathbill**.



**1861** (Falkland Islands) Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 159.

*Chionis alba* .. (Kelp Pigeon.) Of this curious bird one or two are generally to be found on the rocks of the south shore, but it is more plentiful near the Penguins' rookeries. Limpets and shell-fish seem to be its principal food, as far as my experience goes. In this respect its habits are very much like those of the Oyster-catcher. The sealers inform me that it breeds on New Island, near the Penguins, and lays white eggs. As I have seen these birds here all the year round, and never found their nests, I conclude that those that stay here during our summer are young birds.

**1910** Cobb, Arthur F. *Wildlife in the Falkland Islands* Gowans & Gray, London: 68.

[caption] Sheathbills and dolphin gulls. The Sheathbill is locally called the Kelp Pigeon, from its resemblance to a snow-white pigeon, and from its feeding principally along the shore among the kelp.

**1964** Jenkins, Geoffrey *A grue of ice* Fontana Books, London: 124.

A white kelp pigeon wheeled over the far end of the life-line-lead of water towards the fogbank.

### kenche *Sealing*

[From the US kenche a box for salting seal-skins, recorded from 1874 onwards (NOED).]

A stack of salted seal skins.

**1993** Chater, Tony *The Falklands* The Penna Press, St Albans: 132.

Once pickled, using two quarts of salt to an average skin, the hides were folded as 'books' or piled up to form 'kenches' for shipment.

### kenyte

[How can an antarctic dictionary-maker living in Kenya ignore this word?]

An igneous rock first described from Mount Kenya, and also known from the Mt Erebus region of Antarctica. Kenyte is an anorthoclase feldspar.

**1900** [source: NOED] Gregory, J.W. in *Queensland Journal of the Geological Society* LVI: 209.

It is inadvisable to include the Mount Kenya lavas among the pantellerites, and the name of kenytes is accordingly proposed for them.]

**1907** Ferrar, H.T. *Report of the field-geology of the region explored during the 'Discovery' Antarctic expedition, 1901-04. National Antarctic Expedition 1901-1904, Natural history vol 1: geology* British Museum, London: 88.

The summit .. is honeycombed to a remarkable extent. The boss of trachyte above Cape Crozier, the kenyte of Cape Royds and basalts of other areas, show similar wind-effects.

**13 Jan 1911** (Cape Evans) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912* Blandford Press, London: 95.

All yesterday a gang of quarrymen was breaking out blocks of kenyte, a heavy volcanic rock, and the ponies were taking it on sledges to the ship. Today I joined the quarrymen and humped rock. The kenyte is very heavy and by Saturday .. we had 25 tons of it in the empty hold, a rare quarry for the New Zealand geologists to work over when the ship returns.

**1922** (Cape Evans) Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Picador, London: 185.

The kenyte lava of which it [sc. Cape Evans] is formed is a remarkable rock, and is found in few parts of the world: but when you have seen one bit of kenyte you have seen all.

**c1956** Harrington, H.J. *Cenozoic volcanoes of Ross Dependency and their petrology* Royal Society of NZ Antarctic Research Committee Geological Report no.7: 1.

A variety of basic phonolite intermediate in character between ordinary basalt and phonolite, and containing large rhomb-shaped phenocrysts of alkali-feldspar, is called kenyte from its occurrence at Mt Kenya in East Africa. The name is used for striking rocks in the Ross Archipelago in which the rhombs are 2 to 3 cm. long, but these rocks differ from the type kenytes in not containing nepheline phenocrysts.

**1990** (Mt Erebus) Naveen, Ron, Monteath, Colin, de Roy, Tui and Jones, Mark *Wild ice: Antarctic journeys* Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington: 169.

Drop rapidly down double rope. Lots of loose rubble before reaching total commitment on overhang of pink glassy kenyte.

### Kerguelen Islands

French sea captain and explorer Yves-Joseph de Kerguelen de Trémarec sighted the islands now bearing his name on 13 February 1772; he did not land on them, but annexed them for France.

The archipelago in the southern Indian Ocean consists of one large volcanic island and many small islands. They lie at about 49°S, 69-70°E, are part of the French Southern and Antarctic Lands, and are used by French scientists and military personnel. The islands form an exposed part of a mainly submarine ridge which runs from northwest of the islands to the southeast, and on which the Australian territories of Heard and Macdonald Islands also lie. The coastlines of the islands are deeply indented. The largest island, Kerguelen, is also known as Desolation Island.

### Kerguelen cabbage

The perennial plant *Pringlea antiscorbutica* (fam. Brassicaceae or Cruciferae), which occurs on Kerguelen Island and other subantarctic islands — Heard and Macdonald, the Crozet Islands and Marion Island. Its large fleshy leaves were a valuable antiscorbutic on early expeditions, and its scientific name honours an early researcher into scurvy, Sir John Pringle.

Accounts of its edibility vary, but it is perhaps best relished as stuffing for ducks (see 1879 quotation). It is also called (**native**) **cabbage** or **wild cabbage**.

[1844 London ] *Botany* quoted in *Tasmanian Journal of Natural Science* II(viii): 236.

Amongst other novelties will be included accounts of the *Cabbage* of Kerguelen's Island, a plant entirely new to science, though discovered and beneficially used during Captain Cook's voyage etc.].

**1847** Hooker, J.D. *Flora Antarctica* Reeve Bros, London, vol II: 247.

Its luxuriance amidst surrounding desolation, its singular form and appearance, striking even the casual observer, and the feelings of loneliness and utter isolation from the rest of the world, that must more or less oppress every voyager at first landing on its dreary and inhospitable locality, are circumstances likely to render the Kerguelen's Land cabbage, cabbage though it be, a cherished object in the recollection

of the mariner: one never to be effaced by the brighter or luscious products of a tropical vegetation.]

**1875** Kidder, J.H. *Contributions to the natural history of Kerguelen Island, made in connection with the American Transit-of-Venus expedition, 1874-75. 1. Ornithology* Government Printing Office, Washington: viii.

These climatic conditions have their natural effect upon the flora and fauna of the island; there being neither tree nor shrub — no plant, indeed, taller than the Kerguelen cabbage.

**1879** (Kerguelen Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 190.

The teal feed mainly on the fruit of the Kerguelen cabbage, and are extremely good eating. They were the greatest treat possible to us, when living, as we necessarily were, almost entirely on preserved meat.

**1912** (Kerguelen Island) du Baty, Raymond Rallier *Fifteen thousand miles in a ketch* Thomas Nelson & Sons, London: 111.

The Kerguelen cabbage is not an ideal green-stuff. We had to boil it twice before we could eat it, for it has a most rank and bitter taste, very much like the most powerful horse-radish. In the first boiling the water becomes of a dark yellow colour, but in the second boiling it is fairly clear and the cabbage then becomes eatable. We made sauces with it, and chopped it up with our tinned meats for the stew-pot.

**1930** *The Illustrated London News* 25 Jan: 122.

[caption] An island slope overgrown with an edible plant known as Kerguelen cabbage, valuable as an anti-scorbutic.

**1949** Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 101.

Fried (sc. elephant seal) kidney and native Kerguelen cabbage, almost a cross between Brussels sprouts and spinach, made a tasty meal.

**1964** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(12) Dec: 557.

A preliminary visit was made to the Kerguelens on March 6-12 and the crew sampled — without enthusiasm — the inevitable Kerguelen menu of rabbit and Kerguelen cabbage.

**1990** Crafford, J.E. and Chown, S.L. in Kerry, K.R. and Hempel, G., eds *Antarctic ecosystems: ecological change and conservation* Springer-Verlag, Berlin: 354.

*Plutella xylostella* L. (Lepidoptera: Plutellidae) is one of the most destructive pests of cruciferous crops in the world ... In April 1986 it was recorded for the first time on Marion Island (46°54'S., 37°45'E.), where it infests the native crucifer, *Pringlea antiscorbutica*, or "Kerguelen cabbage".

## Kerguelen cormorant *See* **Kerguelen shag**

## Kerguelen diving petrel

The small seabird *Pelecanoides exsul* (fam. Pelecanoididae) or *P. urinatrix exsul* — it is sometimes regarded as a subspecies of the **common diving petrel**. It is grey-black above and white to grey underneath, and breeds on the Crozet, Heard, Kerguelen, Auckland and Antipodes Islands, South Georgia, Marion and Prince Edward Islands.

**1937** Falla, R.A. *Birds. BANZARE reports series B, vol 2* Hassell Press, Adelaide: 214.

It is a matter of difficulty to separate Kerguelen diving petrels from the birds of New Zealand seas which are generally regarded as typical *Pelecanoides urinatrix*.

**1954** (Marion Island) Rand, R.W. in *The Ibis* 96(2): 200.

*Pelecanoides exsul* Salvin. Kerguelen Diving Petrel ... The petrels are widely distributed over the coastal plain, where they burrow under tussock and moss near the cliff edge.

**1980** (Bird Island, South Georgia) Parmelee, David F. *Bird Island in antarctic waters* University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis: 38.

John pointed out a fine growth of tussock that extended from the cliff edge of the inlet all the way to the little molly colony I had just come through. According to him that tussock was prime habitat for the Kerguelen diving petrel.

## Kerguelen fur seal *noun and attrib.*

A **fur seal**, usually *Arctocephalus gazella* (*see antarctic fur seal*), which breeds on Kerguelen Island.

**[15 Jan 1786** (Cook's landing at Kerguelen Islands) Portlock, Captain Nathaniel (1968) *A voyage round the world: but more particularly to the north-west coast of America: performed in 1785, 1786, 1787, and 1788, in the King George and Queen Charlotte*. N. Israel facs, Amsterdam: 35.

We .. found a number of these animals, which we then supposed to be sea lions; but this was certainly a mistaken notion, for they were very tame, and killed with the greatest ease, whilst the sea lions met with at this place are quite furious, and ought not to be attacked without great caution.

**1879** *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: 97.

The Fur Seal of Kerguelen Island does not resort to the sheltered waters visited by the American and English Expeditions.]

**1942** Allen, G.M. *Extinct and vanishing mammals of the Western hemisphere* American Committee for International Wildlife Protection Special Pub. no 11: 432.

Kerguelen fur seal.

**1979** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XIV (Jun): 8.

The following are designated native mammals: .. Seal: Crabeater *Lobodon carcinophagus* Elephant *Mirounga leonina* Kerguelen fur *Arctocephalus gazella* [etc.].

**1982** Hosking, Eric and Sage, Bryan *Antarctic wildlife* Croom Helm, London: 50.

The Antarctic Fur Seal has, probably within recent years, begun to breed in small numbers at Marion Island along with the Kerguelen Fur Seal *Arctocephalus tropicalis*, the fur seal of the islands north of the Antarctic Convergence.

**1983** King, Judith E. *Seals of the world, 2nd edition* British Museum (Natural History), London, and Oxford University Press, Oxford: 48.

The Antarctic or Kerguelen Fur Seal was first described from a female animal collected on Kerguelen in 1874 (Peters, 1875). It has often previously been known as the Kerguelen Fur Seal, but as Kerguelen is the only part of its range where it is not known to breed at the moment, and the centre of the population is on South Georgia, Antarctic Fur Seal is a more suitable name.

**1990** Naveen, Ron, Monteath, Colin, de Roy, Tui and Jones, Mark *Wild ice: Antarctic journeys* Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington: 39.

South Georgia pulsates these days with the shuffles and undulations of southern elephant seal and Kerguelen fur seal multitudes.

## Kerguelen petrel

The small greyish seabird *Pterodroma brevirostris* (fam. Procellariidae), which breeds on the Tristan and Gough Islands group, Marion, Prince Edward and the Crozet Islands, as well as on the Kerguelen Islands. It is often seen in the **pack ice** zone.

**1937** Falla, R.A. *Birds. BANZARE reports series B, vol 2* Hassell Press, Adelaide: 185.

The Kerguelen Petrel entirely escaped our notice during investigations at Kerguelen.

**1952** Crawford, Allan B. in *The Emu* 252(2) May: 78.

Kerguelen Petrel, *Pterodroma brevirostris*. ... This is a small grey bird of pleasing appearance. Beak, black. Iris, brown. Legs, lightish brown ... This is the first nesting record of this little-known species away from Kerguelen Island and an interesting addition to the avifauna of Marion.

**1974** Harper, Peter C. and Kinsky, F.C. *Tuatara* 21(1,2): 34.

Kerguelen Petrel (*Pterodroma brevirostris*) ... A summer breeder on subantarctic islands of the Indian and Atlantic Oceans.

**1993** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 13 (Sept): 10.

That morning, on deck, were two Kerguelen Petrels, which had flown onboard overnight at the anchorage, dazzled by the ship's lights. Neither bird could take off from the deck, but flew away strongly when released over the side.

### Kerguelen pintail *noun and attrib.*

The duck *Anas eatoni eatoni* (fam. Anatidae) which breeds only on the Kerguelen Islands. It has also been known as **Eaton's pintail**.

**[15 May 1840** (Kerguelen Island) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 50.

I shot my first teal, with which the island abounds.

**1875** Sharpe, R. Bowdler in *The Ibis* 5(XIX) Jul: 328.

The Rev. A.E. Eaton has brought back with him some specimens of a small duck, obtained in Kerguelen's Island during the stay of the recent Transit Expedition. I find that some specimens were procured in the same locality by the Antarctic Expedition; but they have never been determined ... I therefore propose to describe this bird as *Querquedula eatoni*, sp. n. ... Besides the three examples brought by Mr. Eaton, I have found in the Museum three Kerguelen-Island skins, collected during the voyage of the 'Erebus' and 'Terror']

**1937** Falla, R.A. *Birds. BANZARE reports series B, vol 2* Hassell Press, Adelaide: 271.

[caption] Nest of Kerguelen pintail, Royal Sound [sc. with five eggs].

**1950** Scott, Peter *Key to the wildfowl of the world* Severn Wildfowl Trust, Slimbridge, Gloucestershire: [18].

Kerguelen or Eaton's pintail. *Anas acute eatoni*. Kerguelen Island. (South Indian Ocean.)

**1984** (Possession Island, Crozet Islands) Fletcher, Harold *Antarctic days with Mawson: a personal account of the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929-31* Angus and Robertson, London: 68.

A very common species on the island is the Kerguelen pintail duck which flies in large flocks. Sir Douglas suggested that Doc and I, during our day's wandering, should shoot as many as possible to augment the ship's food supply. This presented no difficulties. Later in the morning, sighting several pintails feeding on the ground a short distance away, we made all the appropriate noises to make them fly. Our sporting instincts prevented us from shooting sitting birds. On their refusing to fly, Doc walked over and nudged one with his foot. It took off, he fired and missed. We found the tameness of the birds most disconcerting and finally had to select ones sitting at a distance before firing. Naturally, our bag was large and for days afterwards we had duck served up to us, cooked in every conceivable way.

**1997** (Kerguelen Island) Southern Heritage Expeditions *Expedition cruising: Antarctica (the Ross Sea and King George V Land)*,

*Subantarctic islands of New Zealand Australia and the South Indian Ocean* SHE, Christchurch: 8.

The Kerguelen pintail is endemic to the southern French Islands.

### Kerguelen shag *Also Kerguelen cormorant*

The bird *Phalacrocorax verrucosus* (fam. Phalacrocoracidae), a **blue-eyed shag** which breeds on the Kerguelen Islands. It is sometimes regarded as a subspecies of *P. atriceps*.

**[10 Jan 1823** (Kerguelen Islands) Morrell, Captain Benjamin (1832) *A narrative of four voyages, to the South Sea [etc.]* J. & J. Harper, New York: 64.

The shags here are of two kinds, one of which resembles the cormorant or water-crane, the other has a blackish back and a white belly.

**2 Jun 1840** (Kerguelen Island) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 56.

We were accompanied by numerous shags hovering over the boat as we pulled up the bay, so much was their curiosity excited by our intrusion on their usual solitude that we expected every minute to see them alight in the boat as with outspread wings and drooping feet, with their long necks twisted round, they looked down upon us with prying gaze, so near that the boat's crew knocked down several with their oars for soup.

**1875** (Kerguelen's Island) Eaton, Rev. A.E. in *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London* XXIII no. 156: 353.

Twenty-two species of birds at the fewest, perhaps twenty-three, frequent Royal Sound, viz. a *Chionis*, a Cormorant, a Teal, a Tern, a Gull, a Skua, eleven (perhaps twelve) Petrels, two Albatrosses, and three (perhaps four) Penguins.

**1879** (Kerguelen Island) Sharpe, R Bowdler in *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: 150.

There is much virtue in a mere name. Our men called these Cormorants "Shags," and would not touch them. Some of our American friends (not the astronomical party) having designated them "Shag-ducks," shot a few dozen of them with rifles, to eat them.]

**1937** Falla, R.A. *Birds. BANZARE reports series B, vol 2* Hassell Press, Adelaide: 228.

The Kerguelen cormorant can be distinguished from all the other "blue-eyed" subantarctic species, except *P. magellanicus*, by the fact that in its full adult plumage it lacks both dorsal and alar patches of white.

**1970** *Notornis* 17(4) Dec: 286.

The Kerguelen Shag is, by its general pattern and more especially by that of its head, a true "Blue-Eyed-Shag".

**1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 118.

The Kerguelen cormorant is very similar to the Antarctic cormorant but does not have the white bands on its wings. It breeds on Îles Kerguelen.

**1997** Enticott, Jim and Tipling, David *Photographic handbook of the seabirds of the world* New Holland Publishers Ltd, London: 126.

Kerguelen Shag *Phalacrocorax verrucosus* ... Smallest of the blue-eyed shags.

### Kerguelen sheathbill

The subspecies of the **sheathbill** *Chionis minor minor*, which breeds on the Kerguelen Islands.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

[1879 (Kerguelen Island) Hooker, J.D. in *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: 13.

A country that has no land birds but an endemic one (the *Chionis*).

1884 (Kerguelen Island) McCormick, R. *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 94.

The delicious teal, blue-winged, is, I believe, peculiar to the island and also the white bird, or *chionis*. This species of sheathbill, too, is limited to this land.]

1937 Falla, R.A. *Birds. BANZARE reports series B, vol 2* Hassell Press, Adelaide: 263.

Kerguelen sheathbills in November were nowhere in large flocks as were the sheathbills at the Crozet Islands, but small parties were common, especially about the deserted whaling station at Port Jeanne d'Arc.

1954 (Marion Island) Rand, R.W. in *The Ibis* 96(2): 204.

A clutch of two eggs [sc. of *Chionarchus minor marionensis*] is laid in late December ... They are larger than those of the Kerguelen Sheathbill.

## Kerguelen tea

The perennial plant *Acaena magellanica* (fam. Rosaceae), which has spiny seeds. It is found on Kerguelen and other subantarctic islands, and in South America, and is one of several plants called **tea plants**.

1875 Kidder, J.H. *Contributions to the natural history of Kerguelen Island, made in connection with the American Transit-of-Venus expedition, 1874-75. 1. Ornithology* Government Printing Office, Washington: 32.

Eggs were first found, December 12, under the overhanging margins of clumps of grass and "Kerguelen tea" (*Acæna ascendens*).

1922 (South Georgia) Murphy, Robert Cushman in *National Geographic* 41(4) Apr: 426.

The western end of this beach, below the site of my camp, was covered with hummocks of tussock grass and a dense growth of "Kerguelen tea" (*Acæna*).

## Kerguelen tern

The blackish-brown headed, predominantly grey seabird *Sterna virgata* (fam. Laridae), which breeds on the Kerguelen, Crozet, Marion and Prince Edward Islands (and perhaps Heard Island). It is also called a **kingbird**.

122 May 1840 (Kerguelen Island) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 53.

Shot two and a half brace of teal and a tern, and returned on board at five p.m.

1875 (Kerguelen's Island) Eaton, Rev. A.E. in *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London* XXIII no. 156: 353.

Twenty-two species of birds at the fewest, perhaps twenty-three, frequent Royal Sound, viz. a *Chionis*, a Cormorant, a Teal, a Tern [etc..]

1937 Falla, R.A. *Birds. BANZARE reports series B, vol 2* Hassell Press, Adelaide: 12.

The Kerguelen tern was first noticed during our visit to the Crozet Islands, where several were fishing in the breakers at American Bay, Possession Island.

1952 (Marion Island) Crawford, Allan B. in *The Emu* 252(2) May: 83.

Kerguelen Tern (King Bird), *Sterna virgata* ... The Kerguelen Terns fly around the coastline singly or in pairs but sometimes in small flocks, on fine days. They were never seen over the land. The nests are on open ground, amongst stones in very exposed places on hill tops close to the sea, especially on Skua Ridge. The speckled eggs are well camouflaged.

1989 May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica, 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 89.

The Kerguelen tern (*Sterna virgata*) is limited to islands north of the Convergence and feeds on a diet of small molluscs, and insects and their larvae.

## killer whale *Also simply killer*

[Killer (whale) has been recorded as a name for this animal since 1725 (NOED).]

The carnivorous marine mammal *Orcinus orca*, which though called a whale is the largest member of the dolphin family (Delphinidae). It grows to about 9 m (30 ft), and is black and white with a prominent and distinctive dorsal fin. It is found worldwide, but is most common in polar waters. It is also called the **grampus**, **orca**, **sea wolf** and **wolf of the sea**.

6 June 1824 (Tristan da Cunha) Earle, Augustus (1832) *A narrative of a nine months' residence in New Zealand, in 1827; together with a journal of a residence in Tristan d'Acunha, an island situated between South America and the Cape of Good Hope* Longman, Rees, Orme, Brown, Green, & Longman, London: 333.

They [sc. sea elephants] have many enemies, even in the water; one called the killer, a species of grampus, which makes terrible havoc amongst them, and will attack and take away the carcass of one from alongside a boat.

20 Jan 1840 Wilkes, Charles in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 374.

This day, on board the *Peacock*, they witnessed a sea-fight between a whale and one of its many enemies. ... Much alarm seemed to be felt by the many other whales around. These "killers", as they are called, are of a brownish colour on the back and white on the belly, with a long dorsal fin ... They are armed with strong, sharp teeth, and generally seize the whale by the lower jaw.

1902 Beddard, Frank Evers *Mammalia. The Cambridge Natural History vol X* Macmillan and Co, London: 372.

The Killer Whale, *Orca*, is the only genus (or species?) [sc. of the Delphinidae] which usually attains to more than moderate bulk.

1 March 1911 Bowers, Birdie in Seaver, George (1951) 'Birdie' *Bowers of the Antarctic* John Murray, London: 188.

"The Killers were too interested in us to be pleasant. They had a habit of bobbing up and down perpendicularly, so as to see over the edge of the floe, in looking for seals. The huge black and yellow heads with sickening pig eyes only a few yards from us at times, and always around us, are among the most disconcerting recollections I have of that day."

1929 (South Georgia) *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 272.

The Killer, though of little value, may be said to have some economic importance owing to its habit of occasionally attacking the larger whales and their calves.

1968 Dukert, Joseph M. *This is Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 61.

There have been several reports of Killer whales attacking human beings. One such frightening account from Scott's

journals is frequently quoted. But, so far as we know, no man has ever actually been harmed by one.

- 1994** Kobak, Annette in *New York Times Book Review* 5 Jun: 47. Only in 1819 was mainland Antarctica actually sighted — not surprising, perhaps, since it took a long and hazardous sea journey to get there, through water thick with killer whales and near-perpendicular 50-foot swells of green ocean.

### king *noun and attrib.*

1. The penguin *Aptenodytes patagonicus*: see **king penguin**.

- 1879** (Kerguelen Island) Sharpe, R. Bowdler in *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: 153.

One day while grappling for *Algæ* in Swain's Bay I came with one of the men upon six Kings in a group. Seeing that some of them had finished moulting and were well coloured, we walked up to them, seized the two first by their necks, and sat down upon their backs.

- 22 Nov 1901** (Macquarie Island) Wilson, Edward in Roberts, Brian, ed. (1967) *Edward Wilson's birds of the Antarctic* New Orchard Editions, Poole [Dorset]: 151.

We brought all our birds off, and two live Kings, and all the eggs, all without a mishap, and all went to bed dead-beat after dinner.

- 1915** (South Georgia) Murphy, Robert Cushman in *Country Life* 4 Sept (no 10): 324.

When we found the colony, on December 16th, many of the Kings were incubating eggs.

- 1955** (Marion Island) Rand, R.W. in *The Ostrich* XXVI(2) June: 59.

King chicks have two moults. They start as dark grey, thin primary down. This is replaced by a second rusty brown coat so that by their ninth month they are almost globular.

- 1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 102.

Kings .. weigh on average 15 kilograms, up to 21 kilograms when in pre-moult or pre-breeding fat, and stand about 80 centimetres high.

- 1993** Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 79.

The king is the most familiar of the penguins, having been portrayed for years on the wrappers of chocolate biscuits.

### 2. King dog.

- 1955** (Heard Island) Dalziel, Ken *Penguin road* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 22.

His name was Habotska, and he was a strong intelligent dog, regarded by all the other huskies as the "King".

### kingbird *Esp. Tristan da Cunha*

Any of several species of migratory tern, incl. *Sterna virgata* (see **Kerguelen tern**) and *Sterna vittata tristanensis* (see **Tristan tern**).

- 4 Feb 1831** (nr 68°50'S, 23°E) J. Weddell in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 317.

We saw several birds, which the sailors call king birds, the last two or three days, and which I think are of the same kind which I mistook for land birds a short time ago; but I understand they don't go a long way from the land.

- 1926** (Nightingale Island) Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 176.

The beautiful 'king birds' are also plentiful.

- 1976** Ryssen, W.J. van *The birds of the Tristan da Cunha group and Gough Island* Board of Extra-mural Studies, University of Cape Town: 25.

Antarctic tern *Sterna vittata* Kingbird ... Arctic tern *Sterna paradisaea* Kingbird.

- 1990** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 7 (Sept): 11.

Antartic [sic] tern or Kingbird at Tristan da Cunha.

### king cormorant *See king shag*

### king dog

The dominant male in a pack of sledge-dogs, not always the lead dog. Also shortened to **king** (sense 2).

- 1938** Evans, Admiral Sir Edward R.G.R. *South with Scott* Collins, London: 72.

Even Osman, the wild wolf-like king-dog, showed affection for him [sc. Meares].

- 1943** Debenham, Frank in *Polar Record* 4(25) Jan: 20.

Even on the voyage down the men soon began to learn the names and the characters of the dogs and to choose those they preferred for one characteristic or another. Captain Scott alone did not voice his preference, but we always suspected that his favourite was Osman, a large black dog who was reputed to be king-dog, that is to say, acknowledged as the most redoubtable fighter.

- 1950** (South Georgia) Saunders, Alfred A *camera in Antarctica* Winchester Publications, London: 125.

Curiously enough, the 'King' dog (the one which could fight the longest and hardest) was the one which had been in a zoo for a long period.

- 1962** (Scott Base) Henderson, Jim *One foot at the Pole* Whitcombe & Tombs, Christchurch: 161.

That's a job for the king dog — to break up or finish off fights. He's the boss dog, strong and hefty like a sergeant-major. The king dog sometimes is the leader, but not necessarily. He's got to be strong and acceptable to the rest.

- 1994** Chester, Jonathan *Huskies: polar sledge dogs* Margaret Hamilton Books, Sydney: 28.

In the wild the king or the top dog would call the tune and he would be the one able to mate with the bitches.

### king penguin

[It is unclear whether the 1952 quotation is mistaken in the name, the animal, the presence of a crest, or in none of these — if so, on *Tristan da Cunha* king penguin could have been applied to a different penguin.

The penguin was first collected by Captain James Cook on the island of South Georgia, which Cook named after his monarch, King George III. The name could allude to this, but probably simply refers to the penguin's striking appearance.]

The penguin *Aptenodytes patagonicus* (fam. Spheniscidae), which breeds on South Georgia, the Falklands, Marion, Prince Edward, Crozet, Kerguelen, Heard and Macquarie Islands. It is the most strikingly coloured and the second-largest living penguin; adults have bright orange patches on the sides of the throat. The name is often shortened to **king** (sense 1), and it has been called a **Patagonian penguin**. See also **apterodytid penguin**, **oakum boy**.

- 1827** (South Georgia) Weddell, James A *voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822-24*, 2nd edn David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 55.

No land quadrupeds are found here; birds and amphibious animals are the only inhabitants: of the bird tribe, the king penguin is the most worthy of notice ... In pride, these birds

are perhaps not surpassed even by the peacock, to which in beauty of plumage they are indeed very little inferior, — as may be seen in our principal museums. During the time of moulting, they seem to repel each other with disgust, on account of the ragged state of their coats; but as they arrive at the maximum of splendour they re-assemble, and no one who has not completed his plumage is allowed to enter the community. They frequently looking down their front and sides in order to contemplate the perfection of their exterior brilliancy, and to remove any speck which might sully it, is truly amusing to an observer. About the beginning of January they pair, and lay their eggs. During the time of hatching, the male is remarkably assiduous, so that when the hen has occasion to go off to feed and wash, the egg is transported to him, which is done by placing their toes together, and rolling it from the one to the other, using their beaks to place it properly. As they have no nest, it is to be remarked, that the egg is carried between the tail and legs, where the female, in particular, has a cavity for the purpose.

**1857** (Pebble Islands, Falkland Islands) Snow, W. Parker *A two years' cruise off Tierra del Fuego, the Falkland Islands, Patagonia, and in the River Plate: a narrative of life in the Southern Seas* Longman, Brown, Green, Longmans and Roberts, London, vol I: 257.

Here a very fine king-penguin was seen standing up on the beach as if to receive us. As we approached, he did not move, but kept erect like a soldier at his post; merely turning his neck and beautiful dark brown eyes when we came near him.

**21 Feb 1898** Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 183.

On the ice we have seen a few king penguins, uttering, now and then, a weird *gha-a-ah*.

**1929** (South Georgia) *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 591.

When incubating the King Penguins sit close together and are very quarrelsome, stabbing at each other with their sharp bills and dealing each other resounding blows with the flippers.

**1952** Hagen, Yngvar *Birds of Tristan da Cunha* Det Norske Videnskap Akademi i Oslo/Hos Jacob Dybwad, Oslo: 12.

The Tristan men told me that a big penguin, by them called "King Penguin", in some rare cases comes on shore both at Inaccessible and Nightingale, on which latter island one was met with about 1936. It had "tassels" (the yellow crests) like the Tristan Rockhopper. Mated pairs and nesting had never been recorded.

**1966** MacKenzie, D., ed. *Fog 'N Bog [yearbook of Macquarie Island ANARE overwinterers]* ANARE, Macquarie Island: 34.

The King penguin has circumpolar distribution in the sub-antarctic. Its breeding grounds include Macquarie, Heard, Kerguelen, Prince Edward, Crozet and Falkland Islands, and South Georgia. It is the second largest of the penguins, attaining a length of 3 feet.

**1967** Gillham, Mary E. *Sub-Antarctic sanctuary: summertime on Macquarie Island* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Wellington: 42.

Occasionally a larger king penguin would scud through their midst, all of three feet long and wearing comma-shaped cheek patches in brilliant orange.

**1982** Brewster, Barney *Antarctica: wilderness at risk* A.H. & A.W. Reed Ltd, Wellington: 83.

Penguins were once exploited for their oil — a mere half-litre per bird — on subantarctic Macquarie Island. In 1895 Joseph Hatch of Invercargill, New Zealand, set up rendering works there, and boiled down 150,000 King penguins each year until .. 1919.

**1990** Adams, Richard, ed. *Antarctica: voices from the silent continent* Montagne Jeunesse Co., UK: 20.

Without any question the most spectacular [sic. addition to the fauna going south to South Georgia from the Falklands] is *Aptenodytes patagonicus*, the king penguin. Although not quite the size of the truly Antarctic emperor, it is over a yard (1 m) high and makes up the shortfall in sheer displacement by its elegance, its poise and the long-flipped dignity of its walk.

## king penguin rookery

[See rookery.]

A breeding place for king penguins.

**1894** (Macquarie Island) Hamilton, A. in *Transactions and Proceedings of the New Zealand Institute* XXVII Art LXV: 564.

The factory at Lusitania at the king-penguin rookery is not now used; the great heap of refuse testifies to the great number of birds destroyed. No impression, however, seems to have been made on the numbers occupying the beach, as every available place seemed full of birds.

**1952** (Marion Island) Crawford, Allan B. in *The Emu* 252(2) May: 74.

King Penguin, *Aptenodytes patagonica* ... There are several large King Penguin rookeries on the island, the largest known being King Rookery on the north coast.

**1967** Gillham, Mary E. *Sub-Antarctic sanctuary: summertime on Macquarie Island* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Wellington: 158.

The first part of our route took us across the site of an old king penguin rookery.

## king shag *Esp. Falkland Islands. Also king cormorant*

The bird *Phalacrocorax atriceps*: see **blue-eyed shag**.

**1861** Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 166.

*Phalacrocorax carunculatus* .. (King-Shag.) This Shag is common along the coast of the Falkland Islands all the year round. It breeds in the rookeries of the Rock-hopper Penguin ... The Cormorants' nests are not placed together, but here and there, all over the rookery, amongst the Penguins'. They are composed of sea-weed and mud, and are raised about 4 or 5 inches from the ground. The eggs are three in number, of a dirty white, with a strong tinge of green inside, and are deposited in the middle of November, a few days after the Rock-hoppers'. The young Shags attain their plumage about the same time as the young Rock-hoppers, that is, about the beginning of April. Then they all leave the breeding-ground, and the rookery is deserted until the next season.

**1905** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* XV(CXIV): 59.

The following Lantern-slides were then exhibited:— By Mr. W. Eagle Clarke, a series of very fine slides taken by the Scottish National Antarctic Expedition in the South Orkneys and at Gough Island. The subjects were as follows:— ... King's Cormorant (*Phalacrocorax atriceps*) on its nest.

**1913** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 22(4) 1 Apr: 61.

An Ordinance To amend the law with regard to the preservation of wild animals and birds ... King-Shag (*Phalacrocorax atriceps* [sic]) ... closed season 1 Oct–last Feb.

**1952** (Marion Island) Crawford, Allan B. in *The Emu* 252(2) May: 82.

King Cormorant, *Phalacrocorax albiventer* ... A striking feature of the eye is that the skin bordering the eye is a circle of bright light blue-coloured flesh.

**1987** National Parks and Wildlife Service, Tasmania *Macquarie Island nature reserve: visitor's handbook* NPWS, Hobart: 21.

An endemic sub-species of the king shag is resident on Macquarie Island. The estimated breeding population is about 660 pairs in nineteen colonies around the island. Due to the

steeply shelving sea bottom their feeding grounds are close to the shore and quite restricted in area.

**1995** BBC *Wildlife Magazine* 13(2) Feb: 33.

[adv] Black-browed Albatross, King Cormorants and four kinds of penguin are among many species that will live in your memory forever.

**klipfish** *Tristan da Cunha*. Also **clipfish**

[From the South African klipfish (DSAfRE: 1801-), any of numerous species of fish of the fam. Clinidae, usu. frequenting tidal rock pools, fr Dutch klip rock, + vis fish. Note also the Norwegian klippfisk split cod.]

A marine fish found in or near coastal rocks; recently, specifically the fish *Bovichtus diacanthus* (fam. Bovichtidae) of the seas around Tristan and Gough Islands.

**1910** Barrow, K.M. *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 276.

The fish we saw at Tristan were .. Clip-fish [etc.].

**1940** Sivertsen, Erling and Baardseth, Egil in Christopherson, Erling *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 66.

We caught the first fish by rod and line in the pools at low water; it was a brownish black and very much resembled our common bull-head, not only in appearance but also in habits. It turned out to be the commonest fish in the region of the beach and swallowed the hook greedily as soon as it was cast out. The islanders call it *clipfish*.

**1994** Cooper, John and Ryan, Peter G *Management plan for the Gough Island wildlife reserve* Government of Tristan da Cunha: 92.

*Bovichtus diacanthus* Klipfish.

**klippie** *Tristan da Cunha*

[Klippie is also recorded (from a later date, 1973) in South African English.]

A **klipfish**.

**1958** (Gough Island, 1955) Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 153.

In the pools along towards Dell Rocks there are seaweeds of many kinds ... Small fish also abound in these pools; most of them 'klippies'.

**Kodak poisoning** *Aust., humorous*. Also **Kodak-Fuji poisoning**

[From the name of the film-producing companies Kodak and Fuji]

The imaginary affliction of a subject of frenzied photographing.

**1983** (Mawson) *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions newsletter* no 32 (Dec): 151.

Visits to local R and R areas occur almost every weekend, and rumour has it that Kodak poisoning is rampant among the wildlife.

**1986** *Sydney Morning Herald* 15 Feb: 9.

"We saw some emperors, too — the buggers nearly died of Kodak poisoning."

**1996** (Davis station) *Icy News: [Australian] Antarctic Division staff newsletter* 7 Jun: 3.

Having contaminated the vicinity with an excess of Kodak-Fuji poisoning, they raced back.

**komarger** *Historical*

[From the Norwegian kommag a soft boot made of reindeer hide and worn by the Lapps.]

A soft leather boot or shoe, usually lined with **senna-grass**.

**1900** Cook, Frederick A. *Through the first Antarctic night 1898-1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: opp. 224.

[caption] The "Komager", a boot made of soft leather.

**1901** (nr Cape Adare) Borchgrevink, C.E. (1980) *First on the Antarctic continent: being an account of the British Antarctic Expedition 1898-1900* Australian National University Press facs, Canberra: 164.

I found that the Lapps' method of never using socks in their Finn boots answered well. Socks are never used in Finnmark [sic] in winter time, but "senne grass," which they, of course, had a special method of arranging in the "komager" (Finn boots) ... If you get wet feet while wearing the grass in the "komager" you will be warmer than ever, as the fresh grass will, by the moisture and the heat of your feet, in a way start to burn, or produce its own heat by spontaneous combustion. The great thing seems to be to arrange the grass properly in the boots, and although we all tried to imitate the Finns in their skill at this work, none of us felt as warm on our feet as when they had helped us.

**1911** (French South Polar expedition 1908-1910) Charcot, Jean Baptiste Auguste Etienne *The voyage of the "Why Not?" in the Antarctic*. Australian National University Press facs, Canberra (1978): 16.

We took with us a large and varied stock of .. *komagers* from Norway. These last-named, a sort of moccasin of reindeerhide, well tested on recent expeditions, are the only kind of foot-wear of use on journeys in extreme cold when one is at a distance from the ship. Their drawback is that they get very slippery on hard ice.

**1954** Giaever, John, transl. fr Norwegian by Huggard, E.M. *The white desert: the official account of the Norwegian-British-Swedish antarctic expedition* Chatto & Windus, London: 22.

Lapp shoes (*Komager*) of ox-hide.

**komatek**

[The Eskimo komatik dog sledge, has been recorded in English arctic use since 1824 (NOED).]

A heavy-duty sledge, originally made and used in the arctic regions, and now used also in antarctic travel.

**1992** Steger, Will and Bowermaster, Jon *Crossing Antarctica* Alfred A. Knopf, New York: 15.

Keizo's and my sleds (named respectively after Japanese adventurer Naomi Uemurura and Roald Amundsen) were modeled after the Eskimo Komateks, made of spruce or ash, with plastic runners, curved handholds, and a ladderlike base. Geoff's sled (named for his hero Robert Falcon Scott) was modeled after those of Norwegian Fridtjof Nansen, the early Arctic explorer. The difference between the two designs is slight: the Komateks are less flexible and a bit heavier; the Nansen's frame rides higher off the ice, making it slightly more maneuverable and more susceptible to tipping due to its higher load.

**krill**

[From the Norwegian kriel, small fry of fish. Cf Dutch kriel small things. The word was first used in northern hemisphere English (1907, Newfoundland: NOED) for the same group of animals.]

1. Any of the shrimp-like planktonic marine crustaceans in the order Euphausiacea which are found in oceans worldwide. In polar regions they form great swarms which are an important food source for baleen whales, seals, birds and fish. They have been commer-

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

cially fished in antarctic waters. Often krill applies specifically to **antarctic krill**, *Euphausia superba*. See also **euphausiid**.

**26 Nov 1912** (South Georgia) Murphy, Robert Cushman (1948) *Logbook for Grace Robert Hale Ltd*, London: 147.

This area is filled with an incredible profusion of the small antarctic opossum shrimp known to the Norse whalers as krill. The krill is the principal food of the humpback, finback, blue, and smaller whales found in these waters.

**1929** (South Georgia) *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 361.

The species which constitute the whale's food can be determined, and a rough idea can be formed of the fluctuations in abundance and types of "krill" which occur on the whaling grounds. The whales caught at South Georgia (excluding the Sperm whale) feed exclusively on *Euphausia superba* ... Off the South African coast the little food in the stomachs was found to include *Euphausia recurva*, *E. lucens* and *Nyctiphanes africanus*, species which grow to a length of less than 1 in.

**1935** Christensen, Lars in Jayne, E.M.G., transl. fr Norwegian *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Staughton, London: 193.

By copepod I mean all those varieties of animalculæ upon which whales feed, especially krill.

**1942** Mackintosh, N.A. in *Polar Record* 3(24) Jul: 558.

The krill [sc. *Euphausia superba*] is limited to the southern part of the Southern Ocean, and occupies a circumpolar zone which nearly corresponds to the maximum area covered by the pack-ice in winter.

**1958** Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund *The crossing of Antarctica: the Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955-58* Cassell & Co, London: 125.

These were *Euphausia* or 'krill', the main food of many species of whale ... We collected as many as we could of these pink crustacea, thinking they would make a surprise dish for David Stratton's birthday next day. ... Our special dish of sea-food was duly prepared in honour of David's birthday and certainly it looked most attractive. Manfully he tackled the delicate pink pile, only to find that each multi-legged corpse contained no more than a few drops of pink oil.

**1968** Herbert, Wally *A world of men: exploration in Antarctica* Eyre & Spottiswoode, London: 68.

The Arctic Terns arrived, pointing their red beaks threateningly at us as they circled and squawked overhead. They had migrated 13,000 miles, but arrived looking bloated on the krill they found when they reached the pack ice.

**1971** Young, Pamela *Penguin summer — or, a rare bird in Antarctica* A.H. & A.W. Reed, Wellington: 149.

It was a miserable day, cold and snowing lightly. The ground was a slippery red mess of melting snow and krill-stained guano.

**1981** *Insight [London]* 3(35): 958.

During the Antarctic summer (December to April), krill forms swarms varying from a metre (3 ft) to 800 m (half a mile) wide in the top 200 m of water.

**1991** Bradshaw, Margaret *Canterbury Museum's Antarctica: a supplement to the displays at Canterbury Museum* Canterbury Museum, Christchurch: 16.

When *Euphausia superba*, the red shrimp-like crustacean commonly called krill, shows up in the ocean, you can be sure you have entered Antarctic waters.

**1995** (Bird Island) *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* no. 336 Aug: 3.

The big swell swamped the rocks at the cove entrance and washed swarms of small 'krill' into the ice. At night the krill trapped within the ice were phosphorescent, each footstep throwing ahead a shower of sparks.

2. *Usu. in combination, as krill burger, ~mince, ~paste, ~stick*

The meat of the animals, used as petfood and sometimes for human consumption.

**1973** *Australian Fisheries* 32(7) Jul: 36.

Krill is the common name given to a number of species of euphausiids — minute shrimp-like crustaceans — found in oceans of the world. Concentrations are greatest in the North Pacific, North Atlantic and Antarctic Oceans, and least in tropical and subtropical areas ... Various agencies in the Soviet Union are engaged in a publicity and promotion campaign to sell krill paste.

**1981** *Insight [London]* 3(35): 963.

Breaded krill sticks (krill fingers) have been successfully marketed in Chile!

**1989** May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica, 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 147.

In Japan, whole krill achieved satisfactory sales, as did a krill cheese spread ("Koral") in the Soviet Union. Chile produces frozen krill "sticks" like fish fingers, and the Norwegians used it in soup products.

**1991** Abel, Kay, Williams, Meryl and Smith, Perry *Australian and New Zealand Southern Trawl Fisheries Conference. Issues and opportunities. Melbourne, 6-9 May 1990* Bureau of Rural Resources/Australian Bureau of Agricultural and Resource Economics, Canberra: 211.

The first commercially released foodstuff made from krill was a paste made from coagulated krill protein. This was sold .. in the USSR in the late 1970s and it was fairly unpopular. The paste was usually pink with a curd-like consistency but when made from actively feeding krill tended to become green and taste peculiar ... Minced krill was produced by both Polish and West German enterprises in the late 1970s, with a high yield of 40-50%. Acceptable krill mince was difficult to make from low grade krill and, because it was made from the whole animal, exhibited high fluoride levels. Krill mince was made into sausages and soups, though its high pH, inability to bind water and low ability to emulsify fats made it a poor raw material for the food processing industry.

**1991** *South African Shipping News & Fishing Industry Review* 46(6): 21.

South African companies have tried to market krill, but encountered objections from the Dept of Health on account of the inherent high levels of fluoride in the fish ... Whole krill had 24 times more fluoride than the maximum allowed by the US Food & Drug Administration, and flesh extracted from the shell had seven times more than the safety limit.



## L

**lady's slipper** *Falkland Islands*

[The botanical name comes from the Latin *calceola slipper*, referring to the shape of the plant's lower lip.]

The herbaceous perennial plant *Calceolaria fothergillii* (fam. Scrophulariaceae), which grows in the Falkland Islands and southernmost South America. It has attractive orange-yellow flowers, and is cultivated as an ornamental.

**1978** Trehearne, Mary *Falkland heritage: a record of pioneer settlement* Arthur H Stockwell, Ilfracombe: 197.

The children gathered the first pale maidens; searched again near the beach for the little yellow, rust-rimmed calceolaria called "lady's slipper".

**1989** Davies, T.H. and McAdam, J.H. *Wild flowers of the Falkland Islands* Bluntisham Books, Huntingdon: 24.

The beautiful yellow flower of lady's slipper is borne on a short (10 cm) stalk arising from a basal rosette of 2 cm long, hairy, spoon-shaped leaves.

**c1990** Roper, Patrick *Holidays in the Falkland Islands* Falkland Islands Tourist Board, London: 4.

Many wild flowers give a life and colour to our grasslands and moors and several are cherished on rock-gardens and in alpine houses in the Northern Hemisphere: the pretty Ladies Slipper, *Calceolaria fothergillii* or the Mountain Berry, *Pernettya pumila*.

**lake**

An area of clear sea surrounded by **pack ice** — a **polynya**.

**20 Feb 1898** (Antarctic Ocean) Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 178.

The *Belgica*, however, will not be discouraged. She ploughs on between the heavy masses of ice, to some open lakes beyond.

**9 Apr 1916** (nr Elephant Island, at sea) Hurley, Frank (1979) *Shackleton's argonauts: the epic tale of Shackleton's voyage to Antarctica in 1915* McGraw-Hill Book Co: 127.

We rowed for dear life through the winding channel and entered a vast lake of gently heaving deep blue water in which floated a solitary mammoth berg.

**1955** Dalziel, Ken *Penguin road* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 75.

The ship nosed its way until we arrived in a lake — a large area of water free of ice in the wake of an iceberg.

**land ice**

[Land-ice is recorded from 1820 in arctic use (NOED), for ice attached to shore.]

1. Ice lying over land.

**11 Jan 1841** McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 152.

Saw a large berg in shore, which had only separated from the land-ice this morning.

**1900** Cook, Frederick A. *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 163.

Rocky cliffs which separate the land-ice into numerous glacial streams.

**1945** *Polar Record* 4(30) Jul: 272.

But apart from the vast bulk of sea-ice in high latitudes, what of the great land-ice masses of Antarctica and Greenland and the ice-caps of circumpolar islands?

**1964** Mawson, Douglas in Mawson, Paquita *Mawson of the Antarctic: the life of Sir Douglas Mawson* Longmans, London: 60.

At last there came a report that there seemed to be land-ice nearby.

**1982** Ledingham, Rod *ANARE dog drivers manual* Antarctic Division, Department of Science and the Environment: 70.

When undertaking long journeys on the sea ice it is imperative that stages be planned so that overnight stops are either on islands, shore-based rocks or land-ice.

2. Freshwater ice formed on land from rain or compacted snow.

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 384.

[glossary] Land ice. All ice formed from névé .. or not formed on, or in, water. The term usually includes névé and sometimes snow.

**1930** Debenham, Frank in L.C. Bernacchi, co-ordinator *The polar book. Produced for the British Polar Exhibition 1930* E. Allom & Co Ltd, London: 44.

The land ice practically all comes from the atmosphere in the form of snow, but it must not be imagined that the snowfall is excessive, for it is usually quite the reverse, and it is rather the absence of general thaw or active motion to remove the ice than any great depth of snowfall which is the cause of the enormous bulk of ice which burdens many, but by no means all, of the polar lands.

**1990** (Signy Island) Stonehouse, Bernard *North Pole, South Pole: a guide to the ecology and resources of the Arctic and Antarctic* Prion, London: 16.

[caption] Land ice is an accumulation of snow packed down by wind and consolidated under its own weight until it forms clear ice.

**land station** *Whaling*

A **shore station**.

**1930** Stead, David G. in *Australian Museum Magazine* 4: 124.

Land stations are more economical in that they are more readily able to utilize the whole of the carcass, oil being extracted from every part and whalemeal or guano made from the dried flesh and bones.

**1950** (South Georgia) Saunders, Alfred A *camera in Antarctic* Winchester Publications, London: 20.

With the growth of pelagic whaling and the decrease in the number of whales around South Georgia, three of the land stations closed down.

**1967** *Australian Fisheries Newsletter* 26(9): 7.

The setting up of schemes to cover both factory ships and land stations.

**land water**

[Land-water is recorded earlier (in 1856: NOED) in arctic use with the same sense.]

A passage of open water close to and roughly parallel with land — a **lead** near land.

**10 Jan 1915** (Coats Land) Hurley, Frank (1979) *Shackleton's argonauts: the epic tale of Shackleton's voyage to Antarctica in 1915* McGraw-Hill Book Co Pty Ltd: 55.

A light breeze was blowing off shore and this had the effect of drifting the ice away from the barrier and keeping open a wide lane of 'land-water'.

**1958** Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund *The crossing of Antarctica: the Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955–58* Cassell & Co, London: 23.

The chief reason for taking a course close to the land was to make use of the lead of open water which, in the summer, forms along the coast under the influence of current and off-shore winds. Once we had found this 'land water' we could expect to follow it for a long distance southward.

**lane** *Historical*

[Lane was used in 1835 by Sir John Ross in reference to arctic travel. His son, James Clark Ross, accompanied him on arctic voyages before himself sailing to Antarctic regions.]

A narrow channel through sea ice, which may or may not be navigable, unlike a **lead** which is always navigable. Sometimes the two words have been used interchangeably.

**30 Dec 1842** McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 346.

Working to windward through lanes of water towards the land.

**16 Mar 1898** Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 217.

The ice is spreading out in some directions, leaving large open lanes of bright blue sea with a metallic lustre. The width of these lanes is from ten to fifty feet, and they extend northerly as far as the eye can reach.

**1901** (Robertson Bay) Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 165.

We reached the small islet, our destination, late in the afternoon, pitched tent and were soon happy around our Primus stove, which, under the fostering care of Mr. Evans, was soon busily cooking some seal steaks freshly cut from a seal found and killed near a lane of open water. This lane was teeming with seals.

**1914** (nr Cape Adare) Priestley, Raymond E. (1974 repr.) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* Melbourne University Press: 124.

The sun had been due to appear above the horizon at noon on the 28th, but owing to the frost-smoke rising from the lanes of open water to the north, we did not see it until we had been out two days.

**1928** Wordie, J.M. in Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 384.

[glossary] Lead or Lane. "A navigable passage through pack ice." In the Antarctic it is "customary to speak of the former as leads even when covered with young ice."

**1935** Christensen, Lars in Jayne, E.M.G., transl. fr Norwegian *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 70.

Riiser-Larsen was in the crow's nest, finding one 'lane' after another, until we were 4 nautical miles from land. No boat could approach nearer than that.

**1987** Bates, Robert L. and Jackson, Julia A. eds *Glossary of geology, 3rd edn* American Geological Institute, Alexandria: 368.

Lane: (a) A narrow, not necessarily navigable, fracture or channel of water through sea ice; it may widen into a *lead*. (b) A syn. of *lead [ice]*. Rarely used.

**lantern fish**

The deepwater marine fish *Electrona carlsbergi* (fam. Myctophidae), which is circumpolar. It grows to 9 cm (3 in) long and about 12 g (less than oz).

**1984** Cooper, J., Enticott, J.W., Hecht, T. and Klages, N. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* 14: 32.

Only two prey species have been positively identified: the krill *Euphausia superba* and the myctiform "lantern" fish *Electrona carlsbergi*?

**1990** Williams, Dick in *ANARE News* no 64: 6.

Most notable among these is the fishery for the sardine-like *Electrona carlsbergi* in the vicinity of the Antarctic Convergence north of South Georgia, where 20,000 to 30,000 tonnes have been taken annually in the past two seasons.

**larc** *Aust.*

[Acronym from 'landing and resupply cargo']

An amphibious four-wheel drive aluminium barge-like craft used in loading and unloading people and supplies at antarctic and subantarctic stations. Larcs were provided and manned on Australian Antarctic expeditions by the Australian Army. See also **larcie**.

**1971** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Nov: 4.

Already many expeditioners have experienced the quite different feeling and motions of the Army's LARCs which had their successful initiation to ANARE loading and unloading operations in the cold South lands last changeover. Now briefly a few details for the technically-minded. The LARCs are an aluminium bodied vessel, 35 feet long, 10' 6" high, 10' wide, and with a wheelbase of 10' 4". The four-wheel drive balloon tyres also act as the suspension and the 300 HP V8 Cummins diesel engine gives the LARC a top speed of 25 mph on land and 10 knots at sea. It can carry a five ton load on its flat deck which has readily detachable sides for transporting small cargo and explorers. Although possibly not as versatile as our tried and trusted DUKWs they have proved themselves capable of doing the tasks required and moreover they have endeared themselves to many older expeditioners with memories of heaving and straining to unload awkward objects from the bowels of a DUKW. LARC = Lighter. Amphibious. Re-supply. Cargo.

**1993** (Casey station) *Station News* Feb: 1.

Farewells were emotional and traditional with good natured exchange of missiles and one larc load were even heard to break into song as they left our shores for the ship.

**1994** *Australian Geographic* 36 (Oct-Dec): 27.

In 1971 the Army replaced DUKWs with LARCs. The four-wheel drive LARCs are better in the water, with a speed of 15 km/h — more than 5 km/h faster than DUKWs.

**larcie** *Aust.*

A **larc** driver or handler; on Australian antarctic expeditions, **larcs** were provided and manned by the Australian army.

**1972** (en route to Macquarie Island) *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Apr: 17.

We had on board eight Larcies (formerly Duckies).

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 193.

Two electronically guided model speedboats appeared from the larcies' wanted-on-voyage gear, and for some hours buzzed around the calm lake alongside, skilfully avoiding floating ice and zapping the penguins which were unconcernedly fishing nearby. Other Adélie penguins, electrified by the sight, stood on the ends of the ice-sheet, flapping their wings in amazement.

**1993** (Davis station) *Station News* Feb: 2.

The fire alarms all sounded at 0630 am. It seems one of the larcies was having a nice hot shower in the newly commissioned operations building, and the steam set off the sensors.

**larcing** *verbal noun, Aust.*

Travelling by larc.

**1995** (Mawson station) Maggs, Tom in Robinson, Shelagh, ed. *Huskies in harness: a love story in Antarctica* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 13.

You're stuck on the ship for another hour's mooring and LARCing, and fussing with your gear.

**last continent**

[*Antarctica was the last landmass to be discovered which has continental status.*]

**Antarctica.**

**1956** Southall, Ivan *Simon Black in the Antarctic* Angus and Robertson, Melbourne: 37.

It was a land almost without life in any form. It was the Last Continent, and aptly named.

**1960** Pape, Richard *Poles apart* Odhams Press Ltd, London: 170. "The ice-wilderness," he went on, "the so-called last continent, is rapidly assuming paramount importance where political and strategic ambitions are concerned."

**1997** Diski, Jenny *Skating to Antarctica* Granta Books, London: 227.

I wondered, at last, if I was going to prevent myself from landing on Antarctica. What an odd thing, to have come all this way and then not land on the peninsula. There was a small but unmistakable internal smile at the thought. I located a tight subterranean knot of unwillingness to set foot on the last continent just because I happened to be there. Though of course I didn't just happen to be there. This was a place where no one just happens to be.

**lavender** *Falkland Islands. Also Falkland lavender*

The perennial plant *Perezia recurvata* (fam. Asteraceae or Compositae) of the Falkland Islands and southernmost South America. It has spiny leaves and fragrant white, blue or purple flowers.

**1970** Everard, Barbara and Morley, Brian D. *Wild flowers of the world* Ebury Press and Michael Joseph, London: pl 6.

*Perezia recurvata* is known as 'lavender' on the Falkland Islands, where it grows amongst rocks and on sandy shores.

**1989** Davies, T.H. and McAdam, J.H. *Wild flowers of the Falkland Islands* Bluntisham Books, Huntingdon: 41.

Falkland lavender (*Perezia recurvata*) The local lavender is one of the most attractive plants in the islands.

**lead**

[Lead is recorded slightly earlier for the same sense in the Arctic (1835, NOED); DCAN E records it from 1850.]

A navigable passage of open or thinly-frozen water in sea ice. See also **lane**.

**11 Jan 1841** McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 152.

During the first watch I went up into the crow's-nest, to have a look at the leads of open water.

**1905** Scott, Captain Robert F. *The voyage of the 'Discovery'* Macmillan and Co, London: 108.

Although there was a quantity of pack in the southern limits of the strait, from our crow's-nest it looked as if it would not be difficult to find clear leads to the open sea beyond.

**14 Dec 1910** (67°28'S, 177°59'W) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912: an account of Scott's last expedition* Blandford Press, London: 76.

The pack has been heavy but interspersed with thinly frozen leads.

**3 Sept 1912** (Commonwealth Bay) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 111.

The leads only 2 days old are 4 ins thick.

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* Duckworth, London: 32.

He would gaze far and wide across the icefields, and select favourable openings in the floes, visible to those on deck. These openings are known as 'leads', and if no lead appeared immediately ahead, the ship would try to make one.

**1941** *Polar Record* 3(22) July: 442.

To the east and south-east, many open patches of water and leads could be seen to the horizon, indicating that the Filchner Shelf-ice is restricted to the south-eastern coast of the Weddell Sea.

**1949** Innes, Hammond (1953 edn) *The white south* Fontana Books, London: 113.

The lead was more than a mile wide and the water in it looked black by comparison with the shimmering iridescence of the ice on either side.

**1995** Ives, Jack D. and Sugden, David, eds *Polar regions Reader's Digest*, Sydney: 16.

Leads are cracks in the ice, often kilometers wide and tens of kilometers long.

**lemmer** *Whaling*

[From the Norwegian lemme to dismember.]

A worker who dismembers a whale carcass after it has been stripped of **blubber** by flensers, and removes meat from bone so that it can be boiled to extract the **oil**.

**1938** Ommanney, F.D. *South latitude* Longman, Green & Co., London: 27.

It was pulled sideways across the "plan" and given over to the "lemmers", whose job it was to cut it into pieces for the bone platform and for the conveyors which tipped the meat and guts into the meat boilers.

**1948** Weetman, Charles *All about Antarctica* Published by the author, Melbourne: 187.

[glossary] Lemmer — the name given to the men on whaling factory ships who cut up the whale carcasses after the blubber has been removed by the flensers.

**1949** Innes, Hammond (1953 edn) *The white south* Fontana Books, London: 53.

It's the flensers and lemmers and labourers, that's mixed, too.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

**1971** (South Georgia) Brown, Nan *Antarctic housewife* Hutchinson of Australia, Melbourne: 39.

The lemmers were working on a second whale and a third was in the hands of the flensers.

**1989** May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica*, 2nd edn Child & Associates, Sydney: 145.

[caption] Once the "flensers" have removed the blubber, the "lemmers" cut up the meat and organs for boiling.

## leopard

1. The seal *Hydrurga leptonyx*, the **leopard seal**.

**19 Mar 1823** (New South Greenland) Morrell, Captain Benjamin (1832) *A narrative of four voyages, to the South Sea etc.* J. & J. Harper, New York: n.p.

We .. saw about three thousand sea-elephants, and one hundred and fifty sea-dogs and leopards.

**1967** Gillham, Mary E. *Sub-Antarctic sanctuary: summertime on Macquarie Island* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Wellington: 157.

All Antarctic seals carry a heavy load of internal parasites .. but many of the leopards which pull ashore on Macquarie are also sick, tired or injured.

**1971** *Australian Fisheries* 30(6) June: 13.

The leopard, whose only enemy is the killer whale, is the most voracious.

2. Obs. [Prob. restricted in its use to James Weddell himself.]

### A Weddell seal.

**1827** Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822-24*, 2nd edn David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 24.

In the evening the boats returned with two seals and ten leopards' skins.

## leopard seal

[Leopard from the generally blotched hair of the seal, and perhaps more esp. for its hunting abilities and conspicuous carnivoracity. 'Leopard seal' was also used in the early literature for the harbour seal *Phoca vitulina* on the west coast of North America.]

The large slender seal *Hydrurga leptonyx* (fam. Phocidae), dark greyish above and paler beneath, with conspicuous blotches and impressive sharp teeth. It is usually solitary, and lives in the Antarctic and subantarctic where it feeds on krill, also eating birds (especially penguins) and other marine animals. Males grow to 3.2 m (10 ft 6 in) and 455 kg (1000 lb), females to 3.4 m (11 ft 2 in) and 590 kg (1300 lb). The older name for this animal is **sea leopard**.

**1906** (South Georgia) Lönnberg, Einar in *Vetenskapsakademiens Handlingar* 40(5): 16.

If it is fine weather the Leopard-seals seldom go ashore, but are seen out in the fjords basking in the sun.

**1919** (Cape Adare) *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* XXXIX(ccxli): 67.

The chief enemy the Penguins have is the Leopard-Seal (*Hydrurga leptonyx*) which lurks beneath the ledges of the ice-foot in order to capture the Penguins as they take to the water.

**1929** (South Georgia) Matthews, L. Harrison in *Discovery Reports* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London, vol 1: 247.

The taking of Leopard seal as well as elephant seal is permitted, but the numbers taken annually are negligible, rarely exceeding one hundred.

**1959** Johnson, M.L., Abercrombie, Michael and Fogg, G.E. *New biology* no 29 (May): 114.

The leopard seal, which is a highly aggressive predator, is fairly generally distributed throughout the Antarctic regions.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 94.

Our sinuous leopard seal is now close inshore, only feet from our feet. First he lies doggo in shallow water, just under where the penguins are anxiously craning their necks to see what could be in store for them. ... Then he starts cruising, like a fox round a chicken-coop. Round and round he goes, the Adélies on the little bit of ice that he is encircling stupefied with anxiety and rage. His open mouth is red and his teeth, his fangs rather, are wicked.

**1991** Venables, Stephen *Island at the edge of the world: a South Georgia odyssey* Hodder and Staughton, London: 93.

We noticed a seal lying all alone. Then as we drew closer we realised that its body seemed elongated, with a strange-shaped head. As soon as it turned to show its wide slit of a mouth, we realised that it was a leopard seal. We stared for a while at its powerful flippers, serpent's head and that horrible smiling mouth, but it virtually ignored us.

## lesser albatross

*Historical, Falkland Islands*

A small albatross; a **mollymawk**.

**1904** (Falkland Islands) Vallentin, Rupert in *Memoirs and Proc of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no. 23: 12.

There were three species of birds present — 'Mollymawks' or lesser Albatross (*Diomedea chlororhynca*), 'Rockhoppers' (*Eudyptes chrysocome*), and 'Shags' (*Phalacrocorax imperialis*).

**1905** (Falkland Islands) *Scottish Geographical Magazine* 21: 47. Birds are numerous in the islands, especially penguins and the mollymawk or lesser albatross.

## Lesser Antarctica

One of the two distinct parts of the antarctic continent, also known as **West Antarctica**.

**1961** Thiel, E. in *Polar Record* 10(67) Jan: 335.

In outline, the Antarctic continent crudely resembles a pear ... In the present paper we shall use the terms "Lesser Antarctica" and "Greater Antarctica". "Lesser Antarctica" designates the top of the pear. It includes the Palmer Peninsula (Graham Land), the Ross Ice Shelf, the Filchner Ice Shelf, and the intervening grounded ice areas of Marie Byrd Land and Ellsworth Highland.

**1984** Heath, Colin *Australians in Antarctica* Methuen Australia Pty Ltd, Sydney: 6.

This mountain chain [sc. the Transantarctic Mountains] forms an almost unbroken chain dividing the continent into Greater and Lesser Antarctica.

**1993** Miller, Richard Gordon *A history and atlas of the fishes of the Antarctic ocean* Foresta Institute for Ocean and Mountain Studies, Carson City, Nevada: 3.

Various suggestions have been made for describing geographical polar areas. The logical one to me is to notice the larger, rounded part (the "shield") as "Greater Antarctica" and the portion eastward of the Ross Sea indentation and westward of the Weddell Sea including the Antarctic Peninsula to be "Lesser Antarctica".

## lesser rorqual

The whale *Balaenoptera acutorostrata*, the smallest **rorqual**, now more often called the **minke whale**.

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 108.

The lesser Rorqual (*Balaenoptera rostrata*) measures about thirty feet.

**1956** (Hope Bay area) *Polar Record* 8(54) Sept: 262.

During the winter several visits were paid to inspect about 200 whales which had been trapped in a small hole in the sea ice in Crown Prince Gustav Channel, about 40 miles from open water. Originally there were three species, Killer Whale (*Orcinus orca*), Lesser Rorqual (*Balaenoptera acutorostrata*) and *Berardius arnuxii*, but by August all except the last species had disappeared.

**1964** Helm, A.S. and Miller, J.H. *Antarctica: the story of the New Zealand party of the Trans-Antarctic expedition* R.E. Owen, Government Printer, Wellington: 139.

Three lesser rorqual whales, one quite close to the ship, were sighted.

## lesser sheathbill

The all-white shorebird *Chionis minor* (fam. Chionidiidae) which breeds on Marion and Prince Edward islands, Crozet, Kerguelen and Heard Islands. It is more often called a **paddy**, or simply a **sheathbill**. See also **Marion Island sheathbill**.

**1879** *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London B* 168: 163.

*Chionis minor*, Hartl. (Lesser Sheathbill.) The general character of 19 eggs is a dirty white ground, splashed and blotched with brown.

**1901** Saunders, H. in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 233.

The Lesser Sheathbill (*Chionarchus minor*) inhabits Kerguelen and Heard Islands, and also Marion and Prince Edward Islands.

**1986** (Heard Island) Smith, Jeremy *Specks in the Southern Ocean* Department of Geography and Planning, University of New England, Armidale: 52.

Apart from damp feet, and fingers that would hardly move for cold as I tried simultaneously to collect specimens under the shallow water and wet weed and write notes, I encountered another minor hazard. This was a pair of Lesser Sheathbills, sometimes called paddies.

**1994** Australian Antarctic Division *Heard Island and McDonald Islands draft management plan* Australian Antarctic Division, Department of the Environment, Sport and Territories: 37.

[caption] The lesser sheathbill [sc. *Chionis minor nasicornis*], a subspecies of sheathbill endemic to Heard Island.

## Lesson's petrel *Historical*

[Named by French ornithologist P. Garnot in 1826 (Ann. Sci. Nat., Paris 7: 50, 54) after French naturalist and surgeon René-Primevère Lesson (1794–1849).]

The seabird *Pterodroma lessonii*: see **white-headed petrel**.

**1879** (Kerguelen Island) Sharpe, R. Bowdler in *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: 127.

In Captain Hutton's paper before referred to, allusion is made to an undetermined species of Petrels [sic] to which the euphonius sobriquet *Procellaria diabolica* has been applied. It was said to be a bird inhabiting Desolation Island, which flew about by night uttering unearthly shrieks. There are good reasons for supposing the sprite to be Lesson's Petrel. It is difficult to describe the cry of this bird.

**5 Dec 1910** (56°41'S, 176°23'E) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912: an account of Scott's last expedition* Blandford Press, London: 70.

We have been seeing a large number of birds — larger and small albatross, Sooty Albatross, various petrels of medium size such as Cape Pigeons, Lesson's Petrel' .. — in fact the birds have been abundant and worth far more time than the gale has allowed us to give them.

<sup>1</sup>Footnote: The White-headed Petrel, *Pterodroma lessoni*.

**1915** (Macquarie Island) Ainsworth, G.F. in Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911–1914* William Heinemann, London, vol II: 221.

The island is the habitat of two kinds of night-birds, one kind — a species of petrel (Lesson's) — being much larger than the other, both living in holes in the ground.

**1943** Mawson, Douglas *Macquarie Island: its geography and geology. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911–14. Scientific reports series A vol V* Government Printer, Sydney: 35.

The Grey Petrel (*Procellaria cinerea*) nests at North Head and other localities. This and the Lesson Petrel were known to the sealers as the "larger night birds."

## lid

A thin crust of snow or ice over a **crevasse**.

**[21 Feb 1911** (nr White Island) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912: an account of Scott's last expedition* Blandford Press, London: 105.

As I ran I knew from the noise and feel under foot that every now and then we were crossing rotten lidded crevasses. Once my foot went through and I leapt on to the sledge and saw my leading dog at the same moment scramble out of a crack into which he had broken with his hind feet — but the sledge was running fast and all the team and the sledge with Cherry and myself ran over all right.]

**26 Jul 1911** (returning from Cape Crozier) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912: an account of Scott's last expedition* Blandford Press, London: 158.

We got to know very fairly well [sic] whether we could go ahead confidently or whether we were likely to fall through a lid.

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South Duckworth*, London: 95.

The bridge — or 'lid', as it is called — of a crevasse usually has quite a different appearance to a snow surface on firm ice.

**1963** McKenzie, Douglas *Opposite poles* Robert Hale & Co, London/ Whitcombe & Tombs, New Zealand: 16.

Out here on the snowy polar plateau all the crevasses were complete with lids.

## lightfish

The widely-distributed marine fish *Maurolicus muelleri* (fam. Sternoptychidae), which grows to about 7.5 cm (3 in) long.

**1986** Ryan, Peter G. and Jackson, Susan in *The Auk* 103(2) Apr: 427.

Seven White-chinned Petrels (*Procellaria aequinoctialis*) (mean mass 1,250 g) from Marion Island (46°52'S, 37°51'E) each were fed a large meal (125 g) of squid (*Loligo* sp.), lightfish (*Maurolicus muelleri*), and antarctic krill.

**light-mantled sooty albatross**

[Light-mantled from the grey to light grey back of the bird, which is lighter than that of the other **sooty albatross**.]

The albatross *Phoebastria palpebrata* (fam. Diomedidae) which occurs in circumpolar waters north of the antarctic pack ice, and breeds on antarctic and subantarctic islands (Prince Edward, Crozet, Kerguelen, Heard, Macquarie, Campbell, Auckland, Antipodes and South Georgia). The bird is dark brown to greyish brown, with a pale grey back, and a white crescent which almost encircles the eye. It is often called simply the **sooty albatross**, and is the more southerly of the two species known by that name.

**1943** Hydrographic Office, US Navy Department *Sailing directions for Antarctica*. H.O. no 138 Hydrographic Office, Washington: 30.

The Light-mantled sooty Albatross usually remains northward of the pack but sometimes enters the Ross Sea as far southward as 78°S.

**1967** Gillham, Mary E. *Sub-Antarctic sanctuary: summertime on Macquarie Island* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Wellington: 118.

The light-mantled is the more southerly of the two sooty albatrosses, breeding ten degrees further south than most of its darker cousins on Gough, Tristan, St Paul and Marion Islands.

**1979** (nr Balleny Islands) Lewis, David *Voyage to the ice: the Antarctic expedition of Solo* Australian Broadcasting Commission/Wm Collins Sons & Co: 51.

A beautiful chocolate-coloured, light-mantled sooty albatross wheeled past on rigid pinions.

**1990** Naveen, Ron, Monteath, Colin, de Roy, Tui and Jones, Mark *Wild ice: Antarctic journeys* Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington: 64.

Given an unparalleled chance to fill my light-mantled sooty gap, I enthusiastically approached the late 1988 field season at South Georgia.

**1997** (1773) Gurney, Alan *Below the convergence: voyages toward Antarctica 1699–1839* W.W. Norton & Co, NY/London: 118.

During January Forster had winged an albatross swimming in the water and it was brought on board alive. The seamen called this species a Quakerbird, after its sober plumage. Forster, excited, thought it a species never before described and named it *Diomedea palpebrata* — the light-mantled sooty albatross — and one of the loveliest albatross on nest or in flight.

**light pack** Also **light open pack**

A light cover of **pack ice** through which a vessel can pass without great problems. See also **open pack**.

**1956** (65°S, 27°W) Fuchs, V.E. in *Polar Record* 8(54) Sept: 265.

The ship entered light open pack ice at reduced speed.

**1979** Lewis, David *Voyage to the ice: the Antarctic expedition of Solo* Australian Broadcasting Commission/Wm Collins Sons & Co: 55.

Only light pack was encountered and *Solo* drove on into the west.

**1990** Marchant, S. and Higgins, P.J., co-ordinators *Handbook of Australian, New Zealand and Antarctic birds, vol 1A Ratites to Petrels* Oxford University Press, Melbourne: 137.

In Weddell Sea: mostly in medium pack-ice (40–60%), with ample open water for feeding; also in light (10–30%) and heavy (70–100%) pack-ice.

**lion**

A **sea lion**.

**1622** (Straits of Magellan) Williamson, James A., ed. (1933) *The observations of Sir Richard Hawkins* Argonaut Press, London: 78.

In their former parts like unto Lyons, with shagge hayre, and mostaches.

**31 Dec 1774** (Tierra del Fuego) Cook, James quoted in Beaglehole, J.C., ed. (1961) *The voyage of the Resolution and Adventure* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 605.

On landing we found they [sc. the seals] were a different Animal to Seals, but in shape and motions exactly resemble them, we called them Lions on account of the great resemblance the Male has to a land Lion.

**1829** (Falkland Islands) Barnard, Capt. Charles H. *A narrative of the sufferings and adventures of Captain Charles H. Barnard in a voyage round the world, during the years 1812, 1813, 1814, 1815, & 1816* Printed for the author by J. Lindon, New York: 66.

I have often seen the lions swimming with their heads above water, and with their capacious jaws distended, among those poor defenceless little birds, dealing destruction.

**1833** (Falkland Islands) Fanning, Edmund *Voyages round the world; with selected sketches of voyages to the South Seas ... between the years 1792 and 1832* Collins & Hannay, New York: 27.

At this instant, a lion of middling size was espied, just emerging from the high tussock grass.

**28 Aug 1865** Musgrave, Thomas in Shillinglaw, John J., ed. (1866) *Castaway on the Auckland Islands: a narrative of the wreck of the "Grafton" and of the escape of the crew after twenty months suffering. From the private journals of Captain Thomas Musgrave together with some account of the Aucklands* Lockwood and Co., London: 120.

I have been employed the whole of the day in skinning a young lion, and it is not yet finished. I am taking the skin off complete. It is the first seal I have skinned in this way, and I find it a very tedious job.

**3 Jan 1882** Wiseman, William in Layman, Rear-Admiral C.H. and Cameron, Jane (1995) *The Falklands and the Dwarf: the cruise of HMS Dwarf in the Falkland Islands 1881–1882* Picton Publishing, Chippenhams: 77.

The great lions raised themselves up on their fore flippers and roared, quite like a shore lion roars.

**1948** Richdale, L.E. *Wild life on an island outpost: expedition to The Snares Islands 1947–48* Otago Daily Times and Witness Newspapers, Dunedin: 111.

As may readily be imagined, for hygienic reasons we endeavoured to keep the lions and elephants a little distance from the hut.

**1967** (Campbell Island) *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 4(9) Mar: 474.

Before lunch Foubister and Dreaver had a short swim in the surf in beautiful sunshine with Peggy (our dog) and a friendly lion.

**1993** Chater, Tony *The Falklands* The Penna Press, St Albans: 124.

Skins were flensed, salted and folded like bullock hides and the blubber tried out for oil, one lion yielding 10–15 gallons.

**Little American**

[There were five bases sequentially named Little America, in scattered years from 1928 to 1959. The first four of these were on the Bay of Whales, Ross Ice Shelf.]

A resident of the US Little America base on the Ross Ice Shelf.

**1930** (nr Ross Sea) *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 142.

[caption] Little Americans developed all kinds of beards except bluebeards. Subzero temperatures are not conducive to shaving, and facial adornment changed the appearance of many of Admiral Byrd's men.

### lobodon *Obs.*

[Fr the Greek *λοβος* lobe + *οδούς* tooth, referring to the lobed teeth of the animal.]

The seal *Lobodon carcinophagus*, better known as the **crabeater seal**.

**1905** (South Orkneys) Pirie, J.H. Harvey in *Scottish Geographical Magazine* 21: 35.

Sea leopards came ashore fairly often, but very few Lobodons and only a single Ross seal were seen.

### lobster krill *Falkland Islands*

[See krill.]

The small, red crustacean *Munida gregaria* (fam. Euphausiaceae) of the Falkland Islands and southernmost South America. It grows to about 7 cm (2 in) long.

[**1684 (1987)** (Falkland Islands) Strange, Ian J. *The Falkland Islands and their natural history* David and Charles, Newton Abbot, Devon: 74.

In 1684 William Dampier .. recorded: "The day that we made these islands (January 28) we sawe great shoals of small lobsters, which coloured the sea in red spots, for a mile in compass, and we drew some out of the sea in our water buckets. They were no bigger than the top of a man's little finger, yet all their claws both great and small like a lobster."

**1982** Hosking, Eric and Sage, Bryan *Antarctic wildlife* Croom Helm, London: 28.

[caption] Lobster Krill *Munida gregaria* is one of the larger species of this family.

### logger duck *Falkland Islands. Also, esp. formerly, loggerhead duck*

The large, mottled grey duck *Tachyeres brachypterus* (fam. Anatidae), found only in the Falkland Islands, where it is common and widespread. It has small wings and is not capable of sustained flight. It is also called the **Falkland flightless steamer duck**, or simply a **steamer duck**.

**1775** [source: NOED] (Falkland Islands) Clayton in *Phil. Trans.* LXVI: 104.

Here is a species of ducks, called the loggerhead, from its large head.

**1777** Forster, George (Tierra del Fuego) *A voyage round the world, in his Britannic Majesty's sloop, Resolution, commanded by Capt. James Cook* B. White, London, vol 2: 493.

In the Falkland Islands, the English have given it the name of logger-head duck.

**1833** (Falkland Islands) Fanning, Edmund *Voyages round the World; with Selected Sketches of Voyages to the South seas, North and South Pacific Oceans, China, Etc.* Collins & Hannay, New York: 420.

A seaman .. is dipping some loggerhead ducks in a kettle of boiling water, for it is necessary to scald these birds to enable the men to pick them.

**1841** Darwin, Charles, ed. *The zoology of the voyage of H.M.S. Beagle, under the command of Captain Fitzroy, R.N. during the years 1832 to 1836 Pt III Birds* London: 136.

*Micropterus brachypterus* ... These great logger-headed ducks, which sometimes weigh as much as twenty-two pounds,

were called by the old navigators, from their extraordinary manner of paddling and splashing over the water, race-horses, but now much more properly steamers. Their wings are too small and weak to allow of flight ... It feeds entirely on shellfish from the floating kelp and tidal rocks; hence the beak and head are surprisingly heavy and strong, for the purpose of breaking them. So strong is the head, that I have sometimes scarcely been able to fracture it with my geological hammer.]

**1857** (Falkland Islands) Snow, W. Parker *A two years' cruise off Tierra del Fuego, the Falkland Islands, Patagonia, and in the River Plate: a narrative of life in the Southern Seas* Longman, Brown, Green, Longmans and Roberts, London, vol 1: 88.

Amongst them [sc. waterfowl] was that extraordinary water-bird the "loggerhead duck", sometimes called the "racer," "steamer," &c, on account of its peculiar motion when on the move.

Footnote: Darwin's *Anas brachyptera*.

**1861** Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 161.

*Micropterus cinereus* .. (Loggerhead Duck.) This Duck, which is called the 'Loggerhead' in the Falkland Islands, frequents the salt water. The harbour of Stanley is full of them, as well as every other part of the coast. Like the Grey Duck, each pair has a certain district, where they take up their quarters, diving for shell-fish and whatever the tide throws up, and driving away any other of their species that may come within their bounds. Looking for the Loggerhead's eggs, which are esteemed a great delicacy, is a great amusement to all the boys in Stanley.

**1879** Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 552.

The geese at the Falkland Islands are far tamer than those at Elizabeth Island, and seem not to understand a gun, though they have been shot at now for a long period. The Falkland Islands, however, were never inhabited by any savage race, and the birds have not had time to learn. The other birds in Magellan's Straits, which also occur at the Falklands, as for example the Loggerhead Ducks, show the same contrast in their wildness.

**1910** Cobb, Arthur F. *Wildlife in the Falkland Islands* Gowans & Gray, London: 66.

The Loggerhead or Steamer Duck [sc. *Tachyeres cinereus*] is "a common object of the sea-shore".

**1987** Wolsey, Shane in *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation* no 5 (July): 10.

There asleep, and another preening, are two Loggers, Falkland Islands Steamer Ducks, passing the time of day.

**1994** Falkland Islands Government Office *Introduction to the Falkland Islands* Falkland Islands Government Office, London: 17.

The Falkland flightless steamer duck or "logger duck" can be found in coastal areas along with Kelp geese and Crested duck.

### loligo squid *Falkland Islands. Also simply loligo*

[*Loligo* or *lolligo* is recorded from 1658 (NOED) as an English name for squids of this genus.]

The demersal squid *Loligo gahi* (fam. Loliginidae), which occurs around the Falkland Islands and off South American coasts from southern Peru in the Pacific to southern Uruguay in the South Atlantic. It grows to about 28 cm (11 in) long and is fished commercially. It is also called the **Patagonian squid**.

**1988** (Falkland Islands) *National Geographic* 173(3) Mar: 394.

"There are two kinds of squid fished here, *Loligo gahi* and *Illex argentinus*," he told me. "*Loligo* is found to the south and is fished by the Spanish, Italians, and Poles."

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

**1997** *Falklands Conservation: news from the Falklands* [source: <http://www.falklands-nature.demon.co.uk/news/news0697.html>] Jun: 2.

Loligo squid is being fished off Beauchene Islands and east of Berkeley Sound.

**longboat** *Tristan da Cunha*

An island boat.

**1958** *Tristan Topics* 1 (June): 4.

H.M.S. Burghead Bay sailed the second time with five long boats on board as the Captain kindly arranged to drop the boats at inaccessible to enable the men to kill off the cattle there.

**1991** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 8 (Mar): 3.

Ever since men first lived on Tristan da Cunha, boats have played a crucial role in the livelihood and survival of its people. The island longboats which originated from the whaling longboats are as essentially Tristanian as the people themselves.

**1998** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter [UK]* 22 (Mar): 7.

One of the staff lecturers, who is a maritime historian, and some of the passengers visited with a small group of men who were breaking up one of the last longboats. Everyone, Islanders and visitor alike, agreed the boat was an historic artifact well worth preserving, but the destruction continued even during the conversation.

**longfin icedevil**

The marine fish *Aethotaxis mitopteryx* (fam. Nototheniidae) which grows to about 40 cm (16 in) long. It occurs close to the antarctic continent and is circumpolar. It has also been called the **threadfin pithead**.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 334.

*Aethotaxis mitopteryx* .. Longfin icedevil ... Apparently distribution is circumpolar with records in South Shetland, South Orkney and South Sandwich Islands, in Prydz Bay and in the Ross Sea ... Not yet commercially exploited.

**long-finned pilot whale** Also **longfin pilot whale**

The dark grey to black marine mammal *Globicephala melas* (fam. Delphinidae), which is also called a **black-fish**.

**1987** National Parks and Wildlife Service, Tasmania *Macquarie Island nature reserve: visitor's handbook* NPWS, Hobart: 14.

The longfin pilot whale is the only other whale to be seen in any numbers around Macquarie Island. Pods of 10–15 animals have been recorded in recent years and carcasses have been found ashore on three occasions. The sightings of these whales are far less regular than the sightings of killer whales.

**1995** Menkhorst, Peter W., ed. *Mammals of Victoria: distribution, ecology and conservation* Oxford University Press, Melbourne: 283.

Long-finned Pilot Whales inhabit the cold temperate regions of both hemispheres, near all the major land masses and in pelagic waters. The southern populations extend into sub-antarctic waters to about 67°S.

**long-tailed meadowlark** *Falkland Islands*

The bird *Sturnella loyca falklandica*: see **military starling**.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 27.

Under the 1953 Wild Animals and Birds Protection Ordinance, five species of ducks and the Rufous-chested Dotterel, Common Snipe and the Long-tailed Meadowlark were considered as game species that could be shot in the open season between 1 March and 31 July.

**1993** Chater, Tony *The Falklands* The Penna Press, St Albans: 57.

[caption] Male Long-tailed Meadowlarks or Robins use fence posts, chimney pots or grass bogs as a stage for their strident and rasping territorial song.

**long-winged petrel**

[The name is a translation of the Greek-based scientific name: see 1990 quotation.]

The oceanic bird *Pterodroma macroptera macroptera*: see **great-winged petrel**.

**1937** Falla, R.A. *Birds. BANZARE reports series B, vol 2* Hassell Press, Adelaide: 179.

*Pterodroma macroptera macroptera* (Smith). Long-winged Petrel ... The extensive range of the various forms of this species in the Southern Ocean has been remarked upon by earlier observers.

**1963** Rand, R.W. *The Ostrich* XXXIV(3) Sept: 123.

Long-winged Petrel *Bulweria macroptera* This species was seen on three occasions only, but may well have been more widespread.

**1990** Marchant, S. and Higgins, P.J., co-ordinators *Handbook of Australian, New Zealand and Antarctic birds vol 1A Ratites to Petrels* Oxford University Press, Melbourne: 410.

*Pterodroma macroptera* Great-winged Petrel .. The generic name is compounded of the Greek πτερον (feather, winged creature) and δρομος (running), i.e. the wing-runner; the specific, of μακρος (long) and πτερον i.e. long-winged. ...Wings, long, narrow, finely pointed.

**loom** noun Also **looming**

The appearance above the horizon of an object which is actually beyond the horizon.

**21 Feb 1912** Davis, J.K. in Crossley, Louise, ed. (1997) *Trial by ice: the Antarctic journals of John King Davis* Bluntisham Books, Bluntisham: 36.

I was starboarding to clear what appeared to be the loom of a berg on the bow.

**1940** Hobbs, William Herbert *Proceedings of the American Philosophical Society* 82(5) June: 561.

Still less appreciated has been a fairly common phenomenon of *looming* — superior or polar mirage — which for considerable intervals of time brings land into view even when it is very far below the horizon.

**1958** Barber, Noel *The white desert* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 203.

Objects hundreds of miles away sometimes may be seen clearly by the naked eye in the Antarctic. This peculiarity, known as *looming*, may have been responsible for a portion of sightings by early Antarctic explorers.

**loom** verb

[NOED records the verb loom from 1591, but the meaning is not quite identical: it rather means, to appear indistinctly.]

(Of land, etc.) To appear above the horizon, in polar regions where the object is in fact below the horizon; to appear as a 'superior mirage'.

**29 Dec 1933** Byrd, Richard E. (1936) *Antarctic discovery* Putnam, London: 56.



To-night we saw our first mirages. A huge, tabular berg loomed astern, where we knew no berg existed.

**loose pack** Also *loose pack ice* and (esp. formerly) *loose ice*

Sea ice which is heavier than **open pack** but still navigable; more generally, scattered fragments of ice in the sea. See also **slack pack**.

**2 Feb 1700** Dalrymple, Alexander (1775) *A collection of voyages chiefly in the Southern Atlantick Ocean* Printed for the author, London: 35.

On a sudden a Mountain of Ice began to appear out of the Fog about 3 points on our Lee bow; this we made a shift to the weather, when another appeared more on head, with several pieces of loose Ice round about it.

**17 Dec 1772** 55°16'S, nr 24° long. Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, In the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* W. Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970): 26.

We found the skirts of the loose ice to be more broken than usual; and it extended some distance beyond the main field, insomuch that we sailed amongst it the most part of the day; and the high ice islands without us were innumerable.

**1827** Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24*, 2nd edn David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 3.

On the 2d of January 1774, Captain Cook again arrived with the Antarctic Sea, and having been beset with ice islands and loose ice, in the latitude of 68° and longitude 138° west, he bore up north-west, and re-crossed the Antarctic Circle, steering various courses to the north and east, and then to the south.

**18 Feb 1893** Burn Murdoch, W.G. (1894) *From Edinburgh to the Antarctic* Longmans, Green and Co, London: 337.

Only five hours ago we were still in the loose pack-ice.

**1905** Scott, Captain Robert F. *The voyage of the 'Discovery'* Macmillan and Co, London: 111.

There was nothing for it but to pass again round the north side of Coulman Island, which, owing to many buffetings with loose pack, it took us the whole day to circumnavigate.

**1909** (Cape Royds) Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907–1909* William Heinemann, London: 127.

On the *Nimrod's* return, England reported that loose floe-ice surrounded Glacier Tongue, so that it was impossible to make a depot there.

**1916** (south of the pack ice, en route to McMurdo) Doorly, Captain Gerald S. *The voyages of the 'Morning'* Smith, Elder & Co., London: 150.

On approaching Beaufort Island loose pack was met. The floes were very heavy and hummocked, but the ships worked through and into the Sound without much difficulty.

**1930** *The New York Times* 24 Aug, suppl. [n.p.].

[caption] The Discovery forces a passage through the loose pack ice to Proclamation Island, East Enderby Land.

**1949** Routh, Martin in *The Ibis* 91(4): 588.

Normally there are some five miles of loose pack ice between the open water and solid pack.

**1956** Fuchs, V.E. in *Polar Record* 8(54) Sept: 265.

On a second sortie the helicopter arrived over *Theron* at 11.30 hr. and reported the continuation of relatively loose ice northward to the ice edge.

**1980** Woodard, Edwin and Bischoff, Heather Woodard *Storehouses of the snow* Leisure Books, Norwalk, Connecticut: 31.

As soon as *Quest* could reach the dock through the loose pack ice in the harbor, the mate handed the two sacks of mail to the station manager.

### Lyall's olearia NZ

[J.D. Hooker named this species in 1853 (Flora Novae-Zelandiae vol I: 116). He chose the specific name to honour David Lyall (1817–95), naval doctor and botanist of HMS Terror, who collected the 'type specimen' — the one Hooker used in making his scientific description of the species.]

The shrub or tree *Olearia lyallii* (fam. Asteraceae or Compositae), which grows to about 10 m (39 ft) tall and is found only on New Zealand's subantarctic Snares and Auckland Islands.

**1948** (Snares Islands) Richdale, L.E. *Wild life on an island outpost: expedition to The Snares Islands 1947–48* Otago Daily Times and Witness Newspapers, Dunedin: 110.

Lyall's Olearia, therefore, was the tree we used for wood, and luckily there is an abundant supply of hard, dry, dead material available. As proof of its heating powers, Mr. Denham made scones in the camp oven — scones which were of the same quality as the wood — I do not mean in hardness, but in usefulness. ... As far as I know, Lyall's Olearia is endemic to The Snares, Ewing Island of the Auckland Group, and a small area on the main Auckland Island.

# M

**MacCormick's skua** See **McCormick's skua**

**macaroni penguin** Also (often) simply **macaroni**

[NOED defines macaroni as 'an exquisite of a class which arose in England about 1760 and consisted of young men who had travelled and affected the tastes prevalent in continental society':

*Like Weddell (1827, below), I do not see a great similarity, though perhaps the jaunty air of these penguins is enough to account for the use of this name.]*

The penguin *Eudyptes chrysolophus* (fam. Spheniscidae), one of the **crested penguins**. It is a black and white penguin (growing to about 70 cm or 2 ft 4 in high) with a drooping bright orange-yellow crest originating in the centre of the forehead, a stout bill and red eyes. It breeds in the subantarctic — on South Georgia and Heard Island in millions, and also on Marion Island, the Crozets, Kerguelen, and in the Falkland Islands.

**26 June 1824** (Tristan da Cunha) Earle, Augustus (1832) *A narrative of a nine months' residence in New Zealand, in 1827; together with a journal of a residence in Tristan d'Acunha, an island situated between South America and the Cape of Good Hope* Longman, Rees, Orme, Brown, Green, & Longman, London: 336.

A few days since, walking along the beach, I discovered a number of penguins just landed; their extraordinary appearance at first startled me, they do not fear the approach of man, but stand still and suffer themselves to be taken or knocked on the head. Those I saw are called the Macaroni Penguin. They are about the size of a common duck; they stand bolt upright; the back and head are of a glossy black, the belly, neck and part of their legs a beautifully clear white, and from the head, just over the eyes, is placed a bunch of bright yellow feathers, hanging down on each side of the face, which gives the animal an animated and beautiful appearance; it is from these fantastic feathers I should imagine they receive their name of "Macaroni". The eyes are very bright, large, round, and sparkling; they have two small flippers, which in the water serve as fins, and on shore in place of wings, not to fly withal, but merely to assist in swimming and running. I caught one of them, and took him home, in order that he should sit for his picture but had to take especial care of his beak, which was large and strong, and which he used most unceremoniously, making desperate pecks at my hands, and I received several severe wounds before I reached my dwelling with my captive. They are very heavy and fat; but too fishy for eating, unless in a case of great necessity, which too often happens to the people of this island; but their eggs are quite as good as those of a duck, and are most abundant during the season, and as they are laid upon the sands, they are easily procured, and prove a very comfortable additional to our frugal repast.

**1827** (South Georgia) Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24, 2nd edn* David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 57.

There are three other kinds of penguins, all of them nearly of the same size, but little more than half the bigness of that which I have described Their plumage is not near so fine, but

they walk erect, and are of the same form with the king penguin. The names by which they are distinguished are, the macaroni, the jack-ass, and the stone-cracker penguin. The macaroni is so called from its having been likened to a fop or macaroni, though I must confess I do not see the similitude.

**1860** (Falkland Islands) Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* II(VIII) Oct: 338.

I have now to remark upon another Penguin which breeds among the Rock-hoppers: this bird is called in the Falkland Islands the Macaroni Penguin; its technical name I do not know. It has an orange-coloured crest. In a rookery of Rock-hoppers in the North Camp, I counted fifteen of them among, perhaps, twenty thousand of *Aptenodytes chrysocome*. They only lay one egg to my knowledge; at least, I took one egg from under nine different birds, and many of them were sat upon. They come up and lay at the same time as *Aptenodytes chrysocome*.

Footnote: Mr. Tristram has received from Capt. Abbott skins of this fourth species, which he informs us is *Eudyptes chrysolophus*, Brandt.

**1879** *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: 160.

This species was not met with by the English transit party on Kerguelen Island. The sealers brought some of its crests to our ships, and spoke of it as the "Macaroni." From what the officers of the "Volage" told me, I was led to understand that the sealers said that the bird was not found anywhere near the southern end of Kerguelen Island. The crests obtained were brought from Herd's Island.

**28 Nov 1929** (Heard Island) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 267.

Large number of penguin eggs collected and a fine omelette made by Hurley. This of Macaroni eggs, which were partly advanced state of hatching, may have accounted for omelette not being as good as that of Rockhoppers next tried.

**1954** (Marion Island) Rand, R.W. in *The Ibis* 96(2): 184.

While the chicks were still at the nests in February, immature Macaronis arrived to moult on the beaches or up the sides of streams.

**1972** Allen, Durward L., Cromie, William J. and Ames, William H. *The fascinating secrets of oceans and islands* Reader's Digest, Sydney: 213.

[caption] A pair of 9-lb macaroni penguins guard their single egg in a sub-Antarctic nest of mud and grass.

**1980** (Bird Island, South Georgia group) Parmelee, David F. *Bird Island in antarctic waters* University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis: 35.

John had much to say about his macaronies, though I was so completely spent that what he said didn't make much sense.

**1988** (Heard Island) *Australian Geographic* 9 (Jan–Mar): 72.

A pungent odour started to permeate the ship, causing chief engineer Ron Davidson to suspect we had a sewerage problem. But the smell was from McDonald's 40,000-strong macaroni penguin population — all on an island only about 2 km by 1 km!

**Macca-ite** *Colloquial*

A **Macquarie Islander**.

**1996** *Icy News. Antarctic Division staff newsletter* (Casey) 25 Jan: [2].

About a dozen Elephant seals have hauled out at Peterson Island — the reports indicate an horrendous smell downwind from them (imagine what the Macca-ites have to endure).

**MacCormick's skua (gull)** *See* **McCormick's skua**

### **mackerel** *Tristan da Cunha*

[Mackerel has been used for *Scomber scombrus* and other fish of the fam. *Scombridae* since about 1300 (NOED).]

The marine fish *Trachurus* (formerly *Decapterus*) *longimanus* (fam. Carangidae), of possible commercial importance, which lives in the waters of the Tristan da Cunha group, Crozet Islands, and St Paul and Amsterdam Islands.

**21 Dec 1811** Lambert, Jonathan in *Blackwood's Edinburgh Magazine* (1818) IV (xxi): 283.

We have no boat, and of course cannot have them so often as we want them [sc. to fish]; but on a kind of raft of six pieces we push off on a smooth time, and take many sheep-head crayfish, gramper, and large mackerel.

**1910** Barrow, K.M. *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 276.

The fish we saw at Tristan were:— .. Mackerel (*Scomber Pneumatophorus*) [etc.].

**1976** Wace, N.M. and Holdgate, M.W. *Man and nature in the Tristan da Cunha islands*. IUCN monograph no. 6, Morges, Switzerland: 74.

Several species of Tristan fish, notably .. *Decapterus longimanus* ('mackerel'), *Thyrstites atun* ('snoek') and *Seriotelella antarctica* ('bluefish') are caught by the islanders for food, but none has been the basis of any commercial fishery, although numbers are taken by the crews of crayfishing vessels and deep frozen for later sale by individuals in Cape Town.

**1990** (1920s) Rogers, Edward in *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 7 (Sept): 10.

When the weather was calm the island boats went out fishing and caught large quantities of coarse mackerel.

### **mackerel icefish**

[*See* **icefish**.]

The edible marine fish *Champscephalus gunnari* (fam. Channichthyidae), one of the **icefishes** of the Antarctic and subantarctic. It occurs mainly on the Kerguelen Plateau, and in the Scotia Sea from the northern Antarctic Peninsula to South Georgia.

This apparently delicious species was commercially fished in increasing tonnages in the 1970s and early 1980s before its predictable decline. It has also been called the **antarctic icefish**.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome, vol. 2: 270.

*Champscephalus gunnari* ... Mackerel icefish ... Reported from shelves of Kerguelen and Heard Islands, from Bouvet Island and from all the islands of the Scotia Arc .. and the northern part of the Antarctic Peninsula ... This is the most abundant species reported in the catches of the last 10 years from Fishing Areas 48, 58 and 88; 162 673 t were reported

from the 1982/83 season ... Marketed as frozen fish (entire or fillets); the flesh is excellent.

**1991** *South African Shipping News & Fishing Industry Review* 46(6): 21.

Stocks of mackerel icefish *Champscephalus gunnari* have undergone considerable variations in size due to the influence of fishing and large variations in year-class strength.

**1996** *French Science and Technology [Canberra]* no. 27 (Sept–Dec): 3.

[caption] *Champscephalus gunnari* (the mackerel icefish) 35–45 cm.

### **Macquarie Island**

Macquarie Island, an Australian possession, lies about 1370 km (850 miles) southeast of Tasmania, at 54°30'S, 158°40'E in the South Pacific. It was discovered on 11 July 1810 by Captain Frederick Hasselborough of the sealing brig *Perseverance*, who named it after Lachlan Macquarie (1761–1824), Governor of New South Wales 1810–1821.

The island has a typical subantarctic climate: cold, wet and windy. It was the first place to receive a radio transmission from Antarctica (from Douglas Mawson's 1911–14 expedition), and has been permanently manned by Australia since 1948. In 1933 the Tasmanian government proclaimed it a sanctuary.

### **Macquarian**

A **Macquarie Islander**.

**1968** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* June: 21.

Talking of books — old Macquarians will be interested in a book on Macquarie Island.

### **Macquarie Island cabbage** *Also* **Macquarie cabbage**

The tall, large-leaved perennial plant *Stilbocarpa polaris* (fam. Araliaceae), which grows to 2 m (6 ft 7 in) tall and occurs on Macquarie Island as well as on New Zealand's subantarctic islands. It was formerly eaten, both to prevent scurvy and for the lack of alternative greens, rather than for any enticement of flavour. Sheep enjoy it.

It has also been called **antarctic**, **maori** or **wild cabbage**, **stilbocarpa**, and simply **cabbage**.

**1894** Hamilton, A. in *Transactions and Proceedings of the New Zealand Institute* XXVII Art LXV: 564.

Once behind the belt of swamp you ascend the steep slopes of the hills, and here you struggle and wrestle with the huge leaves of the Macquarie Island cabbage (*Stilbocarpa polaris*), a plant resembling very fine rhubarb.

**1909** Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington: xxi.

To some of the more conspicuous plants, among the latter being the *Stilbocarpa polaris*, which he [sc. Bellingshausen] speaks of as the Macquarie Island "cabbage" and which was used both by the sealers and by himself and crew as a vegetable.

**1955** Taylor, B.W. *The flora, vegetation and soils of Macquarie Island ANARE reports series B vol II Botany* Antarctic Division, Dept External Affairs, Melbourne: 131.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

*Stilbocarpa polaris* is the “Macquarie Island Cabbage” used by the sealers of the nineteenth century as an anti-scorbutic.

Footnote: The petioles taste like celery when cooked; pickled rhizomes like turnips; and leaves when cooked like wet blotting paper.

**1962** Gressitt, J.L. and others in *Pacific Insects* 4(4): 939.

There are no trees or other woody plants, the hillsides being clothed with relatively few species of higher plants, including tussock grass, *Poa*, and a few dominant herbaceous angiosperms, including *Azorella*, *Pleurophyllum*, and the so-called Maori or Macquarie cabbage, *Stilbocarpa polaris*.

**1967** Gillham, Mary E. *Sub-Antarctic sanctuary: summertime on Macquarie Island* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Wellington: 70.

The ‘Macquarie Island cabbage’ (*Stilbocarpa polaris*) ... robust but not woody plant of the ivy family thrives on guano.

**1987** National Parks and Wildlife Service, Tasmania *Macquarie Island nature reserve: visitor's handbook* NPWS, Hobart: 10.

The Macquarie Island cabbage, (*Stilbocarpa polaris*), which grows up to a metre high in sheltered places, has large pale yellow flowerheads and a hard woody fruit. The cabbage was eaten by sealers to prevent scurvy.

### Macquarie Island cormorant Also *Macquarie Island shag*

The black and white cormorant *Phalacrocorax albiventris purpurascens* (fam. Phalacrocoracidae) of Macquarie Island and New Zealand, one of the **blue-eyed shags**.

**3 Nov 1912** Blake, L.R. in Mawson, Douglas (1942) *Geographical narrative and cartography. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911–14. Scientific reports series A vol I* Government Printer, Sydney: 289.

The Macquarie Island Shag has begun to lay. I obtained sixteen eggs to-day.

**1936** Mathews, Gregory M. *A supplement to the birds of Norfolk & Lord Howe Islands to which is added those birds of New Zealand not figured by Buller H.F. & G. Witherby*, London: 134.

*Hypoleucus atriceps*. (*purpurascens*). Macquarie Island shag ... Distribution. Macquarie Island, New Zealand.

**1955** Taylor, B.W. *The flora, vegetation and soils of Macquarie Island. ANARE reports series B vol II Botany* Antarctic Division, Dept of External Affairs, Melbourne: 25.

There is a small list of birds breeding on the island which are not commonly found elsewhere, though they are quite capable of migrating. These are the Macquarie Island cormorant, the Macquarie Island wreathed tern and the now extinct parakeet and rail.

**1967** Gillham, Mary E. *Sub-Antarctic sanctuary: summertime on Macquarie Island* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Wellington: 47.

There was another endemic species on this side of the point, the Macquarie Island cormorant, whose numbers were in a much less healthy state than those of the royal penguin. The grotesqueness of the cormorant shape was counteracted by the handsome markings as the birds flew by in small groups to their rookery in the south west of the island. Black back and snowy breast were offset by narrow white wing bars and a brilliant orange wattle over the beak. Some of the birds passed so close that we caught glimpses of the clear blue circle around the eye.

**1984** (Macquarie Island) Fletcher, Harold *Antarctic days with Mawson. A personal account of the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929–31* Angus and Robertson, London: 242.

At Aerial Cove, Hurley, Falla and I came across a nesting colony of the Macquarie Island cormorant occupying a low level rocky area. It contained about 200 nests, each with three eggs on the point of hatching. Sitting birds were generally females with attendant males perched on the nest rims.

The cormorants showed little concern as we moved about the nests and Hurley filmed the sitting birds.

**1992** del Hoyo, Josep and others, eds *Handbook of the birds of the world vol 1: Ostrich to ducks* Lynx Edicions, Barcelona: 329.

The Macquarie Shag (*Phalacrocorax purpurascens*) .. may be able to reach depths of 50 m.

### Macquarie Islander

An inhabitant, usu. but not always human (see 1966 quotation), of the subantarctic Macquarie Island, an Australian territory administered by the Tasmanian government; a **Macca-ite** or **Macquarian**.

**13 Dec 1913** (Macquarie Island) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 226.

During the next few days a party was kept on shore and rest on ship. Shore party largely composed of MQ Islanders.

**1915** Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911–1914* William Heinemann, London, vol II: 155.

A few evenings later, Macquarie Islanders had their reward in the arrival of the *Tutanekai* from New Zealand with supplies of food.

**1966** MacKenzie, D., ed. *Fog 'N Bog: yearbook of Macquarie Island ANARE overwinterers* ANARE, Macquarie Island: 35.

The Gentoo penguin is another Macquarie Islander. It occurs throughout the sub-Antarctic, its main breeding grounds being Macquarie, Heard, Kerguelen, Crozet, Prince Edward, South Georgia, Falkland, South Orkney, South Shetland and the west coast of Graham Land.

**1970** Gosman, Ron, ed. *Homers' Odyssey: Macquarie Island magazine 1970* ANARE, Macquarie Island: [30].

*Homers*. The word itself has no doubt caught the wary readers [sic] eye and he (or she) has in all probability just flipped back these couple of pages that went by before the reflex of the right thumb caught up with the brain and stopped further pages slipping by. Well slow down you google eyed seekers of whatever it is you're seeking, for the word to a Macquarie Islander has but one meaning; *Home Made Beer*.

**1986** Chester, Jonathan *Going to extremes: Project Blizzard and Australia's Antarctic heritage* Doubleday Australia, Sydney: 117.

As reports began to be received that a party was to remain at Cape Denison for a second season — in the hope of Mawson's missing sledging party returning .. — the Macquarie Islanders became resigned to spending yet another winter on the bleak, gale swept shores.

### Macquarie Island parakeet

The endemic parrot *Cyanorhamphus novaezelandiae erythrotis* (fam. Psittacidae), which formerly lived on Macquarie Island, becoming extinct in the late nineteenth century. The name has also been used for another subspecies, the **red-crowned parakeet**, on Antipodes Island: see 1909 quotation.

**[19 Nov 1820** (Macquarie Island) Bellingshausen, Thaddeus in Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. (1945) *The voyage of Captain Bellingshausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819–1821* Hakluyt Society, London, vol II: 370.

To our surprise we saw a quantity of small parakeets, all belonging to one species, on this semi-Arctic [sic] island.

**11 Jan 1840** (Macquarie Island) Wilkes, Charles in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 424.

Large numbers of penguins and small green and yellow paroquets were seen.]

**1909** Waite, Edgar R. in Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington: 555.

*Cyanoramphus erythrotis*, Wagler. (Macquarie Island parakeet.) ... Of the two parakeets inhabiting Antipodes Island, this is the smaller, and by far the commoner species. It frequents the *Coprosma* scrub, and I noticed it feeding upon the heads of club-mosses (*Lycopodium*).

**1939** Roberts, Brian in *The Ibis* 3(4) Oct: 704.

The Macquarie Island Parakeet, *Cyanoramphus novaezealandiae erythrotis* .. was confined to the island, and is now believed to be extinct. "Parrots" are mentioned in the accounts of several of the early sealers at Macquarie. They were regarded as good cage-birds and talkers, and were frequently brought back alive to Sydney. In fact, it seems certain that it was this practice which was ultimately responsible for their extermination.

**[1961** (Macquarie Island) Holdgate, M.W. and Wace, N.M. in *Polar Record* 10(68) May: 485.

Cats were also introduced by sealers before 1821 and were abundant in 1890–94, when they probably caused the extermination of the parakeet and banded rail which took place between 1880 and 1894.]

**1990** Selkirk, P.M., Selkirk, R.D. and Selkirk, D.R. *Subantarctic Macquarie Island: environment and biology* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 134.

Two endemic bird species become extinct during the late nineteenth century: the Macquarie Island parakeet (*Cyanoramphus novaezealandiae erythrotis*) and the flightless Pacific banded rail.

## Macquarie Island rail

[Both scientific and common names indicate the bird's homeland.]

The extinct flightless land bird *Gallirallus philippensis macquariensis* (fam. Rallidae), which lived only on Macquarie Island. It was last recorded in the later part of the nineteenth century, and has also been called the **banded rail**.

**[1879** Hutton, F.W. in *The Ibis* 3: 454.

The bird of which the following is a description was brought from Macquarie Island last March by a sealing expedition ... *Rallus macquariensis*, sp. nov. General plumage dull brown, without any bright tints.

**1955** Taylor, B.W. *The flora, vegetation and soils of Macquarie Island ANARE reports Series B Vol. II Botany* Antarctic Division, Dept External Affairs, Melbourne: 25.

There is a small list of birds breeding on the island which are not commonly found elsewhere, though they are quite capable of migrating. These are the Macquarie Island cormorant, the Macquarie Island wreathed tern and the now extinct parakeet and rail.]

**1984** (Macquarie Island) Fletcher, Harold *Antarctic days with Mawson: a personal account of the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929–31* Angus and Robertson, London: 239.

Cats had already wiped out the only two species of land birds — the Macquarie Island rail and a species of parakeet.

## Macquarie Island wreathed tern Also *Macquarie tern*

The bird *Sterna vittata macquariensis*, a race of the **antarctic tern** endemic to Macquarie Island.

**1937** Falla, R.A. *Birds. BANZARE reports series B, vol 2* Hassell Press, Adelaide: 260.

*Sterna vittata macquariensis* subsp. nov. Macquarie Island Wreathed Tern ... At the beginning of December, 1930, we saw a few birds all of which were still retaining their white winter frontal cap.

**1954** *Mercury Centennial Magazine [Hobart]* 5 Jul: 51.

Mawson, when on the island, looked far, but could not find one of the rarest eggs in the world — that of the Macquarie tern.

**1955** Taylor, B.W. *The flora, vegetation and soils of Macquarie Island ANARE reports series B vol II Botany* Antarctic Division. Dept of External Affairs, Melbourne: 25.

There is a small list of birds breeding on the island which are not commonly found elsewhere, though they are quite capable of migrating. These are the Macquarie Island cormorant, the Macquarie Island wreathed tern and the now extinct parakeet and rail.

## MacTownite

[McMurdo Bay (now McMurdo Sound) was discovered by James Clark Ross in January 1841, and named after Archibald McMurdo, a lieutenant on Ross's ship the Terror. The station on Ross Island takes its name from the sound; it became a permanent US base in 1961, and is known to its residents as MacTown.]

An inhabitant of the American McMurdo Station: see **McMurdoite**.

**1993** *Scott Base newsletter* 3 (winter): 2.

A special visitor we had arrive in town a while ago had us all (including Mac Town-ites) running around in circles.

## Madrid Protocol

The *1991 Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty* signed in Madrid, Spain, which came into force on 14 January 1998, and is also known as the Environment Protection Protocol. The Protocol designates Antarctica as a 'natural reserve devoted to peace and science' and prohibits any activity — other than scientific research — relating to mineral resources. It bans oil and mineral exploration for a minimum of 50 years. Its annexes deal with environmental impact assessment, flora and fauna conservation, waste management, marine pollution, and management of protected areas.

**1992** *Antarctic Society of Australia newsletter* 30 (Sept): 4.

Great news!! Spain is the first country to ratify the Protocol and did so on 1 July, 1992. This is not surprising as the Protocol was negotiated and signed in Madrid and is known as the Madrid Protocol.

**1994** *Australian Antarctic Foundation Newsletter* no 5 (Apr): [1]. The Madrid Protocol, a joint initiative of Australia and France which contains a prohibition on mining, ultimately won strong international support and was signed by Antarctic Treaty Parties in Madrid in October 1991 ... Under the Protocol the Antarctic Treaty nations have designated Antarctica as a natural reserve devoted to peace and science.

## Magellan goose

[Magellan from the habitat of the goose in the Magellan Straits of southernmost south America and nearby.]

The goose *Chloephaga picta*. The Falkland Islands subspecies *C. picta leucoptera* is better known as the **upland goose**.

**3 Feb 1968** (Punta Arenas) Scott, Peter (1983) *Travel diaries of a naturalist: Australia, New Zealand, New Guinea, Africa, the Gala-*

*pagos islands, Antarctica and the Falkland Islands* Collins, London: 252.

Later many Magellan Geese came down to the water.

**c1990** *Birdland souvenir guide* Birdland sanctuary, Bourton-on-the-water: 3.

He [sc. Len Hill] acquired the Jason Islands in the Falklands Islands group — two uninhabited islands where conscientious wardening ensures the peace and solitude needed by the large populations of Penguins, Albatrosses, Steamer Ducks, Magellan Geese, Elephant Seals and Southern Sea Lions.

**Magellanic penguin** *Falkland Islands (and elsewhere)* Also *Magellan penguin*

The penguin *Spheniscus magellanicus*: see **jackass penguin**.

**1778** Forster, Johann Reinhold, in Thomas, N., Guest, H. and Dettelbach, M., eds (1996) *Observations made during a voyage round the world* University of Hawai'i Press, Honolulu: 137.

Mr. Pennant's Magellanic penguin.

**1879** (Falkland Islands) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 560.

Not far from Stanley Harbour there are rookeries of the Magellan Jackass Penguin (*Spheniscus Magellanicus*). The birds make large and deep burrows in the peat banks on the seashores, and large numbers make their burrows together, so that the ground is hollowed out in all directions.

**1968** Sparks, John and Soper, Tony *Penguins* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 197.

In 1832 one ship's crew collected fifty barrels of magellan eggs at Cabo dos Bahias. They used an egg hook consisting of an iron hoop on the end of a pole to extract the egg from deep in the nest burrow.

**1968** Stonehouse, Bernard *Penguins: the World of Animals series* Arthur Barker, London/Golden Press, NY: 52.

A Magellanic penguin can slash without difficulty through a leather glove, and inflict bloody gashes on an adversary.

**1987** Strange, Ian J. *The Falkland Islands and their natural history* David and Charles, Newton Abbot, Devon: 52.

Some of the largest concentrations of Magellan penguins found in the islands are situated along the north coast of East Falkland. Mile after mile of coast green is pitted by thousands of their nest burrows, this penguin being the only Falkland species which makes an underground nest chamber.

**1989** *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation* no. 8 (Jan): 12.

Magellanics, because they are so scattered, are one of the most difficult penguins to count.

**magnetic polar** *adjective*

Pertaining to the **south magnetic pole**.

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 100.

A skua paid a call on Sir Douglas Mawson's Magnetic Polar Party when 125 miles from the coast, and flew off to the south-east as if making a short cut to the Ross Sea.

**magnetic pole** Also *magnetic south pole*

[Both north and south magnetic poles are simply called magnetic pole, distinguished by the context if need be.]

The **south magnetic pole**.

**1701** [source: NOED] Grew *Cosm. Sacra* I ii: 9.

The Magnetic Poles are also a great Secret; especially now they are found to be distinct from the Poles of the Earth.

**17 Feb 1841** (McMurdo Sound area) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 173.

During the day we stood across the bay towards the land on the starboard side, and in the direction of the Magnetic Pole, which appears to be situated in the midst of the lofty mountains about 120 or 160 miles inland of us ... [18 Feb] We found the dip the greatest we have yet had, being 88° 44'.

**1900** Cook, Frederick A. *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: xiv.

The excellent series of magnetic observations by M. Leconte indicate the magnetic pole to be about two hundred miles east of its present assigned position.

**16 Jan 1909** Edgeworth David, T.W., quoted in Sullivan, Walter (1957) *Quest for a continent* Secker & Warburg, London: 51.

Mackay and I fixed up the flag-pole [sc. on first reaching the south magnetic pole]. We then bared our heads and hoisted the Union Jack at 3.30 p.m. with the words uttered by myself, in conformity with Lieutenant Shackleton's instructions, "I hereby take possession of this area now containing the Magnetic Pole for the British Empire" ... Then we gave three cheers for his Majesty the King.

**1916** (nr Cape Adare) Doorly, Captain Gerald S. *The voyages of the 'Morning'* Smith, Elder & Co., London: 74.

Wood Bay was considered a likely place for the *Discovery* to winter, being apparently free from ice pressure, and having the advantage of closer proximity to the south magnetic pole than any then known haven. The magnetic pole, or southern extremity of the earth's magnetism, being approximately two hundred miles inland, affected the *Morning's* compass to the extent of 147° deflection to the eastward, or, roughly speaking, if a true south course was to be steered, the compass pointed N.E. by N. This fact should be of unusual interest to nautical men.

**1936** Byrd, Richard E. *Antarctic discovery* Putnam, London: 43.

In high southern latitudes, on account of the proximity of the Magnetic Pole, the magnetic compass is inclined to be sluggish and not wholly reliable.

**1975** McPherson, John G. *Footprints on a frozen continent* Hicks Smith & Sons, Sydney: 11.

Interest in the Magnetic Pole was also the driving force behind the next successful expedition within the Antarctic Circle.

**1996** *Polar Whispers. News of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 8 (Sept): 1.

The Magnetic South Pole, lying separate to the geographic pole and influencing the terrestrial magnetism of the Southern Hemisphere, was always regarded as very significant ... The South Geomagnetic Pole is the least known. It is the pole calculated from the Earth's magnetic field, which for some unknown reason, doesn't happen to coincide with the actual South Magnetic Pole (or the point towards which compass needles point once Antarctica is approached), but lies a great distance from it within Wilkes Land.

**mainland**

[Spec. use of mainland a continuous body of land including the greater part of a country or territory (NOED: 1375–).]

The **antarctic continent**, often excluding the **Antarctic Peninsula** area, and sometimes including the large ice shelves.

**1895** Borchgrevink, C. Egeberg *Geographical Journal: journal of the Royal Geographical Society*, London 5: 588.

On the 23rd we were again at Cape Adare, and successfully affected a landing, being the first human creatures who ever put foot on the mainland.

**21 Nov 1911** Griffith Taylor, T. in Hanley, Wayne, ed. (1978) *The Griffith Taylor collection: diaries and letters of a geographer in Antarctica* Geography Department, University of New England, Armidale: 111.

The mainland shore was now almost wholly covered by the southern portion of the huge Piedmont Glacier which extends in an unbroken Chinese Wall of ice to Granite Harbour.

**1939** Rymill, John *Southern lights: the official account of the British Graham Land Expedition 1934–1937* Travel Book Club, London: 70.

No one had, to the best of my knowledge, ever landed anywhere on the mainland [sc. the Antarctic Peninsula] south of a point opposite the Argentine Islands.

**1948** Lamb, I. Mackenzie *Antarctic pyrenocarp lichens*. Discovery reports Vol. XXV, Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 7.

King George VI Sound was found to separate Alexander I Land completely from the mainland.

**1984** Fletcher, Harold *Antarctic days with Mawson. A personal account of the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929–31* Angus and Robertson, London: 169.

His [sc. Riiser-Larsen's] party were unable to force the *Norvegia* through heavy pack-ice to the coast where he claimed 100 kilometres of land between Kemp and Enderby Lands. A flight was then made to a large pool of open water, adjacent to the coast, on which they landed. The plane was then taxied on to a gently sloping tongue of mainland ice.

**1984** Heath, Colin *Australians in Antarctica* Methuen Australia Pty Ltd, Sydney: 6.

The ice in the two largest shelves, the Filchner and the Ross ice shelves, is so solid that it never melts away. Because of this, these two shelves are considered part of the mainland.

### main trace *Dog-sledging*

A long rope to which **sledge dogs** are harnessed in pairs, using equal lengths of shorter rope. See also **trace**.

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* Duckworth, London: 177.

The dogs were driven tandem fashion — each pair pulling from opposite sides of the long main trace.

**1957** Anderson, W. Ellery *Expedition south* Evans Brothers, London: 53.

He showed me how to hook a rope sixty-two feet long, known as the main trace, to the middle of another rope which is taken on either side above the runners of the sledge, looped round each of the bridge pillars and fastened to the base of the handle-bars at the back.

### Malamute *Dog-sledging*

[From *malemiut* the name of an Eskimo people in western Alaska (DALASKE gives its origin as *Inupiaq*), and a dog bred by them. The name was first recorded in English as *Maglemut*, in 1874 (DCANÉ), and also occurs in Alaskan English from 1900.]

An Alaskan breed of **sledge dog**.

**1930** (Little America) Byrd, Richard Evelyn in *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 136.

We took 80 huskies and Malamutes (Eskimo dogs) to transport our tons of equipment.

**1996** Walton, Kevin and Atkinson, Rick *Of dogs and men: the illustrated story of the dogs of the British Antarctic Survey 1944–1994* Images Publishing, Malvern Wells: 15.

In comparatively recent times kennel clubs around the world have classified husky breeds: the Alaskan Malamute, a large, powerful freight dog originating from the Alaskan Malamute Eskimos; the smaller, often faster, blue-eyed Siberian, from the Chukchi people of northern Siberia; the Samoyed, a small dog with white fur, originating from the Samoyed people of eastern Siberia; and last, but not least, the Eskimo husky from Arctic Canada and Greenland.

### maletas *Falkland Islands*. Also *molitos*

[From the Argentinian Spanish *maleta* saddlebag.]

Saddlebags.

**1911** Skottsberg, Carl *The wilds of Patagonia* Edward Arnold, London: 22.

Mr. Benney found some tea and sugar in his "maletas" (valise: many Spanish words, especially referring to horse-gear, are still used in the islands).

**1924** Baker, H.A. *Final report on geological investigations in the Falkland Islands* Government Printing Office, Port Stanley: 5.

When on tour in the "camp" one carried one's personal effects (reduced to the narrowest minimum) in a pair of Spanish saddlebags known as "maletas."

**1971** Taylor, Margaret Stewart *Focus on the Falkland Islands* Robert Hale & Co, London: 150.

The terms in use on the Falklands for horse harness and gear .. are nearly all Spanish ones, like *cincha* for girth and *maletas* for saddlebags.

**1993** Chater, Tony *The Falklands* The Penna Press, St Albans: n. p.

Brandon's 'Camp Visitations' on horseback or under sail to every Island household became legends, always carrying papers, mail and the famous magic lantern in his molitos.

### malt sandwich *Aust.*

[It is unlikely that this term is exclusively antarctic, but the only records of its use I have found are antarctic. It is interesting to see a solitary seventeenth century quotation for malt pie liquor (NOED 1613) in *British English*.]

A beer.

**1968** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] June: 8.

Naturally a few malt sandwiches were consumed while reminiscing as only ANARE types can.

**1971** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] Nov: 16.

Big Bill Edwards is still at Albert Park Barracks and apparently has shares in the "Explorers' Arms" (College Lawn Hotel, Prahran) should anybody wish to buy him a malt sandwich.

### malvinero *Falkland Islands*

[From the Spanish name *Malvinas* for the Falkland Islands. *Malvinero* is more common in coastal South American English than in Falkland Islands English.]

A wooden-framed South American saddle for horseriding.

**27 Jan 1882** Wiseman, William in Layman, Rear-Admiral C.H. and Cameron, Jane (1995) *The Falklands and the Dwarf: the cruise of HMS Dwarf in the Falkland Islands 1881–1882* Picton Publishing, Chippenham: 139.

Oh how rough and bad the ground seemed, and what an abomination the South American saddle<sup>1</sup> and how I longed for an English one.

[Footnote] These may either have been the padded leather sections, laced together down the centre, known as *bastoos*, or the wooden-framed saddle

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

known as the Falkland Island saddle, or *malvinero*, both originating with the Uruguayan gauchos.

**manfood**

Rations for human consumption, as opposed to those for **sledge dogs**.

**20 Oct 1911** Scott, R.F. in Evans, Admiral Sir Edward R.G.R. (1938) *South with Scott* Collins, London: 142.

Carry forward from One Ton Camp all man food and fuel in depot.

**1 Dec 1911** Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912* Blandford Press, London: 210.

We had some of Chinaman [sc. a dog] in our supper hoosh — and it was good like boiled beef — put in when water was cold in very small chips and boiled up with the pemmican. Here we are depoting a week's man food and a sledge and Christopher's [sc. a pony] bones.

**1922** Bowers, Birdie in Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Picador, London: 142.

We were taking six weeks' man food and oil to the hut, as well as a lot of gear from the depot, and pony food.

**1936** Murphy, C.J.V. in Byrd, Richard E. *Antarctic discovery* Putnam, London: 218.

The second wave would be a sledging operation, having for its purpose the establishment of a dog and man food depots at 25-mile intervals from 150-Mile Depot.

**1986** (Ronne Ice Shelf) Jenkins, Adrian and Summerson, Rupert *Travel report — Sledge Golf. Glacier geophysics Ronne Ice Shelf traverse 17 Dec 1985 — 24 Feb 1986* British Antarctic Survey, Cambridge: 8.

It was a useful spot to include a jerry of paraffin and a man-food box.

**28 Dec 1997** Maxwell Davies, Peter [source: <http://www.maxopus.com/lists/antarcti.htm>, accessed 12 Mar 1999]

Rachel has stayed at the tent to write letters — when I return home after many hours of walking, she cooks a regulation BAS fieldwork meal on the primus stove. This is selected from a Manfood Box (as distinct from a Dogfood Box of the good old days) which contains ten days supply for two people.

**manhaul verb**

(Of a man) To pull by wearing a harness roped to the object being towed (usu. a **sledge**). This was a more popular way of travel with early British explorers such as Scott, than others such as Amundsen, who used dogs to a far greater extent.

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* London: 190.

Anton and I started at 10.30 a.m. for Cape Evans — man-hauling our sledge.

**1979** Hurley, Frank *Shackleton's argonauts: the epic tale of Shackleton's voyage to Antarctica in 1915* McGraw-Hill Book Co Pty Ltd: 106.

The balance of the party, eighteen members, will man-haul the large boat — the *James Caird*.

**1995** (Faraday station) *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* no. 336 (Aug): 6.

Frank and Rory decided to go camping to Finger Point, man-hauling all the way there.

**manhaul noun and attrib.**

A journey undertaken where men pull equipment on **sledges**.

**1986** *Geo* 8(3) Sept–Nov: 15.

My three companions .. and I had been looking forward to the manhaul for several months. The sledges used for man-hauling are similar to those used for dog sledging, only much lighter.

**1992** *Casey News* May: [1].

Early in May the manhaul team of Alex, Noel, Jeff, Tappy, Chris and Pat headed off with heaps of exuberance as the snow conditions were ideal.

**manhauled adjective**

Transported by **manhauling**.

**1915** Madigan, C.T. in Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911–1914* William Heinemann, London, vol 1: 310.

Breaking an empty sauce-bottle over the bow of our sledge, we christened it the M.H.S. Championship (Man-Hauled Sledge).

**1958** Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund *The crossing of Antarctica: the Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955–58* Cassell & Co, London: 126.

At first he used small man-hauled sledges carrying a known load, the amount of effort required to 'break out' the sledge or to keep it in movement being measured electrically by the use of the strain gauges.

**manhauler**

[It is not surprising that the first recorded uses of two forms of this word come from Edward Wilson on Scott's 1911–12 journey to the South Pole, the most famous manhauling trip ever made.]

Someone who **manhauls** a sledge.

**3 Dec 1911** Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912* Blandford Press, London: 210.

Scott and Bowers having no horses now went ahead on ski. Evans and the manhaulers camped at 6 miles.

**1922** Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Picador, London: 426.

According to the plans for the Polar Journey the food necessary to bring the three advance parties of man-haulers back from One Ton Depot to Hut Point was to be taken out to One Ton during the absence of these parties.

**1967** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* (June): 15.

The four manhaulers still had ample food and kerosene in reserve. They were a strong confident team with an air of purpose and guts and would undoubtedly have got back to the base by themselves.

**1993** Fiennes, Ranulph *Mind over matter: the epic crossing of the Antarctic continent* Sinclair-Stevenson, London: 34.

A great deal of moaning and gnashing of teeth was audible from the DC6-load of manhaulers (person-haulers), Pole visitors and penguin photographers.

**manhauling verbal noun**

Travelling while pulling a **sledge**.

**[23 Feb 1911]** Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912* Blandford Press, London: 108.

The others prepared to make a man-haulage party to Corner Camp to meet Oates and Bowers and Gran, who were coming along with their 5 ponies.]

**1914** (nr Cape Adare) Priestley, Raymond E. (1974 repr.) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* Melbourne University Press: 155.



We resigned ourselves to the most heartbreaking work which can confront a manhauling party.

**1931** O'Brien, John S. *By dog sled for Byrd: 1600 miles across Antarctic ice* Thomas S. Rockwell, Chicago: 96.

Man-hauling with the dogs, struggling over every foot of snow, on the morning of November 18, added only four miles and little encouragement.

**1987** Lewis, Mimi in Lewis, David *Icebound in Antarctica* Secker & Warburg, London: 2.

After a day's man-hauling or snowmobile riding, we must erect the tent in the dark again.

**man inside** See **inside man**

**manked in** *Brit.*

[There is no apparent connection with the obsolete Scottish word *mank* mutilated or maimed.]

Confined to living quarters by bad weather; the coming of such weather.

**5 Jan 1986** (Ronne Ice Shelf) Jenkins, Adrian and Summerson, Rupert *Travel report — Sledge Golf. Glacier geophysics Ronne Ice Shelf traverse 17 Dec 1985 — 24 Feb 1986* British Antarctic Survey, Cambridge: 25.

Manked in with low Sc [sc. stratocumulus], clearing up later.

**1991** VENABLES, Stephen *Island at the edge of the world: a South Georgia odyssey* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 125.

Julian, still not completely reconciled to the hostile mountains, reminded us that he would turn back if 'the weather manked in' — but the weather was kind.

**manky** *adjective, Brit.*

(Of weather) Bad.

**1989** British Antarctic Survey *Glossary of FIDS terms* BAS, Cambridge (unpublished): 121.

Mank: overcast, thus a manky day.

**1996** Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 199.

Weather was defined by two words: manky, which meant bad, and dingle, which was good.

**man pemmican**

**Pemmican** made for human consumption, in contrast to **dog pemmican**.

**1930** Byrd, Richard Evelyn in *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 191.

Man pemmican is made of ground beef, squeezed dry and then mixed with fat. Dog pemmican has meal mixed with it.

**1955** (Marguerite Bay base) Walton, E.W. Kevin *Two years in the Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 69.

Each dog received one pound of pemmican daily, packed in hard blocks about four inches square and one and a half inches thick and wrapped up in paper. Basically it was the same as man's pemmican but had a far higher fat content and a small proportion of chopped maize was added to act as roughage.

**1 Nov 1956** Hillary, Sir Edmund (1961) *No latitude for error* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 61.

Sixty tins of man pemmican of seven pounds each.

**maori cabbage** *Aust., NZ.*

[Maori cabbage, in *New Zealand usage from 1871* (DNZE), refers to a sow thistle. Here the name has been used for a different plant of the sub-antarctic islands.]

The edible plant *Stilbocarpa polaris*: see **Macquarie Island cabbage**.

**1915** (Macquarie Island) Ainsworth, G.F. in Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911–1914* William Heinemann, London, vol II: 179.

Here and there across its surface were huge mounds of earth and rock and, occasionally, a small lakelet fringed with a dense growth of tussock and Maori cabbage.

**2 Dec 1930** (Macquarie Island) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 358.

Johnson, self, Falla, Ingram, Fletcher and one other made around south side of Hasselborough Bay to feather-bed terrace. Found very rich vegetation there — pleurophyllum and Maori cabbage, also a creeper with red berries.

**1984** (Macquarie Island) Fletcher, Harold *Antarctic days with Mawson. A personal account of the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929–31* Angus and Robertson, London: 242.

There was a luxurious vegetation, including Maori Cabbage, from which Professor Johnston collected a rich variety of insects.

**maori hen** *Macquarie Island*

[Both term and bird were brought from New Zealand, where the name was mainly in South Island use (DNZE 1863–).]

The rail *Gallirallus australis*, which was introduced from New Zealand to Macquarie Island: see **weka**.

**1915** (Caroline Cove, Macquarie Island) Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911–1914* William Heinemann, London. I: 33

Here and there on the beach wandered bright-coloured Maori hens.

**1964** (Macquarie Island) Davis, J.K. *High latitude* Melbourne University Press, Parkville: 124.

He [sc. McKibben, 1909] supplemented the dry stores left by the schooner with a diet of Maori hen, a flightless land bird found on the island, and sea-elephant tongues, 'quite good eating when properly cooked'.

**1972** Bennett, Isobel *Shores of Macquarie Island* Robert Hale & Co, London/Rigby Ltd, Adelaide: 65.

Although not a sea bird at all, and originally introduced into Macquarie Island as an extra source of food by the sealers from New Zealand, the weka or Maori hen, *Gallirallus australis*, is another scavenger and predator often seen along the shoreline of the island.

**marbled moray cod**

[Marbled see 1985 quotation; both English and scientific names refer to the fish's colour-pattern.]

The marine fish *Muraenolepis marmoratus* (fam. Muraenolepididae), found in the waters of the Crozet and Kerguelen Islands, and Heard Island. It grows to about 40 cm (16 in) long.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 308.

*Muraenolepis marmoratus* Günther, 1880 ... Marbled moray cod ... Colour variable, usually reddish, marbled with brown, with iridescent hues ... Only known from the Crozet, Kerguelen and Heard Islands.

**marbled notothenia** See **marbled rockcod**

**marbled plunderfish**

[Marbled see 1993 quotation (the English and scientific names share this meaning) + **plunderfish**.]

The marine fish *Pogonophryne marmorata* (fam. Arctidraconidae) of **Southern Ocean** waters. It grows to about 21 cm (8 in) long.

**1989** May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica, 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 83.

[caption] Marble Plunder Fish (*Pogonophryne marmoratus*), a species of Antarctic sculpin.

**1993** Miller, Richard Gordon *A history and atlas of the fishes of the Antarctic ocean* Foresta Institute for Ocean and Mountain Studies, Carson City, Nevada: 297.

*Pogonophryne marmorata* ... *marmorata*, Greek for the marbled body pattern. Marbled plunder fish.

**marbled rockcod** Also *marbled notothenia*

[Marbled see 1985 quotation, + **rock cod**.]

The mottled brown and black marine fish *Notothenia rossii* (fam. Nototheniidae), which lives in the Antarctic Peninsula region and around subantarctic islands. It grows to about 90 cm (nearly 3 ft) length and 10 kg (22 lb), was briefly caught commercially in large quantities, and is now protected.

**1983** *Australian Fisheries* 42(7) July: 13.

*Notothenia rossii* or marbled notothenia, is heavily exploited around the Kerguelen Islands and around South Georgia and other islands in the south Atlantic.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 356.

*Notothenia (Notothenia) rossii* ... Marbled rockcod ... Colour: light brown, darker dorsally, with more or less distinct marbling black spots ... Shelves of the sub-Antarctic islands ... and the northern part of the Antarctic Peninsula ... Often caught for its eggs, this species needs particular conservation measures.

**1985** Kock, Karl-Hermann in Bonner, W.N. and Walton, D.W.H., eds *Key environments: Antarctica* Pergamon Press, Oxford: 185.

The marbled notothenia, *Notothenia rossii rossii*, undertakes regular migrations from the feeding grounds in the northeast to the spawning area in the southeast of the Kerguelen Plateau.

**1988** Williams, Richard in *Australian Natural History* 22(11): 519.

[caption] A resource of the past: the Marbled Rockcod was once the mainstay of the large fisheries around South Georgia and Iles Kerguelen. Harvesting this species is now totally banned.

**1990** Gon, O. and Heemstra, P.C. *Fishes of the Southern Ocean* J.L.B. Smith Institute of Ichthyology, Grahamstown: 306.

Marbled notothen ... generally dark brown with blackish marbling dorsally.

**1992** *Antarctic Science* 4(2): 131.

The marbled notothenia, *Notothenia rossii* (Richardson 1844), is a wide spread species present in waters of the Scotia Arc, around the Kerguelen, Crozet, Marion, Prince Edward, Macquarie, Heard and Macdonald islands, Ob and Lena Banks.

**1996** *French Science and Technology [Canberra]* no. 27 (Sept-Dec): 3.

The marbled rockcod is prized for its caviar, and restrictions have had to be placed on its fishing in the breeding season to protect the stocks.

**Marion Island**

The subantarctic volcanic islands of Marion (46°55'S) and Prince Edward (46°38'S), at about 37°45'E in the southern Indian Ocean, lie 1930 km (1200 miles) southeast of Cape Town. They are South African territories annexed in 1947. The islands were discovered in January 1772 by Marc-Joseph Marion Dufresne (1724–1772). The name Marion Island was given in 1774 by James Cook. Prince Edward Island is uninhabited, but gives its name to the group, though Marion is considerably larger (22 km by 14 km). There is a year-round South African National Antarctic Research Expeditions base on Marion Island.

[1777 Forster, George *A voyage round the world, in his Britannic Majesty's sloop, Resolution, commanded by Capt. James Cook* B. White, London, vol 1: 112.

M. de Marion in his expedition of 1772, in January, fell in with small islands in three different places, about the latitude of 46° and 47°, and about the longitudes of 37° ... east from Greenwich. These islands were all of inconsiderable extent, high, rocky, destitute of trees, and almost entirely barren.]

**Marion attrib.**

Pertaining to the Marion and Prince Edward group of islands.

**1955** Rand, R.W. in *The Ostrich* XXVI(2) June: 62.

The predilection to establish nests away from the immediate vicinity of the beaches is .. less noticeable among the Marion birds.

**Marion Island cormorant**

The black and white seabird *Phalacrocorax albiventer melanogenis* (fam. Phalacrocoracidae), a **blue-eyed shag** breeding on Marion and Prince Edward Islands, and in the Crozet Islands.

**1954** (Marion Island) Rand, R.W. in *The Ibis* 96(2): 200.

*Phalacrocorax albiventer melanogenis* (Blyth). Marion Island Cormorant ... The total population of cormorants on Marion was estimated at only 200–300 adults.

**Marion Island sheathbill**

[See **sheathbill**.]

The white-plumaged bird *Chionis minor marionensis*, which breeds on Marion and Prince Edward Islands. It is one of the **lesser sheathbills**.

**1954** (Marion Island) Rand, R.W. in *The Ibis* 96(2): 203.

*Chionarchus minor marionensis* (Reichenow). Marion Island Sheathbill. ... There has been a tendency to treat the Sheathbills from each subantarctic island as belonging to separate species.

**Marionite**

A resident of the subantarctic Marion Island.

**1964** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(11) Sept: 507.

Marion Island (South Africa). During June, Marion House became a "drought stricken" area ... Up to Midwinter's day

very pleasant weather was enjoyed at the base and the Marionites gloated over reports of cold and snow in South Africa.

**1972** *Antarktische Bulletin* 2 (7-8) Mar: 68.

To the new "Goughels" we the Marionites — Len, Henk, Allen, Greg, Farie, John and Koos — wish them a pleasant stay.

## Marion prion

The bird *Pachyptila vittata salvini*: see **Salvin's prion**.

**1977** (Marion Island) van Aarde, R.J. in *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Jan: 32.

Nearly 80% of the petrels killed by cats are the Salvins Prion, also known as the Marion Prion, which is by far the most numerous petrel on the island.

## Maudheimer

[The base Maudheim ('Maud-home') was established by the Norwegian-British-Swedish Expedition on an ice shelf on the Queen Maud Land coast, at 71° 03'S, 10° 56'W, in February 1950. The name was suggested by Prof. Harald Sverdrup, Director of the Norwegian Polar Institute; the expedition was an initiative of Prof. Hans Ahlmann of Stockholm.]

An inhabitant of the 1950-1952 base of the Norwegian-British-Swedish antarctic expedition.

**1954** Giaever, John, transl. fr Norwegian by Huggard, E.M. *The white desert: the official account of the Norwegian-British-Swedish antarctic expedition* Chatto & Windus, London: 209.

We fourteen Maudheimers, at least, looked upon what was left of the expedition as a period of entertaining summer sports interspersed with frantic packing.

## Maudheim sledge

A Norwegian wooden sledge made of hickory, and used in Antarctica.

**1957** *Ross Sea Committee, Trans-Antarctic Expedition: newsletter [Wellington]* no 17 (1 July): 6.

The "Maudheim" sledge, as they are dubbed, is identical to those first used by the Norwegian/British/Swedish Expedition from their base at Maudheim in the Queen Maud Land section of the Antarctic Continent. Manufactured in Norway of solid hickory, they are of plain design, fourteen feet long by five feet wide with two 6" wide runners for their whole length. Reliability is their second name, for in all manner of nasty spots or tricky going they have never been known to break, capsize or give the slightest cause for anxiety.

**1968** *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* no. 18 (Sept): 3.

It was decided to carry the dogs on a Maudheim sledge.

## mawsoni US, NZ. Also *Mawson cod, mawsonii*

[Fr the scientific name for the fish, given by zoologist J.R. Norman in 1937 (see quotation) in honour of Australian geologist and antarctic explorer Douglas Mawson (1882-1958). Norman named the fish from a specimen caught in 1931 on Mawson's **BANZARE** expedition.]

The fish *Dissostichus mawsoni*: see **giant antarctic cod**.

[**1937** Norman, J.R. *Fishes. BANZ Antarctic Research Expedition 1929-31 reports. Series B (Zoology and Botany) vol 1 pt 2* Hassell Press, Adelaide: 71.

*Dissostichus mawsoni* sp. n. ... I have much pleasure in naming this fish in honour of Sir Douglas Mawson.]

**1 Feb 1991** (McMurdo) *Antarctica Sun Times* IV(xiii): 5.

Art de Vries' group caught a 184-pound Mawsoni in December, the largest by more than 10 pounds ever reeled in. This season's 250 Mawson [tagged and released] averaged 80 to 90 pounds.

**1994** (Scott Base) *Antarctic Times* 7 (3 Dec) :[4].

[caption] I know Scotty wanted a Mawsonii for the SENZREP Dinner tonight.

**1996** (McMurdo Sound) Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 178.

At midnight, Art de Vries, the fish biologist, brought me sashimi cut from the cheeks of his *mawsoni* fish. He gave me the carbones, to make into earrings.

**1997** Livermore, Beth in *Earth Dec*: 54.

The two-hundred pound Mawson cod has large eyes loaded with extra rods, sensory organs attuned to dim light.

**1997** Robinson, Kim Stanley *Antarctica* HarperCollins, London: 306.

Mawsoni fried in seal fat, and seasoned with herbs grown in local greenhouses.

## Mawsonite

[From the Australian antarctic station Mawson, named after Australian geologist and explorer Douglas Mawson (1882-1958), born in Shipley, Yorkshire. Mawson went to Antarctica with Shackleton 1907-09, and was in the first party to climb Mt Erebus in March 1908. He, Tannian Edgeworth David and A.F. Mackay were the first party to reach the vicinity of the south magnetic pole.

Edgeworth David said of Mawson 'We really have in him an Australian Nansen, of infinite resource, splendid physique, astonishing indifference to frost' (F.J. Jacka, in *Australian Dictionary of Biography* 10: 455). Mawson led the Australasian Expedition 1911-14, and was the sole survivor of an epic sledging trip with Xavier Mertz and Ninnis. He later led the two summer expeditions of BANZARE — the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Expedition, a ship-based exploration of Antarctic coastline. He was a geologist based in Adelaide for most of his later working life. A mineral of the same name, mawsonite, was named after him, but it does not occur in Antarctica.]

An inhabitant, or former inhabitant, of Mawson station, one of three continuously-operated Australian continental bases, and the one furthest from Australia, about 5500 km (3400 miles) southwest of Hobart. The station is the oldest continuously operating station south of the **antarctic circle** and was established in 1954.

**1964** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(11) (Sept): 491.

Midwinter was accompanied by a long drawn-out blizzard ... It seems that Mawsonites thrive well under these conditions, including the absence of sun.

**1973** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* (June): 10.

Yes, you Mawsonites in 1972, you were a team, believe it or not. You certainly went south as individuals and as such you returned, but whilst there you did learn the meaning of inter-dependence.

**1996** *Icy News* 29 Mar: [2].

The station is bursting at the seams with 20 extra Mawsonite mouths to feed.

## McCormick's skua Also *MacCormick's skua (gull)*

[The 1893 quotation gives the bird its scientific name. The species was named in honour of English naturalist and surgeon Roberi McCormick (1800-90) of the Erebus on Ross's *British Antarctic Expedition* of 1839-43. See also **skua**.]

The large seagull-like seabird *Catharacta maccormicki* (fam. Laridae), which is pale to dark brown or grey-brown, with white flashes on the wing; some birds are uniformly dark brown to dark grey-brown. It breeds

around coastal Antarctica in summer, and migrates north as far as the Arctic in winter.

This bird is also called **south polar skua**, a more recent name now generally preferred by ornithologists.

**18 Feb 1842** McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 346.

A lestris was hovering over the mast-head, and I lost not a moment in reaching the deck, gun in hand, and shot it, when luckily it fell into the boat astern — a splendid specimen and a new species or variety, like the one I shot on Possession Island last year; and the only pair I have been able to obtain, so scarce is it; yet a bold, piratical bird quite capable of defending itself against any feathered foe; hence I christened it the "Rover of the South Pole".

**1893** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* III(xiii): xii.

Mr. Howard Saunders described a new species of Great Skua from Victoria Land. Five specimens were in the British Museum, two of which had been recently bequeathed by the late Dr. McCormick, R.N., who procured all the above specimens during the Antarctic Expedition of 1841. The name proposed by Mr. Saunders was *Stercorarius maccormicki*, sp. n. ... Hab. Possession Island, Victoria Land. Lat. 71°14'S., long. 171°15'W.]

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 317.

The only gull which is common within the Antarctic circle, is the predaceous and aggressive McCormick's Skua (*Megalestris Maccormicki*), named after its discoverer, Dr. McCormick, of Sir James Ross's Expedition, who obtained specimens on Possession Island, Victoria Land. These birds breed on the Antarctic Lands, and a very fine series were obtained by the *Southern Cross Expedition*, from the downy nestlings upwards. In colour the mouth, wings and tail of the bird are chiefly umber-brown. The crown is olive-brown and the feathers of the neck strongly marked with golden straw colour. The claws are exceedingly sharp and curved.

**1 Oct 1904** *The Canterbury Times* [annual, Christchurch]: [15].

The skua-gull, McCormick's skua, as it is called by the scientists, was seen frequently, and often its flesh was eaten with much relish.

**21 Dec 1910** (nr 68°41'S, 179°28'W) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912* Blandford Press, London: 83.

Today I got a Maccormick's Skua for the collection. We have already seen several since we saw ice.

**1914** Levick, G. Murray *Antarctic penguins: a study of their social habits* William Heinemann, London: 125.

A book which treats of Adélie penguins scarcely can be complete without reference to the beautiful McCormick's skua gull (*Megalestris Maccormicki*), as probably no Adélie rookery exists without its attendant band of skuas.

**1915** Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard. Being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911-1914* William Heinemann, London, II: opp. 12.

[caption] Maccormick skua gull on the nest with egg.

**1956** Migot, André in Richard Groves, transl. fr French *The lonely South* Rupert Hart-Davis, London: 157.

The Antarctic skuas are quite different from those in Kerguelen and belong to another species: McCormick's skua. They are larger and their plumage is a lighter beige, with broad white bars on the wings.

**1984** Fletcher, Harold *Antarctic days with Mawson: a personal account of the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929-31* Angus and Robertson, London: 122.

McCormick's skua gulls, a distinct species from the subantarctic skuas, were recorded for the first time. In the summer months their range is only to the limits of the pack-ice; their activities in the dark winter months are largely unknown.

**1995** (Prydz Bay) Law, Phillip *You have to be lucky: antarctic and other adventures* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 80.

During our sledge journey we had seen numerous McCormick skuas.

### McMurdoite Also *McMurdite*

[British naval officer James Clark Ross named McMurdo Bay (now McMurdo Sound) on his 1839-43 expedition to Antarctica, in honour of his first lieutenant on the Terror Archibald McMurdo, born 24 September 1812, who retired as Rear-Admiral in 1867.]

An inhabitant of the American McMurdo Station, the largest base in Antarctica, located on McMurdo Sound on the antarctic coastline nearest to the South Pole (77°51'S, 166°40'E). The base has been continuously occupied since 1961; people and supplies are flown in from Christchurch, NZ. Its occupants are also called **Mactownites**.

**1966** Baum, Allyn *Antarctica: the worst place in the world* Macmillan Co, NY: 72.

One brave soul thought ice fishing might be a sport to interest other jaded McMurdites.

**1991** *Antarctica Sun Times* [McMurdo] IV(xi) 11 Jan: 5.

If you're the only McMurdite in a group of Willy folks, you might sympathize with him.

### mechanical era Also *mechanized era*

The period of activity in Antarctica since the 1940s-1950s. See also **heroic era** and **period of averted interest**.

**1965** Hedblom, Captain E.E. *Polar manual, 4th edn* US Navy, Bethesda, Maryland: 153.

The "transition" period of exploration between 1918 and 1950 claimed three in a crash, two in a fire, two lost in blizzards froze to death, one drowned, and one was run over by a vehicle. The modern or mechanized era since 1950 has accounted for the other 64 dead.

**1978** Lanzerotti, L.J. and Park, C.G. eds *Upper atmosphere research in Antarctica* American Geophysical Union Antarctic Research Series no 29, Washington DC: 238.

Beginning just at this time — on the eve of World War I — physics research in Antarctica was to enter a new period. It was too early to call it the end of the heroic age, and it was perhaps not yet the mechanical age, but there would be an important change in upper atmospheric physics research.

**1991** Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: xlii.

Shackleton died suddenly whilst the *Quest* was in harbour at South Georgia. With that the 'heroic era' of Antarctic exploration ended ... World War I, followed by world depression, diverted public interest from the achievements of Douglas Mawson and the other scientists and explorers in the Antarctic, and formed a break between the 'heroic era' and the 'mechanical era' in the history of Antarctic exploration.

### medium-billed prion

The seabird *Pachyptila vittata salvini*: see **Salvin's prion**.

**1982** Brown, C.R. and Oatley, T.B. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* 12: 45.

There have been two name changes since publication of the last report. The lesser broadbilled or Salvin's prion, *Pachyptila salvini*, is here referred to as the mediumbilled prion to distinguish it from the broadbilled prion, *P. vittata*.

**1984** (41°20'S, 30°52'E) Fletcher, Harold *Antarctic days with Mawson: a personal account of the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929-31* Angus and Robertson, London: 58.

Large flocks of prions had appeared including the medium-billed prion and the broad-billed prion — species which breed on the Marion and Crozet Islands.

## megaberg

An unusually large **iceberg**.

**1995** *Time Magazine* 20 Mar: 65.

In 1986 ... three megabergs broke loose into Antarctic waters, each bigger than this year's.

## melon hut

*Aust. Also simply melon*

A red, prefabricated fibreglass field hut designed and made in Australia for antarctic conditions, an elongated version of the **apple hut**. A melon has two extra segments and is about 4.3 m (14 ft) long.

**1986** (Bunger Hills) Ledingham, Rod in *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* 5(3) Mar: 15.

The base camp will consist of 3 Apple huts and 2 elongated Apples, henceforth known as "Melons".

**1986** (Davis station) *Station News [Australian Antarctic Division]* Nov: 7.

Peter and Michael Whitehead are spending most of their time on Magnetic Island, interfering with penguins and receiving visitors in their palatial Melon Hut.

**1992** Smith, David *Freeze frame* Penguin Books Australia, Melbourne: 75.

Outside was the usual array of bright red lunar-looking vehicles and huts, including a nest of Australian-designed melon huts: preformed red modular glass-fibre domes and tubes that could be lifted anywhere beneath a chopper and rapidly assembled to provide secure, insulated workstations.

**1996** *Icy News. Antarctic Division staff newsletter (Mawson)* 17 May: [4].

Within 48 hours we peaked at 112 knots or 207 kms/hr ... There was little damage apart from a melon hut going for a walk across the harbour.

## melonise

*verb, Aust.*

To convert an **apple hut** into a **melon hut** by adding segments.

**1986** (Bunger Hills) Ledingham, Rod in *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* 5(5) Sept: 30.

[caption] 'Melonising' an Apple.

## melt lake

A freshwater lake on rock or ice, either liquid or refrozen, originating from melted snow or ice. These are often used as the local water supply for Antarctic bases. See also **melt pool**.

**27 Sept–25 Oct 1959** Béchervaise, John (1963) *Blizzard and fire: a year at Mawson, Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 163.

Enclosed valleys in the bare, rocky ranges may even include the smooth surfaces of melt lakes receiving a skim of liquid water in occasional years.

**1966** Filson, Rex B. *The lichens and mosses of Mac.Robertson Land Antarctic Scientific Reports, Series B (II) Botany*, Dept External Affairs, Melbourne: 19.

Between these ridges are large melt lakes, large areas of moraine and moraine scree slopes.

**1986** *Geo* 8(3) Sept–Nov: 18.

[caption] The centre of Peterson Island (above) is very flat and contains several frozen melt lakes.

**1992** *45th ANARE Casey yearbook 1992 ANARE, Casey*: 56.

[glossary] Melt lake: Freshwater lakes and the freshwater supply for the station.

## melt pool

*Also melt pond*

A (usu. ephemeral) shallow pond appearing on an ice surface in summer; *occas.*, a **melt lake**.

**1964** (Pram Point) Helm, A.S. and Miller, J.H. *Antarctica: the story of the New Zealand party of the Trans-Antarctic expedition* R.E. Owen, Government Printer, Wellington: 159.

This was no breaking through the thin ice of a melt pool.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 101.

We had all heard of rubbish problems in Antarctica, and we had all seen the mess around Casey, been told of melt-ponds so polluted with cement dust that they had to be abandoned as sources of water, had heard of the fragile lichens on the exposed rock faces that had been wiped out by similar activities. We had been told that we mustn't pick up a stone in Antarctica because the environment is so precious.

**1990** (McMurdo ice shelf) Howard-Williams, C. and others in Kerry, K.R. and Hempel, G., eds *Antarctic ecosystems: ecological change and conservation* Springer-Verlag, Berlin: 23.

During mid- to late summer, melt pools and streams appear across the Ice Shelf.

**1992** (Ross Ice Shelf) Campbell, David *The crystal desert* Secker & Warburg, London: 66.

During the hot, bright day of summer, ephemeral melt ponds appear on the ice surface and are rapidly colonized by dense mats of algae, bacteria, cyanobacteria [etc.].

## melt stream

A freshwater stream from melting ice, flowing on, through or under ice.

**1963** (Antarctic Peninsula) Koerner, R.M. *Glaciological observations in Trinity Peninsula and the islands in Prince Gustav Channel, Graham Land, 1958–60* British Antarctic Survey scientific report no. 42: 10.

The Kenney Glacier never bears melt streams, no doubt because of the presence of crevasses parallel to the contours of the slope.

**1975** Clapperton, Chalmers M. and Sugden, David E. *Scenery of the South: the Falkland Islands, South Georgia and other sub-Antarctic Islands* Printed for the authors by St George's Printing Works, Aberdeen: 10.

The high summer sun of South Georgia and warmer weather melt a great deal of ice and winter snow. Meltwaters often make their way down crevasses and holes in the glacier base where they collect as powerful subglacial melt streams that emerge from large caverns at the glacial snout.

## meltwater

*noun and attrib.*

[Melt-water is recorded in geological literature from 1934 (NOED).]

Freshwater from melted ice, either flowing or still.

**27 Sept–25 Oct 1959** Béchervaise, John (1963) *Blizzard and fire: a year at Mawson, Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 175.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

Our destination was Beaver Lake, close to the 71st parallel (70°50'S., 68°15'E.), actually a relatively smooth surface formed, it is thought, by meltwater occasionally flowing down from the ranges at the head of a south-western arm of the ice-shelf itself.

**1964** (Mawson station) Styles, D.F. *Narrative. Coastal exploration of Kemp and Enderby Lands, Antarctica* ANARE reports Series A vol. 1, Antarctic Division, Dept External Affairs, Melbourne: 7.

Past the dog-lines and down beside the meltwater lake.

**1990** Naveen, Ron, Monteath, Colin, de Roy, Tui and Jones, Mark *Wild ice: Antarctic journeys* Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington: 146.

Everywhere large gentoo chicks begin to explore their new world, wandering to the shoreline, wading into meltwater ponds and streams, and generally investigating all that seems intriguing to their young minds.

**1994** *Australian Natural History* 24(8) Autumn: 50.

Dense cold melt-water, derived from the floating edges of iceshelves and from the icebergs broken off from the shelves, travels far northwards along the ocean floors of the world, affecting deep-ocean circulation, and so indirectly the Earth's climate.

## merganser *Auckland Islands*

[Specific use of merganser a duck of the genus *Mergus*.]

### The *Auckland Island* merganser.

**23 Nov 1840** (*Auckland Islands*) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 131.

A brown-coloured duck and a merganser frequent the harbour.

**11 Feb 1875** Letter from Baron A. von Hügel in *The Ibis* 5(XIX) Jul: 392.

The best bird I have got (and that, I think you will admit, is a good thing) is a *Mergus* from the *Auckland Isles*. I procured a pair of Mergansers with a few other skins in Invercargill, from a man who had just returned from a surveying trip to the islands. He had not even turned the skin after taking it off the body; but as soon as I saw the back through the opening, and felt the beak through the skin of the neck, I knew what I had. ... The lower surface of the body, .. instead of being white, as in *M. serrator*, is of a dull slaty grey, variegated with white bands (the feathers being edged with white). The whole plumage is very dark, approaching black on the back, the crest well formed, and the size, I fancy, considerably smaller than the British Red-breasted Merganser (*M. serrator*). From the great difference in size and brightness of colouring in bill and feet, I deem them to be male and female; but in plumage there is little difference. The birds were killed the latter end of November last; and I procured them on the 27th of the following month.

**1901** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* XI(lxxx) 22. May: 66.

Mr. W.R. Oglvie-Grant sent for exhibition a pair of the nearly-extinct Merganser (*Merganser australis*), obtained on *Auckland Island* by Lord Ranfurly during a collecting trip to the islands south of *New Zealand*.

**1936** (*Auckland Islands*) Guthrie-Smith, H. *Sorrows and joys of a New Zealand naturalist* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Dunedin: 208.

At Handfield Inlet the absence of the Merganser (*Merganser australis*) was a disappointment. There we had expected to see one or more specimens of this rare sea duck, but in vain.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 95.

Dr McCormick made a large collection of insects, and shot teal, merganser, bellbirds, and tuis.

## midge fly *See antarctic midge*

## midnight sun

[Extended use of midnight sun the sun as seen in Arctic regions at midnight, recorded from 1857.]

The sun seen below the antarctic circle in summer, when night has fallen at lower latitudes.

**1895** Borchgrevink, C. Egeberg in *Geographical Journal* 5: 587.

On December 24, in lat. 66°3', long. 167°37'E., there was stormy weather. The evening, however, was beautiful, and the sun just touched the horizon on its lowest descent. I believe that we are the only people who ever saw the midnight sun at Christmas Eve.

**10 Dec 1910** Gran, Tryggve in McGhie, Ellen-Johanne, transl. fr Norwegian, and Hattersley-Smith, Geoffrey, ed. (1984) *The Norwegian with Scott: Tryggve Gran's Antarctic diary 1910-1913* National Maritime Museum, UK: 33.

Now we are in the land of the midnight sun; at 5 a.m. we crossed the Antarctic Circle.

**1939** Byrd, Richard E. *Alone* Reader's Union Ltd and Putnam & Co Ltd, London: 20.

Some days the midnight sun, making its unhurried round of the sky, was with us all the time; then it was warm enough for the men to strip to the waist.

**1964** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(12) Dec: 542.

From about the middle of November S.A.N.A.E. will be enjoying the midnight sun.

**1978** Béchervaise, John *Science: men on ice in Antarctica. Australian Life Series* Lothian Publishing Co, Melbourne: 34.

The period of midnight sun — the number of days when the sun remains unsetting — increases with latitude until it reaches its maximum at the pole.

**1990** Stonehouse, Bernard *North Pole, South Pole: a guide to the ecology and resources of the Arctic and Antarctic* Prion, London: 17.

The polar circles indicate where we can see that exclusively polar phenomenon, the midnight sun.

## midrats *US*

[Abbreviation: see 1996 quotation.]

A meal served or eaten at midnight.

**1996** Dicks, Ethan *English, as She is spoke at McMurdo* <http://www.infinet.com/~erd/MCMsglang.html>, printed 11 Jul. [Glossary] Midrats: Short for "midnight rations", the meal served between 00:00 and 1:00.

**1997** Robinson, Kim Stanley *Antarctica* HarperCollins, London: 46. He would rush down at midnight the moment the galley opened for mid rats.

## midwinter *noun and attrib., esp as midwinter('s) day*

[In the northern hemisphere, midwinter('s) day has been recorded for Christmas Day since 1154 (NOED). The nature of the celebrations is similar, though the southern celebration is in June.]

The middle of winter, generally celebrated on or about 21 June at the time of the solstice, as the main festivity of the year in antarctic regions.

**1909** (Cape Royds) Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907-1909* William Heinemann, London: 142.

On the roof of the dark-room we stowed all our photographic gear and our few cases of wine, which were only drawn upon on special occasions, such as Mid-winter Day.

**22 June 1911** (Cape Evans) Gran, Tryggve in McGhie, Ellen-Johanne, transl. fr Norwegian, and Hattersley-Smith, Geoffrey, ed. (1984) *The Norwegian with Scott: Tryggve Gran's Antarctic diary 1910-1913* National Maritime Museum, UK: 103.

Today was midwinter day and the hut has been lively all day long. It has been a day of celebration and champagne ... I had to climb over about 50 bottles of Heideck 1904 stacked up in the crew's quarters. This was a sight that promised well for the evening.

**1946** *Polar Record* 4(32) July: 378.

Midwinter day was celebrated in the usual Antarctic fashion. The sun shone for three hours, though at a very low angle above the horizon. The coldest day came later with a record low temperature for Hope Bay of  $-20^{\circ}\text{F}$ .

**1955** (Marguerite Bay base) Walton, E.W. Kevin *Two years in the Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 56.

Midwinter's day in the first year was enormous fun and formed the only real day's rest that I can remember in the first eight months ... The day was officially a public holiday and on this occasion there were no voluntary jobs to be completed.

**1958** Barber, Noel *The white desert* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 29.

The little *Theron* sailed down the Thames with an incredible variety of stores, ranging from crackers for the mid-winter "Christmas Day" — midsummer's day in Britain — to the first of the three ton Sno-cats.

**1964** (Macquarie Island) *Antarctic Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(11) Sept: 507.

Midwinter Day brought the midwinter magazine, and the midwinter box was opened, consumed and appreciated.

**1965** (Macquarie Island) *Wind in the Wallows* ANARE, Macquarie Island: ii.

Midwinter or more specifically, the shortest day, is celebrated in Antarctica in much the same spirit as Christmas and New Year are celebrated in our homes.

**1993** Weir, Charlie in Clark, Linda and Wishart, Elspeth *66° South* Queen Victoria Museum, Launceston: 80.

Midwinter has more significance down there than Christmas or anything because it's the shortest day.

## midwinterite

An antarctic resident over the **midwinter** period.

**1995** Greet, Pene and Price, Gina *Frost bytes* Doubleday, Sydney: 95.

We also had a moment's thoughts for all you midwinterites, and your celebrations.

## military starling *Falkland Islands*

The bird *Sturnella loyca falklandica* (fam. Icteridae) of the Falkland Islands. It has a bright scarlet breast and is also called the **long-tailed meadowlark**, **red-breasted starling**, and **robin**.

**1971** Taylor, Margaret Stewart *Focus on the Falkland Islands* Robert Hale and Co, London: 47.

The most beautiful bird I saw in Stanley was the red-breasted troupial, also known as the military starling, and quite wrongly called the robin by the Kelpers. It was the size of a starling and the male had a brilliant rose-pink breast.

**17 Dec 1997** (Falkland Islands) Maxwell Davies, Peter [source: <http://www.maxopus.com/lists/antarcti.htm>, accessed 12 Mar 1999]

Military starlings, with red fronts. A paradise for birdy folk.

## millinery *Falkland Islands*

[From The Millinery, the women's clothing section of the former West Store in Stanley.]

Women's clothing.

**1971** Taylor, Margaret Stewart *Focus on the Falkland Islands* Robert Hale and Co, London: 47.

In the Falklands the term millinery is used for ladies coats, dresses, even underwear.

**14 June 1982 (1984)** (West Store) Smith, John *74 days: an Islander's diary of the Falklands occupation* Century Publishing, London: 240.

We were allocated space in the ladies' millinery department.

## minke whale *Also simply minke*

[From the Norwegian minkehval, apparently after a German whaler (but see also 1971 quotation) called Meincke who whaled with Svend Foyn off northern Norway. In Norway now, the minke — the only whale hunted there — is called the vågehval.]

The baleen whale *Balaenoptera acutorostrata* (fam. Balaenopteridae), the smallest **rorqual** whale. It lives in all the world's oceans. It was heavily hunted in the 1970s, when other whales traditionally hunted had become scarce, and is the only baleen whale still to be officially hunted. It is also called the **lesser rorqual**.

**1939** [source: NOED] *Geog JrmI* XCIII: 190.

Minke and killer whale were cruising quietly in all parts of the bay [sc. Bay of Whales].

**1942** Mackintosh, N.A. in *Polar Record* 3(24) Jul: 563.

The Minke, or Lesser Rorqual, is a still smaller species [sc. than Bryde's whale] and although it has a wide distribution it appears to be most abundant in the coldest waters around the fringe of the Antarctic pack-ice. There it may sometimes be seen in large schools. It frequents open leads in the pack, and is common in the southern part of the Ross Sea. It is too small to attract the attention of the whaling industry, and since there has thus been little opportunity to subject it to biological examination, little is known of its habits and life cycle.

**1964** (Enderby Land) Styles, D.F. *Narrative. Coastal exploration of Kemp and Enderby Lands, Antarctica*. ANARE reports Series A vol. 1, Antarctic Division, Dept External Affairs, Melbourne: 23.

We were followed very closely at times by a school of minke whales which appeared to be flirting with the launch.

**1971** [source: NOED] F.D. *Ommannet Lost Leviathan* vol. ii: 39. It [sc. the piked whale or lesser rorqual] is also known to the Norwegians as the Minke whaling after a whaling gunner named Meincke who accidentally shot one in mistake for a blue and thus achieved a rather dubious immortality.

**1991** Bowden, Tim *Antarctica and back in sixty days* Australian Broadcasting Corporation, Sydney: 61.

Even the little minkes are not immune from predatory man. The Japanese are still taking a quota for 'research' purposes — so Tokyo gourmets can carefully 'study' bits of whale meat on the end of their chopsticks in the laboratories of expensive restaurants.

**1991** Chester, Jonathan *Antarctica: beauty in the extreme* The Five-Mile Press, Melbourne: 81.

The minke was named after a whaler called Meineke.

**1996** *Age (Melbourne)* 9 Nov: A12.

The queue runs for two city blocks and it seems most of the customers simply cannot get enough of it. It is blood red, something like a tuna steak, and comes in small white metic-

ulously packaged boxes. It's meat from minke whales and today it is on special at the bustling Tsukiji market in central Tokyo. As a special service the Association for Maintaining the Culture to Taste Whales is selling the minke meat at bedrock prices, \$25 for 500 grams. While most of the world is turning off whale meat, the association is laboring to revive Japan's appetite for the threatened mammal ... Mr Sato ... said that the minke whales consumed at Tsujiki were caught in the Antarctic by whalers for scientific purposes. "When they have finished with them for research purposes, we then sell the meat at the main fish markets around Japan".

## mock moon

A **paraselene**.

**5 July 1911** (Cape Evans) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912* Blandford Press, London: 146.

The min. temp. last night -54.8° and by the evening it fell to -60.1. We are surrounded now by white fog, but we can see Erebus and Terror and the moon with a halo and mock moons and vertical shafts of the lunar cross.

**1922** Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Picador, London: 241.

There was the great circle of a halo round the moon with a vertical shaft, and mock moons.

## mock sun

[Mock sun *parhelion*, is recorded in British English from 1665-(NOED).]

A bright illumination in the sky, caused by sunlight scattered from suspended ice crystals; a **sundog**. Mock suns appear at the same horizontal elevation as the sun, and are located left or right of the sun by (usu.) 22-25 degrees of arc.

**20 Nov 1908** (80° 32'S) Shackleton, E.H. (1909) *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907-1909* William Heinemann, London: 289.

The sun to-night was surrounded by mock suns and in the zenith was a bow, turning away from the great vertical circle around the sun. These circles and bows were the colour of the rainbow.

**13 Sept 1911** (Cape Evans) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912* Blandford Press, London: 169.

Fine parhelion and mock suns well in front of the Ramp and Erebus with a very broad and brilliant shaft of light below the sun.

**1968** Herbert, Wally *A world of men: exploration in Antarctica* Eyre & Spottiswoode, London: 113.

Mock suns illuminated us from the sides and the real sun beamed full on our faces, as we stood bathed in a diffused light with our long-legged shadows pale and tripled. With each deep draught of air we breathed, a million sparkling crystals were sucked into the stream. The parhelia dissipated after a while, and in minus 5°F we stripped to shirt sleeves.

**1981** Arriens, Peter in *Hemisphere* 26(2): 123.

Less commonly seen is a parhelion or complete halo with sun dogs (mock suns) to each side and above the sun.

## molitos See maletas

## molly Esp. Tristan da Cunha. Also mollie

Abbreviation of **mollymawk**.

**21 Dec 1811** (Tristan da Cunha) Lambert, Jonathan in *Blackwood's Edinburgh Magazine* (1818) IV (xxi): 283.

The Mountains are covered with albatross, mollahs, petrals, sea-hens, &c.; and a great deal of feathers might be had, if people were to attend to it.

**1910** Barrow, K.M. *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 275.

There is nothing peculiar to Tristan in either its Fauna or Flora. Of the birds those we saw or hear most of were:- ... The Molly, Yellow-nosed Mollyhawk (*Thalassogeron chlororhynchus*). Comes to nest in August, leaves in April [etc.].

**1951** Rowan, M.K. in *The Ostrich* XXII(3) Dec: 139.

All three islands of the group, Tristan, Inaccessible and Nightingale, form breeding stations for the Yellow-nosed Albatross. To the Tristan Islanders this species is known simply as "Molly" or "Mollymawk". Other albatrosses occurring in Tristan waters receive distinguishing names, such as "Cape Molly" for *Diomedea melanophris*, the Black-browed Albatross, which regularly visits the islands, but does not breed there.

**1980** Parmelee, David F. *Bird Island in antarctic waters* University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis: vi.

Nothing can equal ... the first impression of South Georgia's tussock and seals on the molly slopes of Elsehul.

**1982** Crawford, Allan *Tristan da Cunha and the Roaring Forties* Charles Skilton, Edinburgh: 212.

In the middle of March, Joseph and Adam "went on the hill" (as they call climbing two thousand feet up the mountain!) for young "mollies" — mollymawks or yellow-nosed albatrosses which breed locally. We had them fried for supper: they were delicious!

**1984** Richardson, M.E. in *Cormorant* 12(2): 147.

Immature Yellow-nosed Albatrosses often frequent knolls covered in grass and moss which rises above the surrounding vegetation. These noticeable features of the Base plateau on Tristan are called "molly knobs" by the islanders.

## mollybag Tristan da Cunha

A bag for carrying young **mollies** in, to use for cooking or extracting their fat.

**1952** Hagen, Yngvar *Birds of Tristan da Cunha* Det Norske Videnskap Akademi i Oslo/Hos Jacob Dybwad, Oslo: 67.

The young are just skinned and carried home in special "mollybags". On Nightingale, however, the fat is extracted on the spot in drums and the flesh is salted down in boxes.

## molly egg Tristan da Cunha

A **mollymawk** egg; these have been regularly collected and eaten on Tristan da Cunha.

**2 Oct 1907** Barrow, K.M. (1910) *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 166.

Nearly every man has been out on the mountain today in search of molly eggs. Only one egg is found in a nest, and yet Glass on Saturday got one hundred and sixty-two. In time, I fear, these beautiful birds will be driven from the island.

**1958** Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 51.

Breakfast, next day, consisted of a hard-boiled Molly egg each, and more potatoes. The eggs were very good, and one egg was a fair meal, equivalent in volume to more than two hen eggs.

**1969** Zettersten, Arne *The English of Tristan da Cunha* Lund Studies in English no 37, C.W.K. Gleerup, Lund: 94.



The yellow-nosed albatross or Mollymawk. This bird plays an important role in the life of the Tristan people. Both the eggs and the bird itself are used as food. The season for the eggs is the 'Molly Egg-time' at the beginning of October and the hunting season is February–March ... *Mollymawk* is a loanword in English (< Du malle mok) ... Both Mollyhawk and Mollymawk were used by the informants.

**mollymawk** Also *mollyhawk*, *mollymauk*

An albatross, usually one of the smaller species, such as the **yellow-nosed albatross**.

**13 Feb 1839** (Balleny Islands) McNab, John in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 352.

Saw neither albatross nor mollymawk here, only a few Cape pigeons, and a white bird, rather smaller, and only a few of them. Saw several penguins, and whales very numerous.

**1859** (Falkland Islands) *Proceedings of the Zoological Society of London* Feb–June: 98.

"Molly mauk." Supposed to be either *Diomedea fuliginosa* or *Diomedea melanophrys*. A very long, but rather elegant, oval-shaped egg, the ground-colour of which is a stony-white, slightly washed with pink, and with a zone of brownish-buff round the larger end.

**1879** (Nightingale Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 129.

Amongst the penguins here were numerous nests of the yellow-billed Albatross (*Diomedea culminata*) called by the Tristan people "Mollymauk," variously spelt in books, Molly Hawk, Mollymoy, Mollymoc, Mallymoke. It is, as are most of the sealers' names in the South, a name originally given to one of the Arctic birds, the Fulmar, and then transferred to the Antarctic from some supposed or real resemblance.

**1904** (Falkland Islands) Vallentin, Rupert in *Memoirs and Proc of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no. 23: 12.

There were three species of birds present — 'Mollymauks' or lesser Albatross (*Diomedea chlororhynca*) etc.1.

**3 Oct 1906** Barrow, K.M. (1910) *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 85.

Mollyhawk eggs are just in. They are large in size, of a long oval shape, and with reddish-brown markings and spots. The men say this bird never lays more than one egg each season.

**20 June 1945** Hurford, G. and Joubert, J. in *The Ostrich* (1946) XVII(2) June: 124.

Birds on Tristan, however, are still quite thick and in some places there are large rookeries of Mollymawks and penguins.

**1961** Basil Lavarello in Zettersten, Arne (1969) *The English of Tristan da Cunha* Lund Studies in English no 37, C.W.K. Gleerup, Lund: 149.

You's a bird called a mollyhawk, now he's a big bird, and he got a really good egg to eat, but you're only allowed to take a certain amount.

**1964** (Bird Island) *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(10) Jun: 449.

Banding of giant petrels and Mollymauk nestlings.

**1964** Jenkins, Geoffrey *A grue of Ice* Fontana Books, London: 23. Sailhardy gestured me to bale. I snatched up a home-made pottery bowl containing our meal — the cooked mollymawk chicks floated pathetically in the rising waters.

**1966** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 19.

With their white bodies and dark wings and backs, mollymawks resemble the larger albatrosses, but differ in the fierce and proud stare which the dark eyebrow or line from

beak to eye gives them. It is the heads and bills which distinguish the different species and subspecies — ranging from the pale horn-coloured bill and pale grey head of the Salvin's mollymawk to the striking black and chrome-yellow bill of the Buller's and grey-headed mollymawks, and the white head and paler pink-tipped yellow bill of the black-browed.

**moondog**

[Formation prob. inspired by the more common **sundog**.]

A **paraselenæ**.

**1936** Murphy, C.J.V. in Byrd, Richard E. *Antarctic discovery* Putnam, London: 236.

The moon was obscured by a dry, cold fog, and there was a vague smear of a moon dog to either side.

**1954** Roots, E.F. in Giaever, John, transl. fr Norwegian by Huggard, E.M. *The white desert: the official account of the Norwegian-British-Swedish antarctic expedition* Chatto & Windus, London: 275.

We were treated to a variety of impressive atmospheric spectacles. Among these were pastel-coloured moonsets, delicate lunar haloes and moon-dogs (paraselenæ).

**1979** Kilian, Crawford *Icequake* Futura Publications, London: 157.

The moon, half-full, was bright; haloes often formed around it, and Penny once saw three moondogs arrayed across the sky.

**moonfish** *Falkland Islands*

The large fish *Lampris immaculatus* (fam. Lampridae), also known as the 'southern opah', which grows to about 60 kg (130 lb) and 110 cm (3 ft 8 in) long, and is caught by trawlers around the Falkland Islands. It occurs widely in the Southern Ocean.

**1994** (1910s–1930s) Rogers, Ellen, quoted in Simpson, Tim *Cooking the Falkland Island way* Peregrine Publishing, Bangor: 38.

Moonfish kebabs .. Cut the moonfish fillet into strips and then into chunks about half match-box size.

**moop** *Aust.*

[Acronym from 'man out of phase'.]

Someone disoriented by changing patterns of light and dark in polar regions, a sort of high-latitude version of jetlag.

**12 June 1959** Béchervaise, John (1963) *Blizzard and fire: a year at Mawson, Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 90.

His [sc. Widdows] abiding contribution to ANARE parlance is the word *moop*, noun and verb, meaning "man out of phase" with the relentless dictates of time.

**1980** (1957) *Geo [Aust.]* 2(3): 56.

At that latitude it was not clear when day ended and night began, the sun never quite dipping out of sight. Some men fell victim to the unusual phenomenon, becoming "moops". "men-out-of-phase", who slept during the day and emerged at night to wander the decks and lounge in the wardroom totally disoriented.

**motor toboggan** *noun*

[The term is recorded for these vehicles earlier (1948, DCantE) in Canadian English.]

A small motorised oversnow ski-shod vehicle capable of pulling a load roughly comparable to that of a dog sledge. See also **skidoo**, **tin dog**.

**1963** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(8) Dec: 322.

A major innovation is the team's dependence on motor toboggans instead of dog-sledges for their work in the field.

**1978** Harrowfield, D.L. in *New Zealand Antarctic Record* 1(1): 11. From Cape Royds, we travelled 11 km south over the sea ice to Cape Evans by motor toboggan.

**1995** Ledingham, Rod in *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions newsletter* 75 (Autumn): 51.

Quads — motorbikes on four wheels — have now almost displaced motor toboggans as ANARE's main form of station and short-distance field transport in Antarctica.

### mottled petrel *noun*

The seabird *Pterodroma inexpectata* (fam. Procellariidae) which breeds on The Snares Islands and in southern New Zealand, and ranges south to the **pack ice** in summer. It is grey-brown above and whitish underneath, with dark markings on upper wings and lower wings.

**1932** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* LII(ccclxi): 139.

The Mottled Petrel in former times nested inland on mountain ranges throughout both the main islands of New Zealand ... It has been almost, if not quite exterminated over the whole of the mainland, though it still breeds in numbers on the islands off Stewart Island, and the sub-Antarctic islands further south.

**1959** Downes, M.C. and others *The birds of Heard Island. ANARE reports Series B vol 1 Zoology Antarctic Division, Department of External Affairs, Melbourne: 12.*

The non-breeding populations of several other species, with a strictly low-latitude breeding range, resort regularly in large numbers to antarctic seas. These include .. the mottled petrel (*Pterodroma inexpectata*), and the sooty shearwater.

**1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 125.

Mottled petrels, .. which breed on the Subantarctic islands of New Zealand, often appear at the edges of the pack ice in late summer.

**1977** Hornung, Donald S. *Snares Islands expedition: a report submitted to the Department of Lands and Survey, Wellington, 18th April 1977* Dept Zoology, University of Canterbury, Christchurch: 26.

Seabirds such as the Diving Petrel and Mottled Petrel.

### mountain berry *Falkland Islands*

The low to prostrate evergreen shrub *Pernettya pumila* (fam. Ericaceae) which grows in the Falkland Islands and southernmost South America, and is cultivated elsewhere. It has white or pink flowers and white to reddish berries.

**c1990** Roper, Patrick *Holidays in the Falkland Islands* Falkland Islands Tourist Board, London: 4.

Many wild flowers give a life and colour to our grasslands and moors and several are cherished on rock-gardens and in alpine houses in the Northern Hemisphere: the pretty Ladies Slipper, *Calceolaria fothergillii* or the Mountain Berry, *Pernettya pumila*, a dwarf shrub with tiny, shell-pink bell flowers and fat rose-purple berries, for instance.

**1992** Strange, Ian J. *A field guide to the wildlife of the Falkland Islands and South Georgia* Harper Collins, London: 26.

Diddle-dee is the most common, but Mountain Berry and Christmas Bush are also widespread.

### mountain blue grass *Falkland Islands*

The low tufted perennial grass *Poa alopecurus* (fam. Poaceae or Gramineae) of the Falkland Islands, with bluish-grey leaves.

**1987** Strange, Ian J. *The Falkland Islands and their natural history* David and Charles, Newton Abbot, Devon: 69.

A very dense stand of tussock grass ... gradually gave way further inland to a small plain of fine grasses, most of it composed of mountain blue grass (*Poa alopecurus*) forming small tussocks about 23cm (9in) high.

### mountain cock *Tristan da Cunha*

The bird *Porphyriornis comeri*: see **Gough moorhen**.

**1905** (Gough Island) Clarke, William Eagle in *The Ibis* V: 259.

Regarding the habits of this bird, which he calls the "Mountain Cock," Mr. Comer .. states that they "cannot fly and only use their wings to help them in running ... They are quite plentiful and can be caught by hand ... the bushes grow on the island up to about 2000 feet, and these birds are found as far as the bushes grow."

### mud wallow

A wallow.

**9 Dec 1942** Sorensen, J.H. *The work journal of J.H. Sorensen, coastwatcher in the "Cape expedition", Campbell Island, 1942-44.* Diary, in possession of NZ Dept of Conservation and Wildlife: 131.

Many sea-elephants were ashore around the cove and I photographed two in a mud-wallow.

**1955** (Marion Island) Rand, R.W. in *The Ostrich* XXVI(2) June: 61.

When they return to moult, the seals haul up to mud wallows far beyond the beaches.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 30.

They laze on open beaches, such as Northwest Bay on Campbell Island, or lie in deep and foul-smelling mud wallows in the peat and tussock.

### mukluk *Usu. pl. as mukluks*

[Orig. Eskimo, and recorded in arctic English use since 1868 (NOED muckluck), and in Canadian English since 1898. DCAN (mukluk) gives muklok as West Eskimo for the large, or bearded, seal, hence a type of knee-high boot worn by Eskimos and Indians of the Northwest Territories and the Yukon and, in modern times, other winter footwear resembling this. DALASK records the Yupik word maklak as the root, giving the same two-stage process into English use for the boot: see 1868 quotation below.]

A thick-soled boot made for icy conditions, sometimes from animal skin, and now from synthetic materials and canvas, with removable liners which can be taken out and dried.

[1868 [source: DALASK] Whympfer, Frederick *Travel and adventure in the Territory of Alaska* 136.

Their boots vary in length, and in the material used for the sides, but all have soles of "macklock," or seal-skin, with the hair removed.]

**1930** Byrd, Richard Evelyn in *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 133.

The lightest and warmest, and therefore most practical, kind of fur seems to be reindeer skin; so our mukluks (or boots),

parkas (or coats), and many of our pants were made of reindeer skin.

**1968** Herbert, Wally *A world of men: exploration in Antarctica* Eyre & Spottiswoode, London: 23.

Then a tiny dinghy caught our attention: it was rowed by three burly men. They came alongside, secured the boat and pulled themselves up the rope ladder. Their big beards bristled and their seal-stained anoraks stank; their mukluks were patched with canvas and string.

**1970** Antarctic Division, *Christchurch Operations manual. A manual compiled for the use of expeditions of the New Zealand Antarctic Research Programme* Antarctic Division, Department of Scientific and Industrial Research, Christchurch: 16.

Mukluks: These should be used at temperatures, below 10°F. They should *not* be used around the Base during mid-summer in wet conditions, or on rock. Each night, take out the felt soles and liners and place near the ceiling in your bunkroom.

**1990** (Mt Erebus) Navcen, Ron, Monteath, Colin, de Roy, Tui and Jones, Mark *Wild ice: Antarctic journeys* Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington: 166.

After a stiff climb, we circled round the summit ridge, then crept unseen down the scree towards the carpenters toiling away on the roof. Thinking themselves alone on the mountain, they didn't look up from their private world. Hidden behind fumarole towers some fifty meters from the hut, we took off all our clothing except bright yellow mukluks and then bolted toward the hut, whooping like Apache horsemen. Halfway to the hut I crashed through the hollow roof of a cave formed by hot gases escaping under the summit slopes. I tore my knee on volcanic glass and razor-sharp slivers of Pele's hair, and my leg streamed with blood. Undaunted, on we charged. Startled, one carpenter couldn't believe his eyes and almost fell off the roof. As we naked Kiwis burst through the door, our own faces undoubtedly mirrored the stunned amazement of the woman who had been, unknown to us, busy sealing walls inside.

### muklucked *adjective*

[Recorded in *Canadian English* (DCanE), as muc-lucked] in 1910.]

Shod in mukluks.

**1983** *Davis yearbook* 1983 ANARE, Davis: 63.

And so it came to pass, that in the cover of night, if you listen intently, above the purr of *Caterpillar* generators, you may still hear the pitter patter of tiny muklucked feet on the donga roofs!

### mullet *Falkland Islands*

[Mullet has been used for fishes of the mullet fam. (*Mugilidae*) since about 1440 (NOED).]

The coastal marine and estuarine fish *Eleginops maclovinus* (fam. Nototheniidae) of the Falkland Islands and southern South America. It is brownish-grey and grows to more than 60 cm (2 ft) long. It is also called **Falklands mullet**.

**1748** (~45°30'S, nr Cape Tres Montes) Walter, Richard *A voyage round the world, in the years MDCCXL, I, II, III, IV by George Anson Esq; Commander in Chief of a Squadron of His Majesty's Ships, sent upon an Expedition to the South-Seas. The Third Edition* John and Paul Knapton, London: 197.

This is a fresh water river, and here the *Pink's* people got some few mullets of an excellent flavour.

**13 Jan 1765** (Falkland Islands) quotation in Day, Alan Edwin (1996) *The Falkland Islands, South Georgia and the South Sandwich Islands. World Bibliographical Series vol. 184* Clío Press, Oxford: 11.

There is but two sorts of fish — the mullet and the smelt. At our first coming to Port Egmont, we found great plenty of wild geese.

**1825** (Falkland Islands) Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24, 2nd edn* David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 86.

Water may be procured at the top of the cove; and at the head of the harbour there is also a water run, in which mullets may be caught by building a fish wire. This kind of refreshment is abundant during the spring and autumn of this hemisphere, both here and at Beaver Island, as also at Little Port Egmont, a bay in the west side of the passage to Port Egmont.

**1857** Snow, W. Parker *A two years' cruise off Tierra del Fuego, the Falkland Islands, Patagonia, and in the River Plate: a narrative of life in the Southern Seas* Longman, Brown, Green, Longmans and Roberts, London, vol 1: 82.

At certain seasons immense quantities of large mullet may be caught in the tidal creeks. These fish salt and dry well, and always find a ready market in Brazil, whence might be imported timber and provisions, as sugar, coffee, &c.

**1894** (Falkland Islands) Burn Murdoch, W.G. *From Edinburgh to the Antarctic* Longmans, Green and Co, London: 191.

There are such heaps of these mullet left on the sand at low water that a schooner might twice fill her hold in the day with them.

**1924** Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history by Rupert Vallentin* Clarendon Press, Oxford: 187.

Large shoals of mullet may be seen near Cape Pembroke.

**1971** Taylor, Margaret Stewart *Focus on the Falkland Islands* Robert Hale and Co, London: 83.

At last he caught a 3-pound 'mullet' and hurled it ashore where Thelma tried to kill it.

**1994** Falkland Islands Government Office *Introduction to the Falkland Islands* Falkland Islands Government Office, London: 15.

Fishing is a popular sport: mullet can be caught within the vicinity of Stanley.

### multi-year ice

**Sea ice** two summers or more old. See also **second-year ice**.

**6 Mar 1898** Amundsen, Roald in Declair, Hugo, ed. (1998) *Roald Amundsen's Belgica diary* Hadewijch, Antwerp: 98.

The — admittedly — multi-year old ice in which we are trapped looks as if it has only just broken up.

**1967** Bates, Robert L. and Jackson, Julia A., eds *Glossary of geology, 3rd edn* American Geological Institute, Alexandria: 439.

Multi-year ice. *Old ice* up to 3 m thick that has survived at least two summers' melt. The hummocks are smooth, the ice is almost salt-free, and the color when bare is usually blue. The melt pattern consists of interconnecting puddles and a well-developed drainage system.

**1989** Tison, J.-L. and Haren, J. in *Antarctic Science* 1(3): 265.

High proportions of frazil ice are more typical of multi-year sea-ice floes.

**1995** Ives, Jack D. and Sugden, David, eds *Polar regions Reader's Digest*, Sydney: 16.

When the ice refreezes after the brief summer, it is much thicker and stronger than previously; this ice is termed "multi-year ice".

### mush *verb, dog-sledging*

[Attributed in NOED to the French *marchez*, and recorded in *arctic English from 1862, and Canadian English from 1897.*]

A command used to start a **sledge dog** team.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

**1948** Hurley, Frank *Shackleton's argonauts: the epic tale of Shackleton's voyage to Antarctica in 1915* McGraw-Hill Book Co Pty Ltd: 74.

At the order 'Mush', they give a quick jerk to break the runners free of ice, and then move off at a steady gait, each dog putting his back into the work.

**1992** Lied, Commander Nils *Oscar: the true story of a husky* Kerr Publishing, Sydney: 92.

To stop the sledge, I would shout "whoa!" and stand back on the brake. To start them off, we used the old, trusted and tried "mush".

**1995** *The Australian Way* [Australian Airlines magazine] Dec: 22. He [sc. Norman Vaughan] mushed the sled and supplies from 'Little America' through pristine Antarctic territory never before glimpsed by human eyes.

### muskeg Also muskeg tractor

[Originally a trade name for the Bombardier Muskeg motorised vehicle, first produced in 1953 by Canadian Joseph-Armand Bombardier, and able to travel on snow or rough country. The name comes from muskeg the Cree Indian word for boggy land (see NOED), and is recorded in the Arctic from 1865.]

A tractor used for hauling in Antarctica.

**1957** *Ross Sea Committee, Trans-Antarctic Expedition: newsletter* [Wellington] no 22 (1 Dec): 10.

Each of the ten tractors (four Sno-Cats, four Weasels, 1 Muskeg and 1 Ferguson) were [sic] overhauled.

**1958** (Shackleton Base, Vahsel Bay) Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund *The crossing of Antarctica: the Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955-58* Cassell & Co, London: 101.

At first unloading required most of the available manpower and, using three Sno-cats, one Weasel and the muskeg tractor, we were able to move 75 tons a day from the ship to Shackleton.

**1964** *Antarktische Bulletin* no 2 (Mar.): 3.

The bearded SANAE IV team had a muskeg race with the ship to reach the shore first.

**1995** Clarkson, Peter In *BAS Club Newsletter* no. 34: 6.

In days of old, when Fids were bold  
And Muskegs weren't invented,  
Men used dogs instead of cogs  
And lived their lives contented.

### mutt

The bird *Chionis alba*: see **sheathbill**.

**1969** *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* 24 (Mar): 5.

The little white sheathbills (mutts) have moved in and no doubt will provide considerable entertainment.

**1984** Headland, Robert *The island of South Georgia* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 267.

*Chionis alba* (Sheathbill, Kelp pigeon, Mutt).

### muttonbird

[Muttonbird is used in Australian and New Zealand English for edible seabirds (AND 1823-), esp. the short-tailed shearwater *Puffinus tenuirostris*.]

A petrel sometimes used for food, esp. *Puffinus griseus* (fam. Procellariidae): see **sooty shearwater**.

**24 Feb 1839** (64°46'S, 139°17'E) McNab, John quoted in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 353.

At daylight saw several divers, penguins, mutton-birds, and porpoises.

**1879** (Kerguelen Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 207.

Besides the Prion there is the "Mutton-bird" of the whalers, (*Oestrelata Lessoni*), a large Procellarid, as big as a pigeon, white and brown and grey in colour. It makes a much larger hole than the Prion, six inches in diameter, and long in proportion.

**15 Mar 1904** (Auckland Islands) Wilson, Edward in Roberts, Brian, ed. (1967) *Edward Wilson's birds of the Antarctic* New Orchard Editions, Poole [Dorset]: 152.

There were flocks of Mutton Birds, a black shearwater, and a few of the big black skuas. What a paradise!

**1932** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* LII(ccclxi): 140.

Enormous numbers of Mutton-birds nest on the Snares and Auckland Islands further south, and these are practically undisturbed by man, as the Islands are very rarely visited.

**1940** Hagen, Yngvar in Christopherson, Erling transl. fr Norwegian by Benham, R.L. *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 187.

John Glass told us that in days gone by there were quantities of "black eaglets" in the mountain district. This was a little petrel of the same size as the ptarmigan; it was used for food and was very tasty, whilst its fat was also employed for cooking purposes. How commonly this bird must have been used, according to Glass, is evident from its old name on Tristan — "mutton bird". John himself once caught a hundred of them in one day.

**1964** Helm, A.S. and Miller, J.H. *Antarctica: the story of the New Zealand party of the Trans-Antarctic expedition* R.E. Owen, Government Printer, Wellington: 138.

Strollers on deck .. saw approximately 1,000 muttonbirds (sooty shearwaters) flying past.

**1978** (1909-16) Timms, Joe in Kerr, I.S. and Judd, N., eds *Marlborough whalers at Campbell Island: a narrative based on the recollections of J. Timms* Department of Lands and Survey, Wellington: 26.

When the weather was suitable we used to go out to Dent Island for the muttonbird. We got over 1000 birds off there one season. May seemed to be the best time of the year for muttonbirds. They were good eating, and we had a lot of fun when we first went over there, trying to clean and cure them but not knowing anything about it.

### muttonbird sedge *Macquarie Island*

[Recorded also in New Zealand use: see 1965 quotation for an explanation of the name.]

The tall (to 1 m or 3 ft 3 in) tufted perennial plant *Carex trifida* (fam. Cyperaceae) of Macquarie Island, which is also native to New Zealand (including its subantarctic islands), southernmost South America and the Falkland Islands.

**1965** [source: DNZE] Gillham *Naturalist in NZ*: 32.

These [two species] are so closely associated with the bird rookeries that they bear the respective names of muttonbird tussock grass .. and muttonbird sedge, *Carex trifida*.

**1967** Gillham, Mary E. *Sub-Antarctic sanctuary: summertime on Macquarie Island* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Wellington: 73.

Scattered across Handspike Point, like eruptions of feather from the punctured mattress, are tall clumps of mutton-bird sedge (*Carex trifida*) and fescue grass.

**1987** National Parks and Wildlife Service, Tasmania *Macquarie Island nature reserve: visitor's handbook* NPWS, Hobart: 37.

Cyperaceae *Carex trifida* muttonbird sedge.

# N

## nacreous cloud

[Nacreous exhibiting the iridescent hues of nacre.]

A type of **polar stratospheric cloud**. Most polar stratospheric clouds are so thin that they cannot be seen. Where air is forced up over mountains, the clouds become thick enough to see as nacreous clouds, which have a brilliant mother-of-pearl lustre.

**1 Sept 1959** Béchervaise, John (1963) *Blizzard and fire: a year at Mawson, Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 146.

[Footnote] Mother-of-pearl (nacreous) clouds are very rare, high clouds, probably of supercooled minute water particles, showing brilliant iridescence. They appear to be peculiar to the polar regions.

**1968** *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* 16 (Jul): 1.

Many beautiful phenomena were observed including lunar haloes, alpine glow, sun pillars, and nacreous clouds.

**1996** (McMurdo Sound) Wheeler, Sara *Terra Incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 272.

We sat outside in the evening calm. Often we saw nacreous clouds then, drifting high up in the infinite reaches of the sky — about ten miles up, actually, far higher than the fluffy white clouds at home that send down rain. There might be twenty-five of them, in twenty-five variations of opalescent lemons, rich reds and reedy greens.

## naked dragonfish

The marine fish *Gymnodraco acuticeps* (fam. Bathyrhacanthidae) of antarctic waters.

**1977** de Vries, A.L. in *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XII (4) Oct: 18.

[caption] Naked dragon fish, *Gymnodraco acuticeps*, resting on the bottom on a mat of ice crystals in 10 meters of water in McMurdo Sound, Antarctica.

## Nansen cooker Also *Nansen-type cooker*

[From the name of the Norwegian polar explorer and statesman Fridtjof Nansen (1861–1931).]

A portable spirit-fuelled aluminium cooker (primus) whose pots were initially designed by Nansen for his arctic expeditions. The inner vessel nests inside the outer one, and a metal lid covers the outer pot. It allows two simultaneous heating operations (such as melting snow and cooking a meal) in separate pots from one heat source and is therefore very fuel-efficient.

The stove was modified by Victor Czegka, machinist on the 1930 Byrd Antarctic expedition, whence the Nansen-Czegka cooker of the 1930 quotation.

[1906 (South Orkneys) Rudmose Brown, R.N., Mossman, RC and Pirie, J.H. Harvey *The voyage of the "Scotia", being the record of a voyage of exploration in Antarctic Seas by Three of the Staff* William Blackwood and Sons, Edinburgh: 147.

One sledge carrying three one-man reindeer sleeping-bags, one small aluminium cooking-stove of Nansen's pattern and supply of methylated spirits [etc.].]

**1909** (Cape Roys) Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907–1909* William Heinemann, London: 20.

For use on the sledging expeditions I took six "Nansen" cookers made of aluminium, and of the pattern that had been adopted, with slight modifications, ever since Nansen made his famous journey in 1893–96.

**1914** (Cape Adare) Priestley, Raymond E. (1974 repr.) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* Melbourne University Press: 110.

The cooking apparatus used on the Scott Expedition did not differ essentially from that used by the other English expeditions, and was the latest adaptation of the Nansen cooker. This consists of five parts — a shallow dish, in which the primus lamp stands; the two pots in which the water is heated and the meals cooked, one of which is of ring shape and fits around the other; a lid of thin sheet aluminium which covers these two; and, finally, an outer cover, which is lowered gently over the whole concern in order to keep in as much of the heat of the lamp as possible. The whole apparatus is made of aluminium, and when it is carried on the sledge the parts fit into one another and the big lid covers all.

**1930** (South Victoria Land) Byrd, Richard Evelyn in *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 190.

Meals on the trail were cooked on a Nansen-Czegka cooker, which is built around a two-burner primus stove that burns gasoline.

**1930** Watkins, G. in Bernacchi, L.C., co-ordinator *The polar book. Produced for the British Polar Exhibition 1930* E. Allom & Co Ltd, London: 101.

For cooking a Nansen cooker is best if great economy in fuel is necessary. If, however, this is not necessary, an ordinary Primus is better, as this warms up the tent or snow-house at the same time as doing the cooking.

**1942** Mawson, Douglas *Geographical narrative and cartography. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911–14. Scientific reports series A vol 1* Government Printer, Sydney: 139.

The cooking equipment comprised an aluminium Nansen cooker, a primus heater, alcohol [etc.].

**1993** *Kosciusko Huts Association newsletter* no. 80 (Autumn): 26. Another important device invented by Nansen and named after him is the Nansen cooker, which maximises the heat absorbed from Primus stoves when melting snow to gain water for drinking or cooking.

**1995** (Inexpressible Island) *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 13(10) June: 409.

A small sledge ... contained .. a Nansen-type cooker, comprising 19 aluminium cooking and eating utensils [etc.].

## Nansen sledge Also simply *Nansen*, and *Nansen-type sledge*

[From the name of the Norwegian polar explorer and statesman Fridtjof Nansen (1861–1931). In US, sled is normally used in preference to the British sledge.]

A light, flexible wooden sledge with runners curved at both ends, adapted by the Norwegian Fridtjof Nansen

from Eskimo designs. It has hide and cord bindings rather than nails or screws. Though light it is capable of carrying very heavy loads. It is usually pulled by dogs, but can be pulled by humans or motorised vehicles.

**1906** Rudmose Brown, R.N., Mossman, RC and Pirie, J.H. Harvey *The voyage of the "Scottia", being the record of a voyage of exploration in Antarctic Seas by Three of the Staff* William Blackwood and Sons, Edinburgh: 19.

In the way of equipment for land-journeys there were on board sledges of the improved Nansen pattern.

**1909** (Cape Royds) Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907-1909* William Heinemann, London: 12.

The sledges were to be of the Nansen pattern, built [sic. in Norway] of specially selected timber, and of the best possible workmanship. I ordered ten twelve-foot sledges, eighteen eleven-foot sledges and two seven-foot sledges. The largest ones would be suitable for pony-haulage. The eleven foot ones could be drawn by either ponies or men, and the small pattern could be useful for work around the winter quarters and for short journeys.]

**1949** Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 206.

Abbottsmith began building a Nansen-type sledge for the summer operations. It was to have an overall length of nine feet.

**1967** *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* 5 (Aug): 1.

George McLeod, one Nansen sledge and nine heaving huskies .. were transported back to Stonington.

**1975** Stump, Edmund in *Antarctic Journal of the United States* X(4) July/Aug: 179.

Transportation in the field was accomplished by snowmobiles pulling Nansen sleds.

**1988** *BAS Club Newsletter* 23 (Spring): 15.

Using big vehicles and sledges, as well as skidoos and nansens.

**1992** Lied, Commander Nils Oscar: *the true story of a husky* Kerr Publishing, Sydney: 73.

Whereas the flexible Nansen-type dog-sledge, bound together with rawhide lashings, would snake across the rough sastrugi, the awful pounding taken by the rigid vehicles and cargo sledges made it hard going.

## narrow-billed prion

The seabird *Pachyptila belcheri*: see **thin-billed prion**.

**5 Oct 1943** Sorensen, J.H. in Bailey, Alfred M. and Sorensen, J.H. (1962) *Subantarctic Campbell Island Proceedings* no. 10, Denver Museum of Natural History: 225.

Found the remains of a Narrow-billed Prion in a skua casting on St. Col ridge today.

**1974** Harper, Peter C. and Kinsky, F.C. in *Tuatara* 21(1,2): 48. Narrow (or Thin) -billed Prion (*Pachyptila belcheri*) ... Summer breeder at Kerguelen, East Island (Crozet) and the Falkland Islands. Winter visitor to New Zealand waters.

## narrowhead rockcod

The marine fish *Gobionotothen marionensis* (fam. Nototheniidae), which grows to about 20 cm (8 in) long. It is found in the seas around South Georgia, the South Sandwich, Crozet, Prince Edward and Marion Islands.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes*. Southern Ocean FAO, Rome: 344.

*Notothenia (Gobionotothen) angustifrons* ... Narrowhead rockcod ... Confined to South Georgia and the South Sandwich Islands.

**native box(wood)** See **box**

## native cabbage

The plant *Pringlea antiscorbutica*: see **Kerguelen cabbage**.

**18 Jun 1840** (Kerguelen Island) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 69.

I saw here a remarkable instance of the power of the native cabbage to withstand the effects of salt-water, apparently without sustaining any injury. A row of the very finest and largest of these plants, growing just above the ordinary high-water mark, about two feet in height, with stout stems bearing the scars from which former leaves had dropped off, and indicative of age, now appeared on the very spot of the sandy beach where we landed, half-submerged, as if growing out of the sea.

**1968** Dukert, Joseph M. *This is Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 83.

Halfway between Australia and Africa, this remote and glacier-capped island [sic. Kerguelen] had been known chiefly for the tasty native cabbage with which it provided occasional visitors.

## native snipe

[Native snipe was recorded in 1871 (DNZE) in New Zealand English for the species *Coenocorypha aucklandica*, and its use for the Auckland Islands bird is a more specific sense of this usage.]

The bird *Coenocorypha aucklandica aucklandica*: see **Auckland Island snipe**.

**30 Mar 1904** Wilson, Edward, in Roberts, Brian, ed. (1967) *Edward Wilson's birds of the Antarctic* New Orchard Editions, Poole [Dorset]: 158.

The following Auckland birds none of us saw: .. Sand Plover, *Thimornis novaeseelandiae* Native Snipe, *Gallinago aucklandica* [etc.].

## native strawberry Falkland Islands

The straggling shrub *Rubus geoides* (fam. Rosaceae) of the Falkland Islands and southernmost South America, which has edible red raspberry-like fruits in January and February; the fruit itself.

**1989** Davies, T.H. and McAdam, J.H. *Wild flowers of the Falkland Islands* Bluntisham Books, Huntingdon: 23.

The red distinctive berry of the native strawberry resembles a raspberry but has a distinct and delicious flavour, something between that of a strawberry and raspberry.

**1994** Simpson, Tim *Cooking the Falkland Island way* Peregrine Publishing, Bangor: 91.

Native Strawberry. These are best just with fresh cream and sugar if desired.

## native trout Falkland Islands

The freshwater fish *Aplochiton zebra*: see **trout**.

**1987** Strange, Ian J. *The Falkland Islands and their natural history* David and Charles, Newton Abbot, Devon: 124.

Two freshwater fish indigenous to the islands, native trout (*Aplochiton zebra*) and the locally named minnow (*Galaxias maculatus*) [sic] a form of smelt, can still be found in some rivers, but the introduction of an exotic species, the brown trout (*Salmo trutta*) in the 1940s has been largely responsible

for the disappearance of these two species in many rivers and streams.

### **nelly** Also *nellie*

A very large scabird of the genus *Macronectes* — a **giant petrel**.

**19 Oct 1822** (Falkland Islands) Morrell, Captain Benjamin (1832) *A narrative of four voyages, to the South Sea [etc.]*. & J. Harper, New York: 52.

Leaving .. accommodations for some other kinds of oceanic birds, such as another which the seamen call Nelly.

**1827** (1823, South Georgia) Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24, 2nd edn* David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 59.

The bird next in size [sc. to the albatross] found here, is called by sailors a Nelly; it is of the petrel kind, and of a mixed grey and brown colour, having an unpleasing appearance, and being extremely voracious. Their fondness for blubber often induces them to eat so much that they are unable to fly. A flock of perhaps five or six hundred has been known to devour 10 tons of the sea-elephant fat in six or eight hours. From this appetite for oily food, their flesh is uneatable, nor are their eggs so good as those of the other birds I have mentioned.

**1841** Darwin, Charles *The zoology of the voyage of H.M.S. Beagle, under the command of Captain Fitzroy, R.N. during the years 1832 to 1836, pt III Birds* London: 139.

The Nelly, in its flight and general appearance on the wing, has many points of resemblance with the Albatross.

**1879** Sharpe, R Bowdler in *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: 143.

Many writers have drawn attention to the variation in plumage in the "Nelly," and the general opinion is that the white plumage represents an albinism.

**1894** Hamilton, A. in *Transactions and Proceedings of the New Zealand Institute XXVII Art LXV*: 572.

*Ossifraga gigantea* — The huge and ungainly "nelly", handsome and even noble when wheeling round and round in the air, is on the land but a lumbering robber, and usually to be found skulking around the breeding places, trying to pick up a young penguin or wood-hen ... The whole surface of the island is covered with the bones of small Prions, swallowed and then ejected by these giant petrels.

**1905** (Gough Island) Clarke, William Eagle in *The Ibis* V: 263.

*Ossifraga gigantea* (Gmelin). Many "Nellies" were observed off the island, and one example, a female, was obtained — a remarkably dark specimen, without a trace of brown, its plumage being throughout deep slaty grey, each feather (except the remiges, the greater wing-coverts, and the tail) terminally or subterminally margined with a slightly paler tint.

**1909** Waite, Edgar R. in Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington: 564.

As we were leaving Enderby Island (Auckland Group) in the whaleboat, a nelly sailed over our heads and alighted on the beach some distance from the carcass of a seal already under discussion by a mob of skuas.

**19 Dec 1929** (65°S 74°E) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 286.

Passed a nelly.

**1952** (Marion Island, used by Tristan Islanders) Crawford, Allan B. in *The Emu* 252(2) May: 78.

Giant Petrel (Nellie, Stinker), *Macronectes giganteus* ... These birds are common on Marion at all times of the year. They are to be seen in clusters feeding on anything dead, and are scavengers on dead sea-elephants and seals.

**1963** (Heard Island) *Aurora*. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne] June: 24.

The Atlas Cove boys were camped at Cape Gazert on the South Coast, trying to get line of sight radio contact, and banding Nellie chicks.

**1989** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 5 (Sept): 10.

The third and final set of stamps in the island series devoted to fauna duly appeared on 6th February 1989, this issue devoted to Gough Island ... The four bird subjects chosen from some 25 species found on the island are the Giant Petrel (5p value); Gough Moorhen (10p value); Gough Bunting (20p value) and the Sooty Albatross (25p value). The Fur Seal is shown on the 50p stamp. The Tristan names for the birds are "Nellie or Stinker" [etc.].

### **névé**

[From the French neve first recorded in English (NOED 1843-) from a dialect in European alpine regions.]

Fallen snow which is granular but still has air spaces in it, and which is being transformed to ice by compaction. See also **firm**.

**1879** Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 239.

The flat tops of the bergs had usually rather uneven surfaces, being covered with small hillocks, apparently formed by drifting of snow, or showing irregularities where they covered over the mouths of crevasses. The surfaces in fact, looked just like those of the "firm" or "névé," the cracked snow-fields at the heads of European glaciers, and appeared as if they would be equally dangerous to traverse, except with a party roped together.

**1915** Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911–1914* William Heinemann, London, vol I: 240.

We broke back the edge of the névé lid and took turns leaning over secured by a rope, calling into the darkness in the hope that our companion might be still alive. For three hours we called unceasingly but no answering sound came back.

**8 Apr 1934** Byrd, Richard E. (1939) *Alone* Reader's Union Ltd and Putnam & Co Ltd, London: 74.

The three-and-one-half inch outlet ventilator fills every three or four days with ice (or rather with what looks like névé, which is between snow and ice).

**1957** Anderson, W. Ellery *Expedition south* Evans Brothers, London: 37.

I went on deck to find a group of F.I.D.S. men at the starboard rail, looking at the first iceberg of the voyage. It towered above us like a huge white castle a hundred feet high, and as we passed under its lee I could distinguish layers of rock-hard névé, the snowfall of successive years, descending from the top of its battlements and reaching down into green depths six or eight hundred feet below.

**1992** Lied, Commander Nils Oscar: *the true story of a husky* Kerr Publishing, Sydney: 93.

The team climbed well in spite of patches of blue, wind-scoured ice on the lower slopes, but soon we were travelling over hard-packed snow, or névé, making traction easier for the dogs.

### **new ice**

Recently formed **sea ice**.

**23 Feb 1898** Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 188.

New ice formed on every open space last night.

**1916** (Hut Point, McMurdo Sound) Doorly, Captain Gerald S. *The voyages of the 'Morning'* Smith, Elder & Co., London: 119.

The entrance, or, more correctly now, the exit, across from the Erebus shore to the western land presented an alarming looking sea of smooth new ice about six inches in thickness. The *Morning* struggled bravely into this, but was soon brought up. With pack ice, comprised of brittle, broken-up floes and blocks, there is always a hope of chance openings to work a ship into, but with newly formed ice the smoothly frozen sea presents a sludgy and sticky substance which, by its adhesive nature, effectively arrests a ship's progress.

**1935** Christensen, Lars in Jayne, E.M.G., transl. fr Norwegian *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 190.

The new ice was steadily pushing the *Norvegia* north instead of south.

**1995** Ives, Jack D. and Sugden, David, eds *Polar regions Reader's Digest*, Sydney: 14.

As the ocean's surface layer cools each year, it begins to freeze into small crystals known as frazil ice. The small pieces of ice are prevented from congealing into a sheet by the movement of the water, and accumulate on the surface, giving it a greasy appearance. At this stage in its formation it is known as new ice.

## New Zealand flax *See flax*

## New Zealand fur seal

[This name is also recorded for the seal in New Zealand English (in 1966: DNZE), though there it is more commonly simply called a 'fur seal'.]

The seal *Arctocephalus forsteri* (fam. Otariidae) which breeds and is common on rocky coasts of New Zealand and on Macquarie Island, the Snares, Campbell, Bounty and Antipodes Islands, as well as in southern Australia. In the nineteenth century it was hunted for its soft dark brownish-grey fur. Males grow to about 2.5 m (8 ft 3 in) long and 180 kg (395 lb) — they are considerably larger than the females.

**1949** Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 108.

A party retrieving oil drums at Windy City beach saw a fur seal. These animals, sought by the sealers, are almost extinct. This one was identified as a New Zealand-type seal, with a rich light grey coat.]

**1966** MacKenzie, D., ed. *Fog 'N Bog [yearbook of Macquarie Island overwinterers]* ANARE, Macquarie Island: 43.

The fur seal inhabiting Macquarie Island is the New Zealand Fur Seal, *Arctocephalus forsteri*. The main breeding grounds of this species are the New Zealand off shore islands, and the Macquarie population is possibly the result of an overflow from these colonies.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 31.

[caption] New Zealand fur seals were widely hunted in the early nineteenth century for their inner pelt of soft, reddish-brown fur. They were exterminated on Macquarie Island and the Antipodes, and reduced to very low numbers on the Auckland and Bounty Islands.

## New Zealand sea lion

[The same name is recorded in New Zealand from 1983 onwards for this seal.]

The sea lion *Phocarctos hookeri*: *see Hooker's sea lion*.

**1962** Bailey, Alfred M. and Sorensen, J.H. *Subantarctic Campbell Island* Proceedings no. 10, Denver Museum of Natural History: 52.

New Zealand Sea Lion *Neophoca hookeri* ... This species breeds extensively on all islands to the south of New Zealand and has a wide circumpolar distribution. Like all other seals, Sea Lions are polygamous, the bulls gathering a harem of about twelve females (the so-called "Sea Bears") on suitable sandy beaches.

**1996** *The Southland Times* [Invercargill] 6 Nov: 17.

[caption] New Zealand sea lions enjoy a quiet laze on the beach. After spending most of the winter at the Auckland Islands they are happy to relax and rest in the sunshine on a Catlins beach yesterday.

## night

[In polar regions, where for weeks or months the sun does not rise in winter or set in summer, day and night assume a different significance. The more common modern meaning of 'night' as a part of a twenty-four hour cycle is expanded to encompass both the hours between sunset and sunrise in lower latitudes, and the whole of the long, winter darkness.]

a. The time in summer when it would be dark at temperate latitudes (see 1774, 1921 quotations). b. (*More commonly*) The **polar winter**.

*See also* **day, polar night, polar winter, summer and winter**.

**27 Jan 1774** (69°38'S, 108°12'W) Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, in the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facts, Adelaide 1970, vol 1: 266.

We had now so thick a fog that we could not see two hundred yards round us; and as we knew not the extent of the loose ice, I durst not steer to the South till we had clear weather. Thus we spent the night, or rather that part of the twenty-four hours which answered to night; for we had no darkness but what was occasioned by fog.

**9 Feb 1841** (nr 77°S) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 169.

The night, so-called, although in fact day here, was indeed most favourable, being remarkably fine.

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* London: 43.

The daylight night above was thick with falling snow.

**1930** Bernacchi, L.C., ed. *The polar book. Produced for the British Polar Exhibition 1930* E. Allom & Co Ltd, London: 35.

At the equator the contrast between winter and summer practically vanishes while at the two poles the contrast between day and night vanishes.

**6 Apr 1934** Byrd, Richard E. (1939) *Alone* Reader's Union Ltd and Putnam & Co Ltd, London: 73.

When the long night comes, I shall have no light to awaken me.

**1955** (Marguerite Bay) Walton, E.W. Kevin *Two years in the Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 50.

In mid-May the sun left us and we were not to see it again until the third week in July. For most of that time it was not daylight until 10 a.m., and even then it was a pale insipid sort of light that gave no shadow or contrast. By three in the afternoon it was dark again and in those short five hours all the outside jobs had to be finished. This in fact was the long winter night.

**21 Jun 1957** Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund (1958) *The crossing of Antarctica. The Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955-58* Cassell & Co, London: 132.



At 3.30 p.m. we sat down to a splendid meal which included Green Turtle Soup, Roast Turkey, Plum Pudding and Ice Cream. The table was decorated with crackers and presents and in due course paper hats and musical instruments enlivened the atmosphere. Later that evening, after a suitable pause for digestion and recovery, we enjoyed a buffet supper prepared by Ralph, including even mustard and cress sandwiches, the first fresh vegetable we had tasted since the departure of the *Magga Dan*. Such was our Mid-Winter, and now we looked forward to the second half of the dark night, for not until 18th August would the sun return to Shackleton.

**1990** Maslanik, J.A. and Barry, R.G. in *Antarctic Science* 2(2): 105.

The value of remote sensing techniques in the polar regions is determined by a combination of factors unique to the poles. These include the polar "night".

### nightbird *Esp. Tristan da Cunha*

[Night-bird is recorded from 1608 (NOED) as a general term for a bird of nocturnal habits. Prions are nocturnal mainly to avoid predators: see 1956 quotation.]

A prion, esp. the **broad-billed prion** or the **soft-plumaged petrel**.

**1817** (Tristan da Cunha) Carmichael, Captain Dugald in *Transactions of the Linnean Society of London* (1818) 12(2): 497.

There are six species of *Procellaria*, among which are the *P. gigantea*, *cinerea*, and *vittata*. The last, and the other three, which are smaller, are night birds, never appearing on wing until after sun-set.

**1879** (Inaccessible Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 123.

The whole of the peaty ground underneath the trees in the *Phyllica* woods is bored in all directions with the holes of smaller sea birds, called by the Germans "night birds", a *Prion* and a *Puffinus*.

**17 Sept 1908** Barrow, K.M. (1910) *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 224.

Early this morning Graham went off by boat with Mr. Keytel and Repetto to visit Freshwater Cave to get specimens of night-birds and their eggs.

**1926** (Tristan da Cunha) Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 136.

Nightbirds are getting scarce, and albatross have left the island entirely.

**1952** Hagen, Yngvar *Birds of Tristan da Cunha* Det Norske Videnskap Akademi i Oslo/Hos Jacob Dybwad, Oslo: 78.

The local name of the Broad-billed Whalebird on Tristan da Cunha is "Nigh'bird".

**1956** (Gough Island) *The Times [London]* 10 Sept: 9.

The lower hillsides are pitted with the nesting burrows of millions of sea birds, which are popularly known as "night-birds" because they only fly near the land at night to avoid the local birds of prey, the skuas. The "nightbirds" belong to the general groups of petrels and shearwaters.

**1967** Pondus-Bøgerne, Lohse, transl fr Danish by Falk-Rønne, Arne *Back to Tristan* Allen & Unwin, London: 73.

Lars switches on the torch, and turns the beam up to the night sky once or twice. At once a subdued humming can be heard, a long drawn-out "piiiv", and a bird drifts into the glare. Lars grabs it, examines it and releases it. "It is a night bird", he says, "much too small to make soup for nine men".

**1971** (Marion Island) *Antarktiese Bulletin* 2 (5-6) April/Sept: 51.

A braaivleis was held on Gamtoos point one evening. A friendly fire was started, but unfortunately this attracted the inquisitive night birds.

**1984** (Tristan da Cunha) Richardson, M.E. in *Cormorant* 12(2): 190.

Prelaying birds were caught at "nightbird fires".

### nighted *adjective, Tristan da Cunha*

[Specific meaning of nighted overtaken by night, recorded in British English in 1640 and 1756 (NOED).]

Forced to spend a night at sea, or on the mountain.

**1971** Munch, Peter *Crisis in Utopia: the ordeal of Tristan da Cunha* Thomas Y. Crowell, NY: 121.

It had happened more than once that the Tristan longboats have been caught in such a sudden switch in weather and "nighted", that is, forced to spend the night on the water.

### nilas

[Russian nilas, Greenland nilak freshwater ice (Fortescue 1991). Both the word and the ice it describes are more a feature of arctic than antarctic conditions, but the term is also used in Antarctica.]

A thin elastic film of ice on the sea surface.

**1987** Bates, Robert L. and Jackson, Julia A., eds *Glossary of geology, 3rd edn* American Geological Institute, Alexandria: 448.

Nilas .. A thin elastic crust of gray-colored ice formed on a calm sea, having a matte surface, and easily bent by waves and thrust into a pattern of interlocking "fingers".

**1995** Stevens, Jane E. in *The Sciences* Jul-Aug: 17.

On one clear, calm blue afternoon large rafts of thin nilas forming in quiet leads merge like fingers meshing into prayer.

### ninety south *Also ninety degrees south*

The south geographic pole.

[**1939** Byrd, Richard E. *Alone* Reader's Union Ltd and Putnam & Co Ltd, London: 5.

Among the handful who have actually attained Latitude 90°, whether North or South, I doubt that even one found the sight of the pole itself particularly inspiring. For there is little enough to see: at one end of the earth a mathematical spot in the centre of a vast and empty ocean, and at the other end an equally imaginary spot in the middle of a vast and windy plateau. It's not getting to the pole that counts, it's what you learn of scientific value on the way. Plus the fact that you get there and back without being killed.]

**1950** Mountevans, Admiral Lord *The desolate Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 154.

The uttermost South, 90°S., the South Pole, is a fixed point, it stays where it is; whereas its fickle cousin, the South Magnetic Pole, like the Aurora moves its position continually.

**1996** Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 108.

On three separate occasions over the past decade a pair of skuas had flown to the Pole in midsummer, stayed a day or two and disappeared. As they were the only living wild creatures ever seen on the polar plateau these birds were a topic of perennial interest at ninety south.

**1998** *Milwaukee Journal Sentinel* 19 Jan: np.

My first visit to this sheet of ice, with the address "90 degrees south," was 21 years ago.

### nipped *adjective*

[Nipped is recorded slightly later than the first quotation here (from 1850, NOED) in arctic use as well.]

1. (Of a ship) squeezed by ice on both sides.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

**1849** Cooper, James Fenimore *The sea lions; or, the lost sealers* Richard Bentley, London: 157.

That vessel ... had been endeavouring to work her way through a passage between two large fields, when she found the ice closing, and that she was in great danger of being "nipped." "You observe our position, Captain Gar'ner; there is every prospect of a most awful nip!"

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 334.

[gloss] Nip.— The situation of a ship when forcibly pressed by ice on both sides. She is then said to be nipped.

**1916** *The Sphere* [London] 1 Apr :5.

The *Aurora* was heavily nipped by the enormous ice pressure, she lost her rudder, and her hull was severely strained.

**1949** Wiggins, Arch R. *Knights of the blizzard* Salvationist Publishing and Supplies, London: 42.

'You think we're likely to get nipped, sir?'

'Exactly. It's rather late in the season.'

**1964** Nieman, W.A. in *Antarktische Bulletin* 2 (Mar): 3.

At times the ship got nipped and we had to dig her out of the ice!

**1980** Woodard, Edwin and Bischoff, Heather Woodard *Stores-houses of the snow* Leisure Books, Norwalk, Connecticut: 201.

I don't believe it will go down. It's a very strong vessel. However, it's now "nipped" and the captain is playing it safe so as to get all the people off in time if it does start to go down.

2. (Of a person) Frostnipped, lightly **frostbitten**.

**1939** Byrd, Richard E. *Alone* Reader's Union Ltd and Putnam & Co Ltd, London: 149.

For the first time the canvas boots failed to protect my feet. One heel was nipped, and I was forced to return to the hut and change to reindeer mukluks.

## noctilucent cloud

[From the Latin *nox* night, + *lucent*, shining.]

A polar cloud visible only at night. It is typically striated and occurs at high latitudes and high altitudes (80–100 km: 50–60 miles), usually during the summer. These clouds are very thin and cannot be seen against a blue daytime sky. When the sun drops to at least 6 degrees below the horizon and the sky darkens, the clouds (still illuminated because of the height they are at) become visible.

**1961** *News from the South* [NZARP, Wellington] 2(4) July/Aug: 2.

Peter Graham saw a phenomenon in the sky which has not been reported in Antarctica before: a Noctilucent cloud, 65 miles high.

**1966** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 4(7) Sept: 322.

Rare 50-mile high luminous night clouds were observed and photographed from Scott Base on the afternoon of July 23. The noctilucent clouds, the highest that occur in the earth's atmosphere, are thought to be composed of ice-covered particles of meteoric dust from space. They are illuminated by the sun, and are best observed at high latitudes when the sun is between six and 16 degrees below the horizon. The clouds are 40 miles above the zone of the earth's weather, and appear as beautiful pearly-white veils, bands or waves, in the zone between the twilight arch and the horizon.

**1997** Warren, Stephen G. and others in *Journal of Geophysical Research* 102: 1991.

Noctilucent clouds (NLCs) occur in the upper mesosphere at high latitudes, mainly in the three months surrounding

summer solstice, and can be observed visually only at night. These constraints put the most favourable viewing location in the latitude zone 50–65°, which in the southern hemisphere is mainly ocean. Noctilucent clouds are therefore rarely observed in the southern hemisphere. At the south pole the sun sets on the March equinox, long after the end of the NLC season.

## Nodwell Also *Noddy*

[From the name of the Robin Nodwell Manufacturing Company.]

A large tracked, motorised, over-snow vehicle made in Canada.

**1961** *Polar Record* 10(69) Sept: 638.

Two models of "Nodwell" 3-axle tracked carriers were used with success during the 1960–61 Antarctic summer.

**1963** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(8) Dec: 327.

He was driven the five miles over sea-ice to Scott Base in a New Zealand Nodwell tracked vehicle.

**18 Jan 1978** *Scott Base movements log*.

Nalder. Destination Willies, method Noddy.

**1995** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] Sept: 14(3) Mar: 26.

Just about every vehicle at Wilkes was mobilized, from one new (and ANARE's first) Nodwell to the full dog team.

**1997** Colhoun, Alexander in *Sun Journal* [Lewiston ME] 21 Dec: 2A.

The massive orange Nodwell vehicle that carries them was built in 1972 and stands 20 feet off the ground. Designed for exploratory work in Arctic oil fields, the Nodwell is well adapted for Antarctica's titanic mounds of snow.

## non-Treaty *adjective*

Belonging to a country which is not a party to the **Antarctic Treaty**.

**1997** Robinson, Kim Stanley *Antarctica* HarperCollins, London: 69.

I've marked the location of all the non-Treaty camps.

## non-winterer

A summer **expeditioner**.

**1971** Brown, Nan *Antarctic housewife* Hutchinson of Australia, Melbourne: 90.

Usually a few days elapsed between the end of the whaling season — midnight 31st March — and the arrival of the transport to pick up the non-winterers.

## northern gentoo penguin

The more northern subspecies *Pygoscelis papua papua* of the **gentoo penguin**, which reaches about 80 cm (2 ft 8 in) in height. It breeds on South Georgia, the Falkland Islands, Prince Edward and Marion Islands, the Crozets, Kerguelen, Macquarie and Heard Islands. Both it and the southern subspecies are usually simply called 'gentoo penguins'.

**1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 99.

[caption] Northern gentoo penguin feeding a half-grown chick. This subspecies breeds on South Georgia and other northern islands close to the Antarctic Convergence.

**1990** Turbott, E.G. (convener) *Checklist of the birds of New Zealand and the Ross dependency, Antarctica, 3rd edn* Random Century New Zealand, Auckland: 68.

Gentoo Penguin. Two subspecies are generally recognised, a large form *papua* breeding mainly on subantarctic islands, and a smaller one *ellsworthi* with a more southerly distribution .. *Pygoscelis papua papua* (Forster) Northern Gentoo Penguin.

### northern giant petrel

[Although the southern giant petrel ranges both further south and slightly further north than the northern giant petrel, the southern giant petrel breeds further south.]

The large, scavenging seabird *Macronectes halli* (fam. Procellariidae) which — like the **southern giant petrel** — is more often simply called a **giant petrel**. It is mainly sooty brown, and breeds on subantarctic islands.

**1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 110.

The northern giant petrel nests almost entirely in the Subantarctic, becoming an Antarctic breeder only on Iles Kerguelen.

**1993** Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 169.

Both the northern and southern giant petrels occur on the sub-Antarctic islands. They look very similar except that the southern species has a green tip to its bill while the northern species has a brown-tipped bill.

### Norwegian mainland

The section of the antarctic continent claimed by Norway in 1939: see 1954 quotation.

[**8 Jan 1930** Davis, J.K. in Crossley, Louise, ed. (1997) *Trial by ice: the Antarctic journals of John King Davis* Bluntisham Books, Bluntisham: 148.

Norwegia has occupied hundred kilometres between Enderby Land and Kemp Land.]

**1935** Christensen, Lars in Jayne, E.M.G., transl. fr Norwegian *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Staughton, London: 202.

During my voyage in the *Thorshavn* in 1932–33 I saw very little of the Norwegian mainland in those regions, as our course did not lie in that direction.

**1954** Gjaever, John, transl. fr Norwegian by Huggard, E.M. *The white desert: the official account of the Norwegian-British-Swedish antarctic expedition* Chatto & Windus, London: 58.

The Norwegian Government, by royal decree of January 14, 1939, passed the following resolution: "That part of the mainland coast in the Antarctic extending from the limits of the Falkland Islands Dependencies in the west (the boundary of Coats Land) to the limits of the Australian Antarctic Territory in the east (45° east long.), with the land lying within this coast and the environing sea, shall be brought under Norwegian sovereignty." The annexed territory received the name of Queen Maud Land. This Norwegian annexation had, as we see, only one definitely named boundary — on the east.

### nototheniid Often as nototheniid fish

[From the Greek νότος south.]

1. Obs. A fish of the suborder Notothenioidei, a **nototheniid**.

**1906** (South Georgia) Lönnberg, Einar in *Vetenskapsakademiens Handlingar* 40(5): 91.

The following Nototheniids *Chaenichthys georgianus*, *Notothenia marmorata* [etc.].

2. Also **notothenia**. A marine fish of the fam. Nototheniidae or more specifically of the genus *Notothenia*, some of which are also known as **(antarctic) cod** or **rock cod**. Some species are fished commercially.

**6 May 1911** (Cape Evans) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic, 1910–1912* Blandford Press, London: 127.

Atkinson is using the fish trap and got 40 notothenia today in the morning and 41 in the evening — at least 3 species but all very much alike, not as much flesh on 2 of them as there is on a whiting. I painted 2 of them — one reddish orange, the other bluish brown. They are full of parasites: protozoa, nematodes, trematodes and a copepod on the g covers. We eat them all the same, but I can't say they are nice.

**5 Nov 1913** (Commonwealth Bay) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 216.

Minute fish, also some mullet-like about 4 ins long. Madigan catches one notothenia.

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* London 121.

A number of the genus named *Notothenia* were so caught, occasionally as many as forty. When fried, they tasted nice: unlike whiting, and were a welcome addition to our table.

**1929** (South Georgia) *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 568.

The food of the albatross consists of fish and cephalopods. The stomachs of a number of young ones examined at Coal Harbour in September, 1925, contained remains of Nototheniid fish up to eighteen inches in length and numerous cephalopod beaks and spermatophores.

**1954** (Heard Island) Ealey, E.H.M. in *The Emu* 54(2) June: 104  
1 lb. of nototheniid fish were taken from the stomach of a Gentoo Penguin.

**1964** Jenkins, Geoffrey *A grue of ice* Fontana Books, London 181.

Helen and I fished in the rock-pools with the seal pup, which joined in hauling up the codlike *Notothenia* fish as if it had been a game.

**1975** Wheeler, Alwynne *Fishes of the world: an illustrated dictionary* Macmillan Publishing Co., NY: 265.

Some 68 per cent of the Antarctic fish fauna is composed of nototheniids.

**1991** *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions newsletter* Sept: 12.

The most important fish species of the Southern Ocean are bottom-living. There are two basic types, the nototheniids or Antarctic cod and the channichthyids or ice fish.

### nototheniiform

A fish of the largely antarctic and subantarctic order Nototheniiformes, which has six families: Artedidraconidae, Bovichtidae, Bathydraconidae (see **dragonfish**), Channichthyidae (see **icefish**), Harpagiferidae (see **plunderfish**) and Nototheniidae (see **nototheniid**).

**1927** Norman, J.R. *Fishes. BANZ Antarctic Research Expedition 1929–31 Reports series B (Zoology and Botany) vol 1 pt 2* Hassell Press, Adelaide: 74.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

*Bathyraco* should be regarded as an oceanic genus but for convenience it has been included in this report with other Nototheniiform fishes.

**1969** Billing, Graham *South. Man and nature in Antarctica: a New Zealand view*, 2nd edn A.H. & A.W. Reed, Wellington: 60.

Fishing is not a profitable pastime in McMurdo Sound unless traps are used. Several species of fish, mainly nototheniiforms, are found however, some of small size and some giants between 40 and 150 pounds.

**1993** (Antarctic Peninsula) Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 51.

Antarctic fish are fitted in many clever ways for life in the Southern Ocean, including breeding adaptations. While an Arctic cod will release over 6 million eggs, the nototheniiforms rarely lay more than a couple of thousand. Though smaller in number, their eggs are big and become larger further south, reaching up to 4.5 millimetres in diameter. The precious, yolk-rich eggs are carefully guarded in well-defended nests.

### notothenioid *Also notothenoid*

Any fish of the suborder Notothenioidei in the **nototheniiform** group. Most occur south of the **antarctic convergence**, and are bottom-dwelling ('benthic') fish with large heads and tapering bodies. These fish manufacture a powerful antifreeze glycoprotein, and lack swim bladders, being neutrally buoyant (see 1979 quotation).

**1979** Eastman, J.T. in *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XIV(5) (Oct): 164.

Notothenioid fishes evolved from a bottom-dwelling perch-like stock at least 40 million years ago ..., and as true bottom fishes, they lack swim bladders, are denser than seawater, and spend considerable time resting on the bottom.

**1985** Kock, Karl-Hermann in Bonner, W.N. and Walton, D.W.H., eds *Key environments: Antarctica* Pergamon Press, Oxford: 181.

Notothenioids are primarily bottom dwelling fish lacking swim bladders. Some of the nototheniids and channichthyids, however, are adapted to temporary or even permanent pelagic life.

**1996** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 14(3) Sept: 87.

Adult notothenoid fish have a well developed mechanosensory system .. which allows them to feed when light levels are too low for visual feeding.

**1997** Mullen, William in *Chicago Tribune* 6 Feb: Tempo 1.

No one even knew how many species made up the notothenioids. Bony and perch-like, they claim virtually every fish niche in the vast Antarctic Ocean to themselves.

### nunatak *Pl. usu nunataks, occas. (from the Scandinavian plurals) nunatakker*

[Nunatak is recorded earlier (from 1877-) in arctic use. It occurs in almost the same form in Danish, Finnish, Norwegian, Swedish and Russ-

ian, and is recorded in Canadian English in recent times (from 1958, DCAnE).]

A rocky outcrop or mountain peak sticking up from an ice-sheet. On the antarctic ice sheet, only isolated peaks and small areas of coastal rock are exposed.

**26 Jan 1898** (nr 63°57'S, 61°47'W) Arctowski, Henryk in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 475.

Two pyramidal mountains project like nunataks, contrasting with the general smooth outline.

**24 Jul 1913** (Glacier Tongue) Griffith Taylor, T. in Hanley, Wayne, ed. (1978) *The Griffith Taylor collection: diaries and letters of a geographer in Antarctica* Geography Department, University of New England, Armidale: 111.

Several rounded domes and ridges projected as Nunatakker; — or Nunakoller as I prefer to term these *smooth* rounded rock outcrops, for *lak* means a peak.

**1930** (South Victoria Land) Byrd, Richard Evelyn in *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 157.

A nunatak is a bit of rock protruding from the snow.

**1957** (Hope Bay) Anderson, W. Ellery *Expedition south* Evans Brothers, London: 45.

The crest of Blade Ridge gave way to ice-cliffs that were broken by a jagged series of nunataks, like black rock teeth with cavities stopped with glacial silver.

**1965** Hedblom, Captain E.E. *Polar manual*, 4th edn US Navy, Bethesda, Maryland: 100.

Exposed rocks or nunataks are usually best approached from the western or lee side where drifting usually bridges any danger.

**1972** (Princess Martha Coast) Neethling, D.C. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* no. 2: 6.

At the surface they present a nunatak-studded ice sheet.

**1991** Venables, Stephen *Island at the edge of the world: a South Georgia odyssey* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 95.

Brian had out the map and was pointing to the spot heights of little rock outcrops known in the trade as nunataks.

### NZARP *NZ. Also NZAP*

[Acronym from 'New Zealand Antarctic (Research) Program']

An **expeditioner** to Antarctica with New Zealand's antarctic program.

**1988** *Antarctic Times: the official newsletter of Scott Base* no. 17 (29 Jan): [5].

It is quite possible that woman NZARPs have gone to the Pole on unofficial trips.

**1995** *Nocte [Scott Base winter times]* Feb: 1.

Welcome friends and family (& fellow NZAPs who enjoyed summer with us down here).

**1996** *Polar Whispers. News of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 6 (Mar): 3.

The NZ Antarctic Society plans to bring together 40 years of NZARPs for a grand reunion.

**OAE** *More or less humorous*

[Acronym from 'old antarctic explorer']

An **expeditioner**, not necessarily or even usually one with any greatly exploratory bent, and not necessarily old.

**1960** *News from the South* [NZARP, Wellington] 3 (29 July): 2.

In Wellington fifty-odd "O.A.E.'s" (Old Antarctic Explorer — one who has spent more than a week-end in the Antarctic, and those in authority) stationed at Scott Base at one time or another celebrated Mid-winter Dinner.

**1966** Baum, Allyn *Antarctica: the worst place in the world* Macmillan Co, NY: 67.

One of the easiest ways of recognising the "OAE" (Old Antarctic Explorer, as they call themselves), aside from his complexion and reserve, is by his talkativeness once the ice is broken.

**1996** *Polar Whispers. News of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 7 (June): 3.

Many vintages of OAEs were present, and I heard some extremely interesting stories.

**oakum boy**

[Oakum was loose fibre picked from old rope (usually tarred and hence dark in colour) and used for caulking. There is only one British usage recorded for oakum boy (NOED 1805), and it refers to the dockyard boy who did such picking. With king penguin chicks, it refers to their dark brown colour.]

A **king penguin** chick, which has a dense woolly dark brown coat.

**1954** (Marion Island) Rand, R.W. in *The Ibis* 96(2): 181.

By mid-November brown chicks ("oakum boys") almost equalled the number of adults.

**1990** Naveen, Ron, Monteath, Colin, de Roy, Tui and Jones, Mark *Wild ice: Antarctic journeys* Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington: 49.

The wails are interrupted by piercing whistles, which emanate from fat, brown, woolly-bear creatures that look like stuffed Christmas dolls, not penguins. These are the so-called "oakum boys" (or girls) — in reality, baby kings just a few months in age, soon to emerge from behind their disguises as bona fide, albeit pale, versions of their elders. The woolly-like feathering protects oakums from the rigors of the harsh South Georgian weather, but seems more perfectly designed to humor us anthropomorphic observers. "Oakum" refers to the brown, stringy caulking material that old sealers and whalers used to waterproof their casks and barrels.

**1993** Chater, Tony *The Falklands* The Penna Press, St Albans: 18.

I am lying on the wet ground at 'Volunteers', damp creeping into my knees and elbows. The 'Oakum boys' come waddling up, chirping and whistling, resembling bearskins at Buckingham Palace, only bigger and brown.

**oasis**

[A.V. Solopov, in his book *Oases in Antarctica* p. 1, describes oases as 'interesting, ice-free areas', an economical definition. He treats all

snow/ice free areas as 'oases'. It is interesting that the Antarctic meaning is so far removed from the notion of a refuge for abundant life — the original (since 1684, NOED) meaning of oasises.]

An ice and snow-free area of land in Antarctica. These areas are coastal or near-coastal, and usually (but see 1985 quotation) the term includes **dry valleys**. They are also more fully called **antarctic oases**.

**1915** (Commonwealth Bay) Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911–1914* William Heinemann, London, vol 1: 64.

The rocky area at Cape Denison, as it was named, was found to be about one mile in length and half a mile in extreme width. Behind it rose the inland ice, ascending in a regular slope and apparently free of crevasses — an outlet for our sledging parties in the event of the sea not firmly freezing over. To right and left of this oasis, as the visitor to Adelle Land must regard the welcome rock, the ice was heavily crevassed.

**1956** Stinear, B.H. *Preliminary report on operations from Mawson Base, Australian National Antarctic Research Expedition, 1954–55* BMR Record 1956/44, Dept National Development, Commonwealth of Australia: 2.

Exposed land occurs in the form of bare mountain peaks, "oases" or areas of exposed land essentially at glacier level and surrounded by glacial ice, eg. Vestfold Hills; sea cliffs; exposed islands and glacial moraines.

**1966** (Bunger Hills) Andriyashev, A.P. and Ushakov, P.V. *Biological reports of the Soviet Antarctic Expedition (1955–1958) vol 1 Studies of Marine Fauna 1 (IX)* Israel Program for Scientific Translations, Jerusalem: 313.

The severity of conditions of existence in the oasis (as well as in the region of Mirnyi and on Haswell Island) is the cause of the singularity and scantiness of the plant cover.

**1981** Land, Barbara *The new explorers: women in Antarctica* Dodd, Mead & Co, New York: 42.

Bare rock. No ice or snow. That is still one of the mysteries on the Antarctic dry valleys. When these hidden clearings were first revealed by airborne cameras in 1949, scientists were puzzled. Why, in this ice-covered land, were there ice-free oases? What happened to the snow?

**1985** Phillipot, H.R. in Bonner, W.N. and Walton, D.W.H., eds *Key environments: Antarctica* Pergamon Press, Oxford: 24.

Although there is much variety in continental features — including exposed mountain chains, 'dry' valleys, and coastal 'oases' — more than 95% of the total area is covered by snow and ice.

**1995** Crossley, Louise *Explore Antarctica* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 85.

While scientists at Mawson explored the inland ice sheet and mountains, those at Davis concentrated on the ice-free oasis and its many lakes at their back doorstep.

**ob** *Historical, US*

Lunch.

**1931** O'Brien, John S. *By dog sled for Byrd: 1600 miles across Antarctic ice* Thomas S. Rockwell, Chicago: 55.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

As soon as breakfast is over we start breaking camp, while Larry prepares the "ob" to carry along for our noon meal. This word "ob" was coined in Little America during the time we were making our camp, and the originator of the term is William "Cyclone" Haines, our official meteorologist. Whenever the snow-shoveling got heavy or the hands got a little bit cold, Bill would cast his eye up at the sky and remark to his assistant, Harrison, that they had better take an "ob", meaning that they would take a balloon observation for wind direction, which necessitated relieving them from hard manual labour. Many times an observation scarcely seemed necessary, but who were we to question these great scientists in their work. Off they would go, and then, after a little while, we might find Bill and Harry in the mess tent taking an "ob" over a hot cup of coffee and a sandwich. The term soon became general and all noon meals were "obs".

**1936** Murphy, C.J.V. in Byrd, Richard E. *Antarctic discovery* Putnam, London: 209.

At noon we had an institution called the "ob," a light lunch consisting as a rule of pea soup (or pea soup) [sic], salami, corned beef, the hash left over from breakfast, sardines every other day, coffee or cocoa, and occasionally a dessert, almost always canned fruit. The odd name stemmed from the suspicion that every time Bill Haines excused himself from snow-shovelling detail with the explanation he had to "take an ob," meaning a meteorological observation, he furtively ducked into the galley for a cup of coffee and a sandwich. This was a grave injustice to the senior meteorologist. Bill never ate sandwiches.

### octa Also *okta*

[From the Greek *οκτα* eight, referring to the number of eighths cover of ice.]

A unit for measuring **pack ice** cover, more commonly an **eighth**.

**1988** Porter, Eliot *Antarctica, 2nd edn* Arch Cape Press, NY: 136.

The unit for measuring the density of pack ice is an octa — that is, an eighth of a square mile. A rating of eight octas would mean that the sea was completely covered with pack, and four octas would mean it was half covered.

**1999** Shaughnessy, Peter D. *The action plan for Australian seals* Environment Australia, Canberra: 67.

Crab-eater seals .. are most abundant in cake and brash ice of 7–8 *oktas* (eighths) cover.

### oic Australas. Also *oik*

[The meaning is standard (being an acronym for 'officer in charge') but its documented use as a single word is Australasian. In 1988 Australian OICs became 'station leaders'.]

The officer in charge of a station.

**1961** Béchervaise, John *The far South* Angus and Robertson, Melbourne: vii.

Béchervaise was appointed O.I.C. of the 1955 Mawson party and his tour of duty marked the development of the station as a major scientific observatory.

**1965** Simpson, Ken, ed. *Wind in the Wallows [yearbook]* ANARE, Macquarie Island: 40.

We'd been there about another week and the Oik, that's the boss guy down there, says he wants reorders. Now how the b... hell am I meant to know what they want next year when I haven't been here long enough to find out how much I want meself.

**1967** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* June: 27.

I get a thirst when the day's work is done,

For then OIC'll come good with some claret and rum.

**1973** (Perseverance Harbour, Campbell Island) *The Islander: the quarterly bulletin of the Campbell-Raoul Island association* 2(8) Dec: 210.

We were met by the OIC and staff.

**1995** Hardie, Garry in Robinson, Shelagh, ed. *Huskies in harness: a love story in Antarctica* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 98.

My OIC in 1980 was Syd Kirkby. Syd was a very strong advocate for the use of the huskies.

### oicery Australas. Also *oikery*

[Oic + -ery, suffix denoting a place where a service may be procured.]

The office or sleeping quarters of an **oic**.

**27 Sept–25 Oct 1959** Béchervaise, John (1963) *Blizzard and fire: a year at Mawson, Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 161.

There is one channel for blue sparks up here in my headquarters (commonly referred to as the "Oicery").

**1966** MacKenzie, D., ed. *Fog 'N Bog [yearbook]* ANARE, Macquarie Island: 42.

[heading] Lost and Found [end head] One scout whistle and manual of "Knotsmanship" finder please return to Oicery. Reward.

**1986** *Sydney Morning Herald* 15 Feb: 9.

[glossary] *Oik*: officer in charge (OIC) of a station, whose office is the Oikery.

**1995** (Mawson station) Greet, Pene and Price, Gina *Frost bytes* Doubleday, Sydney: 87.

After the meeting he went to organise something with Dave F. in the OICery [OIC's office].

### oil Historical

Oil from the blubber of seals, sea lions or penguins. See also **elephant oil**, **penguin oil**.

**15 Jan 1786** (Falkland Islands) Portlock, Captain Nathaniel (1789) *A voyage round the world: but more particularly to the north-west coast of America: performed in 1785, 1786, 1787, and 1788, in the King George and Queen Charlotte*. N. Israel facs, Amsterdam (1968): 34.

Both these vessels were employed in the oil trade, and had nearly completed their cargoes; the United States having 300 tons of oil on board, and the Canton about half that quantity.

**21 Dec 1811** Lambert, Jonathan quoted in Holdgate, Martin (1958) *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 19.

We have made about 1000 gallons of Oil for the purpose of buying a boat if possible.

**29 Feb 1832** (west of Graham Land) Weddell, James in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 333.

Heavy squalls and very heavy sea, which lasted until the 2nd of March, when the wind shifted to W.S.W.; finding the sea clear of ice I determined, if possible, to visit South Shetland, although the season was far advanced. I was in hopes, should no vessels have arrived here, I might still be in time to load the vessels with elephant and oil, as I now expected the March bulls would be coming up.

**1940** Hagen, Yngvar in Christopherson, Erling transl. fr Norwegian by Benham, R.L. *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 191.

The family must have its oil, no matter how many birds it may cost ... The Christmas cooking accounted for a number of the plump one-year-olds ... A man will take eight or ten penguins at once for this purpose; skin and fat are stripped off on the spot ... On Tristan the greater part are taken in

March when 'big and fat penguins' come on land. When I asked how many penguins they used for oil in each family .. Mejlund, who had been with them and had followed this oil production at close quarters, asserted that they took eighty birds. Only the plumpest penguins are used for boiling.

**1987** National Parks and Wildlife Service, Tasmania *Macquarie Island nature reserve: visitor's handbook* NPWS, Hobart: 7.

It was largely due to Mawson's efforts that sealing and oil gathering were stopped and the island made a Wildlife Sanctuary in 1933.

### **oiler** *Historical*

Someone who kills seals, sea lions or penguins to extract oil from their blubber, for commerce.

**21 Dec 1811** Lambert, Jonathan *Blackwood's Edinburgh Magazine* (1818) IV (xxi): 284.

The greatest part of the work of the oilers is to carry the blubber to the coppers.

**13 Jan 1943** Sorensen, J.H. *The work journal of I.H. Sorensen, coastwatcher in the "Cape expedition", Campbell Island, 1942-45* Diary, in possession of NZ Dept of Conservation and Wildlife, Wellington: 155.

Numbers of last year's [sc. rockhopper] chicks are now coming ashore, very fat, and are commencing their moult.

These "fats" of the oilers have no developed crest.

**1992** (Falkland Islands) Strange, Ian J. *A field guide to the wildlife of the Falkland Islands and South Georgia* Harper Collins, London: 37.

Sea Lions were also to be exploited by 'oilers', supplementing the stocks of oil obtainable from the Elephant Seal as the population of the latter declined.

### **oiling party** *Historical*

A group of **oilers**, either ship-based or living ashore on a subantarctic island while harvesting animals for oil.

**1955** Eden, Allan W. *Islands of despair: being an account of a survey expedition to the subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Andrew Melrose, London: 182.

The bad weather at Macquarie Island had decided him to make for Campbell Island, where he landed an oiling party.

**1976** Kerr, I.S. *Campbell Island: a history* A.H. & A.W. Reed Ltd, Wellington: 20.

The *Mary and Sally* (Feen) .. left Sydney on 12 April 1811. After spending a few weeks at the Derwent she sighted Macquarie Island in June or early July but, blown to the east, was unable to beat back. She therefore set course for Campbell Island and there landed an oiling party of six men, the second group to take up temporary residence.

**1987** National Parks and Wildlife Service, Tasmania *Macquarie Island nature reserve: visitor's handbook* NPWS, Hobart: 7.

Burton spent three and a half years on the island working with the oiling parties.

### **oiling station** *Historical*

A shore base for an **oiling party**.

**1955** (Macquarie Island, 1820s) Eden, Allan W. *Islands of despair: being an account of a survey expedition to the subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Andrew Melrose, London: 182.

Bellinghausen [sic] wished to obtain water, and stood off the oiling station overnight.

### **old ice** *Also old pack (ice)*

**Sea ice** older than one year.

**15 Oct 1898** Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898-1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 368.

In these spaces of water are some freed icebergs and a few small pans of old ice.

**28 Feb 1903** Rudmose Brown, R.N., Mossman, RC and Pirie, J.H. Harvey (1906) *The voyage of the "Scotia", being the record of a voyage of exploration in Antarctic Seas by Three of the Staff* William Blackwood and Sons, Edinburgh: 65.

The general outlook to-day was much as usual — i.e., considerable leads of open water, with new ice and some old pack.

**4 Sep 1912** (Commonwealth Bay) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 112.

Sea ice formed 3 ins thick during night in cracks. Old ice now 9 ins.

**1969** *The Polar Times* 69 (Dec): 19.

There is one-year ice and old ice, or ice that is an accumulation of several years of freezing and thawing.

**1987** David Lewis with Mimi Lewis *Icebound in Antarctica* Secker & Warburg, London: 11.

Although pack is frozen salt water, the salt leaches out in the course of a year or so, leaving old pack ice drinkable.

### **one-year ice**

Sea ice of less than two winters' growth, also known as **first-year ice**.

**1907** (McMurdo Sound) Hodgson, T.V. *National Antarctic Expedition 1901-1904. Natural history vol III Zoology and botany (Invertebrata: marine algae, musci)* British Museum, London: 2.

There cannot be the slightest doubt that the whole of the ice, with the exception of the bergs already alluded to, that went out of the Sound in the early part of 1902, was "one-year ice," a fact proved by the condition of the drifts against the shore, and the complete absence of pressure ridges at Pram Point.

**1914** (nr Hut Point) Priestley, Raymond E. (1974 repr.) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* Melbourne University Press: 365.

We then crossed an angle of this old ice from west to east, and descended on to some one-year-old ice between it and Hut Point, making our way over this as far as the pinnacle ice.

**1936** Byrd, Richard E. *Antarctic discovery* Putnam, London: 44.

It was mostly light, loose pack, one-year ice. I looked in vain for the heavy, rafted pressure ice which I had expected to find.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 141.

It was like riding on a bowsprit, high above the ice we were ploughing through, ten-tenths most of the time but, fortunately, only one-year pack. We would have had a harder time in old ice.

### **onitsuka** *Brit, South African. Also onitsuka boots*

[The Japanese sports shoe manufacturing company Onitsuka Co. Ltd, makers of such boots, was founded in 1949 by Kihachiro Onitsuka.]

Insulated synthetic boots. See also **mukluk**.

**1972** (SANAE II) Woods, A.C. and Scorgie, D.W.L. in *Antarkiese Bulletin* 2(7-8) Mar: 62.

In his haste he omitted to don windproofs and Onitsuka boots, essential items for anything but the briefest sojourn outside when the temperature is 40 below.

**1986** Jenkins, Adrian and Summerson, Rupert *Travel report — Sledge Golf. Glacier geophysics Ronne Ice Shelf traverse 17 Dec*

1985–24 Feb 1986 BAS ref 1985–86/K4 British Antarctic Survey, Cambridge: 18.

Onitsukas were excellent and much warmer than Mukluks, at least for standing around in.

**c1995** British Antarctic Survey *Food and clothing in the Antarctic* British Antarctic Survey, Cambridge: [10].

Where it is very cold, special boots (mukluks or onitsukas) with felt insulation, inner socks and nylon outers are essential, especially while working outside.

### open pack Also *open ice, open pack ice*

Broken sea ice which is easily navigable, and is also called **light** or **scattered pack**; it has three-eighths to six-eighths cover. See also **very open pack**.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 498.

The sea-ice, which constitutes the bulk of the pack, is first formed by the freezing of the sea in winter along the shores of the antarctic lands ... Serious danger from ice-pressure in the open pack is comparatively slight.

**9 Dec 1910** (65°8'S, 177°40'W) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912: an account of Scott's last expedition* Blandford Press, London: 73.

As we entered the pack we saw a large berg to the E. and we passed through great loose streams of open broken and water worn ice, much of which seemed to have come off the great bergs which soon surrounded us — but the ice was all so broken and water-washed that it may quite possibly have been sea ice which had been broken up and washed by heavy seas so near the open ocean edge.

**1928** Wordie, J. in Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 385.

[glossary] Open Pack. "The floes for the most part do not touch," so that navigation is possible but slow. Shackleton sometimes termed this "Light Pack." One of the four principal forms of pack ice.

**1957** Armstrong, Terence and Roberts, Brian in *Polar Record* 8(52) Jan: 8.

[glossary] Open pack ice: Composed of floes seldom in contact and with many leads and pools. Ice cover 3/8ths to 6/8ths. Navigation should be comparatively easy for specially constructed vessels and with ice cover 3/8ths to 4/8ths even for ordinary vessels.

**1957** Sullivan, Walter *Quest for a continent* Secker & Warburg, London: 176.

The *Northwind*, with its broad beam, left a wide channel through the ice down which the other vessels streamed, hardly grazing the floes. This was "open" pack, but imperceptibly it began to become "close".

### open water

[Recorded in the northern hemisphere, chiefly in Canadian English (1922–, NOED), later than its antarctic use.]

An area of navigable water which is free or almost free of ice.

**1870** Hamilton, Captain R.V. in *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society* XIV(II): 155.

The difference of temperature between a pack and open water is considerable.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 38.

Frequently we had to stop, completely blocked by the ice, no open water being visible in any direction.

**1922** Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Picador, London: 61.

Gradually we felt our way down a big patch of open water.

**1987** Bates, Robert L. and Jackson, Julia A., eds *Glossary of geology, 3rd edn* American Geological Institute, Alexandria: 462.

Open water [ice]: A relatively large area of freely navigable water in an ice-filled region; specif. water in which the concentration of floating ice is less than 1/8 (1/10).

### orca

[NOED records that the scientific name *Orca* was given by J.E. Gray in 1846 (Richardson & Gray *Zool. voy. Erebus & Terror* I: 33).]

The marine mammal *Orcinus orca*: see **killer whale**.

**5 Jan 1911** Griffith Taylor in Hanley, Wayne, ed. (1978) *The Griffith Taylor collection: diaries and letters of a geographer in Antarctica* Geography Department, University of New England, Armidale: 58.

Many penguins playing porpoise and orca whales.

**1922** Bowers, Birdie in Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Picador, London: 145.

The Killer is scientifically known as the Orca, and, though far smaller than the sperm and other large whales, is a much more dangerous animal.

**1989** May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica, 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 105.

Orcas are voracious pack hunters, feeding on squid, fish, seabirds, sharks, seals and other whales. They are particularly fond of the tongues of the large baleen whales and are so strong that they can toss a fully grown adult sea-lion up into the air.

### outside house *Falkland Islands*

A shepherd's house in **camp** away from the main farm **settlements**; some of these are now permanently inhabited on land subdivided from the larger farms. See also **track house**.

**1994** Simpson, Tim *Cooking the Falkland Island way* Peregrine Publishing, Bangor: 18.

'Outside' house is another name for a Camp house and simply means outside the settlement.

### outside man

The person responsible for outside tasks during a field camping trip. See also **inside man**.

**1939** Rymill, John *Southern lights: the official account of the British Graham Land Expedition 1934–1937* Travel Book Club, London: 139.

I was 'outside man,' so had the pleasant experience of coming in from a cold biting wind to a warm comfortable tent with everything neatly arranged and our afternoon cocoa simmering on the stove.

**1955** (Marguerite Bay base) Walton, E.W. Kevin *Two years in the Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 89.

We had to ensure that before the outside man left the tent he was well sealed up and utterly drift-proof.

**1996** Bertram, Colin in *Polar Record* 32(181): 155.

The 'outside' man would tend the dogs probably by now already curled in sleep, still in their lamp-wick harnesses and on their traces. Then he would shovel snow and ice upon the tent skirts for further security.

### overwinter *adjective*

Present, open or active during the **antarctic winter**.



**1990** Wilson, K.-J. and others in Kerry, K.R. and Hempel, G., eds *Antarctic ecosystems: ecological change and conservation* Springer-Verlag, Berlin: 183.

The base [sc. Cape Hallett] was an overwinter facility until 1964, and continued as a summer-only station (November to February) until it was abandoned on 17 February 1973.

**1992** *Canberra Times* 20 Jul: 15.

Mr Hewitt and his colleagues were able to visit parts of Antarctica that even over winter scientists do not see.

### overwinter verb

[Overwinter in the sense of passing winter in high latitudes, is recorded first in the northern hemisphere (NOED 1895, in an English translation of Nansen's writings).]

To spend winter in Antarctica.

**1910** (source: NOED) *Westm. Gaz.* 10 Sept: 6.

Southern Cross Fjord is .. another place where an ice-vessel might over-winter with a scientific party.

**1989** May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica, 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 117.

Twelve men and women over-wintered [sc. at Commandante Ferraz] in 1986.

**1991** *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions newsletter* Sept: 15.

The author overwintered at Davis.

**1991** *Polar Record* 27(163) Oct: 364.

Bagshawe and Lester's expedition was unusual in being supported logistically by Norwegian whalers whose summer operations were extensive at that time. It was, and indeed remains, the smallest expedition ever to overwinter in Antarctica.

### overwinterer

Someone who stays in the antarctic regions over the winter months; sometimes specifically one who is there at midwinter.

**1971** (South Georgia) Brown, Nan *Antarctic housewife* Hutchinson of Australia, Melbourne: 83.

A rather unexpected effect on those left behind was the forging of a bond of comradeship. There is no doubt that all, unconsciously, derived comfort from the others' presence, and one found oneself instinctively speaking to previous nodding acquaintances and mixing freely with total strangers. All were drawn together by virtue of being 'Over-winters'.

**1984** Heath, Colin *Australians in Antarctica* Methuen Australia Pty Ltd, Sydney: 17.

This physical isolation makes the overwinterers draw together as a group.

**1995** Crossley, Louise *Explore Antarctica* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 83.

A survey of 19 nations with winter expeditions in Antarctica in 1992 showed that only seven of them employed women, and they made up less than 10% of over-winterers. Many more stay for the summer only, especially scientists, who make up over 50% of the women who go to Antarctica each year.

### overwintering adjective

Living in Antarctica over the winter months.

**1967** Gillham, Mary E. *Sub-Antarctic sanctuary: summertime at Macquarie Island* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Wellington: 205.

Inevitably, we were asked what we thought about the inclusion of wives in the overwintering parties, but we always advised against it.

**1971** Young, Pamela *Penguin summer — or, a rare bird in Antarctica* A.H. & A.W. Reed, Wellington: 98.

Though they [sc. the southern rookeries] contain penguins of the same over-wintering group who could be expected to meet the same difficulties, the contact of these birds with humans is practically nil.

**1993** Claassen, P. and Sharp, P.A., eds *Draft comprehensive environmental evaluation of the proposed new SANAE IV facility at Vesleskarvet, Queen Maud Land, Antarctica* Department of Environmental Affairs, Pretoria: xxv.

The base will be able to accommodate 20 over-wintering team members.

**1994** Department of the Environment Sport and Territories *Annual report 1993-94* DEST, Canberra: 61.

In its second overwintering year, the Mawson Coast emperor penguin project found that the bird's winter diet included Antarctic krill.

### overwintering noun

The period of living in Antarctica over the winter months.

**1996** Edith Ronne *From high heels to mukluks* [source: <http://www.deakin.edu.au/NSPT/EdithRonne.html> 23 May].

This was my husband's ninth (and last) journey south over a 38 year span, including four overwinterings of 15 or more months duration.

### ozone hole

A seasonal thinning of the ozone layer in the Earth's stratosphere, first detected in 1985 by British scientists working in Antarctica, which allows increased ultraviolet (UV) radiation to reach the Earth's surface. It is detected most noticeably over the poles in early spring, as a roughly circular area centred over Antarctica (the **antarctic ozone hole**), and a smaller area centred over the Arctic.

Its discovery led to the Montreal Protocol of 1987, which limited the manufacture and use of ozone-depleting substances such as chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs).

**1986** Farmer, C.B. in *US Antarctic Journal* XXI(3) Sept: 16.

The levels of chlorine monoxide should help us to describe potential causes of .. the ozone "hole".

**1987** Farman, Joe in *New Scientist* 116(1586) 12 Nov: 50.

The satellite images of the ozone hole over Antarctica are particularly convincing, and, in colour, quite beautiful.

**1993** Fiennes, Ranulph *Mind over matter: the epic crossing of the Antarctic continent* Sinclair-Stevenson, London: 308.

In 1985 three British scientists (Joe Farman, Brian Gardiner and Jonathan Shanklin) demonstrated that the atmosphere above Antarctica was losing ozone annually and that an ozone hole in the atmosphere was present above the continent during the early spring (September until November) every year.

# P

**pack ice** Also simply **pack**, formerly **packed ice**, and (rarely) pl. **packs**

[NOED records the use of pack for a large area of floating ice in pieces of considerable size in polar seas, from 1791. Though the antarctic quotation below is earlier than any recorded arctic use, it is almost certainly a term whose use in antarctic regions comes from the arctic — Cook (1772, below) clearly says that, on his ship, the term packed ice comes from men with Greenland experience.]

A large area of floating, more or less closely packed sea ice; the ice itself. A belt of pack ice encircles Antarctica, and between this belt and the continent, there is often **open water** in summer as prevailing southeasterly winds blow the pack offshore. It is seasonal, and reaches its greatest extent in late winter. It is also called **ice pack** or **polar pack**.

**18 Dec 1772** (55°16'S) Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, in the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* W. Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970) vol 1: 27.

Dangerous as it is to sail among these floating rocks (if I may be allowed to call them so) in a thick fog; this, however, is preferable to being entangled with immense fields of ice under the same circumstances. The great danger to be apprehended in this latter case, is the getting fast in the ice; a situation which would be exceedingly alarming. I had two men on board that had been in the Greenland trade; the one of them in a ship that lay nine weeks, and the other in one that lay six weeks, fast in this kind of ice; which they called packed ice. What they call field ice is thicker; and the whole field, be it ever so large, consists of one piece.

**3 Jan 1820** (South Sandwich Islands: 59°57'S, 27°32'W) Bellingshausen, Thaddeus in Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. (1945) *The voyage of Captain Bellingshausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819–1821* Hakluyt Society, London, vol 1: 107.

We continued on our course S.40°W., always amidst very thick pack ice, and at 10.0 a.m. we proceeded along the edge of an iceberg about 3 miles square.

**1827** (61°30'S) Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24, 2nd edn* David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 116.

The ice about us was what is called packed, i.e. broken into large masses in contact with each other; and some pieces were so heavy as to make our running against them as dangerous as striking upon a rock.

**23 Jan 1840** (off Adelle Land) Dumont Duville, J.S.C. in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 451.

The man on the look-out sighted fresh ice-islands which were soon seen to be linked together by a continuous pack. This ice barrier, resting on the land to the south, stretched northwards ... I hoped that the pack would not stretch far to the north, and that we could thus soon double it, and by sailing along it keep our course westwards. For a moment I thought that the ice-pack, ending about the 66th parallel, would leave us a free passage towards the west.

**1879** Sharpe, R. Bowdler *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: 111.

The British Museum contains examples [sc. of *Stercorarius antarcticus*] from South Africa (Sir A. Smith), Campbell Island (Lieutenant A. Smith), Antarctic Seas, and the Pack Ice, Antarctic Ocean.

**1901** (Cape Adare) Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 102.

Suddenly, a terrible roar like the sound of artillery made itself audible above the wind, and the echoes rolled up among the rocks of the cliff. Roar after roar succeeded each other in a way that may with perfect truth be termed appalling. It was the pack breaking up!

**1905** Pirie, J.H. Harvey and Rudmose Brown, R.N. in *Scottish Geographical Magazine* 21: 25.

There was an almost complete absence of pack in the vicinity of the islands [sc. Orkneys].

**1911** Hobbs, William Herbert *Characteristics of existing glaciers* The Macmillan Company, NY: 187.

Along the same parallel of latitude [sc. in the Arctic] the widest differences of temperature and precipitation are to be encountered. Within the south polar region, on the contrary, the great continental plateau, centred as it is so nearly over the pole and having its borders for long distances so nearly in correspondence with the Antarctic Circle, the surrounding ocean permits of a relatively free circulation of oceanic waters and of air currents. The result is a greater uniformity and a symmetry in distribution of the principal climatic constants with regard to the south pole as a centre ... For this reason the surface of the sea freezes in considerably lower latitudes, so that the Antarctic continent is encircled by a broad zone of pack ice which offers the most serious bar in the way of those who would explore it.

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* Duckworth, London: 30.

A line of ice now loomed on the surface of the sea, near the horizon, and soon after passing these first bergs we were in the 'pack'.

**1924** Jones, Clarence F. in *Geographical review* 14: 398.

The South Orkneys, South Shetlands, and Graham Land are generally ice-covered and enclosed by packs and are practically useless even as shelter for whalers.

**1933** Deacon, G.E.R. *A general account of the hydrology of the South Atlantic Ocean* Discovery Reports vol. VII, issued by the Discovery Committee, Colonial Office London: 193.

The Antarctic convergence is probably the extreme northerly limit of pack-ice; but pack is rarely found so far north. Ice will stop at the convergence because there is a smaller movement northwards in sub-Antarctic water than there is in Antarctic water, and because of the sudden increase of temperature.

**1949** (Hope Bay) *The Sphere [London]* CXCVI no. 2559 (19 Feb): 270.

News of the seventh and successful attempt to beat the pack-ice came from the Colonial Office last week.

**1955** Walton, E.W. Kevin *Two years in the Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 17.

There is something very exhilarating in steaming through pack-ice if the sun is out and the weather is quiet.

**1984** Cameron, Ian *Exploring Antarctica Royal Geographical Society Exploring Seires* Longmans, London: 13.

In much the same latitude as London in the northern hemisphere, Cook was brought up short by pack ice. This demonstrates the main difference between the northern and southern hemispheres. In the northern hemisphere, ice extends only some 1,500 kilometres from the Pole; in the southern hemisphere it extends for 5,000 kilometres.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 32.

And ahead, a few hundred yards, is the pack itself, the tough icing on God's cake, the franc-tireurs before the massed forces behind. We thrust the floes out of our way, but not too contemptuously. "Remember", says someone quietly, "they're floating lumps of concrete".

**1995** Orsman, Chris *Sport [Wellington]* 14 (Apr): 4.

Who sleeps is soon again on deck; light duties are the order of the Pack as idlers crowd the bows and lean over the lean air coming off the sea.

### pack-ice belt, region or zone

The ring of **pack ice** surrounding Antarctica.

**1956** Stincar, B.H. *Preliminary report on operations from Mawson Base, Australian National Antarctic Research Expedition, 1954-55 BMR Record 1956/44*, Dept National Development, Commonwealth of Australia: 5.

The ship entered the pack ice belt on 1st. February, at approx. Lat. 66°S. and Long. 63° E.

**1981** Scientific Committee on Antarctic Research *Twenty-third report to SCAR on South African Antarctic Research Activities April 1980 - October 1981* SCAR, Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, Pretoria: 18.

Feeding ecology of Snow Petrels (*Pagodroma nivea*) and Antarctic Petrels (*Thalassoica antarctica*) in the pack ice zone.

**1992** Department of the Arts, Sport, the Environment and Territories *Impact of climate change on Antarctica - Australia* AGPS, Canberra: 8.

Three regions can be differentiated. They are the ice free zone, the seasonal packice zone and the zone of permanent ice.

**1995** Scordas, S. in *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* 15(1) Sept: 8.

The leopard seals hauling-out on Macquarie Island forage in the pack-ice region to the south.

### pack-ice edge Also pack edge

The northern or outer boundary of the **pack ice**: see **ice edge**.

**1842** Ross, James C. in *Tasmanian Journal of Natural Science* 1(v): 410.

Accordingly, on leaving Auckland Islands on the 12th of December, we proceeded to the southward, touching for a few days at Campbell Island for magnetic purposes; and, after passing among many icebergs to the southward at 63° latitude, we made the Pack Edge, and entered the Antarctic circle on the 1st day of January, 1841.

**1942** Mackintosh in N.A. *Polar Record* 3(24) Jul: 558.

Not very much is known of the destination of Blue and Fin whales when they migrate northwards in winter but it is believed that, unlike the Humpbacks, they become dispersed over a very large area in Subantarctic and Subtropical waters. In the Antarctic in summer they occupy a more or less clearly defined zone, the limits of which depend on such things as their food, the sea temperature and the pack-ice edge.

### paddy

[Paddy is enigmatic. It was recorded in 1777 (G. Forster Voy round World, NOED) for a bird of rice fields, that is, something definitely unpelear. Whether the name survived unrecorded for a century, and was at some stage transferred to the antarctic birds, is unlikely but probably also unknowable.]

Either of the two landbirds of the genus *Chionis*: see **sheathbill**.

**1879** Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 209.

The birds (the "Paddy" of the sealers) are present everywhere on the coast, and from their extreme tameness and inquisitive habits, are always attracting one's attention.

**1906** (South Orkneys) Eagle Clarke, W. in *The Ibis* 6(XXI) Jan: 182.

*Chionis alba*. This Sheathbill, the "Paddy" of the explorers, was an abundant species, and though chiefly a summer visitor to the islands, yet wintered in small numbers at Scotia Bay, being attracted by the refuse cast out from the ship.

**1949** Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 147.

Other suggestions were immediately proffered to exploit the island. A factory for tinned skuas or "paddy" pie was a popular suggestion.

**1967** *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* 2 (May): 5.

Anything accidentally cremated is food for the "Paddies" (Sheathbills) who are now looking very well and tap at the windows if meals are late.

**1988** *Aust Geographic* 9 (Jan-Mar): 68.

The comical sheathbills, also known as paddies, or more unkindly, "Heard Island chooks", are inquisitive birds.

### paddy unker See pediunker

### pale maiden Falkland Islands

The perennial plant *Olsynium filifolium* (fam. Iridaceae) of the Falkland Islands, which is grown as an ornamental. It has white flowers with a pale purplish-red inside.

**1924** Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history by Rupert Vallentin* Clarendon Press, Oxford: 270.

Soon after *Empetrum rubrum* the beautiful *Sisyrinchium filifolium* — the 'Pale Maiden' of the colonists — opens her sweet-smelling bells to the spring. These delicate white flowers rise some inches above the surrounding herbage and one wonders how they endure rough moor and rougher winds. On the West Falklands it is found in flower early in October; and it continues blooming until December.

**1978** Trchearne, Mary *Falkland heritage: a record of pioneer settlement* Arthur H Stockwell, Ilfracombe: 197.

The children gathered the first pale maidens.

**c1990** Roper, Patrick *Holidays in the Falkland Islands* Falkland Islands Tourist Board, London: 3.

Penguins and cormorants; fur seals and sea lions; grebes and caracaras; Pale Maiden flowers and Vanilla Daisies: wherever you go in the Falklands there is wildlife all around.

### palenkey Falkland Islands

[From the South American Spanish palenque a hitching post for horses. This sense is also retained in the word's use in the Falkland Islands.]

A frame for the hanging and short-term storage of beef or mutton carcasses.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

**1987** Strange, Ian J. *The Falkland Islands and their natural history* David and Charles, Newton Abbot, Devon: 140.

Many a visitor to a farm has puzzled over the gibbet-like structure with its arrangements of blocks and tackle usually to be seen in the vicinity of the shearing shed or outhouses. Known here as a *palenkey* (from the Spanish *palenque* on which the horses would be tethered) it is an important part of each settlement's butchery, where mutton, or especially beef, carcasses are dressed and hung. Many households now have freezers for storing food, but the old and proved method of leaving carcasses of beef hanging outside is still preferred.

**pampa teal** *Falkland Islands* Also **pampa(s) duck**

[From the South American Spanish *pampas* a plain, though I do not know why the duck should be so-called.]

The duck *Anas* (formerly *Querquedula*) *versicolor* (fam. Anatidae) of the Falkland Islands and South America. It has a scalloped breast and brown head and wings, and is also called the **silver teal**.

**1861** Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 161.

*Querquedula versicolor* ... (Pampas Duck.) This bird is not common in East Falkland, occurring in but few places, but where found is generally seen in numbers. I have never been successful in finding a nest of this Duck, though I have had the young birds brought to me, and have no doubt that it breeds in the island.

**1924** Vallentin, Rupert in Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands. With notes on the natural history by Rupert Vallentin* Clarendon Press, Oxford: 321.

*Querquedula versicolor* (Vieill.), 'Pampa duck' ... Once when at Port North Lake I flushed nine of these birds in the rushes. Fortunately I had my shot-gun with me, and within ten minutes I had the lot in my saddle-bags.

**1931** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 40(1) 1 Feb: 12.

The unmentioned wild animal and wild birds shall be added to the list of animals and birds contained in Schedules I and II to the aforesaid Ordinance:- .. Pampa Teal (*Querquedula versicolor*) [etc.].

**1993** Chater, Tony *The Falklands* The Penna Press, St Albans: 88.

There are three races of Pampa Teal of which only the southernmost (*Anas versicolor fretensis*) is found in the Islands.

**pan**

[Pan is recorded from Canadian English much earlier (from 1771 onwards: DCANe), with the same meaning.]

An ice pan.

**18 Feb 1898** Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898-1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 170.

We saw pans of ice of an average diameter of one hundred feet, with a thickness of five feet, whose surfaces were raised here and there, by old wind-rasped hummocks or miniature mountains, from one to two yards high.

**1987** Bates, Robert L. and Jackson, Julia A. eds *Glossary of geology, 3rd edn* American Geological Institute, Alexandria: 479.

Pan ice (a) Shortened form of *pancake ice*. (b) An individual piece of *pancake ice*. (c) *ice pan*. (d) A large fragment of flat, relatively thin ice, having a diameter about 60 m, formed in a bay or fjord or along the shore and subsequently loosened to drift about the sea.

**pan-antarctic** *adjective*

Around or surrounding the **Antarctic**.

**1952** Hagen, Yngvar *Birds of Tristan da Cunha* Det Norske Videnskap Akademi i Oslo/Hos Jacob Dybwad, Oslo: 11.

Macaroni Penguin .. restricted to the American and Indian quadrant of the pan-antarctic regions.

**1988** Porter, Eliot *Antarctica, 2nd edn* Arch Cape Press, NY: 41. For another year the young birds remain in the vicinity of the nesting island, learning to fend for themselves before they take up a life of wandering across the pan-Antarctic ocean.

**pancake ice** *Also simply pancakes; occas. sing. pancake*

[Recorded in arctic contexts from 1817 (NOED), with the same meaning.]

Young **floes** of **sea-ice** which form in gently moving seas, making thin rounded cakes with raised rims, the beginning of winter **pack ice**.

**9 Feb 1841** (nr 77°S) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world: being personal narratives of attempts to reach the North and South Poles* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 169.

Each piece of ice assumed what we called the *pancake ice*, in form and size, having the margin slightly elevated and turned up, the pieces thickly packed together, some streams consisting of larger and more irregular, hexagonal figures, from a foot to three or four feet in diameter, lined as if from several smaller ones having become cemented together.

**1879** Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 249.

Pancake ice is similarly discoloured by Diatoms in the Arctic regions.

**1895** (nr Balleny Islands) Borchgrevink, C. Egeberg *Geographical Journal: journal of the Royal Geographical Society, London* 5: 587.

On December 16 we moored the Antarctic to a large floe of *pancake ice*, which told its tale about the previous long calm.

**1914** (Cape Adare) Priestley, Raymond E. (1974 repr.) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* Melbourne University Press: 85.

As the morning proceeded the swell decreased more and more, until movement was scarcely perceptible; and then, as the coating of ice became more rigid with increased thickness, it was unable to adapt itself even to this small movement, and the sheet broke up into small angular pieces a foot or two broad. As these rubbed gently against each other the corners were removed and the edges were upturned, and before our eyes there had taken place the formation of a field of the *pancake ice* which has from the earliest times been one of the marvels of the Polar seas.

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* Duckworth, London: 106.

If no wind came to disturb them, these little discs — about the size of a dollar — would rapidly increase in size and become 'pancakes', which soon froze together, forming larger ones. As the pancakes grew bigger and lay in contact with each other, crystals would shoot across and knit them firmly, until the whole surface of the water was covered with a mosaic of little floes.

**1956** Ealey, E.H.M. and Chittleborough, R.G. *Plankton, hydrology and marine fouling at Heard Island. ANARE Interim reports no. 15* Antarctic Division, Dept of External Affairs, Melbourne: 50.

The small thermometer used showed the shore water to be at -1.8°C. On this occasion, the mushy ice had begun to form soft pancakes.

**1964** Jenkins, Geoffrey *A grue of ice* Fontana Books, London: 115.

The offshore mass of bergy bits, growlers, sludge and *pancake ice* was witness of how quickly the sea was freezing;

the curious, upturned edges of the pancake ice were already kissing and coalescing into ever-growing acres of thin ice.

**1985** Tranter, David in *Habitat Australia* 13(2) Apr: 36.

The pack-ice forms in the autumn in the form of surface pancakecs.

**1990** Naveen, Ron, Monteath, Colin, de Roy, Tui and Jones, Mark *Wild ice: Antarctic journeys* Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington: 103.

As the autumn days of March become shorter and the air temperature drops, the sea begins to freeze, unobtrusively, almost surreptitiously. Spicules of frazil ice start to grow and float to the surface, giving the sea a greasy appearance. Hesitant at first, the delicate crystalline needles form the foundation for the imminent expansion of Antarctica's frozen limits. Soon the grease ice coagulates, consolidating into platelets that are jostled by the motion of the waves, the edges curling as they rub together to produce pancake ice.

### paraselene Also paraselena

[From the Greek *παρά* beside, and *σελήνη* the moon. Hedblom (1965, below) seems to be confusing a paraselene with a solar phenomenon.]

A bright point on the lunar halo (a **mock moon**), caused by light refracted by ice crystals. Like the **parhelion**, this phenomenon is most often visible in polar regions.

**1900** Cook, Frederick A. *Through the first Antarctic night 1898-1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 363.

The air was so charged with crystals that halos of the sun and moon, and parheliads and paraselenes, were of almost daily occurrence.

**13 May 1911** (Hut Point) Wilson, Edward (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912* Blandford Press, London: between 240 and 241.

[caption to drawing] May 13.11. 8 a.m. Paraselena. Cape Evans. McMurdo Sound.

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 84.

*Parhelia*, or *mock suns*, and the corresponding phenomena with the moon, termed *paraselene*, are quite common.

**1965** Hedblom, Captain E.E. *Polar manual, 4th edn* US Navy, Bethesda, Maryland: 6.

Sun shining through stratus clouds of ice crystals cause [sic] bewildering and beautiful optical phenomena, down-sun "ice-bows", mock suns (sun dogs or parhelia) and double halos around the sun (paraselenes) with bands and circles of colored light.

**1989** May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica, 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 59.

Fogbows are formed by the diffraction of light through supercooled water droplets, while parhelia are created by sunlight passing through ice crystals. These are called paraselenae if the light is the moon.

### parhelic adjective

Characterising or belonging to a **parhelion**.

**1936** Byrd, Richard Evelyn *Antarctic discovery* Putnam, London: 341.

From the sun fell a pillar of cascading platinum, and there was a like splashing of radiance at the foot of the parhelic "dogs" on either side.

### parhelion

[From the Greek *παρά* beside, and *ἥλιος* the sun, recorded in northern hemisphere use from 1647 (NOED).]

A bright solar halo, caused by light refracted by ice crystals, and often including **mock suns** as bright points on the halo. The phenomenon is most easily seen in polar regions.

**1 Apr 1840** Reichelderfer, Commander FW *Proceedings of the American Philosophical Society* 82(5) June: 595.

Parhelia of sun on 11th April 1840. Lat 29.00 S Long 178.40.

**1900** Cook, Frederick A. *Through the first Antarctic night 1898-1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 363.

The air was so charged with crystals that halos of the sun and moon, and parheliads and paraselenes, were of almost daily occurrence.

**1964** (Scott Base) Helm, A.S. and Miller, J.H. *Antarctica: the story of the New Zealand party of the Trans-Antarctic expedition* R.E. Owen, Government Printer, Wellington: 222.

The full spectrum of a mock sun or parhelion presaged this western passage like a precursor; the first parhelion appeared before the sun had visibly risen, and later a second developed at an equal interval to the eastward, for all the world like a dull conflagration in the mauve shadow of the volcano of Mt. Erebus.

**1965** *Antarktische Bulletin* 9 (May): 6.

With the sun low on the horizon, phenomena such as sun pillars and parhelia were frequently to be seen and the cameras clicked.

**1986** (Ronne Ice Shelf) Jenkins, Adrian and Summerson, Rupert *Travel report — Sledge Golf. Glacier geophysics Ronne Ice Shelf traverse 17 Dec 1985-24 Feb 1986*. British Antarctic Survey, Cambridge: 27.

Cleared up late pm with excellent parhelia.

### Patagonian fox Falkland Islands

The fox *Dusicyon griseus* (fam. Canidae), native to southern South America, which was introduced and is now naturalised on several of the Falkland Islands. While the English fox has reddish fur, this fox has silvery-grey fur.

**1977** Chatwin, Bruce *In Patagonia* Summit Books, NY: 82.

She had placed a photo of the Patagonian fox next to a crayon drawing of General Rosas.

**1990** *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation* 10 (Oct): 12.

The smaller, but closely related, Patagonian fox *Dusicyon griseus*, which was introduced to the Falklands in the late 19th century, depresses breeding densities of some native birds on those islands where it occurs. This fox is much wrier than the warrah.

### Patagonian hake

[The Chilean name for the fish is *pescada de Patagonia*.]

The commercially important marine fish *Merluccius hubbsii* (fam. Merlucciidae) of Falkland Islands waters and the southwestern Atlantic. It grows to about 95 cm (3 ft 1 in) long, and is also simply called **hake**.

**1978** *Australian Fisheries* 37 (10) Oct: 15.

About 12 species of fish, some up to 50 kg, are being exploited in the Antarctic seas. These are mainly Antarctic cods which live on the shelves and banks of the Antarctic islands and on parts of the continental shelf. Others include the southern blue whiting and the Patagonian hake (which migrate into the Southern Ocean to feed on krill in the summer).

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

**1988** Moss, Sanford and del Eiris, Lucia *Natural history of the Antarctic Peninsula* Columbia University Press, NY: 80.

Other croppers of krill include small numbers of southern hake .. and Patagonian hake (*Merluccius hubbsi*) that migrate south from Argentinian waters to the Scotia Sea in the summer.

### Patagonian moray cod

The marine fish *Muraenolepis orangiensis* (fam. Muraenolepididae), of Patagonian waters and those of Kerguelen, Heard and Crozet Islands. It grows to about 30 cm (1 ft) long and is not fished commercially.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 314.

*Muraenolepis orangiensis* ... Patagonian moray cod.

### Patagonian penguin *Historical*

[The scientific name *patagonica* was given to the penguin by J.F. Miller (Icones Animalium 1778: pt 4, pl 23), presumably in the belief that the specimen described came from Patagonia.]

The penguin *Aptenodytes patagonicus*: see **king penguin**.

**1777** Forster, George (South Georgia) *A voyage round the world, in his Britannic Majesty's sloop, Resolution, commanded by Capt. James Cook* B. White, London, vol 2: 528.

When we returned on board, we found that they were mentioned by that great zoologist Mr. Pennant, in the *Phil. Trans.* by the name of Patagonian pinguins.

**1840** *The penny cyclopædia* Charles Knight, London, vol XVII: 410.

Sir John Narborough says of the Patagonian Penguins, that their erect attitude and bluish-black backs contrasted with their white bellies might cause them to be taken at a distance for young children with white bibs.

**1879** (Kerguelen Island) Sharpe, R. Bowdler *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London*: 152.

*Aptenodytes longirostris*, Patagonian Penguin.

**1906** (South Georgia) Lönnberg, Einar in *Vetenskapsakademiens Handlingar* 40(5): 50.

A dozen "Patagonian Penguins" (King-penguins) were observed on the shore.

### Patagonian rockcod

The marine fish *Patagonotothen guntheri* (fam. Nototheniidae), which lives around the Falkland Islands and southern South America, and has been fished commercially. It has also been called **yellowfin notothen**.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 376.

*Patagonotothen brevicauda guntheri* ... Patagonian rockcod ... Distributed from the Patagonian shelf south of 49°S and Burdwood Bank to Shag Rocks ... Probably used only for fish-meal.

**1989** Heyward, Peter in *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions newsletter* no 60 (Dec): 5.

A TAC of 12000 tonnes applies to the other commercial species in the area, *Patagonotothen brevicauda guntheri* (Patagonian rock cod).

### Patagonian squid *Falkland Islands*

The squid *Loligo gahi*: see **loligo squid**.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 17.

Three species of squid, the Argentine Shortfin (*Illex argentinus*), the Patagonian (*Loligo gahi*) and a smaller species, *Teuthowenia*, occur in vast numbers in Falkland waters.

**1990** Hatfield, Emma in *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation* 10 (Oct): 2.

The Patagonian squid is taken to market primarily in European countries.

### Patagonian toothfish

The marine fish *Dissostichus eleginoides* (fam. Nototheniidae), which is widely distributed in antarctic and subantarctic waters, including Patagonian waters. Being toothsome as well as toothy, it is commercially fished, and is one of the largest antarctic fish, averaging 30–70 cm (1 ft–2 ft 4 in) in catches, though it can grow to over 2 m (6 ft 7 in) and 100 kg (220 lb). It is also called simply a **toothfish**.

**1979** Lovering, J.F. and Prescott, J.R.V. *Last of lands ... Antarctica* Melbourne University Press, Parkville: 66.

*Dissostichus* [sic] *eleginoides* Patagonian tooth fish.

**1991** *South African Shipping News & Fishing Industry Review* 46(6): 21.

The condition of other stocks is not known, including Patagonian toothfish *Dissostichus eleginoides* on which a longline fishery has developed in recent years.

**1997** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 20 (Mar): 1.

The "Aquatic Pioneer" carried out an eleven day exploratory voyage as a longliner for Patagonian Tooth fish on the sea mounts between Tristan and Gough: they caught a lot of Bluefish but no Tooth fish and, fortunately, no Albatrosses.

**1998** Redell, Tim in *Antarctic Society of Australia newsletter* no 2 (June): 9.

Patagonian toothfish piracy is motivated by greed.

### Peale's dolphin *Also Peale's porpoise*

[The dolphin was described and named in 1848 by American naturalist Titian Ramsay Peale (1799–1885), from a specimen collected by the United States Exploring Expedition in February 1839. Peale was the naturalist on the Peacock, a ship of this expedition.]

The dolphin *Lagenorhynchus australis* (fam. Delphinidae), which occurs in coastal waters of the Falkland Islands and southern South America. It grows to over 2.1 m (6 ft 11 in) and is greyish-black above and whitish below.

**1989** *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation* no. 8 (Jan): 12.

Peale's Dolphins are being caught accidentally in crab nets and also harpooned for crab bait around the Chilean and Argentine coasts and this is definitely threatening some local populations.

**1990** Martin, Anthony R. *Whales and dolphins* Bedford Editions, London: 156.

Peale's dolphins have never been maintained in captivity.

**1993** Chater, Tony *The Falklands* The Penna Press, St Albans: 132.

A pod of Peale's Porpoise came to play in the bay.

### pediunker *Esp. Tristan da Cunha. Also paddy unker*

A seabird, especially *Procellaria cinerea*: see **grey petrel**.

**1906** (Gough Island) Eagle Clarke, W. in *The Ibis* V: 262. *Oestrelata mollis* (Gould). A great number of "Black-backed Petrels" ... were observed off the island ... This species was not represented among the birds collected at Gough Island by Mr. Comer and is not included in Verrill's list; but I think that it is probably the unknown species there alluded to under the name of "Paddy unker," a "dark bird with white breast and white feet," of which there is one egg, measuring 2.37 x 1.64 inches, in Mr. Comer's collection.

**2 Mar 1913** (47°20'S, 34°26'W) Murphy, Robert Cushman (1948) *Logbook for Grace Robert Hale Ltd*, London: 245.

Many of the gray petrels that the whalemen call "pediunkers" darted in Indian file above the cabin roof.

**1926** Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 211.

The Great Shearwater (*Puffinus gravis*), locally known as the Pediunker.

**1957** Booy, D.M. *Rock of exile: a narrative of Tristan da Cunha* J.M. Dent & Sons, London: 80.

Another bird of the petrel family called a 'pediunker'.

**1993** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 13 (Sept): 9.

We found the nests of the Great-winged Petrel (Black Haglet) and the Grey Petrel (or Pediunker). These nests were on steep slopes just below the Base, and for years I regretted not making the extra effort to climb that little bit higher onto the Base.

**peeoo** *Esp. Tristan da Cunha, and (from there) also used on Marion Island. Also pee-arr, piew, pio, piu*

[From the call of the bird. Early quotations suggest that it is a sealer's name.]

The albatross *Phoebastria fusca* (see **sooty albatross**), which breeds on Tristan da Cunha and elsewhere.

**1875** (Kerguelen Island) Kidder, J.H. *Contributions to the natural history of Kerguelen Island, made in connection with the American Transit-of-Venus expedition, 1874-75. 1. Ornithology* Government Printing Office, Washington: 21.

*Phoebastria fuliginosa* .. Sooty Albatross. — "Pee-arr" of sealers ... Head mouse-coloured, paler on the top and back than elsewhere ... Two specimens of the sooty albatross were brought into the camp on October 16, having been captured at the entrance of a shallow cave in the face of a rock. Their scream is very loud, and not unlike one of the calls of a cat. At a distance, it has often been mistaken for the hail of a man. The name "pee-arr" has been given as descriptive of this call, which is, I believe, peculiar to the breeding season.

**1879** (Marion Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 180.

High up, at about 5000 feet elevation, were some four or five Sooty Albatrosses (*Diomedea fuliginosa*, the Piew or Pio of sealers), soaring about the tops of the cliffs and probably nesting there.

**1940** Hagen, Yngvar in Christopherson, Erling, transl. fr Norwegian by Benham, R.L. *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 52.

During the four months we were on the island, the molly became our special friend. Its nest is like a throne, a low column with a depression in the top, just like the pio's.

**20 June 1945** Hurford, G. and Joubert, J. *Ostrich* XVII(2) June: 124.

"Pius" are also found in quite abundance on Tristan but albatrosses are only to be found in a small colony on Inaccessible.

**1952** Crawford, Allan B. in *The Emu* 252(2) May: 80. Sooty Albatross (Piew, Pio<sup>1</sup>, etc.), *Phoebastria* sp. 1 skin of young bird ready to fly. Colour, grey; under parts light grey; facial feathers dark grey.

<sup>1</sup>The vernacular names in parentheses are those used by sealers and islanders from Tristan da Cunha who were in our party

**1967** Pondus-Bogernø, Lohse, transl. fr Danish by Falk-Rønne. *Arne Back to Tristan Allen & Unwin, London: 74.*

"There is one bird we never touch", says Neville, "and that is the "pee-you" (the sooty brown albatross). The missionaries have often told us that stories about albatrosses being dead sailor's souls are rubbish. But we don't like killing them."

**1990** Marchant, S. and Higgins, P.J., co-ordinators *Handbook of Australian, New Zealand and Antarctic birds* Oxford University Press, Melbourne, vol 1A: 343.

Sound of call reflected in common names Piew, Pee-arr, Pio. Members of a pair often duet with alternate or overlapping calls.

**1993** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 13 (Sept): 9.

The two species of albatross nesting up there ... are the yellow-nosed albatross or "Molly" and the Sooty Albatross or "Peeoo".

## pem

Abbreviation of **pemmican**.

**5 Nov 1908** Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka. Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 18.

Pem and cocoa as usual for dinner.

**1995** Maggs, Tom in Robinson, Shelagh *Huskies in harness: a love story in Antarctica* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 91.

We had sufficient pemmican on the sledges for the trip, and we knew that there was more pem at the Fold Island depot.

## pemmican

[*Algonquin, from the Cree pimii fat, grease, + -kan prepared, is recorded in Canadian English from 1743 (DCanE.); the commodity was important in the arctic hunting which supplied the fur trade.*]

Concentrated, dried beef or other meat mixed with a high proportion of fat, made into dark brown cakes or canned, for use at a base or on sledging trips. Pemmican was made for both men (**man pemmican**) and dogs (**dog pemmican**).

**21 Mar 1898** Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898-1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 233.

Our supper consists of fish, cheese, and an occasional conglomerate mixture of macaroni, nuffles, pemmican, and tinned meats.

**1909** Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907-1909* William Heinemann, London: 159.

One of the main items of our food supply was pemmican, which consisted of the finest beef powdered with 60 per cent. of fat added. This is one of the staple foods in polar work, and the fat has properties specially tending to promote heat. Our pemmican for use on the long sledge journeys was obtained from Messrs. Beauvais, of Copenhagen, and was similar to the pemmican we had on the *Discovery* expedition.

**1931** O'Brien, John S. *By dog sled for Byrd: 1600 miles across Antarctic ice* Thomas S. Rockwell, Chicago: 34.

And the heavy, filling pemmican. This latter is a mixture of meat and fats, squeezed dry and cut into cakes about four inches square and an inch thick. Two more biscuits are served with this.

**1946** *Polar Record* 4(32) Jul: 421.

There seems to be no standard U.S. Army dog ration available. Made up pemmicans are mentioned, but most of the information is about compounded, and often cooked, mixtures of meat, fats and carbohydrates.

**1958** Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 133.

We had only one tin of pemmican — a seven-pound can brought back by John from South Georgia. Although it was nearly five years old, it seemed good, and we had nearly finished it before somebody's critical eye discovered that white objects in the soup were beetle maggots out of the pemmican. However, they did not spoil the flavour.

**1969** Keneally, Thomas *The survivor* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 176.

He was devoutly Catholic without making too much ado about eating pemmican on Fridays or missing Mass.

**1991** Hooper, Meredith *A for Antarctica: facts and stories from the frozen South* Pan Books, London: 97.

Pemmican is a mixture of dried beef, ground to a powder, and beef fat. It was brought to Antarctica in tins and carried on sledging expeditions in frozen lumps.

## penguin

[The earliest known use of the English word 'penguin' was in 1578 by Richard Hakluyt, from Thomas Butts who referred to "the Island of Penguin" from a voyage to Newfoundland waters in 1536 (Gaskell, Jeremy M. in Archives of Natural History 26: 101–112). In 1758 Linnaeus gave the scientific name *Pinguinus impennis* to the now extinct great auk, a flightless northern hemisphere bird.

Gaskell's article is of great interest to anyone concerned with the derivation of penguin; he points out that 'it is probable that opinion on the origin of the name Penguin will always be divided on the lines stated by Van Noordt nearly four centuries ago' — that is, either from their fatness, or their white heads. John Sparks and Tony Soper (Penguins, 1968, 152 ff) also have an excellent discussion of the name. Despite the firm assertion of my Welsh teacher in Canberra in 1977, I agree with authors such as Sparks and Soper, and Petersen (1979, below), in finding no convincing evidence for a Welsh origin, though *pen gwynne* does translate fr Welsh as 'head white'.

Any bird of the fam. Spheniscidae. These are the icon of Antarctica. Penguins live only in the southern hemisphere, from Antarctica to the equatorial tropics of the Galapagos. There are about 17 species — in colder waters the lack of diversity is made up for by the staggering abundance of these birds. As Ann Elk would say, all penguins are dark on the upper side and pale to white beneath, and they are well adapted for marine life. All penguins are flightless, with short flipper-like forewings, and spend their time mainly at sea where they feed on fish and krill, coming onto land or ice for extended periods to breed and moult.

See also **adelie, antarctic, black-footed, chinstrap, emperor, erect-crested, Forster's, gentoo, jack-ass, Johnny, king, macaroni, magellanic, Patagonian, ringed, rockhopper, Sclater's, and yellow-eyed penguin.**

**[26 Feb 1537]** Urdaneta, Andres de in Markham, Sir Clements, ed. (1911) *Early Spanish voyages to the Strait of Magellan* Hakluyt Society, London: 48.

We found so many ducks without wings that we could not break through them.]

**c1588** Petty, Francis *The admirable and prosperous voyage of the worshipful Master Thomas Candish, of Trimley in the county of Suffolk, Esquire, into the South Sea, and from thence round about the circumference of the whole earth, begun in the year of Our Lord 1586 and finished 1588* quoted in David, Richard (1981) *Hakluyt's voyages* Chatto and Windus, London: 541.

The 28th of December we departed out of the Port of Desire, and went to an island which lieth 3 leagues to the southward of it; where we trimmed our saved penguins with salt for victual all that and the next day.

**1669** Wood in Dampier, William (1729) *A collection of voyages in Four Volumes* James and John Knapton, London, vol 4: 85.

As soon as we landed, we set a Tar-Barrel on Fire, to give our Men Notice on Board that it was the Island we looked for; and all we had to know it by, were the *Penguins* we saw there, being so very numerous that it was impossible to count them. We knock'd them down with sticks, found them to be about the Bigness of a Goose ... At our Return to *Port Desire*, we gathered about 100000 of the Eggs, some whereof we kept in our ship four Months very good. Their Flesh also is well tasted, and will keep in Salt very good for four Months.

**27 Jan 1690** (Falkland Islands) Log of Captain John Strong, quoted in Boyson, V.E. (1924) *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history* by Rupert Vallentin Clarendon Press, Oxford: 31.

They brought on board abundance of Pengwins and other fowl.

**27 Jan 1700** (50°45'S, 44°5'W) Halley, Edmund in Dalrymple, Alexander (1775) *A collection of voyages chiefly in the Southern Atlantick Ocean* Printed for the author, London: 31.

To-day several fowls, which I take to be Penguins, have passed by the Ship side, being of two sorts; the one black head and back, with white neck and breast; the other larger, and of the colour and size of a young Cygnet, having a bill very remarkably hooking downwards, and crying like a Bittern as they past us. The Bill of the other was very like that of a Crow. Both swam very deep, and always dived on our approach, either not having Wings, or else not commonly using them.

**1712** (narrative of Francis Drake, 24 Aug 1578, Straits of Magellan) Rogers, Woodes *A cruising voyage round the world: First to the South-Seas [etc.]* A. Bell, London: 112.

The 24th he came to an island in the Straits, where there were so many Fowls call'd *Penguins*, that his Men kill'd 3000 in a day, which serv'd them for Provisions.

**27 Dec 1772** (South Georgia) Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world, Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, In the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* W. Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970), vol 1: 31.

Mr. Forster shot a penguin and some petrels. These penguins differ not from those seen in other parts of the world, except in some minute particulars distinguishable only by naturalists.

**24 Jan 1786** (nr Falkland Islands) Portlock, Captain Nathaniel (1789) *A voyage round the world: but more particularly to the north-west coast of America: performed in 1785, 1786, 1787, and 1788, in the King George and Queen Charlotte*. N. Israel facs, Amsterdam (1968): 44.

We saw numbers of whales, and variety of birds, such as penguins, silver-coloured birds, and small divers.

**27 Jan 1821** (South Shetland Islands) Bellingshausen, Thaddeus in Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. (1945) *The voyage of Captain Bellingshausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819–1821* Hakluyt Society, London, vol 1: 429.

The penguins which were brought back by the boat were of three species, and among them were some young birds. Throughout our two years' voyage in the ice of the Southern seas where penguins are very numerous, we saw only three species of them, and probably there are no other kinds, for otherwise we should have found them in the neighbourhood of South Georgia, the South Sandwich Islands, Macquarie Island, or on the ice floes, where they are always to be seen in great numbers.



**12 Jan 1840** (Macquarie Island) Journal of Mr Eld in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 367.

Although I had heard so often of the great quantity of birds on the uninhabited islands, I was not prepared to see them in such myriads as here. The whole sides of the rugged hills were literally covered with them. ... Such a din of squeaking, squalling, and gabbling [sic] I never before heard, or dreamed could be made ... It was impossible to hear one's self speak. ... These penguins are the *Eudyptes chrysocome*.

**25 Jun 1840** (Kerguelen Island) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 81.

Reached the boat at 5.15 p.m., had a penguin and pea-soup supper, and turned in at eight p.m.

**1875** Eaton, Rev. A.E. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London* XXIII no. 156: 355.

Penguins and some of the other birds are infested with Ticks.

**1879** Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 129.

The name Penguin is another instance in point. The word was not coined, as often supposed, by the early Dutch navigators, from the Latin word "pinguis," but is, as has been shown by M. Roulin, and others, a Breton or Welsh word, "pen gwenn," "white head," the name originally given to European sea birds with white heads, probably to the Puffin (*Mormon fratercula*). The name Pingouin is applied in modern French to the Great and Little Auk. In early voyages the name is applied to various exotic sea birds. In early Dutch travels the true meaning of the word is given, and it is stated to be English.

**1902** Hutton, Captain F.W. in *The Emu* II(1) Jul: 1.

The name Penguin was originally given by Spanish sailors to the short-winged northern Auks and Divers from the quantity of fat found on them (*pinguigo*); and on the discovery of the Southern Ocean the same name was employed for the somewhat similar birds found there. Subsequently the name was dropped for the northern birds and retained for the southern ones only.

**1914** Levick, Dr G. Murray *Antarctic penguins: a study of their social habits* William Heinemann, London: 54.

Here were many frozen carcasses of penguins which we had thrown there after the breasts had been removed for food during the past winter.

**1928** Hayes, J. *Gordon Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 93.

The Scottish National Antarctic Expedition endeavoured to "test the effect of music on penguins," but were hardly able to do so, as the only instrument they had was the bagpipes.

**1966** MacKenzie, D., ed. *Fog 'N Bog: yearbook of Macquarie Island ANARE overwinterers ANARE*, Macquarie Island: 23.

The next likely hazard is a flock of witless penguins who will not get out of the way. The pea-sized brain of a penguin does not seem to comprehend the approaching menace and these stupid creatures will actually move over towards the galloping dogs.

**1979** Peterson, Roger Tory *Penguins* Houghton Mifflin Co., Boston: 17.

The origin of the name "penguin", and just how it came to be transferred from the great auk to the *spheniscidae*, is obscure. I can find no hard evidence to support the statement that it was first used by the Spanish and Portuguese sailors who knew the great auk as *pinguin* because of its fatness (*pingulgo*). A similar derivation from the Latin would be *penguis*. Nor is it convincing that Breton and Welsh fishermen were the first to coin the name from two old Welsh words, *pen* (white) and *gwyn* (head). Actually, the great auk had a black

head, although there was a conspicuous white patch before the eye. It also has been postulated that the name, which was widely used among fishermen, simply came from the English, "pin-wing".

**1992** *The Age [Melbourne]* 25 Aug: 5.

Many people also think that penguins live with the polar bears, whereas they are exclusive to the Southern Hemisphere. Polar bears and penguins live 12,000 miles apart.

**1997** Gurney, Alan *Below the convergence: voyages toward Antarctica 1699-1839* W.W. Norton & Co, NY/London: 56.

Sometimes an animal, by reason of its perfect fitness in a harsh and hostile environment, becomes identified in the popular mind as representing that environment — becomes in effect its heraldic beast. As the polar bear is for the Arctic, [so] the penguin for the Antarctic.

**2000** Beintema, Albert in <http://home.wxs.nl/~beintema/shack.htm> accessed 23 Feb.

Penguins are no clowns, no funny waiters, no beautiful black-and-white puppets. They are a bunch of aggressive, narrow-minded, filthy, stinking, pathetic creatures beating the hell out of each other.

### penguin breast, meat or steak

The dark red breast-meat of the penguin, used as food until at least the 1970s.

**21 Mar 1898** Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898-1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 233.

We have begun to eat penguin meat. The doubtful recommendation which it has received from other explorers has caused us to shun it; but now, for variety, we would gladly take to anything.

**1909** (Cape Royds) Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907-1909* William Heinemann, London: 115.

It was a sight to see us in the dim light that penetrated through the door of the fodder hut as we sat in a row on cases, each armed with a spoon manufactured out of tin and wood by the ever-inventive Day, awaiting with eagerness our bowl of steaming hoosh or rich dark-coloured penguin breast, followed by biscuit, butter and jam.

**22 Dec 1910** Gran, Trygve in McGhie, Ellen-Johanne, transl. fr Norwegian, and Hattersley-Smith, Geoffrey, ed. (1984) *The Norwegian with Scott: Trygve Gran's Antarctic diary 1910-1913* National Maritime Museum, UK: 37.

I tasted penguin steak the other day and found the meat excellent, almost like ptarmigan.

**1914** (Cape Adare) Priestley, Raymond E. (1974 repr.) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* Melbourne University Press: 73.

After this wash followed breakfast, which, as I have said, usually consisted of a plate of porridge, followed by seal or penguin steak, and a better breakfast it would be hard to obtain. Appetites in the Antarctic are seldom, or never, small, and penguin breast cooked as Dickason or Browning could cook it was a delicacy worth travelling some way to taste.

**1915** (Commonwealth Bay) Davis, J.K. in Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911-1914* William Heinemann, London: 43.

They had helped to secure enough seal and penguin-meat to keep the Relief Party and their dogs for another year.

**1949** Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 115.

We were on tinned food. It was supplemented by penguin meat and Kerguelen cabbage when available. The former was black meat. We ate the breasts of the penguins grilled or fried in butter. It was just like steak. We did not bother with the rest of the birds, only the breasts.

**1959** Cutland, Gerald T. in *Polar Record* 9(63) Sept: 568.

Penguin. General. Only the breast of the bird is used.

*Roast penguin* Penguin breasts Reconstituted onions Butter Flour Beef suet "Bisto", salt, pepper. Season well with salt and pepper and dip each piece in melted butter. Roll in flour and part-fry in beef suet. When each side is fairly crisp place it in a baking dish with the fat from the frying pan; sprinkle with some reconstituted onions and cook in a moderate oven. Gravy is made by stirring a teaspoon of flour into the hot cooking fat and cooking until brown, and adding "Bisto" with sufficient water or stock to make a thick gravy.

**1995** Maggs, Tom in Robinson, Shelagh *Huskies in harness: a love story in Antarctica* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 92.

We fried the penguin steaks with cayenne pepper and some reconstituted 1958 dried onions which we had discovered in cans buried in a snow drift near the hut. Then we said a grace for the birds and tucked in: it was delicious.

## penguin colony

### A penguin rookery.

**1948** (Snares Islands) Richdale, L.E. *Wild life on an island outpost: expedition to The Snares Islands 1947-48* Otago Daily Times and Witness Newspapers, Dunedin: 107.

There are several creeks, but owing to the decaying vegetation and the draining of penguin colonies and petrel burrows, the water in them is putrid.

**1967** Pondus-Bøgerne, Lohse, transl. fr Danish by Falk-Rønne, Arne *Back to Tristan* Allen & Unwin, London: 66.

The penguin colony used to be a little south of Sandy Point, but the visiting geologists mentioned tragedy in their report. Thousands of "rockhopper" penguins used to stay here during their "land months". But when, with great difficulty, two geologists reached the cliffs above the place, they found only rotting penguin remains and skeletons scattered over the whole area. There was no doubt that the dogs had climbed down to the spot and killed the birds. Penguins are peculiarly static. You can kill and kill again, yet those sitting a few yards away will not try to escape.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 93.

Scattered over the rocks are the separate penguin colonies, each with a couple of hundred adults. Scattered around on the snow are the disconsolate single birds, observing domestic life from a distance, with the detached interest but not, I think, with the cynicism of the bachelors of my acquaintance.

## penguin crew

A gang of men engaged in getting **penguin oil**.

**1978** Trehearne, Mary *Falkland heritage: a record of pioneer settlement* Arthur H Stockwell, Ilfracombe: 49.

His old friend, John Switzer, was on board, and a 'penguin crew' who spent the next two months extracting and shipping quantities of penguin oil from the rookeries around the island.

## penguin egg

The egg of a **penguin**. The eggs of all species are edible when fresh, though the reddish appearance of their yolks can be offputting (see 1968 quotation). They have been widely harvested.

**1833** (Falkland Islands) Fanning, Edmund *Voyages round the world: with selected sketches of voyages to the South Seas ... between the years 1792 and 1832* Collins & Hannay, New York: 96.

A goodly number of geese and other refreshments, among which were fifty-six barrels of the favorite penguin eggs, together with plenty of water, were accordingly snugly stowed on board.

**1857** (Falkland Islands) Snow, W Parker *A two years' cruise off Tierra del Fuego, the Falkland Islands, Patagonia, and in the River Plate: a narrative of life in the Southern Seas* Longman, Brown, Green, Longmans and Roberts, London, vol II: 224.

Six mullets cost 1s. 6d.; ... one dozen of penguins' eggs, 1s.

**20 Aug 1908** Letter from T.S. Nightingale, in *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 18(10) 1 Oct: 122.

In reply to your letter .. enquiring whether there is any demand in this country for penguin's eggs as an article of food, I have the honour to inform you that some months ago two small consignments of these eggs were forwarded to this Department for sale in London. As they were a curiosity and much attention was drawn to them in the papers, they were disposed of advantageously. Further and larger consignments were subsequently received here, but it was found impossible to sell them and at the present time there is no demand whatever for them, several hundred cases of eggs being now on the market which cannot be sold at any price at all.

**1926** (Tristan da Cunha) Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely Island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 135.

Penguin eggs are hunted for and used in immense quantities in September and October. 25,200 eggs were said to be used in one year, and 7,400 eggs have been collected in one day by boats at Stony Beach, Trypot, Seal Bay, and Sandy Point rookeries.

**28 Nov 1929** (Heard Island) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 267.

Large number of penguin eggs collected and a fine omelette made by Hurley. This of Macaroni eggs, which were partly advanced state of hatching, may have accounted for omelette not being as good as that of Rockhoppers next tried.

**1955** (Marguerite Bay) Walton, E.W. Kevin *Two years in the Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 33.

By eight o'clock the shout would be "Porridge up", and if there was a late riser, well, his porridge would just get cold. There would always be a second dish, bacon or beans, scrambled penguin eggs or sardines on toast.

**1968** Herbert, Wally *A world of men: exploration in Antarctica* Eyre & Spottiswoode, London: 56.

It is about as difficult to disguise a penguin egg as it is an Englishman, and the older they are the stronger they become. There are certain recipes that are strictly off when it comes to penguin eggs, for the 'white' of a penguin egg when cooked looks like a semitransparent jelly and the yolk, which is a bright orange, can be seen in a green firmament like a setting sun. A couple of fried penguin eggs on a white dinner plate look like two bloodshot eyes.

**1994** Simpson, Tim *Cooking the Falkland Island way* Peregrine Publishing, Bangor: 90.

[recipe] Penguin egg pavlova .. 2 Penguin Egg Whites, 1 cup Sugar, 1 teaspoon Vanilla Essence, 1 dessertspoon Cornflour. Whisk egg whites until stiff [etc.].

## penguinery Also *penguinery, penguinry*

### A penguin rookery.

**1839** [source: NOED] Fitzroy Narr. 'Adventure' I: 388.

The old bird gets on a little eminence, and makes a great noisy .. holding its head up in the air, as if it were haranguing the penguinery.

**3 Jan 1911** (between Cape Crozier and Cape Royds) Griffith Taylor, T. in Hanley, Wayne, ed. (1978) *The Griffith Taylor collection: diaries and letters of a geographer in Antarctica* Geography Department, University of New England, Armidale: 56.

There were two penguineries. A smaller to the east.

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* Duckworth, London: 55.

The Emperors breed, in the winter, at the foot of the Cape Crozier lava cliffs, and the Adellie penguinry was but a mile or two away.

**1979** [source: NOED] *Nature* 11 Jan: 88.

The Adelie and chinstrap penguins feed mainly on krill, but they take different sized prey, either by active selection or by the Adelie feeding further from the rookery (or penguinery).

### **penguin feathers** *Tristan da Cunha*

Feathers from **penguins**, used to stuff mattresses, etc. See also **tossel**.

**1940** Christopherson, Erling in Benham, R.L., transl. fr Norwegian *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 186.

March is a busy month on Tristan. The month opens with a great harvesting of penguins and penguin feathers, and the mountain is cleared of mollic and pio chicks.

**1963** Mackay, Margaret *Angry Island: the story of Tristan da Cunha (1506–1963)* Arthur Barker, London: 212.

A little luxury was the penguin-feather mattresses.

**1995** (1893) Hagan, John in *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 16 (Mar): 7.

It was God's mercy that all the island men were at Sandy Point collecting penguin feathers.

### **penguin grass** *Falkland Islands*

The tall tuft-forming grass *Poa flabellata*: see **tussock grass**.

**1775** [source: NOED] Clayton in *Philosophical Transactions* LXVI: 100.

Near the shore, where-ever there is a sandy soil, a species of grass grows, called Penguin grass.

**1857** (Falkland Islands) Snow, W Parker *A two years' cruise off Tierra del Fuego, the Falkland Islands, Patagonia, and in the River Plate: a narrative of life in the Southern Seas* Longman, Brown, Green, Longmans and Roberts, London, vol 1: 159.

Near the shore no vegetable is to be found except penguin grass, which is a very coarse species, rising to the height of six or seven, and sometimes ten feet, from a large hillock formed by the decayed leaves and adventitious earth. Many acres within the beach are overrun with these clumps, which at a distance have very much the appearance of a coppice of underwood. The roots of this grass, when freed from the outer coats, tasted sweetish, and were reckoned very palatable by some of our marooning parties.

**1924** Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history by Rupert Vallentin* Clarendon Press, Oxford: 277.

Clayton, Penrose, and other English called it Penguin Grass, because in it the penguins made their nests, 'burrowing under ground like rabbits in their holes'.

**1996** (Falkland Islands) Dalton, Anthony in *Geographical Magazine* LXVIII(7) Jul: 27.

Early visitors to the islands named it [sc. tussac grass] 'penguin grass' and individual plants can grow as high as four metres in a dense and virtually impenetrable forest.

### **penguin guano**

An accumulated deposit of **penguin** droppings. This guano is collected for fertilizer where penguins are

plentiful and people scarce — on Tristan da Cunha and in the Falkland Islands.

**1909** (McMurdo Sound) Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907–1909* William Heinemann, London: 84.

We observed a long, low sandy beach, terminating landwards in a steep slope, the whole place for an area of about two square miles yellow and pink with penguin guano. It was a large penguin rookery.

**10 Mar 1914** Letter fr Thomas A. Henry in *Falkland Islands Gazette* 23(6) 1 Jun: 127.

I have the honour to enclose a report on five samples of penguin guano, from Cochon and Kidney Islands.

**1957** (Windmill Island) Sullivan, Walter *Quest for a continent* Secker & Warburg, London: 258.

The water from the many lakes and tarns tasted foul, as though contaminated by penguin guano.

**1976** Wace, N.M. and Holdgate, M.W. *Man and nature in the Tristan da Cunha islands*. IUCN monograph no. 6, Morges, Switzerland: 63.

When penguin guano is collected from Nightingale by the islanders in the summer, some young petrels are generally taken for food.

**1990** (South Sandwich Islands) Adams, Richard, ed. *Antarctica: voices from the silent continent* Montagne Jeunesse Co., UK: 23.

Lying to leeward, the air is filled with the sulphurous fumes of the mountain itself, but blended with the overtones of volcanically-toasted penguin guano and vomit on an industrial scale.

### **penguin** *verbal noun*

Killing **penguins** for extracting oil from them.

**1983** (Falkland Islands) Bertrand, Kitty in *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation* 1 (Oct): 2.

When I first went to Carcass Island in 1924 there was no sealing or "penguining".

### **penguinry** See **penguinery**

### **penguin oil**

Oil obtained by boiling down **penguins**, and used for stove fuel, lamps, and other purposes.

**1879** (Marion Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 179.

The sealers had probably employed their spare time in making penguin oil, and taking perhaps skins, which are made up into rugs and mats at the Cape of Good Hope, often only the yellow streaked part about the neck being used.

**1894** Hamilton, A. in *Transactions and Proceedings of the New Zealand Institute* XXVII Art LXV: 563.

The island has for some years been visited by parties from Port Chalmers and the Bluff, for the purpose of procuring sea-elephant oil and penguin-oil, both of which oils are much used in commerce, particularly in the manufacture of twine and rope.

**1919** Mawson, Sir Douglas *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society of Australasia (SA branch)* XX: 8.

It is interesting to enquire into the seal oil and penguin oil industry as conducted at Macquarie Island, with a view to ascertaining whether the great slaughter is compensated by any comparable financial gain.

**1943** Mawson, Douglas *Macquarie Island: its geography and geology. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911–14. Scientific reports series A vol V* Government Printer, Sydney: 15.

For many years prior to our occupation in 1911, Mr Joseph Hatch of Invercargill, New Zealand, operating a blubber-oil

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

business had despatched a party annually to Macquarie Island for the collection of Sea-elephant and Penguin oil.

**1963** Mackay, Margaret *Angry Island: the story of Tristan da Cunha (1506–1963)* Arthur Barker, London: 183.

There were only the feeble penguin-oil lamps.

**1971** Munch, Peter *Crisis in Utopia: the ordeal of Tristan da Cunha* Thomas Y. Crowell, NY: 127.

As paint was short, the inside of the canvas was given a coat of homemade penguin oil.

**1993** (Macquarie Island) *Geo [Aust]* 15(1) Feb-Apr: 50.

A penguin oil industry ... operated from the 1890s until 1919, harvesting both king and royal penguins and boiling them down for oil.

### penguin oiling *Hist.*

Killing penguins for the production of **penguin oil**. See **oiling party**.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 18.

It is obvious that penguin numbers were continually reduced until penguin-oiling ceased.

### penguinologist *Humorous*

A student of **penguins**.

**1995** *Des Moines Sunday Register* 22 Oct: [n.p.].

A tiny light against the line of mountains was the Palmer Station, the American research station where the Livonia was headed. The folks at Palmer, being serious-minded penguinologists, make it difficult for tourists to visit.

**2000** Beintema, Albert in <http://home.wxs.nl/~beintema/shack.htm> accessed 23 Feb.

The American penguinologist Wayne Trivelpiece (whose wife stole Drupje) started a long term penguin project in Admiralty Bay in 1976.

### penguin rookery

A site on land or ice where **penguins** gather, to breed or moult. Also, less often (and more scientifically) called a **penguin colony**, or occas. a **penguinery**.

**12 Sept 1824** (Tristan da Cunha) Earle, Augustus (1832) *A narrative of a nine months' residence in New Zealand, in 1827; together with a journal of a residence in Tristan d'Acunha, an island situated between South America and the Cape of Good Hope* Longman, Rees, Orme, Brown, Green, & Longman, London: 357.

This day we visited what they call a penguin "rookery". The spot of ground occupied by our settlers is bounded on each end by high bluffs, which extend far into the sea, leaving a space in front, where all their hogs run nearly wild, as they are prevented going beyond these limits by those natural barriers; and the creatures who, at set periods, come up from the sea remain in undisturbed possession of the beaches beyond our immediate vicinity.

**6 Jan 1843** (Louis Philippe Land) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 338.

Fine day, at ten a.m., when about two miles from the Pyramidal Island at the entrance to the strait, both captains landed at the penguin rookery.

**1861** (Falkland Islands) Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 150.

*Milvago australis* (Gmel.). (Johnny Rook.) This is one of the commonest birds in East Falkland. One or two of their nests are sure to be found near a Penguin-rookery.

**22 Nov 1901** (Macquarie Island) Wilson, Edward in Roberts, Brian, ed. (1967) *Edward Wilson's birds of the Antarctic* New Orchard Editions, Poole [Dorset]: 150.

Then we wandered off to inspect the penguin rookeries, and indeed they are the most strange sight I have ever seen. They were there in thousands and they lived on flats of rough loose stones, over which trickled water which had come down the valley, but all was stinking mud and in this wet filth the King Penguins were living and breeding.

**20 Jun 1945** Hurford, G. and Joubert, J. in *The Ostrich* (1946) XVII(2) June: 124.

Petrels, Manx Shearwaters on Nightingale take up every square yard of ground except under the penguin rookery and even there there are a few.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 34.

There is the station helicopter ferrying construction materials down to the airstrip the French are building across the penguin rookeries, against many furious environmental protests.

### penguinry *See* penguinery

### penguin skin

The skin of the **penguin**, occasionally used as fuel.

**1 May 1840** (Possession Island, Crozets) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Antarctic and the Arctic Seas* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle, and Rivington, London, vol 1: 46.

Their [sc. the sailors'] manly-looking leader .. was an ideal "Robinson Crusoe" in costume, with his penguin-skin moccasins.

**18 Feb 1860** (Heard Island) *Hobart Town Advertiser* quoted in *Walkabout. Australian Geographical Magazine* (1951) 17(9) Sept: 48.

Our fireplace was tussocks of ground and our fuel consisted of elephant blubber and penguin skins, for we could get no other.

**1916** (Patience Camp) Hurley, Frank (1979 repr.) *Shackleton's argonauts: the epic tale of Shackleton's voyage to Antarctica in 1915* McGraw-Hill Book Co: 116.

Our meals were now cooked on a portable bogie stove which I improvised from two oil-drums and sundry scraps of metal. This small range would consume anything combustible, but roared away like a miniature furnace when fed with seal-blubber or penguin skins.

### penguin tussock *Macquarie Island*

The tussock-forming grass *Poa cookii* (fam. Poaceae), which grows to about 50 cm (1 ft 8 in) in height. It is found on Heard and Macdonald Islands, the Crozets, Kerguelen, and Marion and Prince Edward Islands, as well as on Macquarie Island. The Macquarie plants were originally described as an endemic species, *Poa hamiltonii*.

**[1967]** Gillham, Mary E. *Sub-Antarctic sanctuary: summertime on Macquarie Island* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Wellington: 167.

The species [sc. *Poa hamiltonii*] is close to the common *Poa foliosa*, but the two grow alongside each other without hybridising. The 'penguin *Poa*' is easily recognised by its smaller size, the shorter, flattened inflorescence and characters of leaf sheath and ligule.]

**1982** Hosking, Eric and Sage, Bryan *Antarctic wildlife* Croom Helm, London: 48.

The so-called penguin tussock *Poa hamiltoni* is very locally distributed on Macquarie Island. It grows lushly in associa-

tion with rookeries of Macaroni Penguins and Rockhopper Penguins *Eudyptes crestatus*, at sites where the guano-impregnated waters trickle out of the nesting zones.

**1987** National Parks and Wildlife Service, Tasmania *Macquarie Island nature reserve: visitor's handbook* NPWS, Hobart: 38.

*Poa hamiltoni* penguin tussock.

**pennerwin** See **pinnamin**

**peri-antarctic** *adjective*

[A word used by some scientists, in preference to the commoner 'sub-antarctic':]

**Subantarctic.**

**1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 60.

Peri-antarctic islands stand free of sea ice throughout the year, except for small amounts which may form locally in sheltered harbours overnight.

**1984** Headland, Robert *The island of South Georgia* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 57.

Other peri-antarctic islands with seal populations: Gough Island, Tristan da Cunha, Bouvetøya, Prince Edward Islands, Îles Crozet, Kerguelen, McDonald Islands, Heard Island, Îles Amsterdam and Saint-Paul, Macquarie Island, the sub-Antarctic islands of New Zealand as well as the South Sandwich, South Orkney, and South Shetland Islands, together with the Falkland Islands, Tierra del Fuego, Patagonia, and some other places suffered a similar exploitation [sc. sealing].

**1994** Selkirk, Patricia in *Search [journal of the Australia and New Zealand Association for the Advancement of Science]* 25(10) Nov/Dec: 294.

Antarctica and the small number of islands in the peri-Antarctic ocean are fascinating places.

**period of averted interest**

The half century from the 1840s until the 1890s, during which there were few exploratory voyages to antarctic regions, though sealing and whaling continued there. The period followed the great antarctic expeditions of those such as Balleny, Bellingshausen, Weddell, Ross, Wilkes and Dumont d'Urville in the 1820s to 1840s. See also **heroic era**.

**1915** Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911-1914* William Heinemann, London: 2.

What has been termed the period of averted interest now [sc. after Wilkes] intervened, before the modern movement set in with overpowering insistence.

**1980** Gjelsvik, Tore, introduction to Borchgrevink, C.E. *First on the Antarctic continent: being an account of the British Antarctic Expedition 1898-1900* Australian National University Press facts, Canberra: ii.

Three scientific expeditions around 1840 led by Dumont D'Urville, Charles Wilkes and James Clark Ross respectively carried out important exploration in Antarctica. Following these great voyages, the next half-century was a period of averted interest in Antarctic exploration.

**permafrost**

[This is a term first associated with arctic regions (and coined in 1943: NOED). The process also has enormous importance in the formation of antarctic landscapes.]

Permanently frozen soil or rock, occurring below the zone of summer thawing.

**1969** (McMurdo) Keneally, Thomas *The survivor* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 247.

He saw Observation Hill, where Leeming would be, to his honour, buried in rock or permafrost. The trouble of making a hole up there, on that freezing slope!

**1990** Campbell, I.B., Claridge, G.G.C. and Balks, M.R. in *New Zealand Antarctic Record* 10(2): 19.

Permafrost is important because it occurs everywhere in Antarctica and many of the unique landscape features are a result of permafrost processes.

**1995** Ives, Jack D. and Sugden, David, eds *Polar regions Reader's Digest*, Sydney: 16.

Permafrost, as the name implies, is perennially frozen ground which exists in regions where the annual mean temperature is just below 0°C (32°F), while continuous permafrost, up to several hundred metres thick and covering large areas, occurs where the annual mean temperature is -8°C (17.6°F).

**permafrosted** *adjective*

Affected by **permafrost**.

**1985** *Antarctic Society of Australia Newsletter* no 3 (Nov): 1.

A major discovery was the extensive fossil deposits from the early Pliocene (4 to 5 million years) in a shallow valley we named Marine Plain. These permafrosted deposits have survived repeated overriding by the ice sheet and they are now being destroyed by melt water.

**petrel** *noun*

[Perh. from an association with St Peter: see 1729 and 1938 quotations]

1. A seabird of the fam. Procellariidae, species of which are found worldwide but are typical of southerly latitudes.

**1729** Dampier, William *A collection of voyages in Four Volumes* James and John Knapton, London, vol 3: 66.

The Petrel is a Bird not much unlike a Swallow, but smaller, and with a shorter tail. 'Tis all over black, except a white Spot on the Rump. They fly sweeping like Swallows, and very near the water. They are not so often seen in fair Weather, being Foul-weather Birds, as our Seamen call them, and presaging a Storm when they come about a ship; who for that Reason don't love to see them. In a Storm they will hover close under the Ship's Stern, in the Wake of the Ship ... And there as they fly (gently then) they pat the Water alternately with their Feet, as if they walked upon it; tho' still upon the Wing, And from hence the Seamen give them the Name of Petrels, in Allusion to St. Peter's walking upon the Lake of Gennesareth.

**17 Dec 1772** (55°16'S) Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, In the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* W. Libraries Board of South Australia facts, Adelaide (1970), vol 1: 26.

In the course of this day we saw many whales, one seal, penguins, some of the white birds, another sort of petrel, which is brown and white, and not much unlike a pintado: and some other sorts already known.

**3 Jan 1840** (nr 53°S, 157°E) Wilkes, Charles in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 363.

A large number of albatrosses, Port Egmont hens, and petrels were seen.

**1861** (Falkland Islands) Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 164.

*Thalassidroma nereis* (Q. et G.). I picked up a Petrel (dead) in March 1858, which proved to be of this species.

**1879** (Kerguelen Island) Sharpe, R Bowdler *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London*: 142.

So long as its eggs continued to be fresh, the liberty men dug out as many as they could, cruelly destroying the old birds, which they flung away in heaps; but when most of the eggs became uneatable through incubation, they abandoned petrel digging.

**1895** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* 111(XXIV): xxiii.

Mr. T. Parkin exhibited a skin of a very rare species of Petrel, identified by Mr. Osbert Salvin as *Oestrelata incerta* of Schlegel. Mr. Parkin shot the bird during a calm, on his recent voyage to the South Atlantic, in lat. 39°51'S., long. 8°49'E.

**1930** Kinnear in L.C. Bernacchi, co-ordinator *The polar book: produced for the British Polar Exhibition 1930* E. Allom & Co Ltd, London: 65.

In comparing the birds of the Arctic with those of the Antarctic we are at once struck with two facts — the small average size of the northern species and the almost complete absence of petrels or albatrosses, which are such a feature of Antarctic bird life.

**1938** *National Geographic* LXXIV(2) Aug: 234.

"Petrel" is no less interesting. According to a pretty legend, it arose from the fact that the bird, like Saint Peter, "walks upon the water." But both the current form of the word and the explanation are alike very young, dating only from a yarn by Dampier published in 1703. Earlier English usage, as in Flawes's *Voyage to Nova Zembla* (1676), employed the spelling "pitteral". I suspect, therefore, that the term was derived either from the chattering voices of the sea sprites or from the fact that they "pitter-patter" on the surface of the sea, and that the link with Saint Peter was an afterthought.

**1948** (Snares Islands) Richdale, L.E. *Wild life on an island outpost: expedition to The Snares Islands 1947-48* Otago Daily Times and Witness Newspapers, Dunedin: 116.

The remaining birds on the island are all Petrels, that is, birds which have their nostrils in the form of tubes on the top of their bills, a characteristic which wins for them the name of tube-nosed swimmers. The whole family of Petrels is a very large one consisting of nearly 100 distinct species with a world-wide range, although 75 per cent are in the Southern Hemisphere.

**1989** May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica, 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 86.

All petrels have dense plumage and webbed feet.

**1995** (Hop Island) *Station News [Australian Antarctic Division]* Dec: 5.

Jayne and Karen are taking turns at sitting up keeping the various breeding petrels and fulmars company ... These "petrel heads" do strange things like that.

## 2. *Tristan da Cunha*

The bird *Puffinus gravis* (see **great shearwater**), whose oil was collected and used for cooking and lighting.

**1817** Carmichael, Captain Dugald in *Transactions of the Linnean Society of London* (1818) 12(2): 487.

Further on, the ground becomes more firm, but is perforated in all directions by the various species of Petrel, which resort in myriads to the island during the season of incubation, and burrow in the earth.

**1905** Clarke, William Eagle in *The Ibis* V: 254.

The other birds forming the ornith of Gough Island are mostly Tubinares. The number of species of the Order observed during the short visit of the 'Scotia' is quite remarkable, and it would seem probable that a thorough investigation of the island — as yet almost untrudden by the foot of man — in the summer-season would reveal the fact that it is a perfect paradise as a breeding-station for "Petrels."

**1940** Sivertsen, Erling and Baardseth, Egil in Christopherson, Erling in Benham, R.L., transl. fr Norwegian *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 78.

In February, 1938, I ringed in all 900 petrels on the island ... Since this was written, two rings have come in from Newfoundland, and thus we have the first proof that the floods of petrels in the North Atlantic Ocean come from the breeding-ground on Nightingale Island — 6,300 miles away.

**1958** Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 49.

The other bird taken in numbers for food is the Greater Shearwater. This species breeds in vast numbers on Nightingale Island, the total population being estimated at five million pairs. The islanders go over each year when the young 'petrels' (as they call them) are nearly ready to leave for the sea, having been deserted by their parents. At this stage they are immensely fat, and it is this petrel fat that has been used in Tristan cooking for years. Several thousand are taken each year, but there is no sign, as yet, of harm to the population of birds.

**1976** Wace, N.M. and Holdgate, M.W. *Man and nature in the Tristan da Cunha islands* IUCN monograph no. 6, Morges, Switzerland: 63.

Great shearwaters, or, as they are invariably termed by the islanders 'petrels' which have been an important resource in the islanders' economy, are taken by the islanders on three occasions during the year.

**1997** (Tristan da Cunha) <http://home.wxs.nl/~beintema/moorhen.htm>, accessed 22 Feb 2000.

Cakes are said to be best when fried in petrel fat (from young Greater Shearwaters *Puffinus gravis*, which are .. from the huge colony at nearby Nightingale Island).

## petrel egg *Tristan da Cunha*

The egg of the **great shearwater**.

**1940** Christopherson, Erling in Benham, R.L., transl. from Norwegian *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 195.

The petrel has only latterly become of economic importance, since Nightingale has been visited annually in November and March. November is "petrel-egg time" and in March its chicks are boiled to make fat. We were informed that each Tristan family collects about 600 to 800 eggs, which are taken back to the settlement. A lot of eggs are of course used on the spot.

**1984** (Tristan da Cunha) Richardson, M.E. in *Cormorant* 12(2): 190.

Chicks are no longer taken on Nightingale where it was customary to eat them during the "petrel egg trips" during 10-13 November.

## petrel fat *Tristan da Cunha*

The oil of the **great shearwater**, used in cooking and as fuel.

**1957** Booy, D.M. *Rock of exile: a narrative of Tristan da Cunha* J.M. Dent & Sons, London: 134.

The object of the trip was to collect petrel fat for use in cooking and in the little lamps that would light the cottages during the winter evenings.

**1982** Crawford, Allan *Tristan da Cunha and the Roaring Forties* Charles Skilton, Edinburgh: 64.

Fish, potatoes and seabird's eggs were to be procured as the seasons advanced and the time had now come for the annual visit to Nightingale Island for petrel fat.

**1991** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 8 (Mar): 8.

[recipe] Potato cakes You start with a potato mixture as follows:— 1 lb cooked mashed potatoes 5 oz. flour A pinch of salt Mix together until smooth. Using the potato mixture, roll out until ) inch thick. Cut the potato cakes with suitable cutter. Gather leftover, mix and re-roll. Fry in a deep fat until golden brown. Ingredients make about 15 potato cakes. Serve with or without sweetened cream or jam. Note: The fat used originally on the island was petrels' fat, a commodity not recommended for expatriates due to its strong fishy flavour.

### **phylica** *Tristan da Cunha*. Often as **phylica tree**

The tree *Phylica nitida*: see **Island tree**.

**1879** (Inaccessible Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 116.

The stems and branches of the *Phylica* trees are covered with lichens in tufts and variously coloured crusts, and the branches of the trees meeting overhead these little islands, as it were, in the seas of tall grass, afford most pleasant shady retreats.

**13 Jun 1906** Barrow, K.M. (1910) *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 48.

There was thick brushwood of *phylica*, of fern and crowberry all round.

**1952** Hagen, Yngvar *Birds of Tristan da Cunha* Det Norske Videnskap Akademi i Oslo/Hos Jacob Dybwad, Oslo: 232.

The thrushes ... and the finches ... find their nesting sites in the tall tussock and in the *Phylica*-trees.

**1976** Ryssen, W.J. van *The birds of the Tristan da Cunha group and Gough Island* Board of Extra-mural Studies, University of Cape Town: 30.

Food: *Phylica* seed and peak berry.

### **picket line**

[Picket-line was recorded in English 1899, in the general sense of a tether (NOED).]

#### **A dog line.**

**17 Mar 1911** (Hut Point) Wilson, Edward (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912* Blandford Press, London: II 7.

By midnight things looked very bad indeed for the dogs, and Meares and I turned out to let them loose from the picketing lines for they were getting frozen into solid jackets of sea water.

**1931** O'Brien, John S. *By dog sled for Byrd: 1600 miles across Antarctic ice* Thomas S. Rockwell, Chicago: 68.

From the moment the harness was arranged on them in the morning, preparatory to getting under way, until they were put on the picket line at night, regardless of how heavy the day had been, they never stopped barking and straining to be away.

### **picket (out) verb**

[Picket is recorded from 1814– (NOED), in the sense of tethering a horse (etc.) to a picket.]

To attach to the **dog line**.

**1958** (Shackleton Base) Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund *The crossing of Antarctica: the Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955–58* Cassell & Co, London: 56.

To prepare for the first sledge trip the dogs were picketed outside again and were taken for training runs.

**1964** (Cape Evans) Helm, A.S. and Miller, J.H. *Antarctica: the story of the New Zealand party of the Trans-Antarctic expedition* R.E. Owen, Government Printer, Wellington: 191.

After the dogs had been picketed out, the men walked overland to Captain Scott's hut.

**1988** (Mawson station) Butler, Rowan *Breaking the ice* Albatross Books, Sydney: 40.

Arriving at our destination, the first task was to picket the dogs and attend to their needs.

### **piecrust** *noun and attrib.*

Soft snow with a thin crust of harder and sometimes brittle snow, which momentarily support's a person's weight before subsiding onto a firmer base.

**1911** Hobbs, William Herbert *Characteristics of existing glaciers* The Macmillan Company, NY: 263.

When the softer snow falls in summer time, if the weather becomes colder, the snow compacts itself and becomes hard. Such superficial hardening yields a "pie-crust" surface and the snow below is soon firmly bound together so as to yield the usual "smooth-sledging type of winter snow-ice."

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 37.

Patches of soft snow and "pie-crust" snow occur.

**1942** Mawson, Douglas *Geographical narrative and cartography Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911–14. Scientific reports series A vol 1* Government Printer, Sydney: 210.

On the 11th we did 8 miles over country much the same as the day before but we also met a good deal of "pie-crust" which hitherto we had scarcely seen. This in general is smooth and usually hard enough to support the sledge runners safely, but one's feet break through in a most annoying and tiring manner.

**1962** (nr Hut Point, McMurdo Sound) Richards, R.W. *The Ross Sea shore party 1914–17*. Scott Polar Research Institute Special Publication no. 2: 21.

There is the "piecrust" surface that just takes one's weight momentarily before letting one sink suddenly for a few inches, a very tiring experience if maintained all day.

**1984** Millar, David P. *From snowdrift to shellfire: Captain James Francis (Frank) Hurley 1885–1962* David Ell Press, Sydney: 23.

When the wind was not blowing the sledge sideways, and its windage not adding to the heavy load, they were falling through the pie-crust snow up to their waists.

### **piedmont** *Also piedmont glacier, piedmont ice sheet*

A sloping lobe of ice at the foot of a mountain or mountains.

**1905** [source: NOED] Ferrar, H.T. in R.F. Scott *Voy. 'Discovery'* II: 461.

Large areas of ice which lie at the foot of high land and which have no obvious single source may be described as 'piedmonts'.

**1907** Ferrar, H.T. *Report of the field-geology of the region explored during the 'Discovery' Antarctic expedition, 1901–04. National Antarctic Expedition 1901–1904, Natural history vol 1: geology* British Museum, London: 63.

[Glossary] Piedmont-glaciers are formed by ice crowding on to a coastal plain at the foot of a mountain range. In South Victoria Land three types are distinguished: (a) normal piedmonts-on-land; (b) piedmonts-aground; (c) piedmonts-afloat.

**1941** (Ruppert Coast) *Polar Record* 3(22) July: 439.

East of the 135th meridian the character of the littoral ice changes abruptly with the upland ice of the mainland terminating in a piedmont ice-sheet passing into shelf-ice.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

**1967** (Adelaide Island) *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* 1 (Apr): 2.

Eric and Rod immediately took the team, with a 800-lb. load, on a run up the piedmont.

**1990** Naveen, Ron, Monteath, Colin, de Roy, Tui and Jones, Mark *Wild ice: Antarctic journeys* Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington: 155.

Over broad piedmont glaciers, past icefalls that flicker in a kaleidoscope of morning light, lie the entrances to the Ferrar, the Taylor, and the Wright valleys.

### **pied oystercatcher** *Falkland Islands*

The bird *Haematopus leucopodus*: see **black and white curlew**.

**1910** Cobb, Arthur F. *Wildlife in the Falkland Islands* Gowans & Gray, London: 63.

Pied Oyster-Catcher (*Haematopus leucopus*) ... This bird is also known as the Black and White Curlew.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 167.

Magellanic Oystercatcher *Haematopus leucopodus* .. Local names: Black & White Curlew; Pied Oystercatcher .. A conspicuous bird of sand-beaches and creeks, this oystercatcher is handsomely pied with shiny black head, breast and back and white belly.

### **piew** See **peeoo**

### **pigeon** *Obs. Also white pigeon*

Either of the two landbirds of the genus *Chionis*: see **sheathbill**.

**1821** ("New Shetland": near 62°6'S, 58°7'W) *The Literary Gazette and Journal of Belles Lettres* 21 Nov, quoted in *Polar Record* (1946) 4(32) Jul: 390.

No land animals and no other bird were seen, except a sort of pigeon, which builds in the crevices of rocks with grass from the swamp; these were so tame that they allowed the people to approach and knock them down with sticks, though sufficiently on their guard not to be captured by the hand.

**1827** (South Shetlands) Weddell, James A *voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822-24, 2nd edn* David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 144.

The small species of penguins are here abundant; and of sea-fowl, the following may be enumerated: aglets; Port Egmont hens; white pigeons; the grey peterel, called by sailors the Nelly; snow birds; and, on the coast, I have seen blue peterels.

**22 Jan 1840** (nr 66°40'S, 151°24'E) Wilkes, Charles in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 412.

A report of high land was made this morning; indeed everything indicated the proximity of land. The number of seals, whales, penguins, shrimps, etc., had very much increased. The pure white pigeons were also seen in numbers.

### **pig vine** *Falkland Islands*

The carpet-forming perennial plant *Gunnera magellanica* (fam. Halorogidaceae) of the Falkland Islands and southern South America. It favours damp places, and has red fruits.

**1924** Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history by Rupert Vallentin* Clarendon Press, Oxford: 271.

Growing everywhere, but most luxuriantly on damp soil near rivers and waterfalls is the ubiquitous Pig vine (*Gunnera magellanica*), which no animal will touch.

**1989** Davies, T.H. and McAdam, J.H. *Wild flowers of the Falkland Islands* Bluntisham Books, Huntingdon: 22.

Pig vine (*Gunnera magellanica*) A creeping, branched herb with kidney shaped, rhubarb-like leaves which are smooth above, hairy below and commonly 3-8 cm wide. Following flowering in November a tight bunch of brilliant scarlet fruits is borne on short stalks. Pig vine is abundant throughout the camp, particularly in damp sheltered places.

### **pinamin** See **pinnamin**

### **pink-breasted gull** *Falkland Islands*

The bird *Larus maculipennis* (fam. Laridae), which has grey wings and back, and white underparts which are often suffused with rosy pink. The breeding adult gull has a dark brown head. It breeds in the Falkland Islands and southern South America.

**6 Sept 1842** (Falkland Islands) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 298.

Whilst pulling across the sound, I shot two black-headed, pink-breasted gulls.

**1861** (Falkland Islands) Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 166.

On the 24th of May I shot a Pink-breasted Gull, with a white head clouded with dusky, at Port Louis.

**1904** (Falkland Islands) Vallentin, Rupert in *Memoirs and Proc of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no. 23: 42.

*Larus glaucodes*, "Pink-breasted Gull." This species seems to be very locally distributed. I have never seen it on any part of the Falklands I have visited. The two eggs in my collection, kindly given to me by a friend, came from the north-western corner of the East Island.

**1917** (Falkland Islands) Beck, Rollo H. *The American Museum Journal* XVII(7) Nov: 448.

[caption] The dolphin and pink-breasted gulls shown above are not as plentiful in the Falkland Islands as their larger relative, the dominican gull. The bluish gray dolphin gulls may be encountered usually along the beaches, where they pick over the pieces of kelp for small animal life ... The delicately colored pink-breasted gulls prefer feeding on live fish.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 196.

Brown-headed Gull *Larus maculipennis* .. Local name: Pink-breasted Gull ... The smallest and least common Falkland gull, the adult has a pearly grey back and wings with a characteristic white leading edge, broadest on the primaries. Underparts white with a variable rosy suffusion on neck, breast and sometimes the wing edge and tail.

### **pinnacled berg**

An irregular-shaped craggy iceberg, by contrast with a flat-topped **tabular berg**.

**5 Jan 1914** Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 231.

Passed a pinnacled berg in evening, peak standing out at the end.

**1922** Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Picador, London: 61.



There are two main types of Antarctic berg. The first and most common is the tabular form. Bergs of this shape cruise about in thousands and thousands. A less common form is known as the pinnacled berg, and in almost every case this is a tabular berg which has been weathered or has capsized.

**1940** Nockolds, S.R. *Petrology of rocks from Queen Mary Land. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911-14. Scientific reports Series A vol IV Geology pt 2* Government Printer, Sydney: 61.

The first of these [sc. rock specimens] is from pinnacled berg in Helen Glacier Bay.

**1957** Sullivan, Walter *Quest for a continent* Secker & Warburg, London: 317.

About 400 bergs were in sight, and because of the great range of vision every type could be seen. There were tabular bergs — flat-topped sections of the continental ice sheet which floated like gigantic waters on the ocean, each as large as a good-sized island. In contrast, the pinnacled bergs, the type familiar to sailors in northern waters, rose up like so many cathedrals or alpine peaks.

**1989** May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica, 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 36.

Pinnacled [sc. icebergs]: one or more pinnacles are present.

### **pinnacle ice** Also *pinnacled ice*

Ice, usu. on an **ice-shelf**, with a very rough and uneven surface.

**1907** Ferrar, H.T. *Report of the field-geology of the region explored during the 'Discovery' Antarctic expedition, 1901-04. National Antarctic Expedition 1901-1904, Natural history vol 1: geology.* British Museum, London: 80.

On rounding the north end of Black Island, the lines of cones curve westward, and are further continued northward to the "pinnacled ice" or old ice-edge. Occasionally large boulders up to four feet in diameter are found, but these disappear and are replaced by great quantities of coarse sand, which is often blown about by wind. It is this sand which, by inducing melting, produces the rivulets. These give rise to the fantastic "pinnacled ice" which presents so insuperable a difficulty to the sledge-traveller.

**4 Jan 1911** (McMurdo Sound) Wilson, Edward (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912* Blandford Press, London: 92.

The alternative is to go to the west side of the strait, but we know that the road to the south from there is over very bad ice — the so called pinnacled ice<sup>1</sup> which comes down from Koettlitz Glacier.

<sup>1</sup>Footnote: Refers to the rough surface of the ablation area on the Barrier in the McMurdo Sound region west of long. 166°E, varying in height from a few inches to 60 feet.

**1964** (nr Wright Glacier) Helm, A.S. and Miller, J.H. *Antarctica: the story of the New Zealand party of the Trans-Antarctic expedition* R.E. Owen, Government Printer, Wellington: 354.

The way ahead into the Miller was barred by an extensive area of pinnacled ice 3 to 4 ft high.

**1990** Howard-Williams, C. and others in Kerry, K.R. and Hempel, G., eds *Antarctic ecosystems: ecological change and conservation* Springer-Verlag, Berlin: 23.

Two major types of ice shelf morphology with different physical and biological characteristics were distinguished: "Pinnacled Ice" with many small interconnected pools and streams, and "Undulating Ice" with continuous moraine cover and discrete pools and lakes.

### **pinnamin** *Tristan da Cunha*. Also *pennerwin*, *pinamin*

A penguin — on Tristan, usually a rockhopper, the commonest penguin there.

**1940** Christopherson, Erling in Benham, R.L., transl. fr Norwegian *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 92.

The old penguins also moult once a year ... When the time comes .. they are fatter than at any other time of the year. These are the "big and fat pinamins" from which the Tristanites obtain their oil. They weigh six to eight pounds at this season and have a layer of fat as thick as one's finger all over the body, lying in thick creases over their legs.

**1952** Hagen, Yngvar *Birds of Tristan da Cunha* Det Norske Videnskap Akademi i Oslo/Hos Jacob Dybwad, Oslo: 19.

The rockhopper is by the Tristan people merely called "pinamin" viz., penguin, as the species is the single one of that sort of bird usually occurring in the group. Besides this, it plays a very important role in the islanders' household and forms one of the most impressive features in the nature surrounding this small, isolated human settlement.

**1963** Mackay, Margaret *Angry Island: the story of Tristan da Cunha (1506-1963)* Arthur Barker, London: 220.

The islanders declined to bother with it [sc. a dead whale]. They preferred to take the oil from the comparatively few remaining "pinamins", or penguins, because it was easier and customary.

**1967** Pondus-Bøgerne, Lohse, transl. fr Danish by Falk-Ronne. *Arnc Back to Tristan* Allen & Unwin, London: 21.

They have, too, a collection of special words which a modern Englishman finds hard to understand ... A handkerchief has become a "hangcher", penguin is "pennerwin".

**1993** (1949-50) *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 12 (Mar): 9.

Every year the islanders visit Nightingale three or four times. In September they go for the eggs of the Rockhopper Penguin (pinamins, locally) and of the Yellow-nosed Albatross, here called the Molly.

### **pinnipedophage**

Someone who eats **seal** meat.

**1996** Bertram, Colin in *Polar Record* 32(181): 158.

Mountaineers seemed to insist upon special foods and their whims were regarded as important. To us poor pinnipedophagi all these things seemed strange indeed.

### **pintado** Also *pintado petrel*

[From the Spanish *pintado* painted, referring to the distinctive and picturesque appearance of the bird.]

The seabird *Daption capensis* — see **cape pigeon** — whose generic name is an anagram of 'pintado'.

**c1588** Petty, Francis *The admirable and prosperous voyage of the worshipful Master Thomas Candish, of Trimley in the county of Suffolk, Esquire, into the South Sea, and from thence round about the circumference of the whole earth, begun in the year of Our Lord 1586 and finished 1588* quoted in David, Richard (1981) *Hakluyt's voyages* Chatto and Windus, London: 550.

They had taken .. many packs of *pintados*.

**14 Mar 1741** (59°40'S, 75°38'W) Heaps, Lco (1744) *Log of the Centurion. Based on the original papers of Captain Phillip Saumarez on board HMS Centurion, Lord Anson's flagship during his circumnavigation 1740-44* Macmillan, NY, 1973: 77.

The squadron labouring and pitching much in heading the long hollow swells from the westward. Had several small birds playing around us called Pintadoes.

**12 Dec 1772** (51°S, 21°E) Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, in the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* W. Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970), vol 1: 23.

Upon our getting among the ice islands, the albatrosses left us; that is, we saw but one now and then. Nor did our other companions the pintadoes, sheerwaters, small grey birds, fulmars, &c. appear in such numbers.

**10 Nov 1821** (62°6'S, 58°7'W) *The Literary Gazette and Journal of Belles Lettres* quoted in *Polar Record* (1946) 4(32) Jul: 391.

From the Bay (George's Bay) in which our countrymen first hauled up, and took possession of New Shetland, or, as they christened it, "New South Britain," in the name of his Majesty, the Brig Williams sailed on the 27th of January. Their course was W.S.W. On the 28th, several whales and shoals of seals were seen; and the whole day they were surrounded by penguins, snow-birds, pintadoes, and albatrosses.

**1952** Crawford, Allan B. *The Emu* 252(2) May: 78.

Pintado Petrel (Cape Pigeon) *Daption capensis*. Within a few hours of leaving Marion Island, at the end of August, Cape Pigeons were common, circling around the ship.

**1990** Naveen, Ron, Monteath, Colin, de Roy, Tui and Jones, Mark *Wild ice: Antarctic journeys* Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington: 113.

On Bouvet Island, the most distantly isolated speck of land on earth, the influx consists of pintado and snow petrels, among others.

## pintail duck

[Pintail duck is recorded in northern hemisphere use from 1768, for a duck whose male has a pointed tail (NOED).]

Any of several species of small brown duck — in the Kerguelen region, *Anas eatoni* (see **Kerguelen pintail**), in the Falkland Islands, *A. georgica* (see **yellow-billed pintail**), and on South Georgia, *A. georgica georgica* (see **South Georgia pintail**).

**1861** (Falkland Islands) Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 160.

*Dafila urophasianus* (Vig.)? (Pintail.) The Pintail Duck occurs rather sparingly in the interior of the island on the freshwater ponds, where it is resident all the year round. This Duck never utters any sound or note, either when rising or flying in the air — a singular exception to the general custom of the Duck-tribe.

**1913** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 22(4) 1 Apr: 61.

An Ordinance To amend the law with regard to the preservation of wild animals and birds ... closed season 1 Oct–last Feb .. Pintail Duck [etc.].

**1984** (Kerguelen Island) Fletcher, Harold *Antarctic days with Mawson: a personal account of the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929–31* Angus and Robertson, London: 192.

Pintail ducks were plentiful and a number of them were shot and later handed over to the ship's cook.

**1990** (South Georgia) Parmelee, David F. *Bird Island in antarctic waters* University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis: 19.

Milling masses of seals barked incessantly. Scattered among them were penguins, skuas, pintail ducks, giant petrels, and what seemed to me extraordinary numbers of sheathbills.

## pio See peeo

## pipit Falkland Islands

[Pipit is recorded as a general word for the widely distributed bird genus *Anthus*, from 1768 onwards (NOED).]

The small, pale and dark brown striped ground-feeding bird *Anthus correndera grayi* (fam. Motacillidae), from the Falkland Islands, also called the **Falkland pipit**.

The Falklands bird is a subspecies of the more widely occurring 'correndera pipit' of South America.

**1904** (Falkland Islands) Vallentin, Rupert, Notes on the Falkland Islands. *Memoirs and Proc of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no. 23: 42.

*Anthus antarcticus*. I believe this to be the correct name of a pretty pipit so abundant on the "camp" of these islands.

**1906** Lönnberg, Einar *Vetenskapsakademiens Handlingar*

Even if the pipit and the teal during the summer find food enough on land and in the fresh water, the winter forces them down to the shore.

**1924** Vallentin, Rupert in Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands. With notes on the natural history by Rupert Vallentin* Clarendon Press, Oxford: 333.

*Anthus correndera* .. 'Pipit' or 'Skylark'. A migrant, arriving early in November and universally distributed over the islands.

## piu See peeo

## plan Whaling. Also whale plan

[Though the English word plan is recorded (as obs., NOED 1723) for a surface on which anything stands, this usage below is likely to have come into antarctic English with the Norwegian whalers in Antarctica, from the Norwegian plan a flat level plane.]

A large open area on a ship or shore-based station floored with wooden boards, and gently sloping to the sea, where whales were cut up for **boiling down**. See also **bone plan**.

**1938** Ommanney, F.D. *South latitude* Longman, Green & Co., London: 19.

A large square several acres in extent, the boarded surface of which sloped into the sea ... The Norwegians called it the "plan" or level place.

**1950** (Grytviken, South Georgia) Saunders, Alfred *A camera in Antarctica* Winchester Publications, London: 12.

Although we started work on the whaling 'plan', we did not get properly into our stride until the following season. Furthermore, the Norwegians eyed us with distrust and often deliberately obstructed our work. Only Hansen, Benson and Fritz, the jovial flensers, welcomed us. The 'plan' was a large rectangular open space, about 150 feet square, covered with thick wooden planks firmly fixed and sloping gently down to the water's edge. A gentle trickle of water was kept running over it to facilitate the hauling up of whales and the moving of the heavy strips of blubber and mounds of flesh.

**1971** (South Georgia) Brown, Nan *Antarctic housewife* Hutchinson of Australia, Melbourne: 37.

Our arrival coincided with the pulling in of a Fin whale. Hardly had its tail projected over the edge of the plan deck before the first dissecting team went into action.

**1993** Miller, Richard Gordon *A history and atlas of the fishes of the Antarctic ocean* Foresta Institute for Ocean and Mountain Studies, Carson City, Nevada: 148.

The fish [sc. *Notothenia rossii marmorata*] .. has been observed and caught in patches of krill and because of this association it has been found on the "whale plan".

## plasmopause

The outer boundary of the ionised region of the earth's upper atmosphere, first noted in Antarctica.

**1992** National Science Foundation *The United States Antarctic program* National Science Foundation, NSF 91-92 (revised), Arlington Virginia: [11].

1963 — The plasmopause, a distinctive region of the magnetosphere, is discovered at Eight's Station.

**plasmon** *noun and attrib.*

[Plasmon was a trade name of the Plasmon manufacturing company, formerly of 66a Farrington St. London EC4. It has been recorded in British English from 1900– (NOED).]

A soluble milk protein added as a supplement to polar sledging rations — tinned foods, cocoa, tea, chocolate, and most notably in rock hard **sledging biscuits** whose added plasmon enhanced their granite-like qualities.

**1909** Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907–1909* William Heinemann, London: 267.

At 1 P.M. the advance-party with the ponies pitched camp and tethered out the ponies, and soon lunch was under way, consisting of tea with plasmon, plasmon biscuits and cheese.

**12 Mar 1911** (Hut Point) Gran, Trygve in McGhie, Ellen-Johanne, transl. fr Norwegian, and Hattersley-Smith, Geoffrey, ed. (1984) *The Norwegian with Scott: Trygve Gran's Antarctic diary 1910–1913* National Maritime Museum, UK: 70.

We have tea for lunch and plasmon biscuits from Shackleton's left-over stores.

**1915** (Shackleton Ice-Shelf, 1912) Wild, F. in Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911–1914* William Heinemann, London: 59.

The rations were found sufficient, but the plasmon biscuits were so hard that they had to be broken with a geological hammer.

**1930** L.C. Bernacchi, co-ordinator *The polar book: produced for the British Polar Exhibition 1930* E. Allom & Co Ltd, London: 109.

Plasmon is the pure protein of milk in the form of a soluble powder, without taste or odour, and containing all the natural organic salts and phosphates. "It enormously increases the nutritive value of any food to which it is added." ("Lancet.") The most famous explorers have considered Plasmon Foods indispensable in the equipment of their expeditions. The following are extracts from their testimony:—*Captain Robert Scott*: "My sledging rations always contained two ounces of Plasmon daily." *Sir Ernest Shackleton*: "Plasmon Powder was one of the principal items of food in the sledge journey which made the world's record for furthest South; and another sledging party practically lived on Plasmon." *Dr. Marshall*, Medical Officer: "Plasmon Biscuits and Plasmon Cocoa were of tremendous value." *Sir Douglas Mawson*: "Of all the foods, the Plasmon Foods were those used mostly."

**1986** Chester, Jonathan *Going to extremes: Project Blizzard and Australia's Antarctic heritage* Doubleday Australia, Sydney: 195.

The AAE's staples were Plasmon biscuits and Pemican (dried meat), the main ingredients of the favoured sledging meal — a stew like concoction known as 'hoosh'.

**1991** Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 395.

[glossary] Plasmon — trade name for mixture containing casein (milk protein) and gluten (proteins from flour). Plasmon biscuit — made from flour plus 30 per cent plasmon. Plasmon chocolate — made from chocolate plus 10 per cent plasmon.

**plateau** *noun and attrib.*

A high, ice-covered plateau, esp. the **polar plateau**.

**1909** Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907–1909* William Heinemann, London: 348.

January 9 [sc. 1909]. Our last day outwards. We have shot our bolt, and the tale is latitude 88°23' South, longitude 162° East ... While the Union Jack blew out stiffly in the icy gale that cut us to the bone, we looked south with our powerful glasses, but could see nothing but the dead white snow plain. There was no break in the plateau as it extended to the Pole, and we feel sure that the goal we have failed to reach lies on this plain.

**1912** Amundsen, R. in *The Sphere [London]* XLIX no. 643 (16 May): 152.

All of us gathered round the colours, a beautiful silken flag. All hands took hold of it, and planting it on the spot gave the vast plateau on which the Pole is situate [sic] the name of "the King Haakon VII. Plateau".

**1914** (Inexpressible Island) Priestley, Raymond E. (1974 repr.) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* Melbourne University Press: 224.

We should have to proceed with our preparations in spite of this plateau wind.

**1963** McKenzie, Douglas *Opposite poles* Robert Hale & Co. London/Whitcombe & Tombs, New Zealand: 51.

As a faintly conscious plateau-dweller I now stood with the others on the side of the airstrip to wave good-bye to Bill Cranfield when he took the Beaver off to return alone to Scott Base.

**1968** (Graham Land plateau) Herbert, Wally *A world of men: exploration in Antarctica* Eyre & Spottiswoode, London: 29.

Dr Hugh Simpson was another certainty for the plateau journey.

**1989** *Antarctic Science* 1 (1) March: 11.

Ice flow decreases as flow-blocking mountains and nunataks are approached from the plateau side of the continent.

**platelet ice**

Thin plate-like crystals of ice, formed under **fast ice** or on submerged objects; such crystals have also been called **ice platelets**.

**[1907]** Hodgson, T.V. *National Antarctic Expedition 1901–1904. Natural history vol. III Zoology and botany (Invertebrata: marine algae, musci)*. British Museum, London: 6.

The line was thickly covered with thin plate-like crystals of ice, of roughly hexagonal shape, and from one to four square inches in size.]

**1977** (Anvers Island) Showers, W.J. and others *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XII(1–2) Mar/June: 22.

Platelet ice was observed forming to 33 meters.

**1991** *Antarctica Sun Times [McMurdo]* IV(xiii) 1 Feb: 5.

Sea ice freezes in several different fashions — as columns of vertically oriented crystals, or congelation ice; as frazil ice, a jumble of smaller crystals, which starts out as slush at the sea surface; or as the least well understood form, platelet ice, made up of somewhat bigger crystals than frazil ice.

**pleurophyllum**

[The plant genus *Pleurophyllum* was named by botanist J.D. Hooker in The botany of the Antarctic voyage of H.M. Discovery ships *Erebus* and *Terror* in the years 1839–1843, under the command of Captain Sir James Clark Ross (1844) vol 1 p. 30, from the Greek πλευρά rib and φύλλον leaf, referring to the conspicuously ridged ribs of the leaves.]

A plant of the genus *Pleurophyllum* (fam. Compositae or Asteraceae), large rosette-forming perennials which make tall (to 1 m) and impressive clumps and have pur-

plish daisy flowers. The three species *P. speciosum*, *P. criniferum* and *P. hookeri* all grow on the New Zealand subantarctic islands, *P. hookeri* also occurring on Australia's Macquarie Island. A field of flowering pleurophyllum is a spectacular sight.

[1867 Hooker, J.D. *Handbook of the New Zealand flora: a systematic description of the native plants of New Zealand and the Chatham, Kermadec's, Lord Auckland's, Campbell's, and Macquarie's islands* Reeve & Co., London: 128.

*Pleurophyllum*, Hook. f. Tall, succulent, robust, leafy, silky or woolly herbs ... The only species known are confined to the islets south of New Zealand, and are noble plants.]

1915 (Macquarie Island) Ainsworth, GF in Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911–1914* William Heinemann, London: 178.

The slopes rise in a series of terraces which are generally soggy and covered with tussock (pleurophyllum) and with scattered cushions of Azorella.

2 Dec 1930 (Macquarie Island) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 358.

Johnson, self, Falla, Ingram, Fletcher and one other made around south side of Hasselborough Bay to feather-bed terrace. Found very rich vegetation there — pleurophyllum and Maori cabbage, also a creeper with red berries.

30 May 1942 Sorensen, J.H. *The work journal of J.H. Sorensen, coastwatcher in the "Cape expedition", Campbell Island, 1942–44* Original, in possession of NZ Dept Conservation and Wildlife, Wellington: 20.

I came across a very pretty little gorge on this walk, very deep and with the steep sides densely clothed with fern, *Stilbocarpa polaris*, *Pleurophyllum*, *Anisotome* and divers others which only a more thorough examination would determine.

1976 Kerr, I.S. *Campbell Island: a history* A.H. & A.W. Reed Ltd, Wellington: 3.

Pride of them all, *Pleurophyllum speciosum* with its great leaves and heavily laden spikes of mauve or lilac flowers. All of these are found only in the islands south of New Zealand. Unfortunately, fire and grazing sheep have dimmed the former floral glory of the summer meadows. *Anisotome*, *stilbocarpa* and *pleurophyllum* are special favourites of the sheep.

## plover Falkland Islands

The bird *Charadrius falklandicus* (fam. Charadriidae) which frequents beaches in the Falkland Islands and southern South America. The adult breeding male has two black bands on its white front. See also **double-ringed plover**, **two-banded plover**.

26 May 1842 (Urania Bay, Falkland Islands) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world: being personal narratives of attempts to reach the North and South Poles* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 287.

I shot a teal on a small lake here, and ten small plover from a small flock on the beach, twice four at each shot; they were not at all shy, running along the sands again after the report of the gun.

1861 Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 155.

*Hoplopterus cayanus* ... I obtained a single specimen of this Plover in 1860, and sent it to England. It was shot near Stanley; and another was seen a short time afterwards.

1904 (Falkland Islands) Vallentin, Rupert, Notes on the Falkland Islands. *Memoirs and Proc of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no. 23: 39.

*Ægialitis falklandica*, "Plover." This attractive bird is common all over the "camp" throughout the Falklands. The nest is made entirely of a common lichen.

1924 Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history* by Rupert Vallentin Clarendon Press, Oxford: 310.

*Chaŕadrius falklandicus* (Lath.), 'Plover': A charming bird and one of the earliest immigrants. I well remember my feelings of joy on hearing the call of several of this species on the evening of 29th August, 1910, as I was riding homeward over the camp. Now, I thought, spring will soon be here. A few days later I met with numbers in the camp.

1988 Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 170.

Two-banded Plover *Charadrius falklandicus* .. Local names: Plover, Two-barred Plover ... Feeds on small invertebrates picked from the surf edge, heaps of rotted kelp or short grass and sand areas.

## plunderfish noun

[The Greek ἀρπάγην *hook*, is the root of the scientific name. It refers to the hooked operculum of these fish, and also translates as robber, hence this name.]

A fish of the marine fam. Harpagiferidae; these have a pair of large spines on each gill-cover, and are found most commonly in subantarctic waters. Sometimes the name is also used for a fish of the related fam. Artedidraconidae, which now includes genera formerly included in the Harpagiferidae (see **Dollo's plunderfish**). See also **harpagifer** and **nototheniiform**.

1969 Cooper, Allan *Fishes of the world* Paul Hamlyn, London: 128.

The uninviting rocky shores of the Falkland Islands and South Georgia are home to the Plunder Fish (*Harpagifer bispinis*), which has a number of features in common with the sea scorpions, including a squat shape and heavy, spiny head.

1990 Gon, O. and Heemstra, P.C. *Fishes of the Southern Ocean* J.L.B. Smith Institute of Ichthyology, Grahamstown: 332.

Artedidraconidae Plunderfishes ... Four genera and about 23–25 species of small to medium-sized predatory benthic fish. Antarctic endemics and one species endemic to South Georgia.

1993 Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 51.

Although the Antarctic has relatively few fish, most of those that do occur are endemic, or found only in the Southern Ocean. In the shallower, coastal waters over 85 percent of the species are endemic, cut off from other oceans by deep surrounding seas and specially adapted for life in the world's coldest waters. Most of these endemics belong to just one order, the Nototheniiformes, and split into four families — the Antarctic cod (Nototheniidae), the plunder fish (Harpagiferidae), the dragon fish (Bathydraconidae) and the ice fish (Channichthyidae). They are generally small fish, few growing to more than 50 centimetres. Typically, they have spines along their backs and large, bony pectoral fins, which they spread out for support when resting on the seabed. Most nototheniiform species are bottom dwellers, though several have young that are pelagic, or live in the open ocean.

## pod

[Pod is recorded slightly later in general British English (from 1832), in the same sense; NOED describes it as originally US, of unknown origin.]

A group of marine mammals — seals, sea lions, whales or dolphins — either on land or at sea.

**6 Jun 1824** Earle, Augustus 1832 *A narrative of a nine months' residence in New Zealand, in 1827; together with a journal of a residence in Tristan d'Acunha, an island situated between South America and the Cape of Good Hope* Longman, Rees, Orme, Brown, Green, & Longman, London: 331.

I saw to-day, for the first time, what the settlers call a *pod* of sea elephants. At this particular season these animals lay strewed about the beach, and, unless you disturb them, the sight of a man will not frighten them away.

**15 Dec 1912** (South Georgia) Murphy, Robert Cushman (1948) *Logbook for Grace Robert Hale Ltd*, London: 171.

Within a stone's throw of my front door is a pod of sea elephants, mostly wallowing in the water of a glacial stream.

**1968** Dukert, Joseph M. *This is Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 59.

No longer can the hunter ship expect a group (called a pod or gam) to stick together while one whale after another is killed.

**1986** (Enderby Island) Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties. New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 34.

At two weeks of age the [sc. *Phocartos hookeri*] pups gather into large, closely packed "pods", and as they become more adventurous begin to move onto the grass sward behind the beach or to play in streams or rock pools.

**1991** Venables, Stephen *Island at the edge of the world: a South Georgia odyssey* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 89.

'Then round the beach, squeezing past a pod of sea elephant bulls heaving and belching indignantly at the disturbance.

### polar adjective

[Polar pertaining to the earth's poles, is recorded in English from 1551 (NOED).]

### Antarctic adj. 1.

**1777** Forster, George *A voyage round the world, in his Britannic Majesty's sloop, Resolution, commanded by Capt. James Cook* B. White, London, vol 1: 528.

Perhaps a violent storm might break the polar ice.

**1906** (South Orkneys) Eagle Clarke, W. in *The Ibis* 6(XXI) Jan: 146.

Concerning climatic conditions, Mr. Mossman informs me that, in spite of their low latitude, the climate of the South Orkneys is essentially polar.

**1939** Byrd, Richard E. *Alone* Reader's Union Ltd and Putnam & Co Ltd, London: 6.

Must you go off and bury yourself in the middle of polar cold and darkness just to be alone?

**1969** Keneally, Thomas *The survivor* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 3.

"My father died in 1932. Since then? The depression, the Spanish war, the rape of Central Europe, the decimation of the Jews, the bomb, the ICBM, the computer, the Yangtze's annual flooding to the tune of two million deaths. Isn't it getting late in the century to go maidenly over the death of a polar death-seeker in the 1920s?"

**1994** Kobak, Annette in *New York Times Book Review* 5 Jun: 47.

Part of the polar mind-set seems to be to overreach yourself.

### polar noun

#### A polar tent.

**1986** *Geo [Australasia]* 8(3) Sept–Nov: 20.

Four men in a "polar" is crowded at the best of times, but no more so than when cooking and sleeping.

### polar bear

No, there are no polar bears in Antarctica. Nor penguins in the Arctic.

### polar blackout

An unusually large injection of solar charged particles into the polar ionosphere, often leading to high frequency (3–20 MHz) radio communication failure across the continent. Such events may last for days, occur simultaneously in Antarctica and the Arctic, and are also called 'polar cap absorption' events.

**1960** *Polar Record* 10(65) May: 173.

The incidence of polar blackout and storm types of Es in the two hemispheres.

### polar cap attrib.

[Used in general English for both arctic and antarctic polar areas.]

Relating to the ice-capped area of highest southern latitude; sometimes specifically concerning radiation and radio communication.

**1932** [source: NOED] *Geogr. Rev.* XXII: 81.

The relative lightness and flatness of the sea ice over the entire length of our flight classified it as belonging to the pack-ice zone intermediate between the polar cap ice of the central basin and the fast ice of the coastal shelves.

**1963** Sandford, B.P. in *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(8) Dec: 365.

Protons are channelled by the earth's magnetic field into the polar regions where they descend to a height as low as 30 miles and cause polar blackouts (polar cap disruption events) which disrupt completely all radio communications for periods of days in the polar regions. These protons also give rise to a faint auroral glow (polar glow aurora) covering the whole of the Antarctic and Arctic regions.

**1993** Fiennes, Ranulph *Mind over matter: the epic crossing of the Antarctic continent* Sinclair-Stevenson, London: 132.

There were many nights when I failed to establish communications with Morag due to polar cap absorption, solar flares and other ionospheric disturbances. The problem is that lines of force from the earth's magnetic field curve inward at the poles and draw down, from outer space, electrically charged particles given off by the sun. These interact with other charged particles that are present in the ionosphere. When this happens the ionosphere loses its [sic] normal ability to reflect radio waves from one point on Earth to another. In our case between our tent and Morag in Patriot Hills.

### polar circle

[Recorded in general English (from 1551: NOED) for the circles in both arctic and antarctic polar areas.]

#### The antarctic circle.

**1556** [source: NOED] *Reorde* *The castle of knowledge*: 91.

The climates may well be accompted 48 between the twoo polare circles [sic].

**20 Dec 1773** Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, In the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970), vol 1: 255.

At seven o'clock in the evening, in the longitude of 147°46'. we came, the second time, within the antarct[ic] or pola

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

circle, continuing our course to the S.E. till six o'clock the next morning. At that time, being in the latitude of 67°5', South, all at once we got in among a cluster of very large ice islands, and a vast quantity of loose pieces.

**1827** Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24, 2nd edn* David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 297.

In the case supposed by Dr. Burnet, the sun would be constantly in the horizon of the Poles; and round these points, for ten degrees at least, would consequently have perpetual winter, whilst the Equatorial regions would experience insufferable heat. It is evident that the whole space contained within the Polar Circles would be covered with ice, formed by the condensations of the atmosphere, and which would remain fixed, extending frigid influence some degrees farther.

**1 Feb 1840** (nr 65°S) Dumont Durville, J.S.C. in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 461.

Of course it would not have been impossible to push on further west, and to trace out a greater extent of the ice-pack, or perhaps even find land again. For I believe that the greater part of the polar circle is surrounded by land, and in the end it will be found by some navigator sufficiently fortunate and bold to break through the masses of accumulated ice which ordinarily surround it.

**1901** (1897) Hann, Julius in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 33.

On the whole the weather in summer is generally reported as fine within the Antarctic circle, there is often a clear sky, a bright sun, a light wind, very little fog, but certainly frequent snow showers. The heavy stormy weather prevails outside the polar circle. The almost constant fog of the northern circumpolar area is nowhere to be found in the south.

**1935** Christensen, Lars in Jayne, E.M.G., transl. fr Norwegian *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Staughton, London: 263.

Soundings from and south [sic] of the Polar Circle varied between 4520 and 3980 metres, which proves that the curve of soundings given as 4000 metres in the American Geographical Society's map of 1931, lie 3° too far to the north.

**1990** Naveen, Ron, Monteath, Colin, de Roy, Tui and Jones, Mark *Wild ice: Antarctic journeys* Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington: 111.

This is Nelson Island, part of the South Shetland Islands bordering the western tip of the Antarctic Peninsula. This northern extension of the continent outside the polar circle, where temperatures are comparatively mild, is often called the "Banana Belt of Antarctica."

### polar clothing *noun and attrib.*

Clothing designed for an extremely cold or specifically polar climate: see **anorak**, **blizzard mask**, **bunny boots**, **burberry**, **finnesko**, **jaeger**, **mukluk**, **nose-wiper mitt**, **onitsuka**, **ventiles**.

**2 Sept 1911** (Cape Evans) Wilson, Edward (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912* Blandford Press, London: 168.

Bowers' lecture after dinner on polar clothing history.

**1946** *Polar Record* 4(32) July 9: 373.

Preparations were pressed forward vigorously once a decision had been made to continue work in the Dependencies. The outfitting and equipment were undertaken by the Admiralty on behalf of the Colonial Office, and the necessary supplies, huts, food, fuel, polar clothing, radio equipment and sledge outfits all came from naval stores and were supplied in just over a month.

**1957** Sullivan, Walter *Quest for a continent* Secker & Warburg, London: 203.

Dufek came to the surface, still strapped in the chair, then sank again. The frigid water had brought him to. He freed himself and his water-soaked polar clothing began to pull him down.

**1977** Keneally, Thomas (1978 edn) *A victim of the aurora* Fontana Books/Wm Collins, Glasgow: 16.

I served with the bucket brigade who emptied the engine room, one end of the line working naked and waist-deep in warm water, the other on deck and freezing in polar clothing.

### polar continent

The **antarctic continent**. Antarctica is *the* polar continent: polar land and ice surrounded by ocean; the North Pole is the neat reverse, an oceanic pole surrounded by land.

**31 Dec 1911** (en route to Granite Harbour) Gran, Trygve in McGhie, Ellen-Johanne, transl. fr Norwegian, and Hattersley-Smith, Geoffrey, ed. (1984) *The Norwegian with Scott: Trygve Gran's Antarctic diary 1910–1913* National Maritime Museum, UK: 172.

On New Year's Eve last year, the polar continent was in sight.

**1916** *The Magellan Times* 7 Sept (no. 122): 8.

Although Sir Ernest Shackleton did not succeed in crossing the Polar Continent, he made one important discovery — Punta Arenas.

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 8.

Antarctica possesses a most distinctive character, which, in many particulars, is absolutely unique. Its most prominent feature is its dissimilarity from other continents. It is the only Polar continent ... The sterner sex has every probability of remaining undisturbed in the enjoyment of Antarctica. It is pre-eminently a masculine continent; but it is very beautiful, with an extremely classical type of beauty that is quite distinctive.

**1948** Weetman, Charles *All about Antarctica* Ramsay, Ware Publishing Pty Ltd, Melbourne: 8.

The Antarctic continent — the only polar continent — lies almost entirely within the Antarctic Circle.

**1972** Mason, Theodore K *All about the frozen continent: Antarctica* Paul Hamlyn, Sydney: 50.

The polar continent is like a vast natural laboratory entirely devoted to science.

**1979** (early 1916) Hurley, Frank *Shackleton's argonauts: the epic tale of Shackleton's voyage to Antarctica in 1915* McGraw-Hill Book Co Pty Ltd: 132.

The endless streams of ice cast adrift from the polar continent were being lashed back remorselessly by temperate seas.

**1994** *New Scientist* 11 Jun: 33.

The ice is colonised as it forms in autumn. Freezing winds sweep off the polar continent causing millimetre-sized ice crystals to form in the open sea.

### polar cusp

The peak in the magnetic field at a magnetic pole.

**1989** May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica, 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 64.

At the North and South Poles, there is a gap between the magnetic lines of force on the day and night sides of the planet. At these polar cusps plasma from the solar wind pen-

etrates down magnetic field lines and into the polar upper atmosphere.

## polar desert

[Antarctica has the lowest precipitation of any continent, and the frozen water of the **polar ice cap** cannot support plant or animal life.]

### The antarctic continent.

**1989** *Think South: journal of the 1990 International Trans-Antarctica expedition* [St Paul, Minnesota] Fall: [6].

Amazingly, overall Antarctica is a polar desert, receiving snowfall of less than the equivalent of 2" of water per year.

**1997** Livermore, Beth in *Popular Science* no 2 (Feb): 38.

At Shackleton camp, just 300 miles from the South Pole, it is hard to imagine Antarctica as anything but a polar desert.

## polar ennui

[The depression of the spirit in days of long darkness is well-known in Arctic cultures, and there are words to describe it: for example, the Eskimo *perloromeq winter depression* (see Lopez 1987) and Norwegian *mørktiden dark time*. In modern times, the psychological effect of dark winters has been given the medical name of 'seasonal affective disorder'.]

### A darkness of the soul in the polar night.

**1909** Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907-1909* William Heinemann, London: 216.

We lived under conditions of steady routine, affected only by short spells of bad weather, and found amply sufficient to occupy ourselves in our daily work, so that the spectre known as "polar ennui" never made its appearance.

**1960** Pape, Richard *Poles apart* Odhams Press Ltd, London: 217.

Here they had struggled through the dark months to keep "polar ennui" at bay until the reappearance of daylight.

**1993** Huntford, Roland *Scott and Amundsen* Weidenfeld and Nicolson, London: 179.

Resignation and ennui distinguished the second winter from the first. "Desperately dull," as Bernacchi put it [diary 12 May 1903], "& the genus irritabilis seems to have made its appearance."

## polar flutter noun and attrib.

A distinctive fluttering modulation heard on shortwave radio transmissions which have passed through the **polar regions**. The effect is caused by high-speed changes in the radio wave reflectivity of the polar ionosphere.

**1997** [http://www.mindspring.com/~sstv/vision.htm], accessed 25 Mar 2000 *Vision Newsletter* International Visual Communications Association, Dec.

Look at the picture down this bulletin and remark the "Polar flutter" interference on this one!

## polar front noun and attrib.

[Polar front is recorded in the first sense from 1920 on (NOED).]

### 1. Atmospheric

The area where a colder polar air mass meets a warmer equatorial air mass.

**1936** Byrd, Richard E. *Antarctic discovery* Putnam, London: 161.

What he's looking for is data — data which will give us a clearer understanding of the mysterious processes that create the "cold waves" and the "polar fronts" which exert such a profound influence in the weather of lower latitudes.

**1939** Byrd, Richard E. *Alone* Reader's Union Ltd and Putnam & Co Ltd, London: 12.

Some authorities go so far as to say that each pole is the true weather maker in its respective hemisphere. This latter belief has been formulated in Bjerknes' theory of the polar front, which undertakes to explain atmospheric circulation in terms of the effects produced by the interaction of masses of polar-cooled air, the so-called polar fronts, with the masses of warm equatorial air into which they intrude.

### 2. Oceanographic

A marine zone more commonly called the **antarctic convergence**.

**1977** Joyce, T.M. and Patterson, S.L. in *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XII (4) Oct: 51.

The Polar Front Zone or the Antarctic Convergence — between antarctic and subantarctic surface waters lies in the Antarctic Circumpolar Current.

**1993** Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 26.

For anyone travelling south to the ice, crossing the Polar Front is always a very significant moment.

## polar ice cap

The main ice cap of Antarctica: see **ice cap**.

**1901** (Cape Adare) Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 261.

A theory has been advanced and very widely accepted that the Great Ice Barrier is the front of a huge polar ice-cap, which moves from the South Pole northwards. It has even been calculated that the centre of this polar ice-cap must be three miles, and may be twelve miles, deep, and that the material of this ice mass being viscous, its base must spread out under the crushing pressure of the weight of its centre.

**1907** Ferrar, H.T. *Report of the field-geology of the region explored during the 'Discovery' Antarctic expedition, 1901-04. National Antarctic Expedition 1901-1904, Natural history vol 1: geology* British Museum, London: 63.

[glossary] *Local ice-caps, Hochlandeis*, the ice covering partially or wholly a limited land-mass. This ice may extend as an unbroken mass right down to the sea, or may escape as ice-streams. Such a cap may be defined as an ice-sheet on a small scale. These terms are necessarily relative, for we frequently speak of a polar ice-cap with reference to the earth as a whole.

**1955** Daiziel, Ken *Penguin road* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 16.

The little ship had been sailing for two weeks when the captain said we were getting close to the polar ice-cap, the great sheet of ice surrounding the South Pole.

**1972** Mason, Theodore K. *All about the frozen continent: Antarctica* Paul Hamlyn, Sydney: 18.

Luxuriant fern-like plants flourished on what today supports the great polar ice cap.

**1996** *The Sunday Age* [Melbourne] 19 May: Life 8.

A little over three hours out of Melbourne, passengers see their first iceberg, then dozens of icebergs and the vast polar ice-cap. Qantas has planned 16 routes to take advantage of the best weather conditions.

## polar ice sheet

An **ice sheet**.

**1958** Fuchs, V. in Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund *The crossing of Antarctica: the Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955-58* Cassell & Co, London: 3.

During the course of the journey seismic soundings and a gravity traverse would be made to discover the depth of the polar ice sheet and the form of the rock surface beneath.

**1991** Venables, Stephen *Island at the edge of the world: a South Georgia odyssey* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 74.

We rounded a headland and saw again the massive front of the Nordenskjöld Glacier, one of several polar ice sheets named after the Swedish explorer.

## polar light

[Polar light also applies, in the northern hemisphere, to the aurora borealis.]

### The aurora australis.

**1901** (Cape Adare) Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 129.

At this season of the year the curious and impressive spectacle of the Polar Light was frequently observed. This, which in the Northern hemisphere is the *Aurora Borealis*, is, in contradistinction, called the *Aurora Australis* in the Southern hemisphere. In appearance, however, they differ very little.

**1986** *Australian Natural History* 22(2) Spring: 90.

Both aurora are known collectively as the aurora polaris (polar lights).

## polar night

### Night.

**1 Apr 1899** Gerlache, Captain in *The Geographical Journal* 13 (May): 652.

This supply [sc. seal and penguin] of fresh meat contributed not a little to keep up the health of the ship's company, which remained excellent except during the critical period of the polar night, when cardiac affections gave some trouble.

**1909** Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907-1909* William Heinemann, London: 207.

In order to try and facilitate the reading of the various instruments during the long polar night the dry cells from the motor-car were connected with a cable from the hut to the screen.

**1939** Byrd, Richard E. *Alone* Reader's Union Ltd and Putnam & Co Ltd, London: 148.

By May 17th, one month after the sun had sunk below the horizon, the noon twilight was dwindling to a mere chink in the darkness, lit by a cold reddish glow ... This was the polar night, the morbid countenance of the Ice Age.

**1968** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* III(5) Sept-Oct: 186.

The extremely low temperatures during the polar night cause the balloons to burst at lower altitudes than they do in daylight.

**1994** *Antarctic Society of Australia newsletter* 38 (Sept): 13.

During the polar night on the coasts of Antarctica, the air temperature falls to minus 50°C, and the wind can reach over 250 km/h.

## polar pack ice

Also **polar pack**

### Pack ice.

**1930** Wright in Bernacchi, L.C., co-ordinator *The polar book: produced for the British Polar Exhibition 1930* E. Allom & Co Ltd, London: 36.

Others, even those who have taken part in the operation of "watering ship" in the polar pack, have denied the very possibility that salt ice could become fresh in the course of time.

**1957** Sullivan, Walter *Quest for a continent* Secker & Warburg, London: 354.

There has been enough evidence of warming in recent decades to stimulate speculation as to its possible effect on the Antarctic ice sheet. Some believe that before the century is over polar pack ice will dissipate in summer, opening the

coasts of Antarctica and the northern shores of Canada and the Soviet Union to ordinary shipping.

**1979** Lewis, David *Voyage to the ice: the Antarctic expedition of Solo* Australian Broadcasting Commission/Wm Collins Sons & Co: 9.

We knew that the damping down of the southerly swell coupled with the lowered sea temperature meant that the Polar pack must be close aboard.

**1994** *New Scientist* 11 Jun: 33.

The relentless progress of the icebreaker through the polar pack ice, accompanied by a cacophony of cracking ice, makes it easy to forget that you are at sea.

## polar plateau

The high, relatively featureless and ice-covered part of continental Antarctica. Also **ice plateau**, or shortened to **plateau**.

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 7.

The Polar Plateau discovered by Sir Ernest Shackleton, a thousand miles to the south of the Victoria Land Plateau and occupying the central parts of the continent, rises to nearly 10,000 feet.

**1958** Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund *The crossing of Antarctica: the Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955-58* Cassell & Co, London: 73.

We had to find a tractor route from the polar plateau down to the sea and establish two depots of fuel and food for the crossing party.

**1963** (Dec 1957, between Scott Base and the Pole) McKenzie, Douglas *Opposite poles* Robert Hale & Co, London/ Whitcombe & Tombs, New Zealand: 11.

Slumbering on contentedly through midnight's brilliant sunshine, the camp finally rose at three in the morning; the party was on the trail at five, and a half an hour later it had the leading tractor splendidly in a crevasse. In all the circumstances of the polar plateau this was probably only slightly less inevitable than dinner-jacket cartoons about penguins, although much, much less appreciated.

**1969** Keneally, Thomas *The survivor* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 276.

Within a few hours Ramsey was squinting at the boggling nullity of the polar plateau.

**1990** (Auster rookery) Robertson, Graham in *Australian Geographic* 20 (Dec): 80.

Blizzards of up to 200 km/h rake the colony and freezing katabatic winds blow off the polar plateau, intensifying the cold.

**1995** (Commonwealth Bay) *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* 14(3) Mar: 6.

The edge of the polar plateau horizon had become "furry". King Blizzard had discovered our presence and decided to tease us with a flash katabatic.

## polar pyramid

Mainly Aust. Also **polar pyramid tent**

### A pyramid tent.

**19 Sept 1911** (on the Barrier) Gran, Trygve in McGhie, Ellen-Johanne, transl. fr Norwegian, and Hattersley-Smith, Geoffrey, ed. (1984) *The Norwegian with Scott: Trygve Gran's Antarctic diary 1910-1913* National Maritime Museum, UK: 124.

These double tents are excellent. With the primus going they are really warm.

Footnote: (PO) Evans has made a lining for one of the tents; it is secured on the inner side of the poles and provides an air space inside the tent. I think it is going to be a great success. R.F. Scott.]



**30 Aug 1961** Grimsley, Steve in Robinson, Shelagh (1995) *Huskies in harness: a love story in Antarctica* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 33.

I felt confident that we could weather any storm in as much comfort as possible in a polar pyramid tent.

**1986** *Geo [Australasia]* 8(3) Sept–Nov: 16.

Our canvas polar pyramid tent was placed on top of the boxes.

**1996** *Icy News: [Australian] Antarctic Division staff newsletter* 1 Mar: [2].

Poor Matt and Doug have spent the last month in the Prince Charles Mountains living in a polar pyramid. Now these tents are pyramid shape, hence the name and have a base of approximately six feet with a roof that obviously tapers off to a point. This design guarantees that only one can stand up in the tent at any one time. When one does stand up, one must stand in the middle. If one wishes to stretch then one must stick one's head in the apex of the said tent. Overall the accommodation is not very pleasant, but still a lot more comfortable than sleeping Al fresco under the stars.

## polar regions

The **antarctic regions**.

**1778** Forster, Johann Reinhold, in Thomas, N., Guest, H. and Dettelbach, M., eds (1996) *Observations made during a voyage round the world* University of Hawai'i Press, Honolulu: 75.

It may, perhaps, not be improper to suppose, that the whole Polar region, from 80° and upwards, in the Southern hemisphere, remains a solid ice for several years together.

**1827** Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24*, 2nd edn David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 297.

In presenting to the public the following considerations, relating to the probability of the Polar Regions being open, I must necessarily use the data upon which both the early and late expeditions towards the North Pole have been projected, as these must continue to be the principal grounds of reasoning till the matter shall be set at rest by actual observation.

**1909** (Ross Sea) Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907–1909* William Heinemann, London: 69.

We were now revelling in the indescribable freshness of the Antarctic that seems to permeate one's being, and which must be responsible for that longing to go again which assails each returned explorer from polar regions.

**1911** Charcot, Jean Baptiste Auguste Etienne *The voyage of the 'Pourquoi-pas'* Australian National University Press facs, Canberra (1978): 14.

In the Polar regions, where for most of the time fresh water can only be obtained by melting down snow or ice, it is necessary to devise practical means of providing it.

**1946** *Polar Record* 4(32) July 9: 370.

The search for uranium ores has in fact little to do with the present activities. The motive in many cases is evidently connected with the establishment or strengthening of territorial claims. This may be regretted by those whose interest in the Polar Regions is primarily scientific, but the present activities, apart from providing opportunities for exploration and research which would not have existed otherwise, may hasten the time when some final political agreement may be reached.

**1994** *Antarctic Society of Australia newsletter* no 39 (Dec): 14.

The transport of ozone-depleted air from polar regions has the potential to influence ozone concentrations at middle latitudes.

## polar seas

**Antarctic waters.**

**1901** (in the Antarctic pack, Jan 1899) Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 58.

The sun and the moon are really the only familiar objects in those cold Polar seas.

**1931** *The New York Times* 28 Jun: suppl. 8.

[caption] The fragmentary stump of an immense iceberg in the final stages of disintegration, one of the greatest hazards feared by mariners in the polar seas.

**1976** Kerr, I.S. *Campbell Island: a history* A.H. & A.W. Reed Ltd, Wellington: 28.

Between 1819 and 1843 the polar seas were extensively explored, the existence of the Antarctic continent was established and parts of its coastline were roughed in.

## polar stratospheric cloud

Long, icy cloud which forms in extremely cold air — below about -80°C — in the stratosphere above the poles in winter and spring, and provides a suitable environment for the ozone-depleting reaction which leads to the **ozone hole**.

**1989** Rosen, J.M. in *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XXIV(1) Sept: 16.

Polar stratospheric clouds (PSCs) have a significant role in the annual springtime depletion of ozone above Antarctica

**1995** Johnson, Rebecca L. *Science on the ice* Lerner Publications Co, Minneapolis: 56.

McMurdo scientists were using laser beams to study polar stratospheric clouds, which play a key role in the ozone hole's formation.

## polar summer *noun and attrib.*

The **antarctic summer**.

**1901** (Cape Adare) Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 214.

There is nothing in tropical or sub-tropical regions that can compare with the splendid colouring and purity of a polar summer scene, when all the lofty and majestic peaks of snow are bathed in the soft light of the midnight sun. Midnight without darkness and without stars! and the unwearied sun above the horizon visible right through the twenty-four hours.

**1936** Byrd, Richard Evelyn *Antarctic discovery* Putnam, London: 351.

The mild manifestation of a polar summer! In December snow fell 16 days; 8 days were foggy; 20 days were cloudy or partly overcast. The lowest temperature was -1°.

**1964** (nr Mt Longhurst) Helm, A.S. and Miller, J.H. *Antarctica: the story of the New Zealand party of the Trans-Antarctic expedition* R.E. Owen, Government Printer, Wellington: 285.

This 24-hour day was the one compensating factor of the polar summer, for the weather had twice as many opportunities of clearing while the unfortunate observer had twice as many opportunities of working himself to death. Surveyors are impatient mortals. Weather was such an important factor that when conditions were favourable the surveyors pushed themselves on and on while daylight permitted, which in the polar summer meant all day and every day for at least four months.

**1981** Land, Barbara *The new explorers: women in Antarctica* Dodd, Mead & Co, New York: 29.

During the polar summer — November, December, and January — the sun never falls below the horizon. It moves

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

around the sky in a circle that grows smaller and smaller until late December when it shines, almost directly overhead, twenty-four hours a day. Then the circle begins to widen and the sun moves lower in the sky until late March. After a long dusk, it disappears for six months. The Antarctic night ends with the gray-pink dawn of late September.

**polar tent** *Mainly NZ, Brit.*

A **pyramid tent**.

**1901** (nr Cape Adare) Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 155.

We really enjoyed the hot coffee, after which the four of us managed, not without difficulty, to squeeze into the small polar tent by laying [sic] crossways.

**1949** (Graham Land) *The Sphere* [London] CXCVI no. 2559 (19 Feb): 272.

[caption] Double-skinned Polar tents are used on these trips, but sometimes the men prefer to build weatherproof igloos.

**1963** (polar plateau) McKenzie, Douglas *Opposite poles* Robert Hale & Co, London/ Whitcombe & Tombs, New Zealand: 59.

It was said that a British polar two-man tent anywhere from Greenland to Grahamland would have exactly the same routine for making camp and exactly the same arrangement for the gear inside: the pots-and-pans box between the head of the two sleeping-bags, the food box at the foot and the hissing primus in the middle.

**1992** Lied, Commander Nils Oscar: *the true story of a husky Kerr* Publishing, Sydney: 51.

Syd had managed to get the middle spot in the tent to sleep in, much sought after in a Polar tent because it's so much warmer with the body heat of one man on each side.

## polar vortex

A discrete body of cold air encircled by westerly winds, forming over Antarctica each winter and dissipating in spring. It has also been called the **antarctic vortex**.

**1987** Farman, Joe in *New Scientist* 116(1586) 12 Nov: 50.

The circulation of the winter stratosphere over Antarctica and the surrounding oceans is dominated by the polar vortex, a region of very cold air surrounded by strong westerly winds. Air within the vortex is isolated from that at lower latitudes. The vortex forms soon after the March equinox, with the onset of the southern winter.

**1994** *Looking South* [Newsletter of the Australian Working Group on Antarctic Astronomy] no 2 (Apr): 10.

Only during the Antarctic night and within the Polar Vortex is the atmosphere so dry, clear, dark, calm and stable.

## polar wander path *noun*

The path traced during the motion of the earth's polar axis caused by the redistribution of its mass. This can be through lunar influences, global seasonal accumulation and melting of ice, or longer term tectonic or inner earth changes.

[**1987** Bates, Robert L. and Jackson, Julia A., eds *Glossary of geology*, 3rd edn American Geological Institute, Alexandria: 516.

Polar wandering (a) Short-period movement of the Earth's poles, resulting from wobbling of its axis. (b) Long-period, more or less systematic displacement of the Earth's poles, which may have occurred during the passage of geologic time.]

**1991** Tingey, Robert J. *The geology of Antarctica* Clarendon Press, Oxford: 142.

[caption] Polar wander path for Beacon times (400 to 180 Ma ago).

## polar water(s)

### Antarctic waters.

**19 Dec 1929** (65°S 74°E) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 286.

The inversion temperature now lower down, and most of water is 'polar water'.

**1963** *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* 2 (Dec): 16.

Before reaching polar waters precautions are taken to prepare the vessel for cold weather operations.

**1990** Byles, Monica *Life in the polar lands* Puffin Books, Great Britain: 15.

[caption] A killer whale breaching. Killer whales are in fact members of the dolphin family. They can swim as fast as 40 kph (25 miles per hour). They swim in all oceans but prefer polar waters.

## polar winter

The colder of the two antarctic seasons; sometimes regarded as equinox to equinox, sometimes as a five to nine month part of the year, associated with more intense cold, darkness, isolation from the rest of the world. See also **(antarctic) winter**.

**1901** (Cape Adare) Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 132.

It would be tedious to continually refer to all the small annoyances, the satiety of each other's company, and the sentiments of melancholia which, to a certain extent, are inevitable during a long polar winter.

**1935** *National Geographic* LXVIII(1) Jul: 107.

Admiral Byrd ... was the first to maintain a large personnel in good health, with flying machines through a rigorous polar winter.

**1964** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(11) Sept: 495.

It was the middle of the polar winter, and it is a 4000 km trip from Mirny to Molodezh and back.

**1991** Bradshaw, Margaret *Canterbury Museum's Antarctica: a supplement to the displays at Canterbury Museum* Canterbury Museum, Christchurch: 2.

In summer, most parts of the continent receive continuous sunlight, but during the polar winter, the same areas receive continuous night.

## Pole, the *noun and attrib.*

[The pole is recorded from 1551 (NOED: see below) for both extremities of the earth.]

The **South Pole** (sense 1).

**1551** [source: NOED] *Recorde Pathw. Knowl.* 1.

Defin.. The two poyntes that such a lyne maketh in the utter bounde or platte of the globe, are named polis, w<sup>ch</sup> you may call aptly in englysh, tourne pointes.

**c1579** Legg, William *The famous voyage of Sir Francis Drake into the South Sea, and therehence about the whole globe of the earth, begun in the year of Our Lord 1577* quoted in David, Richard (1981) *Hakluyt's voyages* Chatto and Windus, London: 517.

From the first day of our departure from the islands of Cape Verde, we sailed 54 days without sight of land. And the first land that we fell with was the coast of Brazil, which we saw the fifth of April in the height of 33 degrees towards the pole antarctic.

**6 Feb 1775** Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, In the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide 1970, vol II: 230.

We were in the latitude of 58°15'S., longitude 21°34' West, and seeing neither land nor signs of any, I concluded that what we had seen, which I named Sandwich Land, was either a group of islands, or else a point of the continent. For I firmly believe that there is a track [sic] of land near the pole which is the source of most of the ice that is spread over this vast Southern Ocean. I also think it probable that it extends farthest to the North opposite the Southern Atlantic and Indian Oceans; because ice was always found by us farther to the North in these oceans than any where else, which I judge could not be, if there were not land to the South; I mean land of considerable extent. For if we suppose that no such land exists, and that ice may be formed without it, it will follow of course that the cold ought to be every where nearly equal round the pole, as far as 70° or 80° of latitude, or so far as to be beyond the influence of any of the known continents; consequently we ought to see ice every where under the same parallel, or near it: and yet the contrary has been found. Very few ships have met with ice going round Cape Horn; and we saw but little below the sixtieth degree of latitude, in the Southern Pacific Ocean. Whereas in this ocean, between the meridian of 40° West and 50° or 60° East, we found ice as far North as 51°.

**3 Jan 1912** (87°32'S, about 148 miles fr the South Pole) Wilson, Edward (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912* Blandford Press, London: 229.

Last night Scott told us what the plans were for the South Pole. Scott, Oates, Bowers, Petty Officer Evans and I are to go to the Pole ... 4 Jan 1912 We are now 5 and as we have only 4 pair of ski, Bowers has to go on foot just behind Scott and myself.

**1939** Byrd, Richard E. *Alone* Reader's Union Ltd and Putnam & Co Ltd, London: 5.

I had been to both poles ... But for me there was little sense of true achievement.

**1962** Davis, J.K. *High latitude* Melbourne University Press, Parkville: 109.

'Did you get to the Pole, sir?' 'No,' replied Shackleton, 'but we got within ninety-seven miles of it!' A sledging journey of 127 days and 1,725 miles, summed up in a single sentence!

**1964** Hatherton, T. in Quartermain, L.B. *South from New Zealand: an introduction to Antarctica* Antarctic Division, DSIR Wellington: 62.

The principal interest of Antarctica lies in its Pole-centred position, for this produces extremes of daylight and darkness.

**1964** (1957) Helm, A.S. and Miller, J.H. *Antarctica: the story of the New Zealand party of the Trans-Antarctic expedition* R.E. Owen, Government Printer, Wellington: 333.

On the morning of Boxing Day, Scott Base received the dramatic news from Hillary "We are hell-bent for the Pole, God willing and crevasses permitting."

**1997** Falconer, Delia *The service of clouds* Picador, Sydney: 68.

The air [sc. of Hobart] was as chill and sweet as a meringue and the whole island seemed to drift south towards the Pole.

**1998** United States Antarctic Program *Amundsen-Scott South Pole station guide* National Science Foundation, Arlington Virginia: 115.

McMurdo will send mail to Pole as soon as it is received.

## Pole-dweller

An **expeditioner**, an inhabitant of antarctic regions — not necessarily the South Pole.

**1954** Giaever, John, transl. fr Norwegian by Huggard, E.M. *Tr white desert: the official account of the Norwegian-British-Swedish antarctic expedition* Chatto & Windus, London: 218.

Between us and the Canary Islands there still lay many a mile of rolling sea, with days of heat that were to fling us pole-dwellers sweltering on our bunks.

## Pole-hunting verbal noun

[Pole-hunting is recorded for North and South Poles from 1907 (see below) onwards.]

Seeking the **South Pole**, especially to be first there.

**1907** [source: NOED] *Daily Chron.* 30 Jul: 4.

The Nimrod .. sails from the East India Dock today to pick up Lieutenant Shackleton .. and convey him towards the South Pole ... But the point is not merely that the Nimrod is to go Pole-hunting.

**1920** *Glasgow Herald* Aug: 4.

Such an expedition [sc. to the Antarctic], undertaken not for pole-hunting but for observation and collection in all possible branches of science, accumulates abundant material.

**1999** Caesar, Adrian *The white Picador*, Sydney: 9.

Mawson argues that to explore the coastline as he plans is of more economic and scientific importance to Australia than Pole-hunting.

## pole of cold

The place on earth where the coldest temperature has been recorded.

**1901** Supan, A. in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual: for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 50.

Land-ice and sea-ice behave themselves .. very differently as regards their summer conditions. The sea-ice breaks up into floes, while the land-ice remains always a compact mass. Accordingly we find in the summer observations a new confirmation of the supposed Antarctic continent, and we may fairly expect that, owing to the very slight rise of temperature in summer, we shall find there the absolutely lowest yearly temperature, the absolute Pole of Cold on the Earth.

**1964** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne, Nov: 21.

Temperature measurements in boreholes have shown that the pole of cold of our planet lies on Sovetskoye Plateau, approximately half-way between Vostok and the Pole of Inaccessibility. Mean annual temperatures there reach -60° while the lowest winter temperatures there can be as low as 90° and even 100° below zero.

## pole of inaccessibility Also area (or point) of inaccessibility, pole of relative inaccessibility

The point in continental Antarctica, variously defined as about 84°S (or 82°30'S, or 78°S), and 65°E (or 56°E, or 70°E), considered the hardest to reach; often defined as the furthest point from the sea. It is also called the **antarctic pole of inaccessibility**.

**1948** Weetman, Charles *All about Antarctica* Ramsay, Ware Publishing Pty Ltd, Melbourne: 146.

The most difficult spot on the earth to reach is considered by Byrd to be a point somewhere in the neighbourhood of 78°S. latitude, 70°E. longitude. To this point he has given the name "The Pole of Inaccessibility."

**1956** Dufek, George in *Pegasus* Oct: 6.

The Pole of Inaccessibility at Latitude 82S, Longitude 40–50E ... is considered the hardest geographical point to reach of any spot in Antarctica, due to its location and distance from conceivable take-off points.

**1956** Byrd, Richard E. in *National Geographic* 110(2): 160. Our first goal was the so-called "area of inaccessibility," the heart of the United States-size section of East Antarctica.

**1957** *Polar Record* 8(57) Sept: 541.

There has been no mention of detailed plans for establishing "Sovetskaya" at the Pole of Relative Inaccessibility.

**1969** Billing, Graham *South. Man and nature in Antarctica: a New Zealand view* A.H. & A.W. Reed, Wellington, 2nd ed: 20.

A snow crystal which fell at the Pole of Inaccessibility would take tens of thousands of years to reach the coast with the steady radial flow of the sheet.

**1979** Lovering, J.F. and Prescott, J.R.V. *Last of lands ... Antarctica* Melbourne University Press, Parkville: 3.

East Antarctica ... is covered by an irregular ice dome centred slightly east of the Pole of Relative Inaccessibility, which marks the point most distant from the sea in all directions.

**1984** Cameron, Ian *Exploring Antarctica Royal Geographical Society Exploring Series* Longmans, London: 54.

The Russians agreed to set up four posts, including one at the Pole of Inaccessibility.

**1996** Spielmann, James in *The Pioneer [New Delhi]* 17 May: 9.

The lake ... is near the pole of inaccessibility, the patch of Antarctica farthest from the ocean, which is 500 miles (800 kilometres) away.

**1997** Robinson, Kim Stanley *Antarctica* HarperCollins, London: 172.

'He skis around the polar cap between Vostok and Dome C and the Point of Inaccessibility.'

## Pole to Pole, from *adverbial phr.*

North Pole to **South Pole**.

**1844** Hooker, Joseph Dalton *The botany of the Antarctic voyage of H.M. Discovery ships Erebus and Terror in the years 1839–1843, under the command of Captain Sir James Clark Ross* Reeve Bros, London, vol 1: 505.

These organisms (diatoms) ... possess more than ordinary interest, many of the species being distributed from Pole to Pole.

**1849** Cooper, James Fenimore *The sea lions; or, the lost sealers* Richard Bentley, London: 175.

"And you have undertaken such an outfit, and come this long distance into an icy sea, on information as slight as this!" exclaimed Roswell, astonished at this proof of sagacity and enterprise, even in men who are renowned for scenting dollars from pole to pole.

**1967** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 4(9) Mar: 474.

Conrad had completed all details for the flight, which was to have marked the first time a light aircraft had girdled the world from Pole-to-Pole.

**1992** Palin, Michael [title] *Pole to Pole* BBC Books, London.

**1996** Wilford, John Noble *New York Times* 20 Mar: D24.

Walter Sullivan, a science reporter and editor .. whose articles took him from pole to pole .. died yesterday.

## poleward *adverb*

[Polarward is recorded from 1832 to 1890 (NOED), meaning "towards the polar regions", in the case of their quotations, probably all referring to arctic regions.]

Towards the **South Pole** (sense 1).

**1900** Cook, Frederick A. *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: xiii.

Our farthest south was on May 31st, latitude 71°36' 5" south, longitude 87°40' west. It would not at any time have been possible to push farther poleward in our position.

**1938** Evans, Admiral Sir Edward RGR *South with Scott* Collins, London: 7.

The only way in which we could repay them was to select two chief Petty Officers from their number, disrate them, and take them Poleward as ordinary seamen.

**1960** Pape, Richard *Poles apart* Odhams Press Ltd, London: 178.

Thrusting Pole-ward in these high, cold latitudes towards the frigid seventies stirred a consciousness of having entered what amounted almost to a different universe.

## polynya *Also polynia*

[From Russian *Полюья* area of open water (NOED), recorded in English from 1853.]

An expanse of open water in **pack ice** or **fast ice**, sometimes persisting over a long time. The 1956 quotation does not wholly apply to antarctic polynyas — and there are no large rivers in Antarctica. Polynyas may be vast: one in the Weddell Sea's winter ice from 1974 to 1976 was the size of the Black Sea. See also **lake**.

**11 Dec 1929** (64°S 78°E) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 277.

We passed through one polynia after another; belts of pack very narrow and ice rotten.

**1956** Armstrong, Terence and Roberts, Brian *Polar Record* 8(52) Jan: 8.

[glossary] Polynya: A large area of open water, surrounded by sea ice and found in the same region every year. One side is sometimes formed by the coast. Polynyas commonly occur off the mouths of big rivers.

**1979** Lewis, David *Voyage to the ice: the Antarctic expedition of Solo* Australian Broadcasting Commission/Wm Collins Sons & Co: 55.

At 1 am on January 9 we hove-to in a vast polynia (a lake of open water in the midst of the pack).

**1981** Ackley, S.F. in Allison, Ian, ed. *Sea level ice and climatic change. Proc. symp. 7–8 December 1979, International Union of Geodesy and Geophysics, Canberra* International Association of Hydrological Sciences publication no. 131: 133.

Most of this decrease [sc. in ice cover] is due to a large polynya (open water within the pack ice zone) which formed in the eastern Weddell Sea region in 1974–1976 but not in 1973. Aside from polynya formation there is a tendency for increased ice extent in one region to be balanced by decrease in another.

**1998** *Herald-Sun [Melbourne]* 23 July: 15.

The nine-year-old *Aurora Australis* ... left Hobart last week for a seven-week voyage to study polynya, an area where winds break up the sea ice and cause heavy, salt-laden water to sink to the ocean floor.

## pont *verb*

[From the name of Herbert George Ponting, photographer on Scott's 1910–13 expedition.]

To pose, in polar discomfort, for a photograph: see 1921 quotation. Hence **ponting**, *verbal noun*.

**29 Sept 1911** (Cape Evans) Wilson, Edward (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912* Blandford Press, London: 172.

After horse exercising I went up the Ramp, and in the afternoon posed, or as we call it here, 'ponted' for Ponting with

several of the others as a foreground to the hut and Mount Erebus in the cinematograph.

<sup>Footnote:</sup> Cecil Meares contributed a verse on this theme to the *South Polar Times*, the refrain of which ran as follows:

"Then pont, Ponko, pont and long may Ponko pont;

With his finger on the trigger of his 'gadget';

For whenever he's around, we're sure to hear the sound  
Of his high speed cinematographic ratchet."

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* Duckworth, London: 182.

Taylor had invented a new verb, consisting of the first syllable of my name — 'to pont', meaning 'to pose, until nearly frozen, in all sorts of uncomfortable positions' for my photographs. This latest mishap revived all the former quizzing about the evil-eye propensities of my camera, and I was once again the butt for no end of twitting about 'the peril of "ponting" for Ponko' — the latter being my nickname.

**1974** Savours, Anne, ed. *Scott's last voyage through the Antarctic camera of Herbert Ponting* Sidgwick & Jackson, UK: 7.

When Ponko was not ponting or processing his plates or teaching his colleagues how to take photographs, he had an additional duty — to lecture to the party of thirty-three who were over wintering at the base camp on Cape Evans.

**1984** (1912) Gran, Trygve in McGhie, Ellen-Johanne, transl. fr Norwegian, and Hattersley-Smith, Geoffrey, ed. *The Norwegian with Scott: Trygve Gran's Antarctic diary 1910–1913* National Maritime Museum, UK: 172.

Ponting came along and after complimenting us on our villainous appearance, begged us to remain picturesque until the sun showed enough light for a photograph! Luckily we had only to wait a few hours for this specimen of 'ponting'.

**1997** Preston, Diana *A first rate tragedy* Constable, London: 160. Clissold the excellent cook, who should have gone with the motor party, tumbled off a small iceberg and concussed himself while posing or 'ponting' as it had come to be known — Griffith Taylor, with his usual wit, had defined 'to pont' as 'to spend a deuce of a time posing in an uncomfortable position'.

## pool

### A lake.

**1827** (South Shetlands, Oct 1823) Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24*, 2nd edn David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 127.

About 5 P.M. we had reached a pool about one mile in diameter, though with many heavy pieces of ice floating in it.

**1964** (in the *Thala Dan*) Styles, D.F. *Narrative. Coastal exploration of Kemp and Enderby Lands, Antarctica. ANARE reports Series A vol. I* Antarctic Division, Dept of External Affairs, Melbourne: 10.

We manoeuvred on a zig-zag course through belts of pack separating open pools.

**1984** (in antarctic pack ice) Fletcher, Harold *Antarctic days with Mawson: a personal account of the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929–31* Angus and Robertson, London: 122.

The ship, with engines stopped, was drifting in a fairly large pool of open water.

## porpoise verb

*[The early quotations (1827, 1879 and 1902) show the verb in its beginnings.]*

Esp. of **penguins**: to move rapidly through water by taking repeated arcing leaps above the surface, alternating with submerged swimming. Hence **porpoising**, verbal noun.

**[1827** (South Shetlands, Oct 1823) Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24*, 2nd edn David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 141.

These fur-seals may be distinguished from the hair-seals of this hemisphere by their being rather of a smaller size, and having the nose smaller and more pointed. In swimming they have a jumping motion like that of the porpoise.

**1879** (Inaccessible Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 117.

As we approached the shore, I was astonished at seeing a shoal of what looked like extremely active very small porpoises or dolphins. I could not imagine what the things could be, unless they were indeed some most marvellously small Cetaceans; they showed black above and white beneath, and came along in a shoal of fifty or more, from seawards towards the shore at a rapid pace, by a series of successive leaps out of the water, and splashes into it again, describing short curves in the air, taking headers out of the water and headers into it again; splash, splash, went this marvellous shoal of animals, till they went splash through the surf on to the black stony beach, and there struggled and jumped up amongst the boulders and revealed themselves as wet and dripping penguins, for such they were. Much as I had read about the habits of penguins, I never could have believed that the creatures I saw thus progressing through the water, were birds, unless I had seen them to my astonishment thus make on shore.

**1902** Hutton, Captain F.W. in *The Emu* II(1) Jul: 1.

So rapid is their flight under water that the Crested Penguins (*Catarrhactes*) and the Johnnies (*Pygoscelis*) spring out of the water, with their wings close to their sides, and take a long leap through the air like porpoises.]

**21 Dec 1910** (near 68°41'S, 179°28'W) Wilson, Edward (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912* Blandford Press, London: 82.

We saw a lot of the Adélie Penguins today, almost all young ones with the white throat, porpoising. They go at a tremendous rate using their wings under the water and leaping out clear of the water, like dolphins, to get a breath without losing any of their pace.

**1914** Levick, Dr G. Murray *Antarctic penguins: a study of their social habits* William Heinemann, London: 79.

In the water, as on the land, they [sc. the Adélie] have two means of progression. The first is by swimming as a duck swims, excepting that they lie much lower in the water than a duck does ... The second method is by "porpoising." This consists in swimming under water, using the wings or "flippers" for propulsion, the action of these limbs being practically the same as they would be in flying ... In porpoising, after travelling thirty feet or so under water, they rise from it, shooting clean out with an impetus that carries them a couple of yards in the air, then with an arch of the back they are head first into the water again, swimming a few more strokes, then out again, and so on.

**1915** (South Georgia) Murphy, Robert Cushman in *Country Life* 4 Sept (no 10): 322.

The Johnny Penguins often feed far at sea, but during the long breeding season they apparently all return to the land for the night. In late afternoon we usually saw long troops of them "porpoising" into the fjords from the sea.

**1967** Gillham, Mary E. *Sub-Antarctic sanctuary: summertime on Macquarie Island* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Wellington: 41.

Most entertaining were the porpoising penguins which looped back and forth around the ship like greased black lightning, hurling themselves clear of the water in shining arcs ... Not all of the penguins can lift themselves clear of the sea like this by the sheer momentum of their streamlined passage, but it is the same impetus which carries them out of the water onto a rock or ice floe in one cleanly executed leap.

**1988** Butler, Rowan *Breaking the ice* Albatross Books, Sydney: 100.

On the way to the island we passed the Adelie penguin rookery on Shirley Island ... The water was busy with black and white torpedoes swimming below the smooth surface and occasionally porpoising for a quick breath. They shot into the air, still enveloped in a glistening sheath of icy water, plopped cleanly back into the dark sea and swam on, the whole exercise done in one effortless movement.

### Port Egmont hen *Historical*

[From Port Egmont in the northwest of the Falkland Islands, named by Commodore John Byron ('We entered a harbour of much greater extent, which I called Port Egmont') in January 1765, after First Lord of the Admiralty, John Percival, second Earl of Egmont. According to Hugh Walpole, Egmont was never known to laugh; it was under his presumably solemn direction that Byron's voyage was undertaken.]

The sea bird *Catharacta skua*: see **skua**. Also shortened to **Egmont hen**.

**19 Jan 1773** (nr 62°S, 42°E) Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, In the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide 1970, vol 1: 44.

In the evening, being in the latitude of 64°12' South, longitude 40°15' East, a bird called by us in my former voyage, Port Egmont Hen, (on account of the great plenty of them at Port Egmont in Falkland Isles) came hovering several times over the ship, and then left us in the direction of N.E. They are a short thick bird about the size of a large crow, of a dark brown or chocolate colour, with a whitish streak under each wing in the shape of a half moon. I have been told that these birds are found in great plenty at the Fero Isles, North of Scotland; and that they never go far from land. Certain it is, I never before saw them above forty leagues off; but I do not remember ever seeing fewer than two together; whereas, here was but one, which, with the islands of ice, may have come a good way from land.

**1827** (South Shetlands, Oct 1823) Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24, 2nd edn* David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 144.

The small species of penguins are here abundant; and of sea-fowl, the following may be enumerated: gulls; Port Egmont hens; white pigeons; the grey petrel, called by sailors the Nelly; snow birds; and, on the coast, I have seen blue petrels.

**3 Jan 1840** (nr 53°S, 157°E) Wilkes, Charles in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 363.

A large number of albatrosses, Port Egmont hens, and petrels were seen.

**1922** (South Georgia) Murphy, Robert Cushman in *National Geographic* 41(4) Apr: 413.

Captain Cook .. noted the albatrosses, gulls, "Port Egmont hens", which circled over the seas, and the small titlarks of the land.

**1937** Falla, R.A. *Birds. BANZARE reports series B, vol 2* Hassell Press, Adelaide: 19.

Other birds seen or collected are described .. as albatross, Port Egmont hens (skuas) [etc.].

### pram

[From Old Slavic *parm*, *parm* to cross a river. The word was brought to Antarctica with Norwegian explorers, and exists in Norwegian as *praam*. It is known in British English from at least 1634 (NOED).]

A small, shallow-draught ship's rowing boat, used especially for landings on rough beaches.

**10 Dec 1910** (on the ship, about 63 degrees south) Griffith Taylor, T. in Hanley, Wayne, ed. (1978) *The Griffith Taylor collection: diaries and letters of a geographer in Antarctica* Geography Department, University of New England, Armidale: 30.

Simpson and Titus Oates (Major, charge of ponies) pulled off in the pram, a queer shaped norwegian boat to collect those farther afield.

**1938** Ommanney, F.D. *South latitude* Longman, Green & Co., London: 60.

They swung a "pram" over the side and we rowed ashore. A "pram" is a shallow boat shaped rather like a saucer which the Norwegians use for landing on steep and difficult beaches. Since it is so shallow, it just perches on the surface of the water and is thus very easy to manoeuvre.

**1950** (South Georgia) Saunders, Alfred *A camera in Antarctica* Winchester Publications, London: 47.

A catcher from one of the other stations which had already begun whaling, entered the harbour with a pram<sup>1</sup> in tow.  
<sup>1</sup>Footnote: A small, light, round-bottomed boat about ten to twelve feet long and tapering to a point in depth as well as in breadth at the bows. It is very useful for landing in a rough sea or on a sandy beach, but very difficult to manage except by an expert.

**1964** Helm, A.S. and Miller, J.H. *Antarctica: the story of the New Zealand party of the Trans-Antarctic expedition* R.E. Owen, Government Printer, Wellington: 153.

Pram Point was the low, rounded point projecting from the south-eastern side of Hut Point peninsula about 1¼ miles north-east of Cape Armitage on Ross Island. It was discovered by Captain Scott in his 1901–04 expedition, and he named it because it was necessary to use a pram — a Norwegian-type dinghy — in the open water adjacent to the point when travelling between the southern end of the peninsula and the Ross Ice Shelf.

**1971** (South Georgia) Brown, Nan *Antarctic housewife* Hutchinson of Australia, Melbourne: 135.

The praam, a blunt prowed boat which had been towed astern, was brought alongside and men and stores were transferred into it.

**1991** Venables, Stephen *Island at the edge of the world: a South Georgia odyssey* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 91.

The sealers were a tough, eccentric, polyglot bunch, many of them Argentinian Poles. They worked in dangerous conditions, rowing ashore in little prams, through a heaving swell, often contending with icebergs, rock reefs and oar-catching tentacles of kelp.

### pressure ice *Also pressure*

Heaped jumbles of broken ice, built up on **sea ice** or **glacier ice** under lateral pressure.

**5 Dec 1908** (83°S) Shackleton, E.H. (1909) *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907–1909* William Heinemann, London: 312.

Close ahead of us were the massed-up, fantastically shaped and spilt masses of pressure across which it would have been impossible for us to have gone.

**21 Nov 1912** Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 134.

We pushed on but got into pressure ice of Drygalski Tongue. **1939** Byrd, Richard E. *Alone* Reader's Union Ltd and Putnam & Co Ltd, London: 19.

In between .. was a mile-wide belt of pressure ice ... Unless you have seen pressure, you cannot imagine what it is like.

**1962** (nr Scott Base) Henderson, Jim *One foot at the Pole* Whitcombe & Tombs, Christchurch: 141.

Away out to the right stretches a long wave of broken ice, like a storm of flying breakers and spray on the seashore suddenly frozen and held. Pressure ice.

**1991** Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 397.

[glossary] Pressure ice — floating ice forced up in parts by lateral pressure to form hummocks.

**pressure dome** Also *pressure mound*

An igloo-like dome of **sea ice** (sometimes broken on top), resulting from a violent release of pressure which lifts and shatters the ice.

**1963** (en route to Browning Peninsula) *Wilkes Hard Times [Antarctica]* 1(11) Dec: 3.

Part of this track is on blue ice, which shows interesting pressure domes here and there.

**1993** Fiennes, Ranulph *Mind over matter: the epic crossing of the Antarctic continent* Sinclair-Stevenson, London: 198.

All around, as far as the eye could see, were pressure mounds and cracks. As Shackleton's friend Wild once wrote, 'the view is exactly as one would see from a small boat in a very rough sea'.

**pressure pack**

**Heavy pack.**

**1964** (in the *Thala Dan*) Styles, D.I. *Narrative. Coastal exploration of Kemp and Enderby Lands, Antarctica. ANARE reports Series A vol. 1* Antarctic Division, Dept of External Affairs, Melbourne: 13.

We .. were disappointed at soon meeting heavy pressure pack which forced us to go west.

**pressure ridge** Also *pressure wall* or *wave*

[The 1898 quotation might refer to **sastrugi** rather than to what is now called a 'pressure ridge'.]

A linear hummock of **pressure ice** on **shelf ice** or **sea ice**. These ridges can be up to 5 m (16 ft 6 in) or more tall.

**20 Mar 1898** Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898-1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 230.

There is a line of pressure ridges at right angles to the direction of the wind.

**1916** *Daily Mirror [London]* 5 Dec: 6.

[caption] The last moments of the Endurance. She was lifted to the crest of a great pressure wave which, passing under her stern, tore away her rudder post and crushed in her stern.

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 386.

[glossary] Pressure Ridges. Commonly abbreviated to Pressure, and formerly, in sea-ice, called hummocks. They are elevations of disturbed and disrupted ice forced above the normal surface of floes.

**1941** *Polar Record* 3(22) July: 443.

The slowing down is apparently due to the squeezing together of the east and west Barrier walls. Gigantic pressure ridges give evidence of this. The shelf-ice in the vicinity of Old Little America has become so upheaved with pressure that the original radio poles and towers are beginning to lean and the houses have become crushed and twisted.

**1958** Burse, Jack *Antarctic night* Longman, Green & Co., London: 58.

A pressure ridge was enough to tip the sled, and there were many inclines down which the sled would slip beyond the power of the dogs to hold her ... But pressure ridges are always changing shape and building up, and during the night and morning this one had been disturbed more than usual.

**1965** *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* 5 (Jan): 22.

Pressure ridges are often encountered in areas of low ice shelf. These often exceed 3 m. in height and can be up to 100 m. across. They are apparently caused by interruptions in the divergence of areas of normal ice shelf, either by an increase in speed of one block relative to another seaward or by some other movement of the blocks contrary to their normal divergence.

**1979** (1916) Hurley, Frank *Shackleton's argonauts: the epic tale of Shackleton's voyage to Antarctica in 1915* McGraw-Hill Book Co 80.

Huge fragments, many tons in weight, were forced up, and balanced on the top of pressure-ridges fifteen feet high.

**1987** (100 miles from Davis station, on sea ice) David Lewis with Mimi Lewis *Icebound in Antarctica* Secker & Warburg, London: 131.

A long winding pressure wall glowed as if with internal fire as I stepped over it.

**pressure-ridged** *adjective*

Covered with **pressure ridges**.

**1995** (1960) Kirkby, Syd in Robinson, Shelagh *Huskies in harness: a love story in Antarctica* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 59.

As we came off Edward VIII Ice Shelf to the bay ice early in the day's run, we had to cross an extensive area of pressure-ridged ice in which there were a few small live cracks.

**prion**

[Prion was used for southern seabirds of the genus *Pachyptila*, formerly Prion, named by Comte B.G.E. de la V. Lacépède (Tableaux méthodiques des mammifères et des Oiseaux 1799: 4) from the Greek πριον saw, referring to the bird's bill (NOED).]

Any of several small seabirds — which are also called **ice-birds** or **whale-birds** — of the fam. Procellariidae, including the **antarctic prion** *Pachyptila desolata*.

**1875** Eaton, Rev. A.E. in *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London* XXIII no. 156: 503.

On stroking her chick the hen became more excited than ever and advanced a little nearer. Taking a Prion's egg from my pocket and holding it out, her cries ceased whilst she eyed the egg.

**1879** (Kerguelen Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 207.

The broken ground beneath the Azorella is perforated everywhere with holes of various petrels. Those of the Prion (*Prion desolatus*) are most numerous.

**1894** Hamilton, A. in *Transactions and Proceedings of the New Zealand Institute* XXVII Art LXV: 572.

The whole surface of the island is covered with the bones of small Prions, swallowed and then ejected by these giant petrels.

**1958** Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 187.

In the grey dawn, as the last night birds move out to sea, the skuas are all around, pouncing on the stragglers. In the daytime it is as much as a prion's life is worth to show itself above ground.

**1989** Thompson, Kate *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation* no. 9 (Nov): 10.

Six species — three penguins, an albatross, a cormorant and a prion (small petrel) were selected for study.

**pulk** *noun and attrib.* Also *pulka*

[Though NOED notes that the word came into British English from the Finnish pulkka (a pulka, Lapp sledge), its path into antarctic English was

more likely to have been via Norwegian, where pulk means a boat-shaped reindeer sleigh. The name is recorded from 1897— in Alaskan English (DAlaskE).]

A small sledge, boat-shaped and enclosed at the front, and without runners.

**9 Aug 1959** Béchervaise, John (1963) *Blizzard and fire: a year at Mawson, Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 142.

In a little pulka we sledged the personal gear and a few tools.

**1986** Chester, Jonathan *Going to extremes: Project Blizzard and Australia's Antarctic heritage* Doubleday Australia, Sydney: 206. Patrick led off towing 'Rocky —the Italian stallion' as he had already come to call his pulk sled ... Our one man fibreglass pulks were far removed from the traditional Nansen sledge with its ski runners and mountain ash frame lashed together with rawhide.

**1989** (Cape Hallett) Hall, Lincoln *The loneliest mountain: the dramatic story of the first expedition to climb Mt Minto, Antarctica* Simon and Schuster, Sydney: 77.

As well as the 4-metre wooden sledge, we are taking two fibreglass sleds called pulks. One is almost 3 metres long and the other only half that length.

### pup noun and attrib.

[Sea elephants are the seals most often referred to in these quotations.]

The young of any seal.

**23 Oct 1810** (Macquarie Island) Hook, Charles, quoted in *Polar Record* (1964) 12(78) Sept: 313.

At the time Captain Hasselbury discovered the Island it abounded with Pups only and you may judge of the probable produce during the Popping season which would commence about the time he would return.

**11 Mar 1832** (South Shetlands) Weddell, James in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 334.

But on Snow Island I found eleven pup elephants and at the great risk of losing the boat and crew. The weather has been so bad since my leaving the harbour.

**1915** (Macquarie Island) Ainsworth, G.F. in Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911–1914* William Heinemann, London: 217.

The adults are called bulls and cows, while, curiously enough, in the sealers' phrase, the offspring are referred to as pups. The places where large numbers of them gather together during the breeding season are known as rookeries!

**1922** (South Georgia) Murphy, Robert Cushman in *National Geographic* 41(4) Apr: 413.

Within a few days after our arrival at South Georgia we made the acquaintance of the sea-elephants. The young, known to sealers as "pups" — had been born about two months earlier in the year.

### pup verb

[Pup is recorded in British English, meaning 'to bring forth pups', from 1725 on (NOED).]

(Of a seal) to give birth. Hence **pupping**, verbal noun.

**1963** Mackay, Margaret *Angry island: the story of Tristan da Cunha (1506–1963)* Arthur Barker, London: 32.

Sea-elephants were abundant and they came ashore each August and September to 'pup'.

**1981** Kooyman, Gerald L. in Ridgeway, S.H. and Harrison, R.J. *Handbook of marine mammals vol 2 Seals* Academic Press, London: 292.

In the Bay of Whales (78° S) the peak pupping is about 23 October.

### pygmy blue whale Also pigmy blue whale

[Pygmy small + blue whale.]

The whale *Balaenoptera musculus breviceauda* (fam. Balaenopteridae), found only in the southern hemisphere, and the world's largest pygmy. It grows to 24 m (79 ft) long, and is small only by comparison with the **blue whale**, the largest living mammal.

**1964** Antarctic. *Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(9) Mar: 417.

The existing stock of blue whales (exclusive of the pigmy blue whale) can probably not bear larger annual taxation than 200 animals without being still further diminished.

**1983** Laws, Richard in *New Scientist* 99 (no 1373) 1 Sept: 611.

The pygmy blue whale is probably a sub-species of the blue whale and feeds in lower latitudes (into the 50s).

**1993** Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 45.

There are thought to be just 1000 blue whales left of a pre-whaling population of 200 000. More mysterious is the 22–24 metre-long pygmy blue whale. This close relative of the blue whale has only recently been recognized and very little is known about its lifestyle.

**1995** Menkhorst, Peter W., ed. *Mammals of Victoria: distribution, ecology and conservation* Oxford University Press, Melbourne: 304.

Two subspecies of Blue Whale are recognised — the 'true' Blue Whale, *Balaenoptera musculus musculus*, which is up to 33.6 m in length and the Pygmy Blue Whale, *B. m. breviceauda* .. to 24.4 m long. The former occurs worldwide, but the latter is restricted to the southern hemisphere. During the summer, 'true' Blue Whales range further south in the antarctic than any other rorqual, much further than the Pygmy Blue Whale.

### pygmy right whale Also pigmy (right) whale

[Pygmy small + right whale.]

The smallest baleen whale *Caperea marginata* (fam. Neobalaenidae), which grows to about 6.4 m (20 ft), and is dark blue-grey to blackish above, and paler beneath. It lives in temperate and subantarctic waters of the southern hemisphere.

**1901** Lydekker, R. in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 206.

The other right whale of the Southern Hemisphere is the pigmy whale (*Neobalæna marginata*), a species peculiar to these seas, and only growing to a length of about twenty feet ... Its only commercial value would apparently be for its oil, and of this there would be no great amount.

**1902** Beddard, Frank Evers *Mammalia. The Cambridge Natural History vol X* Macmillan and Co, London: 353.

The Mystacoceti are nearly invariably huge creatures, the sole exceptions being the Pygmy Right Whale, *Neobalæna*, and a small Rorqual.

**1930** Stead, David G. in *Australian Museum Magazine* 4: 126.

The pygmy right whale ... rarely exceeds a length of twenty feet.

**1936** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 45(9) 1 Jun: 143.

Right Whales: .. Pigmy right whale. Southern pigmy right whale [etc.].

**1990** Martin, Anthony R. *Whales and dolphins* Bedford Editions, London: 61.

The common name 'pygmy right whale' derives from its small size compared to *Eubalæna* and *Balæna*, and from the strongly arched jaw also found in the other species.



## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

**1995** Menkhorst, Peter W., ed. *Mammals of Victoria: distribution, ecology and conservation* Oxford University Press, Melbourne: 308.

The Pygmy Right Whale occurs only in the southern hemisphere, in temperate to subantarctic waters within a latitudinal range of about 31° to 52°S. ... Very little is known of the life history and behaviour of Pygmy Right Whales.

**pygoscelid** *Also more fully pygoscelid penguin*

[From the Greek *πυγο* rump, and *σκελος* the leg, prob. referring to the legs being well set back on the body.]

Any of the three penguins of the genus *Pygoscelis*: the **adelie**, **chinstrap** and **gentoo**. These are also called **brush-tailed penguins**.

**1958** Sladen, W.J.L. and Tickell, W.L.N. *Bird-banding: a journal of ornithological investigation* 29(1), Jan: 3.

For Pygoscelid Penguins evidence suggests that different species have different feeding habitats, e.g. in pack ice as opposed to open water.

**1986** (South Shetland Islands) Taylor, Jan R.E. in *The Auk* 103(1) Jan: 165.

The pelt insulation of young pygoscelid penguins, of 25 days of age and older, is very close to the insulation of summer pelts of arctic mammals and considerably lower than the insulation of winter coats of those animals.

**c1994** Williams, Tony D. *Penguins* British Antarctic Survey, Cambridge: 131.

All pygoscelids lay a clutch of two eggs of similar size, and these are incubated for about 35 days.

**pyramid tent** *Esp. Brit. Also simply pyramid*

A double-skinned, four-sided canvas or silk tent with bamboo, wooden or metal poles, whose tapered shape and flaps for loading with snow enable it to withstand extremely windy conditions. The entrance is about 60 cm (2 ft) above ground level. It is also called a **polar pyramid**, **polar tent** and (in the American version of the tent) **Scott tent**.

**1939** (Port Lockroy) Rymill, John *Southern lights: the official account of the British Graham Land Expedition 1934-1937* Travel Book Club, London: 50.

As we came closer we first made out a pyramid tent, and then piles of stores covered with tarpaulins.

**30 Aug 1947** Walton, E.W. Kevin (1955) *Two years in the Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 154.

My own British pyramid tent is acting as a windbreaker, and the blue American tent, which has a sleeve at both ends, is connected direct with our entrance.

**1966** (Heard Island) Temple, Philip *The sea and the snow* Cassell Australia, Melbourne: 111.

We were left with a flat, entrenched platform. The Pyramid was erected on this and its generous outside flaps weighed down with the blocks. ... The Pyramid was a tried and trusty design, used on most Antarctic journeys and was known to stand up to the worst blizzards. It gave a sense of security when compared to a normal alpine tent but one could still come to grief, as Scott demonstrated.

**1967** *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* 1 (Apr): 8.

Due to atrocious weather only three working days were possible by surveyors, and the 8-foot pyramid tents were buried by snow so that only two feet of the top was visible.

**13 Feb 1988** Hall, Lincoln (1989) *The loneliest mountain: the dramatic story of the first expedition to climb Mt Minto, Antarctica* Simon and Schuster, Sydney: 120.

Everyone is in bed, satisfied after a good meal cooked in the pyramid by Chris and Glenn.

**1990** Naveen, Ron, Monteath, Colin, de Roy, Tui and Jones. Mark *Wild ice: Antarctic journeys* Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington: 171.

Christmas dinner on Erebus was a fun affair. A leg of lamb smothered in vegetables had been wrapped in silver foil and cooked for two days in the hot soil of the side crater. A dozen people ripped into the feast, with Haroun's sweet rum from Martinique providing suitable lubrication. Overhead, reminiscent of Captain Scott's officers' mess at Cape Evans, hung a motley collection of personalized sledging banners. Celebrations were interrupted shortly afterwards when Ray Dibble's thirty-kilogram pyramid tent blew away, sending us scurrying into a maelstrom of blinding powder snow to search for his precious sleeping bag.

**1993** Huntford, Roland *Scott and Amundsen* Weidenfeld and Nicolson, London: 148.

Koettlitz was an accomplished expedition doctor who, amongst other things, while on the Jackson-Harmsworth expedition had made a notable advance in Polar equipment by inventing the pyramid tent.



**quad** *noun and attrib., Aust.*

A single-seater motorbike with four-wheels, originally made for use on farms and now also used on antarctic bases. These bikes are also called **quikes**, and travel better than **skidoos** on ice, though they bog easily in soft snow.

**1992** *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions newsletter* 69 (Autumn): 21.

Hagglunds and Quads (small four-wheeled one-person vehicles) have been prepared for field trips.

**1997** (Mawson station) *Age [Melbourne]* 16 June: 6.

An afternoon excursion is planned on four-wheel Honda quad bikes to the Auster emperor penguin rookery, where the male penguins are incubating the eggs.

**quad** *verb, Aust.*

To travel by **quad**.

**1992** *Casey News* Aug: [11].

Again Robbo's claimed another group of blizzed in inhabitants. They did however manage on the first day to be blessed with superb weather and were able to quad down to the Browning Peninsula.

**quadrant**

[In *The Geographical Journal of 1899*, Sir Clements Markham proposed dividing Antarctica into four quadrants. The term had already been in use in English since 1638 (NOED) for divisions of a globe.]

One of four wedge-shaped divisions of Antarctica delimited by 90° lines of longitude converging at the **South Pole** (see 1915 quotation), sometimes specifically known as the African, Australian, American and Pacific quadrants, and sometimes as the Enderby, Victoria, Ross and Weddell quadrants. Cf. **sector**.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 281.

Two expeditions have just sailed from England and Germany respectively, one under the command of Captain Robert Scott, R.N., in the *Discovery*, and the other under the command of that eminent German explorer and scientist, Dr. E. von Drygalski, in the ship *Gauss*. The former has gone to Victoria Land in what is called the Victoria Quadrant.

**1915** Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911–1914* William Heinemann, London, vol 1: 3.

The main efforts of recent years have been centred upon the two more accessible areas, namely, that in the American Quadrant<sup>1</sup> which is prolonged as a tongue of land outside the Antarctic Circle, being consequently less beset by ice; secondly, the vicinity of the Ross Sea in the Australian Quadrant. <sup>1</sup>Footnote: For convenience, the Antarctic regions may be referred to in four main divisions, corresponding with the quadrants of the hemisphere. Of the several suggestions thrown out by previous writers, the one adopted here is that based on the meridian of Greenwich, referring the quadrants to an adjacent continent or island. Thus the American Quadrant lies between 0° and 90° W., the African Quadrant between 0° and 90° E., and the Australian Quadrant between 90° and 180° E. The fourth division is called the Pacific Quadrant, since ocean alone lies to the north of it.

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 10.

Mr E. S. Balch informs me that he and Dr Nordenskjöld independently suggested that all Antarctica should be divided into two parts, termed East and West Antarctica, according to the position of each east or west of Greenwich. Sir Clements Markham quartered the whole into four quadrants, also based on the Greenwich meridian, and named the American, African, Australian and Pacific Quadrants. Both the above arrangements have the disadvantage of being conventional and arbitrary. The Greenwich meridian bears no relation to any physical feature of Antarctica. The fixed quadrants are not merely arbitrary, they are actually inconvenient; for both zero and 90° West happen to fall across lands at present undiscovered, and 180° unequally bisects the Ross Barrier.

**1950** Hedgpeth, Joel W. in *Proceedings of the United States National Museum: Smithsonian Institution* 100 (3260): 147.

Dr. Gordon, in her most recent paper (1944), summarizes the distribution of many species by "quadrants," based on the 90° sectors of the Antarctic, using a set of names not recognized by American geographers. The Gauss, Victoria, Ross, and Weddell quadrants, are, I presume, equivalents to the African, Australian, Pacific and American quadrants of the National Geographic Society map. Yet she also mentions (p. 16) the "Enderby" quadrant, which is evidently the same as the Gauss quadrant. Perhaps it is unfair to mention this slight inconsistency in a work published during the war years, when it was impossible to send proofs to the author. However, the use of quadrants in summarizing Antarctic distribution is unsatisfactory, since the division is artificial. This is especially true of the Ross Sea area, a natural geographic region bisected by the 180th meridian and thus falling into two quadrants. It is probably best to use more general terms, such as Kerguelen and Magellan districts, and Ross and Weddell Sea areas, which in fact is Dr. Gordon's more usual practice.

**1979** Peterson, Roger Tory *Penguins* Houghton Mifflin Co., Boston: 34.

I recently spotted a Chinstrap among the Adélie's at Cape Royds, the southernmost penguin colony in the Australian quadrant of the Antarctic.

**quark** *Falkland Islands Also quawk*

[In imitation of the call of the bird: see 1988 quotation. The name comes from the US, where quawk or quark is recorded from 1844– for the same species (NOED).]

The heavily-built heron *Nycticorax nycticorax cyanocephalus* (fam. Ardeidae) of the Falkland Islands. The adult has a black back and crown, and long white plumes. The bird is widely distributed in the world and is also known as the black-crowned night heron, but this subspecies is restricted to the Falkland Islands (where it is also simply called the 'night heron').

**1904** (Falkland Islands) Vallentin, Rupert, in *Memoirs and Proc of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no. 23: 33.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

*Nycticorax obscurus*, "Quawk". Universally distributed throughout these islands, but scarce everywhere. A very beautiful bird, but usually seen alone. During the breeding season the male has a yellow crest, composed only of three feathers, extending from the crown to the middle of the back.

**1924** Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history by Rupert Vallentin* Clarendon Press, Oxford: 312.

*Nycticorax tayazu-guira* (Vieill.), 'Quawk' ... This species cannot be said to abound.

**1971** Taylor, Margaret Stewart *Focus on the Falkland Islands* Robert Hale & Co, London: 62.

She pointed out a quark, or night heron, a bird found only on the Falklands.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 132.

Black-crowned night heron .. Local name: Quark ... Usual flight call is a very harsh *kwark* from which the local name is derived.

### Queen of the Falklands fritillary *Falkland Islands*

The brown butterfly *Yramea cytheris falklandia* (fam. Nymphalidae), of the Falkland Islands.

**[1904** (Falkland Islands) Vallentin, Rupert in *Memoirs and Proc of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no. 23: 22.

This species, *Argynnis siga*, seems to be very locally distributed over these islands ... Another Fritillary has been seen by several people in the West Falklands. They all described it to me as being larger and a fast flyer than *A. siga*. The markings on the wings were also more pronounced.]

**1987** Strange, Ian J. *The Falkland Islands and their natural history* David and Charles, Newton Abbot, Devon: 129.

A species of butterfly which is fairly common to certain parts of the islands both on the West and East Falklands is the Queen of the Falkland fritillary (*Issoria cytheris cytheris*).

### quike *Aust.*

A quad.

**1991** *Australasian Science Magazine* no 4 (Nov): 42.

In recent years a 4-wheel motorbike, called a 'quike' has been found to be very useful.

**1995** Crossley, Louise *Explore Antarctica* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 74.

For personal transport with light loads, skidoos or motor toboggans are ideal. They carry one or two people and, with driving tracks at the back and a steering ski at the front, they can handle soft snow easily. On hard ice, whether on land or sea, four-wheeled agricultural motor bikes or 'quikes' go better. They are also more economical and easier to maintain.

# — R —

**race horse** *Obs.*

A duck of the genus *Tachyeres*: see **steamer duck**.

**22 Dec 1774** Hoare, Michael E., ed. (1982) *The Resolution journal of Johann Reinhold Forster 1772–1775* vol 4: 695.

We found two old Birds, with some Young ones, shaped like Duck and very shy, running on the water & beating it with Wings, which gives them such a velocity as hardly a Bird has, when flying ever so swift. Former Navigators called these Birds *Race-horses*.

**Jan 1775** (Staten Land) Cook, James quoted in Beaglehole, J.C., ed. (1961) *The voyage of the Resolution and Adventure* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 606.

On the Islands were Sea Lyons &c ... They also saw .. Race Horses, which is also a kind of duck.

**raft** *verb*

(Of ice floes) To ride up, one over another.

**1939** Rymill, John *Southern lights: the official account of the British Graham Land Expedition 1934–1937* Travel Book Club, London: 124.

Where we were camping the pans were not so much disturbed, but at a little distance all round us they were rafting on each other, causing pressure ridges and open leads.

**1965** Hedblom, Captain E.E. *Polar manual, 4th edn* US Navy, Bethesda, Maryland: 103.

Large floes of flat ice in pressure are most likely to "raft" near the center to produce pressure ridges.

**raft** *noun*

[NOED records raft swimming birds gathered into a flock, from 1962, which is later than the antarctic usage.]

A large congregation of birds floating very close to each other, at sea. Hence **rafting**.

**19 Jul 1942** (Perseverance Harbour) Sorensen, J.H. *The work journal of J.H. Sorensen, coastwatcher in the "Cape expedition", Campbell Island, 1942–44* Original, in possession of NZ Dept Conservation and Wildlife, Wellington: 39.

A good number of shags were noted and I noted the first "raft" of these birds seen so far inside the Harbour. Such "rafts" are to be seen commonly outside the Heads. A "raft" is a congregation of birds in one place. The birds are very close, only feet apart, but whether for company or because of the presence of a supply of food I know not though I suspect the latter.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 15.

[caption] Sooty shearwaters "rafting" at the Western Chain islets of the Snares, before dispersing to range over wide expanses of the seas in search of food.

**rafted ice**

[NOED records rafted in arctic use from 1897, and defines such ice as ice piled up when one floe is driven up onto another.]

**Floes of sea ice** where some have ridden up over others, resulting in obstructing or impassable jumbles.

**[19 Dec 1929** (62°S, 78°E) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 276.

Davis is able easily to travel south, only occasional deviations necessary. Packed rafts of to 2 miles in length only.]

**1958** Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund *The crossing of Antarctica: the Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955–58* Cassell & Co, London: 47.

To go astern was no easy matter because of the sludge of rafted ice that lay behind us and held the individual floes like a liquid cement.

**[1979** Lewis, David *Voyage to the ice: the Antarctic expedition of Solo* Australian Broadcasting Commission/Wm Collins Sons & Co: 10.

They [sc. the floes] were jammed tightly together, we saw as we came nearer, and were often rafted one upon the other, their tilted weathered slabs mute witness to the enormous pressures to which they had been subjected.]

**1995** Greet, Pene and Price, Gina *Frost bytes* Doubleday, Sydney: 86.

We didn't find the rookery the first day because there was a lot of rafted ice to the south and east of it.

**ratting day** *Tristan da Cunha*

[Ratting the catching or killing of rats, is recorded in English from 1828 (NOED).]

A celebratory day of killing rats. These days represent attempts to control the population of an introduced and noxious species on the island.

**1959** *Tristan Topics* 3 (Jul): 3.

Ratting Day was held on May 25th, and was a great success. One thousand and fifty one rats were caught which is a twenty five percent increase on last year. Each tail was counted with due ceremony on the Administrator's kitchen floor and the longest tail measured ten and a half inches. The gang, of which there are four, catching the most rats and the gang producing the longest tail each get a prize.

**1969** (1950s) Thompson, Pat Forsyth *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 5 (Sept): 7.

Preparatory to digging up their potato patches and planting their potatoes "Ratting Day" was held. Again this was a great social occasion, dependent on suitable weather. Men, women and children formed into teams who would walk to the potato patches, a distance of about two miles, and picnic out there while the men, with their dogs, would nose out rats nests in the stone walls which surrounded their patches. Although they killed around 500 rats in a day, this did not really make a great impression on the rat population which completely overran the island.

**razorback**

[From the ridge on the hind part of the whale's back: see 1996 quotation. Razor-back is recorded in arctic use from 1823 (NOED).]

A whale, usu. *Balaenoptera physalis*: see **fin whale**.

**24 Dec 1908** (Deception Island, South Shetlands) Charcot, Jean Baptiste Auguste Etienne (1911) *The voyage of the "Why Not?" in the Antarctic*. Australian National University Press facs, Canberra (1978): 49.

The Blue Whale (or Razor-back), whose value is greater than the two others', has a medium-sized dorsal fin and spouts with a double jet, which looks like a single one of moderate height ending in a plume.

**1936** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 45(9) (1 Jun): 143.

Whale Fishery (Consolidation) Ordinance 1936 ... Common finback. Common finner. Common rorqual. Finback. Fin whale. Herring whale. Razorback. True fin whale.

**1996** Soper, Tony and Scott, Dafila *Antarctica: a guide to the wildlife* Bradt Publications, Chalfont St Peter: 120.

The fin whale ... is dark grey to brownish-black on back and sides, the back being ridged from the dorsal fin to the flukes (the 'razorback').

**re-cane** *verb*, Aust.

To re-mark a route with **canes**.

**1993** Main, Dale in Clark, Linda and Wishart, Elspeth 66° *South Queen Victoria Museum*, Launceston: 56.

Trips that we had out in the field were route caning. Caning routes so that you can find your way. You take actual canes, bamboo-type canes, out in the field and you just drill holes wherever canes have been washed out or where you think a cane should be. If there's a long distance between the two canes you put an extra cane in and in the summertime some of them melt out or they'll be blown out or they'll just deteriorate after a couple of years from the wind. They'll start to fray and split up so every year the route has to be re-caned. We caned the route to Browning and caned the route to Robbo's Ridge.

**1995** (Mawson station) *Station News [Australian Antarctic Division, Hobart]* Dec: 9.

So what does he do to relax? Grabs Simon and heads back up the hills to re-cane the Horden line!

**red-backed buzzard** *Falkland Islands Also red-backed hawk*

The bird of prey *Buteo polyosoma* (fam. Accipitridae) of the Falkland Islands and South America, a large hawk with brown-grey wings; usu., the female has a chestnut-red back. It has also been called a **blue hawk**.

**1910** Cobb, Arthur F. *Wildlife in the Falkland Islands* Gowans & Gray, London: 67.

Red-backed Buzzard (*Buteo erythronotus*) .. Generally known as the Blue Hawk because of its blue-grey wings, this bird is not very numerous in the Falklands ... They build nests of sticks, from the diddle-dee and fachina bushes, lined with grass.

**1951** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 60(12) 1 Nov: 195.

It is hereby declared that the wild birds "Red-backed Buzzard" and "Cassin's Falcon" shall be added to Schedule 1 of the Wild Animals and Birds Protection Ordinance, 1913 [sc. i.e. fully protected].

**1973** (Tierra del Fuego ) Walker, Wayman II and others in *Antarctic Journal of the United States* VIII(2) Mar/Apr: 30.

While the guests of Senora Cullare and Sr. Luis Cullare at the Estancia Pirinaico, we obtained specimens from freshly shot caranchos, a red-backed hawk (*Buteo polyosoma*), and the local robin (*Turdus falklandicus*).

**1987** Strange, Ian J. *The Falkland Islands and their natural history* David and Charles, Newton Abbot, Devon: 130.

Red-backed buzzards have their niche and, curiously, due to the lack of rocky outcrops where they would normally nest, they have in some cases chosen man-made sites by utilising rolls of old sheep fencing on which to build nests.

**1987** Wolsey, Shane in *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation [London]* no 5 (July): 10.

On a telegraph pole outside is a Red-backed Hawk, a beautiful bird with bright chestnut back, bright yellow talons, and a keen eye.

**1994** Falkland Islands Government Office *Introduction to the Falkland Islands* Falkland Islands Government Office, London: 17.

Predators are Cassin's falcon (a race of the Peregrine), red-backed hawk and crested caracara.

**red-billed gull**

1. *Falkland Islands, obs.* The bird *Larus scoresbii*: see **dolphin gull**.

**1861** (Falkland Islands) Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 165.

*Larus scoresbii*, Trail. (Red-billed Gull.) This Gull breeds in December, frequently laying its two eggs in the communities of *Larus dominicanus*, but it has also separate breeding-places. The egg is exactly like that of *Larus dominicanus*, only smaller. The young birds have a dark hood, which led me at one time to think that they belonged to different species.

2. NZ The small gull *Larus novaehollandiae scopulinus* (fam. Laridae) which breeds on New Zealand subantarctic islands. It is white and grey --- its beak and legs are red.

**2 May 1942** Sorensen, J.H. *The work journal of J.H. Sorensen, coastwatcher in the "Cape expedition", Campbell Island, 1942-44*. Original, in possession of NZ Dept Conservation and Wildlife, Wellington: 7.

The red-billed gulls are very tame and have to be discouraged from the vicinity of the camp. The one caught in the rat-trap on 19th has died.

**1966** (Campbell island) *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 4(7) Sept: 358.

The expedition has been adopted by a red-billed gull by the name of Napoleon.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 24.

The little red-billed gulls, *Larus novaehollandiae scopulinus*, and antarctic terns, *Sterna vittata bethunei*, with their scarlet bills, forked tails, and sharp, graceful wings, also breed on many of New Zealand's subantarctic islands.

**red-breasted starling** *Falkland Islands*

The bird *Sturnella loyca falklandica*: see **military starling**.

**1 June 1842** (Falkland Islands) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London: 289.

I shot five red-breasted starling, three at one shot, and two at the next.

**1861** (Falkland Islands) Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 153.

*Sturnella militaris* .. (Red-breasted Starling.) This Starling, which is very common in East Falkland, begins to breed in the first week in October. The nest is built amongst long grass or rushes. It is rather deep, but open at the top, and not

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

domed over, and generally contains three eggs. This bird sits on a bush and sings very sweetly on a summer's morning.

**1920** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 29(12) 1 Oct: 94.

Any person on application to the Colonial Secretary or the Stipendiary Magistrate, West Falkland, may be authorised for a year specified in the authority, to kill or take the Red Breasted Starling (*Trupialis falklandicus*) during the months of April, May and June, but no person shall be permitted to kill or take more than twenty of this species in any one year.

**1957** (Punta Arenas) Holgersen, Holger *Ornithology of the "Brategg" Expedition. Scientific results of the "Brategg" Expedition 1947-48, no. 4* Publikasjon nr. 21 fra Kommandør Chr. Christensens Hvalfangstmuseum i Sandefjord: 73.

The Red-breasted Starling, *Pezites militaris*.

### red-crowned parakeet *Also formerly red-fronted parakeet.*

The parrot *Cyanorhamphus novaezelandiae novaezelandiae* (fam. Psittacidae), uncommon on mainland New Zealand but plentiful on the Auckland Islands and on other islands of New Zealand. It is a mainly green bird with a red patch on the crown, and blue wing-flashes. See also **Antipodes Island parakeet**.

**1845** Wilkes, Charles quoted in Mawson, Douglas (1943) *Macquarie Island: its geography and geology. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911-14. Scientific reports series A vol V* Government Printer, Sydney: 39.

The quartermaster saw "some green paroquets with a small red spot on the head, and an oblong, slaty or purple spot at the root of the bill, and with a straight beak."

**26 Mar 1904** (Auckland Islands) Wilson, Edward in Roberts, Brian, ed. (1967) *Edward Wilson's birds of the Antarctic* New Orchard Editions, Poole [Dorset]: 156.

Bernacchi shot me a Red-fronted Parakeet, the first that any one has got. It had a large number of hooked grass seeds attached to its feathers.]

**1909** Waite, Edgar R. in Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington: 555.

*Cyanorhamphus novae-zealandiae*, Sparrman. (Red-fronted parakeet.) During the ten days I was on the Auckland Islands I saw but two parakeets, and I find that but few were noticed by other members of the party. Captain Bollons says the bird is really scarce.

**7 Feb 1971** (Auckland Islands) Scott, Peter (1983) *Travel diaries of a naturalist: Australia, New Zealand, New Guinea, Africa, the Galapagos islands, Antarctica and the Falkland Islands* Collins, London: 268.

The Red-crowned Parakeets were quite easily approachable.

**1977** Hornung, Donald S. *Snares Islands expedition: a report submitted to the Department of Lands and Survey, Wellington, 18th April 1977* Department of Zoology, University of Canterbury, Christchurch: 91.

The Red-crowned Parakeets and the South Island fantail seen during the 1974-1975 expedition were not recorded this expedition.

### red-eyed penguin NZ

The penguin *Eudyptes chrysocome*: see **rockhopper penguin**.

**1936** (Antipodes Island) Guthrie-Smith, H. *Sorrows and joys of a New Zealand naturalist* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Dunedin: 227.

The lower stone and boulder space was appropriated by the larger Big Crested Penguin (*Catarrhactes sclateri*), the higher by the Tufted or Red-eyed species (*Catarrhactes chrysocome*).

### red-footed shag *Marion and Prince Edward Islands*

The seabird *Phalacrocorax atriceps melanogenis* (fam. Phalacrocoracidae) of Marion, Prince Edward, and the Crozet Islands. It is a large black and white shag with pink legs and feet.

**1963** (Marion Island) Rand, R.W. *Ostrich* XXXIV(3) Sept: 124.  
Three immature Red-footed Shags (*Phalacrocorax albiventer*) swam unconcernedly near the ship.

**1971** (Marion Island) Bakker, E.M. van Zinderen Sr., Winterbottom, J.M., eds and R.A. Dyer *Marion and Prince Edward Islands: report on the South African biological and geological expedition 1965-66* A.A. Balkema, Cape Town: 162.

On other cliffs and steep slopes which are covered by vegetation some species do live. These habitats are of particular importance to the Sooty Albatross (*Phoebastria fusca*) and Red-footed Shag (*Phalacrocorax albiventer*) which nests nowhere else.

### red Henry *Tristan da Cunha. Also red Harry*

A centipede.

**1910** Barrow, K.M. *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 280.

Some Tristan words .. Red Harry, a red centipede [etc.].

**1940** Hagen, Yngvar in Christopherson, Erling, transl. fr Norwegian by Benham, R.L., *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 201.

The islanders sometimes receive poisonous bites, accompanied by considerable swelling and this is said to be due to "Red Henry", a centipede which is found everywhere.

**1963** (1937-8) Mackay, Margaret *Angry island: the story of Tristan da Cunha (1506-1963)* Arthur Barker, London: 218.

There were also abundant woodlice, spiders, moths and the 'Red Henry', an aggressive centipede.

### red soldier fish *Tristan da Cunha*

A soldier.

**1957** Booy, D.M. *Rock of exile: a narrative of Tristan da Cunha* J.M. Dent & Sons, London: 168.

There would be good catches, at this time of the year, of snoek, blue-fish, red soldier-fish [etc].

**1998** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* [UK] 22 (Mar): 10.

Barton, our skipper, caught a couple of Red Soldier fish (useful for bait) and two reasonable-sized Five Fingers.

### red teal *Falkland Islands*

The duck *Anas cyanoptera*: see **cinnamon teal**.

**1861** (Falkland Islands) Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 161.

*Querquedula cyanoptera* (Vieill.). (Red Teal.) I am quite sure that a person might go out in East Falkland for a month, and not shoot — and even, perhaps, not see — a Red Teal, though at Mare Harbour I once, with a Gaucho, killed seven in one day. The bird is generally very wild, and far from common. I have never found its nest, but I have no doubt it breeds in the island, having seen it in pairs in the summer months.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 150.

Cinnamon Teal *Anas cyanoptera* .. Local name: Red Teal ... Adult male in full plumage is unmistakable; head, neck and underparts are a rich glossy chestnut.

**reindeer** *In various forms, as reindeer (skin) bag, reindeer (skin) sleeping bag*

A sleeping bag made from reindeer skin.

**1901** (Cape Adare, Mar 1899) Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 95.

Partly sheltered behind a boulder from the fury of the gale, the tent had withstood the assaults made upon it by the wind, and inside they were quite comfortable and warm in their reindeer sleeping bags.

**16 Nov 1908** (nr 79°36') Shackleton, E.H. (1909) *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907-1909* William Heinemann, London: 284.

A hot sun during the day dried out our reindeer skin sleeping-bags, the water, or rather ice, all drying out of them, so we sleep in dry bags again.

**3 Jul 1911** Wilson, Edward (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912* Blandford Press, London: 144.

Birdie and I were as warm as we expected to be in our reindeer-skin bags. He has his with the hair outside. I have mine with the hair inside.

**1922** Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Picador, London: 241.

That was the last night I lay (I had written slept) in my big reindeer bag without the lining of eider-down which we each carried.

[**1951** (Maudheim) von Essen, Kaptén Reinhold in *Polar Record* 8(54) Sept: 234.

Sleeping bags stuffed with reindeer hair were only efficient for a short time.]

**Reischek's parakeet**

[*Andreas Reischek (1845-1902) was an Austrian taxidermist and naturalist, and fellow of the Linnean Society. He gave the bird its scientific name in 1889 (Transactions of the New Zealand Institute 21: 387).*]

The parakeet *Cyanorhamphus novaezelandiae hochstetteri* (fam. Platycercidae), which lives only in the Antipodes Island group. The bird is green, with a noticeable red patch on the forehead which distinguishes it from the all-green **Antipodes Island parakeet**. It has also been called **Antipodes red-crowned parakeet**.

**1970** Kinsky, F.C. *Annotated checklist of the birds of New Zealand including the Ross Dependency* A.H. & A.W. Reed Ltd, Wellington: 59.

*Cyanorhamphus novaezelandiae hochstetteri* (Reischek, 1889) Reischek's Parakeet.

**1983** *Reader's Digest complete book of New Zealand birds* Reader's Digest, Sydney: 248.

Reischek's parakeet is relatively fearless of man but when alarmed takes to the wing, calling as it flies.

**1995** Department of Conservation *Draft conservation management strategy — subantarctic islands* Southland Conservancy Conservation Management Planning series no 6, Department of Conservation, NZ: [50].

*Cyanorhamphus novaezelandiae hochstetteri* (Reischek's parakeet) tussock and coastal Antipodes Islands; local, subspecies endemic to Antipodes Islands.

**repstatter** *Austl.*

[From the abbreviated 'replacement station' + -er.]

An occupant of the Australian antarctic station of Casey (see **Caseyite**), built in 1966-67 to replace Wilkes, given by the USA to Australia in 1959.

**1967** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] June: 38.

Completion of Repstat. We hope to be engaging several Repstatters to winter over next year which will solve the man-hour problem.

**resupply** *noun and attrib.*

[*NOED records the use from 1875 of resupply as a noun, but does not define or give quotations for it.*]

An annual visit of a ship bringing the main stocks of supplies to an antarctic station. There are supplementary supplies on other ship visits.

**1962** Gressitt, J.L. and others in *Pacific Insects* 4(4): 905.

I was permitted to join the Australian National Antarctic Research Expedition for the annual resupply trip to Macquarie Island in early December 1960.

**1994** *Sunday Age* [Melbourne] 24 April: Agenda 2.

"It gets into your blood," said Rob Easther, a former station leader at Davis who, as stations manager for the Antarctic Division, has returned to Antarctica every year since 1985 to oversee the annual resupply and crew changes.

**retrograded, to be** *verbal phr, esp. US*

[*Variation in sense of the transitive verb retrograde to turn back, recorded in English since 1582 (NOED).*]

To be returned from its antarctic location to the home country or place of origin. See also RTA.

**1990** *Antarctica Sun Times* [McMurdo] IV(i) 24 Oct: 1.

So far, 507,221 pounds of cargo have reached McMurdo, and 121,042 pounds of cargo have been retrograded.

**1991** *Antarctic Society of Australia newsletter* 25 (June): 13.

In stark contrast to McMurdo, everything except food and sewage is retrograded from Palmer ... Sewage and food scraps are both macerated and put into the sea.

**1995** (Cape Evans) *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 13(10) June: 408.

Any rubbish around the site or in the hut was retrograded to Scott Base.

**11 Dec 1997** Jensen, Katy in *New South Polar Times* [South Pole] <http://205.174.118.254/nspt/index/971211.htm> (printed 8 Apr 1998)

The only reminder of the old Clean Air Facility is a pile of buildings materials waiting to be re-used or retrograded.

**right whale** *noun and attrib.*

[*There are two whales called 'right whales', one in the northern and one in the southern hemisphere: they do not occur in near-equatorial waters. The name originally applied, and still does apply, to Eubalaena glacialis (recorded since 1725: NOED). These are the right whales to hunt — they are comparatively slow-swimming; more importantly, when dead they float.*]

The whale *Eubalaena australis*: see **southern right whale**; (occas.) any whale of the fam. Balaenidae and the recently separated fam. Neobalaenidae.

**1803** (nr Amsterdam Island) Grant, James *The narrative of a voyage of discovery performed in His Majesty's vessel the Lady Nelson, of sixty tons burthen, with sliding keels, in the years 1800, 1801, and 1802, to New South Wales* T. Egerton, London: 64.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

We saw many whales of the kind called the Right Whale: these do not yield spermaceti. One of my crew had been two voyages in the whale fishery, and pointed out the different species when they appeared, and by the blow at a great distance.

**16 Feb 1840** (nr 99°E, 64°S) Wilkes, Charles in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 402.

We observed around the icebergs numerous right whales, puffing in all directions. A large quantity of small crustacea, including shrimps, were here seen around the icebergs. These are believed to be the cause that attracts whales to these parts; they also supply the numerous penguins with their food.

**1879** (Kerguelen Island) *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London B* 168: 97.

A pair of Right Whales were seen occasionally among the islands in Royal Sound.

**1906** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 16(11): 120.

Royalty upon every Right Whale .. Ten pounds.

Royalty upon every Sperm Whale .. Ten shillings.

Royalty upon every other Whale .. Five shillings.

**1930** Rudmose Brown in Bernacchi, L.C., co-ordinator *The polar book: produced for the British Polar Exhibition 1930E*. Allom & Co Ltd, London: 80.

The humpbacks were hunted first, but now for some years the catch has been chiefly the blue whale (*Balaenoptera musculus*), the fin whale (*B. physalus*), and, in smaller numbers, the sei-whale (*B. borealis*). An occasional right whale or sperm is taken.

**16 Aug 1942** (Perseverance Harbour) Sorensen, J.H. *The work journal of J.H. Sorensen, coastwatcher in the "Cape expedition", Campbell Island, 1942-44* Original in possession of NZ Dept Conservation and Wildlife, Wellington: 50.

In afternoon climbed Col Ridge to look at N.W. Bay for whales. A number were in the bay some being very close to the shore ... With the aid of field glasses a good look at flukes and flippers was obtained. The head was only visible in part and then only very occasionally. It appeared to be rather rugged and lumpy. The "spout" seem to be double and directed upwards and sideways but distance and wind prevented accurate note being taken. There was no sign of a dorsal fin and the prevailing colour being black I have no hesitation in calling them Right Whales (*Balaena australis*).

**1967** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] Mar: 20.

The Family Balaenidae or right whales have the skull much arched, and the baleen long and narrow.

**1981** Scientific Committee on Antarctic Research *Twenty-third report to SCAR on South African Antarctic Research Activities April 1980-October 1981* SCAR, Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, Pretoria: 17.

Aerial surveys of the right whale population along the coast of South Africa and in the Gough Island/Tristan da Cunha region were carried out.

**1994** *New Scientist* no 1915 (5 Mar): 4.

Of four Soviet whaling vessels working in the Antarctic in the 1960s, one alone killed 717 right whales, 7207 humpbacks and 1433 blue whales. The Soviet fleet reported to the IWC that it had taken 152 humpbacks and 156 blues over this period. Right whales have been protected since 1935.

**1995** Menkhurst, Peter W., ed. *Mammals of Victoria: distribution, ecology and conservation* Oxford University Press, Melbourne: 312.

They [sc. Southern Right Whales] feed mainly on copepods and the post-larvae of *Munida gregaria* (known to early whalers as 'right whale feed').

**ringed penguin** *noun and attrib.* Also *ring penguin* [Ringed from the fine black line across the bird's white throat, + penguin.]

The penguin *Pygoscelis antarctica*: see **chinstrap penguin**.

**1901** Saunders, Howard in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 227.

The Ringed or Bridled Penguin (*P. antarctica*), seems to be restricted to the seas between Louis Philippe Land, Graham Land, the Falklands and South Georgia.

**1930** Kinnear, N. in Bernacchi, L.C., ed. *The polar book: produced for the British Polar Exhibition 1930 E*. Allom & Co Ltd, London: 68.

The Ringed Penguin (*Pygoscelis antarctica*), resembling the Adelie Penguin, but with a white instead of a black throat, across which runs a narrow black line — hence the trivial name.

**1949** Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 268.

Walking near Wharf Point with Norm one day, we saw a ringed penguin on the stony foreshore. It was the first one we had seen there since the summer. Norm chased the ring towards me. He was easy to catch and tamer than most gentoos ... He was smaller than the gentoos, more tubby, and the distinctive black lines round his eyes gave him a curious appeal.

**1961** Béchervaise, John *The far South* Angus and Robertson, Melbourne: 81.

The ring or "chinstrap" penguin looks like his nickname, his black cap quite evidently held in position.

**1991** Venables, Stephen *Island at the edge of the world: a South Georgia odyssey* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 78.

Beyond the cliff I bumped into a chinstrap penguin — the only one we saw on the island — strutting busily along the shingle beach. Niall Rankin reported chinstrap or 'ringed' penguin colonies at the far southern end of the island and remarked on the birds' aggressive behaviour. This stray just looked me over, giving me a chance to admire the thin black line etched across his white face, then belly-flopped into the sea and swam away.

**ring-eye** *Tristan da Cunha*

One of several seabirds of the petrel family (Procellariidae), esp. the spectacled form of *Procellaria aequinoctialis*, *P. a. conspicillata*: see **Cape hen**.

**1952** Hagen, Yngvar *Birds of Tristan da Cunha* Det Norske Videnskap Akademi i Oslo/Hos Jacob Dybwad, Oslo: 85.

The "Cape Hen" .. is the local Tristan-name for the white-chinned Shoemaker, a bird which they more or less frequently observe and clearly recognise. However, when talking of the spectacled form, *conspicillata*, I have never heard them call this bird by the name mentioned above, but sometimes shortly "Ring-Eye".

**1976** Ryssen, W.J. van *The birds of the Tristan da Cunha group and Gough Island* Board of Extra-mural Studies, University of Cape Town: 20.

Tristan great shearwater *Puffinus gravis* Ring Eye.

**1988** (Inaccessible Island) *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 2 (Mar): 12.

Our studies examined the taxonomic status of the endemic form of the Whitechinned Petrel (Ringeye) and we recorded the incidence of plastic in seabird stomachs.



**riviera (of the South)** *Humorous*

[From the Italian riviera coast or shore, a name given to a Mediterranean stretch of coast popular for summer holidays, and transferred to other coastal areas thought to resemble it (NOED, 1891-).]

A supposedly warmer part of Antarctica, esp. the **Antarctic Peninsula** or (*Aust.*) Davis station. See also **banana belt**.

**1963** (Davis station) *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* June: 10.

The Riviera failed to live up to its reputation in our second summer and no one indulged in any outdoor sun bathing. Our minimum temperature was minus 34.4°F and the maximum temperature was 43.8°F.

[**1968** (Argentine Island) *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* 21 (Dec): 1.

The base area is reminiscent of a Riviera beach with all those semi-naked bodies around.]

**1983** Sullivan, Peter in *Davis yearbook 1983 [ANARE Davis]*: 11. In comparison to most Antarctic stations Davis has a fairly mild climate, earning it the nickname "Riviera of the South." The strong katabatic winds, blowing down from the ice plateau, which dominate the weather in most areas are only occasionally experienced at Davis. In summer the mean daily temperature hovers around 0°C, but in January 1974 a heatwave of +13.0°C was recorded. As the year progresses temperatures drop well below zero and the sea usually starts to freeze over in March, remaining solid till December or January of the following summer. The lowest temperature ever recorded at Davis was -40.0°C in April 1981.

**1994** *Campus Review [Sydney]* 4(28) 21-27 Jul: 9.

With temperatures around zero degrees celsius each day, the peninsular [sic] is known as the Antarctic Riviera.

**1995** *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions newsletter* 75 (Autumn): 41.

'The reputed Davis weather deserted us and had many of us questioning its status of the "Riviera of the South."

**roaring forties**

[The term roaring forties formerly applied (NOED) also to the northern latitudes 40-50°.]

The latitudes of 40-50°S, where strong westerly winds are a conspicuous feature, and cause rough seas.

**14 Dec 1897** (off South America) Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898-1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 66.

The wind poured upon us in hard, steady blasts from the south-west for nearly two days, which gave us, on our growing menu, a taste of the normal weather of the 'roaring forties'.

**1925** Hurley, Captain Frank *Argonauts of the South* G.P. Putnam's Sons, NY: 18.

The storm continued with increasing violence, for we were now entering the "Roaring Forties."

**1935** Christensen, Lars in Jayne, E.M.G., transl. fr Norwegian *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 47.

On January 6, 1931, the *Thorshavn* left Cape Town, and that very evening we got a specimen of what the South Sea can do when the wind is high. Next morning we sighted our first whale, and on the following day we entered the famous "roaring forties", where there is nearly always a rough sea and a strong wind.

**1957** (Gough Island) *London Calling* 9 May: 8.

Some insects and seeds were probably blown there by the strong winds of the Roaring Forties.

**1987** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* no 1 (Sept): inserted leaflet [2] Situated in the infamous 'Roaring Forties', the steep valleys become fast running torrents during wet weather, washing minerals down from the volcanic slopes to the flat, fertile, green regions below.

**robber fish**

[The Greek ἀρπαγή hook, is the root of the scientific name. It refers to the hooked operculum of these fish, and also translates as robber, hence the name.]

A fish of the fam. Harpagiferidae: see **harpagifer**.

**1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 54.

Harpagiferidae (robber fishes) .. are almost entirely limited to Antarctic waters

**robin** *Falkland Islands*

[From its similarity in appearance to the red-breasted English robin; the Falklands bird also appears close to settlements and gardens.]

The bird *Sturnella loyca falklandica*: see **military starling**

**1973** (Tierra del Fuego) Walker, Wayman II and others *Antarctic Journal of the United States* VIII(2) Mar/Apr: 30.

While the guests of Senora Cullare and Sr. Luis Cullare at the Estancia Pirainico, we obtained specimens from freshly shot caranchos, a red-backed hawk (*Buteo polysoma*), and the local robin (*Turdus falklandicus*).

**1989** *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation* no. 8 (Jan). 8.

[caption] The Long-tailed Meadowlark, more commonly known in the Falklands as the Robin or Military Starling, is the most widespread of the passerine birds in the Falklands according to the data gathered so far.

**rock cod**

[Rock cod is recorded from 1634 onwards (NOED) for northern hemisphere fish, and from 1796 onwards for other fish resembling them.]

A southern marine fish of the family Nototheniidae; a **nototheniid** (sense 2). See also (**antarctic**) **cod**, **crowned rockcod**,  **dusky rockcod**, **emerald rockcod**.

**1806** (Amsterdam Island) Barrow, John *A voyage to Cochinchina, in the years 1792 and 1793* Oxford University Press facs, Kuala Lumpur (1975): 144.

Cray-fish ... and the large perch, rock-cod, and bream, were caught in such abundance that, I believe, a provision of fish for six days was laid in for the two ships' companies, consisting of nearly six hundred men.

**1821** (South Shetlands) Sherratt, Richard quoted in *Polar Record* (1952) 6(43) Jan: 365.

Fishes are likewise in abundance and variety ... There is .. a very delicate fish to be caught near the different detached rocks, which I call the black or rock cod, weighing from 4 lbs. to 8 lbs. the only catable fish taken here.

**1924** Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history* by Rupert Vallentin Clarendon Press, Oxford: 141.

In one year he [sc. Louis Verne] supplied the Brazil market with eighty tons of salted fish, much of it being rock-cod, which the Brazilians esteem more than any other fish.

**1949** Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 161.

Taking a day off from science, Jo Jelbart went fishing at Cave Bay. He caught three small rock cods.

**1987** Lied, Nils in *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* 6(4) June: 10.

Jack cooked a nice piece of rock cod for my dinner.

**1990** Gon, O. and Heemstra, P.C. *Fishes of the Southern Ocean*. L.B. Smith Institute of Ichthyology, Grahamstown: 280.

The misnomer "rockcod" has recently been applied as a so-called "common name" to many nototheniid species. This name is an unfortunate choice for nototheniids, as it will lead to confusion with the true cod (Family Gadidae) and other fishes that are commonly known as rockcods (e.g. *Sebastes* in the North Pacific and groupers of the family Serranidae). In place of the name "rockcod" for many of the nototheniid species in this account, we suggest the use of the name "notothen" as a common name that is distinctive and more appropriate for this family.

**1994** *World Fishing* 43(8) Aug: 4.

In 1970, Soviet fishing vessels began exploiting the waters around the Antarctic area. In that year, the Soviet fleet caught 400 thousand tonnes of fish — mostly rock cod (*Nothothenia biggerifrons* and *Nothothenia squamifrons*) Isicl.

**rockhopper penguin** *noun and attrib. Also simply rockhopper*

[These penguins travel up steep slopes on land by hopping. On flat ground, they also hop, or walk and waddle like other penguins.]

A **crested penguin**, usually *Eudyptes chrysocome* (fam. Spheniscidae) which is widespread on subantarctic islands. It is a small black and white penguin with red eyes and a long yellowish crest of feathers extending from the yellow stripe over each eye.

See also **golden-crested penguin**, **jumping jack**, **red-eyed penguin**, **tufted penguin**.

**1860** Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* II(VIII) Oct: 337.

*Aptenodytes chrysocome*, the Falkland Islands' Rock-hopper (so called from its jumping from rock to rock), comes up from the sea about the middle of October, and lays the first week in November. Like the other Penguins, they return to the same breeding-grounds.

**1875** Kidder, J.H. *Contributions to the natural history of Kerguelen Island, made in connection with the American Transit-of-Venus expedition, 1874-75*. I. Ornithology Government Printing Office, Washington: 46.

The whaler's epithet "rock-hopper" is in this case particularly well applied, since they are the most agile of all penguins, skipping from rock to rock, climbing very steep inclined surfaces, and getting over the ground with great speed. It is worthy of notice that these penguins always hop, using both feet at a time like a sparrow, and never walk, as do other genera.

**1879** (Kerguelen Island) *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* B 168: 161.

The designation "Rock-hoppers" applied to them by the whalers is extremely appropriate; for although they occasionally walk a few paces at a time over a plane surface of rock, with the confined gait of competitors walking in a sack race, their ordinary mode of progression is a series of bounds executed with much apparent ease and with an elasticity of motion such as is exhibited by Kangaroos.

**1894** Hamilton, A. in *Transactions and Proceedings of the New Zealand Institute* XXVII Art LXV: 571.

The royals lay in September, and also the rock-hoppers.

**1905** (Falkland Islands) *Scottish Geographical Magazine* 21: 47.

An interesting point as regards one of the penguins — the rockhopper (*Eudyptes chrysocome*) — is that the surfaces of

the hard rock across which many generations of the birds have passed are smoothed and scratched by their passage.

**1923** Macklin, A.H. in *Country Life* 6 Jan: 10.

The rockhopper is more rare on South Georgia than either the gentoo or the king. It is found more plentifully on the Tristan da Cunha group of islands. It has a pretty torso with a crest of yellow and black feathers which the Tristan da Cunha islanders make into mats and knick-knacks for sale to passing ships.

**1952** Hagen, Yngvar *Birds of Tristan da Cunha* Det Norske Videnskap Akademi i Oslo/Hos Jacob Dybwad, Oslo: 25.

The normal fresh weight of a well-sized Rockhopper-egg should be about 90–100 g.

**1955** (Heard Island) Dalziel, Ken *Penguin road* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 30.

On the island we found thousands upon thousands of penguins. There were the macaronis, the gentoos and, surely quaintest of all, the rockhoppers. The rockhopper, with his white-feathered breast and glossy black head and back, is like a dapper little man in evening dress. Bright yellow feathers adorn his head and fall over his deep red eyes and tanned beak. Always standing very erect, the rockhopper is about two feet in height. He is a curious little bird — quite unafraid — and will waddle straight up to you, all the time dragging his pointed tail along the ground. When within a yard or two he will usually stop and closely examine you by quickly turning his head from one side to the other, looking at you first with the left eye and then the right. If satisfied that no harm is intended he will ruffle his feathers and may even doze off to sleep. However, if you tease him, he will stretch out his glossy black neck, look at you down his beak and make the most alarming noises which sound like *garr-ta-ta garr-ta-ta*, made very quickly.

**1968** Stonehouse, Bernard *Penguins: the World of Animals series* Arthur Barker, London/Golden Press, NY: 10.

About half a million Rockhoppers — crimson-eyed penguins of vitriolic temperament — still nest on Nightingale Island.

**1994** (Campbell Island) Cunningham, Duncan M. and Moors, Philip J. in *The Emu* 94: 34.

Rockhopper Penguins sometimes evict second-hatching eggs after the first chick has hatched.

**rockie** See **rocky penguin**

**rock lobster**

[Specific use of rock lobster, recorded since 1884 for marine crayfish of the fam. Palinuridae (NOED).]

The crustacean *Jasus tristani*: see **crawfish**.

**1953** [source: NOED] *Sun [Baltimore]* 9 Sept.

The name of the South African crayfish was changed by law to 'rock lobster'.

**1971** (late 1940s) Munch, Peter *Crisis in Utopia: the ordeal of Tristan da Cunha* Thomas Y. Crowell, NY: 161.

The South Atlantic crawfish — or crayfish, as the Islanders call it — which was the basis of a prosperous fishing industry in South Africa and had already captured the American market under the label "rock lobster", was abundant around Tristan and easy to catch.

**1987** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* no 1 (Sept): inserted leaflet.

[canned food label] Tristan Brand Rock Lobster. Product of Tristan da Cunha, South Atlantic. Net weight 6½ oz.

**rock penguin**

A **rockhopper penguin**.

**6 Jan 1882** (Bird Island, Falkland Islands) Wiseman, William in Layman, Rear-Admiral C.H. and Cameron, Jane (1995) *The*

*Falklands and the Dwarf: the cruise of HMS Dwarf in the Falkland Islands 1881–1882* Picton Publishing, Chippenham: 86.

The penguins here were most absurd. This sort, the Rock Penguins, are the smallest on the island, being about the size of a raven. They have black bodies with a white breast and a yellow crest over each eye. These birds are still more ridiculous than the other sorts as instead of walking they hop along.

**1965** Wendt, Herbert in Winston, Richard and Clara (transl. fr German) *The sex life of the animals* Arthur Barker Ltd, London: 272.

Most people are under the delusion that the unfortunate penguins are condemned to live on eternal ice and to raise their offspring under the hardest conditions, in blinding blizzards at temperatures many degrees below zero. This is so only for a few species — the Emperor and King penguins of the Antarctic and the rock penguins which, like the King penguins, inhabit the islands around the continent.

### rock shag *Falkland Islands*

The seabird *Phalacrocorax magellanicus* (fam. Phalacrocoracidae), which has a black back and neck, the adult having white markings on the front of the neck. It breeds on coasts in the Falkland Islands, where it is often called the **black shag**, and southern South America.

**1910** Cobb, Arthur F. *Wildlife in the Falkland Islands* Gowans & Gray, London: 67.

[caption] A rock shag rookery. Rock or Black Shag .. is a smaller bird than the King Shag, and has a black throat in the normal adult plumage.

**1957** (Straits of Magellan) Holgersen, Holger *Ornithology of the "Brategg" Expedition* Publikasjon nr. 21 fra Kommandør Chr. Christensens Hvalfangstmuseum i Sandefjord: 58.

The Rock Shag apparently keeps close to the shore line and the more sheltered fiords and channels.

**1989** Woods, R.W. in *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation [London]* no. 8 (Jan): 7.

The tenth most widespread species after the 1987/88 season is the Rock Shag.

### rock wren *Falkland Islands*

The bird *Troglodytes cobbi*: see **Cobb's wren**.

**1985** Woods, Robin W. in *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation* no 4 (Oct): 10.

House Wrens (known locally as Rock Wrens) and Grass Wrens, the two smallest breeding birds, have been overlooked or confused by several observers.

**c1990** Roper, Patrick *Holidays in the Falkland Islands* Falkland Islands Tourist Board, London: 4.

Everywhere there are small groups of the distinctive Upland Geese grazing or, on the coast, Rock Wrens and Tussac Birds hopping about round your feet.

### rocky penguin *noun and attrib. Also simply rocky or rockie*

#### A rockhopper penguin.

**1917** (Falkland Islands) Beck, Rollo H. *The American Museum Journal* XVII(7) Nov: 431.

[caption] While the greater number of the rocky penguins will move aside for one passing through their colony, there are always some pugnacious individuals that rush boldly forward to hinder or hasten the visitor.

**1924** Vallentin, Rupert in Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history by Rupert Vallentin* Clarendon Press, Oxford: 292.

Every 'Rockie' rookery is usually placed near the sea, a well-defined gangway or path being always present.

**1929** (South Georgia) *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 588.

The Macaroni Penguin, locally called "Rocky Penguin" is extremely abundant at South Georgia and in the waters round the island, though it rarely comes on land except at its rookeries. The rookeries as a rule are large, containing thousands of birds: they are situated on the tussac-covered slopes above the cliffs in exposed parts of the coast outside the bays.

**1950** (South Georgia) Saunders, Alfred A *camera in Antarctica* Winchester Publications, London: 57.

Occasionally in the big rookeries farther south, odd pairs of Rocky penguins were found making their nests.

**1970** Gosman, Ron, ed. *Homers' Odyssey: Macquarie Island magazine 1970* ANARE, Macquarie Island: [7].

Rocky chicks form crèches — about 3 weeks behind the ROYALS.

**1993** Chater, Tony *The Falklands* The Penna Press, St Albans 14.

So strong is the urge to reproduce which brings 'rockies' back here from their pelagic winter wanderings, that I have seen them battling to land in terrible gales.

### rook *Falkland Islands*

[*ROOK has been recorded in British English for the black crow from c725-(NOED), and has been applied here from the bird's call and general appearance.*]

The large dark bird of prey *Phalcooboenus australis*: see **Johnny rook**.

**19 Oct 1822** (Falkland Islands) Morrell, Captain Benjamin (1832) *A narrative of four voyages, to the South Sea [etc.]* [.] & Harper, New York: 52.

Similar depredations are also committed by a bird called the rook, which is equally mischievous as the monkey.

**1829** (Falkland Islands) Barnard, Capt. Charles H. *A narrative of the sufferings and adventures of Captain Charles H. Barnard in a voyage round the world, during the years 1812, 1813, 1814, 1815. & 1816* Printed for the author by J. Lindon, New York: 41.

Jacob Green and Sam. Ansel went for more carrion crows'.  
Footnote: These birds, generally known among sealers by the name of rooks, partake of the form and nature both of the hawk and the crow. They are about the size of the largest hen hawks, common to the United States of a black colour, and shaped something like a rook; their claws are armed with large and strong talons, like those of an eagle; they are exceedingly bold and the most mischievous of all the feathered creation.

**1833** (Falkland Islands) Fanning, Edmund *Voyages round the World; with Selected Sketches of Voyages to the South seas, North and South Pacific Oceans, China, Etc.* Collins & Hannay, New York: 94.

We found on the island .. gulls; sea-hens; rooks, these last a most troublesome bird, being very mischievous and full of cunning.

**1857** (Falkland Islands) Snow, W. Parker *A two years' cruise off Tierra del Fuego, the Falkland Islands, Patagonia, and in the River Plate: a narrative of life in the Southern Seas* Longman, Brown, Green, Longmans and Roberts, London, vol 1: 130.

The pig and poultry got on tolerably; but the latter were much worried by the hawks and rooks.

**1901** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* XII(11) Mar: [5].

Mr. Alex. Miller, while working at Cape Dolphin, left his coat and watch hanging on an adjacent fence. When he went to

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

consult his watch, the latter had disappeared and has never been found. A couple of rooks were flying about, their nest is in some inaccessible rocks hard by, it is supposed that the watch is there.

**rookery**

[Rookery originally meant a roosting place of British rooks, recorded from 1725 (NOED).]

1. A penguin nesting area.

**19 Oct 1822** (Falkland Islands) Morrell, Captain Benjamin (1832) *A narrative of four voyages, to the South Sea [etc.]*. & J. Harper, New York: 51.

A part of the crew were ... employed in gathering [sc. penguin] eggs from the rookeries on the back side of the island.

**1840** *The penny cyclopaedia* Charles Knight, London, vol XVII: 410.

The towns, camps, and rookeries, as they have been called, of these birds, have proved an ample theme for most of the southern voyagers.

**1841** (71° 56'S) McCormick, Robert in *Tasmanian Journal of Natural Science* I(iv) 11 Jan: 245.

From this a platform extended to the ice-girt landing place, on which the penguins had established a rookery, and were congregated in such countless numbers, young and old, that the whole place, with the ice and water adjacent, seemed alive with them.

**1860** (Falkland Islands) Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* II(VIII) Oct: 336.

*Eudyptes papua* is the next Penguin that "hauls up" (to use a nautical term) at the Falklands to breed. These birds have regular rookeries which they occupy every year.

**1879** (Tristan da Cunha) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 119.

Most of the droves of penguins made for one landing-place, where the beach surface was covered with a coating of dirt from their feet, forming a broad tract, leading to a lane in the tall grass about a yard wide at the bottom, and quite bare, with a smoothly beaten black roadway; this was the entrance to the main street of this part of the "rookery," for so these penguin establishments are called.

**1894** Hamilton, A. in *Transactions and Proceedings of the New Zealand Institute* XXVII Art LXV: 563.

The chief industry now is the boiling down of the royal penguin (*E. schlegeli*). For the purposes of the party the fat birds are selected as they pass up and down from the sea to the "rookery", usually those of a year old.

**1908** Wild, Frank in Shackleton, E.H., ed. *Aurora Australis* British Antarctic Expedition, Antarctica. Bay Books facs, Sydney (1988): [119].

We were going in the direction of the Emperors' rookery at Cape Crozier.

**1930** *The Illustrated London News* 25 Jan: 122.

[caption] Young penguins making their first trip from the "rookery" to the sea, past a group of sea-elephants asleep: the beach at Possession Island in the Crozets.

**1949** Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 225.

"Lem" Macey was there one afternoon. He said there was so much thieving going on among the penguins that he did not doubt why it was called a rookery.

**1971** Young, Pamela *Penguin summer — or, a rare bird in Antarctica* A.H. & A.W. Reed, Wellington: 13.

"Not the Antarctic again? What on earth for?" I interrupted. "Nobody's looked at a large rookery yet to see if the results I got at Roys apply there as well."

**1990** Nagle, Robin *Penguins* Mallard Press, New York: 46.

In contrast to emperors and most other penguins, king chicks don't leave the rookeries for the first time until they are at least a year old. This means that kings have a different mating cycle than other penguins. They breed twice in three years, and not always at the same time of year. Because of this, king colonies show a greater range in ages than is usually seen in penguin colonies. For instance, at some times of year a rookery will be home to mating pairs, young birds in first molt and older molting birds, incubating eggs, and newly hatched chicks.

2. Obs. An albatross nesting area.

**1829** (Falkland Islands) Barnard, Capt. Charles H. *A narrative of the sufferings and adventures of Captain Charles H. Barnard in a voyage round the world, during the years 1812, 1813, 1814, 1815, & 1816* Printed for the author by J. Lindon, New York: 59.

After completing my arrangements about the fire, and other concerns, I went to the rookery, and brought to my hut during the day four loads of eggs.

3. A breeding ground for seals.

**26 Mar 1833** Darwin, Charles quoted in Armstrong, Patrick (1992) *Darwin's desolate islands: a naturalist in the Falklands, 1833 and 1834* Picton Publishing, Chippenham: 31.

Amongst sealers there are frequently affrays for the best 'rookerys' [sic].

**1915** (Macquarie Island) Ainsworth, G.F. in Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911-1914* William Heinemann, London: 217.

The adults are called bulls and cows, while, curiously enough, in the sealers' phrase, the offspring are referred to as pups. The places where large numbers of them gather together during the breeding season are known as rookeries! "Rookery" appears to me to be inapplicable to a herd of sea elephants.

**1951** (Heard Island, 1859) *Walkabout. Australian Geographical Magazine* 17(9) Sept: 48.

From this habitation they emerged day by day at 4 a.m. to travel over rocks, snow and sand to the beach to kill, flense and cut up the sea elephants at the rookery, returning at 4 p.m. to their miserable abode for the second meal of the day.

4. A nesting area for other birds, such as the **giant petrel** or **Johnny rook**.

**1857** (Falkland Islands) Snow, W. Parker *A two years' cruise off Tierra del Fuego, the Falkland Islands, Patagonia, and in the River Plate: a narrative of life in the Southern Seas* Longman, Brown, Green, Longmans and Roberts, London, vol 1: 140.

Close to this rookery, but perfectly by itself, was a regular breeding encampment of young albatrosses or mollimauks, and penguins.

**1943** Mawson, Douglas *Macquarie Island: its geography and geology. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911-14. Scientific reports series A* vol V Government Printer, Sydney: 36.

The Giant Petrel (*Macronectes giganteus*) is an all-the-year round resident. In the spring these birds assemble in large rookeries, some on the flats near the sea, others on high terraces.

**rope brake Sledging**

A rope fixed to a sledge, which can be dropped down to drag under the sledge to slow it down in descending a slope.

**1909** (Mount Erebus) Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907–1909* William Heinemann, London: 190.

Rope brakes were put on the sledge-runners, and two men went in front to pull when necessary, while two steadied the sledge, and two were stationed behind to pull back when required.

**1964** (Ross Ice Shelf) Antarctic. *Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(9) Mar: 376.

Down the western side of a pass at its head, the sledges had to be taken down with six rope-brakes on each.

**1982** Ledingham, Rod *ANARE dog drivers manual* Antarctic Division, Department of Science and the Environment: 55.

When travelling normally the rope brake is fixed up against the cow catcher with light line ties. In rough country a pull line is rigged at the ready with a slip knot. When the line is pulled the rope drops down and drags about midway down the sledge under the runners.

## rorqual

[From the Old Norse reyðar-hvalr, from reyðar the specific name + hvalr whale (NOED), referring to the grooves or 'corduroy' on the whale's lower jaw.]

A whale of the family Balaenopteridae: see **balaenopterid**. See also **lesser rorqual**, **southern rorqual**.

**1901** Lydekker, R. in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 205.

Mr. W.S. Bruce, in his account of the animals met with during the voyage of the ss. *Balæna*, of Dundee, in 1892–93, speaks of the great number of large whales met with in the Antarctic. And Mr. H.H. Bull, in a letter to *The Times* newspaper of December 25, 1895, testifies to the number of "blue whales" encountered during the cruise of the steam whaler *Antarctic*. ... "On our cruise we noticed them more or less frequently from the 64° to the 74° south lat., between the long. of 165° to 178° east." These "blue whales", it appears, were rorquals, or finners.

**1933** Laurie, Alec H. in *Discovery Reports vol. VII* Cambridge University Press, London: 401.

The blood of all Rorquals has a peculiar pungent odour which can only be described as resembling the smell of decaying crustacea. This smell has been noticed in the blood of pigs which have been fed largely on whale meat.

**1957** Anderson, W. Ellery *Expedition south* Evans Brothers, London: 187.

Later we did find a whale pool. All that now remained of that unforgettable sight of two months before was a small blow-hole, about ten feet by fifteen feet. In it were four Rorquals, lifting their huge snouts out of the water to breathe.

**1995** Menkhorst, Peter W., ed. *Mammals of Victoria: distribution, ecology and conservation* Oxford University Press, Melbourne: 302.

The Humpback Whale is a rorqual .. and is included with the five species of *Balaenoptera* in the Family Balaenopteridae. It occurs world-wide and has a circumpolar distribution in the Southern Hemisphere.

## Ross seal

[Named after James Clark Ross (1800–62), British naval explorer of both Antarctic and Arctic. He was the first to sail into the Antarctic sea now called the Ross Sea. His ships on the British Antarctic Expedition of 1839 to 1843 were the Erebus and Terror. On this expedition, Ross collected two of these seals. Zoologist J.E. Gray of the British Museum used them

for his scientific description of the species, bestowing the specific name rossii in honour of the collector.]

The seal *Ommatophoca rossii* (fam. Phocidae), which has a dark back and silvery-grey front. It occurs around the antarctic continent, and seems to be a solitary animal. It grows to about 215 kg (475 lb) and 3.2 m (10 ft 6 in) long.

**1894** Bruce, William in Burn Murdoch, W.G. *From Edinburgh to the Antarctic* Longmans, Green and Co, London: 359.

The creamy white seals .. and the mottled grey seals (Ross's Seal) were in greatest abundance.

**10 Dec 1910** (66°38'S, 178°47'W, in the pack ice) Wilson, Edward (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912* Blandford Press, London: 74.

We would go out of our way to take a Ross Seal (*Ommatophoca rossii*) but not others, as they can be trusted to turn up in our proper course sooner or later. The killing of seals is a hateful business, but it is necessary — and having shot them with rifles from the ship we lower a pram and reach the floe they lie on and haul them in.

**1955** (Heard Island) Dalziel, Ken *Penguin road* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 62.

One day we were very excited when two of our members discovered a type of seal unknown to us. When Arthur Gwynn, our biologist, saw it, he quickly identified it as a Ross seal, named after its discoverer Sir James Ross in 1841. It was indeed a rare seal, as less than fifty of the species have ever been seen. She was a peculiar-looking little animal, about five feet six inches long. Her colour on top was grey-brown and paler underneath. Dark stripes ran down her throat as though traced by a fine brush. A very strange feature was that she could puff out her throat and make her head appear quite withdrawn. Several curved needle-like teeth were well designed to grip the cuttle-fish upon which she lived. Her home, normally, was in the floating pack-ice which surrounds the Antarctic coast-line, and we wondered what made her visit our island, which, at this time of the year, was 200 miles from home.

**1964** Jenkins, Geoffrey A *grue of ice* Fontana Books, London: 172.

"If we are very lucky we might see a Ross seal — they're supposed to breed on Bouvet," I said. "It is the most beautiful creature in the Southern Ocean, and its eyes are quite wonderfully affectionate."

**29 Mar 1987** (Cape Evans) Gaudian, Gudrun in May, John (1989) *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica, 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 164.

A Ross seal lolled about in a tide crack, his head poking through the slushy water.

## rot verb

[NOED records the North American use of rot in 1977, in the same sense of sea ice thawing.]

Of ice: to disintegrate, while retaining some of the structure of ice.

**8 Jan 1911** (Cape Evans) Wilson, Edward (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912* Blandford Press, London: 93.

Turned out again at 5 a.m., all hands — a mistake. The hot sun we have had all these days has rotted the ice ... The ice was everywhere rotting fast.

**1953** Scholes, Arthur *Seventh continent: saga of Australasian exploration in Antarctica 1895–1950* George Allen & Unwin, London: 185.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

The sea-ice in Marguerite Bay was still holding, though much broken up by leads of open water and thaw pools which had rotted large pools.

**1992** Lied, Commander Nils Oscar: *the true story of a husky* Kerr Publishing, Sydney: 133.

The ice rotted in the sun, the measuring stakes collapsed and finally the lakes opened and the ice melted.

**rotten** *adjective*

Of ice, having disintegrated.

**[26 Dec 1772]** Cook, James quoted in Beaglehole, J.C., ed. (1961) *The voyage of the Resolution and Adventure* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 67.

The ice in some other of the loose feilds appeared like Corral Rocks, honey combed and as it were rotten.]

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 334.

[gloss] Rotten ice.- Old ice, partially melted, and in part honeycombed.

**1905** Scott, Captain Robert F. *The voyage of the 'Discovery'* Macmillan and Co, London: 96.

The swell ceased and floes increased to four or five acres in extent, and late at night they were almost a mile in length, but very rotten.

**1916** (McMurdo Sound, Jan 1903) Doorly, Captain Gerald S. *The voyages of the 'Morning'* Smith, Elder & Co., London: 98.

A signal was made from the ship warning the party of the rotten ice area.

**13 Dec 1930** (heading S from Macquarie Island) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 362.

Some of today's ice very rotten — honeycombed.

**1955** (nr Stonington base) Walton, E.W. Kevin *Two years in the Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 176.

Soft snow covered rotten sea-ice and salt-water slush.

**1982** Jackson, Andrew, ed. *ANARE field manual, 2nd edn* [Australian] Antarctic Division, Dept Science and Technology: 22.

During summer a complete change of clothes is advisable to guard against falling through rotten ice into the lakes or fjords.

**rough ice**

A general term for ice, most often **sea ice**, with an uneven, hummocked surface.

**[1901]** (in the Antarctic pack, Jan 1899) Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 56.

On the home run I unfortunately broke the leather strap which held the *ski* to one of my feet, so I had practically to *ski* on one foot and drag the other, which method, over rough hummocky ice, was not at all comfortable.]

**1935** Christensen, Lars in Jayne, E.M.G., transl. fr Norwegian *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 68.

He is sending the catchers south to look for a better place, as there is a quantity of rough ice.

**1992** Lied, Commander Nils Oscar: *the true story of a husky* Kerr Publishing, Sydney: 112.

We had to make an early start because the round trip would be roughly 25 kilometres through rough ice.

**roughie** *Falkland Islands*

An unshorn sheep with two seasons' growth of wool. The weak staple between two growth periods breaks easily when the wool is spun.

**1993** Chater, Tony *The Falklands* The Penna Press, St Albans: 94.

I cursed and sweated, first catching then lifting each of twenty or so 150lb 'roughies' over a wire fence.

**round-tripper** *Aust.*

[NOED records round trip as originally US, for an outward and return journey (anywhere), from 1860 on.]

An **expeditioner** making a brief summer visit to Antarctica, going and returning on the same voyage.

**1964** (Macquarie Island) Aurora. *The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] June: 4.

On December 11th, after a superb changeover ding, 13 of the 1962 party and the 'round trippers' were poured aboard, the Thala weighed anchor and departed from our fair Southern Ocean island.

**1988** Caldwell, John, Maddock, Bea and Senbergs, Jan *Antarctic journey: three artists in Antarctica* AGPS, Canberra: 26.

There is the aristocracy of the people who winter over and those who've been on a number of trips, and then there are the peasant round-trippers, like us.

**1990** *Australian Systematic Botany Society newsletter* 64 (Sept.): 12.

The expedition left on the 'Polar Queen', a Norwegian ice-strengthened research vessel chartered by ANARE, on November 21, 1989. On board were the replacement winter party for the 1990 season, the summer research and logistic personnel, a handful of 'round-trippers', and an army team responsible for the LARCS.

**1996** (Casey) *Icy News: [Australian] Antarctic Division staff newsletter* 1 Mar: [3].

One pair of roundtrippers, intent on doing their best, carried what they thought was a Weasel gearbox several meters [sic] from the Wilkes tip before discovering their error. I am yet to find out whether the object was returned or the Wilkes tip extended in area!

**royal**1. A **royal penguin**.

**1894** Hamilton, A. in *Transactions and Proceedings of the New Zealand Institute* XXVII Art LXV: 571.

The royals lay in September, and also the rock-hoppers.

**1919** (Macquarie Island) Mawson, Sir Douglas *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society of Australasia (SA branch)* XX: 5.

The most numerous of these interesting types of feather folk are the Royals, the two largest rookeries of which cover over 16 and 10 acres, respectively.

**1967** Gillham, Mary E. *Sub-Antarctic sanctuary: summertime on Macquarie Island* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Wellington: 47.

Although the royals bred nowhere else in the world but on Macquarie Island, it did not look as though they were in any danger of extermination.

**1978** Béchervaise, John *Science: men on ice in Antarctica. Australian Life Series* Lothian Publishing Co, Melbourne: 91.

Gentoos and Royals, on Macquarie, and the exquisite patrician Kings, assemble in their thousands.

2. A **royal albatross**.

**1936** (Campbell Island) Guthrie-Smith, H. *Sorrows and joys of a New Zealand naturalist* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Dunedin: 223.

There is a strong family resemblance in the nests of Molly-mauk and Albatross. Those of the Royals are raised seven or eight inches above ground, their substantial stems composed of rooty peat ... Judging by the spacing of the nests, aloof and yet not inconspicuous the Royal Albatross may be set down as a semi-gregarious fowl.

**royal albatross**

[Royal stately, magnificent, splendid, is recorded in the names of birds from 1575– (NOED), + albatross. The Latin *regia* royal, has been used in the past as part of the bird's scientific name: see 1904 quotation.]

The very large albatross *Diomedea epomophora* (fam. Diomedidae) which has a white body and black and white wings. The bird is graceful in flight; its wingspan is up to 3.5 m (11 ft 6 in). There are two subspecies, the northern royal albatross, *D. e. sanfordi* and **southern royal albatross**. See also **epomophora**.

**1904** [source: DNZE] Hutton & Drummond *Animals NZ*: 261.

The Royal Albatross. *Diomedea regia* ... These birds sometimes follow a vessel for days together, and are seldom seen to settle on the water except to feed.

**5 Dec 1910** (56°S, 176°E) Wilson, Edward (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912* Blandford Press, London: 70.

There were numbers of Royal and Wandering Albatross and of various ages, changing from dark brown to pure white with black wing primaries.

**15 June 1941** Wilson, R.F. in Kerr, J.S. (1976) *Campbell Island: a history* A.H. & A.W. Reed Ltd, Wellington: 101.

On the top amongst the snow I saw about 10 Royal albatross. Beautiful things all down and about 2 feet high. Their nest is a small circular one about 2 feet in diameter and 6–8 inches from the ground. There appears to be enough room for its feet only.

**1960** Westerskov, Kaj *Birds of Campbell Island* Wildlife Publication no. 61, Wildlife Division, New Zealand: 45.

Royal albatrosses are distinguished from wandering albatrosses by their bigger and more rounded, protruding nose tubes and black eyelids (the wanderer has a greenish-purple, or even white, bluish or pink eyelid).

**1971** *Aurora*. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne] June: 16.

Rain falls on 325 days a year on Campbell Island which is the home of the Royal albatross. A pathway through the Meteorological Station leads over metal and wooden ramps and then deteriorates into a muddy track winding up a 400 ft high slope to the nests of the Royal albatrosses. Our boots squelched through soft black mud as we climbed past ferns, tufted grass, wild flowers and small bushes. Two albatrosses, each about 4 ft long, were sitting unconcernedly on large nests while people crowded round taking photographs. One bird was even persuaded to rise off its nest to reveal a large white egg.

**1995** *Sunday Age* [Melbourne] 23 April: Agenda 10.

Our voyage took us from the sun of Christchurch to the cloudy New Zealand sub-Antarctic islands. Here we walked among sea lions and visited nesting royal albatross that are between the size of a pelican and a sheep.

**royal penguin** noun *phr.* and *attrib.*

[Royal stately, magnificent, splendid, + penguin. Royal was perhaps used from the striking appearance of the bird, which however could hardly be described as regal. The specific name *schlegeli* was given in honour of Professor Hermann Schlegel (1804–1884), Director of the Royal Museum, Leiden.]

The black and white penguin *Eudyptes schlegeli* (fam. Spheniscidae), one of the **crested penguins**, which has a crest of orange-yellow feathers. The bird breeds only on Macquarie Island, an Australian subantarctic territory, and nearby islets. Some biologists consider

the royal penguin a subspecies of the **macaroni penguin**, *E. chrysolophus*.

**[15 Dec 1820]** Bellingshausen, Thaddeus in Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. (1945) *The voyage of Captain Bellingshausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819–1821* Hakluyt Society, London, vol 2: 388.

[*ed. note: Although Bellingshausen calls this penguin a 'royal penguin', it is actually an emperor penguin; Bellingshausen sometimes confused 'royal' and 'king' penguins, and emperor penguins are similar to the latter.*]

Mr Ignatiev returned with some booty, as he brought back a penguin of the Royal species, an unusually large one, 3 feet in height and weighing 59 lb. Near it on the ice was a shrimp. I have already mentioned that penguins eat shrimps, and this one was a proof that the parts of the Antarctic Ocean traversed by us were filled with these creatures.]

**1888** Buller, Sir Walter Lawry *A history of the birds of New Zealand*. 2nd edition. Published by the author, Westminster London, vol 2: 298.

*Eudyptes schlegeli*. (Royal Penguin.) ... There are two examples of this fine Penguin from Macquarie Island in the Otago Museum.

**1894** Hamilton, A. in *Transactions and Proceedings of the New Zealand Institute XXVII* Art LXV: 563.

The chief industry now is the boiling down of the royal penguin (*E. schlegeli*). For the purposes of the party the fat birds are selected as they pass up and down from the sea to the "rookery", usually those of a year old.

**1919** Mawson, Sir Douglas in *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society of Australasia (SA branch) XX*: 8.

A single penguin yields very little oil indeed, and it does seem a shame for the handsome golden crested Royal Penguins to be put through the melters merely for the half pint or so of oil that they represent; and the value of the product is chiefly discounted by the costs entailed in working at such an out-of-the-way place.

**1953** Oliver, W.R.B. in *The Emu* 53(2) Jun: 185.

In the Royal Penguin, *E. schlegeli*, and its South American counterpart *E. chrysolophus*, the crests, which are golden yellow, meet in front of the crown, pass over the eyes and flop rather untidily over the sides of the head behind them.

**1979** Lewis, David *Voyage to the ice: the Antarctic expedition of Solo* Australian Broadcasting Commission/Wm Collins Sons & Co: 99.

Enid took Jack, Peter and me on a conducted tour of a Royal penguin rookery. These oddly named tubby creatures altogether lacking in Royal dignity, nest well up the hillsides.

**1993** *Geo* [Australia] 15(1) Feb–Apr: 44.

The royal penguin is a squat, solid bird that stands about knee-high.

**rrrrr** See **irre**

**RTA** verb, Aust.

To 'return (people, cargo, rubbish etc.) to Australia'; to be returned.

**1963** Wilkes *Hard Times* [Antarctica] ANARE, Wilkes: 7.

"Hell," he thought, "that's torn it. As soon as that blockhead of a dog-handler wakes up he'll try and RTA me."

**1973** (Macquarie Island) *Aurora*. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne] June: 12.

One member of the over-winter group was also RTA'd, adding to our problems of shorthandedness ... We also RTA'd those broken films with ruined soundtracks.

**1986** *Sydney Morning Herald* 15 Feb: 9.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

We saw a couple of slugs and snapped some beaut me-pickies to show the folks when we get RTA-ed.

**RTAer** *Aust.*

An **expeditioner** returning to Australia.

**1996** *Davis News [Antarctica]* 27 Mar: [1].

Voyage 6 personnel. Dear RTA-ers. This is to introduce myself (Tom Maggs) as your Voyage Leader.

**ruddy-headed goose** *Falkland Islands*

The goose *Chloephaga rubidiceps* (fam. Anatidae) of the Falkland Islands and southern South America. It has a ruddy-brown neck and head and barred brown-grey and black body. It was formerly hunted as a pest of grazing land, and is excellent eating. It is also called the **brent goose**.

**1950** Scott, Peter *Key to the wildfowl of the world* Severn Wildfowl Trust, Slimbridge, Gloucestershire: [14].

Ruddy-headed Goose. *Chloephaga rubidiceps*. Falkland Islands and Tierra del Fuego; occasionally in central Argentina.

**1983** Bertrand, Kitty *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation [London]* 1 (Oct): 2.

Up to the time that my husband, Cecil, and I bought Carcass there was a bounty paid by all farmers for upland and ruddy-

headed geese and the Government also paid for beaks of turkey vultures.

**1994** *New Scientist* no 1922 (23 Apr): 29.

The Falklands' craggy coastlines are the world's largest breeding grounds for the gentoo and rockhopper penguins, most of the world's surviving ruddy-headed geese [etc.].

**rufous-chested dotterel** *Falkland Islands* Also **rufous-breasted dotterel**

The bird *Charadrius modestus* (fam. Charadriidae) which breeds in the Falkland Islands and southern South America. Adults have grey and white plumage and when breeding, they have a chestnut-coloured breast with a black band underneath.

**1980** (Falkland Islands) Parmelee, David F. *Bird Island in antarctic waters* University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis: 17.

Paraguayan snipes (*Capella gallinago magellanica*) in the wet pastures of Stanley and elusive rufous-breasted dotterels (*Zonibyx modestus*) on its coastal hills of diddle-dee took up some extra time.

**1994** Simpson, Tim *Cooking the Falkland Island way* Peregrine Publishing, Bangor: 39.

It was not too long ago, 1953 in fact, that the Rufous-chested Dotterel and the Long-tailed Meadowlark (known locally as the Robin) were also considered game birds.



# — S —

## SAB

[Acronym from 'special antarctic blend']

An extremely low-wax fuel oil specially formulated for use in extremely cold conditions. It is very similar to domestic heating oil, and is known in full as **Special Antarctic Blend**.

[1964 Helm, A.S. and Miller, J.H. *Antarctica: the story of the New Zealand party of the Trans-Antarctic expedition* R.E. Owen, Government Printer, Wellington: 63.

An idea of the amount [sc. of fuel] required can be envisaged when it is realised that the entire electricity and heat at Scott Base relied on diesel fuel for their generation. Thousands of gallons of a special kerosene for this purpose, adapted for the rigorous Antarctic conditions, had to be provided. The motor and aviation spirits had to be of special blends, with particular ignition qualities to combat the below-zero temperatures. At first these special fuels had to be brought from England, but for the second season they were produced from the BP refinery at Kiwana [sic] in Western Australia.]

1987 Chester, Jonathan in *Australian Geographic* 5 (Jan-Mar): 96.

Fuel tanks holding SAB (Special Antarctic Blend) diesel fuel, replenished annually and used for generators and other station equipment.

23 June 1990 (Mawson station) Grcct, Pene and Price, Gina (1995) *Frost bytes* Doubleday, Sydney: 101.

Casey has lost 90 000 litres of SAB in a ruptured tank and that has hit the press.

**saennagras(s), saennegras(s)** See **sennegrass**

## sago snow

[Sago from the graininess of the snow.]

Snow which falls as very small, round, hard balls, sometimes with a fluffy exterior.

[1909 (Ross Sea) Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907-1909* William Heinemann, London: 68.

In the afternoon the wind blew fresh, and the sky became overcast again, and snow began to fall. This snow differed from that brought by the northerly wind; the northerly snow had consisted of flakes about a quarter of an inch in diameter, while that now met with formed of small round specks, hard and dry, like sago — the true Antarctic type.]

1928 Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 35.

Snow is found in the following forms: .. The commonest form near the coast: this is granular, probably due to water-drops. The little spheres are the "fluff-balls," and form a kind of sago snow.

1955 (Heard Island) Dalziel, Ken *Penguin road* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 18.

We left the ship and found the ground covered in snow — different snow from what you have seen in Australia. It was

called sago-snow, because the hard dry little pellets looked just like sago.

## saladero Hist., Falkland Islands

[From the South American Spanish *saladero* salting house.]

A slaughtering and salting house for meat. The Falklands use of the word is restricted to one particular establishment (see quotations), which ceased operations in the nineteenth century. The name is preserved as the name of the area.

1924 (1840s) Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history* by Rupert Vallentin Clarendon Press, Oxford: 198.

In a short time he [sc. GT Whittington] established a large *saladero* or slaughtering and salting house called Hope Place, to the south-east of Brenton Loch.

1987 (1840s) Strange, Ian J. *The Falkland Islands and their natural history* David and Charles, Newton Abbot, Devon: 136.

On the south-east shore of Brenton Loch, at Hope Place, Lafone established an extensive *saladero*, or slaughterhouse and salting establishment.

## Salvin's albatross Also *Salvin's mollymawk*

[The species name *salvini* was given to the bird by Sir Lionel Walter Rothschild (see 1893 quotation) in honour of English ornithologist Osbert Salvin (1835-1898), who brought the species to Rothschild's attention.]

The albatross *Diomedea cauta salvini* (fam. Diomedidae), a subspecies of the **shy albatross**. The bird breeds on the Crozet Islands and on New Zealand's Snares and Bounty Islands, and has also been called the **grey-backed mollymawk**.

[1893 *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* 1(X): lvi

Mr. Rothschild also exhibited and described the following species:— ... *Thalassogeron salvini*, sp. nov. ... This is the "*Diomedea cauta*" of Buller and other writers on New Zealand birds. On comparing my series of specimens with one of Gould's types of *T. cautus* in the British Museum, the differences above pointed out are apparent. In coloration this species is apparently greyer on the head and neck, the dark loreal mark in front of the eye being very conspicuous ... These three species of *Procellariidae* in my collection were pointed out to me as new by Mr. Osbert Salvin, who kindly confirmed the diagnoses.]

1974 Harper, Peter C. and Kinsky, F.C. *Tuatara* 21(1,2): 21.

Although Salvin's Mollymawks do not follow larger ships, they will congregate around fishing vessels for offal.

1988 Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 105.

The race *D. c. salvini* (Salvin's Albatross) breeds at the Snares and Bounty Islands.

**Salvin's mollymawk** See **Salvin's albatross**

## Salvin's prion

[Named in 1912 (see quotation) in honour of English ornithologist Osbert Salvin (1835-1898) by Australian ornithologist G.M. Mathews.]

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

The seabird *Pachyptila vittata salvini* or *Pachyptila salvini salvini* (fam. Procellariidae) of the southern Indian Ocean, which breeds on the Prince Edward Islands group, Crozet Islands, Amsterdam and St Paul. It is also called the **Marion prion** and **medium-billed prion**.

See also **broad-billed prion**.

[1912 Mathews, G.M. *Birds of Australia* vol 2: 212.

From the Crozets, Marion Island, etc., are birds which agree with this, but have the bill shorter and slightly narrower. For these I propose the name *Prion vittatus salvini*, subsp. n.]

1971 Bakker, E.M. van Zinderen Sr., Winterbottom, J.M., eds and R.A. Dyer *Marion and Prince Edward Islands* A.A. Balkema, Cape Town: 12.

The most numerous bird species on the islands is, apparently, the Salvin's Prion (*Pachyptila salvini*).

1989 *Antarctic Science* 1 (1) Mar: 20.

The estimated .. 1.7 million breeding pairs .. of .. Salvin's prions (*Pachyptila vittata salvini* Mathews) at Marion Island..

## Sanaean

[In 1959 South Africa began work in Antarctica, sending the first SANAE — South African National Antarctic Research Expedition — to Queen Maud Land. Since then, it has occupied successive bases (Sanae, Sanae II, III and IV) in the region.]

A worker with the South African National Antarctic Research Expeditions.

1971 *Antarktische Bulletin* 2(5-6) Apr.-Sept: 56.

Again we greet all friends and relations and especially the "Goughels" and "Sanaeans".

**sastrugi** noun and attrib., normally occurs in this form as pl. though **sastrugis** (see 1993 quotation) is known. Sing. sometimes **sastruga**, **sastrugos**, **sastrugus**

[Sastrugi is recorded in Canadian English from 1851.]

Ridges of snow (becoming ice) formed and hardened by the wind, and indicating direction of the prevailing wind because they run parallel to this. These can be from a few centimetres to two or three metres high and make travelling hell.

1906 (South Orkneys) Rudmose Brown, R.N., Mossman, R.C. and Pirie, J.H. Harvey *The voyage of the "Scotia", being the record of a voyage of exploration in Antarctic Seas by Three of the Staff* William Blackwood and Sons, Edinburgh: 343.

Walking was, however, somewhat difficult, as the surface of the whole floe was excavated by the wind into a mass of small pits called "sastrugi," some over two feet in depth.

1909 (nr White Island) Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907-1909* William Heinemann, London: 273.

Often as we marched the sledges would be brought up all standing by a sastrugus, or snow mound, caused by the wind, and we would be lucky if we were not tripped up ourselves. Small depressions would escape the eye altogether, and when we thought that we were marching along on a level surface, we would suddenly step down two or three feet.

1912 Amundsen, R. in *Mercury [Hobart]* 11 Mar: 5.

There were no sastrugi (ridges of snow), and only local crevasses.

1915 (Shackleton Ice-Shelf) Wild, Frank in Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian*

*Antarctic Expedition, 1911-1914* William Heinemann, London: 58.

The slope was covered with sastrugi ridges, three to four feet in height.

— 275 Bage, R.

In Adelie Land, even when the air was clear of snow, it was easy to bump against a four-foot sastruga without seeing it.

28 Feb 1912 Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Picador, London: 432.

I had my first upset just after starting, the sledge capsizing on a great sastrugus like the Ramp.

1949 (Heard Island) Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 183.

The ski-ers said the sastrugi formations on the "flat" took the speed out of their runs.

1958 Fuchs, V. in Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund *The crossing of Antarctica: the Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955-58* Cassell & Co, London: 242.

The two Weasels and the Muskeg .. were slower than the 'cats' over the murderous sastrugi.

1959 Siple, Paul *90° South: the story of the American South Pole conquest* G.P. Putnam's Sons, New York: 154.

The high altitude and the sastrugi-strewn path to the Pole had winded the not-yet-acclimated men.

1979 Kilian, Crawford *Icequake* Futura Publications, London: 63. Snow was deep and powdery in the lee of each sastrugus, and in places they waded knee-deep.

1988 Porter, Eliot *Antarctica, 2nd edn* Arch Cape Press, NY: 118. Any projection object on the open plain soon develops a long sastrugus tail.

1989 May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica, 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 29.

[caption] The strong winter winds of Antarctica combine with the heavy coastal snowfall to produce a dramatic landscape. Together they erode the surface, sculpting it into a corrugated "sea" of irregularly shaped snow forms, known as sastrugi.

1993 Claassen, P. and Sharp, P.A., eds *Draft comprehensive environmental evaluation of the proposed new SANAE IV facility at Vesleskarvet, Queen Maud Land, Antarctica* Department of Environmental Affairs, Pretoria: 2-6.

The direction of sastrugis at the site of the base indicates the prevailing wind direction.

1993 Fiennes, Ranulph *Mind over matter: the epic crossing of the Antarctic continent* Sinclair-Stevenson, London: betw. 54 and 55.

[caption] *Sastrugi*: a word from Russian meaning icy features built from snow. These iron-hard ridges were a great problem both on the 1993 manhaul journey and, even more so, on the 1980 Trans-globe Expedition. Here, on that earlier expedition, Oliver Shepard's sledge is jammed on a three-foot-high sastruga.

1996 (McMurdo Sound) Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 171.

If you hit a sastrugi and fall off without your safety cord connected to kill the motor, the thing just keeps going till it runs out of fuel — could be a hundred miles.

**sastrugi'd** adjective Also **sastrugized**

(Of a snow surface) formed into **sastrugi**.

10 Feb 1912 Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912* Blandford Press, London: 242.

The snow in this névé is pitted in small cups on the east and S.E. but sastrugized with no pitting on the N. and N.W.

**1986** Jenkins, Adrian and Summerson, Rupert *Travel report — Sledge Golf. Glacier geophysics Ronne Ice Shelf traverse 17 Dec 1985–24 Feb 1986* British Antarctic Survey, Cambridge: 17.

The surface was good and flat then becoming increasingly sastrugi'd.

### scattered pack *Also scattered ice*

#### Open pack.

**1964** (1955) Helm, A.S. and Miller, J.H. *Antarctica: the story of the New Zealand party of the Trans-Antarctic expedition* R.E. Owen, Government Printer, Wellington: 111.

The first large tabular iceberg appeared on the starboard bow at 7.30 a.m. on the morning of their third day out from South Georgia, by which time they had crossed the 64th parallel. More bergs appeared during the morning and by late afternoon the small "berg bits" of midday had increased to scattered pack. There were large open areas among this pack making it possible to navigate without striking much ice.

**1984** (65°22'S, 64°45'E) Fletcher, Harold *Antarctic days with Mawson: a personal account of the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929–31* Angus and Robertson, London: 149.

The ship had now entered an area of broken, scattered pack.

**1987** Bates, Robert L. and Jackson, Julia A., eds *Glossary of geology, 3rd edn* American Geological Institute, Alexandria: 590.

Scattered ice: ... An obsolete term for sea-ice concentration of one-tenth to five-tenths; now replaced generally by *open pack ice* and *very open pack ice*.

### Schlegel's petrel *noun*

[The bird was given its original scientific name *Procellaria incerta* by German-born Hermann Schlegel (1804–84), director of the *Museum des Pays-Bays, Leiden*, in *Mus. Hist. Nat. Pays-Bas, Rev. Method. Crit. Coll.* (1863) 4: 9–10.]

The seabird *Pterodroma incerta*: see **Atlantic petrel**.

**29 Oct 1929** Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 258.

A Schlegel's petrel appears; this is a Tristan da Cunha type ... Noon position 42°38'S and 37°50'E.

**1966** (en route to Heard Island) Temple, Philip *The sea and the snow* Cassell Australia, Melbourne: 59.

We were still not past 40°S ... Bird life increased. Apart from albatrosses there were Wilson's Storm Petrels (Mother Carey's Chickens), Schlegel's Petrels and Prions.

**1998** Graham, Mike in *Notornis* 45(2) Suppl: 7.

Between us we chalked up Wilson's Storm Petrel ... and a bird I've not seen since [sc. since 1962] that we called "Schlegel's Petrel". Today it is more commonly known as the Atlantic Petrel *Pterodroma incerta*, a medium-sized brown and white bird not unlike our White-headed Petrel.

### scientific age

[Most of Antarctica's history is more or less connected with science, from the early days of natural history exploration to the scientists who constitute a large part of the population of the continent today.]

A vaguely defined period of antarctic history, somewhere after the early years of the twentieth century, and perhaps extending to the present (which in this case is 12 November 1998).

**1963** McKenzie, Douglas *Opposite poles* Robert Hale & Co, London/Whitcombe & Tombs, New Zealand: 102.

Lack of a truly common ground between Hillary and Fuchs followed from the circumstance that they were really men

from two different ages of Antarctica. The first two ages of Antarctica, namely, the age of discovery of the nineteenth century and the heroic age of the first part of the twentieth century, had already passed away. Fuchs and Hillary qualified for the new ages of the southern continent according to their different temperaments and skills. Hillary saw himself as part of the age of exploration; Fuchs, as part of the scientific age.

**1994** *Antarctic Society of Australia newsletter* no 39 (Dec): 3.

Although Australia has a long and distinguished history of activity in Antarctica and the adventures of the early explorers are well documented, the activities of the recent Scientific Age are less well known.

### scientific whaling

Whaling for sale of the meat, done in the name of scientific research in order to circumvent regulations banning whaling for consumption.

**1989** May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica* Child & Associates, Sydney: 171.

Japan had killed 273 minke whales in the 1987/88 Antarctic season under the pretext of "scientific whaling".

**1995** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 13(10) June: 401.

Continued "scientific whaling" by Japan in the Southern Ocean whale sanctuary area resulted in strong resolutions being adopted by a large majority at the 47th annual meeting of the International Whaling Commission.

### Sclater's penguin

[The species name *sclateri* was given by Sir Walter Lawry Buller (see 1888 quotation) in honour of English ornithologist Philip Lutley Sclater (1829–1913).]

The penguin *Eudyptes sclateri*: see **erect-crested penguin**.

**1888** Buller, Sir Walter Lawry *A history of the birds of New Zealand, 2nd edn* Published by the author, Westminster London, vol. II: 289.

*Eudyptes sclateri*. (Sclater's Penguin.) ... In April last I received a note from Dr. Sclater calling my attention to two Penguins recently added to the menagerie of the Zoological Society at Regent's Park, and observing:—"The bird just received from the Auckland seems quite distant from the New-Zealand species." I accordingly repaired to the "Fish-house," and the inspection which I then made satisfied me that, notwithstanding a general outward resemblance between the two birds, there was considerable difference both as to size and in the details of the plumage. The Auckland-Island bird having since died it was courteously forwarded to me by Mr. Bartlett, the Superintendent of the Gardens ... I have no hesitation in pronouncing the Auckland-Island bird a new species, distinguishable from the former [sc. *Eudyptes pachyrhynchus*] by its larger size, by the peculiar character of its superciliary streak, and by the different coloration of its flippers. It becomes necessary, therefore, to select a distinguishing name for this species, and I have much pleasure in connecting with it that of the accomplished Secretary of the Zoological Society of London, Dr. P.L. Sclater, F.R.S., who has long taken an interest in our local zoology, as was recognized by his election some years ago as Honorary Member of the New-Zealand Institute.

**1902** Hutton, Captain F.W. *The Emu* II(1) Jul: 3.

Sclater's Penguin (*Catarrhactes sclateri*) has its headquarters at the Antipodes and Bounty Islands.

**1942** Blake, L.R. in Mawson, Douglas *Geographical narrative and cartography. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911–14. Scientific reports series A vol 1* Government Printer, Sydney: pl. CXXIII.

A Sclater Penguin and an albino Royal Penguin.

### Scoresby's gull *Falkland Islands, obs.*

[Named by Traill (1822 Mem Wernerian Nat Hist Soc 4: 516). It was named after William Scoresby (1789–1857), using a specimen said to have come from the South Shetland Islands in 1823.]

The bird *Larus scoresbii*: see **dolphin gull**.

**1913** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 22(4) 1 Apr: 61.

An Ordinance To amend the law with regard to the preservation of wild animals and birds ... Schedule I. Reindeer. Scoresby's Gull (*Larus Scoresbyi*) [etc.].

### Scotia Sea icefish

[From its occurrence in the Scotia Sea, an area south and west of South Georgia, bounded by a mainly submarine ridge running from the Antarctic Peninsula to the tip of South America. The sea was named after the ship *Scotia* of William Bruce's Scottish National Antarctic Expedition 1902–04. Bruce named Scotia Bay, in the South Orkneys, in 1904.]

The marine fish *Chaenocephalus aceratus* (fam. Channichthyidae), which is found in the northern Antarctic Peninsula region, Scotia Sea islands and around Bouvet Island. It grows to about 75 cm (2 ft 6 in) length and has been commercially caught as a by-catch species in trawl fishing. It is usually just called an **icefish**, or sometimes **blackfin icefish**.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 266.

*Chaenocephalus aceratus* ... Blackfin icefish, Scotia Sea icefish ... Reported from Bouvet Island and from the islands of the Scotia Arc (South Georgia, South Sandwich, South Orkney, South Shetland Islands), and the Antarctic Peninsula ... Marketed as frozen fish (entire or fillets); the flesh is excellent.

**1990** Kock, K.-H. and Köster, F.-W. in Kerry, K.R. and Hempel, G., eds *Antarctic ecosystems: ecological change and conservation* Springer-Verlag, Berlin: 308.

Other abundant species, such as .. the Scotia Sea icefish, *Chaenocephalus aceratus* and the spiny icefish *Chaenodraco wilsoni*, are regular by-catch species and/or were important in one season or another but they could not support a commercial fishery on their own.

### Scott tent US

[From the name of Antarctica's most famous explorer, the English Robert Falcon Scott (1868–1912). Scott led four others in a manhauling march to the South Pole, which they reached several weeks after its conquest by a Norwegian party led by Roald Amundsen. All five in the British group died on their return march.]

A **pyramid tent**, differing slightly from the British version in that its entrance is at ground level.

**1978** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XIII(4) Dec: 7.

Repairs to stoves and lanterns, Nansen sleds, and Scott tents were finished just before the cargo yard was cleared.

**1999** Livermore, Beth in *Astronomy* 27(7): 56.

[caption] On most days in Antarctica the snow blows persistently — at Scott tents and people.

### screaming sixties

The **shrieking sixties**.

**1976** Hill, Len and Wood, Emma *Penguin millionaire: the story of Birdland* David and Charles, Newton Abbot, Devon: 76.

The Antarctic latitudes are known to sailors as the 'roaring forties, howling fifties and screaming sixties'.

**1995** Greet, Pene and Price, Gina *Frost bytes* Doubleday, Sydney: 2.

I was to leave Perth and travel to Hobart to catch the ship to Mawson, one of Australia's three Antarctic bases. It would take 20 days to get there on rough seas, heading south-west against the roaring forties, furious fifties and screaming sixties.

### screwed pack (or ice) Also screwing (pack), screw pack

[From the grinding action of the floes against each other.]

**Sea ice** ground together under pressure and often heaped in piles as a result.

**1901** (July 1899) Borchgrevink, C.E. *First on the Antarctic continent: being an account of the British Antarctic Expedition 1898–1900* Australian National University Press, Canberra (1980): 142.

We fought our way towards the cape amidst heavy and hummocky screwing.

**20 Oct 1908** Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 12.

Had tremendously tough job in screwed pack today hauling sledges over jagged ice blocks and snow bridges 2 to 3 ft high.

**22 Dec 1910** (about 68°S) Griffith Taylor, T. in Hanley, Wayne, ed. (1978) *The Griffith Taylor collection: diaries and letters of a geographer in Antarctica* Geography Department, University of New England, Armidale: 43.

Heavy pack more irregular than before "Screw Pack".

**1914** (nr Cape Adare) Priestley, Raymond E. (1974 repr.) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* Melbourne University Press: 158.

The bay was full of heavy screwed pack, with 3 or 4 feet of snow upon it.

**1953** Scholes, Arthur *Seventh continent: saga of Australasian exploration in Antarctica 1895–1950* George Allen & Unwin, London: 14.

Its hurricanes of hundred [sic] miles an hour, its screwing, growling pack.

### scurvy grass noun and attrib.

[Scurvy-grass has been used elsewhere (later) for various plants believed to be antiscorbutic. The antarctic quotation from c1588 (below) seems the earliest use of the name yet recorded.]

Any of several plants used to prevent scurvy, esp. (in the *Falkland Islands*) the native *Oxalis enneaphylla* (fam. Oxalidaceae) which has grey-green leaves, dark red stems, and pink or white flowers, and which is infused to make a refreshing, non-alcoholic drink.

**c1588** (Penguin Island) Janes, John *The last voyage of the worshipful Master Thomas Candish, Esquire, intended for the South Sea, the Philippines, and the coast of China, with 3 tall ships and two barks* quoted in David, Richard (1981) *Hakluyt's voyages* Chatto and Windus, London: 593.

In this place we found a herb called scurvy-grass, which we fried with eggs, using train oil instead of butter. This herb did so purge the blood that it took away all kinds of swellings, of which many died, and restored us to perfect health of body.

**14 Jan 1769** (Tierra del Fuego) Banks, Joseph in Beaglehole, J.C., ed. (1962) *The Endeavour journal of Joseph Banks* Public Library of New South Wales/Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 217.

Here is also plenty of wild celery *apium antescorbuticum*, scurvy grass *cardamine antescorbutica*, both which are as pleasant to the taste as any herbs of the kind found in Europe and I believe possess as much virtue in curing the scurvy.

**25 Dec 1832** Darwin, Charles (1901) *Journal of researches into the natural history and geology of the countries visited during the voyage round the world of H.M.S. 'Beagle' under command of Captain Fitz Roy, R.N., 2nd edn* John Murray, London: 213.

The [sc. Fuegian] inhabitants, living chiefly upon shell-fish, are obliged constantly to change their place of residence; but they return at intervals to the same spots, as is evident from the piles of old shells, which must often amount to many tons in weight. These heaps can be distinguished at a long distance by the bright green colour of certain plants which invariably grow on them. Among these may be enumerated the wild celery and scurvy grass, two very serviceable plants, the use of which has not been discovered by the natives.

**1884** (Hermit Island, Tierra del Fuego) McCormick, R. *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 328.

Scurvy grass (*Cardamine hirsuta*) was very generally met with along the watercourses, as was also the fascine of the Falklands.

**1924** Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history* by Rupert Vallentin Clarendon Press, Oxford: 268.

Pernety calls it vinaigrette and describes it as 'exhalant une odeur d'amande très suave'. The early colonists used to boil it down with sugar and call it scurvy-grass jam!

<sup>Footnote:</sup> Not to be confused with the scurvy-grass *Cochitaria officinalis*.

**c1990** Roper, Patrick *Holidays in the Falkland Islands* Falkland Islands Tourist Board, London: 16.

[caption] One of our prettiest flowers, Scurvy Grass, *Oxalis cmneaphylla*, comes in either pink or white and the leaves were once used for making a tonic wine.

**1994** Simpson, Tim *Cooking the Falkland Island way* Peregrine Publishing, Bangor: 14.

Nowadays people make a drink from it, calling it scurvy-grass wine although it is not alcoholic.

## sea bear

[Both common and scientific names (Arctocephalus, 'bear-headed') liken the seal's appearance to that of a bear. The name has also been recorded later for a North Pacific seal (in 1847: NOED).]

A seal, usually a female **sea lion**.

**31 Dec 1774** (Tierra del Fuego) Cook, James quoted in Beaglehole, J.C., ed. (1961) *The voyage of the Resolution and Adventure* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 605.

Here were also the same sort of Seals which we found in New Zealand generally known by the name of Sea Bears, at least so we called them.

**1879** (Kerguelen Island, fur seals) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 188.

The Sea Bear has besides a thick coating of long hair, the familiar thicker layer of silky hair beneath, which renders its skin so valuable. The Sea Bears are nimble on land as compared with the helpless Sea Elephants, and can climb up on to rocky ledges, and even spring some little distance.

**1909** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 19(11) 20 Oct: 161.

In this Ordinance:- "Seal" means the "Fur Seal", the "Hair Seal", the "Sea Otter", the "Sea Elephant", the "Sea Leopard", the "Sea Bear", the "Sea Lion", the "Sea Dog", and any animal of the seal kind.

**26 Oct 1941** Wilson, R.F. in Kerr, I.S. (1976) *Campbell Island: a history* A.H. & A.W. Reed Ltd, Wellington: 104.

The going in these tussocks is very hard and I covered the whole South West corner of the island, doing the coastline from Mt. St. Col to Mt. Dumas ... The beach was covered with enormous sea lions, some sea bears, elephants and leopards.

**1962** Bailey, Alfred M. and Sorensen, J.H. *Subantarctic Campbell Island Proceedings no. 10*, Denver Museum of Natural History: 52.

The bull Sea Lion has a thick heavy mane, a necessary shield against the tusks of the adversary, as the bulls are continuously fighting in the breeding season. The female, or Sea Bear, is a much smaller and sleeker animal with the coat usually a creamy fawn colour.

## sea dog

[Sea-dog is recorded from 1743 in northern use (NOED).]

A seal, perh. a **fur seal**.

**6 Mar 1823** Morrell, Captain Benjamin (1832) *A narrative of four voyages, to the South Sea [etc.]* J. & J. Harper, New York: 66.

Examined the islands of Sandwich Land, without discovering a single fur-seal, and only about four hundred sea-elephants, together with about fifty sea-dogs.

**1879** (Kerguelen Island, fur seals) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 189.

The sealers told me, that sometimes, but very rarely, they found another kind of seal, like the Fur Seal somewhat, which they called the "Sea Dog." A second species of eared seal probably thus occurs as a rarity at Kerguelen's Land.

**1909** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 19(11) 20 Oct: 161.

In this Ordinance:- "Seal" means the "Fur Seal", the "Hair Seal", the "Sea Otter", the "Sea Elephant", the "Sea Leopard", the "Sea Bear", the "Sea Lion", the "Sea Dog", and any animal of the seal kind.

## sea elephant *noun*

[Sea from the marine habitat of the animal + elephant. The name was used (from at least 1798) for the North American species *Mirounga angustirostris*, and has also been recorded (1755) as a name for the walrus (*Odobenus*).]

The seal *Mirounga leonina*: see **elephant seal**.

**4 Jan 1811** (Tristan da Cunha) Heywood, Peter in Tagart, Edward, ed. (1832) *A memoir of the late Captain Peter Heywood, R.N., with extracts from his diaries* Effingham Wilson, London: 194.

I observed a great number of sea-elephants, as the Americans call them, though they are, in every respect, like a seal, except being of an enormous size.

**21 Dec 1811** (Tristan da Cunha) Lambert, Jonathan quoted in Holdgate, Martin (1958) *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 19.

I have a piece of ground about 10 or 12 acres containing two ponds where the Sea Elephants abound.

**17 Nov 1820** (Macquarie Island) Bellingshausen, Thaddeus in Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. (1945) *The voyage of Captain Bellingshausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819-1821* Hakluyt Society, London, vol II: 365.

At 5.0 o'clock a large sea elephant covered with blood swam passed the Vostok. We wounded it with another two shot [sic] and its blood reddened the sea for a long time. I wanted to launch the ship's boat in order to give chase; however, the sealers said it was impossible to kill it in the water, but that there were many on the shore from which we could take our choice.

**1875** Eaton, Rev. A.E. in *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London* XXIII no. 156: 502.

Young Sea-Elephants were frequently found by us in Swain's Bay. Some examples are uniformly reddish brown, others are pale, blotched and spotted with darker grey. They usually lie just above the beach, separately, in hollows among the *Acææna* and *Azorella*, where they are sheltered from the wind. On being approached they make no attempt to move away (possibly because there are no land animals indigenous to the country capable of molesting them to cause them to acquire a habit of flight), but raise up the fore-part of their body, open the mouth wide, and utter a peculiar slobbering cry.

**1901** *The Falkland Islands Magazine* XIII(2) Jun: 191.

The capture of a "colossal sea-elephant" by the crew of the "Flora" in Stanley Harbour.

**1915** (Macquarie Island, 1911) Ainsworth, G.F. in Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911-1914* William Heinemann, London, vol I: 33.

Sea elephants, at one time found in immense numbers on all sub-antarctic islands, are now comparatively rare, even to the degree of extinction, in many of their old haunts. This is the result of ruthless slaughter prosecuted especially by sealers in the early days. At the present time Macquarie Island is more favoured by them than probably any other known locality. The name by which they are popularly known refers to their elephantine proportions and to the fact that, in the case of the old males, the nasal regions are enormously developed, expanding when in a state of excitement to form a short, trunk-like appendage.

**1967** Gillham, Mary E. *Sub-Antarctic sanctuary: summertime on Macquarie Island* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Wellington: 52.

Sea elephants are sociable beasts, piling themselves up in noxious heaps wherever they pull out of the sea.

**1979** (Macquarie Island) Hurley, Frank *Shackleton's argonauts: the epic tale of Shackleton's voyage to Antarctica in 1915* McGraw-Hill Book Co: 124.

Sea-elephant for food and a cave for shelter — what more could any man desire?

**1982** (Marion Island, 1948) Crawford, Allan *Tristan da Cunha and the Roaring Forties* Charles Skilton, Edinburgh: 138.

When the islanders killed a small sea elephant and lit a blubber fire in the entrance [sc. of a sealers' cave] to keep us warm, the stench was appalling, but we all preferred the resulting warmth to the icy sleet outside. It was a disgusting sight to see the giant petrels, their necks red with blood, voraciously tearing the carcass of the sea elephant to pieces after it had been stripped of blubber. Like vultures, they gorged themselves so greedily that they could not take off again and were forced to sit on the water out in the bay until they had the energy to lift themselves into the air.

**1992** (nr Davis station) Lied, Commander Nils *Oscar: the true story of a husky* Kerr Publishing, Sydney: 119.

Delights heaped on delights; on a tiny islet north-west of Mule Island, I was amazed to find 21 huge elephant seals, at last a proof that sea elephants wintered in the Antarctic — a completely new discovery.

### sea elephant blubber *Hist.*

The **blubber** of the **sea elephant**, used as fuel in its raw state, as well as a source of **elephant oil**.

**18 Nov 1820** (Macquarie Island) Bellingshausen, Thaddeus in Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. (1945) *The voyage of Captain Bellingshausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819-1821* Hakluyt Society, London, vol II: 368.

Today the only industry in Macquarie Island is trading in sea elephant blubber. Having killed the sleeping animals, the men cut off the blubber with a knife, and put it in a boiler, placed on stones and with room for a fire beneath it, which

they kindle with lumps of the same fat. The oil from the boilers is then poured into barrels. Part of it is sent to New South Wales, and the remainder is shipped to Britain, where it commands a very remunerative price.

**1915** (Macquarie Island) Ainsworth, G.F. in Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911-1914* William Heinemann, London, vol II: 190.

The weekly cook limited himself to three briquettes, and these he supplemented with sea elephant blubber and wood.

**1938** (Heard Island) Dakin, William John *Whalemen adventures: the story of whaling in Australian waters and other Southern Seas Related Thereto, 2nd edn* Angus & Robertson, Sydney: 124.

Between them 400 tons of sea-elephant blubber were obtained.

### sea elephanting *verbal noun. Hist.*

Hunting **sea elephants**.

**1981** (Desolation Island) Richards, Rhys in *American Neptune* 41: 287.

Evidently some mixed sealing, sea-elephanting and whaling continued into the 1830's [sic] but on a much reduced scale.

### sea elephant oil *Hist.*

[**Sea elephant** + oil from the oil yielded by the blubber of the animal. The seals were formerly killed for their blubber.]

### Elephant oil.

**31 Mar 1824** (Tristan da Cunha) Earle, Augustus (1832) *A narrative of a nine months' residence in New Zealand, in 1827; together with a journal of a residence in Tristan d'Acunha, an island situated between South America and the Cape of Good Hope* Longman, Rees, Orme, Brown, Green, & Longman, London: 295.

My three other companions have all been private seamen, who have remained here at different times in order to procure sea elephant and other oils.

**1910** Barrow, K.M. *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 11.

Peter William Green ... was a Dutch sailor, a native of Katwijk, on the North Sea, whose ship in trying to steal the islanders' sea elephant oil got in too close and was wrecked.

**1943** Mawson, Douglas *Macquarie Island: its geography and geology. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911-14. Scientific reports series A vol V* Government Printer, Sydney: 12.

By 1820 the Fur Seals were so depleted that the trade was then almost entirely concerned in the production of Sea-elephant oil.

**1951** *Walkabout. Australian Geographical Magazine* 17(9) Sept: 44.

What follows is the story of an expedition which left Hobart Town in 1857 to take sea elephant and whale oil from Ker-guelen and Heard Islands and the Southern Ocean.

**1981** Richards, Rhys in *American Neptune* 41:289.

Captain Gordon Allyn, a veteran who had been sealing in the South Atlantic since 1829, noted that while en route home in the New London schooner *Franklin* after sealing at Tristan D'Acunha, Prince Edward and Marion Islands, and the Crozettes in 1842-43, he met at Saint Helena in March 1843 two New London vessels 'loaded with sea elephant oil from Desolation'.

### sea hawk

[Sea-hawk is recorded from 1852 (NOED) for various gull-like birds incl. the skua.]

The seabird *Catharacta skua*: see **skua**.

**1888** Dougall, W. in Buller, Sir Walter Lawry *A history of the birds of New Zealand, 2nd edn* Published by the author, London, vol II: 200.

If by chance the nest is left unguarded for a single moment the Sea-Hawk which is here in thousands, pounces upon the egg and 'lov's labour's lost,' at least so far as the Albatros is concerned.

**1909** Waite, Edgar R. in Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington, vol II: 557.

The impudence and aggressiveness of the sea-hawk surpasses anything I have seen among wild birds, and it is this bird more than any other which I believe to be responsible for the destruction of other birds on the Islands. We found it to be common at the Snares, Auckland, and Campbell Islands, while I had good opportunity of examining it at Antipodes Island during the breeding season.

**1923** Macklin, A.H. in *Country Life* 6 Jan: 10.

Piratical skuas — the sea hawks of southern latitudes which prey on everybody and on each other.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 24.

The southern great skua, *Stercorarius skua lonnbergi*, is an aggressive and powerful bird, with an overall dark brown colouring ... If threatened, it attacks with swift aerial passes which justify its alternative name of sea hawk.

## sea hen

The seabird *Catharacta skua*: see **skua**.

**14 Dec 1830** (55°10'S, 26°15'W) Weddell, James in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 307.

Strong winds from the westward, with snow squalls. Two or three icebergs continually in sight. Very few birds, some stormy petrels. Cape pigeons, and now and then the small albatross with black wings. Saw one sea or Port Egmont hen.

**1840** Mackinnon, L.B. *Some account of the Falkland Islands, from a six months' residence in 1838 and 1839* A.H. Bailey & Co., London: 32.

There were .. great numbers of sea cape hens, &c. &c. &c., too numerous to mention.

**5 Jan 1882** Wiseman, William in Layman, Rear-Admiral C.H. and Cameron, Jane (1995) *The Falklands and the Dwarf: the cruise of HMS Dwarf in the Falkland Islands 1881-1882* Picton Publishing, Chippenham: 84.

The only incident beyond the tumbles was a sharp attack on my coxswain by two infuriated sea-hens near whose nest he happened to be walking.

**1905** (Gough Island) Clarke, William Eagle in *The Ibis* V: 260.

When the Penguins lay, the Sea-Hens come ashore in large numbers, and get their living by robbing the nests and catching the young penguins. They also kill the young Albatrosses, and all the small birds they can catch.

**1940** (Nightingale Island) Hagen, Yngvar in Christopherson, Erling, transl. fr Norwegian by Benham, R.L. *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 80.

The sea-hen does not only take eggs and young birds; one fine day one of them flew off with George's hat, which caused a tremendous commotion ... It was impossible to induce George to do anything for us the whole of that day. He was red every time a sea-hen came in sight and was after it with stones whenever possible; not until he had accounted for quite a number of them did he regain his normal calm.

**1958** (Gough Island) Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 87.

The skuas, or sea hens, of The Glen were common too, and one pair which had a nest near the hut dived fiercely at intruders.

**1995** (1892) Hagan, John *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 16 (Mar): 6.

At this time three of us boys were having a few shots at sea-hens (skuas) when we noticed a white boat rowing up off Anchorstock Point.

## sea ice

Generally, any ice encountered at sea. Specialists sometimes restrict this term to ice formed at sea (**pack ice** and **fast ice**), excluding icebergs which originate from **land ice**, but in general use this distinction is one more honoured in the breach.

Antarctic sea ice is often only about 1 m (3 ft) thick, in contrast to arctic sea ice, which reaches 3 m (8–10 ft) thick. The growth of the sea ice around Antarctica to about 20 million square kilometres (7 million square miles) by the end of winter, and melting to about 2.8 million square kilometres (1 million square miles) at the end of summer, is one of the earth's most remarkable annual events.

**1835** [source NOED] Sir J. Ross *Narr. 2nd Voy. Explan. terms*: xv.

Sea ice, ice within which there is a separation from the land.

**1900** Cook, Frederick A. *Through the first Antarctic night 1898-1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: xii.

Late in February we entered the main body of the sea-ice.

**1901** (Jan 1899) Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 39.

The lower latitudes reached by the pack-ice naturally fall short of the extreme, and to some extent even of the mean, limit of icebergs; nevertheless, the sea-ice reaches fairly low latitudes, and, like the icebergs, mostly so in the Atlantic, where it has been known to arrive at and beyond 48° South ... The sea-ice which constitutes the bulk of the pack is first formed by the freezing of the sea in the winter along the shores of the Antarctic lands. This freezes to an average depth of from four to five feet, and extends out into the ocean for perhaps fifty miles, until the formation of an uninterrupted sheet of ice is prevented by its perpetual violent agitation. This ice begins to break up early in November and move northwards, and by the middle of January the coasts are almost free.

**1907** Ferrar, H.T. *Report of the field-geology of the region explored during the 'Discovery' Antarctic expedition, 1901-04. National Antarctic Expedition 1901-1904, Natural history vol 1: geology* British Museum, London: 55.

During the winter months the surface of the sea in high latitudes often freezes in a uniform sheet which does not vary greatly in thickness. This covering has had many names given to it, but on the whole Sea-ice is perhaps the most suitable, as suggesting that the ice is derived directly from the sea.

Sea-ice requires to be distinguished from other floating ice (ice at sea) of different origin, and this can readily be done by the close examination of even a small fragment ... Dr. von Drygalski describes sea-ice as being composed of bundles of fibres packed together perpendicular to the surface of cooling.

**1928** Wordie, J.M. in Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 386.

[glossary] Sea-ice. All ice formed on the surface of the sea. It does not include icebergs, which are land-born.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

**1956** Stinear, B.H. *Preliminary report on operations from Mawson Base, Australian National Antarctic Research Expedition, 1954-55* BMR Record 1956/44: 10.

The trip [sc. to Scullin and Murray Monoliths] was the first of its type undertaken in the Antarctic for the entire journey was made in weasels over sea-ice in winter; there was little daylight so the party travelled mainly by starlight and moonlight.

**1963** *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* 2 (Dec): 13.

Ice encountered at sea is of two main types: icebergs originating from glaciers and ice shelves, and sea ice formed on the surface of the sea by freezing.

**1976** (McMurdo) *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XI(2) June: 108.

Preparation of the annual sea ice runway complex was hampered somewhat by storms during September.

**1991** Hooper, Meredith A for *Antarctica: facts and stories from the frozen South* Pan Books, London: 111.

Sea ice is all the ice in the sea. It is frozen sea water as well as the ice which comes from the land, mostly as icebergs. It is 'pack ice' which moves, and 'fast ice' which is solidly stuck to the seashore.

**1994** *New Scientist* 11 June: 33.

Superficially, sea ice looks like a homogenous frozen mass, but it contains a variety of habitats. At the upper surface, where temperatures drop to  $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$ , almost all the water freezes and the ice is packed solid. But farther down the ice sheet are pockets and channels filled with concentrated brine, and these range in size from a few hundred micrometres to several centimetres across. Their structure and size depend on the temperature of the ice. At the bottom of the floe, where the sea percolates, the ice is even more pitted.

## seal *noun and attrib.*

[Seal has been used for mammals of the fam. Phocidae since c1000 (NOED). Though seals are not restricted to southern waters, sealing activities in the region have significantly affected their populations. Sub-antarctic sealing in the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries reduced many species to extremely low numbers, and exterminated populations on some islands.]

A marine mammal of the fam. Phocidae; more generally, including **sea lions**: see **antarctic fur seal**, **crabeater seal**, **elephant seal**, **fur seal**, **Kerguelen fur seal**, **Ross seal**, **sea leopard**, **sea lion**, **Weddell seal**.

**26 Feb 1537** Urdaneta, Andres de in Markham, Sir Clements, ed. (1911) *Early Spanish voyages to the Strait of Magellan* Hakluyt Society, London: 48.

There is an island in this river on which the seals came every day to bask in the sun.

**1748** Walter, Richard A *voyage round the world, in the years MDCCXL, I, II, III, IV* by George Anson Esq, Third Edition John and Paul Knapton, London: 156.

At four in the morning, the Cutter was dispatched with our third Lieutenant to find out the bay we were in search of, who returned again at noon with the boat laden with seals and grass.

**1775** Dalrymple, Alexander A *collection of voyages chiefly in the Southern Atlantick Ocean* Printed for the author, London: 9.

The French who resided at Falkland Islands mention great abundance of Seals and Sea-Lions.

The Seals are of two kinds; the smaller very fat, having several inches of a soft white fat between the skin and flesh, they are about 7 feet long and 3 round; in such numbers that they killed 8 or 900 in a day with bludgeons on one small islet. The large Seals, when full grown, are from 10 to 20 feet

long, 8 to 15 in circumferences, their skins are covered with a short hair of a light tawny colour; these are what Anson calls Sea-Lions.

**18 Oct 1819** (South Shetlands) Smith, Wm in Weddell, James (1827) *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822-24, 2nd edn* David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 130.

Finding the weather favourable, we lowered down the boat, and succeeded in landing; found it barren and covered with snow; seals in abundance.

**1866** Musgrave, Thomas in Shillinglaw, John J., ed. *Castaway on the Auckland Islands: a narrative of the wreck of the "Grafton" and of the escape of the crew after twenty months suffering. From the private journals of Captain Thomas Musgrave together with some account of the Aucklands* Lockwood and Co., London: 144.

On facing the seal [sc. sea-lion] he will generally stand, when the man must go very quietly up to him and kill him.

**26 Feb 1916** Joyce, Ernest E Mills (1929) *The South Polar trail* Duckworth, London: 157.

Hayward's legs are black, I am afraid that scurvy has claimed another victim; there is no possible cure until we arrive in the seal country.

**1965** Hedblom, Captain E.E. *Polar manual, 4th edn* US Navy, Bethesda, Maryland: 126.

Hit seals between the eyes with the pick of an ice axe, and then cut their throats. (For dog food, *don't* cut the seal's throat. Blood is good dog food.) The crab-eater seal is the tastiest, but all are edible — roast, grill or broil. Loin, tongue and heart are the tenderest muscles. Seal liver is a delicacy, but is particularly likely to be infested with parasites. The British find seal brain very good.

**1982** Hosking, Eric and Sage, Bryan *Antarctic wildlife* Croom Helm, London: 14.

Seals, like seabirds, have to come to land to breed.

2. The meat of the animal.

**22 April 1934** Byrd, Richard E. (1939) *Alone* Reader's Union Ltd and Putnam & Co Ltd, London: 100.

From the meat box I took a five-inch slab of seal, black and unappetizing, which I hung from a nail over the stove to thaw.

## seal blubber

The blubber of the seal, which yields **seal oil** when **boiled down**.

**1903** *Eastern Daily Press* 21 May: n.p.

I had a lot of the seal blubber from the seals killed on the 15th. rendered down into oil, by steam, it makes very good oil for the engine-room lamps.

**1909** Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907-1909* William Heinemann, London: 211.

A great deal of our coal was very fine and caused much trouble during the night. To meet this difficulty we had recourse to lumps of seal blubber.

## sea leopard

[Sea-leopard has been recorded for various southern seals since 1664 (NOED).]

1. *Historical. A Weddell seal.*

**24 Apr 1822** (61°41'S, 45°27'W) *Connecticut Gazette*, *New London* quoted in Bertrand, Kenneth J. (1971) *Americans in Antarctica* American Geographical Society: 129.

Neither did he here discover any animals, only a few Sea-Leopards, beautifully spotted.



**1827** (South Orkneys) Weddell, James A *voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24, 2nd edn* David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 22.

Having seen some sea-leopards on shore, I sent the second mate to take them, who soon returned with six which he had captured. This creature resembles the quadruped of the same name in being spotted. The drawing of one deposited in the Edinburgh Museum is annexed; and Professor Jamieson has kindly communicated to me a description of the animal. He considers it to be a new species of phoca, and gives it the following distinguishing characters:— Leopardine seal, the neck long and tapering; the head small; the body pale-greyish above, yellowish below, and back spotted with pale white. This species to be referred to the division Stenorhinque, of F. Cuvier; the teeth, however, do not quite agree with those of his Phoque Septonyx, nor with those of Sir E. Home, figured in Pl. xxix of the Philosophical Transactions for 1822.

**1987** Green, K. and Burton, H.R. in *Australian Wildlife Research* 14: 277.

The Weddell seal ... fur, which is about 1 cm long, covers the entire body, except a small portion of the underside of the fore and hind flippers. Shortly after moulting the back is blue-black which grades to a silver-white spotting on the belly, hence the early name of sea leopard. As the fur ages it fades, and shortly before moulting the back is a rust brown.

## 2. The seal *Hydrurga leptonyx*, now more often called a leopard seal.

**1833** Fanning, Edmund *Voyages round the world; with selected sketches of voyages to the South Seas ... between the years 1792 and 1832* Collins & Hannay, New York: 350.

Sea Leopard. This amphibious creature, differing in several respects from the sea elephant, although in size it is nearly as large, is very smooth and neatly built; the fore paws or flippers are shorter, and on shore they are a more clumsy animal than the elephant; the hair is short, sleek, and spotted, as the land leopard.

**1875** Eaton, Rev. A.E. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London* XXIII no. 156: 353.

Up to the present time, I have captured only two species of Seals — a female Sea-Leopard and two males of a Platyrhine Seal.

**26 Jan 1898** (nr 63°57'S, 61°47'W, NW of Graham Land) Arc-towski, Henryk in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 476.

Where we landed the shore was bordered by *roches moutonnées*, either awash or rarely rising so much as a yard or two above the surface. A little snow rested even on these rocks, and the sea-leopards were sleeping upon them very tranquilly.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 37.

Soon afterwards a large sea-leopard (*Stenorhynchus leptonyx*) was seen and easily shot from the ship. The dogs enjoyed a royal banquet that day, such as they had not had since leaving Tasmania.

**1929** (South Georgia) Kemp, S., Hardy, A.C. and Mackintosh, A.R.C.S. in *Discovery Reports* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London, vol 1: 227.

In winter these supplies are necessarily much restricted, but can be supplemented if an occasional sea-leopard is killed. The flesh of this seal is dark and coarse, but the liver, brain and tongue can be recommended.

**1941** *Polar Record* 3(22) July: 447.

The presence of Sea Leopards and Ross Seals in the Bay of Whales, as well as a flock of approximately 150 Emperor

Penguins, were new occurrences not previously recorded in the area.

**1962** (Campbell Island) Bailey, Alfred M. and Sorensen, J.H. *Subantarctic Campbell Island*. Proceedings no. 10, Denver Museum of Natural History: 62.

Sea Leopards are not gregarious and rarely are two close together. Progression on land is very slow for the Sea Leopards cannot turn the hind flippers forward and walk on them.

**1982** (Marion and Prince Edward Islands) Crawford, Allan *Tristan da Cunha and the Roaring Forties* Charles Skilton, Edinburgh: 126.

Beds of kelp, in some places fifteen yards long, surround both islands and occasionally sea leopards, with their dark spots and dangerously sharp teeth, take refuge on the beaches from winter storms.

## sealer

Someone employed in killing and harvesting **seals**, for their oil or fur.

**1815** *Sydney Gazette*, quoted in Falla, R.A. (1937) *Birds. BAN-ZARE reports series B, vol 2* Hassell Press, Adelaide: 18.

One of the most productive places our sealers were ever stationed at [sc. Macquarie Island].

**18 Nov 1820** (Macquarie Island) Bellingshausen, Thaddeus in Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. (1945) *The voyage of Captain Bellingshausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819–1821* Hakluyt Society, London, vol II: 369.

One of the sealers accompanied us. He had with him an implement with which to kill sea elephants, which consisted of a club 4 feet long and 2 inches thick. The end was bell-shaped, 4 or 5 inches in diameter and bound with iron and studded with sharp nails. When we approached a sleeping sea elephant the trader hit him with this implement over the bridge of the nose; the sea elephant opened its mouth and gave a loud and pitiful roar. It had already lost all power of motion. The man took out his knife .. and stuck it into its neck from four sides. ... The animal .. died at once.

**1875** Eaton, Rev. A.E. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London* XXIII no. 156: 353.

In the Crozettes, whose climate and flora are said to resemble those of this island [sc. Kerguelen Island], rabbits have become extremely abundant, and so rank and coarse that the sealers will not eat them.

**1904** Vallentin, Rupert *Memoirs and Proceedings of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no. 23: 15.

Soon after my arrival in Stanley, a sealer arrived at that port with upwards of 10,000 eggs ... These eggs were retailed in Stanley at 12/- a hundred.

**1959** Johnson, M.L., Abercrombie, Michael and Fogg, G.E. *New biology* no. 29, May, Penguin Books, St Albans [UK]: 113.

Only the extinction of Stellar's sea cow in the Bering Strait within less than ten years of its discovery and extinction of the passenger pigeon in North America where flocks of millions of birds once occurred, can rival the depredations of sealers in Antarctic waters.

## seal finger

An infection resulting in acutely painful swelling of the finger, and transmitted in **seal blubber** through cuts in the skin. Micro-organisms associated with it are *Erysipelothrix rhusiopathae* and *Mycoplasma*; if untreated, it can cause permanent disability. See also **blubber finger**, **spekk finger**.

**[24 July 1913]** Griffith Taylor, T. in Hanley, Wayne, ed. (1978) *The Griffith Taylor collection: diaries and letters of a geographer in*

*Antarctica* Geography Department, University of New England, Armidale: 122.

As a result of the seal flensing to provide a roof for the Granite Hut — I cut myself rather frequently. This was usual and a matter of no moment generally. Seven of them healed up in a few days but one on my right hand gave rise to much trouble ... For a week I could not sleep and I tried all sorts of bandages and most of the pills — as expert opinion favoured frost-bite, rheumatism or blood poisoning.]

**1969** Bellars, A.R.M. and Godsall, M.F. in *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* 22 (Dec): 38.

It has long been known that small wounds on the hands can become infected by contact with seal fur, causing "seal finger". It is now known that the organism responsible is one of the ubiquitous *Erysipelothrix* group.

**1983** King, Judith E. *Seals of the world*, 2nd edn British Museum (Natural History), London, and Oxford University Press, Oxford: 30.

Small cuts on the hands of sealers dealing with these, and all other commercially used seal carcasses, often become infected with erysipelas, and the frequency of this, and associated finger infections has lead [sic] to them being regarded as an occupational disease known as 'seal finger'. Similar 'whale fingers' occur among whaling men.

## sealing *verbal noun*

Engaged in killing and harvesting seals.

**29 Nov 1791** Hunter, John *An historical journal of the transactions at Port Jackson and Norfolk Island* London: 491.

Letter from Master of Britannia to Enderbys'/owners .. to discover whether the sealing business might not have been carried on there [sc. Amsterdam Island].

**25 Jan 1821** (South Shetland Islands, 62°58'S, 61°55'W) Bellingshausen, Thaddeus in Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. (1945) *The voyage of Captain Bellingshausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819–1821* Hakluyt Society, London, vol II: 425.

In front of the low-lying shore we saw eight British and American sealing vessels at anchor ... At 10 o'clock we entered the strait and encountered a small American sealing boat.

**1879** Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 10.

He found 23 flowering plants in all, including three European weeds, all annuals and doubtless imported by sealing parties.

**29 Feb 1908** Barrow, K.M. (1910) *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 191.

To-day all the men, with the exception of three, went off to inaccessible for sealing.

**1967** Gillham, Mary E. *Sub-Antarctic sanctuary: summertime on Macquarie Island* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Wellington: 158.

At that season [sc. winter] the sealers had little to occupy them, there being few seals ashore, so the king colony near the northern sealing station suffered badly at their hands.

## sea lion *noun and attrib.*

[Note that the 1786 quotation below uses the term in both senses 1 and 2.]

### 1. Historical The elephant seal.

**5 Jan 1656** (Inaccessible Island) Gommersbach, Jacob quoted in Schilder, Günter, ed. and de Heer, C., transl. (1985) *Willem de Vlamingh: Voyage to the Great South Land 1696–1697* Royal Australian Historical Society, Sydney: 25.

Our skipper and under-steersman rowed ashore, came to a small bay, but rocky boulders all over, and found there very many sea-lions which were very big.

**25 May 1741** (39°12'S, 82°50'W, Chiloé) Heaps, Leo (1973) *Log of the Centurion. Based on the original papers of Captain Philip Saumarez on board HMS Centurion, Lord Anson's flagship during his circumnavigation 1740–44* Macmillan, NY: 95.

Our sick dying apace. AM. set the foretopsail. Several strange creatures swimming about us which we took to be sea lions ... 5 more men died including one midshipman.

**1748** (Juan Fernandez, June 1741) Walter, Richard *A voyage round the world, in the years MDCCXL, I, II, III, IV* by George Anson Esq; *Commander in Chief of a Squadron of His Majesty's Ships, sent upon an Expedition to the South-Seas. The Third Edition* John and Paul Knapton, London: 172.

There is another amphibious creature to be met with here, called a sea lion, that bears some resemblance to a seal, though it is much larger. This too we eat under the denomination of beef; and as it is so extraordinary an animal, I conceive, it well merits a particular annotation. They are in size, when arrived at their full growth, from twelve to twenty feet in length, and from eight to fifteen in circumference: They are extremely fat, so that after having cut thro' the skin, which is about an inch in thickness, there is at least a foot of fat before you can come at either lean or bones, and we experienced more than once, that the fat of some of the largest afforded us a butt of oil ... They have a distinct resemblance to an overgrown seal, though in some particulars there is a manifest difference, especially in the males, who have a large snout or trunk hanging down five or six inches below the end of the upper jaw; this particular the females have not, and this renders the countenance of the male and female easy to be distinguished from each other, and besides, the males are of a much larger size.

**1 Jan 1775** (South Georgia) Cook, James quoted in Beaglehole, J.C., ed. (1961) *The voyage of the Resolution and Adventure* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 606.

On the Islands [sc. Staten Land] were Sea Lyons &c.

**1827** (Falkland Islands, 1823) Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24*, 2nd edn David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 85.

With regard to the killing of the sea lion (properly the sea elephant), it is now to one man, acquainted with the practice, the work of three minutes; but without stabbing it in the heart, or breaking its brain, the feat is so difficult that probably as long a time would be requisite as that mentioned by Byron [sc. "one hour's work for six men."].

**1976** Wace, N.M. and Holdgate, M.W. *Man and nature in the Tristan da Cunha islands. IUCN monograph no. 6* Morges, Switzerland: 46.

Fur seals ('sea wolfs') and elephant seals ('sea lions as large as oxen') were noted in abundance on Tristan by early visitors [sc. Dalrymple 1775].

2. (*The common modern meaning.*) A marine mammal whose mature male has a distinctively maned thick neck — in the southern hemisphere these belong to one of several genera (*Phocarcetos*, *Otaria* or *Neophoca*) in the fam. Otariidae. Adult males are notably larger than females. In antarctic regions, the sea lions are **Hooker's sea lion** in the New Zealand subantarctic islands, and the **South American sea lion** in the Falklands region.

**[31 Dec 1774** (Le Maire Strait) Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, In the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* W. Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970), vol II: 195.

The whole shore was covered with them; and, by the noise they made, one would have thought the island was stocked with cows and calves. On landing, we found they were a different animal from seals, but in shape and motion exactly resembling them. We called them Lions, on account of the great resemblance the male has to that beast. Here were also the same kind of seals which we found in New Zealand, generally known by the name of Sea-bears; at least, we gave them that name. They were, in general, so tame, or rather stupid, as to suffer us to come near enough to knock them down with sticks; but the large ones we shot, not thinking it safe to approach them.]

**15 Jan 1786** (Kerguelen Island) Portlock, Captain Nathaniel (1789) *A voyage round the world: but more particularly to the north-west coast of America: performed in 1785, 1786, 1787, and 1788, in the King George and Queen Charlotte*. N. Israel facts, Amsterdam (1968): 35.

We .. found a number of these animals, which we then supposed to be sea lions; but this was certainly a mistaken notion, for they were very tame, and killed with the greatest ease, whilst the sea lions met with at this place are quite furious, and ought not to be attacked without great caution.

**1857** (Falkland Islands) Snow, W. Parker *A two years' cruise off Tierra del Fuego, the Falkland Islands, Patagonia, and in the River Plate: a narrative of life in the Southern Seas*. Longman, Brown, Green, Longmans and Roberts, London, vol 1: 137.

What some of the seals are may be gathered from the following description given by one of the old settlers at Port Egmont. He is speaking of the sea lion, which he states to be of fierce aspect, and of great agility, with long bushy air [sic] on his head and neck, and very ferocious. Some of them, he says, are 14 feet long, though I have measured none more than 10 feet.

**1879** (Tierra del Fuego) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 552.

Elizabeth Island is fringed with Kitchen-middens of large extent, which are full of vast quantities of bones of the Sea Lion (*Otaria jubata*).

**15 Mar 1904** (Auckland Islands) Wilson, Edward in Roberts, Brian, ed. (1967) *Edward Wilson's birds of the Antarctic* New Orchard Editions, Poole [Dorset]: 152.

On Sandy Bay beach we could see a host of enormous Sea Lions, moving about with their very extraordinary gait and heads up like large dogs.

**1916** (Auckland Island) Doorly, Captain Gerald S. *The voyages of the "Morning"* Smith, Elder & Co., London: 198.

To commemorate the anniversary of our arrival at Lyttelton from the Antarctic, viz. March 25, 1903, we had an original dinner of the products of the island. These comprised mussels, fricasseed cormorant, sea-lion steak, and mutton-bird. Fresh water there was, too, from the clear springs of the place, but a little champagne was also introduced to make the event official.

**1 Sept 1942** Sorensen, J.H. *The work journal of J.H. Sorensen, coastwatcher in the "Cape expedition", Campbell Island, 1942-44* Original, in possession of NZ Dept Conservation and Wildlife, Wellington: 62.

[Fur seals'] ordinary habits seem to resemble those of sea-lions but on being attacked they can give a squealing note I have not heard sea-lions give.

**1973** (Auckland Islands) *The Islander [quarterly bulletin of the Campbell-Raoul Island association]* 2(6) Mar: 127.

The house .. was weatherproof, though sea lions had broken some duck-walks.

**1986** (1864) Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 112.

Captain Dalgarno, the first mate, and a seaman ... made a canoe of rata branches and sea lion skins, in which they

crossed to Enderby Island, where they were able to live off the roots of giant herbs and to hunt and kill rabbits. After a year, the survivors were rescued by a Spanish brig, the *Julian*.

**1994** Simpson, Tim *Cooking the Falkland Island way* Peregrine Publishing, Bangor: 14.

The first arrivals on these islands decided that sea-lion tongue was preferable to ox.

### seal meat *noun and attrib.*

The dark red flesh of the **seal**, used as food.

**1905** Scott, Captain Robert F. *The voyage of the "Discovery"* Macmillan and Co, London: 96.

Since our capture of seals we had been regularly feeding on seal-meat, and on the whole, even at this time, we found it palatable: there are naturally prejudices to be overcome in taking to a new meat, and the seal being a very full-blooded animal, his flesh does not look pleasing before it is cooked, and afterwards it has a very dark mahogany colour, which is not attractive. It is almost impossible to describe the taste of a seal; it has a distinctive flavour in a similar degree to beef and mutton, but it cannot be called 'fishy', or like anything else that is generally known. It is a very strong meat, and its food value quite equal to the best beef.

**1914** (Inexpressible Island) Priestley, Raymond E. (1974 repr.) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* Melbourne University Press: 34.

The seal meat would be the first change from sledging diet the party would taste for some months.

**1949** (Graham Land) *Sphere* CXCVI no. 2559 (19 Feb): 271.

[caption] Seal meat is dry and close-grained and is usually quite popular as an item of diet among members of the Survey.

**1969** Keneally, Thomas *The survivor* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 102.

Hauling them [sc. Weddell seal carcasses] up the hill to the sealmeat depot was also no sport.

**1992** Lied, Commander Nils *Oscar: the true story of a husky* Kerr Publishing, Sydney: 117.

Bruce concentrated on macaroni, while I used to make seal-meat steaks, and marinated seal-liver and brains.

### seal oil *Hist.*

The oil obtained by **boiling down** the **blubber** of the **seal**.

**1909** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 19(11) (20 Oct): 162.

In his possession, or in any vessel under his command, any seal, seal-oil, or skins.

**1924** Report 19 Jan 1922 by Government Naturalist to the Colonial Secretary, in *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 33(1) (1 Jan): 2.

The samples represented two grades of seal oil, one of which had been boiled once and the other twice.

**1988** (Heard Island) *ANARE News* June: 7.

After rendering in the try-pots, the [sc. elephant] seal oil was put up in casks.

### seal rookery

[See **rookery**.]

A seal breeding area.

**1829** (Falkland Islands) Barnard, Capt. Charles H. *A narrative of the sufferings and adventures of Captain Charles H. Barnard in a voyage round the world, during the years 1812, 1813, 1814, 1815, & 1816* Printed for the author by J. Lindon, New York: 49.

Only about a mile from the place which we had chosen for our camp was a small seal rookery.

**seal skin**

The skin of a seal, esp. a **fur seal**.

**30 Dec 1774** (Le Maire Strait) Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, In the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970), vol II: 192.

On Mr. Pickersgill's landing, he was courteously received by several of the natives, who were clothed in guanicoe and seal skins.

**1798** Collins, David *An account of the English colony of New South Wales* T. Cadell and W. Davies, London, vol I: 319.

Oct 1793 — At the island of St Paul he found five seamen who had been left there from a ship two years before, and who had procured several thousand seal skins.

**1904** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 14(7) (no date): 16.

There shall be charged a duty of 10/- in respect of every seal skin, imported into this Colony for the purpose of transhipment or exportation.

**27 Mar 1916** Henderson, Walter, in Kerr, I.S. (1976) *Campbell Island: a history* A.H. & A.W. Reed Ltd, Wellington: 68.

The new purchasers of the Island have apparently learnt that you have sent up a quantity of Sealskins, and they have made a claim upon us for one-twelfth of the Sealskins, under your agreement with Capt. Tucker.

**1982** Crawford, Allan *Tristan da Cunha and the Roaring Forties* Charles Skilton, Edinburgh: 27.

It was said that these original settlers [sc. Jonathan Lambert and friend] accumulated considerable wealth by selling sea elephant oil and seal skins to passing ships.

**sealy adjective**

Affected by **seals**.

**1969** *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* 23 (Feb): 3.

Dick R. fell into some rather sealy water one day and could be smelt from a hundred yards afterwards.

**sea smoke**

[Recorded later (1958) in *Canadian and Arctic English, with the same meaning*.]

A fog formed above areas of open water in the ice — the water is warmer than the air above — or above water next to an ice edge, as a result of the warmer water meeting cold air. It is also called **frost smoke**.

**7 June 1913** (Commonwealth Bay) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 193.

Sea smoke over sea indicates the rivers [sc. of air].

**1930** Byrd, Richard Evelyn in *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 135.

[caption] Sea smoke hovers like a dappled shroud over Ross Sea. This vapory substance stays close to the surface.

**1957** Sullivan, Walter *Quest for a continent* Secker & Warburg, London: 312.

As we proceeded a polar fog known as "sea smoke" moved in, first obscuring the icebreaker, and finally our nearest trail flag.

**1977** *Antarctic Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 8(2) Jun: 45.

During the clear sea periods "sea smoke" covers the open water to a height of nine to 12m.

**1996** Flanagan, Ruth and Yulsman, Tom in *Earth (magazine)* April: 50.

[caption] Plumes of moisture called sea smoke rise from open water as it gives up its heat to the cold atmosphere.

**sea tiger** *Historical*

This name has rarely been used. When it has been, it has meant either a **sea leopard** or **sea lion**. See also **tiger**.

**1833** Fanning, Edmund *Voyages round the world; with selected sketches of voyages to the South Seas ... between the years 1792 and 1832* Collins & Hannay, New York: 443.

On Bird's Island, the crew of the Pacific killed a sea tiger, measuring eighteen feet ... The number of teeth is thirty-two, four of which are tusks ... The skin is covered with a thick, fine, and short hair, on the back of a gray color, spotted with black, and white on the abdomen ... Their chief food consists of penguins.

**1976** Kerr, I.S. *Campbell Island: a history* A.H. & A.W. Reed Ltd, Wellington: 33.

The first accounts to give an idea of the appearance and character of the island were, however, published a considerable time before those of Ross and his surgeon, Hooker. A French expedition under the command of Louis de Freycinet left Sydney in December 1819 and on 7 January 1820 sighted Campbell Island. They did not attempt a landing although one of the several English convicts who had stowed away at Sydney assured them that there was a good anchorage with a mud bottom in the southeast of the island. De Freycinet doubted this man's veracity, however, as he had spun some tall yarns about the place; stories of the savages who lived there, and of tigers!

<sup>1</sup>Footnote: This may have been a language difficulty. Some sealers called sea lions sea tigers, and males of the species were sometimes fierce.

**sea wolf**

[Sea-wolf was formerly used (1549–1839: NOED) for a seal, sea elephant or sea lion.]

The marine mammal *Orcinus orca*: see **killer whale**.

**1922** Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Picador, London: 69.

Most common of all [sc. among whales] is the kind of sea wolf known as the Killer Whale, who measures 30 feet long.

**1930** Byrd, Richard Evelyn in *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 187.

[caption] Only the killers, vicious sea wolves, attracted to any living thing, took note of the explorers.

**second-year ice**

**Sea ice** which has persisted from one winter until the following one — second-year and **multi-year ice** are commoner in the Arctic, where ocean conditions are generally calmer due to the encircling land, than in the Antarctic.

**1972** Dehn, William S. in *Antarctic Journal of the United States* VII (3) May-June: 58.

*Staten Island* did report second-year ice, but not in the amounts expected.

**1993** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XXVIII(5): 79.

A variety of these processes [sc. of salinity transformation] are active in the Weddell region, including winter thermodynamic growth, rafting and ridging, surface flooding, bottom melting, summer decay, and autumn freezeup of second-year ice.

**sector** *noun*

[Sector is recorded later (from 1943: NOED) as a general term for a geographical district within a region.]

A region or part of Antarctica whose longitudinal boundaries usually converge at the **South Pole** (sense 1.). Cf. **quadrant**.

**1930** Debenham, Frank in L.C. Bernacchi, co-ordinator *The polar book: produced for the British Polar Expedition 1930* E. Allom & Co Ltd, London: 46.

The Ross Barrier in the Australian sector of the region is the best known [sc. barrier].

**1935** Christensen, Lars, transl. fr Norwegian by E.M.G. Jayne *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 148.

Right up to 1923, while the Norwegian industry was confined entirely to these areas, Great Britain's claim was limited to the land areas in the West Antarctic. When, however, a Norwegian Company sought permission to fish for whales in Ross Sea, the so-called Ross Dependency was created by a British Order in Council. From that time, and especially since the opening of the Bouvet grounds, and the increasing activity in exploring the Antarctic continent, the question of dividing up the Antarctic Ocean area into sectors has become a serious consideration in world politics.

**1957** Anderson, W. Ellery *Expedition south* Evans Brothers, London: 14.

The stuffed bird represented his [sc. the Governor of the Falklands] major political problem, which was not the small, loyal community he governed, but the British Antarctic Sector that he administered. Known as the Falkland Islands Dependencies, the Sector includes everything south of South America and the Falklands, between the two lines of longitude 20° West and 80° West converging on the Pole.

**1982** Wolmarans, L.G. and Kent, L.E. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* Suppl. 2: 7.

The South African Antarctic base Sanae, 2 340 nautical miles (4 330 km) south-west of Cape Town, lies on the Kronprinsesse Mārtha Kyst of Dronning Maud Land ... In this sector of Antarctica the Russian expedition of 1819 to 1821, led by F.F. von Bellingshausen and M.P. Lazarev in the ships *Mirny* and *Vostok*, was the first to sight the ice-front, the seaward edge of the ice-shelf that fringes the continent.

**1990** Duhamel, G. and Hureau, J.C. in Kerry, K.R. and Hempel, G., eds *Antarctic ecosystems: ecological change and conservation* Springer-Verlag, Berlin: 323.

During the 19th century, the French subantarctic islands of the Indian sector of the Southern Ocean first attracted sealing and whaling companies.

### sei whale Also simply *sei*, and *seihval*

[From the Norwegian *seihval*, from *sei* *saithe* + *kval*, *hval* whale, referring to the arrival of this whale on Norwegian coasts at times when the sei or black codfish, *Pollachius virens*, arrives there.]

The large baleen whale *Balaenoptera borealis* (fam. Balænopteridae), usually occurring into subantarctic (rather than antarctic) and subarctic waters. It migrates into higher latitudes in summer. It grows to about 15 m (47 ft); southern hemisphere sei whales are slightly larger than northern hemisphere ones. It was hunted in the 1960s and 1970s, and protected worldwide in the late 1970s (with some exceptions for small local catches), by which time it had been fairly well fished out.

**2 Jun 1910** (South Shetlands) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912* Blandford Press, London: 4.

Mr Lange told me also that *Seihval* is found at the Falklands exactly resembling the North Sea species, but that no *Seihval* is to be got at Belgian Strait in South Shetlands of the Antarctic where the Norwegians have a large factory and where they get chiefly Humpback, Finner, Blue Whale, Sibalbals and the Atlantic or Southern Right Whale.

**1924** Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history* by Rupert Vallentin Clarendon Press, Oxford: 222.

At present the whaling industry of the far south is concerned chiefly with three species of Finner whales — the Blue, Fin, and Sei whales — and with the Humpback.

**1930** Stead, David G. in *Australian Museum Magazine* 4: 126. Fish Whale, or "Seihval" of the Norwegians.

**1942** Mackintosh, N.A. in *Polar Record* 3(24) Jul: 562.

The remaining species of Rorquals to be considered are the Sei whale, Bryde's whale, and the Minke, and of these the Sei is the most important. This species is occasionally taken by whalers in the Antarctic and makes a considerable contribution to the winter catches in South African waters. It resembles the Fin whale in general build, but is smaller and differs in colour and in some anatomical features.

**1993** *Antarctic Society of Australia newsletter [Sydney]* no 33 (June): 2.

No blues, fins or seis were sighted in the Antarctic.

### sennegrass Also *saennagras(s)*, *saennegras(s)*, *sennaegrass*, *sennagrass*

[From the Norwegian *sennegrass* the sedge *Carex vesicaria* which the Lapps dry and put into their shoes for warmth. Sennegrass is recorded in English from about the same time in both antarctic and arctic use.]

The sedge *Carex vesicaria* (fam. Cyperaceae) which was used as insulation in various boots worn in the Arctic, a technique taken from there to the Antarctic. The fibres of this plant were teased out and put under and around the (usually sock-covered) foot inside the boot. Moisture absorbed by the fibres could be shaken out when frozen, and the fibres used again.

**1900** Cook, Frederick A. *Through the first Antarctic night 1898-1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 307.

[caption] Saennagras. A Swedish grass which was used in the boots to protect the feet.

**1909** Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907-1909* William Heinemann, London: 14.

I have mentioned that sennegrass is used in the finnesko. This is a dried grass of long fibre, with a special quality of absorbing moisture. I bought fifty kilos (109.37 lb.) in Norway for use on the expedition. The grass is sold in wisps, bound up tightly, and when the finnesko are being put on, some of it is teased out and a pad placed along the sole under the foot. Then when the boot has been pulled on more grass is stuffed round the heel. The grass absorbs the moisture that is given off from the skin and prevents the sock freezing to the sole of the boot, which would then be difficult to remove at night. The grass is pulled out at night, shaken loose, and allowed to freeze. The moisture that has been collected congeals in the form of frost, and the greater part of it can be shaken away before the grass is replaced on the following morning. The grass is gradually used up on the march, and it is necessary to take a fairly large supply, but it is very light and takes up little room.

**1914** (Inexpressible Island) Priestley, Raymond E. (1974 repr.) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* Melbourne University Press: 248.

The use of tea-leaves I have already referred to, but the climax was reached when the would-be smokers were reduced to burning the senna-graes which we used to keep our feet warm in our fur boots.

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* Duckworth, London: 169.

I wrapped dried *saenne* grass round these [sc. socks], and over all wore a pair of finnesko, or Norwegian moccasins, made from the leg fur of reindeer.

**1931** O'Brien, John S. *By dog sled for Byrd: 1600 miles across Antarctic ice* Thomas S. Rockwell, Chicago: 28.

On go warm fur-lined socks over which are pulled the huge canvas boots that our sailmaker, Martin Ronne, has made for us. These boots are half-filled with senna-grass, a growth found in the Arctic, looking very much like hay and valuable for absorbing moisture.

**1936** Byrd, Richard Evelyn *Antarctic discovery* Putnam, London: 303.

[Footnote] The following emergency gear was carried on all flights .. Sennaegrass (for boots), 5 pairs crampons [etc.].

**1940** *Polar Record* 3(19) Jan: 265.

Certain types of footwear require some sort of inner padding which provides insulation and protection to the feet and also absorbs perspiration. For this purpose, natives in the circumpolar regions use various species of dried grass or sedge, elk or reindeer hair, the inner fibres of the bark (phloem fibres) of certain shrubs, and even feathers or dried leaves ... "*Sennegrass*"! ... The grass should be cut in August or September before it becomes affected by autumn frosts. After drying, it is generally beaten or combed before storage. It should be sorted into three grades for use in summer (coarse), autumn (medium) and winter (fine). There is a widespread prejudice against the use of sennegrass among those who have never learnt how to pack it properly in footwear.

[Footnote: "*Sennegrass*" (Swedish: *skohö*, North Lappish: *g,mã-suoi'dne*) is actually not a grass, but a sedge (*Carex vesicaria*) which has a wide distribution across Arctic Eurasia.

## settlement *noun and attrib.*

[Settlement is recorded in colonial outpost and North American use (from 1827: NOED) for a small village or collection of houses.]

### 1. *Tristan da Cunha*

A group of houses, originally and still usually specifically the village of Edinburgh, normally called simply the Settlement.

**[1 May 1824]** (Tristan da Cunha) Earle, Augustus (1832) *A narrative of a nine months' residence in New Zealand, in 1827; together with a journal of a residence in Tristan d'Acunha, an island situated between South America and the Cape of Good Hope* Longman, Rees, Orme, Brown, Green, & Longman, London: 321.

From the Peak, in the centre of the island, to the sea shore, the earth is cut into gullies, apparently by torrents. Those in the plains are deep, and cut straight to the sea. Two of these gullies, which are near our settlement, are, I should imagine, fifty feet wide, and as many deep, filled with huge masses of black lava.]

**1879** (Marion Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 114.

The Sea Elephants .. have almost entirely deserted the island. The last was seen two years before our visit on the beach, just below the settlement.

**1906** Nicoll, M.J. in *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* XVI(cxxv): 94.

Tristan da Cunha was sighted at 8 a.m. on January 17th, and at 4 p.m. we were off the settlement.

**1926** Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 54.

Her father and younger brother were out at work some distance from the Settlement and the clouds broke so suddenly they had no chance to get to shelter.

**1940** Brander, J. *Tristan da Cunha 1506-1902* Allen & Unwin, London: 17.

Another characteristic plant is the tussock-grass, *Spartina arundinacea*. It is a tall, coarse growth, more like a reed than a grass, which reaches a height of 8 to 10 feet. It grows in the uncultivated regions of the island, but is sometimes cultivated near the settlement, as it is useful for roofing purposes.

**1967** Pondus-Bøgerne, Lohse, transl. fr Danish by Falk-Rønne, Arne *Back to Tristan* Allen & Unwin, London: 102.

On Tristan people live only in the settlement, but they fetch birds' eggs, guano and tussock from Nightingale, Inaccessible and Gough.

**1987** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* no. 1: suppl. [3].

The community was still no more than eleven flax thatched cottages built from blocks of volcanic rocks when, in 1867, HRH Prince Alfred, Duke of Edinburgh and second son of Queen Victoria, visited the island while voyaging round the world and gave the settlement of Edinburgh its present name.

**1993** (1949-50) Rowan, Bunty in *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 12 (Mar): 9.

Formerly the houses were thatched with tussock grass, a plant which has all but disappeared from Tristan itself, owing to the ravages of man and his domestic relatives. The tussock is abundant on the other two islands, but is to be found on the Settlement only in specially cultivated gardens.

### 2. *Falkland Islands*

Originally, an inhabited area; more recently, a home-stead or group of homesteads in **camp** (outside Stanley).

**[1840]** Mackinnon, L.B. *Some account of the Falkland Islands, from a six months' residence in 1838 and 1839* A.H. Bailey & Co., London: 17.

At five o'clock we came-to off the settlement, Port Louis, and were all much disappointed at its insignificance, as it only consisted of two small houses, in one of which live the governor, Lieut. Lowcay, and three or four mud huts, occupied by three gauchos and their families.]

**1841** Darwin, Charles *The zoology of the voyage of H.M.S. Beagle, under the command of Captain Fitzroy, R.N. during the years 1832 to 1836* London: 59.

In the Falkland Islands it [sc. the thrush] chiefly inhabits the more rocky and drier hills. It haunts also the neighbourhood of the settlement, and very frequently may be seen within old sheds.

**1893** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 22 Jul: 133.

By certain Letters Patent under the Great Seal of Our United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, bearing date at Westminster the Twenty-third day of June 1843, We did make provision for the Government of Our Settlements in the Falkland Islands and their Dependencies.

**1911** Skottsberg, Carl *The wilds of Patagonia* Edward Arnold, London: 13.

An old farmer on the settlement in front of the island told me that he killed his last fox in 1873.

**1924** Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history by Rupert Vallentin* Clarendon Press, Oxford: 334.

'Sparrow'. This species is also usually to be found round every settlement.

**c1990** Roper, Patrick *Holidays in the Falkland Islands* Falkland Islands Tourist Board, London: 4.

We have no trees except those from abroad that have been planted in Stanley and the settlements.

**1994** Simpson, Tim *Cooking the Falkland Island way* Peregrine Publishing, Bangor: 83.

When I was a Settlement Teacher we didn't have a morning 'break', we had Smoko.

## seventh continent

[Continents are counted in various ways, as evidenced by Antarctica's designation as both sixth and seventh continent. The OED noted in 1933 that "formerly two continents were reckoned, the Old and the New; the former comprising Europe, Asia, and Africa, which form one continuous mass of land; the latter, North and South America, forming another ... Now it is usual to reckon four or five continents, Europe, Asia, Africa, and America, North and South; the great island of Australia is sometimes reckoned as another, and geographers have speculated on the existence of an Antarctic Continent".]

**Antarctica.** See also **sixth continent**.

**1953** Scholes, Arthur *Seventh continent: saga of Australasian exploration in Antarctica 1895-1950* George Allen & Unwin, London: 15.

From isolated beaches round the southern Australian coastline and Tasmania, the sealers and whalers gradually worked their way southward to Auckland, Campbell and Macquarie Island, west to Heard and Kerguelen Islands, and finally beyond the ice-pack which girdles the seventh continent, like an enormous moat thrown round Nature's last stronghold.

**1957** Sullivan, Walter *Quest for a continent* Secker & Warburg, London: 352.

Hitherto, the difficulties of reaching Antarctica and piercing its ice sheet have made it an unattractive field for ore prospectors, but in an atomic age the Seventh Continent can no longer be ignored. As the rare ores become rarer it will be worthwhile looking for them in the remote Antarctic mountains and under the ice sheet.

**1974** Savours, Anne, ed. *Scott's last voyage through the Antarctic camera* of Herbert Ponting Sidgwick & Jackson, UK: 11.

The first two decades of the twentieth century have been called the "heroic age" of Antarctic exploration — the time when men first ventured to sledge inland across the sea ice, the ice shelves, the glaciers and the ice sheets of the unknown seventh continent.

**1995** Heacox, Kim in *Wildlife Conservation* 98(1) Jan-Feb: 28. It has become, for a growing number of eco-adventurers, the ultimate destination. The seventh and final continent.

## Shackletonian adjective

[From the name of the Irish-born antarctic explorer Edward Shackleton (1874-1922).]

In the manner of Shackleton, who is regarded as a consummate leader of antarctic expeditions.

**1997** Robinson, Kim Stanley *Antarctica* HarperCollins, London: 254.

So far our leader Valeric has exhibited that Shackletonian optimism which will be so important to the success of our endeavour.

## sheathbill noun and attrib.

Either of the two birds of the genus *Chionis*, either *C. alba* which breeds on the Antarctic Peninsula and islands further north, or *C. minor* of southern Indian Ocean islands. Both birds are white with black bills, legs and feet. Sheathbills are the only shorebirds in the antarctic regions without webbed feet.

See also **kelp pigeon**, **Kerguelen sheathbill**, **lesser sheathbill**, **Marion Island sheathbill**, **mutt, paddy, pigeon**, **snowy sheathbill**, **wattled sheathbill**.

[**Jan 1-4 1775** (Staten Land: 54°46'S. 64°7'W) Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, In the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970), vol II: 205.

Our naturalists found two new species of birds. The one is about the size of a pigeon, the plumage as white as milk. They feed along shore, probably on shell-fish and carrion; for they have a very disagreeable smell. When we first saw these birds, we thought they were the snow pterel, but the moment they were in our possession, the mistake was discovered; for they resemble them in nothing but size and colour. These are not web-footed.]

**1781** [source: NOED] Pennant *Genera of birds*: 43. Sheath-bill.

**11 May 1840** (Kerguelen Island) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 48.

Inside Arched Point we passed some fine cascades, and a remarkable white bird, about the size of a common pigeon and shape of the ptarmigan, called the sheathbill (*Chionis vaginalis*), which was numerous on the rocks, seeking its pelagic food as it leisurely walked along the ridges at the water's edge.

**1875** Eaton, Rev. A.E. *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London* XXIII no. 156: 503.

More than once Sheathbills, and on one occasion a Skua, fed out of my hand. A Sheathbill, after pecking at my boots, ate in succession six eggs held out to it.

**1879** (Marion Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 171.

As we neared the beach we saw a bird like a small white hen, eyeing us inquisitively from the black rocks, against which a considerable swell was washing. This bird was the "Sheath-bill" (*Chionis minor*), of which we afterwards saw so much.

**1898** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* VII(lii): xli.

Three species of *Tringoid Limicolæ* occurred in Arctica, whereas in Antarctica only the Sheathbill (*Chionis*), belonging to a peculiar Antarctic Family, was known.

**1929** (South Georgia) *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 585.

The Sheathbill is omnivorous; a green alga that grows on the rocks that are uncovered each tide forms a large item in its diet, especially in winter. Small mollusca and crustacea are also taken, as is carrion of any sort. The birds frequent the elephant seal rookeries when the pups are born and feed on the placentas. They also sit about in the penguin rookeries and eat any eggs that are left uncovered. They have also been seen to steal the eggs of the Giant Petrel. The nest is built in November in holes in the rocks and under boulders, two or three feet in, and is made of tussac, moss and feathers. The eggs are laid in the following month; they are buff with black pencillings all over them and are two or three in number.

**1956** Migot, André, transl. fr French by Richard Groves *The lonely South* Rupert Hart-Davis, London: 79.

Among the penguins in every rookery there are a number of white birds as big as pigeons; they are sheathbills and are found only in the southern hemisphere. They are busy, inquisitive and greedy, and they dart nimbly about among the clumsy penguins. As soon as an egg is broken, they arrive in a flash to swallow it up.

**1990** (Elephant Island) Naveen, Ron, Monteath, Colin, de Roy, Tui and Jones, Mark *Wild ice: Antarctic journeys* Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington: 136.

In the same location I also inspected several sheathbill nests tucked prudently under large boulders. The scene I found was almost beyond belief. Squatting happily in the midst of

the most indescribable filth, the dung-colored chicks sat surrounded by heaps of decaying fragments of penguins and other seabirds.

### shedder *Falkland Islands*

A moulting **upland goose** or **ruddy-headed goose**.

**1993** Chater, Tony *The Falklands* The Penna Press, St Albans: 80.

[caption] Flocks of up to one thousand non-breeding 'shedders', mainly young birds, gather near ponds and beachers in early summer, simultaneously moulting all their flight feathers.

### sheet ice

[Sheet ice is recorded later (from c1900: NOED) in Newfoundland.]

A thin, extensive layer of ice on a body of water.

**1821** ("New Shetland": near 63°29'S, 60°34') *The Literary Gazette and Journal of Belles Lettres* 21 Nov, quoted in *Polar Record* (1946) 4(32) Jul: 391.

About this period sheet-ice abounded a-head, and not fewer than 31 icebergs were counted at once. The weather was very stormy, and the fatigue of officers and men excessive.

**1978** Scott, Peter *Travel diaries of a naturalist: Australia, New Zealand, New Guinea, Africa, the Galapagos islands, Antarctica and the Falkland Islands* Collins, London: 278.

Down near Mt Scott — named after my father — the Lemaire Channel was covered with new sheet ice — with a covering of snow.

### shelf ice *noun and attrib.*

[NOED notes the use of the term by Otto Nordenskjöld in Zeitschr. der Ges. für Erdkunde zu Berlin (1908) XLIII: 618.]

A thick and relatively level expanse of sea-ice connected to land and making up an **ice shelf**.

**1910** [source: NOED] *Geogr. Jnl* XXXV: 726.

To this ice formed *in situ* out of snow accumulations in the sea Nordenskjöld gives the name 'shelf-ice'.

**1911** Hobbs, William Herbert *Characteristics of existing glaciers* The Macmillan Company, NY: 200.

The thickness of the sea ice becomes a matter of considerable importance in the study of Antarctic barrier ice ... This matter will be more fully discussed when the origin of the barrier, or shelf ice, of the Antarctic regions is considered.

**1915** Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911-1914* William Heinemann, London, vol 1: 59.

The glacier-tongue bore all the characters of shelf-ice, by which is meant a floating extension of the land-ice.

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 53.

The term "shelf ice" was bestowed upon the formation [sc. the Ross Barrier] by Nordenskjöld, as indicating at once its shape, and its position which is normally over the edge of the continental shelf.

**1940** (Wilkes, 1840) Hobbs, William Herbert *Proceedings of the American Philosophical Society* 82(5) June: 565.

Near the western limit of the cruise the American ships were forced northwestward by a great tongue — a form of floating ice then quite unknown, but now described as shelf-ice. It rose from 80 to 100 feet above the sea and extended 180 miles out from the shore.

**1957** (Cape Alexander) Anderson, W. Ellery *Expedition south* Evans Brothers, London: 172.

We decided to leave the shelf-ice and camp at the base of the nunatak, as this would give Leppard a good position for an astro fix.

**1978** Béchervaise, John *Science: men on ice in Antarctica. Australian Life Series* Lothian Publishing Co, Melbourne: 19.

The great bays, such as those occupied by the Weddell and Ross Seas, are not merely frozen; they are covered with floating ice 200-300 metres thick, ice that has actually been forced out from the main land mass. Constantly these "shelf ice" areas — that over the Ross Sea is about as large as New South Wales — float out from Antarctica.

### Shepherd's beaked whale

[Both scientific and common names come from New Zealand museum curator G. Shepherd, who collected the type specimen in 1933.]

The rarely seen whale *Tamacetus sheperdi* (fam. Ziphiidae) of southern waters esp. around New Zealand. It has also been recorded from Australia, southern South America and Tristan da Cunha. Stranded specimens have been dark brown above and cream below.

**1990** Baker, Alan N. *Whales and dolphins of New Zealand and Australia: an identification guide* Victoria University Press, Wellington: 87.

Until 1970, all the records of Shepherd's beaked whale were from New Zealand, but since then specimens have been found at Juan Fernandez Island, Tierra del Fuego, Argentine, Australia and Tristan da Cunha in the South Atlantic Ocean.

**1993** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 13 (Sept): 6.

Lewis Glass (Chief Islander) discovered the carcass of a whale washed up at Deadmans Bay. It is believed to be a carcass of a Shepherds Beaked Whale.

### shoemaker

[Shoemaker *perh.* from the chattering of the birds, but see also 1912 quotation.]

The seabird *Procellaria aequinoctialis*: see **Cape hen**.

**1867** [source: NOED] Smyth *Sailor's Word-bk*.

Egmont, or Port Egmont fowls, the large Antarctic gulls with dark-brown plumage, called shoemakers.

**30 Nov 1912** Murphy, Robert Cushman (1948) *Logbook for Grace* Robert Hale Ltd, London: 156.

Among the fragments [sc. of icel], as well as in the air above, are countless thousands of speckled Cape pigeons and of the larger black petrels which the Norwegians call shoemakers "because they sit at the door of their shops and sing."

**1929** *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 571.

The Cape Hen, called "Shoemaker" by the whalers, is common at sea off South Georgia all the year round, and may sometimes be seen in large flocks.

**1935** Christensen, Lars, transl. fr Norwegian by E.M.G. Jayne *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 85.

We saw more birds especially 'copepod birds' and 'shoemakers'. We are now in soundings of 5030 metres, though still 190 miles from Bouvet. ... Position 56°41' S., 7°30' E.

**1950** (South Georgia) Saunders, Alfred *A camera in Antarctica* Winchester Publications, London: 78.

Another interesting bird is the Shoemaker which one often saw at sea, but never on its nest in the day. It burrows into the soft earth in tussock beds on the hillsides to make its nest, which is often waterlogged.

**1986** Smith, Jeremy *Specks in the Southern Ocean* Department of Geography and Planning, University of New England, Armidale: 23.



As we progressed they [sc. fleshy-footed shearwaters] seemed to be replaced by a similar but rather larger bird with a white chin — known nowadays rather unimaginatively as the White-chinned Petrel, but called by the whalers and scalers of former decades the cape hen or shoemaker.

### shore ice

[Shore ice solid flat sea ice attached to a shore and extending out to broken ice or open water, is recorded in Prince Edward Island use from 1853 (PEI English).]

Generally, any ice close to shore — **fast ice** either attached or detached from shore, **sea ice** or ice close to a lake shore.

**1901** (Cape Adare, 1899) Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 230.

Towards the end of December all the shore ice had broken up and drifted away.

**1913** (Hut Point) *The Sphere* [London] LII no 684 (13 May): suppl. iv.

[caption] The kind of ice on which the man is standing is the sea ice, which usually breaks up every season. The shore ice may remain permanent for long periods.

**1953** (Evans Cove, 1912) Scholes, Arthur *Seventh continent: saga of Australasian exploration in Antarctica 1895–1950* George Allen & Unwin, London: 124.

It was necessary to sledge all the equipment and supplies needed for the short summer operations, across half a mile of shore-ice.

**1990** (Lake Fryxell) *Antarctica Sun Times* [McMurdo] IV(vii) 7 Dec: 2.

Shore ice, which usually melts and forms a moat in late December, began melting in November.

### shore lead

A lead between **sea ice** and shore or **ice front**.

**1939** Rymill, John *Southern lights: the official account of the British Graham Land Expedition 1934–1937* Travel Book Club, London: 93.

After flying for a few minutes we saw a shore lead several miles wide extending down the coast.

**1954** Giaever, John, transl. fr Norwegian by Huggard, E.M. *The white desert: the official account of the Norwegian–British–Swedish antarctic expedition* Chatto & Windus, London: 217.

We steered northwards, and in the small hours, about 4 a.m., we met with ice. The shore lead, therefore, was about seventy nautical miles in breadth.

**1967** *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* 6 (Sept): 2.

Unfortunately a small "shore lead" in the ice had appeared near the depot and as no way could be found to take dogs onto the ramp, food boxes were man-packed up to the depot.

**1982** (1959) Crawford, Allan *Tristan da Cunha and the Roaring Forties* Charles Skilton, Edinburgh: 169.

We .. eventually entered that marvel of Antarctica, the open shore-lead of water several miles wide which at that time of the year surrounds much of the continent. As we sailed south through this open stretch of sea, a vast cliff of ice came slowly into view. It was the great ice barrier, with its one- to two-hundred-foot vertical face glistening in the sun. It is these cliffs which gradually break off to form icebergs.

### shore polynya

A polynya between **sea ice** and shore or **ice front**.

**1987** Bates, Robert L. and Jackson, Julia A., eds *Glossary of geology*, 3rd edn American Geological Institute, Alexandria: 611.

Shore polynya. A polynya between pack ice and the coast, or between pack ice and an ice front, and formed by currents or by wind.

**1990** (Mawson station) Stretten, N.A. in *Antarctic Science* 2(1): 85.

Some discussion of the general patterns of shore polynyas.

### shore station Whaling. Also shore factory

A shore-based establishment for processing whale carcasses — the other kind of processing plant being a **floating factory**. The first antarctic shore station began on South Georgia in 1904. Shore stations were also called **land stations**.

**7 Dec 1912** Murphy, Robert Cushman (1948) *Logbook for Grace* Robert Hale Ltd, London: 162.

The whaling factory ship *Nor* .. is cooking carcasses for fertilizer in the harbor, thus supplementing the work of the overloaded shore factory.

**1916** Andrews, Roy Chapman *Whale hunting with gun and camera* D. Appleton & Co, NY: 8.

The modern shore station is usually situated in a lay or cove not far from the open sea.

**1929** (South Georgia) *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 261.

The whale boats operate from one of two types of base. Either there is a shore station which is built at the water's edge in some cove or well-sheltered part of the coast, or there is a floating factory or factory ship which may be anchored throughout the season in a similar situation, or may operate at a distance from the land. The central part of a shore station is the flensing platform, a wooden structure on which the dismemberment of the whale's carcass takes place, and which slopes gently down to the water ... Built round the platform are sheds which house the various boilers in which the oil is extracted from the blubber, flesh, viscera and bones. Further back from the beach are a number of tanks used for storing the oil.

**1971** Bertrand, Kenneth J. *Americans in Antarctica* American Geographical Society: 7.

Antarctic whaling was re-established based on the Rorquals, in 1904–05 when Captain C. A. Larsen, with Argentine capital, established the first shore station at Grytviken in South Georgia.

### shore whaling attrib. Also shore whale

[The term shore whaling is recorded in New Zealand from 1831 (DNZE).]

Whale hunting where the catch is brought to **shore stations** for processing. The best known of these in antarctic regions were the whaling stations on South Georgia.

**1916** Andrews, Roy Chapman *Whale hunting with gun and camera* D. Appleton & Co, NY: 8.

Since the beginning of the last century the subantarctic islands known as the Shetlands, South Orkneys, Falklands, South Georgia and Kerguelen have proven to be the greatest whaling grounds of modern times, and are today yielding nearly \$35,000,000 per year — just one-half of the total world revenue derived from the shore whaling industry.

**1922** (c1915) Murphy, Robert Cushman in *National Geographic* 41(4): 417.

The British Government controlled, by right of territorial possession, practically the whole of the shore whale fishery in the Far South, including the catch of stations at South

Georgia, a number of the other subantarctic islands, the Falklands, and the coast of the Antarctic Continent west of Weddell Sea.

**1991** Venables, Stephen *Island at the edge of the world: a South Georgia odyssey* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 92.

The brutal harvesting of elephant seals on South Georgia was successful in maintaining, even strengthening, a renewable resource. But it was only commercially viable on the back of the much bigger shore-based whaling operation, as elephant seal oil accounted for a small proportion of total production. For instance, during the 1960–1 season — the last big whale catch on South Georgia — 109,727 40-gallon barrels of whale oil were produced, as opposed to just 12,381 barrels of seal oil.

## shrieking sixties

The storm-prone and famously windy latitudes between 60° and 70° South, also called the **screaming sixties**.

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* Duckworth, London: 9.

Beyond the Roaring Forties there are the 'Furious Fifties' and the 'Shrieking Sixties', for the storms which ravage these regions become more and more severe as one proceeds further south.

**1953** Scholes, Arthur *Seventh continent: saga of Australasian exploration in Antarctica 1895–1950* George Allen & Unwin, London: 92.

It is in the Furious Fifties and the Shrieking Sixties that you begin to wonder why you ever left home!

**1982** Barnes, James N. *Let's save Antarctica!* Greenhouse Publications, Melbourne: 27.

The turbulent 'roaring forties', 'furious fifties', and 'shrieking sixties' lie in a circumpolar storm track and a westerly oceanic current zone known commonly as the West Wind Drift, or Circumpolar Current.

## shuga noun and attrib

[From the Russian Шугра.]

A spongy, porridge-like mass of ice suspended in water.

**1973** Armstrong, Terence, Roberts, Brian and Swinbank, Charles *Illustrated glossary of snow and ice* Scott Polar Research Institute, Cambridge: 35.

Shuga. An accumulation of spongy white lumps, a few cm across, formed from grease ice or sludge, and sometimes from anchor ice rising to the surface.

**1988** Butler, Rowan *Breaking the ice* Albatross Books, Sydney: 116.

The waves became smoothed to a rounded, rolling swell as if covered with oil when we encountered grease ice — small spicules of ice floating on the surface. This gave way to a covering of spongy white lumps a few centimetres across called shuga ice.

## shy albatross Also shy mollymawk

[Shy easily frightened away, has been used of animals and birds from 1674, and was originally applied to this bird as the Latin *cauta* by English naturalist John Gould. There are conflicting opinions on the shyness of this bird: compare 1840 and 1990 quotations.]

The albatross *Diomedea cauta* (fam. Diomedidae) of subantarctic and subtropical waters. The bird has a black back and wings, pale to dark grey head, white underneath and white underwings narrowly edged with

black. One of its subspecies is called **Salvin's albatross**. See also **white-capped mollymawk**.

**18 Dec 1840** Gould, John in *Proceedings of the Zoological Society of London*: 177.

The present bird differs from all other species [sc. of albatross] in the extreme caution with which it avoids rather than approaches the neighbourhood of vessels at sea ... From its shyness, I propose to name this species *Diomedea cauta*.]

**1948** (Snares Islands) Richdale, L.E. *Wild life on an island outpost: expedition to The Snares Islands 1947–48* Otago Daily Times and Witness Newspapers, Dunedin: 107.

This area has an elevation of 620 feet and looks out on to a series of fairly large rocky islands known as the Western Reef. On this reef, access to which is possible by launch only in fine weather, nest the Cape Pigeon and the Shy Mollymawk.

**1963** Rand, R.W. in *The Ostrich* XXXIV(3) Sept: 126.

Shy Albatrosses were seen at nine stations on all lines.

**1990** Marchant, S. and Higgins, P.J., co-ordinators *Handbook of Australian, New Zealand and Antarctic birds* Oxford University Press, Melbourne, vol 1A: 301.

*Diomedea cauta* Shy Albatross ... The specific name (Latin *cautus*, wary or cautious) refers to the species' reputed shyness at sea, which is not really justified.

## Sibbald's rorqual

[From the name of the Scottish naturalist Sir Robert Sibbald (1641–1722), see 1971 quotation, + **rorqual**.]

The whale *Balaenoptera musculus*: see **blue whale**.

**1897** [source: NOED] Lydekker, R. *Conc. Knowledge Nat. Hist.*: 173.

The largest .. of all whales, is the blue, or Sibbald's rorqual .. commonly known to the American whalers by the name of 'sulphur-bottom'.

**1902** Beddard, Frank Evers *Mammalia. The Cambridge Natural History* vol X Macmillan and Co, London: 340.

The Whales include the most gigantic of all the orders of vertebrated animals. No creature living or extinct is so large as the Sibbald's Rorqual, which attains to a length of some 85 feet, or perhaps even rather more.

**2 Jun 1910** (South Shetlands) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912* Blandford Press, London: 4.

Mr Lange told me also that Seihval is found at the Falklands exactly resembling the North Sea species, but that no Seihval is to be got at Belgian Strait in South Shetlands of the Antarctic where the Norwegians have a large factory and where they get chiefly Humpback, Finner, Blue Whale, Sibbalds and the Atlantic or Southern Right Whale<sup>1</sup>.

<sup>1</sup>Footnote: Blue Whale and Sibbald's Rorqual are two names for the same species *Balaenoptera musculus* — the distinction implied in the text is not clear.

**1936** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 45(9) (1 Jun): 143.

Names of Whales ... Blue whale. Sibbald's rorqual. Sulphur bottom.

**1971** Small, George L. *The blue whale* Columbia University Press, NY: 20.

The blue whale was first called "Sibbald's rorqual," for Robert Sibbald, a Scot, who described a blue whale stranded in the Firth of Forth in 1692. The name has tended to persist to the present day in English-speaking countries, as has its Latin equivalent, *Sibbaldus musculus*.

**1993** Fiennes, Ranulph *Mind over matter: the epic crossing of the Antarctic continent* Sinclair-Stevenson, London: 283.

Blue or Sibbald rorqual whales grow up to 110 feet long and 150 tonnes in weight.

**silver-grey petrel** Also *silver-grey fulmar*, and *silver petrel*

The oceanic bird *Fulmarus glacialis* (fam. Procellariidae), circumpolar in the antarctic and subantarctic. The bird is mainly white and grey, with blackish wing markings, and it breeds on the antarctic continent and peninsula and islands south of the antarctic convergence. It is also known as the **antarctic fulmar** (sense 2), **slender-billed fulmar**, **snow gull** and **southern fulmar**.

**1848** Gould, John *The birds of Australia* The author, 20 Broad St, Golden Square, London, vol VII: pl. 48.

*Procellaria glacialis*, Smith. Silvery-grey Petrel! ... During my voyages to and from Australia I saw numerous examples of this bird, both in the Atlantic and Pacific.

**1900** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* X(LXXIII): cvi.

Mr. T. Parkin made some observations on the abundance of bird-life noticed by him in the Southern Oceans. The following is the list of birds obtained during a day's shooting in a calm on December 2nd, 1890, in the Cape Seas, when on a voyage to Australia in the clipper ship 'Sobraon,' South Atlantic Ocean, lat. 39° 51' S., long. 8° 49' E. .. Silver-grey Petrel (*Priocella glacialis*) etc.].

**1906** (South Orkneys) Clarke, W. Eagle in *The Ibis* 6(XXI) Jan: 148.

The first spring immigratory movements took place in October ... These were followed in November by Wilson's Petrel (*Oceanites oceanicus*), the Ringed Penguin, and the Silver Petrel (*Priocella glacialis*).

**30 Dec 1913** (nr Mertz Glacier Tongue) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 229.

I take Silver Petrel looking through snow ice window.

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 97.

Ornithologists do not appear to have decided whether the Southern Fulmar Petrel (*Priocella glacialis*) is the same bird as the Silver-grey, or Blue-grey, Petrel (*Thalasseoca glac.*), or not. It was claimed, until recently, that the latter bird had a more slender beak than the fulmar; but the naturalists of the great Antarctic expeditions, who are the latest authorities, have dropped the distinction.

**1950** (South Georgia) Saunders, Alfred *A camera in Antarctica* Winchester Publications, London: 76.

The Silver-grey Fulmar is a beautiful bird, slightly larger than a Dominican gull. I cannot remember ever seeing one at South Georgia, though they were numerous further south.

**1963** Rand, R.W. in *The Ostrich* XXXIV(3) Sept: 127.

Silver-grey Petrel *Fulmarus antarcticus* This species was noticed on three occasions only ... They approached the ship closely and the rather striking pattern on the upper side of the wings enabled them to be recognised without difficulty.

**1995** (Wilkes Land) Law, Phillip *You have to be lucky: antarctic and other adventures* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 179.

The silver grey petrels were the men's favourite birds. About the size of a domestic hen, they are delicately coloured in white and light grey with soft, downy, thick plumage. They nest in open nests on flat ledges of rock on cliff faces, generally with a vertical rock wall behind them and facing the sun. They are so tame that, if you approach quietly, you can gently stroke them.

**silver teal** *Falkland Islands*

The duck *Anas versicolor*: see **pampa teal**.

**1987** Martins, Rodney in *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation* no 6 (May): 5.

Pebble Island, in addition, has an excellent series of fresh-water wetlands, offering a superb opportunity for bird watchers to see waterfowl such as silver teal, yellow-billed pintail, flying steamer duck and the vulnerable and highly localised black-necked swan, the Falkland population of which is perhaps of international importance.

**sixth continent**

[More often **seventh continent**; it depends how you count them.]

**Antarctica.**

**1935** Christensen, Lars, transl. fr Norwegian by E.M.G. Jayne *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 4.

A Britisher was the first to sight the mainland, but the first to set foot on this huge continent — rightly termed "the sixth continent" — was a Norwegian, Henrik Johan Bull, who landed on Jan. 24th, 1895, at Cape Adare, near the entrance to the Ross Sea.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 69.

As day succeeded to [sic] day, running our westing down, we began to realise the extent of this section of the sixth continent that we claim for ourselves. A thousand miles from Commonwealth Bay to Casey. Another thousand miles from Casey to Davis. Five hundred miles .. to Mawson, and yet another 500 miles before we reach the edge of 'our' territory ... Altogether some 3000 nautical miles of coastline, say 3500 miles, say 5700 kilometres.

**skauk** *noun*

[Despite the 1957 quotation, this word is not Icelandic (or Norwegian): it is perh. Eskimo.]

A jumbled, impassable field of crevassed ice.

**24 July 1913** Griffith Taylor, T. in Hanley, Wayne, ed. (1978) *The Griffith Taylor collection: diaries and letters of a geographer in Antarctica* Geography Department, University of New England, Armidale: 124.

On the south were the crevasses of the New Glacier while on the north were the Icefalls of the Mackay — like a suddenly frozen storm-tossed sea. Gran said that this would be called *skauk* [sic, on his map p. 163 *skauk*] in Scandinavia so we adopted that name.

**1957** Sullivan, Walter *Quest for a continent* Secker & Warburg, London: 212.

The most fast-moving ice seemed, from the crevasse patterns, to flow down two parallel channels with a jumble of smaller crevasses and scrafs in between and on either side. This was "skauk", Icelandic for an impassable crevasse field. Struggling across the surface, one could no more visualize the scene as a whole than an ant among the furrows could picture the contour plowing of a great field.

**1987** Bates, Robert L. and Jackson, Julia A. eds *Glossary of geology, 3rd edn* American Geological Institute, Alexandria: 617.

Skauk: A term .. for an extensive field of crevasses in a glacier.

**skavli** *Pl. skavler*

[From the Norwegian skavli snowdrift.]

An irregular, sharp-edged ridge of snow; these are usually called **sastrugi**.

**1953** (Port-Martin, Terre Adélie) *Polar Record*: 763.

Huge skavler<sup>1</sup> orientated S.E.—N.W. defied all attempts to drive either east or west across them: efforts to cross them in

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

the Weasels invariably ended with the collapse of the vehicles' suspension.

<sup>Footnote:</sup> Deep irregular furrows on the surface of the névé caused by wind erosion and deposition.

**27 Sept–25 Oct 1959** Béchervaise, John (1963) *Blizzard and fire: a year at Mawson, Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 165.

Wind-cut ridges and grooves in the snow become sastrugi (although skavler is preferred by some English authorities now.)

**1965** (King George Island) *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* 5 (Jan): 25.

The east-north-east orientation of the skavler throughout this area is only disturbed on the slopes of the inland ice adjacent to the ice shelf.

**1987** Bates, Robert L. and Jackson, Julia A. eds *Glossary of geology, 3rd edn* American Geological Institute, Alexandria: 617.

Skavl: A Norwegian term for a large wind-eroded ridge of snow on a glacier.

### skidoo *noun*

[Originally a trade name for the Bombardier Ski-doo snowmobile, produced from 1959 by Canadian Joseph-Armand Bombardier. The name is first recorded in general use (1961) in arctic Canada, and is recorded in Alaskan English from 1967– (DALASKE).]

A one-person motorised oversnow vehicle (a 'snowmobile') with tracks at the rear and one or two skis at the front. Skidoos (also called **motor toboggans**) can tow a small sledge, and have replaced dogs in lightweight sledging expeditions in Antarctica.

**1967** *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* 8 (Nov): 4.

Alan Smith and Chris Gostick on a "skidoo" made a ten-day trip onto the inland ice to complete the glaciological work.

**1978** Béchervaise, John *Science: men on ice in Antarctica. Australian Life Series* Lothian Publishing Co, Melbourne: 68.

Smallest is the motorized sledge or "skidoo" already mentioned, with tracks behind and skis in front, carrying a single man in the open, and capable of towing a light sledge bearing two or three hundred kilograms. It has replaced dog-power in both the Arctic and the Antarctic.

**1993** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XXVIII(5): 21.

In late November, we established a Skidoo-based camp in the Brown Hills (along the south side of Cooper Nunatak).

### skidoo *verb*

To travel by **skidoo**.

**1986** Jenkins, Adrian and Summerson, Rupert *Travel report – Sledge Golf. Glacier geophysics Ronne Ice Shelf traverse 17 Dec 1985–24 Feb 1986* British Antarctic Survey, Cambridge: 18.

There is a lot of standing about operating instruments, or Ski-dooing.

**1995** (Casey) *Station News [Australian Antarctic Division]* Nov: 5. Noel and Elizabeth skidooed over to Browning in deep, fresh snow.

### skidoo-less *adjective*

Bereft of a **skidoo**.

**13 Mar 1988** Hall, Lincoln (1989) *The loneliest mountain: the dramatic story of the first expedition to climb Mt Minto, Antarctica* Simon and Schuster, Sydney: 200.

The odds have been against us at every stage of our adventure, from our engine troubles and the fire at sea, to the ship being stuck in the pack-ice, from the six of us left skidoo-less on the continent, to battling the wind on the slopes of Mt Minto.

### skipjack *Tristan da Cunha*

[Skipjack is recorded later in New Zealand English (from 1966: DNZE) for the white-faced storm petrel.]

### A storm petrel.

**1952** (Marion Island) Crawford, Allan B. in *The Emu* 25(2) May: 76.

Grey-backed Storm-Petrel (Skipjack'), *Garrodia nereis*. .. The specimens collected were both captured at night in the glare of a searchlight.

<sup>The vernacular names in parentheses are those used by sealers and islanders from Tristan da Cunha who were in our party.</sup>

**1952** Hagen, Yngvar *Birds of Tristan da Cunha* Det Norske Videnskap Akademi i Oslo/Hos Jacob Dybwad, Oslo: 124.

I heard, myself, the residents [sc. Tristan] call our present species, the *Pterodroma* [sic] *marina*, very decidedly, by the name "Skip-jack".

### skua *noun and attrib. Also, esp. formerly, skua gull*

[*Skua*, adapted from the Old Norse skúfr, Faeroese skúvur, origin uncertain, has been used for predatory gulls of the genus *Stercorarius*, as *Catharacta* was formerly called, since 1678 (NOED), and was later transferred to their southern relatives.]

A large, predatory sea and landbird of the genus *Catharacta*, esp. either the **antarctic skua** or **McCormick's skua**.

See also **brown skua**, **Falkland skua**, **great skua**, **sea hawk**, **sea hen**, **southern skua**, **south polar skua**, **subantarctic skua**, **Tristan skua**.

**16 Dec 1817** (Tristan da Cunha) Carmichael, Captain Dugald in *Transactions of the Linnean Society of London* (1818) 1(2): 487.

The weaker tribes of these birds [sc. petrels] are devoured in vast numbers by the Skua gulls, which pounce upon them as they come out of their holes in the evening, and leave nothing but the bones and feathers to attest the havoc made among them.

**Feb 8 1859** (Falkland Islands) *Proceedings of the Zoological Society of London* Feb–June: 98.

*Megalestris antarctica*. (Skua Gull.) A boldly-marked and handsome egg, of uniform greenish-buff, blotched and speckled all over with deep amber-brown, interspersed with large, obscure, clouded blotches appearing as if beneath the surface of the shell. Length 3 inches, breadth 2.

**1879** (Inaccessible Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 123.

A flock of thirty or forty predatory gulls (*Stercorarius antarcticus*), were quarrelling and fighting over the bodies of penguins, the skins of which had been taken in considerable numbers by our various parties on shore. The Skua is a gull which has acquired a sharp curved beak, and sharp claws at the tips of its webbed toes. The birds are thoroughly predaceous in their habits, quartering their ground on the look-out for carrion, and assembling in numbers where there is anything killed, in the same curious way as vultures.

**1894** (Macquarie Island) Hamilton, A. in *Transactions and Proceedings of the New Zealand Institute* XXVII Art LXV: 571.

Sailing about overhead were numbers of the dark-coloured hawk-like skua gull — *Lestris antarctica* (*Stercorarius antarcticus*) — the terror of all other birds. The working party find them so destructive to the young penguins that, by means of poison, a very large number have been killed to protect the oil interest. They are still extremely numerous.

**15 Dec 1911** Griffith Taylor, T. in Hanley, Wayne, ed. (1978) *The Griffith Taylor collection: diaries and letters of a geographer in*

*Antarctica* Geography Department, University of New England, Armidale: 164.

Fordc gave us a fine dinner. A tender seal hoosh flavoured with onion powder, reposing on which was a fried skua egg!

**1914** (Cape Adare) Priestley, Raymond E. (1974 repr.) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* Melbourne University Press: 74.

Lunch usually consisted of bread and cheese, with honey and jams, and occasionally potted meat, with perhaps a cold round of seal beef or half of a cold roasted skua, for, again, we relied as much as possible on local products. Skua gull even when well roasted is a little tough and high, but it is no tougher than many joints I have tasted in civilization, and certainly in the latter respect it cannot vie with many kinds of English game.

**1931** O'Brien, John S. *By dog sled for Byrd: 1600 miles across Antarctic ice* Thomas S. Rockwell, Chicago: 101.

Where he came from and what he lived on there in the heart of the barrier we never could make out, but one day an old skua gull appeared near our camp.

**1962** Henderson, Jim *One foot at the Pole* Whitcombe & Tombs, Christchurch: 70.

The roar of a rednosed and silver Globemaster a couple of miles away as it circles slowly to gain height for the long haul back to Christchurch, back to Chee-Chee, sends a few fat grey-brown skua gulls, the scavengers of the Antarctic, paddling heavily into the air.

**1967** Gillham, Mary E. *Sub-Antarctic sanctuary: summertime on Macquarie Island* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Wellington: 60.

The skuas were as stupid as they were aggressive. A bird wandering inadvertently into the covered part of the poultry yard might spend the whole morning trying to get out and still fail to locate the man-sized door by which it entered.

**1996** Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 42.

I watched them capturing nesting birds with what looked like a large black butterfly net, stowing the egg lying under each one in a skua-proof box.

### skua box *Also skua bin*

[From the predatory or scavenging habits of the bird.]

A box where unwanted goods can be picked over and claimed for reuse; the goods themselves.

**24 Dec 1994** Trimmingham, Terry [source: <http://quest.arc.nasa.gov/antarctica/team/terry/skuiating.html>, accessed 30 Mar 2000].

In McMurdo there are recycling boxes in all of the dorms. Lots of people refer to them as "skua" boxes. You can go looking in them and score all kinds of goodies. When folks get tired of a T-shirt or shrink a sweater in the wash, it goes in the skua pile. I have found all kinds of things in the skua boxes: coffee pots, slippers, bath robes, humidifiers, jeans, pictures for the walls.

**2000** NZ *Catholic* 13 Feb: 11.

"I thought I might have to clothe myself out of the 'skua bin,'" he said, adding that this is a bin, named after the scavenging Antarctic skua birds, in which people discard old clothing and other items not worth taking home!

### skuary

A breeding ground for skuas.

[**1907** (McMurdo Sound) Hodgson, T.V. in *National Antarctic Expedition 1901-1904. Natural history vol III Zoology and botany (Invertebrata: marine algae, musci)* British Museum, London: 3.

A couple of miles further on, on the lowest slopes of Mount Erebus, was Skuary Point, a broad expanse of basaltic rubble

and patches of snow where the Skua, *Megalestris macconnicki*, bred in large numbers.]

**5 Jan 1911** Griffith Taylor, T. in Hanley, Wayne, ed. (1978) *The Griffith Taylor collection: diaries and letters of a geographer in Antarctica* Geography Department, University of New England, Armidale: 58.

And now we have become tenants of the skuaries — with an improvement in name to Cape Evans. But it's still the skuary! **1962** (Hut Point, McMurdo Sound, 1914-15) Richards, R.W. *The Ross Sea shore party 1914-17*. Scott Polar Research Institute Special Publication no. 2: 15.

To the east, the land rises gently to a small lake and the "skuary" where the Skuas make their nests of stones in the summer and fiercely attack any strange human invader.

### slack pack *Also slack ice*

#### Loose pack.

**13 Dec 1929** Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 279.

Davis told me that the officer on watch had pushed her into heavier stuff than he intended and that he was taking her out into slack pack.

**1964** (65°S, 81°E) Phillip, Law *The exploration of Oates Land, Antarctica. ANARE reports Series A vol 1 Narrative* Antarctic Division, Dept External Affairs, Melbourne: 32.

At 1445 the Captain and I both flew in the helicopter and found that all the slack ice between us and the shore lead had disappeared.

**1984** Fletcher, Harold *Antarctic days with Mawson: a personal account of the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929-31* Angus and Robertson, London: 294.

The *Discovery* had got under way at first light and pushed through slack pack into open water.

### sledge *noun. Also (esp. US) sled*

[Sledge is recorded in English for a vehicle to travel on snow and ice, from 1617 (NOED).]

An oversnow vehicle on runners, pulled by men or sledge dogs and used extensively in antarctic travel. See also **Nansen sledge**.

**1930** Byrd, Richard Evelyn in *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 190.

The loads were distributed between the two sleds of a team.

**1944** Stewart, Douglas *The fire on the snow* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 14.

EVANS. You mean to say we're barmy?

OATES. Of course you are, and so am I, hauling a sledge to the Pole when I might be home where there's food and fires and women. You can certify me potty.

**1968** (Hope Bay) Herbert, Wally *A world of men: exploration in Antarctica* Eyre & Spottiswoode, London: 34.

The rows of upturned sledges neatly packed down the leeward side gave it [sc. the hut] the distinctive character of a British polar base.

**1992** Steger, Will and Bowermaster, Jon *Crossing Antarctica* Alfred A. Knopf, New York: 30.

I find myself dragging out my chores — unpacking the sled, untangling gang lines, feeding the dogs.

### sledge *verb*

[The verb sledge is recorded in arctic use from 1853 (NOED).]

To travel with the use of sledges.

**1960** (Victoria Land) *Polar Record* 10(66) Sept: 282.

During their field work, they sledged about 180 miles.

**1979** (Jan 1916) Hurley, Frank *Shackleton's argonauts: the epic tale of Shackleton's voyage to Antarctica in 1915* McGraw-Hill Book Co: 116.

Sir Ernest, with one of his brilliant inspirations, sledged out to meet us a mile from camp with two cans of steaming tea, and, with lusty voices, if husky from fatigue, we all cheered and sang, "For he's a jolly fellow". Nothing in the whole of the world's wet resources could compare with that jorum of hot tea.

### **sledge biscuit** *See* **sledging biscuit**

### **sledge box** *Also* **sledging box**

A box which can be secured on a **sledge** and is used to hold supplies and equipment.

**1956** Miller, J.H. *Report on voyage to Weddell Sea and activities in England* Royal Society of New Zealand: 3.

Also landed should be sleeping bags or blankets and two or three kitbags of spare clothing, sledging rations and sledging boxes of cookers and utensils.

**1971** Young, Pamela *Penguin summer — or, a rare bird in Antarctica* A.H. & A.W. Reed, Wellington: 133.

I raided the emergency boxes under the meteorological screen for crockery and cookery things, and packed the lot into an empty sledge box.

**1982** Ledingham, Rod *ANARE dog drivers manual* Antarctic Division, Department of Science and the Environment: 58.

*Fibre Glass Sledge boxes* Are usually carried on the sledge with or without a sledge tank.

### **sledge caravan** *Aust.*

A caravan designed to be towed by a mechanised vehicle over ice.

**1956** Stinear, B.H. *Preliminary report on operations from Mawson Base, Australian National Antarctic Research Expedition, 1954–55* BMR Record 1956/44: 11.

The sledge caravan containing the emergency rations offered the only hope for the party's survival.

**1991** Bowden, Tim *Antarctica and back in sixty days* Australian Broadcasting Corporation, Sydney: 205.

One of the original "sledge caravans", designed to float to help it get ashore, was recovered from the ice behind the Fischer Nunatak, about twenty kilometres south of Mawson.

### **sledge dog** *Also* (US) **sled dog**

A **husky**, in the general sense. These **dogs** were used for antarctic travel until the 1990s.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 8.

The sickness was aggravated by the intense heat and the appalling effluvium arising from some ninety Siberian sledge dogs we had on deck. These dogs were procured from the Samoyedes, in the north of Siberia, and were the first dogs ever introduced in Antarctic exploration.

**1930** *The New York Times* 4 May: n.p.

[caption] One of the sledge dogs, rated as the best mother in the camp, with her puppies.

**1948** Hurley, Frank (1979 edn) *Shackleton's argonauts: the epic tale of Shackleton's voyage to Antarctica in 1915* McGraw-Hill Book Co: 76.

The sledge-dog is a most accommodating animal in regard to his diet. When pressed by hunger, he will cheerfully consume his brother in harness, and will even make a meal off the harness itself!

**1965** Hedblom, Captain E.E. *Polar manual, 4th edn* US Navy, Bethesda, Maryland: 57.

Sled and pack dogs have been used in the North since time immemorial. They are still used extensively in Antarctica by the English, Australians, and New Zealanders.

**1995** Crossley, Louise *Explore Antarctica* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 64.

Huskies — as sledge dogs are often called — come from the Arctic, where there are four distinct types, from Labrador, Greenland, Alaska and Siberia.

### **sledge journey** *Also* **sledging journey**

A trip away from base in the antarctic regions, undertaken with **sledges** pulled by **sledge dogs** or by **man-hauling**.

**29 Nov 1897** Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 44.

The best possible outfit was selected for the intended sledge journeys over the virgin south polar lands.

**1906** (South Orkneys) Rudmose Brown, R.N., Mossman, R.C. and Pirie, J.H. Harvey *The voyage of the "Scotia", being the record of a voyage of exploration in Antarctic Seas by Three of the Staff* William Blackwood and Sons, Edinburgh: 102.

On sledging journeys furs are, of course, required to sleep in.

**1948** Lamb, I. Mackenzie *Antarctic pyrenocarp lichens. Discovery reports vol XXV* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 7.

In 1945 two sledge journeys were made from the Hope Bay base down the east coast of the peninsula.

**1957** Anderson, W. Ellery *Expedition south* Evans Brothers, London: 16.

I was prepared to slog at the routine, provided I could also take part in the sledging journeys.

### **sledge meter** *See* **sledge wheel**

### **sledge party** *Also* **sledging party**

A group of people making a **sledge journey**.

**1916** (McMurdo Sound, Jan 1903) Doorly, Captain Gerald S. *The voyages of the 'Morning'* Smith, Elder & Co., London: 100.

Sledge parties were now returning [sc. to the base for the *Discovery*], each with its fund of thrilling adventures and discoveries.

**1941** (Bay of Whales) *Polar Record* 3(22) July: 434.

With the arrival of spring in the Antarctic, came busy days in preparation for the forthcoming field operations of sledging parties, of which five were sent into the field.

### **sledge wheel** *Also* **sledge meter**

A device attached to a sledge for measuring distance covered, and therefore a vital tool in dead reckoning.

**8 Jan 1911** Evans, Admiral Sir Edward R.G.R. (1938) *South with Scott* Collins, London: 56.

Captain Scott put the sledge meters together and I helped him. These are similar to the distance meters on motor-cars. They register in nautical miles (6084 feet) and yards, to 25 yards or less by interpolation.

**1957** Sullivan, Walter *Quest for a continent* Secker & Warburg, London: 235.

A bicycle-like wheel resting on the snow turned briskly as the caravan advanced — a "sledge meter" to record the distance covered.

**1958** Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund *The crossing of Antarctica: the Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955–58* Cassell & Co, London: 211.

A sledge wheel is no more than a bicycle wheel and mileometer trailed by the sledge ... He [sic] Richard Brooke] was 'adept at breaking sledge wheels on rough going'.

**1982** Ledingham, Rod *ANARE dog drivers manual* Antarctic Division, Department of Science and the Environment: 61.

The sledge wheel is a vital piece of equipment and is used for measuring distances with a standard bicycle cyclometer in km or miles. Used in conjunction with the compass dead reckoning positions can be kept with reasonable accuracy. The sledge wheel is fixed near the base of the handle bars.

## sledgie

Shortened form of **sledging biscuit**.

**1963** Wilkes *Hard Times* (19) Oct: 2.

Some of us may have begrudged some of the goodies they took with them, and feel if one is prepared to brave the rigours of extended field trips, one should live on the time honoured pemmican and sledgies.

**4 Dec 1979** Scott, Jenny in *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* (1986) 5(5) Sept: 110.

We are steadily compiling the Macquarie Island Hutwives Cookbook — subtitled '100 different ways to avoid Fray Bentos and sledgies'.

**1995** (Mawson) Greet, Pene and Price, Gina *Frost bytes* Doubleday, Sydney: 155.

After reviving ourselves with tea and sledgies and a few moments' rest, we tried again to feed the dogs.

## sledging biscuit

*Aust. Also sledge biscuit*  
[Sledging from its use on trips hauling sledges. Cf. ship(s) biscuit used since 1799 for hard biscuit prepared for use on board ship.]

A hard and durable biscuit, purportedly for human consumption. See also **antarctic biscuit**.

**3 Sept 1912** (Commonwealth Bay) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 111.

Dad, Whetter, and Close take 2 tins S & A biscuits (53 lb each) and 12 tins oil to the 5 mile.]

**24 Jul 1913** (Granite Harbour) Griffith Taylor, T. in Hanley, Wayne, ed. (1978) *The Griffith Taylor collection: diaries and letters of a geographer in Antarctica* Geography Department, University of New England, Armidale: 115.

At Shackleton's depot we found a cache of ordinary biscuits and Debenham preferred these so I agreed to take a small tin along in lieu of the equal weight of sledging biscuits. So that Gran and I had two sledge biscuits each while the "soft-teeth" ate Shackleton's brand.

**1914** (Cape Adare) Priestley, Raymond E. (1974 repr.) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* Melbourne University Press: 109.

I had heard very unfavourable reports of the hardness and unpalatability of our sledging biscuits, and so took this opportunity of tasting both Antarctic and Emergency biscuits, and was agreeably surprised to find that, although the reports about their hardness were not much exaggerated, they were certainly quite pleasant to taste. Later on we were to count their hardness as one of their greatest attributes, but that time was not yet, and during the present season I think most of us would have preferred them to be somewhat softer.

**1966** MacKenzie, D., ed. *Fog 'N Bog [yearbook of Macquarie Island ANARE overwinterers]* ANARE, Macquarie Island: 61.

Then theres [sic] these here sledging biscuits. I reckon they musta made sledges outta them at one time and that's how they got their name. Blimey are they tough.

**1971** Young, Pamela *Penguin summer — or, a rare bird in Antarctica* A.H. & A.W. Reed, Wellington: 84.

Occasionally there were enough girdle scones left over from lunch on the previous day to fill up the cracks. The others were enthusiastic about them but I stuck to sledge biscuits. Two tins of these delicacies had come from Scott Base at the beginning of the season and from my first bite I was addicted.

**1983** Law, Phillip *Antarctic Odyssey* Heinemann, Melbourne: 257.

The biscuits in the rations are of interest. When originally organizing the rations, I surveyed the market for suitable biscuits, but could not find what I wanted. I had not expected to, for as a skier and bushwalker I had never yet found a suitable field biscuit. What I wanted was a biscuit made of 100 per cent wholemeal flour and butter that was solid and non-friable. A skiing friend of mine, Fred Derham, was the head of the biscuit firm of Swallow and Ariell Ltd in Melbourne and he agreed that his firm would experiment to produce what we needed. They made a number of experimental batches and we gave them field tests. The main trouble was friability. If the butter content were too high the biscuits crumbled easily; if it were too low, the biscuits were too hard to bite. The final product was marketed under the name 'Sledge Biscuits' and it is still used in ANARE field packs. It has become popular throughout Australia for hikers, mountaineers and skiers. The composition is 72 per cent wholemeal flour, 21 per cent butter, 2 per cent salt and 5 per cent moisture. The biscuits are roughly 2 inches square, inch thick and 1 ounce each in weight. They are wrapped in packages of four and stand up to hard usage without breaking.

**1983** Skinner, D.N.B. in *New Zealand Antarctic Record* 4(3): 24. Investigation of sledging biscuits in field boxes used by even K2 in the 1982/83 season in Antarctica has shown them to have suffered an early high T, low P metamorphism followed by a long history of deformation by brittle fracturing ... The brittle nature of the biscuits is attributed to a high temperature, low pressure metamorphic event early in the biscuit's history. This has made them extremely susceptible to brittle deformation while stress was applied on multiple axes during subsequent transportation from the manufacturer to Scott Base, Antarctica.

**1991** Bowden, Tim *Antarctica and back in sixty days* Australian Broadcasting Corporation, Sydney: 204.

There were also plenty of packets of HF6 Bars, and the famous "sledgies" — Swallow and Ariel sledging biscuits.

**1995** (1958–59) McLeod, Ian in Robinson, Shelagh, ed. *Huskies in harness: a love story in Antarctica* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 51. Breakfast follows the same routine: melt snow, make coffee, cook the porridge (with a good helping of butter concentrate in it), plaster chunks of butter concentrate onto sledge biscuits.

## sledging box

See **sledge box**

## sledging journey

See **sledge journey**

## sledging party

See **sledge party**

## sledging rations

Provisions sorted and packed specifically for a **sledge journey**.

**1952** Fuchs, V.E. in *Polar Record* 6(44) Jul: 508.

During the last two decades the sledging rations used by British antarctic expeditions has gradually been standardized.

**1966** MacKenzie, D., ed. *Fog 'N Bog [yearbook of Macquarie Island ANARE overwinterers]* ANARE, Macquarie Island: 61.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

If a fella was ter live on these sledging rations for three days he'd go home a wreck, and I don't reckon you'd be able to hold a beer down for weeks.

**sleep** *Tristan da Cunha*

An isolated rock lying beneath the sea surface, a hazard to shipping.

**1957** Booy, D.M. *Rock of exile: a narrative of Tristan da Cunha* J.M. Dent & Sons, London: 155.

An outlying pinnacle of rock, which he called a "sleep", rose to just below the surface, so that only a ridge of white foam betrayed its presence. He steered carefully between it and the shore.

**slender-billed fulmar**

The seabird *Fulmaris glacialis*: see **silver-grey petrel**.

**1906** (South Orkneys) Eagle Clarke, W. in *The Ibis* 6(XXI) Jan: 170.

*Priocella glacialis* .. The Slender-billed Fulmar, or Silver Petrel, was observed in the summer of 1903, in MacDougall Bay, on the north coast of Laurie I., on November 4th. After this date examples were occasionally seen about the cliffs on the north side of the island during November and December, and it is considered highly probable that a few pairs were nesting there. The breeding-places of this bird, however, still remain to be discovered.

**slender-billed prion**

The bird *Pachyptila belcheri*: see **thin-billed prion**.

**1985** Bourne, W.R.P. and Curtis, W.F. in *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation* [London] no 4 (Oct): 3.

Slender-billed Prions were abundant in summer but less common in winter.

**1999** Pizzey, Graham and Knight, Frank *Field guide to the birds of Australia* Angus & Robertson, Sydney: 64.

Slender-billed prion *Pachyptila belcheri* ... breeds Crozets and Kerguelen Is. (S. Indian Ocean); Falkland Is. (S. Atlantic) and islands off S. America. Possibly Macquarie I.

**slot** *noun, esp. Aust. & NZ*

[NOED records New Zealand mainland uses of this noun in the same sense from 1959, the year of the earliest antarctic quotation.]

A **crevasse**.

**17-24 Dec 1959** Béchervaise, John (1963) *Blizzard and fire: a year at Mawson, Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 210.

We probed with crowbars and found ourselves in an area honeycombed with "slots" up to six or seven feet across.

**1963** Wilkes *Hard Times* 1(7) Aug: 13.

The risk of slots and ice-cliffs, and other kinds of strife.

**1991** Venables, Stephen *Island at the edge of the world: a South Georgia odyssey* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 161.

Brian's crevasse shot also needed additional detail, so we found a small slot on a tiny glacier above the Cove.

**slot** *verb, Aust.*

To fall (or cause to fall) into a **crevasse**.

**1964** (Mawson) *Antarctic Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 4(10) Jun: 504.

"Let's give the game away after we get a D-4 slotted one more time" ... The next minute his machine with him in it disappeared from sight — the tail and the tip of the blade caught and held a little way down the bottomless hole.

**1972** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] June: 27.

The D4 slotted in a sizeable crevasse near Fang Peak.

**1995** (Mawson) Greet, Pene and Price, Gina *Frost bytes* Doubleday, Sydney: 75.

Bad news is that yesterday the traverse slotted a D7 and a D5 they were bringing back for maintenance!

**slotted** *adjective, Aust.*

(Of ice) **crevassed**.

**1964** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] June: 9.

A support party driving the Snow-trac and Weasel .. hauled the dogs and equipment up the ice slopes and across the slotted ice around the mountain area.

**sludge (ice)** *noun and attrib. Also ice sludge*

[Recorded in arctic use first, from 1817 (NOED).]

Newly formed, soupy ice in the sea, also called **slush**.

**3 Jan 1842** McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 257.

I was endeavouring to get round the sludge-ice to pick the other up.

**1901** (Cape Adare) Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 107.

At that moment the clouds cleared momentarily before the moon, and we were astonished to see that the bay was full of sludge-ice. I went down to look at it; it was the consistency of porridge. We now thought of the boat and its occupants, knowing that if they had been caught in this ground-up ice with a frail canvas boat they would fare very badly indeed.

**28 Nov 1908** Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 26.

On 26th, from rocky cape, with glass I had beheld sludge lanes in sea ice far out (6 to 8 miles), extensive and parallel to coast.

**1922** Scott, Robert quoted in Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Picador, London: 86.

To our astonishment we ran on past the Cape with clear water or thin sludge ice on all sides of us.

**1957** Anderson, W. Ellery *Expedition south* Evans Brothers, London: 120.

Sludge<sup>1</sup> and ice rind were forming in the surface.

<sup>1</sup>Footnote: Small fragments of ice coagulated to form a thick layer on the surface, reflecting little light.

**1972** James, Preston E. *All possible worlds: a history of geographical ideas* Odyssey Press, Indianapolis: 40.

Pytheas described a sea so full of ice that it could neither be traversed on foot nor in a boat — which exactly describes what the polar explorers call ice sludge.

**1995** (Dumont d'Urville base) Law, Phillip *You have to be lucky: antarctic and other adventures* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 145.

When the sea starts to freeze, one first notices myriads of tiny ice crystals forming at the surface. These thicken up until the surface has an 'oily' appearance. This is called 'frazil ice'. As the crystals coagulate, they form a thick, soupy layer on the surface called 'sludge'.

**slug**

[Spec. and humorous use of slug an animal of a slow-moving or sluggish character (NOED 1618-).]

A **seal**.

**[1914** (nr Cape Adare) Priestley, Raymond E. (1974 repr.) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* Melbourne University Press: 184.



On shore they [sc. Weddells] look like huge black slugs and their movements are painful to watch.

**1940** Bertram, G.C.L. *The biology of the Weddell and crabeater seals, with a study of the comparative behaviour of the Pinnipedia. BGLE 1934-37 scientific reports vol 1 (no 1)* British Museum (Natural History), London: 87.

The crabeater seal is a far more lithe and active animal out of water than is the rather slug-like Weddell.]

**1957** *London Calling* 9 May: 9.

What a noisy reception committee we found! There was a sea elephant roaring, a great brown slug sprawled on the beach where we landed: three tons of the world's largest seal and also the biggest inhabitant of Gough.

**1986** *Sydney Morning Herald* 15 Feb: 9.

"We saw a couple of slugs and snapped some beaut meppicks to show the folks when we get RTA-od."

**1993** Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 150.

The vastness of the crabeater population can only really be appreciated from an aeroplane. Particularly in the spring, it is possible to fly for hour after hour over seemingly endless pack ice and continually spot the little black slugs of hauled out crabeaters.

### slush Also slush(y) ice

[Slush is recorded in general English from 1641 (NOED) for partly melted snow or ice.]

### Sludge.

**28 July 1902** Scott, Captain Robert F. (1905) *The voyage of the 'Discovery'* Macmillan and Co, London: 271.

The first boat ... was found lying in a mass of slushy ice, with which also she was nearly filled.

**1905** (73°S, 21°W) Pirie, J.H. Harvey and Rudmose Brown, R.N. in *Scottish Geographical Magazine* 21: 26.

Early on the morning of the 7th the *Scotia* was caught in a north-easterly blizzard, and despite all efforts to get free was beset in slush and heavy pack.

**1928** Wordie and Priestley, R.E. in Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent*. The Richards Press, London: 386.

[glossary] Slush or Sludge. "The (effect of the) initial stages in the freezing of sea-water, when it is of a gluey or soupy consistency. The term is also occasionally used for 'brash-ice' still further broken down."

**1949** Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 203.

Slush ice formed round Atlas Cove and Corinthian Bay.

**1956** Migot, André, transl. fr French by Richard Groves *The lonely South* Rupert Hart-Davis, London: 172.

It grew very cold and the sea began to be covered with all kinds of new ice — fine greasy "slush", thicker gritty "sludge" and newly formed pancakes.

**1965** Hedblom, Captain E.E. *Polar manual, 4th edn* US Navy, Bethesda, Maryland: 18.

Dr Edward Wilson and Birdie Bowers ... took slush baths every day on arising in preparation for their journeys, and they developed remarkable subjective and objective resistance to cold.

### slushy noun and attrib. Mainly Aust. Also slushie

[Recorded for a ship's cook or an unskilled kitchen help, from 1859 (NOED), particularly in Australian English.]

A rostered assistant who performs kitchen and cleaning duties for the day; a **gashman** or **housemouse**.

**1949** Granville, Wilfred *Sea slang of the twentieth century* Winchester, London: 216.

Slushy: a sea-faring cook.]

**1962** Henderson, Jim *One foot at the Pole* Whitcombe & Tombs, Christchurch: 101.

The nine mess cooks (slushies or mess orderlies in New Zealand language), two cooks, and the Leading Chief work up to seventeen hours a day.

**1978** Lowry, K.J. and others *The Australian Museum Macquarie Island expedition, summer 1977-1978* Australian Museum Trust: 23.

The remaining time was spent in laboratory work, in "slushie" duties around ANARE Station, or in moving camp.

**1994** *Sunday Age [Melbourne]* 24 Apr: Agenda 2.

Those who have had a good winter in Antarctica describe the camaraderie as similar to that between soldiers at a front. "Except here the environment is all positive", said Alan Grant, who served as station leader at Mawson during the winter of 1993. "In this classless society, post-doctoral fellows rub elbows with plumbers and diesel mechanics. Everyone takes a turn at "slushy duty" or cleaning the toilets and kitchens."

**1995** Gilchrist, Alan in *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* 15(2) Dec: 17.

The route of "slushy" to Antarctica seems to have been: Square Rigger at Port Melbourne — Dorcas St. Presbyterian Church, South Melbourne — Castlemaine and Broadmeadows Military Camps prior to and during World War One — Second Wagga Wagga Boy Scout Troop — the Medical Officer, Heard Island ANARE 1947-49, Antarctic Division generally.

### slushying verbal noun

Performing the duties of a **slushy**.

**1996** (Mawson) *Station News [Australian Antarctic Division]* Feb: 2.

John Armstrong was busy with .. slushying in the kitchen.

### small ice

A loose cover of ice on the sea, not enough to impede ship travel.

**1900** Cook, Frederick A. *Through the first Antarctic night 1898-1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 153.

We encounter small ice, loosely strewn in the waters in considerable quantities as we advance, but owing to its diminutive size it does not offer any difficulties to our progress. This ice differs greatly from any which I have seen floating upon the sea either before or since. There is no ice of the same character in the arctic. It is a form seen only along the outer edges of the antarctic lands.

**1925** Hurley, Captain Frank *Argonauts of the South* G.P. Putnam's Sons, NY: 41.

Soon the *Aurora* was cleaving a crystal sea of small ice.

**1937** Christensen, Lars (1938) *My last expedition to the Antarctic 1936-1937* Johan Grundt Tanum, Oslo: 12.

During the time the airmen were up, the *Thorshavn* steamed slowly in a wide circle, thus keeping the small ice away and the lane open for landing on when the plane returned.

### small season Tristan da Cunha

The time immediately after Christmas, when jobs are most numerous and labour most scarce.

**1970** Munch, Peter A. *The song tradition of Tristan da Cunha*. Indiana University Publications, Folklore Institute Monograph Series vol. 22: 155.

The fishing ships had just returned from their Christmas holiday to start the "small season".

### smelt *Falkland Islands*

[Smelt was first applied to a small fish allied to the salmon, in c725. NOED does not record its transference to other small fishes until 1776, considerably later than the 1670 quotation below.]

Any of the several fish caught as food in and around the Falkland Islands, incl. species of the fam. Atherinidae, and esp. *Galaxias attenuatus* (fam. Galaxiidae), a silvery marine fish growing to about 20 cm (8 in) long.

**1670** (Port Famine, Falkland Islands) Wood, Captain R. in Dampier, William (1729) *A collection of voyages in Four Volumes*, vol 4: 111.

There are such Plenty of Fish and Fowl ... To say Nothing of the Smelts which we caught here also, which are the biggest that ever I saw or heard of, some of them being no less than 21 Inches long, and eight about.

**13 Jan 1765 (1996)** (Falkland Islands) Byron, Hon. Commodore quoted in Day, Alan Edwin *The Falkland Islands, South Georgia and the South Sandwich Islands. World Bibliographical Series vol. 184* Clío Press, Oxford: 11.

There is but two sorts of fish — the mullet and the smelt.

**1840** (Falkland Islands) Mackinnon, L.B. *Some account of the Falkland Islands, from a six months' residence in 1838 and 1839* A.H. Bailey & Co., London: 44.

A species of smelt is also caught in small quantities, mixed with the boss; they are of the gigantic race of that fish, however, as some were eighteen inches long, and once I found one that measured fairly twenty-two. Why should not Southern America, which is chiefly inhabited by Catholics, be supplied with fish from this neighbourhood, rather than by the long and tedious voyage from Newfoundland and North America?

**1857** (Falkland Islands) Snow, W. Parker *A two years' cruise off Tierra del Fuego, the Falkland Islands, Patagonia, and in the River Plate: a narrative of life in the Southern Seas* Longman, Brown, Green, Longmans and Roberts, London, vol II: 230.

Other kind of fishing might be made profitable at the Falklands, if there was sufficient inducement for the colonists to stir themselves about it. Mullet and smelt, and, I believe, whiting are found, the former in abundance, and the latter tolerably plentiful.

**c1960** Roper, Patrick *Holidays in the Falkland Islands* Falkland Islands Tourist Board, London: 12.

In a few places you may catch our unique species of freshwater fish; 'local trout', *Aplochiton zebra* or one of the three species of smelt (*Galaxias*).

**1994** (1910s–1930s) Rogers, Ellen, quoted in Simpson, Tim *Cooking the Falkland Island way* Peregrine Publishing, Bangor: 16  
It was mostly Mullet or Smelt, the Mullet is much like cod and the Smelt rather like whiting.

### smoko *noun and attrib., esp. Falkland Islands*

[From *Australian English* smoko a tea-break, recorded from 1865 onwards (AND). The term was probably taken to the Falklands by Australian shearers: see 1994 quotation.]

A break at (morning) teatime.

**1925** (Elephant Island) Hurley, Captain Frank *Argonauts of the South* G.P. Putnam's Sons, NY: 261.

After breakfast there is a break of fifteen minutes for a "smoke-o".

**14 May 1982** Smith, John (1984) *74 days: an Islander's diary of the Falklands occupation* Century Publishing, London: 147.

Huge explosion at smoko time, 11.15.

**1994** Simpson, Tim *Cooking the Falkland Island way* Peregrine Publishing, Bangor: 83.

When I was a Settlement Teacher we didn't have a morning 'break', we had Smoko. Here it means a break from work. The term comes from Australia and possibly arrived here with the early sheep farmers and shearing. George Cobb in the 1880s wrote "Smoko is from 10.30 till 11.00 and (during shearing) this is a lull in the proceedings when pipes are lit or re-lit by the hardy perennials, a drink of some kind (beer, if it can be wangled out of the Boss) or, failing that cold coffee, tea or cheaper milk is taken, shears sharpened, and sufficient energy gathered up for a good hour's shearing before lunch."

### smooth time *Tristan da Cunha, also formerly Falkland Islands*

A lull near shore between waves in the sea.

**21 Dec 1811** Lambert, Jonathan in *Blackwood's Edinburgh Magazine* (1818) IV (xxi): 283.

We have no boat, and of course cannot have them so often as we want them [sc. to fish]; but on a kind of raft of six pieces we push off on a smooth time, and take many sheep-head crayfish, gramper, and large mackerel.

**1829** (Falkland Islands) Barnard, Captain Charles H. *A narrative of the sufferings and adventures of Captain Charles H Barnard, in a Voyage Round the World, during the years 1812, 1813, 1814, 1815, & 1816* J Lindon, New York, for the author: 83.

We finished skinning the seals, and carried them to the hauling place, and by means of the rope and the man on the other side, got them safely across this dangerous current. We waited for a smooth time before we crossed, and then two of us plunged into the water.

**1957** (Gough Island) *London Calling* 9 May: 9.

It is the safest beach we found to land on, but you have to wait for a smooth time between the breakers.

### snake plant *Falkland Islands*

[Snake is a translation of the scientific name *serpens*.]

The plant *Nassauvia serpens*, which grows only in the Falkland islands, often on **stone runs**.

**2000** <http://www.falklands-nature.demon.co.uk/publications>, accessed 16 Mar.

The snake plant is quite the most unusual plant in the Falklands. It produces a strong, sweet scent when the plant is in full bloom.

### Snares Islands

The uninhabited Snares Islands are the northernmost of New Zealand's subantarctic islands. They lie about 100 km (60 miles) southwest of Stewart Island, at 48°S, 166°30'E. The volcanic group of 'seven craggy islands' was discovered on 23 November 1791 (see quotation) by British hydrographer George Vancouver, 1757–98, who was sent by the British Admiralty in 1791 to chart the coast of New Holland and Van Diemen's Land. The islands were later also named *Knight's Islands* and *Sunday Islands*. There are two small rocky, peaty islands, some islets and rocks. The group is a protected reserve on which landings are not allowed.

**17 Nov 1829** Morrell, Captain Benjamin (1832) *A narrative of four voyages, to the South Sea [etc.]*. & J. Harper, New York: 365.

"The Snares" ... were first discovered by Vancouver, who gave them a name expressive of their character, as being

very likely to draw the unwary mariner into alarming difficulties.

### Snares black tit *Also Snares Island (tom)tit*

The small black bird *Petroica macrocephala dannefaerdi* (fam. Eopsaltridae), which lives only on the Snares Islands. It is also called a **black tomtit** and **Snares robin**.

**1948** Richdale, L.E. *Wild life on an island outpost. Expedition to The Snares Islands 1947-48* Otago Daily Times and Witness Newspapers, Dunedin: 113.

The Snares Island Tomtit (*Petroica dannefaerdi*) is evenly distributed all over the island. Equally at home in the bush or among the tussocks and rock crevices of the circumference of the island, he is fairly tame. One may approach to within three feet, although with some individuals it is possible to advance much closer ... An interesting point about this Tomtit is that until recently among ornithologists he was always regarded as a Black Robin, the name by which he is known in any of the major books on New Zealand birds.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 72.

[caption] The Snares Island tit is endemic to the main group. — : 75.

The hundreds of thousands of ground-burrowing sea birds emphasise the extreme vulnerability of the Snares if rats should ever get ashore, and this is a problem which has caused great concern in recent years. Just as much at risk are the three species of small land birds, found nowhere else in the world, the Snares black tit, *Petroica macrocephala dannefaerdi*, the Snares fernbird .. and the Snares snipe.

### Snares crested penguin *See Snares penguin*

### Snares fernbird

[Snares fernbird is recorded in New Zealand English (DNZE), also from 1936.]

The bird *Bowdleria punctata caudata* (fam. Muscicapidae), a subspecies of the New Zealand fernbird, which occurs only on the main Snares island. It is a pale to golden brown bird streaked or speckled with brownish-black and it nests on the ground. Sometimes it is simply called a **fernbird**.

**1936** Guthrie-Smith, W.H. *Sorrows and joys of a New Zealand naturalist* AH & AW Reed, Dunedin: 194.

The Snares Fernbird is extremely distinct from other members of the genus *Sphenaeacus*; it is larger, the plumage as near chestnut as brown.

**1948** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* 69(1): 6.

Endemic forms are three in number; the Snares Sernbird [sic] (*Bowdleria punctata caudata* Bullen); the Snares Snipe .. and the Black Tomtit ... The first is a strong sub-species of a New Zealand bird which seems to occupy a wider range of ecological niches at the Snares (where passerine species are so few) than in New Zealand.

**1977** Hornung, Donald S. *Snares Islands expedition: a report submitted to the Department of Lands and Survey, Wellington, 18th April 1977* Department of Zoology, University of Canterbury, Christchurch: 26.

No lice were found on Snares Fernbirds.

**1985** Reader's Digest *Reader's Digest complete book of New Zealand Birds* RD, Sydney: 274.

Snares fernbird larger than mainland forms; more uniform light cinnamon brown plumage; and brownish black streaks on upper surface less pronounced.

### Snares Islander

An inhabitant (perforce, non-human) of the Snares Islands of New Zealand.

**1990** Nagle, Robin *Penguins* Mallard Press, New York: 54.

The Snares Island penguins are found only on the New Zealand island of the same name ... The Snares Islanders look like Fjordland penguins, except they have paler skin around their beaks and they have no stripes on their cheeks.

### Snares Island penguin *See Snares penguin*

### Snares Island snipe *Also Snares snipe*

[Snares (Island) snipe is recorded in New Zealand English (DNZE: quotation below) from 1904.]

The non-migratory landbird *Coenocorypha aucklandica huegeli* (fam. Scolopacidae), which is buff, brown and black and lives only on the Snares group of islands. It is a subspecies of the bird sometimes called the **sub-antarctic snipe**. *See also snipe*.

[1904 [source: DNZE] Hutton & Drummond *Animals NZ*: 218.

The Snare Snipe. *Gallinago huegeli*.]

**1948** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* 69(1): 6.

Endemic forms are three in number .. the Snares Snipe (*Coenocorypha aucklandica huegeli* Tristram); and the Black Tomtit ... The Snipe is one of five races found on outlying islands of New Zealand; their flight is weak and they spend most of their time on the ground.

**1967** Warham, John in *Notornis* XIV(3) Sept: 135.

Snares Island Snipe (*Coenocorypha aucklandica*). The Snares Island race *huegeli* was plentiful.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 75.

The hundreds of thousands of ground-burrowing sea birds emphasise the extreme vulnerability of the Snares if rats should ever get ashore, and this is a problem which has caused great concern in recent years. Just as much at risk are the three species of small land birds, found nowhere else in the world, the Snares black tit, *Petroica macrocephala dannefaerdi*, the Snares fernbird, *Bowdleria punctata caudata*, and the Snares snipe, *Coenocorypha aucklandica huegeli*.

**1995** Department of Conservation [New Zealand] *Draft conservation management strategy — subantarctic islands*. Southland Conservancy Conservation Management Planning series no 6: [23].

Three land birds are endemic: Snares tomtit, Snares fernbird and Snares Island snipe.

### Snares Island (tom)tit *See Snares black tit*

### Snares penguin *Also Snares crested penguin, Snares Island penguin*

[Snares (crested) penguin is recorded in New Zealand English, also from 1948 on.]

The black and white penguin *Eudyptes robustus* (fam. Spheniscidae), which breeds only on the Snares. The adult grows to a height of about 55 cm (22 in), and has a large stout orange bill, and a yellow tuft extending

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

from above its eyes into drooping plumes at the side of the head. It is also known as the **black penguin**. See also **eudyptid penguin**.

[1909 Waite, Edgar R. in Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington: 577.

Though numerous examples of *C. chrysocome* were found breeding at the Snares, the great bulk of the penguins were *C. pachyrhynchus*.]

1948 *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* 69(1): 5.

The colonial Snares Penguin is notably tamer than its geographic representative to the north.

1948 Richdale, L.E. *Wild life on an island outpost: expedition to The Snares Islands 1947-48* Otago Daily Times and Witness Newspapers, Dunedin: 116.

The Snares Island Penguin belongs to that group or genus known as Crested Penguins ... It appears that the Snares bird will have to be given a new name, which will put six species in the genus now containing five.

1953 Oliver, W.R.B. in *The Emu* 53(2) Jun: 187.

The Snares Penguin is thus nameless, and to remedy this I propose the following: *Eudyptes robustus* sp. nov. ... Head jet black, paler on the crown; remainder of upper surface bluish black, each feather having a narrow central streak of pale blue. A rather narrow pale golden yellow band begins near each nostril, passes over the eye and ends in a backwardly and downwardly projecting crest.

1953 (Macquarie Island) Gwynn, A.M. in *The Emu* 53(2) Jun: 151.

Snares Island Penguin (*Eudyptes pachyrhynchus atratus*) A single specimen of this penguin wandered into the ANARE Station on February 5, 1950 ... As the writer was not at the time aware that Falla (1935) had described the Snares Island form as distinct, notes and photographs were considered sufficient to establish the bird's identity and it was released. It was extremely tame and remained on the rocks near the station for two or three days.

1966 MacKenzie, D., ed. *Fog 'N Bog [yearbook of Macquarie Island ANARE overwinterers]* ANARE, Macquarie Island: 35.

The other three Crested penguins occur in the New Zealand area - the Erect crested on Campbell, Bounty and Antipodes Islands; the Snares crested on the Snares Islands (small rocky outcrops) and the Fiordland crested on the south western coast of New Zealand (South Island).

1986 Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 25.

The Snares crested penguin, *Eudyptes robustus*, is slightly stouter, and unique to the Snares. It nests in moderate-sized colonies of up to 300 birds, in muddy clearings in the *Olearia* forest, often long distances from the sea.

1990 Nagle, Robin *Penguins* Mallard Press, New York: 54.

The Snares Island penguins are found only on the New Zealand island of the same name.

## Snares robin

The small black bird *Petroica macrocephala dannefaerdi*: see **Snares black tit**.

1909 Waite, Edgar R. in Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington: 552.

*Miro dannefordi*, Rothschild. (Snares robin.) .. This species was quite common at the Snares, and was met with everywhere among scrub and timber.

1936 Guthrie-Smith, W.H. *Sorrows and joys of a New Zealand naturalist* AH & AW Reed, Dunedin: 194.

The Snares Robin is jet black all over, slender in build and sensibly smaller than the Robins of the mainland.

## snipe

[Special (and extended, in sense 2) use of snipe, recorded since before 1325 for birds of the genus *Gallinago* (NOED).]

Either of two birds of the fam. Scolopacidae formerly hunted as game:

### 1. Falkland Islands

*Gallinago magellanica*, which is mottled brown and black, and paler underneath.

1771 Captain Macbride in Johnson, Samuel (1776) *Thoughts on the late transactions respecting Falkland's Islands. [Bound in] Political tracts Containing, The False Alarm, Falkland's Islands, The Patriot; and, Taxation no Tyranny* W. Strahan and T. Cadell, London: 78.

He allows, however, that those who touch at these islands may find geese and snipe, and in the summer months, wild cellery and sorrel.

23 Mar 1820 de Freycinet, Rose in Bassett, Marnie (1962) *Realms and islands: the world voyage of Rose de Freycinet in the corvette Uranie 1817-1820* Oxford University Press, London: 215.

I feasted on snipe, for our good doctor having learnt that it was a food I enjoyed has been kind enough to kill some for me several times.

16 May 1834 (Berkeley Sound, Falkland Islands) Darwin, Charles (1901) *Journal of researches into the natural history and geology of the countries visited during the voyage round the world of H.M.S. 'Beagle' under command of Captain Fitz Roy, R.N., 2nd edn* John Murray, London: 189.

In the valleys here and there might be seen a small flock of wild geese, and everywhere the ground was so soft that the snipe were able to feed. Besides these two birds there were few others.

1861 Abbott, C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 156.

*Gallinago magellanicus* .. (Snipe.) This Snipe generally appears in East Falkland about the middle of August, and lays very soon after arriving; for I have had my dog point at them on the nest on the 1st of September, and I have taken two eggs on that day. In the nests of this bird I have never seen more than two eggs, although I have frequently found them, and I believe two is the complement. In March they mostly take their departure, although a few stragglers remain all the year round. They make their nests under a tuft of grass, of which material also the nest itself is composed.

1907 *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 17(8): 105.

It shall be unlawful for any person .. to have in his control or possession killed or taken .. between the first day of September in any year and the following fourteenth day of January inclusive any wild bird commonly known as snipe.

1924 Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history* by Rupert Vallentin Clarendon Press, Oxford: 311.

*Gallinago paraguayæ* .. 'Snipe'. Like the preceding species it is a migrant, arriving early in the spring before the snow is off the ground.

1988 Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 178.

Common (Magellan) Snipe *Gallinago (gallinago) paraguayæ* .. Local name: Snipe ... A small ground-loving wader with a very long bill (2-2 in/50-:70 mm), it appears generally sandy-buff with dark markings as it runs low between grasses or diddle-dee.

## 2. NZ subantarctic islands

*Coenocoryphora aucklandica*, subspecies of which are known as the **Antipodes Island, Auckland Island** and **Snares Island snipes**.

**7-8 Mar 1840** (Auckland Islands) Wilkes, Charles in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 423.

No geese were seen, and the only game observed were a few grey ducks, snipe, cormorants, and the common shag. The land birds are excellent eating, especially the hawks, and on the whole it is a very desirable place at which to refit.

**1854** (Port Ross, Auckland Island) Malone, R.E. quoted in Fraser, Conon (1986) *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 197.

We had some good pot-shooting here. Tools [sic] were the most numerous ... two guns have brought down four dozen in a few hours. While there our fellows (the officers) killed 302 toots, 144 wild duck, 12 sea lions, 6 parrots, 2 snipe.

**1875** Sharpe, R.B. in *The Ibis* 5(XIX) Jul: 392.

The Snipe from the Auckland Isles seems to me different in size and colouring.

**1893** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* III(xiii): xi.

In No. IX. of the Bulletin Canon Tristram described a new Snipe from the Snares under the name of *Gallinago huegeli*, and mentioned that the Snipe from Antipodes Island would probably also be new. Having received a specimen from that locality, I find Canon Tristram's surmise to be right, and have much pleasure in naming the species after him *Gallinago tristramis*, Rothschild, sp. n. The new species is nearest in pattern to *G. aucklandica*, Gray, but differs from its three allies in its deeper rufous-brown colour and its much larger size. Under surface brownish buff, with the flanks barred ... *Hab.* Antipodes Island.

**1909** Waite, Edgar R. in Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington: 556.

*Gallinago aucklandica*, Gray. (Snipe.) ... When crossing swampy ground both at the Snares and Auckland Island many snipe were flushed; they run quickly in and out of clumps of fern or tussock, and if hard pressed they rise on the wing, but drop again after labouring a very few yards. It is not impossible for one man to catch them unaided, as I proved, while by using my fish-landing net I had no difficulty in securing a number, though the sport over rough and treacherous ground was not without excitement.

**1976** (Campbell Island, 1894) Kerr, I.S. *Campbell Island: a history* A.H. & A.W. Reed Ltd, Wellington: 58.

The efforts of the scalers yielded only three skins in the next couple of days, but a naturalist with the party had better luck in his sphere. He was an enthusiastic young Norwegian named C. Egeberg Borchgrevink who had, with Bull's approval, persuaded Captain Kristensen to take him on as an extra hand. He made a good collection of plants, eggs and also three "snipe" (probably godwits).

**sno-cat**

[The Tucker Sno-cat is made in Medford, Oregon, US, by the Tucker Sno-Cat Corporation. The name has been recorded in *North American English* from 1946 (NOED).]

A large mechanised vehicle with four independent caterpillar tracks which provide grip in soft snow.

**1957** Sullivan, Walter *Quest for a continent* Secker & Warburg, London: 345.

On January 14, a tractor party set forth to blaze a 600-mile trail to this site [sc. Byrd Station], travelling with one weasel

and two Sno-cats. These were newly developed vehicles, with four sets of treads, each independently articulated and mounted on pontoons, so that if one track broke it could be removed, leaving the pontoon naked to serve as a ski while the vehicle was driven by the other three tracks. The British, French, and American expeditions were all counting heavily on Sno-cats.

**1966** Baum, Allyn *Antarctica: the worst place in the world* Macmillan Co, NY: 118.

The diesel-powered Sno-Cat is between three and eleven tons, depending upon size, and is divided into two sections — the cab for driving, and living quarters, behind the cab, where the two or three men sleep. All the vehicles are painted orange — the best colour for spotting in the polar area.

**1992** Lied, Commander Nils Oscar: *the true story of a husky* Kerr Publishing, Sydney: 143.

Season after season, the men on the Antarctic had been mating the dogs, but with no results. There were no pups. The weasels and sno-cats had become far more efficient, planes were being used more and more frequently, but no base can run without dogs.

**snoek** *Tristan da Cunha*

[The name comes directly from the Afrikaans snoek (from the Dutch snoek pike), used for the same fish in South African English since at least 1811 (DSAfE) and recorded in British English from 1797 (NOED).]

The marine fish *Thyrssites atun* (fam. Gempylidae) which grows to 2 m (6 ft 7 in) long, and is caught and eaten in the waters around Tristan and other islands. It is commercially fished in Australia, New Zealand, South America and South Africa.

**1910** Barrow, K.M. *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 276.

The fish we saw at Tristan were:— .. Snoek (*Thyrssites atun*) [etc.].

**1940** Sivertsen, Erling and Baardseth, Egil in Christopherson, Erling, transl. fr Norwegian by Benham, R.L. *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 67.

In the summer, from December to March, their catch chiefly consists of five-fingers, a tasty fish resembling perch, and snoek, which is rather like our pike in shape and taste.

**1969** Zettersten, Arne *The English of Tristan da Cunha* Lund Studies in English no 37: 107.

Several fish names, such as *snoek* and *klipfish* .. are also due to the contacts with South Africa and South African English.

**1994** Cooper, John and Ryan, Peter G *Management plan for the Gough Island wildlife reserve* Government of Tristan da Cunha, Edinburgh, Tristan da Cunha: 22.

Voluntary minimum size limits of 250 mm for Fivefinger, 600 mm for Snoek and 400 mm for Bluefish in Tristan-Gough waters were set by the fishing company in July 1992.

**snotsicle** *Aust.*

[Formed from the combining of snot + icicle.]

A thread of frozen mucus, suspended from the nose of the owner.

[1954] Giaever, John, transl. fr Norwegian by Huggard, E.M. *The white desert: the official account of the Norwegian-British-Swedish antarctic expedition* Chatto & Windus, London: 86.

Our bearded meteorologist came in with the first icicle under his nose.]

**1997** Gemmell, Nicki *Shiver* Vintage Books, Random House: 213.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

Wesley tests me on the station lingo as we sit in the bus shed by the helipad and wait for the thump of the chopper from the hills to the west. Snotsicles are threads of clear mucus suspended frozen from the nose.

**snow bath** *Also snow shower*

A wash achieved by rubbing snow onto your body.

**12 Aug 1911** (Cape Evans) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912* Blandford Press, London: 163.

Birdie and Atch and I have had snow baths every morning all the winter — they are delightfully refreshing and with our shortage of water they keep one clean which is a great thing.

**1954** Giaever, John, transl. fr Norwegian by Huggard, E.M. *The white desert: the official account of the Norwegian-British-Swedish antarctic expedition Chatto & Windus*, London: 161.

Roer took a snow-bath in the sunshine on December 7. That was a harbinger of good times to come.

**1992** Steger, Will and Bowermaster, Jon *Crossing Antarctica* Alfred A. Knopf, New York: 32.

Keeping ourselves clean is more of a challenge ... Victor has developed a penchant for early-morning snow showers; he goes out barefoot and nude into whatever conditions he finds and scrubs up with snow.

**snow-blind** *adjective*

1. [This usage is apparently restricted to one expedition of Mawson's.]

Characterised by conditions on snow or ice in which it is impossible to distinguish your way clearly, perh. equivalent to a **whiteout**.

**1915** (Nov 1912) Madigan, C.T. in Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911–1914* William Heinemann, London, vol 1: 314.

The light became worse, and the sastrugi indistinguishable. Such a phenomenon always occurs on what we came to call a "snow-blind day."

**1948** (Dec 1914) Mawson, Douglas *Geographical narrative and cartography. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911–14. Scientific reports series A vol 1* Government Printer, Sydney: 148.

Since midday the light had been very bad indeed, "snow-blind" conditions, for the sky became completely overcast with nimbus cloud.

2. Afflicted by **snow blindness**.

**1958** Bursey, Jack *Antarctic night* Longman, Green & Co., London: 87.

"Chris," I said, "I think you are becoming snowblind".

It was the beginning of this painful malady for all of us. Although we put on our snow glasses, they did not ease the flaming hot pain.

**snow blindness**

[Snow-blind(ness) for the same painful inflammation of the eyes, occurs in Canadian English from 1748.]

Impairment of vision resulting from exposure to snow glare, and causing intense pain.

**13 Nov 1908** (nr 79°36') Shackleton, E.H. (1909) *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907–1909* William Heinemann, London: 280.

Snow-blindness is a particularly unpleasant thing. One begins by seeing double, then the eyes feel full of grit; this makes them water and eventually one cannot see at all. All yesterday afternoon, though I was wearing goggles, the

water kept running out of my eyes, and, owing to the low temperature, it froze on my beard.

**1929** Joyce, Ernest E Mills *The South Polar trail* Duckworth, London: 31.

The task was completed despite loss of life, while the great hardships encountered from blizzards, snow-blindness, short rations, scurvy, etc., with the temperature as low as 60° below zero, were almost beyond human endurance.

**snow bow**

A rainbow reflecting the sun's light in snow rather than rain.

**1879** Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 252.

One evening, when there was a very slight fall of snow at the time that there was a brilliant sunset, a snow bow was seen arching high up in the sky. It did not show regularly arranged prismatic colours, but only a uniform bright pinkish yellow hazy light. It was brighter at its lower extremities, like a rainbow.

**18 Feb 1911** Gran, Trygve in McGhie, Ellen-Johanne, transl. fr Norwegian, and Hattersley-Smith, Geoffrey, ed. (1984) *The Norwegian with Scott: Trygve Gran's Antarctic diary 1910–1913* National Maritime Museum, UK: 59.

We bade farewell to our most southerly camp in 25°C of frost, a fresh breeze, and a bad weather sun with a 'snow bow'.

**snow bridge**

An arch of snow spanning a **crevasse**, or occasionally a stream. See also **lid**.

**28 Apr 1898** Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 268.

There are just now too many large fissures covered by soft snow-bridges which are dangerous.

**6 Dec 1908** (83°S) Shackleton, E.H. (1909) *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907–1909* William Heinemann, London: 314.

It was very heavy going, and we camped at 5 P.M. close to a huge crevasse, the snow bridge of which we crossed.

**4 Mar 1947** Walton, E.W. Kevin (1955) *Two years in the Antarctic* Lutterworth Press, London: 113.

The deep crevasse on the edge of the plateau where the high snows start to break away into the head of the glacier is now much wider than before, and the snow bridge over which we will have to cross is very unstable. The sides of the crevasse are smooth and vertical for the first 200 feet and we could not see bottom.

**1965** (Wilkes) Aurora. *The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* June: 3.

The way was barred by a succession of melt streams. These were concealed by snow bridges which made the journey somewhat eventful.

**1992** Steger, Will and Bowermaster, Jon *Crossing Antarctica* Alfred A. Knopf, New York: 47.

I passed over a collapsed snow bridge and a gaping, hundred-foot chasm below.

**snow-bridged** *adjective*

(Of a crevasse) Spanned by a **snow bridge**.

**1930** (South Victoria Land) Byrd, Richard Evelyn in *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 190.

The loads were distributed between the two sleds of a team so that the heaviest, of about 800 pounds, was on the forward

sled, and about 300 pounds on the rear sled. This distribution increased the safety factor in crossing snow-bridged crevasses.

**1949** Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 100.

Most of the crevasses were snow-bridged.

**1990** *Antarctica Sun Times* [McMurdo] IV(viii) 14 Dec: 1.

The D-8, hauling a sled loaded with high explosives, along with two ASA employees, broke through a snow-bridged crevasse.

## snow cloth

A cloth which has snow or ice piled onto it, to anchor a tent.

**1909** Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907-1909* William Heinemann, London: 156.

The tent cloth was thin Willesden duck, with a "snow cloth" of thicker material round the lower edge. This snow cloth was spread out on the ground and snow or ice piled on it.

**1962** (Hut Point, McMurdo Sound, 1914-15) Richards, R.W. *The Ross Sea shore party 1914-17*. Scott Polar Research Institute Special Publication no. 2: 20.

A bamboo mast was lashed near the front of the sledge, and this served to support a sail made by utilizing the large canvas "snow cloth" when the wind was favourable.

## snow gull *Tristan da Cunha*

The bird *Fulmarus glacialisoides*: see **silver-grey petrel**.

**1984** Richardson, M.E. in *Cormorant* 12(2): 179.

Antarctic Fulmar ... A few of the island fishermen know this bird, calling it a "Snow Gull".

## snow mine *South Polar*

A shaft dug in the snow to collect it for water, and/or to study the snow itself.

**1958** (Amundsen-Scott station) *Polar Record* 9(60) Sept: 258.

During winter a "snow mine" was dug from which supplies of snow were hauled for the station's water supply.

**1965** Hedblom, Captain E.E. *Polar manual, 4th edn* US Navy, Bethesda, Maryland: 4.

At the South Pole the temperature in the bottom of the snow mine was -65°F.

## snow mining *adjective*

Referring to the act of collecting snow from a **snow mine**.

**1960** Pape, Richard *Poles apart* Odhams Press Ltd, London: 248.

An intensive and systematic snow-mining programme provides more than 200 gallons of water per day, or about 11 gallons per man.

## snowmobile *noun*

[Snowmobile is also recorded for such a vehicle in *Canadian English* from 1934 (DCanE).]

A caterpillar-tracked or ski-equipped vehicle designed for snow and ice conditions, and used extensively in Antarctica esp. after World War II.

**1930** Byrd, Richard Evelyn in *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 208.

At 4:25 we passed over the snowmobile, abandoned wreck of our experiments to use automotive transportation in Antarctica.

**1963** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(8) Dec: 352.

The stores carried include a new form of Canadian snow vehicle, the Lansing Snowmobile, which is to be used in the southern part of Graham Land by parties from Stonington Island. It is driven by an aircraft propeller and runs on skis. It has been specially developed for travelling on soft snow, and carries six men or an equivalent weight of cargo.

**1994** *New Scientist* 11 Jun: 35.

Once, on an expedition in the Weddell Sea in the Antarctic, one of our snow mobiles plunged through thin ice into the sea. The driver and passengers managed to scramble clear, but we lost over \$10,000 worth of equipment.

## snowmobile *verb*

To travel using a **snowmobile**.

**1992** Steger, Will and Bowermaster, Jon *Crossing Antarctica* Alfred A. Knopf, New York: 22.

Since Shackleton's dream of crossing Antarctica by dogsled was crushed in the ice pack of the Weddell Sea in 1915, Antarctica has been flown over and snowmobiled across, but no one has attempted to venture coast to coast on skis.

**1996** *US News and World Report* 19 Aug: 46.

On a summer day in 1986, the six members of the Antarctic meteorite team, on an R & R jaunt, were snowmobiling in South Victoria Land.

## snow petrel *Also snow-white petrel and snowy petrel*

The bird *Pagodroma nivea* (fam. Procellariidae), which has entirely white plumage, a black bill and black feet. It is seldom seen north of the pack ice, and occurs up to several hundred kilometres inland on the antarctic continent. It breeds on the continent and on islands surrounding it, and is also called the **ice petrel** or **white petrel**.

**Jan 1-4 1775** (Staten Land: 54°46'S, 64°7'W) Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, in the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide 1970, vol II: 205.

When we first saw these birds, we thought they were the snow peterel.

**20 Jan 1820** (nr 68°36'36"S) Bellingshausen, Thaddeus in Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. (1945) *The voyage of Captain Bellingshausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819-1821* Hakluyt Society, London, vol I: 120.

A few snow-white and polar petrels .. flew near the ship.

**1843** Beechey in *The Edinburgh Review* LXXVIII (July): 80.

A beautiful little snow-white peterel [sic], and another species of divers colours, with a few stupid puffins, were the only representatives of the feathered tribes; and these, with two or three species of the whale family, make up nearly the catalogue of living beings found in the dismal, solitary, and frigid region of the South Pole.

**1879** Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 253.

As soon as we reached the ice we fell in with the beautiful snow-white Petrel (*Pagodroma nivea*), which is never to be found far from the antarctic ice.

**25 Feb 1898** Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898-1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 193.

Many snowy petrels follow in the wake of the ship, but they are silent companions, never uttering a song or a cry of

delight or fear, always gliding lightly in the air and dropping easily into the water to seek the pelagic fish, which is their food.

**1 Oct 1904** *The Canterbury Times* [Christchurch] annual: 115.  
The snow petrels flew about in all directions at once, bringing to mind a collection of swallows migrating in the Old Country in October.

**8 Dec 1912** Wild, Frank in Mawson, Douglas *Geographical narrative and cartography. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911–14. Scientific reports series A vol I* Government Printer, Sydney: 255.

Snow Petrels' eggs are almost as large as hen's eggs, and are excellent eating when fresh. Many of ours had been under the birds rather too long, but although they don't look so nice, there is really very little difference in the taste.

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* Duckworth, London: 34.

The most beautiful birds we met with were the Snow petrels which began to appear soon after we entered the pack; they are never found north of the ice. As their name implies, they are — save for their beaks and feet, which are black — white as the driven snows amidst which they live, and are about the size of a dove, with the flight of a swallow.

**1961** Béchervaise, John *The far South* Angus and Robertson, Melbourne: 82.

The snow petrels rise and fall and flutter like blown papers to avoid the arrow-swift flight of the skua.

**1996** (nr Rothera) Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 233.

We sailed on a calm, steely sea, past snowy petrels dancing in the bands of light on the horizon and solitary penguins standing on tabular bergs.

## snowquake

The sudden reverberating collapse or subsidence of an area of snow (see esp. 1993 quotation). See also **ice-quake**.

**12 May 1934** Byrd, Richard E. (1939) *Alone* Reader's Union Ltd and Putnam & Co Ltd, London: 144.

The silence of this place is as real and solid as sound. More real, in fact, than the occasional creaks of the Barrier and the heavier concussions of snow quakes.

**1967** (Plateau: South Pole Station) *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 4(9) Mar: 467.

In October a severe subsidence or snowquake rocked the camp for some four or five seconds, settling the back door about half an inch but causing no other damage. The cause of the subsidence is not known.

**1971** Bertrand, Kenneth J. *Americans in Antarctica* American Geographical Society: 449.

Throughout the night there were rumblings of "snowquakes" beneath, and of many avalanches on nearby mountain slopes.

**1993** Fiennes, Ranulph *Mind over matter: the epic crossing of the Antarctic continent* Sinclair-Stevenson, London: 158.

A mile beyond the Pole we entered a region of snowquakes. Without warning I heard a crashing roar and felt an instant of extreme panic as the solid snow surface under my feet dropped away. Mike later told me he had never experienced such giant quakes as those close to the Pole. When snow builds up into a patch of wind crust several inches thick, whether as big as a sports arena, or merely room-sized, the pressure of even a dog's foot can be enough to trigger a sudden collapse of the whole suspended mass. Never more than ten inches, but enough to petrify the ignorant passer-by and spark off thunderous sound waves for several seconds.

## snow-trac Also *sno-trac*

[The original Snow Trac was developed by Swedish Lars Larsson in the 1950s; the vehicles were manufactured by Västerås Maskiner, Östersund, from 1957 until 1981.]

A mechanised, tracked oversnow vehicle developed in Sweden for use on the deep snow of polar regions.

**1963** *Wilkes Hard Times* 1(9) Oct: 2.

The picture on the front page shows the expedition train as it was finally assembled on the plateau ... On the right, and leading the expedition is the Snow-trac, of Danish manufacture, and specially fitted at Wilkes with magnetic and astro navigating equipment.

**1995** Spence, F.A. in Robinson, Shelagh, ed. *Huskies in harness: a love story in Antarctica* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 41.

As we climbed to the moraine in the Sno-Trac about 1,000 m (3,000 ft) above the base, the engine began to overheat.

## snow-white petrel See *snow petrel*

## snowy noun and attrib.

### A snowy albatross.

**1962** Bailey, Alfred M. and Sorensen, J.H. *Subantarctic Campbell Island* Proceedings no. 10, Denver Museum of Natural History: 140.

Typical Wanderers pair with the so-called Snowies.

**1995** *Nature Australia* 25(1) winter: 37.

[caption] This white or 'snowy' adult [sc. wandering albatross] from South Georgia incubates its egg.

## snowy albatross Also *snow albatross*

[Snowy from the whiteness of the plumage + **albatross**.]

An older, male, whiter-plumaged **wandering albatross**, probably esp. the subspecies *Diomedea exulans chionopectera*, though adult **royal albatrosses** are also mainly white on head, body and upper wings. Sometimes abbrev. to **snowy**.

**1929** *Discovery Reports* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London on behalf of the Government of the Dependencies of the Falkland Islands, vol 1: 564.

Three species are separated by Godman, the Wandering, Snowy and Royal Albatrosses. The observations of the writer in South Georgia show that the Wandering and Snowy Albatrosses are the different ages and sexes of the same species.

**1943** Mawson, Douglas *Macquarie Island: its geography and geology. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911–14. Scientific reports series A vol V* Government Printer, Sydney: 36.

The Snowy or Wandering Albatross (*Diomedea exulans chionopectera*) found nesting on the hills above Caroline Cove.

**1974** Harper, Peter C. and Kinsky, F.C. in *Tuatara* 21(1,2): 16.

The plumage of the Wandering Albatross varies greatly. It ranges from the dark brown plumage (except for white face and mainly white underwing) of the juvenile .. to the nearly pure white appearance of the fully mature male Snowy Albatross.

**1984** Fletcher, Harold *Antarctic days with Mawson: a personal account of the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929–31* Angus and Robertson, London: 69.

Doc had been wandering around on his own and had come across a nest containing a young albatross. Assuming it would be of interest to Falla, he captured the bird and set off for the beach with it in his arms. It was immediately recog-



nised as the young snow albatross Falla and I had seen the previous day and had left in peace.

### snowy sheathbill

The shorebird *Chionis alba*: see **sheathbill**.

**1989** May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica, 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 89.

The snowy sheathbill (*Chionis alba*) is found in the Antarctic Peninsula and islands of the Scotia Arc.

**1996** Soper, Tony and Scott, Dafila *Antarctica: a guide to the wildlife* Bradl Publications, Chalfont St Peter: 87.

Snowy sheathbills are something of a surprise and an enigma, since it is not clear where they fit into the comfortably ordered system devised by Linnaeus.

### snowy petrel See **snow petrel**

### soft camp *Falkland Islands*

[Soft from the relative softness of the damper land + camp.]

Countryside in wetter peaty land, where **white grass** is often the dominant plant. Drier land forms **hard camp**.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 18.

Most of the Falkland Islands surface is covered by plant associations known as oceanic heath. White grass *Cortaderia pilosa* is dominant on damper ground with associated rushes, sedges and mosses where underlying peat is saturated. This 'Soft camp' is inhabited by a few bird species.

**1992** Strange, Ian J. *A field guide to the wildlife of the Falkland Islands and South Georgia* Harper Collins, London: 26.

In general the soils covering the main islands are rather cold and acidic, tending towards a very peaty nature and low fertility. These peat soils vary from shallow, rather hard, dry forms overlying quartzite ridges, to soft black humus-type peat in lower, damper regions. The two types are often referred to as hard and soft 'camp'.

### soft-plumaged petrel

[English ornithologist John Gould gave the scientific name *mollis* soft, because "the under plumage ... is much more dense and soft than that of most members of the group" Ann. Mag. Nat. Hist. (1844) 13: 363, quoted in HANZAB vol 1A.]

The partly to wholly grey-brown seabird *Pterodroma mollis* (fam. Procellariidae). In the southern hemisphere, where it is more numerous than in the northern, it breeds on Tristan da Cunha, Gough, Prince Edward, Marion, the Crozet and Antipodes Islands. It is sometimes called a **nightbird**.

**1848** Gould, John *The birds of Australia* The author, London, vol VII: pl. 50.

*Procellaria mollis*, Gould. Soft-plumaged Petrel. ... Between the 20th and the 50th degrees of south latitude this species flies in the greatest abundance.

**1900** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* X(lxxvii): cvi.

Mr. T. Parkin made some observations on the abundance of bird-life noticed by him in the Southern Oceans. The following is the list of birds obtained during a day's shooting in a calm on December 2nd, 1890, in the Cape Seas, when on a voyage to Australia in the clipper ship 'Sobraon,' South Atlantic Ocean, lat. 39° 51' S., long. 8° 49' E. ... Soft-plumaged Petrels (*Oestrelata mollis*) [etc.].

**31 Jul 1910** (approaching Cape Town) Wilson, Edward in King, H.C.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912* Blandford Press, London: 33.

The Soft Plumaged Petrel (*Oestr. mollis*) is abundant today.

**1954** (Marion Island) Rand, R.W. in *The Ibis* 96(2): 195.

There are two colour-phases of the Soft-plumaged Petrel but the dark phase has seldom been mentioned.

**1971** Bakker, E.M. van Zinderen Sr., Winterbottom, J.M., eds and Dyer, R.A. *Marion and Prince Edward Islands: report on the South African biological and geological expedition 1965-66* A.A. Balkema, Cape Town: 9.

The Soft Plumage Petrel and the Kerguelen Petrel may be separated by ecological barriers.

**1987** National Parks and Wildlife Service, Tasmania *Macquarie Island nature reserve: visitor's handbook* NPWS, Hobart: 21.

Our other species (thin billed prions, grey petrels, soft-plumaged petrels and grey-backed storm petrels) may also be breeding in very small numbers.

### solar pillar Also **sun pillar**

A vertical column of brilliant orange-red light extending skywards above the sun and sometimes also extending below it, caused by refraction on ice-crystals in the atmosphere.

**1958** (Deception Island) *Falkland Islands Dependencies Survey Periodical Report* no 68 (Feb): np.

A strong sun pillar was seen.

**1988** (Casey) Butler, Rowan *Breaking the ice* Albatross Books, Sydney: 76.

The sky was overcast except for a slit along the eastern horizon and from this the huge red beam of a solar pillar shone like a searchlight under the grey clouds.

**1994** *The Sunday Age* [Melbourne] 24 Apr: Agenda 2.

They will see part of the world that very few people are privileged to see; a landscape of snow, ice and wind-scoured rock; of 24-hour daylight and winter nights six weeks long: of penguins, petrels and whales; weird phenomenon like Auroras Australis; solar pillars and thundering katabatic winds. Stillness so profound the only sound you can hear is your heartbeat.

### soldier *Tristan da Cunha, Gough Island*. Also **soldier fish**

[Soldier-fish is recorded in North American use in 1882. Zettersten (1969) records that "Mr. Jim Flint has told me that the name is due to its 'scarlet military uniform' ".]

A red to orange marine fish caught for food around the Tristan da Cunha islands, prob. usually *Helicolenus mouchezi* (fam. Sebastidae) and less often *Sebastichthys capensis*, more commonly called the **jacopewer**. The name **red soldier fish** is also used for these fishes.

**1910** Barrow, K.M. *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 276.

The fish we saw at Tristan were:- Soldier-fish. .. Crawfish.[etc.].

**1940** Sivertsen, Erling and Baardseth, Egil in Christopherson, Erling, transl. fr Norwegian by Benham, R.L. *Tristan da Cunha. the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 67.

There lay a red fish floating on the surface. It bore a striking resemblance to the red-coloured Norway haddock and is called by the natives soldier.

**1958** (Gough Island) Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 118.

On one occasion sixty fair-sized Soldiers and Five-fingers were caught in a little over the hour.

**1965** (Gough Island) Barnard, K.H. in *Annals of the South African Museum* 48(9): 199.

Stomach of Soldier fish.

**1985** (Gough Island) Verrill, G.E. *Transactions of the Connecticut Academy of Arts and Science* 9: 92.

Fish recorded from the inshore waters of Gough Island: .. *Helicolenus mouchezi* Soldier letc.].

### solitary penguin *Obsolete*

[The name probably reflects most of all the paucity of information at the time of use.]

Probably the penguin *Aptenodytes forsteri*: see **emperor penguin**.

**1859** *The Encyclopaedia Britannica, or Dictionary of Arts, Sciences and General Literature, 8th edn* Adam and Charles Black, Edinburgh: 181.

Organized specially to inhabit the chilly Antarctic waste of waters, the almost scaly Penguins resemble the Walrus and Seals in being able to travel long and far beneath the surface of the ocean, in seeking their food in its depths, and in scarcely quitting it except for the purposes of incubation. Indeed one species, the *Solitary Penguin*, carries its egg with it in a fold of skin when it roams far in search of food.

### sooty

Abbreviation of **sooty albatross**.

**7 Feb 1914** (Heard Island) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 246.

Albatrosses — Sooties at first, Wanderers in a few days.

**1922** Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Picador, London: 38.

What aroused still more interest was the capture of several albatross on the lines flowing out over the stern. The first was a 'sooty' (*cornicoides*). We put him down on the deck, where he strutted about in the proudest way, his feet going flop — flop — flop as he walked.

**18 Apr 1942** Sorensen, J.H. *The work journal of J.H. Sorensen, coastwatcher in the "Cape expedition", Campbell Island, 1942-44*. Diary, in possession of NZ Dept of Conservation and Wildlife: 4.

Another two sooties were observed circling later in the day.

**1972** (Macquarie Island) *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Apr: 8.

Keith filmed the paired synchronous flight of the Sooties as they wheeled through a background of sky, sea, beach and cliff beneath us.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 19.

While other albatrosses are predominantly white and black, "sooties" are dark brown and grey, with a striking half circle of white behind the eye.

### sooty albatross *noun and attrib.*

[Sooty from the bird's dark colour, + **albatross**.]

Either of the two species of albatross of the genus *Phoebastria* (fam. Diomedidae), (a) the entirely dark greyish brown *P. fusca*, which is also known on Tristan da Cunha as the **peeo**, or (b) the **light-mantled sooty albatross**. Both birds have a white crescent which almost encircles the eye. The breeding zone of *P. fusca*

overlaps with part of the range of *P. palpebrata* but extends to more northerly subantarctic islands and subtropical islands (Tristan da Cunha, Gough, St Paul and Amsterdam Islands). See also  **dusky albatross**.

**28 Jan 1773** [source: DNZE] Forster (1982) *Resolution Jrnl II*: 220.

We saw a great Variety of bird this day viz. A white & sooty Albatross (*Diomedea exulans & palpebrata*).

**18 May 1840** (Kerguelen Island) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 51.

I returned on board in her at three p.m., bringing with me two young sooty-albatrosses from their nest.

**1848** Gould, John *The birds of Australia* The author, London, vol VII: pl. 44.

*Diomedea fuliginosa*, Gmel. Sooty Albatross ... The whole of the plumage deep sooty grey, darkest on the face, wings and tail; shafts of the primaries and tail-feathers white; eyes very dark greyish brown, surrounded, except anteriorly, by a beautiful mark of white.

**1879** *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: 146.

The birds captured on their nests were destroyed by liberty men from the U.S.S. Monogahela for the sake of their wing-bones and feet (just as the Sooty Albatrosses were by our men), much to the regret of Dr Kidder and the American Astronomers.

**1905** Scott, Captain Robert F. *The voyage of the 'Discovery'* Macmillan and Co, London: 77.

In the older accounts of voyages it is often difficult to recognise the birds referred to; for instance, the term 'Eglet' seems to have been applied to various species. But the 'Wanderer,' 'Sooty,' 'Cape Hen,' 'Cape Pigeon,' 'Giant Petrel,' and many others are survivals which the ordinary man still prefers to employ in preference to the scientific designation. It was the shooting of 'Sooty' albatross by one Simon Hartley in Shelvocke's voyage that supplied the theme immortalised in the 'Ancient Mariner.'

**1936** (Auckland Islands) Guthrie-Smith, H. *Sorrows and joys of a New Zealand naturalist* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Dunedin: 205.

It was hereabouts, too, that I first beheld the Sooty Albatross, a species once known impossible to confuse with any other ... The first nest reached, we found ourselves in the presence of a Sooty chick, five or six weeks old.

**1971** Bakker, E.M. van Zinderen Sr., Winterbottom, J.M., eds and Dyer, R.A. *Marion and Prince Edward Islands: report on the South African biological and geological expedition 1965-66* A.A. Balkema, Cape Town: 165.

The typical Sooty Albatross habitat is a well vegetated cliff or steep slope directly above the sea.

**1985** *Geo* 7(4) Dec 85-Feb 86: 101.

Sooty albatrosses .. give vent to loud screams as they launch themselves from their cliff-edge nests.

### sooty shearwater

[Sooty from the bird's brownish-black colour. The name sooty shearwater was recorded in 1872 in North America.]

The seabird *Puffinus griseus* (fam. Procellariidae) which nests in burrows. It breeds in the Falkland Islands, southern South America, islands off Australia and NZ including its subantarctic islands, and Macquarie Island. The bird migrates across the Equator annually in the Pacific and Atlantic Oceans. It is also called a **muttonbird**.

**1926** Royal Australasian Ornithologists' Union *Official checklist of the birds of Australia* RAOU: 12.

*Puffinus (Neonectris) griseus*. – Sooty shearwater.

**1938** *National Geographic* LXXIV(2) Aug: 240.

Sooty Shearwater (*Puffinus griseus*) .. Here we have a petrel that is unique in being abundant throughout the length of the oceans on both sides of the Americas, from the latitude of Cape Horn northward to sub-arctic fishing grounds.

**1960** Westerskov, Kaj *Birds of Campbell Island*. Wildlife Publication no. 61, Wildlife Division, New Zealand: 17.

One of the most interesting observations made by Filhol [sc. 1840s] is that the sooty shearwater then nested in thousands on Campbell Island. He says they found the nesting burrows everywhere and gives interesting details and observations. Today shearwaters are certainly not numerous breeders on this island although they still nest there.

**1982** Hosking, Eric and Sage, Bryan *Antarctic wildlife* Croom Helm, London: 109.

The Sooty Shearwater *Puffinus griseus* .. only just qualifies as an antarctic breeding bird by virtue of the fact that it nests on Macquarie Island.

## South Often as the South

**Antarctica**, and the **antarctic regions**. See also **go South**.

**1901** Borchgrevink, C.E. (1980) *First on the Antarctic continent: being an account of the British Antarctic Expedition 1898–1900* C. Hurst and Co., London/Australian National University Press, Canberra: 189.

He [sc. Hansen] had felt more moved when he had been saying good-bye at home in Norway when leaving with me for the South than now when he was about to leave this world for ever.

**1909** Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907–1909* William Heinemann, London: 39.

We all looked forward eagerly to our coming venture, for the glamour of the unknown was with us and the South was calling.

**1966** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] June: 9.

Similar to the hand-warmers which we have already sent South (with mixed success), these heaters have a platinum mesh catalyst.

## southern aurora

The southern lights: see **aurora australis**.

**1777** [source: NOED] Forster, G. *Voy. round World* vol I: 116.

The stars were sometimes hid by .. these southern lights (*aurora australis*).

**4 Mar 1820** (nr 60°49'S, 82°22'E) Bellingshausen, Thaddeus in Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. (1945) *The voyage of Captain Bellingshausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819–1821* Hakluyt Society, London: 148.

During the night the wind continued to blow in sharp gusts with an extremely heavy snowfall, but as soon as the snow ceased to fall, the southern aurora showed in all its magnificence and brightness, quite different from that which we had seen the previous night. The whole vault of the heavens except 12° or 15° from the horizon was covered with bands of rainbow colour which, with the rapidity of lightning, traversed the sky in sinuous lines from south to north, shading off from colour to colour.

## southern auroral zone

The **auroral oval**.

**1959** *Polar Record* 9(63) Sept: 598.

Special studies should be made on whistlers and very low frequency emissions, absorption and scatter and low-level echoes which may be peculiar to the southern auroral zone or polar cap.

## southern black-backed gull

The seabird *Larus dominicanus*: see **dominican gull**.

**1875** Kidder, J.H. *Contributions to the natural history of Kerguelen Island, made in connection with the American Transit-of-Venus expedition, 1874–75. 1. Ornithology* Government Printing Office, Washington: 13.

*Larus dominicanus*, Vieill. Southern Black-Backed Gull ... These very handsome gulls were seen first in Table Bay in July, and afterwards near the Crozet Islands. They are readily recognized by the broad, white, fringe-like band along the free edge of the wings. At Kerguelen they were very plentiful, breeding upon the island.

**1906** (South Orkneys) Eagle Clarke, W. in *The Ibis* 6(XXI) Jan: 179.

The Southern Black-backed Gull was one of the few species that was observed all the year round, for some of them braved the severities of the winter, and were seen more or less frequently in the neighbourhood of the Expedition's winter-quarters at Scotia Bay.

**1943** Mawson, Douglas *Macquarie Island: its geography and geology. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911–14. Scientific reports series A vol V* Government Printer, Sydney: 37.

The Southern Black-back Gull (*Larus dominicanus*) frequents the Island all the year round. It inhabits the shoreline but is occasionally found swimming on the lakes of the highlands.

**1963** Kinsky, F.C. in *Records of the Dominion Museum* 4(14) Mar: 153.

The Southern Black-backed Gull, the only large gull of New Zealand, has one of the most extensive breeding ranges of any seabird, encircling the globe throughout a broad belt within the Southern Hemisphere ... It also breeds on most of the outlying islands, such as the Chatham Islands, and on subantarctic islands such as Campbell, Antipodes, Bounty, and Macquarie Islands ... It breeds on most of the southern Islands of the South American sector, including the Falkland, South Georgia, South Shetland, South Orkney, and the South Sandwich Islands. It is only an irregular visitor to Tristan da Cunha ... but is a regular breeding bird on Gough Island ... In the South Indian Ocean the Southern Black-backed Gull is a regular breeding bird on Marion Island .. on Crozet Island .. on Heard Island .. and on Kerguelen Island .. but not on Amsterdam Island.

**1979** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XIV (Jun): 9.

The following are designated [sc. for the purposes of this treaty, Agreed measures for Conservation of Antarctic Fauna and Flora] native birds: Gull: Southern Black-backed *Larus dominicanus*.

**1980** Parmelee, David F. *Bird Island in antarctic waters* University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis: ix.

Only a single species of gull breeds in far southern latitudes, but it is known by at least three English names — southern black-backed, kelp, or Dominican gull. Since the last name is generally recognized, I will use that one.

## southern bottlenose whale

The whale *Hyperoodon planifrons*: see **bottlenose whale**.

**1901** Lydekker, R. in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual. for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 206.

Some, like the pigmy whale and the southern bottle-nose, are peculiar to the seas of the Southern Hemisphere, but none appear to be exclusively denizens of the circumpolar ocean.

**1989** May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica, 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 105.

The southern bottlenose whale has a distinctive "melon" lump on its bulbous head, which contains oil. It reaches 7 m (23 ft) or more in length and weighs 3 to 4 tonnes.

**1996** Soper, Tony and Scott, Dafila *Antarctica: a guide to the wildlife* Bradt Publications, Chalfont St Peter: 129.

Southern bottlenose whales occur in pods of a few animals or as lone individuals.

## southern continent

### Antarctica.

**1744** Harris, John, quoted in Balch, Edwin Swift (1902) *Antarctica* Allen, Lane & Scott, Philadelphia: 61.

There is wanting to the eye a Southern Continent in order to give one side of the globe a resemblance to the other ... the next is, that experience confirms this notion; the Fowls, the Winds, the Currents, the Ice, beyond Cape Horn, all confirm this opinion, that there is land towards the Southern Pole.

**6 Feb 1775** (58°15'S, 21°34'W) Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, in the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970): vol II: 231.

The greatest part of this southern continent (supposing there is one) must lie within the polar circle, where the sea is so pestered with ice that the land is thereby inaccessible. The risque one runs in exploring a coast, in these unknown and icy seas, is so very great, that I can be bold enough to say that no man will ever venture farther than I have done; and that the lands which may lie to the South will never be explored. Thick fogs, snow storms, intense cold, and every other thing that can render navigation dangerous, must be encountered; and these difficulties are greatly heightened, by the inexpressibly horrid aspect of the country; a country doomed by Nature never once to feel the warmth of the sun's rays, but to lie buried in everlasting snow and ice.

**1820** Miers, John in *Edinburgh Philosophical Journal*, quoted in *Polar Record* (1950) 5(40) Jul: 565.

During my last visit to Santiago, to convey A[dmiral] and Lady Clochrane] to Valparaiso, I employed my first leisure hours in drawing up the following paper. I shall introduce the detail in regular order, previously hinting my opinion that a large Southern Continent is about to be discovered.

**11 Jan 1841** McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 152.

The latitude at noon was 71°14'45" and longitude 171°15", consequently we are now beyond Captain Cook's farthest, and have discovered a new land, of so extensive a range of coastline, attaining such an altitude, as to justify, from its general aspect, the appellation of a "Southern Continent".

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: vii.

The earth, elsewhere, cannot contain any land-mass approaching the size of the Southern Continent; the Arctic *incognita* is not one-half its area.

**1939** Ellsworth, Lincoln in *National Geographic* LXXVI(1) Jul: 134.

[caption] After fighting its way through pack ice for 65 days, the *Wyatt Earp* emerged into open water and soon sighted the southern continent dead ahead.

**1998** *Weekend Australian* 28 Feb–1 Mar, suppl: 7.

If Antarctica melted, the world's oceans would rise 65 metres. The southern continent needs to be treated with care, and not just because of its latent potential for global destruction. Antarctica can still offer a blank canvas against which to judge man's impact on the world's environment.

## southern elephant seal

The seal *Mirounga leonina*, the largest seal in the world. It is more often simply called an **elephant seal**, or **sea elephant**.

**1902** Beddard, Frank Evers *Mammalia. The Cambridge Natural History* vol X Macmillan and Co, London: 454.

The nose of the male has a dilatable proboscis. The southern Elephant Seal is *Macrorhinus leoninus*, and reaches a length of some 20 feet. It occurs on the shores of Kerguelen and some other more or less remote islands. Its habits have been studied and described by several observers, beginning with Anson in the last century ... The inflated region ... is about 1 foot long in an individual of 17 feet.

**1940** Bertram, G.C.L. *The biology of the Weddell and crabeaters seals, with a study of the comparative behaviour of the Pinnipedia. BGLE 1934-37 scientific reports* vol 1 (no 1), British Museum (Natural History), London: opp. 134.

*Mirounga leonina* Southern Elephant Seal. Subantarctic ... Controlled killing of adult bulls for blubber at South Georgia c. 5,500 per year. Scarce over remainder of range due to hunting in last century.

**1966** (Davis station) Lugg, D.I. *Journal of Mammalogy* 47(2) May: 319.

These sandy areas are also the habitat of the southern elephant seal, *Mirounga leonina* (L.), which breeds on the subantarctic islands.

**1985** Bonner, W. Nigel in Bonner, W.N. and Walton, D.W.H., eds *Key environments: Antarctica* Pergamon Press, Oxford: 203.

The southern elephant seal, *Mirounga leonina*, occurs around the southern part of South America, on the Falkland Islands, Gough Island, the Prince Edward Islands, Macquarie Island, and on the sub-Antarctic islands of New Zealand, as well as on the oceanic islands south of the Antarctic Convergence.

## southern fulmar noun and attrib.

The oceanic bird *Fulmarus glacialis*: see **silver-grey petrel**.

**1905** Scott, Captain Robert F. *The voyage of the 'Discovery'* Macmillan and Co, London: 78.

During our short visit to the ice in November ... we saw and captured the Southern Fulmar, a beautiful bluish-grey petrel.

**7 Dec 1910** (61°S, 179°E) Wilson, Edward (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912* Blandford Press, London: 71.

We had the following birds with us today: *Diomedea melanophris*, The Black-browed Albatross. Adults. ... *Prion* sp. Whale birds in large flocks. *Priocella glacialis*, one only — the Southern Fulmar.

**1915** (Haswell Island, Nov-Dec 1912) Jones, S.E. in Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911-1914* William Heinemann, London: 118.

The silver-grey or Southern Fulmar petrels were present in large numbers, especially about the steep north-eastern side of the island.

**16 Feb 1968** Scott, Peter (1983) *Travel diaries of a naturalist: Australia, New Zealand, New Guinea, Africa, the Galapagos islands, Antarctica and the Falkland Islands* Collins, London: 265.

The Silver Grey (Southern) Fulmar was also there in numbers — extraordinarily gull-like in flight.

**1990** Marchant, S. and Higgins, P.J., co-ordinators *Handbook of Australian, New Zealand and Antarctic birds* Oxford University Press, Melbourne, vol 1A: 376.

*Fulmarus glacialisoides* Southern Fulmar ... Epithet 'Southern' preferred because it provides a better contrast with Northern Fulmar (*pace* Fisher 1952) than does 'Antarctic', *glacialis* not being truly Arctic species. British literature now proposes Northern Fulmar for *glacialis*. 'Petrel' inappropriate and not informative for species of fulmar.

### southern fur seal

[Southern has been both a scientific and common name, being given as the scientific name australis.]

Any **fur seal** of the southern hemisphere including, but not only, the **Falkland Island seal**.

**1879** Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 129.

The term "clap match" given to the female southern fur seal by the sealers is the name originally given by the Dutch to the hooded seal.

**1943** Mawson, Douglas *Macquarie Island: its geography and geology. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911-14. Scientific reports series A vol V* Government Printer, Sydney: 39.

The Southern Fur Seal still exists in small numbers at Bouvet Island, in the region to the south of the Atlantic Ocean

**1964** Jenkins, Geoffrey *A grue of ice* Fontana Books, London: 180.

He did not, like the common Southern fur seal, turn his flippers forward when he walked, and I was surprised that he did not slip on the wet rocks since the underside of his flippers were covered in softest down.

**1991** Wenzel, George *Animal rights, human rights: ecology, economy and ideology in the Canadian Arctic* Belhaven Press, London: 42.

By the beginning of this century, a dozen species of pinnipeds .. had been hunted to near extinction. Notable were the southern and northern fur seals (respectively, *Arctcephalus australis* and *gazella* and *Callorhinus ursinus*).

### southern gentoo penguin

The penguin *Pygoscelis papua ellsworthii* (fam. Spheniscidae), which grows to about 70 cm (2 ft 4 in) in height. It breeds on the Antarctic Peninsula to about 65° S, and on the South Shetland, South Orkney and South Sandwich Islands. Both northern and southern subspecies are usually simply called **gentoo penguins**.

**1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 99.

[caption] Southern gentoo penguin nesting on the bare gravel beaches of the South Shetland Islands.

**1989** May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica, 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 93.

The southern gentoos .. are smaller, lighter and have shorter feet, flippers and bills than the northern gentoos.

### southern giant petrel *Also southern giant fulmar*

[The southern giant petrel occurs further south, and also slightly further north, than the northern giant petrel, but it breeds considerably further south.]

The large, scavenging seabird *Macronectes giganteus* (fam. Procellariidae) which is more often simply called a **giant petrel**.

**1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 88.

Southern giant petrels colonize flat ground on some of the continental islands.

**1975** (Marion Island) Berruti, A. and others in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* no. 5: 50.

Thirty-four birds — 32 Wandering Albatrosses and two Southern Giant Petrels — were recovered or controlled (i.e. released alive) one year or more after ringing.

**1988** Porter, Eliot *Antarctica, 2nd edn* Arch Cape Press, NY: 141.

The giant petrels — also, and more correctly, known as southern giant fulmars — successfully hold their own against predation by the skuas.

**1993** Antarctic Division 1993-98 ANARE research support plan with key information for planning proposals for the 1993-98 Antarctic research programs [Australian] Antarctic Division: 18.

Access is also restricted to Hawker Island where there is Antarctica's southern-most colony of southern giant petrels.

### southern lights

The **aurora australis**.

**15 Mar 1773** Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, in the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970): 64.

We were now in the latitude of 59°17' South, longitude 140°12' East, and had such a large hollow swell from W.S.W., as assured us that we had left no land behind us in that direction. I was also well assured that no land lay to the South on this side 60° of latitude. We had a smart frost during the night, which was curiously illuminated with the southern lights.

**2 Apr 1911** (Hut Point) Gran, Trygve, transl. fr Norwegian by McGhie, Ellen-Johanne, ed. Hattersley-Smith, Geoffrey (1984) *The Norwegian with Scott: Trygve Gran's Antarctic diary 1910-1913* National Maritime Museum, UK: 74.

There was a wonderful display tonight of Southern Lights. The sky to the southeast seemed full of organ pipes. I stood outside the hut for a long time and stared up towards the tongues of flame, and my thoughts flew home to days gone by.

**1954** Gjaever, John, transl. fr Norwegian by Huggard, E.M. *The white desert: the official account of the Norwegian-British-Swedish antarctic expedition* Chatto & Windus, London: 184.

Early in March the first southern lights began to show.

**1964** Jenkins, Geoffrey *A grue of ice* Fontana Books, London: 73.

"The Southern Lights, the most spectacular of many wonderful sights in the Southern Ocean."

**1993** Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 198.

The Maori people of New Zealand call this display *Tahu-Nut-A-Rangi*, 'the great burning of the sky', but it is better known elsewhere as aurora australis or the southern lights. It is caused by charged particles in the sun's powerful solar wind entering the Earth's atmosphere and interacting with the Earth's magnetic field to cause enormous electrical storms. In the Antarctic's black winter sky, the southern lights can be brighter than the moon.

### southern merganser

The extinct wildfowl *Mergus australis*: see **Auckland Island merganser**.

**1901** *The Ibis* 1(III) Jul: 524.

The specimens of birds collected by the Earl of Ranfurly, Governor of New Zealand, during several trips round the outlying islands under his jurisdiction .. have now been received at the British Museum. They were preserved in formaline, but have been very successfully converted into skins. Besides two Southern Mergansers (*Mergus australis*) and the

Flightless Duck (*Nesonetta aucklandica*), there are examples of a new Cormorant.

**1909** Waite, Edgar R. in Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington: 584.

*Merganser australis*, Hombron and Jacquinot. (Southern merganser.) .. A sharp look-out was kept along the shores of the Auckland Islands for this bird, but it was not recorded as having been seen.

## Southern Ocean

The ocean surrounding the **antarctic continent**, and extending northward to meet the Indian, Pacific and South Atlantic Oceans. The subtropical front is the usual northern limit of the Southern Ocean. It is also called the **Antarctic Ocean** or **circumpolar ocean**.

**14 Feb 1700** (40°55'S) Halley, in Dalrymple, Alexander (1775) *A collection of voyages chiefly in the Southern Atlantick Ocean* Printed for the author, London: 39.

The Thermometer is this day no higher than it was in the Latitude of 49° on the 24th past. It is evidently colder to the eastern Part of this Southern Ocean than near the coast of America.

**23-26 Feb 1775** (nr 58°15'S, 21°34'W) Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, in the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970), vol II: 239.

I had now made the circuit of the Southern Ocean in a high latitude, and traversed it in such a manner as to leave not the least room for the possibility of there being a continent, unless near the pole, and out of the reach of navigation.

**1848** Gould, John *The birds of Australia* The author, London, vol VII: pl. 43.

Black-eyebrowed Albatros ... may be regarded as the most common species of Albatros inhabiting the southern ocean.

**1959** Baker, A. de C. in *The Discovery Reports* Cambridge University Press, London, vol. XXIX: 314.

The Southern Ocean consists of a continuous circumpolar belt of deep water in which the environment is more or less uniform from east to west and in which changes take place from north to south.

**1983** *Australian Fisheries* Jul: 10.

The Southern Ocean is characterised by near-freezing air temperatures, very strong winds and high seas.

**1999** Briery, Andrew and Reid, Keith *New Scientist* no 2182 (17 Apr): 38.

South Georgia lies south of the Antarctic polar front which defines the limits of the cold Southern Ocean.

## southern right whale

The whale *Eubalaena australis* (fam. Balaenidae) which feeds in antarctic waters in summer, and moves into subantarctic and temperate waters to calve in winter. Its range is from about 20 to 55°S.

Its numbers were greatly reduced by hunting in the early nineteenth century and into the twentieth century — some 1200 were killed around Tristan da Cunha in 1961, though it has been protected worldwide since 1935. It is also called the **black (right) whale** and, most commonly, simply the **right whale**.

**1902** Beddard, Frank Evers *Mammalia. The Cambridge Natural History* vol X Macmillan and Co, London: 359.

The southern Right Whale, *B. australis*, is world-wide in distribution, avoiding only the Arctic regions. Where the Greenland Whale is found *B. australis* does not exist.

**15 Jan 1909** Barrow, K.M. (1910) *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 257.

The ship was a whaler melting the blubber of a whale caught the night before. They had on deck the half of the head, inside of which men were digging with spades — which gives an idea of its size. The whale in Tristan waters is the Southern Right Whale.

**1930** Rudmose Brown in L.C. Bernacchi, ed. *The polar book: produced for the British Polar Exhibition 1930* E. Allom & Co Ltd, London: 79.

Americans were also active early in the nineteenth century in hunting the southern right whale (*Balaena australis*) in South Georgia, Kerguelen and other southern islands, and took the place of the earlier British and Spanish whalers that had used the Falkland Islands harbours.

**1942** Mackintosh, N.A. in *Polar Record* 3(24) Jul: 555.

The North Atlantic Right Whale, and its counterpart in the southern hemisphere, the Southern Right .. appear to move north or south according to the seasons. Little is known of their breeding habits but it is believed that in the Southern and North Atlantic Right whales the rates of breeding and growth do not differ very much from those of the Rorquals.

**1982** Barnes, James N. *Let's save Antarctica!* Greenhouse Publications, Melbourne: 17.

Southern right whales were protected in 1931.

**1992** *Golden Wing [Australia]* no 84 (June): 46.

The winter migration of eastern humpback and southern right whales has begun. Coastal bays in Victoria, Queensland and South Australia are ideal points to see the giants of the sea as they leave the Antarctic in May and head for warmer waters in Australia to breed — one of only four major breeding grounds in the world.

## southern right whale dolphin

[From the southern right whale, which also lacks a dorsal fin.]

The little-known dolphin *Lissodelphis peronii* (fam. Delphinidae), which occurs circumpolarly but generally not south of the **antarctic convergence**. It is a black and white dolphin growing to at least 2.5 m (8 ft) long, and is the only southern hemisphere dolphin without a dorsal fin.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 410.

*Lissodelphis peronii* .. Southern rightwhale dolphin ... Black above, white below, the white extending over snout ... A northern circumpolar pelagic species, occurring mainly north of the Antarctic Convergence in the West Wind Drift.

**1990** Martin, Anthony R. *Whales and dolphins* Bedford Editions, London: 165.

Southern right whale dolphins are slender, though perhaps not quite as slim as the northern species.

## southern rorqual

Any of the baleen whales of the southern hemisphere: see **balaenopterid**.

**28 Jan 1841** (prob nr 71°56'S, 171°7') McCormick, Robert in *Tasmanian Journal of Natural Science* (1842) 1(iv): 247.

Whales, apparently the Southern Rorqual, were here very numerous, spouting in all directions; and many seals and penguins were seen on the ice.

**1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 132.

Southern rorquals migrate south into Antarctic waters each spring, arriving thin and hungry after several months of poor feeding in subtropical waters.

### southern royal albatross

The more southerly breeding of the two subspecies of **royal albatross**, *Diomedea epomophora epomophora* (occas. known as an **epomophora**). This large albatross breeds mainly on New Zealand's subantarctic Campbell Island.

**1960** Westerskov, Kaj *Birds of Campbell Island* Wildlife Publication no. 61, Wildlife Division, New Zealand: 46.

Campbell Island is the main breeding ground in the world for the southern royal albatross — a few pairs breed on the Auckland Islands.

**1974** Harper, Peter C. and Kinsky, F.C. in *Tuatara* 21 (1,2): 17. Royal Albatross .. Two subspecies: Southern Royal Albatross (*Diomedea epomophora epomophora*), Northern Royal Albatross (*D. e. sanfordi*) ... The southern race nests on Auckland and Campbell Islands.

### southern sea lion

The sea lion *Otaria byronia* (also known as *O. flavescens*, fam. Otariidae), of coastal South America and the Falkland Islands. The male is much larger than the female, and has a massive, thick-haired head and neck.

**1940** Bertram, G.C.L. *The biology of the Weddell and crabeaters seals, with a study of the comparative behaviour of the Pinnipedia. BGLE 1934-37 scientific reports vol 1 (no 1)* British Museum (Natural History), London: 21.

This tentative conclusion may be compared with Hamilton's finding for the Southern Sea Lion ... In some of the Eared seals (e.g. Southern Sea Lion ..), the female and pup may keep company even for a year.

**1993** Chater, Tony *The Falklands* The Penna Press, St Albans: 124.

When Bob was born in 1926, an estimated 400,000 Southern Sealion lived around Falkland coasts, a hundred times more than today's total herd.

### southern skua

The seabird *Catharacta (skua) antarctica*: see **antarctic skua**.

**1910** Barrow, K.M. *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 275.

The Sea-hen, Southern Skua (*Stercorarius antarcticus*). Is in all the year, begins to lay in August.

**1943** Mawson, Douglas *Macquarie Island: its geography and geology. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911-14. Scientific reports series A vol V* Government Printer, Sydney: 36.

The Southern Skua (*Catharacta skua lonnbergi*) is a resident during the larger part of the year, but departs north in winter absenting itself for several months.

**1960** (Gough Island) Holdgate, M.W. in *Proceedings of the Linnean Society, London* 172: 13.

The remains of victims of the Southern Skua (*Catharacta skua*) were common.

**1993** *Geo [Australasia]* 15(1) Feb-Apr: 20.

The south-polar skua *Catharacta maccormackii* is ... nearly identical in appearance to the southern skua, *C. antarcticus*, which is common in Australian waters.

### southern spider crab

The reddish crab *Jacquintotia edwardsii* (fam. Majidae) of New Zealand's subantarctic islands and southern New

Zealand. It has occasionally been fished and marketed as crabmeat. The body grows to about 22 cm (10 in.).

**1970** Ritchie, L.D. *New Zealand Marine Dept Fisheries Technical Report* 52: 82.

*J. edwardsii*, a brachyuran or true crab, has been called Antarctic Islands crab, New Zealand Giant crab, Giant crab, and southern spider crab. It is proposed here to establish a common name which precludes confusion with other crabs and is geographically meaningful without being too restrictive, viz. southern spider crab.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 36.

A well camouflaged southern spider crab stirs the marine silt for food, at Campbell Island. These crabs are also common in shallow waters at the Auckland Islands.

### southern stone crab

The crab *Lithodes murrayi* (fam. Lithodidae), which is circumpolar, occurring in the Ross Sea, and around the Prince Edward, Crozet and Macquarie Islands, southern New Zealand and Chile, and the Falkland Islands.

**1963** Dell, R.K. *Native crabs* Reed, Wellington: 62.

*Lithodes murrayi* Southern stone crab.

**1970** Ritchie, L.D. *New Zealand Marine Dept Fisheries Technical Report* 52: 82.

*Lithodes murrayi* ... is an anomuran or half-crab related to the hermit crabs and is characterized by only three pairs of walking legs and an asymmetrical abdomen. This crab is known as the southern stone crab.

### southern whale fishery Hist.

The whaling grounds of the subantarctic and antarctic latitudes; the industry based therein.

**17 Jan 1789** Samuel Enderby and Sons, letter quoted in Dakin, William John (1938) *Whalemen adventurers: the story of whaling in Australian waters and other Southern Seas Related Thereto*. 2nd edn Angus & Robertson, Sydney: xviii.

We have 2 ships of 300 tons each of which we are beginning to fit for the Southern Whale Fishery.

**1806** Barrow, John *A voyage to Cochinchina, in the years 1792 and 1793* Oxford University Press facs, Kuala Lumpur (1975): 139.

It was indeed once proposed, by a set of adventurers, to form an establishment on this island, in order to carry on a convenient smuggling trade .. employing, at the same time, their shipping in the Southern Whale Fishery, in order to procure oil and bone as a return cargo for Europe.

**1849** Enderby, Charles *The Auckland Islands: a short account of their climate, soil, & production; and the advantages of establishing there a settlement at Port Ross for carrying on the southern whale fisheries* Pelham Richardson, London: 25.

This little group is singularly adapted .. to assist the revival of a most important, though at present to all appearances moribund, department of British industry, the southern whale fishery.

### south geographic pole Also south geographical pole

The **South Pole** (sense 1).

**7 Sept 1953** Falla, R.A. in Helm, A.S. and Miller, J.H. (1964) *Antarctica: the story of the New Zealand party of the Trans-Antarctic expedition* R.E. Owen, Government Printer, Wellington: 44.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

No observations have yet been made at the South Geographical Pole, the South Magnetic Pole or the South Geomagnetic Pole.

**1975** McPherson, John G. *Footprints on a frozen continent* Hicks Smith & Sons, Sydney: 19.

Shackleton was determined to return to Antarctica and more particularly to make an attempt at both the South Geographical and South Magnetic Poles.

### south geomagnetic pole

The central southern point of the earth's magnetic field: the point on the earth's surface at which its magnetic field lines converge. The north and south geomagnetic poles define the magnetic dipole axis of the earth, and are opposite each other. The south geomagnetic pole is — like the north geomagnetic pole — also simply called the **geomagnetic pole**.

**7 Sept 1953** Falla, R.A. in Helm, A.S. and Miller, J.H. (1964) *Antarctica: the story of the New Zealand party of the Trans-Antarctic expedition* R.E. Owen, Government Printer, Wellington: 44.

No observations have yet been made at the South Geographical Pole, the South Magnetic Pole or the South Geomagnetic Pole.

**1957** *Ross Sea Committee, Trans-Antarctic Expedition: newsletter* [Wellington] no 16 (1 June): 4.

The auroral belt is a strip approximately 600 miles wide describing a rough circle centred not on the South Geographical Pole nor yet on the South Magnetic Pole, even though it is now known that there is a close tie up between magnetic phenomena and auroral activity. This auroral ring centres on the South Geomagnetic Pole which is a theoretical focus of the earth's magnetic field as apart from the point of maximum dip which is the Magnetic Pole proper.

**1996** *Polar Whispers. News of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 8 (Sept): 1.

The Magnetic South Pole, lying separate to the geographic pole and influencing the terrestrial magnetism of the Southern Hemisphere, was always regarded as very significant ... The South Geomagnetic Pole is the least known. It is the pole calculated from the Earth's magnetic field, which for some unknown reason, doesn't happen to coincide with the actual South Magnetic Pole (or the point towards which compass needles point once Antarctica is approached), but lies a great distance from it within Wilkes Land.

### South Georgia

The island of South Georgia lies about 1930 km (1200 miles) east of the Cape Horn, at 54°30'S, and 36–38°W. It was sighted by Englishman Anthony de la Roche in 1675. The first to record landing there was Captain James Cook, who took possession on 17 January 1775, and named it the Isle of Georgia after the ruling British monarch ('This land I called the Isle of Georgia in honor of H. Majesty'). South Georgia and the South Sandwich islands form a British dependent territory administered by the Falkland Islands, and claimed (like the Falklands) as Argentinian.

In the earlier twentieth century, there were five shore-based whaling stations on the island, the last of which ceased to be used in 1965. It is a spectacular, steep, glaciated island with permanent snow above 600 m (2000 ft). It is best known in antarctic history as the landing place for Ernest Shackleton and five compan-

ions in the tiny *James Caird*, after a 1280 km (800 mile) journey from Elephant Island, seeking rescue for his expedition after their ship had sunk. After landing on the island, Shackleton and two of his companions (Crean and Worsley) were the first men ever to cross the island, arriving at a whaling station and safety after 36 hours. At the time, almost all residents of South Georgia were of Scandinavian origin. Many of the Norwegian words in later antarctic English came from them.

**South Georgia cormorant** *See* **South Georgia shag**

### South Georgia icefish

The marine fish *Pseudochaenichthys georgianus* (fam. Channichthyidae) of the northern Antarctic Peninsula region and islands of the Scotia Sea. It grows to about 60 cm (2 ft) long and has been fished commercially. *See* **icefish**.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 276.

South Georgia icefish *Pseudochaenichthys georgianus* ... Reported from shelves of the Scotia Arc Islands (South Georgia, South Orkney, South Shetland Islands), and the northern part of the Antarctic Peninsula. Presence doubtful in South Sandwich Islands ... This species is commercially caught only since the 1976/77 season ... Marketed as frozen fish (entire or fillets).

**1990** Kock, K.-H. and Köster, F.-W. in Kerry, K.R. and Hempel, G., eds *Antarctic ecosystems: ecological change and conservation* Springer-Verlag, Berlin: 308.

Other abundant species, such as .. the South Georgia icefish, *Pseudochaenichthys georgianus* .. are regular by-catch species and/or were important in one season or another but they could not support a commercial fishery on their own.

**South Georgian** *adjective and noun phr.*

(One) Belonging to or living in South Georgia.

**2 Mar 1913** (South Georgia) Murphy, Robert Cushman (1948) *Logbook for Grace Robert Hale Ltd*, London: 233.

It is not cheerful to compare our miserable business on the *Daisy*, murdering pup sea elephants and living on penguins and skilly, with the mode of life of these South Georgian Britishers and Scandinavians, who do things on a grand scale, have proud, upstanding men for crews, and live in a civilized or almost luxurious manner even though they are in a forgotten corner of the world.

**1954** Robertson, R.B. quoted in Tønnessen, J.N. and Johnsen, A.O. (1982) *The history of modern whaling* C. Hurst and Co, London/Australian National University Press, Canberra: 278.

A South Georgian's brains and ability are estimated by his fellows according to the quantity of liquor he can manufacture.

**South Georgian diving petrel** *Also* **South Georgia diving petrel**

The bird *Pelecanoides georgicus* (fam. Pelecanoididae), which breeds on South Georgia and other subantarctic islands in the Southern Ocean. It is a small seabird with dark upperparts and pale to white underparts, like other **diving petrels**, and has understandably (given



the climate) bluish feet. It is also known as the **Georgian diving petrel**.

[17 Jan 1775 (South Georgia) Cook, James quoted in Beaglehole, J.C., ed. (1961) *The voyage of the Resolution and Adventure* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 622.

The Oceanic birds were .. Terns, Shags, Divers [etc.]

1936 Mathews, Gregory M. *A supplement to the birds of Norfolk & Lord Howe Islands to which is added those birds of New Zealand not figured by Buller H.F. & G. Witherby*, London: 106.

*Pelagodypetes georgicus*. South Georgian Diving Petrel ... Distribution. South Georgia and Macquarie Island and waters adjacent to each.

1959 Downes, M.C. and others *The birds of Heard Island. ANARE reports Series B vol 1 Zoology* Antarctic Division, Department of External Affairs, Melbourne: 102.

As with the Kerguelen diving petrel, the South Georgian diving petrel does not venture over land till after dark, but at dusk skuas may be seen standing about the diving petrel nesting flats.

1977 Kooyman, G.L., Castellini, M.A. and Davis, R.W. in *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XII (4) Oct: 14.

Especially interesting to us was the small but robust South Georgia diving petrel, whose blood oxygen carrying capacity matched that of the adult king penguin.

1984 (nr Possession Island, Crozet Islands) Fletcher, Harold *Antarctic days with Mawson: a personal account of the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929-31* Angus and Robertson, London: 72.

Late in the afternoon, a South Georgian diving petrel, flying over the ship, hit the rigging, broke its neck and fell to the deck.

1993 Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 99.

The South Georgia diving petrel, one of the two diving petrels that breeds on South Georgia, has abandoned the tussock and hollows out burrows high above sea level in scree fields.

### South Georgian pipit *Also South Georgia pipit*

The bird *Anthus antarcticus* (fam. Motacillidae), a small, shy, streaked brown to red-brown bird which breeds only on South Georgia and is the southernmost-breeding land bird in the world. It is sometimes called the **antarctic pipit**.

15 Dec 1912 (South Georgia) Murphy, Robert Cushman (1948) *Logbook for Grace* Robert Hale Ltd, London: 170.

At the landing place, walking on the sand and the stranded kelp, I found my first South Georgian pipits. ... the only song-bird found at South Georgia.

1939 Roberts, Brian in *The Ibis* 3(4) Oct: 701.

Bellingshausen writes: "They also saw very frequently albatrosses and other sea-birds, but of land-birds only larks [*Anthus antarcticus*] and a kind of pigeon." ... The reference to the South Georgia pipit is interesting.

1970 Atyeo, Warren T. and Peterson, Paul C. in Gressitt, J. Linsley, ed. *Subantarctic entomology, particularly of South Georgia and Heard Island*. Pacific Insects monograph 23: 127.

Species [sc. of mite] .. should occur on the South Georgian pipit, *Anthus antarcticus*.

1980 Parmelee, David F. *Bird Island in antarctic waters* University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis: 30.

We encountered many South Georgia pipits — the world's southernmost song bird, found nowhere outside this region.

Even now I mentally hear the soft twittering flight songs of male pipits above the fresh meadows.

1995 *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* no. 336 (Aug): 4.

In recent weeks the lengthening days have been marked by the sound of the South Georgian pipits tuning up their vocal chords as they mark out their breeding territories and attract mates. Their song couldn't be more of a contrast to the ghoulish sounds made by the giant petrels as they stake their claims to nest sites.

### South Georgia pintail *Also South Georgian pintail, South Georgia teal*

The small brown duck *Anas georgica georgica* (fam. Anatidae), a subspecies of the more widely distributed brown pintail of South America, found only on South Georgia. See also **(yellow-billed) pintail**.

[1906 Lönnberg, Einar in *Vetenskapsakademiens Handlingar* 40(5): 66.

The Teal of South Georgia is evidently a very well defined species.]

1914 *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* XXXIII(CXCV): 104.

Mr. Ogilvie-Grant also exhibited a male and female of the South Georgian Pintail, commonly known as *Nettion georgicum*.

1922 (South Georgia) Murphy, Robert Cushman *National Geographic* 41(4) Apr: 429.

[caption] A pair of South Georgia teal in the tussock grass.

1960 *Polar Record* 10(65) May: 146.

Two South Georgia Teal (*Anas georgica*) were brought back alive to the Wildfowl Trust.

1979 Peterson, Roger Tory *Penguins* Houghton Mifflin Co., Boston: 173.

From the tussock grass almost under my feet scampered two small brown ducks with yellow bills. They were South Georgia pintail, *Anas georgica*.

1993 Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 170.

The South Georgia pintail .. quite unlike any other member of its family, has a taste for mammal flesh. Its bill is totally unsuited to ripping skin but, once there is even the smallest hole in the carcass, the duck will get its head right inside.

### South Georgia shag *Also South Georgia cormorant, South Georgian shag*

The black and white bird *Phalacrocorax atriceps georgianus* or *P. georgianus* (fam. Phalacrocoracidae), a **blue-eyed shag** which breeds only on South Georgia.

[17 Jan 1775 (South Georgia) Cook, James quoted in Beaglehole, J.C., ed. (1961) *The voyage of the Resolution and Adventure* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 622.

The Oceanic birds were .. Terns, Shags, Divers [etc.]

1906 Lönnberg, Einar in *Vetenskapsakademiens Handlingar* 40(5): 69.

The black of the crown descends further on the sides of the head in the South Georgia cormorant [*Phalacrocorax atriceps georgianus*] than in the typical *atriceps*.

1929 *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 584.

*Phalacrocorax georgianus*, Lönnberg. South Georgia Shag. This Shag, subspecifically different from *Ph. atriceps*, is a common resident at South Georgia ... The birds are often to be seen sitting about on the rocks and boulders near the sea, drying the wings in typical cormorant fashion. They have a peculiar habit when approached by the whale ships at sea: they fly up towards the vessel and, keeping the same speed as it, fly alongside the crow's-nest at the foremast head. This is often

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

the cause of their destruction, as they can then easily be knocked down so that they fall on deck, and they are much sought after as a table delicacy in South Georgia. The nests are built of mud, tussac and dried kelp. The eggs, usually three in number, are pale blue-green with a coating of chalky substance. They are laid early in December and hatch in the first half of January. The young when hatched are quite naked, but soon get a covering of dark grey down with a few tufts of white interspersed among it.

**1965** (South Georgia) Harper, Peter C in *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 4(1) Mar: 390.

The South Georgian Shag, Brown Skua and Black-backed Gull were found to be well represented.

**1997** Enticott, Jim and Tipling, David *Photographic handbook of the seabirds of the world* New Holland Publishers Ltd, London: 128.

South Georgia Shag *Phalacrocorax georgianus* ... Black and white shag of Scotia Arc islands.

### south magnetic pole

The point in the southern hemisphere where the earth's magnetic field lines are vertically aligned. The region of the south magnetic pole was first reached by Mawson, Edgeworth David and Mackay on 16 January 1909. The south magnetic pole can move very rapidly (over distances of 15 km to hundreds of kilometres a day), and is now (2000) located off the coast of the **antarctic continent**. It is also simply called the **magnetic pole**. See also **geomagnetic pole**.

**1839** Enderby, Charles *Journal of the Royal Society* IX: 528.

The Balleny Isles are situated exactly on the eastern verge of the circle traced by Captain James Ross on his chart, as the limit within which he hoped to find the southern magnetic pole.

**31 Jan 1840** (nr 65°S) Dumont D'Urville, J.S.C. in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 460.

We had then reached 128° long. The variation, from being north-east, had become north-west and very marked. Thus ... we had passed the meridian where the declination is nought. MM. Dumoulin and Coupvent believed they had gathered sufficient data to determine the position of the south magnetic pole.

**1931** *New York Times* 17 May: suppl 8.

[caption] Sir Douglas [sc. Mawson] reports that the south magnetic pole has moved about 100 miles to the northwest in 18 years.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 40.

Mawson was in Antarctica in 1908 and 1909. With David and the surgeon Alistair Mackay he reached, for the first time, the position of the oscillating South Magnetic Pole, manhauling sledges 1260 miles.

**1995** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] 14(3) Mar: 6.

Our little band of armchair explorers, cocooned in the relative comfort of a QANTAS 747-300 had just passed over the South Magnetic Pole, where the toy compasses in our "show bags" had, more or less, shown complete disdain for pointing anywhere in particular.

### south polar circle

The **antarctic circle**.

**1940** *Polar Record* 3(19) Jan: 271.

Of 119 radio soundings .. which were carried out, thirty-six were within the South Polar Circle.

### south polar regions Also south polar region

The area surrounding the South Pole, used in the general sense as — and equally as vaguely as — the **antarctic regions**.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 82.

At midnight, when I was on watch with Lieut. Colbeck, the tent gave unmistakable signs of departing, of which fact my fellow watcher seemed blissfully unconscious. I therefore suggested that we should go out and pile more stones around it, and lash it down with ropes, an idea with which he did not seem particularly struck, and rather callously opined that one only was necessary for the job. Alas! at such times the best of us are monsters of iniquity and egoism! At last we went out, and as we fiercely pitched the stones on to the tent, the talent exhibited in launching invectives against it, and the wind, and the South Polar Regions generally, was, to say the least, unusual.

**1911** Hobbs, William Herbert *Characteristics of existing glaciers* The Macmillan Company, NY: 187.

[sc. In the Arctic] Along the same parallel of latitude the widest differences of temperature and precipitation are to be encountered. Within the south polar region, on the contrary, the great continental plateau, centred as it is so nearly over the pole and having its borders for long distances so nearly in correspondence with the Antarctic Circle, the surrounding ocean permits of a relatively free circulation of oceanic waters and of air currents. The result is a greater uniformity and a symmetry in distribution of the principal climatic constants with regard to the south pole as a centre.

**1924** (Macquarie Island) *The Sphere* [London] 20 Sept: 342.

[caption] The elephant seal of the south polar regions — note the short proboscis, from which it derives its name.

**1930** (Little America) Byrd, Richard Evelyn in *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 128.

South Polar regions affect the world's weather even more than do Arctic areas.

**1963** *World Health* [Geneva] Jan: 23.

The north and south polar regions are frozen water and rock, almost void of animal and plant life.

**1972** Bennett, Isobel *Shores of Macquarie Island* Robert Hale & Co, London/Rigby Ltd, Adelaide: 55.

The South polar region, unlike its northern counterpart, has no mammals or birds which are purely terrestrial.

**1980** Woodard, Edwin and Bischoff, Heather *Woodard Storehouses of the snow* Leisure Books, Norwalk, Connecticut: 6.

Even as the President spoke, intense shock waves were radiating swiftly outward from the south polar regions.

**1997** Diski, Jenny *Skating to Antarctica* Granta Books, London: 127.

The search for roots is a legitimate excuse for travel these days, but I'm a middle-aged Jewish Londoner, and there was not much chance of finding the source of these aspects of myself in the South Polar regions.

### south polar skua noun phr. and attrib.

The bird *Catharacta maccormicki*: see **McCormick's skua**.

**1951** (Peter I Island) Holgersen, Holger *On the birds of Peter I Island in Proceedings of the Xth International Ornithological Congress, Uppsala, June 1950* Almqvist & Wiksells Boktryckeri AB, Uppsala: 615.

In the immediate neighbourhood of the penguin colony, two South Polar or Maccormick's Skua (*Catharacta skua maccormicki*) landed repeatedly.

**1976** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XI(2) June: 111.

A south polar skua (*Catharacta maccormicki*), hatched and banded in Antarctica, was found about 6 months later in Greenland after a flight of over 14,000 kilometers ... The south polar skua is a gull-like bird about the size of a small goose, with a heavy powerful beak and a wingspread of 120 to 150 centimeters. It preys on the eggs and young of other birds, particularly penguins.

**1982** (Gough Island) Krynauw, J.R. and others in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* Suppl 2: 52.

A south polar skua (*Catharacta maccormicki*) was also observed at Johnsbrotet at the time.

**1982** Hosking, Eric and Sage, Bryan *Antarctic wildlife* Croom Helm, London: 120.

At Pointe Geologie, Adelle Land, on the Antarctic Continent for example, the increase of the South Polar Skua population from 80–90 in 1965–6 to 320 in 1976–7, was considered to be caused by the establishment of a garbage dump.

**1993** *Geo* 15(1) Feb–Apr: 20.

The south-polar skua *Catharacta maccormickii* is an example of a bird that though common in its natural habitat (Antarctica), very rarely occurs in Australia.

## South Pole

1. The **geographic south pole**, the southern point at which lines of longitude converge at the latitude of 90°S, and the southern axis of rotation of the earth.

**1628** (56°S) Drake, Sir Francis, in W.S.W. Vaux, ed. (1963 repr.) *The world encompassed* Burt Franklin, New York: 87.

At length we fell with the uttermost part of land towards the South Pole.

**12 Jan 1722** Roggeveen, Admiral Jacob in Balch, Edwin Swift (1902) *Antarctica* Allen, Lane & Scott, Philadelphia: 60.

We found ourselves at the height of 60 degrees 30 minutes towards the South Pole.

**1827** (South Georgia) Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24, 2nd edn* David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 41.

If, therefore, no land exist to the south of the latitude at which I arrived, viz. seventy-four degrees, fifteen minutes, — being three degrees and five minutes, or 214 geographical miles farther south than Captain Cook, or any preceding navigator reached, how is it possible that the South Pole should not be more attainable than the North, about which we know there lies a great deal of land?

**11 Jan 1893** Burn Murdoch, W.G. (1894) *From Edinburgh to the Antarctic* Longmans, Green and Co, London: 290.

Think of this, ye gentlemen of England who yacht at Cowes in ease, the chance is going-going; and if you don't bid for the South Pole, some bold Yankee and his fair lady will be down there before you get under way, and then — there will be no new place under the sun!

**30 Oct 1897** Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 7.

So long as beautiful women, good wines, fine cigars, and delicate foods are not found at the south pole, Latin Americans will probably not aspire to reach it.

**2 Jan 1909** (172 miles from the Pole) Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907–1909* William Heinemann, London: 342.

I cannot think of failure yet. I must look at the matter sensibly and consider the lives of those who are with me. I feel that if we go on too far it will be impossible to get back over

this surface, and then all the results will be lost to the world. We can now definitely locate the South Pole on the highest plateau in the world, and our geological work and meteorology will be of the greatest use to science; but all this is not the Pole. Man can only do his best, and we have arrayed against us the strongest forces of nature.

**1912** *The Mercury [Hobart]* 9 Mar: 5.

[headline] The South Pole reached by Captain Amundsen. Stayed there three days. The explorer still reticent.

**1952** *Walkabout. Australian Geographical Magazine* 18(10) Oct. 19.

Aviation authorities in Australasia today assert there is nothing to prevent a South Pole air route operating within two years ... The South Pole route will halve the distance and travelling time between Australia and South America, and will complete the final conquest of the last-to-be explored continent.

**26 Dec 1957** Barber, Noel (1958) *The white desert* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 119.

Hillary ... radioed: "We are heading hell-bent for the South Pole, God willing and crevasses permitting."

**1963** McKenzie, Douglas *Opposite poles* Robert Hale & Co. London/Whitcombe & Tombs, New Zealand: 96.

Where is the South Pole? One might well ask, for from time to time the South Pole has been positioned by first arrivals as being precisely where they said it was; and there have been some demonstrably divergent claims. Yet in none of these cases would it be suggested that the travellers had not reached the Pole. The South Pole is an imaginary spot in a highly unimaginable landscape, a point somewhere piercing the two-mile-high surface of a variable ice-cap. The Pole is a mathematical conception, and its exploitation in the past half-century just shows what a trouble people can be led into by mathematicians.

**1995** *Sunday Press [Asbury Park, USA]* 19 Mar: C8.

Ski the South Pole: a half-inch of powder, 9,000 feet of base.

**1996** *Rocky Mountain News [Denver]* 12 May: 46A.

"If we weren't at the South Pole, there would be a mad scramble for territory," said undersecretary Tim Wirth. The former Colorado senator is the Clinton Administration's point man on Antarctic issues. "We're the only country that can manage the logistics in that extraordinary place," Wirth said. "We have to maintain this presence to maintain the continent's neutrality."

2. The south celestial pole, rotation axis of the stars.

**1628** Drake, Sir Francis in W.S.W. Vaux, ed. (1963 repr.) *The world encompassed* Burt Franklin, New York: 34.

We had in sight the South Pole.

**1768** Banks, Joseph in Beaglehole, J.C., ed. (1962) *The Endeavour journal of Joseph Banks* Public Library of New South Wales/Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 7.

The passing of the North star to the South pole.

3. In general, anywhere in the **south polar regions**.

**14 Mar 1823** (Falkland Islands) Morrell, Captain Benjamin (1832) *A narrative of four voyages, to the South Sea [etc.]*. J. & I. Harper, New York: 68.

The people of our enlightened age would have had laid open to them the mysteries of the south pole.

**1928** Mathews, Gregory M. *The birds of Norfolk & Lord Howe Islands and the Australasian South Polar Quadrant with additions to "The birds of Australia"* H.F. & G. Witherby, London: 63.

Emperor Penguin ... Distribution. South Pole.

**1978** Keneally, Thomas *A victim of the aurora* Fontana Books, Glasgow: 26.

'I'm Betty,' she said. 'You're going to the South Pole, you poor fellow.'

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

I had noticed that the people of Christchurch, like the people of London, used Antarctica and the South Pole as interchangeable terms. But I wasn't going to argue with any thing so intensely pretty.

**span**

[Prob. adaptation of span a rope or chain used to connect or fasten, recorded in nautical use from 1769 onwards (NOED).]

**A dog line.**

**1954** Roots, E.F. in Gjaever, John, transl. fr Norwegian by Huggard, E.M. *The white desert: the official account of the Norwegian-British-Swedish antarctic expedition* Chatto & Windus, London: 280.

We drove right in among the dog-lines, and found spaces for our own teams on the newly-laid wire spans.

**1967** *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* 2 (May): 2.

The dogie [sic] spans have been moved to fresh pastures and the dogs seem much happier if noisier.

**1996** (1963) Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 206.

The motorised toboggans were stranded while the Spartans, Giants and Moomins were lazing comfortably on their spans outside the door.

**spanned** *participial adjective*. Also **spanned out**

Attached to the **dog line**.

**1958** (Loubet Coast) *Falkland Islands Dependencies Survey Periodical Report* no 75 (Sept): 3.

Flora's pups have now been spanned because of their bad behaviour towards seals.

**1963** (Scott Base) McKenzie, Douglas *Opposite poles* Robert Hale & Co, London/Whitcombe & Tombs, New Zealand: 145.

They went to see their two dog-teams where they were spanned out on the ice.

**1968** Herbert, Wally *A world of men: exploration in Antarctica* Eyre & Spottiswoode, London: 202.

Our lungs were burning with exertion, our tents were pitched, our dogs were spanned — the scene was ours.

**sparrow** *Falkland Islands*

[Transferred use of sparrow a small brownish-grey bird of the fam. Fringillidae, recorded from c725 on (NOED).]

The small finch *Melanodera melanodera melanodera* (fam. Emberizidae) of the Falkland Islands. The male has a greyish back, yellow in the tail, and a black and white face and neck; the female is brown to buff with yellow in the tail. It has also been called the **black-throated finch** and **Falkland Island sparrow**.

**1847** Hooker, J.D. *Flora Antarctica* Reeve Brothers, London, vol II: 386.

The sparrow, which subsists on other food eleven months of the year, could surely make shift without this for a twelfth.

**1859** *Proceedings of the Zoological Society of London* Feb-June: 95. *Melanodera typica* .. Mr. Darwin states that this bird is extremely abundant, in large scattered flocks, in the Falkland Islands. I believe this is the bird which Capt. Abbott calls the Sparrow of those islands.

**1861** Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 153.

*Phrygilus melanoderus* .. (Sparrow.) This bird, which is called 'The Sparrow' in East Falkland Island, is plentiful everywhere, summer and winter. It breeds in the latter end of September and beginning of October, laying three eggs in a nest situated under the shelter of a tuft of grass. In the winter the

plumage of the male loses all its rich colour and assimilates to that of the female.

**1906** (Falkland Islands) Rudmose Brown, R.N., Mossman, RC and Pirie, J.H. Harvey *The voyage of the "Scotia", being the record of a voyage of exploration in Antarctic Seas by Three of the Staff* William Blackwood and Sons, Edinburgh: 202.

On the shore many sparrows .. — a bird very like our native yellow-hammer — flitted about.

**1924** Vallentin, Rupert in Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history* by Rupert Vallentin Clarendon Press, Oxford: 334.

*Phrygilus melanoderas* (Quoy and Gaim.), 'Sparrow'.

This species is also usually to be found round every settlement. The nests are always made of grass bents carefully woven together with perhaps a few feathers.

**1976** Wace, N.M. and Holdgate, M.W. *Man and nature in the Tristan da Cunha islands*. IUCN monograph no. 6 Morges, Switzerland: 68.

The .. bunting or finch .. resembles the black-throated finch or 'sparrow' of the Falkland Islands (*Melanodera m. melanodera*).

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 235.

Black-throated Finch *Melanodera melanodera*. Local name: Sparrow ... An inconspicuous, though locally well known, ground-feeding small finch, male and female are very differently coloured. Adult male is handsomely patterned; head, mantle and sides of the breast blue-grey ... Female is drab.

**Special Antarctic Blend** *noun and attrib.*

Fuel especially made for antarctic conditions: see **SAB**.

**1983** Duncan, John in *Davis yearbook 1983* ANARE, Davis: 33.

Fortunately we received extra Special Antarctic Blend Diesel Fuel this year and are able to continue supplying power with minimal restrictions.

**1995** Australian Antarctic Division *Looking south: the Australian Antarctic Program in a changing world* Australian Antarctic Division, Kingston: 18.

The fuel used at the stations is "Special Antarctic Blend", a light, volatile petroleum extraction, similar to kerosene, which is stored in steel tanks surrounded by oil spill containment structures.

**speck finger** *See spekk finger***speckled teal**

The duck *Anas flavirostris*: see **yellow-billed teal**.

**1971** (Falkland Islands) Weller, Milton W. in *Antarctic Journal of the United States* VI(4) Jul/Aug: 108.

Yellow-billed or speckled teal (*Anas flavirostris*) used freshwater streams and ponds during the brood rearing.

**1993** Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 170.

The South Georgia pintail is a charming bird that somehow seems out of place in the tough Antarctic environment. It is one of only two ducks that nest in the Antarctic, the other being the speckled teal. Both breed on South Georgia and they look so similar that for a long time people did not realize that the far less numerous speckled teal was there at all.

**spectacled albatross**

[The bird has a strong black line above each eye, but the name 'spectacled' is not particularly apt — it would be more appropriate for the **sooty albatross**.]

The albatross *Diomedea melanophris*, usually called the **black-browed albatross**.

**1917** (Falkland Islands) Beck, Rollo H. *The American Museum Journal* XVII(7) Nov: 439.

[caption] Some of the black-browed or spectacled albatrosses nest among the penguins on top of West Point Island.

**1922** (South Georgia) Murphy, Robert Cushman in *National Geographic* 41(4) Apr: 436.

[caption] Two spectacled albatrosses crossing in flight.

### spectacled porpoise

[Named by Argentinian naturalist Lahille in 1912, as *Phocaena dioptrica*, referring to the porpoise's eyes. According to Martin (1990), "the common name for the spectacled porpoise is a direct translation from the Spanish common name *marsopa de anteojos*."]

The rarely noted marine mammal *Australophocaena* (formerly *Phocoena*) *dioptrica* (fam. Phocoenidae), a black and white porpoise which grows to about 2 m (6 ft 7 in) long. Its black-rimmed eyes are edged by a white line. It has been found in waters around the Falkland Islands and South Georgia, and off the east coast of South America.

**1968** Fraser, F.C. in *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* 16 (Jul): 51.

Knowledge of the spectacled porpoise, *Phocoena dioptrica* is extremely limited.

**1976** Frost, P.G.H. and Best, P.B. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* 6: 12.

The spectacled porpoise, *Phocoena dioptrica* ... is a little-known species that has only been recorded from the east coast of South America and the Falkland Islands.

**1995** Department of Conservation *Draft conservation management strategy — subantarctic islands. Southland Conservancy Conservation Management Planning series no 6* Dept Conservation, NZ: 10.

Two small cetaceans, the hourglass dolphin and the very rare spectacled porpoise are restricted to these latitudes [sc. south of 40°S] and are occasionally seen in New Zealand Subantarctic waters.

### spekk finger Also *speck* or *spik finger*

[Taken directly from the Norwegian name for the condition, *spekk blubber* or *fat + finger finger*: see 1965 quotation. The 1943 quotation, which says that the infection is unknown in Antarctica, is wrong in this detail.]

An infection associated with sealing: see **seal finger**.

**1943** Rodahl, Kåre in *Polar Record* 4(25) Jan: 17.

Spekk finger is the Norwegian name for a condition which is confined to people engaged in Arctic sealing. The word indicates that the disease has its origin from the blubber of seals and other mammals ... It is worth mentioning that spekk finger apparently does not occur among Antarctic whaling or sealing crews, while other infections are common.

**1943** Hydrographic Office, US Navy Department *Sailing directions for Antarctica. H.O. no 138* Hydrographic Office, Washington: 51.

While in general there is relative freedom from foreign sepsis in the Antarctic, there may be an occasional occurrence of "speck finger," a low grade, indolent abscess acquired through minor cuts, hangnails, etc., while handling seal blubber. The condition, if unattended, may involve painful destructive changes of the bones and joints of the finger, requiring amputation.

**1965** Hedblom, Captain E.E. *Polar manual, 4th edn* US Navy, Bethesda, Maryland: 54.

"Spekk-Finger" (Norwegian for blubber finger), or "seal finger," is an acute infection of the hand to be found among men who skin seals with bare hands. Through cut or abrasion of the skinner's finger an acute infection of unknown cause (micrococcus, streptococcus, staphylococcus, or corynebacterium have been suspected) starts in 3–21 days. The finger swells, throbs, gets red and distended. Bone and joint involvement is common and pain seems out of proportion to physical change. There is no pus formation and patients remain relatively afebrile. This infection is successfully treated with aureomycin. Prevention depends on using rubber gloves, use of soap and water thoroughly and frequently, prompt treatment of any cuts or abrasions, and avoidance of seal skins, particularly the skins of old seals, until all hand cuts are healed.

**1982** Panagis, K., Apps, P. and Knight, M.H. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* 12: 49.

Two cases of seal finger "spekkfinger" contracted in Antarctica are described.

**1993** (Goudier Island, Antarctic Peninsula) *BAS Club Newsletter*: 36.

Some unused but very old nails had been collected at Deception Island from the whaling station; they were made of black iron, and were square in section, with very sharp and jagged edges from which many of us got 'spik' fingers.

### spell-o

A break, a rest.

**10 Jan 1916** Joyce, Ernest E Mills (1929) *The South Polar trail* Duckworth, London: 129.

Smithy, who is pulling behind me, is feeling the strain and getting very short-winded. At every spello, he is compelled to sit down on the snow.

**1942** (Nov 1912) Mawson, Douglas *Geographical narrative and cartography. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911–14. Scientific reports series A vol I* Government Printer, Sydney: 200.

We were making good headway when Webb happened to notice a strap dangling from the rear of the supports' [sic] sledge as it passed us while we were having a spell-oh.

### sperm oil Whaling. Also formerly *spermaceti (oil)*

The inedible oil — more correctly, a liquid wax — from the **sperm whale**.

**1775** Dalrymple, Alexander *A collection of voyages chiefly in the Southern Atlantick Ocean* Printed for the author, London: 10.

There is reason to expect a considerable quantity of Spermaceti which is much higher priced [sc. than Train-oil 20 pence per ton]; not to mention the *hides* of the Seals and *Sea-Lions* which may be considered as a valuable commodity.

**1829** Barnard, Capt. Charles H. *A narrative of the sufferings and adventures of Captain Charles H. Barnard in a voyage round the world, during the years 1812, 1813, 1814, 1815, & 1816* Printed for the author by J. Lindon, New York: 29.

No care had been taken of the ruined effects which were scattered about the island, and a few casks of sperm oil, which the sea had thrown upon the beach, was the only part of them that could be saved.

**1849** Cooper, James Fenimore *The sea lions; or, the lost sealers* Richard Bentley, London, vol II: 46.

I have shipped, as per invoice enclosed, one hundred and seventy-seven barrels of spermaceti oil, viz., sixty-four barrels of head, and rest in body-oil.

**1955** *Polar Record* 7(51) Sept: 519.

The catch for Sperm Whales is not restricted, and seems to fluctuate with the demand for sperm oil.

**1971** Bertrand, Kenneth J. *Americans in Antarctica* American Geographical Society special publication no. 39: 22.

Ninety tons of sperm oil were transhipped aboard the *Mary*, which reached London on September 1, 1785, with 130 tons of oil.

**sperm whale** Also formerly *spermaceti whale*

[See 1990 quotation.]

The largest toothed whale, *Physeter macrocephalus* (or *P. catodon*) (fam. Physeteridae), which was hunted until the later twentieth century and yielded **sperm oil**. It feeds mainly on squid, and grows to about 50 t weight and 18 m (59 ft) length. In its head is a wax-filled spermaceti organ; this spermaceti wax was once used for medicine and candles. In its intestine it secretes ambergris, formerly used also in medicine and as a fixative in perfumes.

It is found worldwide; apparently only the larger males range far south into antarctic waters (and in northern populations, into arctic waters).

**22 Nov 1791** Melville, Captain Thomas, quoted in Dakin, William John (1938) *Whalemen adventurers: the story of whaling in Australian waters and other Southern Seas Related Thereto*, 2nd edn Angus & Robertson, Sydney: 9.

The day before we made it [sc. Amsterdam Island] we saw two shoals of Sperm Whales.

**1827** (South Shetlands) Weddell, James A *voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24*, 2nd edn David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 128.

At two in the afternoon, the Beaufoy having joined company, we stood to the westward, and at 4 o'clock we saw a sperm whale, which confirms Mr. Smith's report of such sort of whales being found on this coast, as stated by him in his account of South Shetland.

**29 Jan 1833** Darwin, Charles (1901) *Journal of researches into the natural history and geology of the countries visited during the voyage round the world of H.M.S. 'Beagle' under command of Captain Fitz Roy, R.N.*, 2nd edn John Murray, London: 225.

[Footnote] One day, off the east coast of Tierra del Fuego, we saw a grand sight in several spermaceti whales jumping upright quite out of the water, with the exception of their tail-fins. As they fell down sideways, they splashed the water high up, and the sound reverberated like a distant broadside.

**1906** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 16(11): 120.

Royalty upon every Right Whale .. Ten pounds.

Royalty upon every Sperm Whale .. Ten shillings.

Royalty upon every other Whale .. Five shillings.

**1933** Laurie, Alec H. *Some aspects of respiration in blue and fin whales*. Discovery Reports vol. VII, issued by the Discovery Committee. Colonial Office, London: 369.

A case was related to me in 1931 of a dead Sperm whale which was found off the Peruvian coast entangled in a submarine cable which had broken at a depth of 500 fathoms.

**1964** Jenkins, Geoffrey A *grue of ice* Fontana Books, London: 77.

The Blue Whale is the easiest to spot — the plume of condensation grows as its spout rises. A Fin Back's is tall and narrow. The Sperm Whale gives himself away every time — he shoots it out at an oblique angle.

**1990** Martin, Anthony R. *Whales and dolphins* Bedford Editions, London: 86.

This species acquires its name 'sperm' whale from the milky liquid wax in its head, which whalers likened to the fluid produced by the testes to carry sperm.

**1995** Menkhorst, Peter W., ed. *Mammals of Victoria: distribution, ecology and conservation* Oxford University Press, Melbourne: 296.

Sperm Whales are widely dispersed in all oceans. In the Southern Hemisphere there is a general movement southward in summer and northward in winter. Breeding herds and subadult males remain north of about 45°S, whereas larger mature and old males venture much further south.

**spheniscid penguin**

[From the Greek σφινξω wedge.]

A penguin (all penguins belong to the family Spheniscidae), specifically — at least in the case of the quotations below — one of the genus *Spheniscus*: see **jackass penguin**, **magellanic penguin**.

**1968** Stonehouse, Bernard *Penguins: the World of Animals series* Arthur Barker, London/Golden Press, NY: 49.

The spheniscid penguins are no more wedge-shaped than the rest of the family.

**1979** Peterson, Roger Tory *Penguins* Houghton Mifflin Co., Boston: vii.

The bird stood disconsolately on a wave-washed rock. It was a Magellanic Penguin, one of the stripe-faced *spheniscid* penguins that are sometimes collectively called "jackass penguins" because of their woebegone braying calls.

**sphenisciphile**

A lover of penguins.

**1995** Moors, P. in *Wingspan* [RAOU, Melbourne] 5(1) Mar: 8.

A sphenisciphile from way back, Reilly set out to give the non-specialist reader and naturalist an insight into penguin biology and to convey the world of penguins in simple language.

**split-tail** *Falkland Islands*

[From the deeply forked tail of the adult bird.]

The tern *Sterna hirundinacea*: see **swallow-tailed gull**.

**1904** Vallentin, Rupert in *Memoirs and Proc of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no. 23: 42.

*Sterna hirundinacea*, "Tern," "Split-tail." This beautiful bird is very locally distributed over the Falkland Isles.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 200.

South American Tern *Sterna hirundinacea*. Local names: Split-tail; Swallow-tailed Gull ... Widespread around Falkland coasts, over kelp beds and in lower reaches of larger rivers.

**starchy** *Tristan da Cunha*. Also *starchie*

The mottled brown bird *Nesocichla eremita* (fam. Muscipidae) of the Tristan da Cunha group of islands, also known as the **Tristan thrush**.

**10 Aug 1907** Barrow, K.M. (1910) *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 153.

To-day William brought in a bird which he called a "Starchy", but which is just like our old friend the garden thrush. He says there are lots of them on the hill. They have no song.

**1926** Rogers, Mr in Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 176.

There are .. what the people call 'wood-pigeons' (a sea-bird, in reality 'starchies') ... The wood-pigeon is a big bird, black and grey, with a long beak, and utters a rather cawing note.

**1940** Christopherson, Erling *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 94.

Impenetrable fern scrub on Tristan. We found that it sheltered at least one bird which on Tristan itself had long been considered extinct, viz., a thrush — “starchy” as it is called ... On the other two islands they are as common as flies in August and there are particularly many of them on Nightingale Island ... Wholly unaccustomed to human beings, it had no fear of us ... In appearance it is not altogether unlike young of our own blackbird.

**22 May 1951** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* (1997) 21 (Sept): 5.

We now have two birds to keep by feeding on worms, the starchie who has been with us for 6 weeks now and the new guttersnake.

**1994** (1950s) Rowan, Bunty in *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 14 (Mar): 9.

From the moment we stepped out of our shack door, all along our walk, and all the way back at all times and at all places on Nightingale Island, we knew and enjoyed the companionship of the little thrush, called a “starchy” by the islanders ... Each morning, announcing our arising with their shrill sweet whistles, hordes of excited starchies descended on us, hopped in and out of our gear, interfered with our cooking arrangements, and even investigated our persons.

**steamer duck** *Falkland Islands. Also simply steamer*

[The name is also used in southern South America, and applies altogether to four species of *Tachyeres*.]

Either of two large, very similar ducks of the Falkland Islands, the **logger duck** *Tachyeres brachypterus* and the **flying steamer duck** *Tachyeres patagonicus*. See also **race horse**.

**1827** [source: NOED] P.P. King Voy. Adventure & Beagle 1: 35.

Here we saw, for the first time, that most remarkable bird the Steamer-duck.

**19 May 1834** (Berkeley Sound, Falkland Islands) Darwin, Charles (1901) *Journal of researches into the natural history and geology of the countries visited during the voyage round the world of H.M.S. "Beagle" under command of Captain Fitz Roy, R.N. 2nd edn* John Murray, London: 201.

The steamer is able to dive only to a very short distance. It feeds entirely on shell-fish from the kelp and tidal rocks; hence the beak and head, for the purpose of breaking them, are surprisingly heavy and strong: the head is so strong that I have scarcely been able to fracture it with my geological hammer; and all our sportsmen soon discovered how tenacious these birds were of life. When in the evening pluming themselves in a flock, they make the same odd mixture of sounds which bull-frogs do within the tropics.

**11 Apr 1842** (Falkland Islands) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 284.

I saw a number of the island geese, steamer-ducks, hawks, thrushes, and sandpipers.

**1904** (Falkland Islands) Vallentin, Rupert in *Memoirs and Proc of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no 23: 33.

*Tachyeres cinereus*, “Steamer” or “Loggerhead” ... Towards the end of January the steamer ducks were driving away their young from their homes.

**1995** Stenning, Tim in *The Warrah. Newsletter of Falklands conservation* 7 (May): 7.

The kelp geese and steamer ducks out at sea are pleased to get back to peace and quiet again.

**steenbras** *Tristan da Cunha*

[Direct use of the Afrikaans steenbras any of many edible marine fish esp. of the fam. Sparidae, fr Dutch steen stone + brasem bream.]

An edible marine fish often caught in the waters of Tristan da Cunha.

**1987** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 1 (Sept): 7.

Old Sam and his mates eventually made strong fishing lines suitable for snoek and steenbras which abound in Tristan waters.

**1993** Swales, Michael *Denstone Expedition to Tristan Island* Denstonian [Uttoxeter] Supplement Autumn: 22.

They did manage to attract the attention of two Islanders fishing some way offshore one day (how they did this, we never knew). This resulted in us receiving a Steenbras and a Bluefish, enough for four meals for us all.

**stilbocarpa**

[The genus *Stilbocarpa* was named by American botanist Asa Gray (1854: *Botany of the U.S. Exploring Expedition* 714). Gray did not explain the name, which is apparently a combination of the Greek στίλβω listening + καρπός fruit — but the fruit is indeed shiny.]

The plant *Stilbocarpa polaris*: see **Macquarie Island cabbage**.

**1954** *Mercury Centennial Magazine* [Hobart] 5 Jul: 51.

As the cycads of far Northern Australia accent the tropical wilderness and jungle with a dignity beyond compare, so do the pontoon-like leaves of the *Stilbocarpa* [sc. accent Macquarie].

**1973** (Macquarie Island) *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] Sept: 12.

A wild, leaping, feathery chase ensued through short grass, creeklet, long grass, short grass and into the *Stilbocarpa* on Darcy's side of the line.

**1985** (Campbell Island) *Geo* [Australasia] 7(4): 91.

[caption] Most plants in the ivy family are small trees, but *Stilbocarpa*, .. which is found only on the islands from Foveaux Strait southwards, is a herb with giant, rhubarb-like leaves.

**stinker** *noun and attrib. Also stinkard, stinkpot*

[Stinkard is recorded as a name for petrels in arctic use from 1850 (NOED).]

A seabird, usually a very large seabird of the genus *Macronectes*: see **giant petrel**.

**1861** (Falkland Islands) Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(XI) Apr: 164.

*Procellaria gigantea*. (Stinkard.) This large Petrel is common along the shores of East Falkland, being generally seen on the wing, though I have occasionally observed them settled on the water. It breeds on many of the adjacent islets, and I have had many of their eggs brought to me.

**1871** Smiles, Samuel, ed. *Round the world; including a residence in Victoria* [etc.], by a boy Harper and Bros, New York: 57.

I caught a stink-pot, a large bird measuring about eight feet from wing to wing.

**1909** Waite, Edgar R. in Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington, vol 2: 564.

*Majaqueus aequinoctialis*, Linnaeus. (Stink-pot; Cape hen; white-chinned petrel.) ... I noticed this bird at the Antipodes Islands in February, 1907, and saw it in the Auckland Islands during the visit of the expedition.

**1924** (Falkland Islands) Vallentin, Rupert in Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history by Rupert Vallentin* Clarendon Press, Oxford: 295.

*Macronectes giganteus* (Gmel.), 'Stinker'. This is, I believe, the correct name of a frequent visitor to the harbours and coves on this archipelago.

**1949** Scholes, Arthur *Fourteen men: story of the Australian Antarctic Expedition to Heard Island* F.W. Cheshire, Melbourne: 37.

The stinker petrels, or "Nellies," dived low over the beach in long strafing runs.

**1950** (South Georgia) Saunders, Alfred A *camera in Antarctica* Winchester Publications, London: 74.

The Stinker is an unlovely bird, both in appearance and habits.

**1962** Bailey, Alfred M. and Sorensen, J.H. *Subantarctic Campbell Island* Proceedings no. 10, Denver Museum of Natural History: 215.

The Giant Petrels are beautiful upon the wing as they sail low over the water, or rise into the wind and circle away; but on land they are ungainly creatures, with about as much appeal as vultures. Sailors have various derogatory names for them, "Stinkpot" being fairly distinctive. Probably they are more commonly known as "Nellies" in the New Zealand area.

**1968** *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* 12 (Mar): 4.

Following the ringing of 800 giant petrels or "stinker chicks" he has burnt his clothing.

**1993** Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 155.

If the Antarctic's dustmen are sheathbills, then its vultures must be the giant petrels. Even uglier to human eyes than the sheathbills, they are the largest of the petrels, about the size of a vulture with a 2 metre wingspan, and have a powerful hooked beak. The early whalers called them 'stinkers', 'stinkpots' or 'gluttons' and they continue to have a bad name.

### **stone run** *Falkland Islands. Also stone river*

A wide, deep field of angular boulders (a 'block stream'), clear of vegetation and sometimes with water running underneath, a conspicuous and remarkable feature of the higher landscape in the Falkland Islands. These have also been called **streams of stone**.

**15 Jan 1786** (Falkland Islands) Portlock, Captain Nathaniel (1789) *A voyage round the world: but more particularly to the north-west coast of America: performed in 1785, 1786, 1787, and 1788, in the King George and Queen Charlotte*. N. Israel facs, Amsterdam (1968): 30.

The North shore .. afforded excellent water, which run [sic] through an immense bed of large stones .. As these stones occupy a number of vallies whose declivity is considerable, and which are separated by high mountains, I think it very probable that they have been collected together by impetuous torrents of rain, though this seems not to have happened very lately, as they are universally covered with a kind of white moss.]

**1861** (Falkland Islands) Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 154.

During the breeding season it [sc. the Wheatear] resorts to the stone-runs, or watercourses, where it breeds, no doubt, though I have never found its nest.

**1885** (Falkland Islands) Thomson, Sir C. Wyville and Murray, John *Report on the scientific results of the voyage of H.M.S. Challenger during the years 1873-76 under the command of Captain*

*George S. Nares, R.N., F.R.S., and the late Captain Frank Tour. Narrative Her Majesty's Government, London, vol 1 pt 2: 892.*

The well know "stone rivers" have been described and their origin discussed by Sir Wyville Thomson.

**1905** (Falkland Islands) *Scottish Geographical Magazine* 21: 47.

In every stone-river patches of vegetation remain near the margins, these being most luxuriant where the denudation has been recent.

**1924** Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history by Rupert Vallentin* Clarendon Press, Oxford: 256.

There is on West Falkland a stone-run equalling, if not exceeding, the great Prince's Street stone-run near Berkeley Sound.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 11.

Stone-runs are an impressive feature of the Falklands uplands. They occur extensively on hillsides and along valleys and are formed from accumulations of large angular boulders, often several metres across and sometimes weighing more than 50 tonnes. It is not known how they were formed although several theories have been advanced. Stone-runs appear completely barren, apart from growths of lichens, but low shrubs gradually spread over the edges.

**1992** *The Warrarh. Newsletter of Falklands conservation* 3 (Dec): 6. [advnt] "Stone rivers" carving parallel lines down a hillside.

**1994** Falkland Islands Government Office *Introduction to the Falkland Islands* Falkland Islands Government Office, London: [i].

The Falkland Islands are characterised by rolling moorland. Stone runs — rivers of angular boulders — are a unique feature of the landscape.

### **storm petrel** *Also, esp. formerly, stormy petrel*

[Storm petrel is recorded later than the antarctic use in British English for various birds whose movements or cries are supposed to presage a storm (NOED 1833-).]

Any small bird of the fam. Oceanitidae (or Hydrobatidae). There are about 20 species in this family, some in the southern and some in the northern hemisphere. Some of the southern birds, such as **Wilson's petrel**, breed in the antarctic regions. Storm petrels are also known as **skipjacks**. see also **black-bellied storm petrel**, **grey-backed storm petrel**, **white-bellied storm petrel**.

**8 Jun 1773** Sparrman, A. in Smith, Bernard *Imagining the Pacific: in the wake of the Cook Voyages* (1992) Melbourne University Press at the Miegunyah Press: 155.

Several of the ship's company who had made extensive and more agreeable voyages in East Indian waters, were joking over the East Indian's belief in the transmigration of souls, and about the hardships of our voyage. They suggested that the Captains and Chief Mates who had enjoyed a very indolent and lazy time in their cabins in warm and calm East Indian waters, were banished as a punishment to these cold regions to cheer up the albatrosses and stormy petrels, always restlessly hunting for food.

**1806** (Amsterdam Island) Barrow, John *A voyage to Cochinchina, in the years 1792 and 1793* Oxford University Press facs, Kuala Lumpur (1975): 147.

The number of birds was likewise astonishing, and the two causeways were strewn with their eggs. During our short stay on shore we obtained the following birds: .. *Procellaria Grisea*, Grey Petrel; *Procellaria Pelagica*, Stormy Petrel.

**20 Jan 1820** (nr 68°36'36"S) Bellingshausen, Thaddeus in Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. (1945) *The voyage of Captain*



*Bellingshausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819–1821* Hakluyt Society, London: 120.

A few snow-white and polar petrels, also some storm petrels, flew near the ship. These latter we found in all latitudes from the equator to the ice regions and called them, during the voyage, "Jews of the Sea", because, like the Jews on land, these birds have no abiding place but roam over the ocean at all latitudes.

**26 Feb 1841** (69°52'S) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 181.

We have had to-day a greater number and variety of birds flying in the wake of the ship than we have seen since entering the Antarctic circle — white petrel, immature petrel, ash-backed, a stormy, and a gigantic petrel.

**1879** (Kerguelen Island) Sharpe, R. Bowdler *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London*: 133.

From the 10th of October, when we passed Cape Sandwich, until the middle or third week of November, we completely lost sight of the Storm Petrels.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 16.

At the bottom of the size scale, but in point of affectionate interest second to none, comes the stormy petrel, or Mother Carey's chicken, a darling wee wanderer common in both hemispheres, and beloved by all sailors with its delicate, glossy black and brown plumage, just flecked with white on the open wings, and its long, slender legs reaching out first on one side and then on the other as if to feel the sea.

**1938** *National Geographic* LXXIV(2) Aug: 234.

In at least one respect, however, the petrel-like birds exhibit unique diversity: namely, in size range. In no other feathered group is there a discrepancy in bulk equal to that between a storm petrel, scarcely larger than a swallow, and the wandering albatross, which attains a wingspread of 11 feet 4 inches (not 17 feet, as some encyclopedias allege!).

**1957** Booy, D.M. *Rock of exile: a narrative of Tristan da Cunha* J.M. Dent & Sons, London: 163.

"Did you never see water fly uphill?" laughed the islanders, happy like stormy petrels when the wind blew.

**1979** *Australian Fisheries* 38(3) Mar: 18.

Prions and storm petrels have adapted specialist beaks and flight behaviour so they can skim across the sea and extract minute plankton from the surface. They require sea conditions rich in planktons, and so move from Antarctic waters north to sub-tropical waters in autumn, winter and spring.

**1984** (Kerguelen Island) Fletcher, Harold *Antarctic days with Mawson: a personal account of the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929–31* Angus and Robertson, London: 75.

Flying low at great speed over the water were flocks of stormy and diving petrels.

## strappedtoothed whale

[Strappedtoothed from the two extraordinary teeth of the adult male: these extend from the lower jaw backwards and curl over the upper jaw.]

The whale *Mesoplodon layardi* (fam. Ziphiidae), which occurs in circumpolar southern waters between about 30°S and 55°S. It is mainly black, with some white and grey.

**1902** Beddard, Frank Evers *Mammalia. The Cambridge Natural History* vol X Macmillan and Co, London: 369.

*M. layardi* is remarkable on account of the very large size of its strap-shaped teeth: these curve over the upper jaw in such a way as to prevent the animal from fully opening its jaws. The case is curiously paralleled by the Sabre-toothed Tiger. This species is antarctic in range.]

**1922** [source: DNZE] *New Zealand Journal of Science and Technology* V: 136.

The strap-toothed whale (*Mesoplodon layardi*) is, at least when adult, at once recognized by the two long strap-shaped teeth which, originating from the mandible in front of the hinder end of the symphysis, grow upwards and backwards, eventually curving round the upper jaw and preventing the mouth from being opened beyond a certain distance.

**1990** Martin, Anthony R. *Whales and dolphins* Bedford Editions, London: 113.

[caption] A strappedtoothed whale stranded at Dunedin, on the southeastern coast of South Island, New Zealand.

## stream of stone Falkland Islands, historical

A boulder stream, now called a **stone run**.

**19 May 1834** (Berkeley Sound, Falkland Islands) Darwin, Charles (1901) *Journal of researches into the natural history and geology of the countries visited during the voyage round the world of H.M.S. 'Beagle' under command of Captain Fitz Roy, R.N., 2nd edn* John Murray, London: 197.

In many parts of the island the bottoms of the valleys are covered in an extraordinary manner by myriads of great loose angular fragments of the quartz rock, forming "streams of stones." These have been mentioned with surprise by every voyager since the time of Pernety. The blocks are not waterworn, their angles being only a little blunted; they vary in size from one or two feet in diameter to ten, or even more than twenty times as much. They are not thrown together into irregular piles, but are spread out into level sheets or great streams. It is not possible to ascertain their thickness, but the water of small streamlets can be heard trickling through the stones many feet below the surface. The actual depth is probably great, because the crevices between the lower fragments must long ago have been filled up with sand. The width of these sheets of stone varies from a few hundred feet to a mile; but the peaty soil daily encroaches on the borders, and even forms islets wherever a few fragments happen to lie close together. In a valley south of Berkeley Sound, which some of our party called the "great valley of fragments," it was necessary to cross an uninterrupted band half-a-mile wide, by jumping from one pointed stone to another. So large were the fragments that, being overtaken by a shower of rain, I readily found shelter beneath one of them.

**1857** Snow, W. Parker *A two years' cruise off Tierra del Fuego, the Falkland Islands, Patagonia, and in the River Plate: a narrative of life in the Southern Seas* Longman, Brown, Green, Longmans and Roberts, London, vol 1: 141.

Crossing one of those wondrous "streams of stones," a description of which will be given by and by, I went up another lofty hill.

## striated caracara Falkland Islands

The bird of prey *Phalcooboenus australis*, better known in the Falklands as the JOHNNY ROOK.

**1976** Hill, Len and Wood, Emma *Penguin millionaire: the story of Birdland* David and Charles, Newton Abbot, Devon: 81.

As I pondered on my plight, curious 'Johnny rooks' swooped around me. The correct name for this carrion hawk is striated caracara (*Phalcooboenus australis*) but it has a 'caw'-like sound, somewhat like the European rook which caused early settlers in the Falklands to give it the more familiar name.

**1998** [source <http://www.falklands-nature.demon.co.uk/warrah/>] *The Warrah. Newsletter of Falklands conservation* 13 (May).

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

The Striated Caracara *Phalacrocorax australis*, much reduced in numbers over a longer period, has a small and vulnerable population in the Islands.

**subantarctic** *adjective*

Belonging to, or typical of, the area south of the main inhabited continental land-masses of the globe and north of the **antarctic continent**. Sometimes the term includes some or all of the southern oceanic islands: Tristan da Cunha, Gough, Marion, Prince Edward, Crozet, Kerguelen, Amsterdam Islands, St Paul, Heard and McDonald, Macquarie, the Snares, Auckland, Bounty and Campbell islands, islands of the Scotia arc, South Georgia and the Falklands.

**1875** [source: NOED] *Encycl. Brit* III: 745.

Spheniscidae, a family limited to the Antarctic or Subantarctic Ocean.

**1909** [title] Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington.

**1933** Deacon, G.E.R. *A general account of the hydrology of the South Atlantic Ocean* Discovery Reports vol. VII, issued by the Discovery Committee, Colonial Office London: 211.

The sub-Antarctic Zone includes Cape Horn, and the Falkland Islands, and as much of the Patagonian coast as is influenced by the Falkland current which flows as far north as the River Plate. Gough Island is sub-Antarctic, and Tristan da Cunha is just sub-Antarctic.

**1948** Richdale, L.E. *Wild life on an island outpost: expedition to The Snares Islands 1947-48* Otago Daily Times and Witness Newspapers, Dunedin: 109.

Covering our belongings with a tarpaulin just in case it rained, we set about hunting for a camp site. From long experience, I have learned to distrust the weather from Dunedin south — it is truly Sub-Antarctic.

**1965** Hedblom, Captain E.E. *Polar manual, 4th edn* US Navy, Bethesda, Maryland:

The simplest definition is to call everything inside the Arctic circle "Arctic," and concentrically everything out to 60°N, "Subarctic." Conversely everything on the great southern continent may be called "Antarctic," and the seas and island out to 60°S. "Subantarctic."

**1970** Gressitt, J. Linsley, ed. *Subantarctic entomology, particularly of South Georgia and Heard Island* Pacific Insects monograph 23: 297.

In the past, different numbers of island groups have been classified as subantarctic. In the broadest interpretations the classification has included the southern portion of South America as far north as Osorno (just north of Chiloe I., Chile), the Falkland Is., Tristan da Cunha, Gough, New Amsterdam, St. Paul, Aucklands, Campbell, Snares, Bounty, Antipodes, and islands to their south. In a recent coverage .. all of these except the Snares Is. were included. In some more restricted treatments, based largely on climatic consideration .. only South Georgia, Marion (& Prince Edward), Crozet, Kerguelen, Heard, and Macquarie are classified as subantarctic. The South Shetlands, South Orkneys, South Sandwich, Bouvet, Balleny and Peter I. are considered as antarctic in this classification. This arrangement is fairly closely associated with the Antarctic Convergence, which varies greatly in latitude. Thus, the subantarctic islands in the restricted sense include only those islands within about 15 degrees of latitude of the Antarctic Convergence. The convergence extends farther north in the Indian Ocean, and thus the Crozet Islands may be included as subantarctic, even though they are much farther north than Campbell I., Auck-

land Is., Snares, Bounty, Falklands and the southern tips of New Zealand and South America. All of these latter are then cool temperate but not subantarctic.

**1980** Parmelee, David F. *Bird Island in antarctic waters* University of Minnesota Press, Minneapolis: 9.

South Georgia and Bird Island are more hospitable [sc. than the South Shetlands], endowed with a richer flora and fauna; because of these characteristics, in addition to their low latitudinal position, they are categorized as Sub-Antarctic. Some scientists insist, however, that a better standard for judgement on these matters is the islands' position relative to that of the Antarctic Convergence.

**1993** Marx, W.E., compiler *Marine and Antarctic conservation in South Africa: challenges and achievements* Department of Foreign Affairs, Pretoria: 8.

Although a non-claimant in terms of Treaty Article IV, South Africa exercises undisputed national sovereignty over the sub-Antarctic Prince Edward and Marion Islands.

**1999** *Sunday Sun Herald [Melbourne]* 14 Feb: 50.

They staggered towards what passed for sub-Antarctic civilisation.

**subantarctic** *noun*

The area described as **subantarctic** *adj.*

**1954** Sladen, W.J.L. in *The Ibis* 96(2): 316.

It would be most interesting to know if there were any more reliable records of the small arctic-breeding skuas in the Sub-Antarctic and Antarctic.

**1993** Murray, M.D. *The scope of the series. Information brochure no. 1, June 1993* Antarctic Society of Australia, Sydney: 1.

Since the 1950s, nations have spent millions of dollars annually in the Antarctic and Subantarctic.

**1994** Mercury [Hobart] 23 May, suppl: 3.

Australia is one of the pioneers of scientific research in the Antarctic. It has had permanent stations in the sub-Antarctic since 1947 and on the continent since 1954.

**sub-Antarctica**

The **subantarctic regions**.

**1915** Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911-1914* William Heinemann, London, vol II: 305.

[glossary] Sub-Antarctica. A general term used to denote the area of ocean, containing islands and encircling the Antarctic continent, between the vicinity of the 50th parallel of south latitude and the confines of the ice-covered sea.

**1951** Sorensen, J.H. *Wild life in the subantarctic* Whitcombe & Toms, Christchurch: 83s.

The sea lions, however, are in large numbers, and Enderby Island, in particular, must be the chief home of the species in the New Zealand sector of Subantarctica.

**1988** (Heard Island) *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions newsletter* Jun: 10.

The species [sc. *Poa annua*] is usually regarded as a naturalised alien in subantarctica.

**1996** *Age [Melbourne]* 29 June: 26.

The dramatic and tragic Australasian Antarctic Expedition ... was also the first expedition to the Antarctic to be led by an Australian, as well as the first to set up radio communications in Antarctica and sub-Antarctica.

**subantarctic diving petrel**

The seabird *Pelecanoides urinatrix exsul* (fam. Pelecanoididae), which is grey-brown to blackish on the upperparts, and white to pale grey underneath. It is a

subspecies of the **common diving petrel**, and breeds on many subantarctic islands.

**1960** Westerskov, Kaj *Birds of Campbell Island* Wildlife Publication no. 61, Wildlife Division, New Zealand: 60.

Subantarctic diving petrel (*Pelecanoides urinatrix exsul*): Breeds on Auckland Island and Antipodes Island.

**1985** Reader's Digest *Reader's Digest complete book of New Zealand Birds* RD, Sydney: 107.

Two species of the common diving petrel are found in New Zealand: the New Zealand diving petrel and the subantarctic diving petrel.

## subantarctic fur seal

The **fur seal** *Arctocephalus tropicalis* (fam. Otariidae) which occurs on isolated subantarctic islands, generally north of the **antarctic convergence**: the Tristan group, Marion and Prince Edward, Gough, Crozet, Amsterdam, St Paul and Macquarie Islands and (in small numbers) Heard Island. Adult seals are a dark greyish-brown; males grow to 2 m (6 ft 6 in) and about 160 kg (350 lb), and females to 1.4 m (4 ft 8 in) and 50 kg (110 lb). It is also called the **Amsterdam fur seal**.

**1981** (Marion Island) Scientific Committee on Antarctic Research *Twenty-third report to SCAR on South African Antarctic Research Activities April 1980–October 1981* SCAR, Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, Pretoria: 10.

Studies on .. the sub-Antarctic fur seal *Arctocephalus tropicalis*.

**1996** (Macquarie Island) *Station News [Australian Antarctic Division]* Mar: 1.

Some of the fur seals remain here through the winter, in particular the young subantarctic fur seals and their mothers.

## subantarctician

An inhabitant of the **subantarctic**.

**1966** MacKenzie, D., ed. *Fog 'N Bog: yearbook of Macquarie Island ANARE overwinterers ANARE*, Macquarie Island: 97.

"Not by Choice" conducted an intensive scientific study of the durability, suitability and consumer reaction of the clothing offered by Sharp A.N.A.R.E. Fashions for the sub-antarctician.

## subantarctic islands

In the wide sense, any of the islands of the southern oceans: the Snares, Auckland Islands, Campbell Island, Antipodes Islands, Bounty Islands, Macquarie Island, Heard Island, Kerguelen Island, the Crozet Islands, Marion Island, Prince Edward Island. Sometimes Gough Island, Tristan da Cunha, the Falkland Islands, South Orkneys, South Shetlands, South Sandwich Islands and South Georgia are included in the classification.

**1900** Cook, Frederick A. *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 454.

Even the sub-antarctic islands, like Tierra del Fuego, Kerguelen, and the Auckland Islands, are for scientific purposes unknown.

**1909** Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington, vol 2: xiv.

The use of the term "Subantarctic Islands of New Zealand" for them appears to be fully justified. The islands included in

this group are the Snares, the Auckland Island group, Campbell Island, Antipodes Islands, Bounty Islands, and Macquarie Island.

**1936** Guthrie-Smith, H. *Sorrows and joys of a New Zealand naturalist* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Dunedin: 218.

As good Americans when they die go to Paris, so the spirits of good New Zealanders, the eighty-seven per cent., will after decease people the Subantarctic Islands.

**1959** *Polar Record* 9(61) Jan: 365.

For the purpose of S.C.A.R. it was agreed that the "Antarctic" shall be bounded by the Antarctic Convergence. Certain subantarctic islands, listed below, may be included in S.C.A.R.'s area of interest even if they lie outside the Antarctic Convergence: Île Amsterdam, Îles Crozet, Gough Island, Îles de Kerguelen, Macquarie Island, Prince Edward Islands, Île St Paul, South Georgia, Tristan da Cunha.

**1971** Bakker, E.M. van Zinderen Sr. *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* no. 1: 110.

The coasts of Marion and Prince Edward are typical of the inhospitable subantarctic islands, characterized by high cliffs and the absence of sandy beaches.

**1986** Smith, Jeremy *Specks in the Southern Ocean* Department of Geography and Planning, University of New England, Armidale: 4.

Heard Island lies well south of the Antarctic Convergence, the demarcation between chill Antarctic waters to the south, and merely cold temperate waters to the north. The position of the convergence varies a little from year to year, but is always at its most northerly point in the Indian Ocean, and well to the north of Heard. That is why Heard Island can be best considered as a truly Antarctic (rather than sub-Antarctic) island, in spite of its lying at only 53°S.

**1995** *Age [Melbourne]* 3 Jul: 6.

Valuable early catches are fanning interest in the first Australian deep-sea fishing venture to exploit the frigid waters around its sub-Antarctic islands.

## subantarctic little shearwater

[**Subantarctic** from its distribution + *little shearwater* a name recommended by ornithologists for the whole species *Puffinus assimilis*.]

The small shearwater *Puffinus assimilis elegans* (fam. Procellariidae), a subspecies of the **allied shearwater**. This seabird breeds on the Chatham and Antipodes Islands, and on the Tristan da Cunha group and Gough Island.

[**1869** Giglioli, Henry Hillyer and Salvadori, Thomas in *The Ibis* 5(XVII) Jan: 68.

The only specimen seen was shot on the 2nd of March, 1866, in the South Atlantic, lat. 43°54'S., long. 9°20' E. Bill light blue ... This species is very distinct, on account of the fine cinereous colour of its upper parts, from all hitherto described species ... If it should prove really new, it may go by the name of *Puffinus elegans*.]

**1970** Kinsky, F.C., convener of Ornithological Society of New Zealand *Annotated checklist of the birds of New Zealand including the Ross Dependency* A.H. & A.W. Reed Ltd, Wellington: 28.

*P. assimilis elegans* Giglio and Salvadori, 1869 Subantarctic Little Shearwater. Breeding Chathams, Antipodes and Auckland Islands; also Gough Island and Tristan da Cunha.

**1990** Foord, Malcolm *The New Zealand descriptive animal dictionary* Malcolm R.R. Foord, Dunedin: 238.

Little shearwater. *Puffinus assimilis*. The smallest shearwater in New 30 cm long, dark bluish-black above, white below ...

subsp. Subantarctic little shearwater: Chatham, Antipodes and Auckland Is.

### subantarctic region(s) *Also subantarctic zone*

[See **subantarctic** *adj.*]

The area of the Southern Ocean bounded to the north by the **subtropical convergence**, and southward from there to the **antarctic convergence**, and including the **subantarctic islands**.

**1905** *Scottish Geographical Magazine* 21: 48.

What is now necessary is to have a considerable number of stations in the Antarctic and sub-Antarctic regions.

**1919** Cheeseman, T.F. *The vascular flora of Macquarie Island. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911-14. Scientific reports. Series C. - Zoology and Botany vol VII pt 3* Government Printer, Sydney: 46.

Let us first turn to the Subantarctic zone. This is most conveniently divided into the following sectors:- 1. South Georgia. 2. Kerguelen, including the Crozets, Marion and Prince Edward Islands, and Heard Island. 3. Macquarie Island. 4. The New Zealand Subantarctic Islands, comprising Auckland, Campbell and Antipodes Islands. 5. Fuegia and the Falkland Islands.

**1922** (South Georgia) Murphy, Robert Cushman in *National Geographic* 41(4) Apr: 411.

South Georgia is, in every sense, a very type and epitome of all the subantarctic regions. It was, moreover, the first South Polar land known to man and it was discovered during the golden age of exploration.

**1933** Deacon, G.E.R. *A general account of the hydrology of the South Atlantic Ocean* Discovery Reports vol. VII, issued by the Discovery Committee, Colonial Office London: 210.

The sub-tropical convergence, which is the northern boundary of the sub-Antarctic Zone and the convergence of sub-Antarctic and sub-tropical waters, is not so well known as the Antarctic convergence. It is, however, usually a much sharper convergence, and is marked by a sudden change of surface temperature of at least 4°C., and a change of salinity of at least 0.50‰.

**1959** Johnson, M.L., Abercrombie, Michael and Fogg, G.E. *New biology* no. 29 (May): 104.

Beyond the Antarctic convergence and within the so-called sub-Antarctic zone bounded to the north by the subtropical convergence (a second region of rapid temperature change), lie a number of other islands such as Tristan da Cunha.

**1965** Slack-Smith, R.J. *Memoirs of the National Museum of Victoria* no. 25: 14.

This circumpolar species is recorded from rock pools and shallow waters in the whole Subantarctic region and from Graham Land on the Antarctic continent.

**1976** de Villiers, Anthonie F. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* Suppl. 1: 2.

In this paper the author has followed the sub-Antarctic region described by Dell (1972). It includes southern South America from Tierra del Fuego to about latitude 47°S on the west and east coasts, as well as the following islands: Falklands, Tristan da Cunha group, Marion and Prince Edward, Crozet group, Kerguelen, Macquarie, Auckland Islands and Campbell Island.

**1987** National Parks and Wildlife Service, Tasmania *Macquarie Island nature reserve: visitor's handbook* NPWS, Hobart: 27.

The subantarctic islands have a total area of just over 12,000 square kilometres and are dispersed across the Southern Ocean from the tip of South America eastwards to south of

New Zealand. They constitute the only land in the millions of square kilometres of ocean which forms [sic] the biogeographic subantarctic region.

### subantarctic skua *noun and attrib.*

The bird *Catharacta lonnbergi*: see **brown skua**.

**1985** (South Orkneys) Lishman, G.S. in *The Ibis* 127(1): 90.

The only direct cause of mortality was predation by .. Subantarctic (Brown) Skuas *Catharacta lonnbergi* and Greater Sheathbills *Chionis alba*.

**1990** Hemmings, A.D. in Kerry, K.R. and Hempel, G., eds *Antarctic ecosystems: ecological change and conservation* Springer-Verlag, Berlin: 228.

At Marion Island, with a subantarctic skua population of about 400, during the summer of 1978/79 between 20 and 50 birds regularly fed on station wastes.

### subantarctic snipe

[Recorded in *New Zealand English* (DNZE: quotation below) from 1923.]

The bird *Coenocorypha aucklandica* (fam. Scolopacidae). Subspecies of this bird are called the **Antipodes Island snipe**, **Auckland Island snipe** and **Snares Island snipe**.

**1923** [source: DNZE] *New Zealand Journal of Science and Technology* VI: 76.

*Coenocorypha aucklandica* *Semi-woodcock*; *Subantarctic Snipe*.

**1976** (Snares Islands) Warham, John in *Pacific Discovery* XXIX(5) Sept-Oct: 14.

A less conspicuous land bird is the Sub-Antarctic snipe, *Coenocorypha aucklandica*.

### subantarctic surface water *Also subantarctic water*

A body of south flowing, less dense water which meets the colder **antarctic surface water** in the **antarctic convergence** zone.

**1933** Deacon, G.E.R. *A general account of the hydrology of the South Atlantic Ocean* Discovery Reports vol. VII. Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 193.

Kerguelen lies just on the convergence and there is a mixture of Antarctic surface water and sub-Antarctic water near it. Marion and Prince Edward Islands, the Crozets and Possession Island, are just north of the convergence, but so close to it that the Antarctic surface water has not had time to sink far below the surface. When water upwells, as it will do particularly on the north side of the islands, their hydrological conditions and marine life will be influenced by Antarctic water, as well as by sub-Antarctic water.

**1971** Bakker, E.M. van Zinderen Sr. *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* no. 1: 35.

Marion Island is at present surrounded by sub-antarctic surface water and at only 2° latitude south of the island the Antarctic Convergence occurs.

**1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 38.

Forming a broad, continuous belt about the Southern Ocean, Subantarctic Surface Water is generally some 3°C. warmer than Antarctic Surface Water throughout the year.

**1994** Cunningham, Duncan M. and Moors, Philip J. in *The Emu* 94: 27.

Campbell Island (52°33'S, 169°9'E; Fig. 1) lies in cool Subantarctic Surface Waters .. near the south-western edge of the Campbell Plateau.

### subantarctic tern

The New Zealand subspecies of **antarctic tern**, the bird *Sterna vittata bethunei* (fam. Laridae). It breeds on the Snares, Antipodes, Bounty, Auckland, Campbell and Macquarie Islands, as well as on Stewart Island.

**1936** Mathews, Gregory M. *A supplement to the birds of Norfolk & Lord Howe Islands to which is added those birds of New Zealand not figured by Buller H.F. & G. Witherby*, London: 107.

*Sterna vittata* (Bethunei) sub-antarctic tern ... Distribution. The Sub-Antarctic Islands of New Zealand.

**1948** Richdale, L.E. *Wild life on an island outpost: expedition to The Snares Islands 1947-48* Otago Daily Times and Witness Newspapers, Dunedin: 115.

The Red-billed Gulls (*Larus novaehollandiae*) are the same as those dainty little creatures common to most parts of the New Zealand coastline. They are few in number, probably not more than 200. Associating with them, also in small numbers, is the Sub-Antarctic Tern (*Sterna vittata*), a very beautiful little bird.

### subantarctic water *See* subantarctic surface water

### subantarctic zone *See* subantarctic region(s)

### subnévéan *adjective*

Under **névé**, snow being transformed into ice.

**27 Sept-25 Oct 1959** Béchervaise, John (1963) *Blizzard and fire: a year at Mawson, Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 169.

A shimmer of smoke and of warmed air escaping from the subnévéan depths gave an illusion of thermal activity.

### subtropical convergence

The meeting of warm, salty, subtropical water and cooler, fresher subantarctic water. It is often used to define the northern limit of the **Southern Ocean**.

**1933** Deacon, G.E.R. *A general account of the hydrology of the South Atlantic Ocean* Discovery Reports vol. VII, issued by the Discovery Committee, Colonial Office London: 210.

The sub-tropical convergence, which is the northern boundary of the sub- Antarctic Zone and the convergence of sub-Antarctic and sub-tropical waters, is not so well known as the Antarctic convergence. It is, however, usually a much sharper convergence, and is marked by a sudden change of surface temperature of at least 4°C., and a change of salinity of at least 0.50‰.

**1958** David, P.M. *The distribution of the Chaetognatha of the Southern Ocean* Discovery Reports vol. XXIX, Cambridge University Press, London: 204.

Distribution *Is. Sagitta gazellae* Circumpolar, limited in the north by the subtropical convergence, and in the south by the antarctic continental slope.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic Islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 39.

The Southern Ocean, that grey region of storms and restless seas which surrounds Antarctica, can be loosely thought of as the subantarctic. Yet some of its islands, like South Geor-

gia, with glaciers and permanent snow, or those within the Antarctic Circle, clearly belong to the Antarctic, while Gough Island, at 40° south in the South Atlantic, still remains a sub-antarctic island. It is not the temperature or latitude alone, but the character of the ocean — its currents, surface temperature, the life it spawns and supports, and its effect on the environment and ecology of the islands upon it — which defines the nature of the subantarctic. At the northern boundary of the subantarctic region, the surface waters of the Southern Ocean, drifting in a slowly widening circumpolar flow under the influence of the prevailing westerly winds, meet the warmer subtropical waters of the Pacific, Indian, and South Atlantic Oceans. This meeting of cold and warm seas is known as the Subtropical Convergence ... The convergence is not always a clearly defined boundary, but sometimes a general region where waters mingle and mix. Just the same, surface temperatures differ from one side to the other by at least four degrees: from 8° to 12°C in winter and from 12° to 16°C in summer.

### sulphur bottom

[The name, used in the northern hemisphere since 1782 for the same whale, has been applied later to the southern whale.]

The whale *Balaenoptera musculus* (see **blue whale**), which sometimes has a yellowish coating of diatoms on its belly.

**1902** Beddard, Frank Evers *Mammalia. The Cambridge Natural History vol X* Macmillan and Co, London: 356.

*B. musculus*, the Finner, is intermediate in size — not more than 70 feet. It seems doubtful whether the "sulphur bottom," *B. australis*, of Antarctica and *B. patagonica* differ specifically from this.

**1972** Allen, Durward L., Cromie, William J. and Ames, William H. *The fascinating secrets of oceans and islands* Reader's Digest, Sydney: 175.

The largest baleen whale — and the largest creature that ever lived — is the blue whale. This species reaches a length of nearly 100 ft and weights up to 135 tons. Named after its bluish back, it is also known as the 'sulphur bottom' because a coating of yellowish diatoms, the minute single-celled plants, lives on the blue whale's flanks and belly when it feeds in polar waters.

### summer *noun and attrib.*

[Summer has been recorded in English for the warmer half of the year, since c825 (NOED). In antarctic regions its meaning is, like that of night and day, more restricted.]

One of Antarctica's two seasons: see **antarctic summer**.

**1778** Forster, Johann Reinhold in Thomas, N., Guest, H. and Dettelbach, M., eds (1996) *Observations made during a voyage round the world* University of Hawai'i Press, Honolulu: 77.

The thermometer, in the height of summer, in these high latitudes, was never five degrees above the freezing point, and we saw it frequently pointing below it.

**13 Nov 1840** McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 129.

We have now entered upon the first interesting portion of our expedition, to pass our summer, or what goes by the name of summer in this hemisphere, amid huge packs of icebergs and a glaciated land.

**1906** Rudmose Brown, R.N., Mossman, R.C. and Pirie, J.H. Harvey *The voyage of the "Scotia", being the record of a voyage of exploration in Antarctic Seas by Three of the Staff* William Blackwood and Sons, Edinburgh: 81.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

In the Antarctic regions the summer is very brief, and little more than summer in name; but for the longer days and higher sun it differs little from winter. From the end of November to the end of February is the extreme limit of what one could reasonably call summer.

**1949** Innes, Hammond (1953 edn) *The white south* Fontana Books, London: 10.

The whaling season in the Antarctic is of four months' duration — December, January, February, March. These are the summer months.

**1964** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(12) Dec: 532.

Don't expect to hibernate at Scott Base in winter any more than during continuous daylight of Summer.

**1987** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XXII(3) Sept: 19.

During the 5-month austral summer, LC-130s are scheduled to fly 3,242 hours to support the stations and science projects in remote areas.

**1995** Crossley, Louise *Explore Antarctica* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 19.

Antarctica has only two seasons, a long, uniformly cold winter and a very brief summer.

## sundog

[The name sundog has been used in English since 1635 (NOED), mostly in the polar regions, which is where they are most easily observed.]

A **mock sun** on a **parhelion** (bright halo around the sun).

**8 March 1912** (Commonwealth Bay) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 61.

Clear today, little colder; strong radiant to north — trace of sun-dog.

**1979** Hurley, Frank *Shackleton's argonauts: the epic tale of Shackleton's voyage to Antarctica in 1915* McGraw-Hill Book Co Pty Ltd: between pp 146 and 147.

[caption] 'Sun dogs' (false suns) as we break camp on the sea ice.

**19 April 1987** (Cape Evans) Gaudian, Gudrun in May, John (1989) *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica, 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 165.

We saw sundogs, wonderfully lit mountains, expanses of ice like deserts, and clear open sky.

**1996** Stevens, Jane E. in *International Wildlife* Jan-Feb: 19.

Rainbow sundogs cradling an orange sunset as howling winds drive skeins of snow over an endless plain of white ice.

**sun pillar** See **solar pillar**

## swallow-tailed gull *Falkland Islands*

[Both scientific and common names refer to the swallow-like appearance of the bird, *hirundo* being the Latin for swallow. The name is recorded for the American gull *Creagrus furcatus* in 1872.]

The South American tern *Sterna hirundinacea* (fam. Sternidae), a white and pale grey bird which breeds in the Falkland Islands as well as coastal South America. The adults have a deeply-forked tail and a black cap. It is also called the **split-tail**.

**1924** Vallentin, Rupert in Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history* by Rupert Vallentin Clarendon Press, Oxford: 301.

*Sterna hirundinacea* (Less.), 'Swallow-tail gull': A very attractive bird, usually to be found on the West Falklands near a Gull rookery. It is very shy ... This species is migratory, leaving the islands every March and returning early the following October.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 200.

South American Tern *Sterna hirundinacea* .. Local names: Split-tail; Swallow-tailed Gull ... Widespread around Falkland coasts, over kelp beds and in lower reaches of larger rivers.

**tab** Also *tabular*

Abbreviation of **tabular berg**.

**1972** (King Haakon Bay) Neethling, D.C. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* no. 2: 6.

Icebergs also run aground in shallow water to the north of Blåskimen and Apollo Ice Rises, where they remain for several seasons. During 1986 more than a hundred tabulars, many of them no doubt resulting from the fragmentation of the Trolltunga ice tongue, were reported offshore from Otterbukta.

**1986** *Sydney Morning Herald* 15 Feb: 9.

"We took the trikes out on the ice for a spin around the 'bergs, especially that monster tab."

**table(-topped) berg** *Historical*

A **tabular berg**.

**8 Feb 1841** (McMurdo Sound area) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 168.

As we ran for some 160 miles along the barrier, we discovered that a whole chain of table-topped bergs, shed from the barrier itself, had grounded on a bank about sixty miles distant from its edge and 200 miles from its origin at Cape Crozier.

**12 Feb 1898** Arctowski, Henryk in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 493.

At 8 p.m. we passed several typical table-bergs, large, flat-topped, rectangular, the ice stratified horizontally with great regularity, and only a few narrow vertical crevasses to be seen. They rose about 50 feet out of the water; about 40 feet consisted of ice as white as the *neve* which capped it; compact ice was only seen near the base.

**1930** (Ross Sea) Byrd, Richard Evelyn in *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 142.

It had been obscured by a peculiar alignment of bergs, small "table bergs" with flat tops, rising out of the water about 30 feet, extending as far as the eye could see.

**tabular berg** Also *tabular iceberg*

A vast, flat-topped **iceberg** with straight, cliffed sides. Although these occur in arctic waters, they are more plentiful in antarctic waters and are characteristic of these waters. They mostly calve from the huge **ice shelves** of Antarctica, and were formerly called **barrier bergs**. See also **ice island**.

**[1 Feb 1700** (~ 51° S, 35° W) Halley, in Dalrymple, Alexander (1775) *A collection of voyages chiefly in the Southern Atlantick Ocean* Printed for the author, London: 34.

By a clear Glare of scarce \_ of an hour we saw the Island we called Beachy-Head very distinctly to be nothing else but one body of ice of an incredible height.]

**20 Jan 1840** (Macquarie Island) Wilkes, Charles in Murray, George, ed. (1901) *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 375.

The tabular-formed icebergs prevailed, and there was comparatively little field-ice ... These tabular bergs are like masses of beautiful alabaster ... If an immense city of ruined alabaster palaces can be imagined, of every variety of shape and tint, and composed of huge piles of buildings grouped together, with long lanes or streets winding irregularly through them, some faint idea may be formed of the grandeur and beauty of the spectacle.

**1874** Thomson, Prof. C. Wyville *Proceedings of the Royal Society of London* XXIII no. 156: 48.

I conceive that the upper part of one of these great tabular southern icebergs .. was formed by the piling up of successive layers of snow throughout the period, amounting perhaps to several centuries, during which the ice-cap was slowly forcing over the low land and out to sea.

**1915** Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911-1914* William Heinemann, London, vol I: 51.

It has been stated that tabular bergs are typical of the Antarctic as opposed to the Arctic. This diversity is explained by a difference in the glacial conditions. In the north, glaciation is not so marked and, as a rule, coastal areas are free from ice, except for valley-glaciers which transport ice from the high interior down to sea-level. There, the summer temperature is so warm that the lower parts of the glaciers become much decayed, and, reaching the sea, break up readily into numerous irregular, pinnacled bergs of clear ice. In the south, the tabular bergs result from the fact that the average temperature is colder than that prevailing at the northern axis of the earth. They are so formed because, even at sea-level, no appreciable amount of thawing takes place in midsummer.

**1938** Ommanney, F.D. *South latitude* Longman, Green & Co., London: 45.

Out to sea stood two tabular icebergs, looking infinitely forlorn and lonely as icebergs do.

**1958** (Weddell Sea) Fuchs, Sir Vivian and Hillary, Sir Edmund *The crossing of Antarctica: the Commonwealth Trans-Antarctic Expedition 1955-58* Cassell & Co, London: 16.

Within two hours the whole ice situation had changed. Two large tabular bergs appeared to be bearing down on the ship.

**1982** Hosking, Eric and Sage, Bryan *Antarctic wildlife* Croom Helm, London: 26.

Even though icebergs are common to the seas around both the poles, those found in the Antarctic are far superior to the finest that the Arctic can produce. Calving ice-shelves in the Antarctic produce mighty tabular icebergs, characteristically flat-topped, as much as 160 kilometres across and many metres in height.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 30.

And then .. the most wonderful tabular berg: a great continent of an iceberg ... These glistening ice castles were so remote from us, so contemptuous, outliers of a world that didn't need to know us.

**tank**

[Tank is used in the more general sense of a receptacle, from 1690 (NOED).]

A large canvas hold-all designed to be strapped onto a **sledge**, for holding rations.

**22 Jul 1911** (Cape Evans) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912* Blandford Press, London: 156.

As a final precaution we slung a very heavy canvas tank of provisions and extra gear, so heavy that Birdie and I had to lift it together, on to the skirt [sc. of the tent].

**1922** Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Picador, London: 569.

Here was the depot of food and oil which I had laid in the previous autumn for the Polar Party, stowed in a canvas 'tank' which was buried beneath seven feet of snow.

**1942** Mawson, Douglas *Geographical narrative and cartography. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911–14. Scientific reports series A vol 1* Government Printer, Sydney: 139.

For convenience and to reduce weight these foods had all been taken out of their original containers and packed in calico bags closed with a tape tie. In the case of each, the week's ration for three men was contained in a single such bag. Then all the bags constituting a week's supply for three men were packed into a single container, a large bag made of water-proof fabric. These, referred to as sledge food "tanks", had a square base the width of a sledge, and were closed against the entry of snow above by a lamp wick tie.

**1962** Richards, R.W. *The Ross Sea shore party 1914–17*. Scott Polar Research Institute Special Publication no. 2, Cambridge.

The weekly ration for three men for each of these items was contained in a calico bag, and the seven bags containing them were carried on the sledge in a canvas "tank" called the food bag. This ration under all circumstances had to be made to last one week. The canvas "tanks" were replenished from food depots previously established.

### tavo *Falkland Islands*

[From the South American Spanish *tava* the kneebone or anklebone of a cow.]

A bone used to make **bolas** for catching animals.

**1994** (1910s–1930s) Rogers, Ellen, quoted in Simpson, Tim *Cooking the Falkland Island way* Peregrine Publishing, Bangor: 16.

Wild geese were plentiful and very good to eat. They were quite tame and caught by Bolas which consisted of a triangular piece of string approximately one metre length each, on two ends a 'tavo' (pronounced *taba* — knuckle of beef bone) would be tied and a straight bone on the other end. This would be swung round and thrown to catch the bird.

### tea bag *Aust.*

[Remarkably, tea bag is an antarctic word. The technique of immersing a permeable bag containing tea in boiling water was recorded decades earlier on Australian antarctic expeditions than in American or British kitchens. On early antarctic journeys the bags were cloth, possibly the inspiration of Australian explorer Douglas Mawson.

It is interesting to note that, at about this time (in 1904), New York tea merchant Thomas Sullivan sent out samples of his tea in silk bags (Harold McGee *On food and cooking: the science and lore of the kitchen* 1986: 216).]

A cloth bag containing tea, immersed in a pot of boiling water to make tea in the field. Sometimes these bags were re-used several times, even after being scavenged from old supply dumps. In desperation in Antarctica, used tea leaves were also eaten or smoked.

**19 Jan 1909** Edgeworth David, T. quoted in Chester, Jonathan (1986) *Going to extremes: Project Blizzard and Australia's Antarctic heritage* Doubleday Australia, Sydney: 42.

Halved the tea (ration) and are collecting the old tea bags at our old camps as we pass them.

**[27 Dec 1912** (Heard Island) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 155.

We have 3/4 oz butter with 1/2 biscuit after dog for supper — great luxury, especially as washed down with tea (very dilute as bag used 3rd time, last was used 4 times, very little zest.)]

### tea berry *Falkland Islands*

[Tea-berry was used for the American wintergreen *Gaultheria procumbens* in 1818 (NOED).]

The edible fruit of the plant *Myrteola nummularia* (see **tea plant** 1.)

**1994** Simpson, Tim *Cooking the Falkland Island way* Peregrine Publishing, Bangor: 14.

There were tea berries (*Myrteola nummularia*) which are sweet and aromatic.

### tea plant

#### 1. *Falkland Islands*

The mat-forming creeping shrub *Myrteola nummularia* (fam. Myrtaceae) which has aromatic leaves formerly used in making tea, and edible fleshy pink-red berries. It grows in the Falkland Islands and southernmost South America.

**16–19 Oct 1822** (Falkland Islands) Morrell, Captain Benjamin (1832) *A narrative of four voyages, to the South Sea [etc.]* J. & J. Harper, New York: 50.

There is .. a plant which some call the tea-plant, as it makes an excellent beverage of a similar flavour.

**1839** FitzRoy, Robert, quoted in Armstrong, Patrick (1992) *Darwin's desolate islands: a naturalist in the Falklands, 1833 and 1834* Picton Publishing, Chippenham: 136.

I must not omit the 'tea-plant', made from which I have drunk many cups of good tea, and the settlers use it frequently. It has a peculiar effect on some people, which of no consequence [sic] and soon goes off. This little plant grows like a heath in many parts of the Falklands as well as in Tierra del Fuego, and has long been used by the sealers. At my own table I have seen it drank by the officers without their detecting the difference: yet the only tea I used at other times was the best that could be obtained in Rio de Janeiro.

**1840** Mackinnon, L.B. *Some account of the Falkland Islands, from a six months' residence in 1838 and 1839* A.H. Bailey & Co., London: 37.

A great variety of small plants are intermixed with the grass, the principal of which are as follows:— a species of tea plant, which is found scattered over all the islands; the people at Port Louis use it not only from economy, but preference.

**1987** (1860s) Cunningham, quoted in Strange, Ian J. *The Falkland Islands and their natural history* David and Charles, Newton Abbot, Devon: 116.

On the hillside I observed ... others which were new to me, such as .. the Falkland Island tea-plant (*Myrtus nummularia*) and the Almond-flower.

#### 2. *Tristan da Cunha*. Also **tea bush**

The shrub *Chenopodium ambrosioides* (fam. Chenopodiaceae) (sometimes called 'Mexican tea'), whose scented leaves were used on Tristan in making tea.

**1879** (Inaccessible Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 116.

The Potentilla-like *Acæna ascendens* grows here and there together with the "tea-plant" of the islanders.

**1910** Barrow, K.M. *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 277.



Of the trees and plants those we most frequently met with were .. Tea-plant (*Chenopodium Tomentosum*) [etc.].

**1940** Brander, J. *Tristan da Cunha 1506–1902* Allen & Unwin, London: 18.

Other plants are the “goose-foot”, the “tea plant” from which the islanders make a substitute for tea [etc.].

**1999** *Gough Island plants* <http://home.intekom.com/gough/plants.htm> [accessed 3 Mar 1999].

*Chenopodium ambrosioides* “Tea Bush” .. Habitat: restricted to open, sunny sites on cliffs and at penguin colonies.

### 3. Kerguelen Island

The plant *Acaena magellanica*: see **Kerguelen tea**.

**1930** Fletcher, H.O. in *Australian Museum Magazine* 4: 402.

[caption] The Tea Plant (*Acaena*) in the foreground grows to a height of about two feet, and is very common on the island.

## tenth

[Spec. use of tenth one of ten equal parts, recorded in the more general sense since 854 (NOED).]

A measure of the proportion of sea surface covered with pack ice (see 1956 quotation). When the surface is 10/10ths covered, this is known as **consolidated** or **unbroken pack ice**. See also **eighth**.

**1957** *Falkland Islands Dependencies Survey Periodical Report* no 65 (Jul–Sept): [9].

Ice continued 10/10ths to the horizon in Marguerite Bay.

**1964** Helm, A.S. and Miller, J.H. *Antarctica: the story of the New Zealand party of the Trans-Antarctic expedition* R.E. Owen, Government Printer, Wellington: 142.

By midday the ship was making little progress through the pack ice, which had now become nine-tenths of heavy hummocked floes.

**1979** Bester, M.N. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* 9: 27.

Ice cover (in tenths), floe size and floe surface nature .. were recorded at 20-minute intervals.

**1988** Murray-Smith, Stephen *Sitting on penguins: people and politics in Australian Antarctica* Hutchinson Australia, Sydney: 141.

It was like riding on a bowsprit, high above the ice we were ploughing through, ten-tenths most of the time but, fortunately, only one-year pack. We would have had a harder time in old ice.

## Terra Australis

The formerly unknown southern land or lands, now resolved into Antarctica, Australasia, the South Pacific and Tierra del Fuego; more specifically, the **antarctic continent** itself.

**[1531]** Finé, Oronce quoted in Eisler, William (1995) *The furthest shore: images of Terra Australis from the Middle Ages to Captain Cook* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 15.

Terra australis recenter inventa, sed nondum[m] cognita.]

**1628** Fletcher, Francis in Drake, Sir Francis, ed. W.S.W. Vaux (1963 repr.) *The world encompassed* Burt Franklin, New York: 90.

Mr. Candish ... was able to say no more, either to prove that that *Terra Australis* is a Continent, or that the passag is a strait.

**16 May 1821** *New York Gazette and General Advertiser* quoted in Bertrand, Kenneth J. (1971) *Americans in Antarctica* American Geographical Society special publication no. 39: 107.

It is also hoped we shall soon receive a more full and satisfactory account of the Terra Australis, or continent of the

southern hemisphere, occupying the vast space between the tracts already surveyed and the pole.

**1935** Christensen, Lars, transl. fr Norwegian by Jayne, E.M.G. *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 150.

Wilkes, D'Urville and Ross discovered South Victoria Land (1839–43), and it began to dawn on the geographers that the *terra australis* of the ancients really existed.

**1995** Heacox, Kim *Wildlife Conservation* 98(1) Jan–Feb: 22.

As if on the wings of an albatross we sail south from southern Chile for the bottom of the world, across the Drake Passage, into waters that surround the coldest, highest, driest, windiest, loneliest, and perhaps loveliest place left on Earth: Terra Australis Incognita — Antarctica.

**the Antarctic** See *Antarctic*

**the base** See *base*

**the boys** See *boys*

**the conflict** See *conflict*

**the convergence** See *convergence*

**the freezer** See *freezer*

**the fumigator** See *fumigator*

**the Ice** See *Ice*

**the Pole** See *Pole*

**the South** See *South*

## thin-billed prion

The seabird *Pachyptila belcheri* (fam. Procellariidae), a burrowing petrel which breeds mainly in the sub-antarctic — on the Falkland Islands, Kerguelen and Crozet Islands. It is also called the **firebird**, **narrow-billed prion** and **slender-billed prion**.

**1936** Mathews, Gregory M. *A supplement to the birds of Norfolk & Lord Howe Islands to which is added those birds of New Zealand not figured by Buller H.F. & G. Witherby*, London: 29.

*Heteroprion belcheri*. Thin-billed prion ... These birds are known as fire birds, because they fly to a fire or light.

**1965** Harper, Peter C. in *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 4(1) Mar: 390.

I well remember climbing up the outside of the “Eltanin’s” funnel in heavy rain to retrieve a Thin-billed Prion which had landed between two of the four exhausts emitting hot, foul smoke.

**1988** (Falkland Islands) *National Geographic* 173(3) Mar: 409.

Thin-billed prions, burrowing petrels that live in nest colonies like ground squirrels.

## threadfin pithead

[Thread-fin and thread-fish have been recorded as fish names since 1885 (NOED), but not for fish related to this one.]

The marine fish *Aethotaxis mitopteryx*: see **longfin icedevil**.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

**1990** Gon, O. and Heemstra, P.C. *Fishes of the Southern Ocean* J.L.B. Smith Institute of Ichthyology, Grahamstown: 283.

*Aethotaxis mitopteryx* DeWitt, 1962 Threadfin pithead "grey with violet hue; lighter below with metallic lustre" ... Not yet commercially exploited.

**thrush**

[*Transferred use of thrush which has been recorded for birds of the genus Turdus since c1000 (NOED): see 1855 quotation.*]

**1.** *Tristan da Cunha* The bird *Nesocichla eremita*: see **starchy**.

**1817** Carmichael, Captain Dugald in *Transactions of the Linnean Society of London* (1818) 12(2): 496.

The only land birds on the island are a species of thrush (*Turdus Guianensis?*), a bunting (*Emberiza Brasiliensis?*), and the common moor-hen (*Fulica Chloropus*). These birds have spread over the whole island, and are found on the table-land as well as on the low ground.

**[1855]** Gould, John in *Proceedings of the Zoological Society of London* XXVIII: 165.

*Nesocichla eremita* ... *Hab.* The island of Tristan d'Acunha. *Remark.* — This bird is about the size of the common Song-thrush, *Turdus musicus*, and similar to it in appearance; on examination, however, it will be found to differ very considerably in structure.]

**1879** (Inaccessible Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 122.

Hopping and fluttering about amongst the trees and herbage, were abundance of a small finch and a thrush; no other land birds were seen. The finch (*Neospiza Acunhae*) looks very like a green-finch, and is about the same size. The thrush (*Nesocichla eremita*) looks like a very dark-coloured song thrush, but it is peculiar for its remarkably strong acutely ridged bill. It is peculiar to the Tristan group. It feeds especially on the berries of the little Nertera; but also is fond of picking the bones of the victims of the predatory gull.

**1906** Nicoll, M.J. in *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* XVI(cxxxv): 94.

Tristan da Cunha was sighted at 8 a.m. on January 17th, and at 4 p.m. we were off the settlement. Two boats came off to us, and I had a talk with one of the men about the birds. He told me that the only land-bird on Tristan is the Thrush (*Nesocichla eremita*), which is now very rare.

**1926** (Inaccessible Island) Rev Rogers in Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 169.

The solitary thrush or 'starchy' is plentiful and nests here, and we secured some eggs of it. There is also the Tristan finch, or 'canary' as they call it.

**1976** Wace, N.M. and Holdgate, M.W. *Man and nature in the Tristan da Cunha islands* IUCN monograph no. 6, Morges, Switzerland: 48.

The commoner surviving species of the three original land birds on Tristan, the thrush or 'starchy' (*Nesocichla eremita*) is most frequently encountered to the east and south of the island away from the Settlement.

**2.** *Falkland Islands* The bird *Turdus falcklandii falcklandii*: see **Falkland thrush**.

**1841** Darwin, Charles *The zoology of the voyage of H.M.S. Beagle, under the command of Captain Fitzroy, R.N. during the years 1832 to 1836: Pt III Birds* London: 59.

*Turdus Falklandicus* .. I believe I saw the same species in the valleys of Northern Chile; I was informed that the thrush there lines its nest with mud, in which respect it follows the habit of species of the northern hemisphere. In the Falkland

Islands it chiefly inhabits the more rocky and drier hills. It haunts also the neighbourhood of the settlement, and very frequently may be seen within old sheds ... It is tame, silent, and inquisitive.

**1904** Vallentin, Rupert in *Memoirs and Proc of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no. 23: 43.

*Turdus falcklandicus*, "Thrush." Universally distributed but nowhere very abundant on these islands. The nest is roughly constructed of grass stalks and twigs of diddle-dee bushes and is usually to be found in a Fachina bush .. or on a rocky ledge on some hill side.

**1913** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 22(4) 1 Apr: 61.

An Ordinance To amend the law with regard to the preservation of wild animals and birds ... Schedule I. .. Thrush (*Turdus falcklandicus*) ... forbidden to kill.

**1988** Woods, Robin *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 229.

Falkland Thrush *Turdus falcklandii* .. Local name: Thrush; American name: Falkland Robin ... Plump, robust, long-legged and noisy, this brown bird is familiar around all settlements.

**thumper** *Dog-sledging*

[*From the thump of hitting the rope against dogs or a harder surface.*]

A short piece of heavy rope, used as an aid in administering discipline to **sledge dogs**.

**1982** Ledingham, Rod *ANARE dog drivers manual* Antarctic Division, Department of Science and the Environment: 31.

A whip or a piece of heavy spliced rope 4–5 cm diameter can be used as a "thumper". Grab the dogs by the harness, pull them out, bash them on the nose.

**1996** Walton, Kevin and Atkinson, Rick *Of dogs and men: the illustrated story of the dogs of the British Antarctic Survey 1944–1994* Images Publishing, Malvern Wells: 61.

In time, the whip was phased out altogether, and the 'thumper' brought in. This was a short length of one-inch manila rope with a back splice in one end and an eye splice in the other. Hit against the sledge it made a frightening noise, which quickly brought the dogs up short, and was altogether much easier to use!

**tide crack** *Also tidal crack*

[*Tide crack or tidal crack was recorded in arctic use in 1856 (NOED).*]

A crack generally running parallel to the shore of the sea or a fjord, at the point where **sea ice**, which moves up and down with the tide, meets fixed **shore ice** or an ice wall or cliff. Such cracks often occur in twos, threes or fours, and may open and close with the tide.

**1907** (McMurdo Sound) Hodgson, T.V. *National Antarctic Expedition 1901–1904. Natural history vol III Zoology and botany (Invertebrata: marine algae, musci)* British Museum, London: 1.

A tide crack separating the Barrier from the "floating" ice runs between Black Island and the Bluff Range a little to the south of Mount Discovery.

**1930** Debenham, Frank in Bernacchi, L.C., co-ordinator *The polar book: produced for the British Polar Exhibition 1930* E. Allom & Co Ltd, London: 48.

In sheltered bays the sheet of ice continues to grow in thickness throughout the winter and is loosely attached to the land, the movement of the tides causing a tide-crack to form between the ice which is afloat and that which has frozen to the shore.

**1965** Hedblom, Captain E.E. *Polar manual*, 4th edn US Navy, Bethesda, Maryland: 151.

Stay away from tidal cracks and ice edges. Give icebergs, headlands, and glacier fronts a wide berth. They are *all* dangerous.

**1995** Patterson, Diana and Hancock, John *Davis day-to-day: an information booklet ANARE*, Davis: 17.

The only waste remaining behind should be urine and whenever possible you should urinate in a tide crack.

### tiger *Obs.*

#### Sea tiger.

**1833** Fanning, Edmund *Voyages round the world; with selected sketches of voyages to the South Seas ... between the years 1792 and 1832* Collins & Hannay, New York: 445.

Some of the crew were in the boat three miles from the schooner, when a large tiger was observed following in their wake.

**1866** Musgrave, Thomas in Shillinglaw, John J., ed. *Castaway on the Auckland Islands: a narrative of the wreck of the "Grafton" and of the escape of the crew after twenty months suffering. From the private journals of Captain Thomas Musgrave together with some account of the Aucklands* Lockwood and Co., London: 142.

The females are of a grey, golden buff, or beautiful silver colour, sometimes spotted like the leopard, and are called tiger seals.

### tin dog NZ

A motorised over-snow vehicle, esp. and originally a **motor toboggan**. See also **iron dog**.

**1969** Billing, Graham *South. Man and nature in Antarctica: a New Zealand view* A.H. & A.W. Reed, Wellington: 69.

A motor toboggan cannot be driven on short rations and dog teams do not have mechanical breakdowns. There is hardly a man who has worked with them who would swap "shaggy dogs" for "tin dogs", as the motor toboggans are called.

**1990** Naveen, Ron, Monteath, Colin, de Roy, Tui and Jones, Mark *Wild ice: Antarctic journeys* Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington: 184.

Unlike the British, who remained almost totally dependent on dog power until 1975, in part due to weaker crevasse bridges and rotten sea ice on the warmer Antarctic Peninsula, New Zealanders began experimenting with "tin dogs" or skidoos from the mid-sixties onward.

**1995** Crossley, Louise *Explore Antarctica* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 95.

[caption] The Commonwealth Transantarctic Expedition finally realised Shackleton's dream using 'tin dogs' like this converted Ferguson tractor.

### tit NZ

The small forest bird *Petroica macrocephala marrineri*: see **Auckland Island tit**.

**15 Mar 1904** Wilson, Edward in Roberts, Brian, ed. (1967) *Edward Wilson's birds of the Antarctic* New Orchard Editions, Poole [Dorset]: 153.

I shot another small bird [sc. *Petroica macrocephala macrocephala*], a beautiful little jet black and white tit with orange feet and a cream coloured breast.

**1973** (Auckland Islands) *The Islander: the quarterly bulletin of the Campbell-Raoul Island association* 2(6) Mar: 127.

Tits and bellbirds were feeding young.

### toad notothen Also *toad notie*

[Toad-fish has been recorded as a fish name since 1612 (NOED) for several distinct northern hemisphere fishes, from their appearance.]

The small marine fish *Lepidonotothen mizops* (fam. Nototheniidae), which grows to about 15 cm (6 in) long and is found in the waters around Kerguelen, Heard, Crozet and Prince Edward Islands.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean (fishing areas 48, 58, 88)*. FAO, Rome, vol. 2: 363.

*Nototheniops mizops* ... Toad notie ..... Not marketed, except perhaps as fishmeal.

**1990** Gon, O. and Heemstra, P.C. *Fishes of the Southern Ocean* J.L.B. Smith Institute of Ichthyology, Grahamstown: 298.

*Lepidonotothen (Lindbergichthys) mizops* (Günther, 1880). Toad notothen ... Known from Kerguelen and Heard Islands (Balushkin .. includes the Prince Edward and Crozet islands).

### toasted adjective, US. Also *toast(y)*

Burnt out by the **ice** — behaving oddly, often antisocially, and needing to leave.

**1995** *Des Moines Sunday Register* 22 Oct: In.p.j.

I came back here a little toasty after my first winter down there.

**1996** (South Pole) Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 108.

A tall man who had been leaning silently on the bar picked up his parka and left without a word.

'Man, is he toasted,' said the woman with the custard hair.

'What does toasted mean?' I asked.

'It means you've been here too long!' she said.

**1997** Robinson, Kim Stanley *Antarctica* HarperCollins, London: 25.

Feeling bad about what she had done to X was another reason she was toast.

**1997** *Rocky Mountain News [Denver]* 5 Oct: 70A.

"Man, am I toasty or what?" Cleavelin reflected. "I gotta get outta here!" A little cabin fever should be forgiven.

### toboggan verb

[From the noun toboggan a sledge for gliding over snow.]

(Of a penguin), to drop onto its belly and propel itself along using flippers and feet, in a gliding movement over ice or snow.

**[1901]** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 192.

The arrival of the small penguins at Cape Adare presented a most curious appearance. When walking on the rough ice, they strut along upright, but as soon as they reach ice upon which there is some snow, they drop down on their breasts and glide along toboggan fashion, making use of flippers as well as feet.]

**24 Nov 1911** Levick, Dr G. Murray, R.N. (1914) *Antarctic penguins: a study of their social habits* William Heinemann, London: 64.

The last minute was a very fierce and vindictive "mill", both fighting with all their might, and ended in one of them trying to toboggan away from his opponent.

**1957** Anderson, W. Ellery *Expedition south* Evans Brothers, London: 55.

Huskies .. might work conscientiously for hours and suddenly spot a penguin and tear off after it. Instead of retreating at speed by tobogganing down the snow-slope on its belly, the stupid bird would stand its ground. The team would pile on it and it would be killed or maimed. To try to prevent this, we used to halt the team when we saw a penguin, and one of us would go ahead and boot it well out of

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

the way. Penguins are tough creatures. You can't hurt one by kicking it with a snow-boot.

- 1995** Kalman, Bobbie *Penguins* Crabtree Publishing Co, NY: 19. When penguins get tired of walking, they toboggan. They flop onto their belly and push themselves along with their flippers.

**tongue**

[Tongue is recorded in arctic use in 1820 (NOED) for the same feature.]

A projection of ice — longer than wide — extending onto sea or land, but attached to land; an **ice tongue**. These can be 50 km (30 miles) or longer.

- 1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 334.

[glossary] Tongue.— Used in the book to express a long mass of glacier ice running out in the sea for a considerable distance, but attached to the land.

- 1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* Duckworth, London: 82.

I went in the ship to the Tongue — a peninsula of ice, ten to one hundred feet in height, which jutted out into the sea for some five miles. It was a mile wide at the coastal end, whilst it tapered to less than half a mile in width at the snout. Glacier Tongue is one of the mysteries of the Far South. It is a relic of the ancient ice-sheet which originally covered the whole of McMurdo Sound.

- 1965** McKinnon, G.W., compiler *Gazeteer of the Australian Antarctic Territory* ANARE interim reports series A (II) Geography no. 75. Antarctic Division, Dept External Affairs, Melbourne: 85.

*Longhurst tongue*: A narrow snow-covered extension of the Polar Plateau to the foot of Mount Longhurst. It is about the same height as the Polar Plateau and is about 25 miles long and 5 miles wide; in about 79°22'S, 156°08'E. The tongue was used by the Darwin Glacier Party of the TAE (1956–58).

- 1991** *Antarctic Society of Australia newsletter [Sydney]* 25 (June): 9.

As we approached the Mertz Glacier we were overwhelmed; this thirty-mile-wide tongue of ice extended into the sea for over fifty miles with sheer walls at least 150' high and many turquoise-coloured caverns could be seen.

**toothfish**

An edible marine fish of the genus *Dissostichus*, either *D. mawsoni* (see **giant antarctic cod**) which lives in high antarctic waters, or *D. eleginoides* (see **Patagonian toothfish**) which lives around subantarctic islands and coastal South America. These are the largest fish in antarctic waters, and they are very similar in appearance.

- 1993** Miller, Richard Gordon *A history and atlas of the fishes of the Antarctic ocean* Foresta Institute for Ocean and Mountain Studies, Carson City, Nevada: 118.

[caption] An adult toothfish, *Dissostichus mawsoni*, a species frequently brought up onto the ice by Weddell seals.

- 1997** *Canberra Times* 7 June: 3.

An official from the [sc. Australian Fisheries Management] authority was unable to say how much tooth-fish had been approved by all countries with responsibility for Antarctic waters, but environmentalists have estimated that an additional 100,000 tonnes of the fish is being poached each year.

**toro**

The marine fish *Cottoperca gobio* (fam. Bovichtidae) of the waters surrounding southern South America, including

the Falkland Islands. It has been caught by trawl and commercially marketed.

- 1993** Miller, Richard Gordon *A history and atlas of the fishes of the Antarctic ocean* Foresta Institute for Ocean and Mountain Studies, Carson City, Nevada: 109.

The subantarctic "toro" of the Falkland Island Channels, *Cottoperca gobio*.

**tossel** noun and attrib., *Tristan da Cunha*

[Tossel is a dialect form of tassel a tuft.]

The crest of a **rockhopper penguin**. These were formerly made into 'tossel mats' on Tristan.

- [1923 Macklin, A.H. in *Country Life* 6 Jan: 10.

The rockhopper is more rare on South Georgia than either the gentoo or the king. It is found more plentifully on the Tristan da Cunha group of islands. It has a pretty torso with a crest of yellow and black feathers which the Tristan da Cunha islanders make into mats and knick-knacks for sale to passing ships.]

- 1940** Hagen, Yngvar in Christopherson, Erling, transl. fr Norwegian by Benham, R.L. *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 192.

The Tristanites produce a worthless commodity consisting of round mats made of the yellow-tufted scalps of penguins. These "tosselmats", as they are called, are typical of the waste perpetrated on birds which are essential for the maintenance of the population. The mats are composed of twenty-five to thirty, sometimes even forty scalps, and the making of these trumpery articles requires the slaughter of an equal number of adult birds. The penguins are usually killed for this purpose in April, when the new feathers have grown.

- 1957** Booy, D.M. *Rock of exile: a narrative of Tristan da Cunha* J.M. Dent & Sons, London: 144.

Local curios and home-made articles — sheepskin mats, knitted garments, pouches made of penguin 'tossels' [etc].

- 1976** Wace, N.M. and Holdgate, M.W. *Man and nature in the Tristan da Cunha islands* IUCN monograph no. 6, Morges, Switzerland: 78.

Tossel mats made from penguin scalps used to be sold to visitors.

**tourist**

A summer worker in Antarctica.

- 1966** (Macquarie Island) *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 4(6) June: 300.

March was extremely busy with preparations for the Summer Tourists' Farewell Ding.

- 1976** *The McMurdo Sometimes* DF77-15 (28 Nov): 1.

Some of the men I talked to wished that all the "tourists", referring to the summer support people, would stop coming to the Station.

**trace**

[NOED records the obsolete (latest use 1807) traces a pair of ropes, chains or leather straps connecting the collar of a draught-animal to its load. The antarctic usage continues this meaning.]

1. A rope or tape harness for **sledge dogs** to pull a **sledge** with. See also **centre trace method**, **main trace**.

- 1905** Scott, Captain Robert F. *The voyage of the 'Discovery'* Macmillan and Co, London: 200.

The rest [sc. of the dogs] hung disconsolately back on the traces and had to be half led, half dragged over the frozen surface.

**1966** Baum, Allyn *Antarctica: the worst place in the world* Macmillan Co, NY: 115.

Antarctic dogs ... fight, even in the traces.

**1979** Hurlley, Frank *Shackleton's argonauts: the epic tale of Shackleton's voyage to Antarctica in 1915* McGraw-Hill Book Co Pty Ltd: 74.

The dogs, when clipped to the trace, are trained to sit absolutely still on their haunches.

**1992** Lied, Commander Nils Oscar: *the true story of a husky* Kerr Publishing, Sydney: 21.

Jack Walsh, the dog-trainer, was constantly occupied with making special sledging straps called traces, harnesses and other gear.

## 2. A harness for manhauling.

**1922** Cherry-Garrard, Apsley (1994 repr.) *The worst journey in the world* Picador, London: 265.

Bill lengthened his trace out with the Alpine rope now and often afterwards, so he found the crevasses well ahead of us and the sledge: nice for us but not so nice for Bill. Crevasses in the dark *do* put your nerves on edge.

**1964** (near Ferrar Glacier) Helm, A.S. and Miller, J.H. *Antarctica: the story of the New Zealand party of the Trans-Antarctic expedition* R.E. Owen, Government Printer, Wellington: 101.

When passing the valleys between Beacon Heights, New Mountain, Terra Cotta, and Knobhead they were exposed to winds which sent them staggering in their traces.

**1986** *Geo [Aust]* 8(3) Sept–Nov: 18.

The sledge would sink into the snow and all of us had to “lean into the trace” to keep moving.

## track house *Historical, Falkland Islands*

An **outside house** belonging to a particular farm, and falling between **settlements**. Its main purpose was to house the shepherd caring for the surrounding piece of countryside, but track houses also offered food and accommodation to travellers. See also **outside house**.

**1994** (1910s–1930s) Rogers, Ellen, quoted in Simpson, Tim *Cooking the Falkland Island way* Peregrine Publishing, Bangor: 15.

As our house was on the track between Stanley and Darwin, (known as a ‘track house’), Mother was expected to cater for travellers making this journey.

## tractor train

A group of mobile huts — living quarters, laboratories etc. — towed along by a tracked oversnow vehicle, and designed for long traverses across the ice.

**1957** *Ross Sea Committee, Trans-Antarctic Expedition: newsletter [Wellington]* no 12 (1 Feb): 6.

The tractor trains turn the corner around Cape Armitage.

**1960** Priestley in *Polar Record* 10(64): 14.

While I was in Antarctica a whole tractor train disappeared into the depths of a crevasse on the Ross Ice Shelf.

**1978** Lanzerotti, L.J. and Park, C.G., eds *Upper atmosphere research in Antarctica* American Geophysical Union, Washington DC: 7.

Byrd station was established and resupplied by tractor trains from Little America V on the Ross Ice Shelf.

**1992** Steger, Will and Bowermaster, Jon *Crossing Antarctica* Alfred A. Knopf, New York: 27.

When he Isc. Qin Dahel worked with an Australian research team here in Antarctica they traveled by tractor-trains, with hot running water and electric blankets.

## train *Tristan da Cunha*

[In Canadian usage train has been recorded since 1783 (NOED) for a rough sledge.]

An ox cart.

**1957** Booy, D.M. *Rock of exile: a narrative of Tristan da Cunha* J.M. Dent & Sons, London: 93.

These carts were valued possessions, owned only by a few. Even if a man had the bullocks, he might have to wait years for suitable drift-wood to make wheels, axle, shaft, and even a small body. The carts were often referred to as ‘trains’.

**1963** Mackay, Margaret *Angry island: the story of Tristan da Cunha (1506–1963)* Arthur Barker, London: 147.

A ‘train’ [is] an ox-cart.

## transantarctic adjective. Also *transpolar*

[Transpolar was recorded first in Arctic use, in 1850 (NOED).]

Across the **antarctic continent**.

**1939** Ellsworth, Lincoln in *National Geographic* LXXVI(1) Jul: 129.

During the three months we waited we had no suitable weather in which to make a trans-Antarctic flight — only an unbroken period of snow squalls and winds.

**1952** *Walkabout. Australian Geographical Magazine* 18(10) Oct: 19.

Scientists think the continent may consist of two great land-masses, one called East Antarctica, and the other, only half as big, West Antarctica. Where these land masses come in close contact will be the route of the trans-polar crossing.

**12–13 Jan 1959** Béchervaise, John (1963) *Blizzard and fire: a year at Mawson, Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 14.

The Russian ... land vehicles far exceeded ours in size, power, range and facilities, some being designed for trans-polar expeditions via Sovietskaya, an inland base, to Lazarev (on the coast, in about 10° E. long.).

**1995** Ives, Jack D. and Sugden, David, eds *Polar regions Reader's Digest*, Sydney: 124.

Lincoln Ellsworth made the first transantarctic flight in 1935.

## Treaty *attrib.*

In the combination **Treaty nation** or **power**, a signatory to the **Antarctic Treaty**; **Treaty region** or **area**, the area covered by it, which extends from 60° southwards to the **South Pole**.

**1976** *Current Affairs Bulletin [Sydney]* 53(1) Jun: 5.

The size of wintering-over complements .. in the region south of 60° South (the Treaty region).

**1982** Hosking, Eric and Sage, Bryan *Antarctic wildlife* Croom Helm, London: 25.

The Treaty powers .. include all those with an interest (including territorial claims) in the Antarctic.

**1992** Enzenbacher, Debra in *Polar Record* 28(164): 17.

Only tourists who have visited the Treaty Area are included in this study.

**1997** Robinson, Kim Stanley *Antarctica* HarperCollins, London: 115.

‘The Treaty always seemed fragile.’

‘Fragile, idealistic — all those things. And even when it was in effect the Treaty nations broke its rules all the time.’

## Tristan da Cunha

The island is named after Portuguese navigator Tristaño da Cunha (~1460–), who saw it, but did not land.

in 1506. People first settled there in 1790. On 14 August 1816, Great Britain in the form of Captain Festing took formal possession of Tristan da Cunha and the two smaller islands Inaccessible and Nightingale, and landed a party of occupation, apparently concerned that Napoleon might attempt to escape there from his confinement on St Helena.

The volcanic South Atlantic islands including Tristan usually also count Gough Island, some 350 km (220 miles) to the south, among the group. The main island is Tristan da Cunha, and the smaller islands are Nightingale, Inaccessible, Stoltenhoff and Middle Island.

About 300 people live on Tristan, which is 2900 km west of Cape Town and is a dependency of the British St Helena. Tristan's residents were evacuated to Britain in 1961 when the volcano on the main island erupted and, only after they agitated to be returned, were returned to this small, extremely isolated island by a disbelieving British government in 1963.

## Tristan

### A Tristanian.

**1964** Hosegood, Nancy *The glass island: the story of Tristan da Cunha* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 141.

There was certainly little left over for luxuries, and a man had to work overtime if his wife needed a coat or a child a new pair of shoes. Not that the Tristans went short of necessities.

**1990** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 6 (Mar): 6.

Others will relish the rare chance of hearing Tristans express an Islander's point of view.

## Tristan bunting *Also in full Tristan da Cunha bunting*

The green and yellow bird *Nesospiza acunhae* (fam. Fringillidae), which used to live on the main island of Tristan da Cunha, but now occurs only on other islands of the Tristan group (Inaccessible, Nightingale, Middle and Stoltenhoff). These surviving birds may be separate sub-species. The bird is also called a **big canary**, or **finch**.

[**1922** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* XLIII(cclxxi): 3.

The Tristan da Cunha Group was next visited, and landings were made on each of the islands. Although at Tristan da Cunha many of the birds that have been reported from there have been driven off the island since it has been inhabited, the same species are generally to be found on Nightingale and Inaccessible islands. A series of the Thrush (*Nesocichla eremita*) and of the Bunting (*Nesospiza acunhae*) was collected, and a bird somewhat resembling the latter, but much larger in size and with a different type of bill, was found on Nightingale Island.]

**1926** Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 211.

The Tristan da Cunha Bunting (*Nesospiza acunhae*).

**1952** Hagen, Yngvar *Birds of Tristan da Cunha* Det Norske Videnskap Akademi i Oslo/Hos Jacob Dybwad, Oslo: 160.

*Nesospiza acunhae* (Cabanis), subsp. *acunhae*? ... Tristan Bunting ... The species as a whole endemic to Tristan da Cunha, now confined to Inaccessible and Nightingale.

**1975** Watson, George E. *Birds of the Antarctic and subantarctic. Antarctic Research Series* American Geophysical Union, Washington DC: 243.

The Tristan bunting is cautious but not shy. It climbs to the highest stems of tussock, calls for a while, and then flies a short distance to join other individuals ... The species disappeared from Tristan Island before rats were introduced, possibly because of the disappearance of tussock.

## Tristan crawfish *Also Tristan rock lobster, Tristan da Cunha crawfish or spiny lobster*

The rock lobster *Jasus tristani*: see **crawfish** 1.

[**28 Jan 1696** (Tristan da Cunha) Anon, quoted in Schilder, Günter, ed. and de Heer, C., transl. (1985) *Willem de Vlamingh: Voyage to the Great South Land* Royal Australian Historical Society, Sydney: 44.

Our people caught with hooks .. large lobsters without claws, etc.]

**1988** Williams, Austin B. *Lobsters of the world: an illustrated guide. Lobsters of the world in US trade* Osprey Books Huntington, New York: 60.

[caption] *Jasus tristani*, Tristan da Cunha spiny lobster. [end caption] Range: South Atlantic around Tristan da Cunha, Gough Island, and Vema Seamount. This species is of minor or probable economic importance.

**1990** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 6 (Mar): 3.

Erling Sivertsen ... was the first scientist to make a thorough study of the marine life in Tristan waters, and it was his pioneering work on the lifecycle of the Tristan crawfish (*Jasus tristani*) and its potential value to the islanders which resulted in the establishment of the very successful Crawfish Processing Factory on the island today.

**1991** Holthuis, L.B. *Marine lobsters of the world. FAO species catalogue vol 13* FAO, Rome: 104.

From Tristan da Cunha Island, the dinghies and motorboats worked from the shore, the catch being processed in the factory there ... Local Names: Tristan da Cunha (UK): Crawfish, Tristan crawfish, Tristan da Cunha crayfish, Tristan da Cunha spiny lobster.

**1994** Cooper, John and Ryan, Peter G. *Management plan for the Gough Island wildlife reserve* Government of Tristan da Cunha, Edinburgh, Tristan da Cunha: 1.

The only current economic activity within the reserve is inshore fishing for Tristan Rock Lobster.

## Tristan da Cunha islander *See Tristan Islander*

## Tristan da Cunha thrush *See Tristan thrush*

## Tristan diving petrel

The seabird *Pelecanoides urinatrix dacunhae*: see **flying pinnamin**.

**1952** Hagen, Yngvar *Birds of Tristan da Cunha* Det Norske Videnskap Akademi i Oslo/Hos Jacob Dybwad, Oslo: 133.

*Pelecanoides urinatrix* .. subsp. *dacunhae* ... Tristan Diving Petrel ... The present sub-species breeds at Nightingale and probably Inaccessible and Gough ... The local name of this species on Tristan da Cunha is "Flying Pin'amin" (the latter a corruption of "Penguin"). The bird is well-known to the inhabitants ... It commonly does not occur on the main island.

## Tristan finch

The bird *Nesospiza acunhae*: see **Tristan bunting**.

**1910** Barrow, K.M. *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 276.

There is nothing peculiar to Tristan in either its Fauna or Flora ... The Finch, the Tristan Finch (*Nesospiza Acunhae*). A land bird ... The first name is the island name.

**1926** (Inaccessible Island) Rogers, Rev in Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 169.

The solitary thrush or 'starchy' is plentiful and nests here, and we secured some eggs of it. There is also the Tristan finch, or 'canary' as they call it.

[**1976** Wace, N.M. and Holdgate, M.W. *Man and nature in the Tristan da Cunha islands* IUCN monograph no. 6, Morges, Switzerland: 48.

Little is known of the Tristan form of the finch (*Nesospiza acunhae*) which was observed in 1793.]

## Tristanian

[*Modern inhabitants of Tristan da Cunha prefer this term to 'Tristanites'.*]

A native of Tristan da Cunha.

**1963** Mackay, Margaret *Angry island: the story of Tristan da Cunha (1506-1963)* Arthur Barker, London: 69.

Later generations of Tristanians have wondered and giggled over the account of how the women were lined up on the beach and each of the other four bachelors chose his mate.

**1970** Munch, Peter A. *The song tradition of Tristan da Cunha*. Indiana University Publications, Folklore Institute Monograph Series vol. 22 Indiana University Research Center for the Language Sciences, Bloomington: 285.

A new Administrator came to Tristan in April 1965 ... He was convinced that "had the Tristanians spent another year in Britain, many of them would never have gone back to their island".

**1991** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 8 (Mar): 3.

Later during the year, a freak wave of enormous height demolished practically every hut on Nightingale Island. These huts are used for essential sleeping accommodation when the Tristanians visit the island for fat, guano and eggs.

## Tristan Islander Also *Tristan da Cunha Islander*

A **Tristanian**.

**1923** Macklin, A.H. in *Country Life* 6 Jan: 10.

The rockhopper is more rare on South Georgia than either the gentoo or the king. It is found more plentifully on the Tristan da Cunha group of islands. It has a pretty torso with a crest of yellow and black feathers which the Tristan da Cunha islanders make into mats and knick-knacks for sale to passing ships.

**1926** (Inaccessible Island) Mr Rogers in Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 165.

The beach ... rises to a long and narrow stretch of green bank with ferns, grass, and a few trees and tussock running all this side of the island from point to point, and on which the Tristan islanders usually fatten three or four bullocks very successfully.

**1952** (Marion Island) Crawford, Allan B. in *the Emu* 252(2) May: opp. 76.

[caption] Macaroni Penguins moulting ... The man in the background is a Tristan da Cunha islander.

**1970** Munch, Peter A. *The song tradition of Tristan da Cunha*. Indiana University Publications, Folklore Institute Monograph Series vol. 22 Indiana University Research Center for the Language Sciences, Bloomington: 2.

From the 1820s onward, the waters around Tristan da Cunha became a regular hunting ground for New England whalers, mostly from New Bedford, New London, and Salem. In consequence, trade with passing ships became in fact an impor-

tant and profitable occupation for the Tristan Islanders for some time.

**1993** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 13 (Sept): 1.

Because the passengers are Tristan Islanders, I visit their homes to stamp their passports and have a friendly chat.

## Tristanite

A **Tristanian**.

**4 Mar 1907** Barrow, K.M. quoted in Munch, Peter (1971) *Crisis in Utopia: the ordeal of Tristan da Cunha* Thomas Y. Crowell, NY: 151.

The people soon recognised two Tristanites, Willie Swain, son of Susan Swain, and Charlie Green, son of Lucy Green, who had been away for two or three years.

**1926** Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 30.

At length some of the men got across and Glass and the Tristanites rescued the remainder in their small boats.

**1940** Brander, J. *Tristan da Cunha 1506-1902* Allen & Unwin, London: 17.

The only indigenous tree on the island is one of the Rhamnaceae (the buckthorn family), the *Phytica nitida*; it has no English name, and is called "Island tree" by the Tristanites.

**1967** Pondus-Bøgerne, Lohse, transl. fr Danish by Falk-Rønne, Arne *Back to Tristan* Allen & Unwin, London: 72.

"A penguin on Nightingale must be just as uncomfortable as a Tristanite in England."

## Tristan moorhen

The blackish rail *Gallinula nesiotis* (fam. Rallidae), a bird now probably extinct on Tristan. In 1956 **Gough moorhens** were introduced to Tristan; the present moorhens there are likely to be descendants of these birds.

**1984** Richardson, M.E. in *Cormorant* 12(2): 123.

The status of the flightless Tristan Moorhen *G. nesiotis*, formerly regarded as extinct, is now uncertain.

**1997** Woolley, John *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 21 (Sept): 6.

Our main aim was to establish the population of Moorhens on the island and to seek to determine, by means of blood samples, if any of the existing population could have descended from the original Tristan Moorhens and not from the Gough Moorhens introduced in 1956.

## Tristan tern

The seabird *Sterna vittata tristanensis* (fam. Laridae), which breeds on Tristan da Cunha, Gough, St Paul and Amsterdam Islands. It is a subspecies of the **antarctic tern**, and is sometimes called a **kingbird**.

**1952** Hagen, Yngvar *Birds of Tristan da Cunha* Det Norske Videnskap Akademi i Oslo/Hos Jacob Dybwad, Oslo: 145.

The Tristan Tern is the largest of all the races of *vittata* besides the form of West Antarctica ... The common tern of Tristan da Cunha, by the islanders named "King-Bird".

**1971** Bakker, E.M. van Zinderen Sr., Winterbottom, J.M., eds and R.A. Dyer *Marion and Prince Edward Islands* A.A. Balkema, Cape Town: 169.

The Tristan Tern (*Sterna vittata tristanensis*) could be separated from the other *S. vittata* specimens on measurement only.

## Tristan thrush Also *Tristan da Cunha thrush*

The bird *Nesocichla eremita*: see **starchy**.

**1910** Barrow, K.M. *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 276.

There is nothing peculiar to Tristan in either its Fauna or Flora. Of the birds those we saw or hear most of were:- ... The Starchy, the Tristan Thrush (*Nesocichla*). A land bird. No song. [etc.] ... The first name is the island name.

**1930** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* L(CCCXLII): 75. Lord Rothschild, F.R.S., exhibited the hitherto undescribed eggs of the Tristan da Cunha Thrush and Diving Petrel (*Nesocichla eremita* Gould and *Pelecanoides urinatrix dacunhae* Nicoll), and made the following remarks:- The *Nesocichla* eggs are typical Turdine eggs, and, except that they are longer and narrower, might easily be mistaken for heavily-spotted Blackbirds' eggs.

**1958** (Tristan da Cunha) Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 63.

In the forest, the Tristan Thrush was quite common and sang cheerfully from the branches. Collecting insects from below the canopy, I tried to jot down what the song sounded like. 'Pseeooee, pseeooee, psee-ptsee', it went.

**1988** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 3 (Sept): 10.

The Tristan Thrush or "Starchy" and the Yellow-nosed Albatross (Molly) are shown on the 10p and 20p stamps.

### trout *Falkland Islands*

[Trout has been used in English for various fishes resembling the freshwater *Salmo* since 1604 (NOED).]

A freshwater fish, esp. *Aplochiton zebra* (fam. Galaxiidae), which grows to about 30 cm (1 ft) long and has blackish stripes. It occurs mostly in freshwater lakes but can live in saltwater and is good eating. It was once common, but the introduction of the sea-trout has diminished its numbers. It is also called **native trout** and **zebra trout**.

**27 Jan 1882** Wiseman, William in Layman, Rear-Admiral C.H. and Cameron, Jane (1995) *The Falklands and the Dwarf: the cruise of HMS Dwarf in the Falkland Islands 1881-1882* Picton Publishing, Chippenham: 137.

We were regaled with tea and fresh trout out of the river.

**1906** Lönnerberg, Einar in *Vetenskapsakademiens Handlingar* 40(5): 22.

*Haplochiton zebra* Jenyns. 7 specimens from freshwater at Mount Pleasant, Falklands, collected and presented to the Expedition by Mr. John Kirwan. This fish is known to the Falklanders under the name "trout", which seems rather suitable as it is an antarctic substitute for this fish, or perhaps better still for the [c]harr of the arctic or subarctic region.

**1924** Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands. With notes on the natural history* by Rupert Vallentin Clarendon Press, Oxford: 356.

Trout abundant. The specimens I brought home with me from this lake have been examined by Mr. G.A. Boulenger, F.R.S. He identifies them as *Galaxias attenuatus*, Jen. ... Trout (*Galaxias maculatus*, Jen.) abundant.

**1992** Strange, Ian J. *A field guide to the wildlife of the Falkland Islands and South Georgia* Harper Collins, London: 141.

Falkland Trout *Aplochiton zebra* Locally referred to as the native or local 'trout' and the only other indigenous freshwater fish recorded in the islands.

### try out *verb. Esp. whaling, sealing*

[Try out is recorded in this sense of separating oil from blubber or fat, from 1582 onwards (NOED).]

To render **blubber** for oil, esp. from whales and seals, and on Tristan da Cunha, to get cooking fat from large seabirds (**petrels**).

**1833** (Falkland Islands) Fanning, Edmund *Voyages round the world; with selected sketches of voyages to the South Seas ... between the years 1792 and 1832* Collins & Hannay, New York: 421.

These islands afford good harbors, where vessels may anchor and obtain cargoes of oil and bone, as fast as the oil can be tried out.

**28 Aug 1865** (Auckland Island) Musgrave, Thomas in Shillinglaw, John J., ed. *Castaway on the Auckland Islands: a narrative of the wreck of the "Grafton" and of the escape of the crew after twenty months suffering* Lockwood and Co., London: 120.

The other people have been skinning other seals, and trying out the blubber. They have got about 20 gallons of oil.

**1951** (Tristan da Cunha) Rowan, M.K. in *The Ostrich* XXII(3) Dec: 153.

The third and final factor contributing to the Islanders' slaughter of Mollymawks is their need of fat. In former years the subcutaneous fat of the Yellow-nosed Albatross and the Greater Shearwater was "tried out" in vast quantities and formed the main source of the Islanders' annual supply of fat.

**1994** *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 14 (Mar): 10.

The way the Islanders obtain their fat is interesting, and puts one in mind of the old days of sealing and whaling. Indeed, many of the terms, like "trying out," date back to the Island's sealing and whaling ancestry. The birds are hunted, usually in homemade gloves, as a sheewater [sic] particularly can inflict a nasty bite with its powerful bill, and it is most unwise to thrust a naked hand down its three foot burrow. The birds are plucked and skinned and the fat scraped from the whole carcass. It is then placed into drums over open fires and tried out. It is then strained through large homemade strainers into containers which will carry back each family's year's supply of oil.

### try out *noun. Esp. whaling, sealing. Also trying out*

The act of rendering **blubber** for oil.

**1935** Christensen, Lars, transl. fr Norwegian by Jayne, E.M.G. *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 66.

By February 3 [sc. 1933] the total catch amounted to 101,100 barrels (plus 1,505 barrels of sperm-oil). Average trying-out, reckoning per blue whale, 120.6 barrels.

**1953** Innes, Hammond *The white south* Fontana Books, London: 67.

They all came up, gazing excitedly at that first glimpse of the factory ship. "Trying out by the look of it," Bland said.

**1978** (1909-16) Timms, Joe in Kerr, I.S. and Judd, N., eds *Marlborough whalers at Campbell Island: a narrative based on the recollections of J. Timms* Department of Lands and Survey, Wellington: 20.

In North East Harbour, the Cooks had a much bigger set up. Their buildings were bigger and they were well prepared for trying [purifying the oil by melting or boiling] the whale blubber in big try-pots. We had none of this sort of gear; we just took the whalebone from the whale, that was all.

**1982** Tønnessen, J.N. and Johnsen, A.O. *The history of modern whaling* C. Hurst and Co, London/Australian National University Press, Canberra: 163.

The figure of 31.5 barrels per whale suggests an astonishing wastage. Had the oil been extracted from every part of the whale, the try-out would have been three times as great.

### try pot *noun. Esp. whaling, sealing*

A round heavy cast-iron pot, about 1 m (3 ft 3 in) high, with two flattened sides, used to **try out** whale, seal and penguin blubber to obtain oil.

**1879** (Kerguelen Island) Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 196.



At Betsy Cove we stayed about ten days surveying the surrounding district. The Cove is also called Pot Harbour, from there being an old broken iron pot on the beach, a whaler's try pot, used for boiling down blubber.

**1953** (South Georgia) *Polar Record* 6(46) Jul: 749.

Clubs were used to kill the young, lances the older seals; old bulls were killed when they reared up by firing a musket ball through the palate into the brain. The blubber was flensed off with the hide, and cut into several strips which were left to soak in sea water for twenty-four hours to remove the blood. The strips were then cut into small pieces and boiled in the cast-iron try-pots, which were mounted on bricks. Penguin skins were frequently used to feed the fire. The pots were arranged in series, and the oil was run into a second pot after the first boiling, boiled once or twice more, and then run off into casks. Alternatively, the blubber was tried out aboard the parent vessel.

**1968** (Falkland Islands) Sparks, John and Soper, Tony *Penguins* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 201.

King penguins on South Georgia were boiled in large quantities for oil by traders. Klutschak, who visited the island in 1877 aboard an American schooner, wrote: "Human greed has been the cause of great persecution of these creatures. I am told (although personally I cannot vouch for it) that oil made from penguin fat was formerly utilized in tanning leather, and that vessels came for the purpose of taking these birds in huge numbers in order to extract the oil. This commodity, which must always have been expensive, has now been superseded by cheaper and perhaps better chemical preparations, hence the destruction of the penguins has ceased. Proof that they were slaughtered in former times, however, may be seen along the whole northern and north-eastern coasts where the small iron trypots, always arranged in pairs, still lie about. At French Harbour parts of a French penguin-hunting ship, which was wrecked in this labyrinth of reefs, may still be seen."

**1982** (1948, Marion and Prince Edward Islands) Crawford, Allan *Tristan da Cunha and the Roaring Forties* Charles Skilton, Edinburgh: 120.

In later years .. sealers and whalers succeeded in establishing bases at both islands for the preparation of seal skins and "trying out" blubber. Some of their large cast-iron try pots remain on the islands to this day.

**try works** *noun*. *Esp. whaling, sealing*

**Try pots** set up on ship or shore.

**22 Nov 1791** Melville, Captain Thomas, quoted in Dakin, William John (1938) *Whalemen adventurers: the story of whaling in Australian waters and other Southern Seas Related Thereto*, 2nd edn Angus & Robertson, Sydney: 11.

The day before we came in the *Mary Anne* came in, off a cruise, having met with very bad weather shipped a sea and washed her try-works overboard.

**1829** (Falkland Islands) Barnard, Capt. Charles H. *A narrative of the sufferings and adventures of Captain Charles H. Barnard in a voyage round the world, during the years 1812, 1813, 1814, 1815, & 1816* Printed for the author by J. Lindon, New York: 15.

We set up our tryworks on shore, and commenced boiling out the oil.

**1915** Harvey, Rufus Watson *Thrilling adventures in the Antarctic wilds* Unpublished record, in possession of Tim Vasquez: 35.

On the forward deck of the ship there was a large square try-works with two large iron kettles holding about ten barrels each.

**1938** Dakin, William John *Whalemen adventurers: the story of whaling in Australian waters and other Southern Seas Related Thereto*, 2nd edn Angus & Robertson, Sydney: 4.

The deck of the whale-ship was encumbered just behind the main mast with the try-works, brick erections very ugly in build, and comprising two large cauldrons with furnaces below.

**1988** *Australian National Antarctic Research Expeditions newsletter* June: 7.

Try-works were erected on shore by some gangs.

**1995** Evans, Kathryn *Shipwrecks, sealers and scientists: a guide to sites of cultural heritage on Macquarie Island* Tasmanian Parks and Wildlife Service, Hobart: 6.

The use of steam digesters in the production of elephant seal and penguin oil appears to be unique to Macquarie Island. The first digester was introduced to the island at Lusitania Bay by Joseph Hatch in 1889. The new technology replaced the use of tryworks (whereby trypots were placed over hearths) for rendering down blubber.

## tufted penguin

[From the crest or tuft of yellow feathers on the bird's head.]

Either of two **crested penguins**:

1. *Historical* The penguin *Eudyptes chrysolophus*: see **macaroni penguin**.

**1861** (Falkland Islands) Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 163.

This new species of Penguin, which has been named by Mr. Gould *Eudyptes diadematus*, I singled out of a flock of Rockhoppers in the beginning of September 1858, at Eagle Point Rookery. This was the only specimen I ever found of the kind. Capt. Smyley, an old resident in the Falklands, told me it was common in New Georgia, and called by the sailors the "Tufted Penguin." It has the largest crest of all the Penguins I have seen.

2. In New Zealand's subantarctic islands, *Eudyptes chrysocome*: see **rockhopper penguin**.

**1888** Buller, Sir Walter Lawry *A history of the birds of New Zealand*, 2nd edn Published by the author, Westminster London, vol II: 290.

*Eudyptes chrysocome*. (Tufted Penguin.) ... A streak of golden yellow commencing at the base of the mandible, in a line with the nostrils, passes over the eyes and spreads out in a tuft behind to the length of three inches or more, the plumes being narrow and of soft texture; the feathers on the sides of the head are also lengthened and mingle with the yellow plumes, forming together a fine erectile crest.

**1909** (Antipodes Island) Waite, Edgar in *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Chilton, Charles Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington, vol 2: 576.

As we ascended we fell in with the smaller tufted penguins, and these alone were on the higher cliffs. They were extremely numerous, and have long distances to travel to reach the sea. It seems reasonable to suppose that they occupy these higher grounds, reached only by long and arduous climbing, by force of circumstance rather than by choice, being driven from the more accessible haunts by the larger *Catarractes sclateri*.

**1936** (Antipodes Island) Guthrie-Smith, W.H. *Sorrows and joys of a New Zealand naturalist* AH & AW Reed, Dunedin: 227.

The lower stone and boulder space was appropriated by the larger Big Crested Penguin (*Catarractes sclateri*), the higher by the Tufted or Red-eyed species (*Catarractes chrysocome*).

## turdicle

[Formed from *turd* a lump of excrement + *the ending -icle*, by analogy with *icicle*, **snotsicle**, etc.]

An item of frozen (dog) excrement.

**1996** Walton, Kevin and Atkinson, Rick *Of dogs and men: the illustrated story of the dogs of the British Antarctic Survey 1944–1994* Images Publishing, Malvern Wells: 76.

[caption] During the first half-mile dash of a morning each dog's digestive system would get moving. Young dogs who had not yet mastered the art of crapping on the run were dragged along by the rest of the team, desperately trying to maintain a squatting position. They tend to give each other's crap a wide berth, and the driver too would take immediate action to avoid it, pulling the sledge off to one side by edging both sledge runner and his own skis. Collision, however, was sometimes unavoidable. The turd disappeared under a runner where it froze and stuck, impairing the glide efficiency and slowing the sledge like barnacles on a boat's hull. There was no easy way to remove frozen turdicles.

**turkey buzzard** *Falkland Islands* Also **turkey vulture**

[The name turkey-buzzard was recorded for the species in 1672, but is not recorded since (NOED). The Dictionary of American Regional English notes buzzard, carrion crow, etc., for the bird.]

The bird of prey *Cathartes aura falklandica* (fam. Cathartidae), a subspecies of a bird widely occurring in the Americas. The Falklands bird has the featherless pink head and neck typical of vultures, and black plumage. It occurs in Pacific coastal South America as well as the Falkland Islands.

[1–4] **Jan 1775** (Staten Land: 54°46'S, 64°7'W) Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure. In the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide 1970, vol II: 205

The land birds were eagles, bald-headed vultures, or what our seamen called turkey buzzards, thrushes, and a few other small birds.

**1861** (Falkland Islands) Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 149.

*Cathartes aura* .. Turkey Buzzards are very common in East Falkland, remaining the whole year round and breeding. They lay their eggs, two in number (but sometimes three), under a high bank amongst bushes, or on the top of a dead balsam log, without constructing any sort of nest. The time of their laying is about the first week in November. I have remarked that the young birds of the first year have the bare space on the head and neck of a bluish colour, as also the feet. In the mature bird these are both pink. These birds go in pairs the whole year round, though of course any dead carcass will bring many of them together.

**1909** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 19(1) 1 Jan: 9.

Diminution of Turkey Buzzards, Carranchos, and Johnny Rooks. It is hereby notified that during the year 1909 the sum of £25 will be expended from the Stock Fund in the purchase of beaks of the following birds:- Turkey Buzzards, 4<sup>d</sup> per beak. Carranchos and Johnny Rooks, 2<sup>d</sup> per beak.

**1917** (Falkland Islands) Beck, Rollo H. in *The American Museum Journal* XVII(7) Nov: 432.

I .. discovered also two turkey vultures' nests tucked away down at the foot of clumps of tussac grass each within a few feet of jackass penguin burrows.

**1924** Vallentin, Rupert in Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands. With notes on the natural history by Rupert Vallentin* Clarendon Press, Oxford: 330.

I was greatly struck by the great diminution of this species round Stanley since my last visit in 1902. I kept a very sharp look out for birds when staying there during my last trip, and on this occasion I did not see more than half a dozen Turkey-buzzards soaring in the air.

**1988** Woods, Robin *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 26.

Three birds of prey also attracted condemnation from sheep farmers. The Striated Caracara, Crested Caracara and the Turkey Vulture were classified as vermin in 1908, when an Ordinance for the 'Destruction of Birds of Prey' authorized the payment of four pence for each Turkey Vulture beak and two pence for each beak of Crested and Striated Caracaras. All three species were condemned for their attacks on fallen sheep and new-born lambs, though the amount of damage they do remains a matter of debate.

**17 Dec 1997** (Falkland Islands) Maxwell Davies, Peter [source: <http://www.maxopus.com/lists/antarcti.htm>, accessed 12 Mar 1999].

Turkey vultures, with black crooked wings, like a secret and sinister military plane.

**tussac bird** *Falkland Islands*. Also **tussock bird**

The small dark-brown bird *Cinclodes antarcticus antarcticus* (fam. Furnariidae) of the Falkland Islands. It is a remarkably tame and inquisitive bird.

**1910** Cobb, Arthur F. *Wildlife in the Falkland Islands* Gowans & Gray, London: 61.

[caption] Nest and eggs of tussac bird. Tussac or Black Bird ... These little birds are very tame and friendly, and as inquisitive as an English robin ... Tussac birds twitter much like swallows and often come close to a house or into it.

**1917** (Falkland Islands) Beck, Rollo H. in *The American Museum Journal* XVII(7) Nov: 432.

The close cropping and destruction of the tussac grass by sheep on all but outlying islets has driven the wren and tussac birds particularly away from the inhabited areas.

**1976** Hill, Len and Wood, Emma *Penguin millionaire: the story of Birdland* David and Charles, Newton Abbot, Devon: 107.

Burning the grass did not, I am glad to say, signal the demise of the tussock bird (*Cinclodes antarcticus*), often the first creature to greet visitors to the outer Falklands. Small, dark brown in colour with a slender bill and black legs, the tussock bird is unremarkable in appearance, but its behaviour is amazing. As soon as anyone lands on the islands the birds appear to scurry round their feet, even perching on people as any disturbance of the sand or rotted weed reveals small flies or grubs which the bird snaps up and eats.

**1996** Dalton, Anthony in *The Geographical Magazine* LXVIII(7) Jul: 27.

Another rarity, though endemic to the Falklands, is the tussac. Found nowhere else in the world, the sparrow-sized bird gives the impression of being fascinated by everything, animate and inanimate.

**tussock grass** Also **tussac** and formerly **tussuc**

Tussock-forming perennial grasses and sedges are a conspicuous part of the vegetation of the subantarctic, esp. along coasts and on near-coastal hillsides. In some plants the tussock-forming habit involves the gradual accumulation of a 'trunk' (to 1.5 m — 5 ft — or more high) of dead plant matter, with the living plant growing at the top. Most are highly vulnerable to grazing pressure from introduced animals.

1. *Tristan da Cunha/Gough Island*

The perennial grass *Spartina arundinacea* (fam. Poaceae), which was formerly used for thatching on Tristan da

Cunha. It grows on the Tristan group, Gough Island, St Paul and Amsterdam Islands.

**1817** Carmichael, Captain Dugald in *Transactions of the Linnean Society of London* (1818) 12(2): 285.

Plants on the island of Tristan. ... Grass, called Tussuc [etc.].

**21 Mar 1824** (Tristan da Cunha) Earle, Augustus (1832) *A narrative of a nine months' residence in New Zealand, in 1827; together with a journal of a residence in Tristan d'Acunha, an island situated between South America and the Cape of Good Hope* Longman, Rees, Orme, Brown, Green, & Longman, London: 292.

The cliff is about fifty feet high, and at its summit there is an extended plain, reaching to the foot of a mountain; and this plain is covered with a coarse kind of grass, called by the settlers Tussek, which grows in clusters, and is as strong as a small reed. Arriving at the village, which consists of half a dozen houses, covered with thatch made of this native grass, I found two women, and a number of children, who were all equally delighted to see a stranger amongst them. The houses, and all around them, had an air of comfort, cleanliness, and plenty, truly English.

**1879** Moseley, H.N. *Notes by a naturalist on the "Challenger"* Macmillan and Co, London: 113.

The cottages of the Tristan people are built of huge blocks of a soft red tuff, fitted together without mortar, and are thatched with tussock grass.

**22 Jun 1906** Barrow, K.M. (1910) *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 51.

Graham had a plank covered with tussock grass for a pillow and did not get much sleep.

**1923** (Gough Island) Brown, R.N. Rudmose *A naturalist at the poles: the life, work & voyages of Dr. W.S. Bruce the polar explorer* Seeley, Service & Co, London: 201.

Equally common [sc. as Phylca] is the great coarse tussock grass which has the same geographical distribution. In habit it is very similar to the tussock grass of the Falkland Islands which, however, is an entirely different plant.

**1926** (Tristan da Cunha) Rev Rogers in Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 100.

Most of the garden space is directed to growing flax and tussock plants required for thatching sheds and houses are therefore valuable and necessary. It takes a thousand bundles of tussock to thatch one roof.

**1940** Brander, J. *Tristan da Cunha 1506-1902* Allen & Unwin, London: 17.

Another characteristic plant is the tussock-grass, *Spartina arundinacea*. It is a tall, coarse growth, more like a reed than a grass, which reaches a height of 8 to 10 feet. It grows in the uncultivated regions of the island, but is sometimes cultivated near the settlement, as it is useful for roofing purposes. The geographical distribution of "tussock" is remarkable, for it is confined to the Tristan group, to Gough Island, also in the South Atlantic, and to the Islands of St. Paul and Amsterdam in the Indian Ocean, 3,000 miles distant.

**1961** Holdgate, M.W. and Wace, N.M. in *Polar Record* 10(68) May: 482.

Unlike Amsterdam, the smaller and lower island of St. Paul lacks woody vegetation and is largely covered by tussock grassland dominated by *Spartina arundinacea*. There is an abundant sea bird population.

**1993** (1949-50) Rowan, Bunty in *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 12 (Mar): 9.

Formerly the houses were thatched with tussock grass, a plant which has all but disappeared from Tristan itself, owing to the ravages of man and his domestic relatives. The tussock is abundant on the other two islands, but is to be found on the Settlement only in specially cultivated gardens.

## 2. NZ subantarctic/Macquarie Island

Any of several grasses, esp. *Poa foliosa* of Macquarie Island and the NZ subantarctic islands, and the smaller *P. cookii* of Macquarie, Heard, Macdonald, Kerguelen, Crozet, Prince Edward and Marion Islands.

**1888** (Campbell Island) Buller, Sir Walter Lawry *A history of the birds of New Zealand, 2nd edn* Published by the author, Westminster London, vol II: 200.

There is no growth to impede progress, but diminutive tussock among which are the Albatros nests and their tenants.

**1894** (Macquarie Island) Hamilton, A. in *Transactions and Proceedings of the New Zealand Institute* XXVII Art LXV: 564.

Immediately behind it was a small creek coming down from the hills at the back, over the sloping terrace thickly covered with a huge tussock grass. This grass (*Poa foliosa*) forms a huge stool.

**1909** Cockayne, L. in Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington, vol I: 186.

*Poa litorosa* is also a tussock-grass, which grows on taller and more cylindrical trunks than the above [sc. *Danthonia antarctica*] ... The upper part of the trunk is surrounded with a thick mantle of dead leaves and culms, which in its interior is quite decayed.

**1962** Hodgson, E.A. in *Records of the Dominion Museum [Wellington]* 4(11) Oct: 116.

Antipodes Island: on the ground in the tussock country.

**1982** Hosking, Eric and Sage, Bryan *Antarctic wildlife* Croom Helm, London: 44.

Macdonald Island was landed on for the first time as recently as January 1971. Luxuriant growths of tussock grass *Poa cookii* occur on the eastern slopes of the 230-metre-high hill in the south, and on the plateau at the northern end.

## 3. South Georgia/Falkland Islands

The grass *Poa fabellata* (formerly *Dactylis caespitosa*) of the Falkland Islands, South Georgia and other islands of the region, and southernmost South America.

**11-4 Jan 1775** (Staten Land: 54°46'S, 64°7'W) Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, in the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970), vol II: 202.

The inner part of the isle is covered with a sort of sword-grass, very green, and of a great length. It grows on little hillocks, of two or three feet in diameter, and as many or more in height, in large tufts, which seemed to be composed of the roots of the plant matted together ... The sword-grass, as I call it, seems to be the same that grows in Falkland Isles.

**1827** (Falkland Islands) Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822-24, 2nd edn* David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 211.

Having observed smoke on the north end of the island as we approached, I thought it might probably be intended by some shipwrecked people as a signal of distress; but it turned out to be only the burning of some tussock, which had been ignited some months before.

**1840** Mackinnon, L.B. *Some account of the Falkland Islands, from a six months' residence in 1838 and 1839* A.H. Bailey & Co., London: 28.

Wild boar ... are very plentiful on Eagle or Speedwell Islands, and on several other Tussock islands.

**24 Jan 1857** Eddy, C.W. in Snow, W. Parker *A two years' cruise off Tierra del Fuego, the Falkland Islands, Patagonia, and in the River Plate: a narrative of life in the Southern Seas* Longman, Brown, Green, Longmans and Roberts, London, vol II: 296.

The West Falkland, with its islands, is still covered with large patches of tussock grass, so valuable for winter feed, which has almost disappeared from the east island, having been destroyed by the cattle from want of due protection.

**1896** Sullivan, Henry Norton *Life and letters of the late Admiral Sir Bartholomew James Sullivan, KCB 1810–1890* John Murray, London: 51.

The Falkland plant of greatest value is the tussac-grass, growing six feet in height, and containing, weight for weight, almost as much nutriment as corn, as testified by the Royal Agricultural Society's chemist.

**1899** *The Falkland Islands Magazine* X(13) May: [20].

There is a curious grass here which acts as tonic as well as food for the animals eating it. It is to sheep and cattle a sort of vegetable cocktail. It is called tussock grass. It has a stalk from four to six feet long. The plants grow in bunches close together, as many as 250 roots springing from one plant. Animals eat the roots as well as the leaves, and, feeding upon them speedily become fat. The roots are even eaten by men and it is said that two Americans once lived for fourteen months upon them on one of the smaller islands. The roots decay in the old plants and raise the grass upward, so that it grows upon a cushion of manure as it were. Some of these cushions are six feet high and five feet in diameter, so that the grass springing from them makes them look in the distance like a grove of low palm trees. This tussock grass grows along the coast even down to high water mark. It is fast disappearing, however, as the sheep are so fond of it that they eat it far down into the roots.

**11 May 1915** (South Georgia) McNeish, Harry in Sullivan, Walter (1957) *Quest for a continent* Secker & Warburg, London: 72.

All hands have been gathering dry tussock grass for the floor of the cave the Boss and skipper [sc. Worsley] have fixed up the sails at the mouth and there is a good wood fire going and our wet clothes drying. We have not been as comfortable for the last 5 weeks.

**1968** (Falkland Islands) *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* 16 (Jul): 72.

The nest was built on the edge of a rockhopper penguin colony, the nest material being the same as that used by them — tussac grass (*Poa flabellata*) and small stones.

**1988** *National Geographic* 173(3) Mar: 410.

Tussock is a strange plant that sprouts each year atop the matted growth of previous seasons. Undisturbed, individual plants can grow as high as 12 feet, which led early mariners to conclude that the Falklands possessed coastal woods.

**1993** (South Georgia) Poncet, Sally in *Australian Geographic* 32 (Oct): 2.

The children enjoyed the discovery of a tiny tranquil cove ringed by green tussock grass; sheer blue ice cliffs where glaciers shattered into the sea.

## tussock hook

A tool for cutting **tussock grass**.

**25 Feb 1907** Barrow, K.M. (1910) *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 121.

A week or two ago a small portion of the hayfield was cut. There being no such thing as a scythe here, it was cut with a short hook made out of ship iron, and called a "tussock-hook".

## tussock penguin

In general, a penguin using the **tussock grass** as habitat.

**1967** (Tristan da Cunha) Pondus-Bøgerne, Lohse, transl. fr Danish by Falk-Rønne, Arne *Back to Tristan* Allen & Unwin, London: 71.

When they return to their island residence, the rockhoppers which stayed behind and have taken over the hatching places recognise the real owners. No matter how quarrelsome and temperamental they are, they waddle away .. leaving the space to a bird which has not been there for more than six months. The rockhoppers recognize the idea of ownership, and many of the tussock-penguins which have had to take to the loneliness of the undergrowth may be birds that have been driven from nesting places that they, for some reason, had no right to occupy.

**1985** (South Georgia) Stonehouse, Bernard in Bonner, W.N. and Walton, D.W.H., eds *Key environments: Antarctica* Pergamon Press, Oxford: 277.

Norwegian whalers called them 'tussock penguins' — a good name, for gentoos more than any other penguins make use of the broad zone of coastal tussock grass.

## two-banded plover *Falkland Islands* Also **two-banded dotterel**

[From the two bars on the front of the adult birds.]

The bird *Charadrius falklandicus*: see **plover**.

**1983** Scott, Peter *Travel diaries of a naturalist: Australia, New Zealand, New Guinea, Africa, the Galapagos islands, Antarctica and the Falkland Islands* Collins, London: 280.

[caption] Two-banded Dotterel *Charadrius falklandicus*.

**1988** Woods, Robin *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 170.

Two-banded Plover *Charadrius falklandicus* .. Local names: Plover, Two-barred Plover ... Feeds on small invertebrates picked from the surf edge, heaps of rotted kelp or short grass and sand areas.



**unantarctic** *adjective*

Not antarctic, or not typically antarctic.

**1963** *Aurora*. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne] June: 2.

We are grateful to Chris Armstrong for his description of something un-Antarctic.

**1964** *Antarctic*. *Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(11) Sept: 500.

The display featured the work of VUWAE in the ice-free areas of McMurdo Sound, and the polished ventifacts and photographs on the "un-Antarctic like" scenery evoked much interest.

**1971** (Scott Base) Young, Pamela *Penguin summer — or, a rare bird in Antarctica* A.H. & A.W. Reed, Wellington: 43.

It was a very normal sort of kitchen, not much bigger than those in ordinary New Zealand houses. The only difference was the huge diesel-burning stove occupying most of one wall. It heated the room to an almost tropical temperature, so that Russell had to work in the most unAntarctic-like garb imaginable — bare feet, shorts and T-shirt.

**unbroken pack ice** *Also unbroken ice*

**Sea ice** forming a solid, extensive sheet: ten-tenths cover or **consolidated pack**. See also **field ice**.

**4 Jan 1911** Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912* Blandford Press, London: 92.

We passed this place [sc. Cape Royds] and worked our way on through the pack ice bit by bit until we were brought up by unbroken ice abreast of Inaccessible Island.

**11 Jan 1930** (66°S, 60°E) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 312.

About 2 miles at most in from edge of pack here is solid unbroken pack, pinnacled and pressed. Impossible to cross this with ship.

**1955** (Heard Island) Dalziel, Ken *Penguin road* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 76.

Our path was now to become very difficult, as a sheet of unbroken ice stretched for hundreds of miles east and west.

**1984** Fletcher, Harold *Antarctic days with Mawson: a personal account of the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929–31* Angus and Robertson, London: 149.

Nearing midnight, open leads ceased and the ship was confronted with thick, unbroken pack-ice. From the crow's nest it appeared our only way of escape was to keep on our course by battering the ship through heavy pack.

**unconsolidated pack ice**

Sea ice which does not form a solid sheet. Cf. **consolidated pack ice**.

**1990** Erickson, A.W. and Hanson, M.B. in Kerry, K.R. and Hempel, G., eds *Antarctic ecosystems: ecological change and conservation* Springer-Verlag, Berlin: 253.

The Weddell seal is primarily associated with inshore fast ice, where if necessary it maintains gnawed access holes to the water. However, significant numbers of Weddell seals are found in unconsolidated pack ice, particularly in the deeper pack dominated by large ice floes.

**1995** Menkhorst, Peter W., ed. *Mammals of Victoria: distribution, ecology and conservation* Oxford University Press, Melbourne: 252.

Leopard Seals are widely distributed throughout the unconsolidated pack-ice surrounding the Antarctic Continent and occasionally are found further south, even in winter, but they are nowhere common.

**uncrevassed** *adjective*

Of ice: free from **crevasses**.

**1953** Scholes, Arthur *Seventh continent: saga of Australasian exploration in Antarctica 1895–1950* George Allen & Unwin, London: 183.

At the southern end of the shelf-ice they found a level uncrevassed area, large enough for a landing-ground.

**1964** (nr Ferrar Glacier) Helm, A.S. and Miller, J.H. *Antarctica: the story of the New Zealand party of the Trans-Antarctic expedition* R.E. Owen, Government Printer, Wellington: 99.

They were soon among crevasses. For the first mile these were less than 3 ft wide, and they could comfortably stride over them. After a further uncrevassed stretch they met large crevasses at right angles to their path, which were up to 40 ft wide and half a mile long.

**unicorn icefish**

*Unicorn has been used in the names of animals with a horn-like process or spine since 1617, and unicorn-fish is recorded for the arctic narwhal from 1688 (NOED). The antarctic fish here has a small spine on the tip of the snout.*

The spiny marine fish *Channichthys rhinoceros* (fam. Channichthyidae), which lives in the Heard and Kerguelen Islands region and has been caught commercially.

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean (fishing areas 48, 58, 88)*. FAO, Rome, vol. 2: 272.

*Channichthys rhinoceros* ... Unicorn icefish ... a rostral spine present on tip of snout ... Reported only from shelves of Kerguelen and Heard Islands, and from the connecting seamounts ... Marketed as frozen fish; the flesh is good.

**unweka'd** *adjective*

Unaffected by **wekas**.

**1966** Simpson, Ken in *Aurora* Nov: 26.

The most serious crime that wekas committed however, was to have raucous territorial fights with their neighbours just outside the sleeping donga windows. No hour of the day or night was sacred. No month of the year was left unweka'd.

**upland goose** *Falkland Islands*

The large white or reddish-brown goose *Chloephaga picta leucoptera* (fam. Anatidae) of the Falkland Islands and southern South America. Both male and female (the female is rusty brown) have black barring on the underparts and back. The goose was introduced to South Georgia in 1911, and has become naturalised there.

It was regarded as a pest of sheep pastures in the Falkland Islands — and still is, by many — and is hunted both as pest and food; the eggs are collected for eating. See also **goose beak**.

**16–19 Oct 1822** (Falkland Islands) Morrell, Captain Benjamin (1832) *A narrative of four voyages, to the South Sea [etc.]* J. & J. Harper, New York: 50.

Another sea-fowl peculiar to these islands is called the upland goose, and is about the size of our domestic geese; very palatable when cooked, being sweet, tender, and juicy.

**1827** (Falkland Islands) Weddell, James A *voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24*, 2nd edn David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 83.

Upland geese, which a few years ago were very numerous, are now scarcely to be found; so that the only supplies which may be expected are ducks and geese which feed on fishy substances on the shores, and thus very soon become nauseous to the taste.

**19 May 1834** Darwin, Charles (1901) *Journal of researches into the natural history and geology of the countries visited during the voyage round the world of H.M.S. 'Beagle' under command of Captain Fitz Roy, R.N.*, 2nd edn John Murray, London: 200.

Two kinds of geese frequent the Falklands. The upland species (*Anas Magellanica*) is common, in pairs and in small flocks, throughout the island. They do not migrate, but build on the small outlying islets. This is supposed to be from fear of the foxes: and it is perhaps from the same cause that these birds, though very tame by day, are shy and wild in the dusk of the evening. They live entirely on vegetable matter.

**1861** Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 157.

*Chloephaga magellanica* (Gm.). (Upland Goose.) This Goose is found abundantly everywhere in East Falkland. At Cow Bay, where the grass is short and sweet, Rabbits, Upland Geese, and Jackass Penguins are so plentiful that the place is called "the Farm-yard." The Upland Goose is easily domesticated, and very readily takes to eating corn. It breeds all over the country, as well as on the adjoining islets, and on this point Mr. Darwin seems to have made a mistake, unless the disappearance of the Fox from East Falkland has caused a change in its habits in this respect. These Geese sometimes lay in the long grass, and at other times in the bushes on the banks of streams. The nest is rudely formed of grass till the laying is completed, when the bottom is lined with down. This is one way of telling whether the eggs are sat upon or not ... The Upland Goose lays generally in the first week of October. Sometimes I have found seven, sometimes eight eggs in a nest, the latter number being, I think, the maximum. The young birds nearly acquire their adult plumage the first year, and are only distinguishable by the mottled colour of their feet and their plumage being less bright. In the

second year the young birds moult their wing-feathers, and are then found together in large flocks near the sea-coast, where, on being disturbed, they immediately run down to the salt water, being unable to fly in this condition.

**1899** *The Falkland Islands Magazine* XI(21) Dec: 181.

At Dunbar Harbour, Willie Goodwin found two motherless upland goslings. He brought them home and put them under a hen.

**1904** Vallentin, Rupert *Memoirs and Proc of the Manchester Literary and Philosophical Society* XLVIII(3) no. 23: 37.

*Chloephaga magellanica*, "Upland Goose." Abundant over the whole Falkland Archipelago. On some of the farms a reward, varying from 10s. to 15s. per hundred, is paid for the bills of this species. It is estimated that three geese devour as much grass as one sheep. In the early summer, January, the young birds make a welcome addition to one's table, and are most delicious eating. At this season the berries of the middle-dee are ripe, and are devoured in quantities by these birds, and this food unquestionably fattens them, and adds to their delicate flavour.

**1922** (South Georgia) Murphy, Robert Cushman in *National Geographic* 41(4) Apr: 433.

Some years ago Mr. Wilson, British magistrate at South Georgia, imported several pairs of upland geese from the Falklands at his own expense, and freed them in the admirably adapted grassy country of Westford, Cumberland Bay. The geese have since increased and spread encouragingly, and are there assured of a sheepless future and a home where the species may exist after extermination in its original habitat.

**1950** Scott, Peter *Key to the wildfowl of the world* Severn Wildfowl Trust, Slimbridge, Gloucestershire: [14].

Upland or Magellan Goose. *Chloephaga picta picta*. Southern Argentina from the Rio Negro, south to Tierra del Fuego; the Falkland Islands. Introduced into South Georgia. In Patagonia it is said to be an inland bird.

**1967** (Deception Island) *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* 3 (Jun): 3.

The [sc. midwinter] menu .. consisted of prawn cocktail, tomato soup, crab fritters, roast upland goose, saute potatoes, vichy carrots and peas, midwinter pud with brandy sauce.

**1994** Falkland Islands Government Office *Introduction to the Falkland Islands* Falkland Islands Government Office, London: 7.

[head] Further innovations within the economy include: [end head] ... Research and development of Falklands products 'Falklands Fare' e.g. Upland Goose, Diddle dee, Squid, Hake, and meat products for both local consumption and export.

**USARP** *US, NZ. Also USAP*

[Acronym from the 'United States Antarctic Research Program', now (2000) the US Antarctic Program.]

A member of a United States antarctic party.

**1962** (Scott Base) *News from the South* [NZARP, Wellington] 3(1) Jan: 2.

The wintering USARP party Ches Bowers, Bill Bunker, Frank O'Donnel and Noel Hayman, are already proving good workmates.

**1986** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XXI(1) Mar: 10.

USAP personnel decided that the ice was thick enough and strong enough to be used as a landing area for an LC-130.



## Vandal NZ

[From the name of Lake Vanda, Antarctica, and also in humorous reference to the barbarous tribe.]

A worker at the New Zealand summer base of Vanda Station, on the shores of Lake Vanda in the Wright Valley, a **dry valley** of south Victoria Land. The base was set up by New Zealand in 1967–68 and removed in 1994–95 because of rising lake levels (a small refuge hut was then built in the area).

**1971** Young, Pamela *Penguin summer — or, a rare bird in Antarctica* A.H. & A.W. Reed, Wellington: 119.

The Vanda group was the only field party to receive its mail at regular intervals, and now they were celebrating the holiday in style as well. Vince Neall, though, sounded as if he and Colin Vucetich were having just as merry a Christmas as the Vandals.

**1988** *Antarctic Times: the official newsletter of Scott Base* no. 17 (29 Jan): [6].

Vanda Station is slowly winding down after a busy season. The Vandals are preparing to fly out on Monday and are scheduled to go back to New Zealand later in the week.

**1996** Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 147.

The legends were even more vividly drawn in the collective memory of Kiwi veterans. They reached their acme in the exploits of the Asgaard Rangers and their bitter enemies the Vandals.

## vanilla daisy *Falkland Islands*

The plant *Leucheria suaveolens* (fam. Compositae or Asteraceae), which has fragrant whitish flowerheads to about 25 cm (10 in) tall. It grows in the Falkland Islands and in South America.

**1989** Davies, T.H. and McAdam, J.H. *Wild flowers of the Falkland Islands* Bluntisham Books, Huntingdon: 38.

Vanilla daisy is found in sunny positions in dwarf shrub heath on well drained peat, especially among rocks and often in association with balsam bogs and tall fern. Only found in the Falklands, vanilla daisy is so named because of its scent.

**c1990** Roper, Patrick *Holidays in the Falkland Islands* Falkland Islands Tourist Board, London: 6.

[caption] The Vanilla Daisy, *Leucheria suaveolens*, with its flowers smelling of chocolate, is a species found only in the Falklands.

## veet See *huit*

## Venesta *attrib. as Venesta board etc.*

[From the name of the London company Venesta Ltd, which manufactured this board.]

A strong, light and watertight three-ply wooden board which was used for packing cases on early expeditions. It is best known today for the cases which yielded

boards for binding the *South Polar Times*, the first publication printed and bound in Antarctica (see 1911 quotation).

**1909** Shackleton, E.H. *The heart of the Antarctic: being the story of the British Antarctic Expedition 1907–1909* William Heinemann, London: 127.

It was probable also that the salt water would have damaged the fodder, and worked its way into cases that were not lined or made of Venesta wood.

**15 Oct 1911** (Cape Evans) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912* Blandford Press, London: 181.

Today the third volume of the S.T.P. [sc. *South Polar Times*] was published ... The covers are beautifully done by Day — different each volume, but always made of Weddell Seal skin and Venesta board, partly plain and partly stained and polished.

**1914** (Cape Adare) Priestley, Raymond E. (1974 repr.) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* Melbourne University Press: 109.

The only thing that took time was the powdering of the biscuits. We first attempted to do this by pulverizing them with geological hammers in a venesta-case, but this method though very thorough was even more slow, and we finally resorted to the mincing-machine.

## ventiles *Also ventile*

[From the British cloth ventile: see 1965 quotation.]

Windproof outer garments for antarctic issue, and (as *sing.*), the closely woven heavy cotton cloth, windproof but not waterproof, from which these are made. Antarctic regions are notoriously windy, but seldom wet.

**1963** *Wilkes Hard Times* 1(4) May: 5.

I went out for a Sunday stroll,  
My ventiles couldn't be newer,  
And what I thought a splash of snow,  
Came from a bloody skua.

**1965** Hedblom, Captain E.E. *Polar manual, 4th edn* US Navy, Bethesda, Maryland: 32.

The shell of my first parka was Egyptian sailcloth (British "Ventile"), 96 108 threads/inch, which shrunk remarkably to 104 \_ 120. This was an excellent windproof, but in cotton at 4 oz./yard, it proved too easily torn and to have little abrasion resistance.

**1993** Clark, Linda and Wishart, Elspeth 66° *South Queen Victoria Museum, Launceston*: 22.

People turn up in their bright, new, yellow ventiles and they get on your nerves.

**1996** (Alexander Island) Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 214.

A couple of men hooded in fluorescent orange ventile were waiting to refuel the aircraft.

**very heavy ice** *noun and attrib.* Also **very heavy pack (ice)**

Sea ice which thickly covers the surface. It can sometimes trap a ship or stop it from proceeding. See **heavy ice**.

**1884** (71°10'S, 15°47'W) McCormick, R. *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world: being personal narratives of attempts to reach the North and South Poles* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol. 1: 347.

Upon going on deck after breakfast I saw the pack very distinctly margining the horizon to leeward on the starboard beam, apparently very heavy ice.

**19 Dec 1910** (67°54'S, 178°30'W) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912* Blandford Press, London: 78.

All the forenoon we were hammering our way through very heavy pack like small bergs, and occasionally through thinner, rotten, and more recently frozen ice in large sheets, all heavily snow covered.

**1913** *The Sphere* [London] LII no 684 (13 May): 143.

[caption] The above direct camera picture was despatched by Mr. Ponting, the official photographer to the British Antarctic Expedition, 1911, from Cape Evans ... It shows the very heavy ice conditions which almost trapped the vessel in their grip.

**1950** Saunders, Alfred A *camera in Antarctica* Winchester Publications, London: 106.

Passing through a final belt of loose but very heavy pack ice we steamed straight for South Georgia.

**very open pack (ice)**

Sea ice in which the floes are widely spaced, sometimes specifically more widely spaced than in **open pack**.

**1956** Armstrong, Terence and Roberts, Brian *Polar Record* 8(52) Jan: 10.

Very open pack ice: Composed of loose, widely spaced floes. Ice cover 1/8th to 3/8ths.

**1964** (south of Bouvet Is.) Nieman, W.A. in *Antarktische Bulletin* no. 2 (Mar): 3.

We encountered the first very open rotten pack ice or field ice.

**1979** Lewis, David *Voyage to the ice: the Antarctic expedition of Solo* Australian Broadcasting Commission, in assoc. w Wm Collins Sons & Co: 10.

Fields of very open pack alternated with close-set masses of floes.

**Victoria penguin** *noun and attrib., esp. Macquarie Island sealers.* Also **Victoria**

A penguin belonging to the genus *Eudyptes* (fam. Spheniscidae): these penguins have many common names (see

**crested penguin**). The name seems to have been used esp. for *E. chrysocome*, more commonly called a **rock-hopper**, and for *E. pachyrhynchus*, which is also called the Fiordland (crested) penguin.

**1894** Hamilton, A. in *Transactions and Proceedings of the New Zealand Institute* XXVII Art LXV: 571.

A little to the southward of the Lusitania beach is a breeding-place of the victoria penguin (*E. filholi*), and the air was filled with the flying feathers and down of the moulting birds. These little birds are very active, and climb up and down the face of the cliffs in a most agile manner, and are much more entitled to the name "rock-hopper" than the other species (*Pygoscelis tenuata*), which are much less plentiful and more lumbering in their gait.

**1902** Hutton, Captain F.W. in *The Emu* II(1) Jul: 3.

The Little Macaroni (*C. chrysocome*), known in New Zealand as the Victoria, breeds in small numbers on the Antipodes, Campbell, and Macquarie Islands.

**1909** Waite, Edgar R. in Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington, vol 2: 577.

*Catarrhactes pachyrhynchus*, Gray. (Victoria penguin.) ... Though numerous examples of *C. chrysocome* were found breeding at the Snares, the great bulk of the penguins were *C. pachyrhynchus*.

**1915** Ainsworth, G.F. in Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard. Being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911–1914* William Heinemann, London, vol II: 178.

There were several Victoria penguin [sc. *Catarrhactes pachyrhynchus*] colonies round about the rocky faces of the hills in the vicinity of the Shack, and their hubbub and cackling uproar were something to remember.

**1925** Hurley, Captain Frank *Argonauts of the South* G.P. Putnam's Sons, NY: 34.

The Victorias and Gentoos have numerous small rookeries scattered along the coasts.

**1937** (Macquarie Island) Falla, R.A. *Birds. BANZARE reports series B, vol 2* Hassell Press, Adelaide: 22.

The royal penguins appeared at the end of September, and the rockhoppers or "Victorias" about four weeks later.

**1943** Mawson, Douglas *Macquarie Island: its geography and geology. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911–14. Scientific reports series A vol V* Government Printer, Sydney: 35.

Rockhopper Penguins<sup>1</sup> (*Eudyptes cristatus*).

<sup>1</sup>Footnote: In some reports these have been referred to, in error, as Victoria Penguins.

**1966** MacKenzie, D., ed. *Fog 'N Bog Iyearbook of Macquarie Island ANARE overwinterers* ANARE, Macquarie Island: 35.

The Rockhopper [sc. *Eudyptes cristatus*] is also called the Victoria penguin: it breeds at Victoria point on the east coast of Macquarie. For some reason, which is not at all obvious, this has been changed to Saddle Point on recent maps.



# W

## wallow

[Extended use of wallow a mud-hole or dust hole formed by the wallowing of a buffalo, elephant or rhino, first recorded in North American use (in 1841: NOED). The 1876 quotation here tends to confirm that antarctic usage — as with many other terms — stems from US English.]

A large, muddy, and famously foetid hollow used by seals, esp. the **elephant seal**.

[1748 (Juan Fernandez) Walter, Richard *A voyage round the world, in the years MDCCXL, I, II, III, IV* by George Anson Esq; *Commander in Chief of a Squadron of His Majesty's Ships, sent upon an Expedition to the South-Seas, 3rd edn* John and Paul Knapton, London: 174.

They feed on the grass and verdure which grows near the bank of the fresh-water streams; and, when not employed in feeding, sleep in herds in the most miry places they can find out.]

1876 Kidder, J.H. *Contributions to the natural history of Kerguelen Island, made in connection with the United States Transit-of-Venus expedition, 1874–75* Government Printing Office, Washington, vol II: 40.

The beaches of Royal Sound are fringed by innumerable wallows — cradle-shaped pits — in which the animals lie during the breeding-season, recalling the buffalo-wallows of our western prairies.

1929 (South Georgia) *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 242.

When they are shedding their coats the sea! like to lie in wallows, which they make by lying and rolling in the pools of water amongst the clumps of tussac grass. They quickly produce a swampy quagmire, and as many as thirty or forty are sometimes to be seen lying closely packed together in these mud baths. The cows and bulls tend to keep apart at this time, each wallow being usually, though not invariably, packed with seal of the same sex. The writer has seen these wallows so deep in mud that only the heads of the seal were above the surface, and actually came across one instance in which the seal was completely immersed and was breathing through a hole about 9 in. deep that its breath kept open in the thick sticky mud.

3 Jul 1942 Sorensen, J.H. *The work journal of J.H. Sorensen, coastwatcher in the "Cape expedition", Campbell Island, 1942–44* Diary, in possession of NZ Dept Conservation and Wildlife, Wellington: 34.

A rotting carcass of a sea-elephant in an old wallow is the attraction here.

1992 Reeves, Randall R., Stewart, Brent S. and Leatherwood, Stephen *The Sierra Club handbook of seals and sirenians* Sierra Club Books, San Francisco: 240.

[caption] Elephant seals transform naturally occurring bogs into wallows ... With its coating of mud, urine, and feces, there are few things dead that smell as bad as a molting elephant seal alive.

## wallowing *verbal noun and adjective*

The action of creating or maintaining a **wallow**.

1962 Bailey, Alfred M. and Sorensen, J.H. *Subantarctic Campbell Island*. Proceedings no. 10, Denver Museum of Natural History: 41.

The seals, particularly Elephant Seals, modify the vegetation nearer the sea. Wallowings erode deep holes and consolidate adjacent areas.

1995 Evans, Kathryn *Shipwrecks, sealers and scientists: a guide to sites of cultural heritage on Macquarie Island* Tasmanian Parks and Wildlife Service, Hobart: 12.

The wallowing habit of elephant seals and the activity of large numbers of penguins in and around the colonies has caused considerable disturbance and deterioration of the sites.

## wanderer *noun and attrib. Also wanderer albatross*

[Wanderer from the bird's far-roaming flight.]

The large albatross *Diomedea exulans*: see **wandering albatross**.

1915 Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911–1914* William Heinemann, London: opp. 48.

[caption] A wanderer albatross at rest on the water.

1950 (Grytviken, South Georgia) Saunders, Alfred *A camera in Antarctica* Winchester Publications, London: 10.

On rare occasions a Wanderer albatross came into the harbour to feed.

1955 (Heard Island) Dalziel, Ken *Penguin road* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 46.

While we were attaching the rings, a parent bird glided down to a nest and commenced feeding its chick. The graceful wanderer measured eight feet between her spread wingtips.

1963 Rand, R.W. in *The Ostrich* XXXIV(3) Sept: 123.

Prince Edward Island was approached from the north on 26 June, the coast being scrutinised at a distance of about 500 yards. There had been no recent snowfall and the vegetation was a dull green colour; large Wandering Albatrosses and penguins showed white against this drab background. Wanderers were scattered widely over the undulating ground.

1990 *Antarctic Society of Australia newsletter* 22 (Sept): 15.

Long line fishing for tuna began in the Southern Hemisphere in the early 1970s. But it took many years before the BAS researchers could detect and interpret a decline in the wanderer colony on South Georgia, which they now believe has been suffering from mortality in tuna lines.

## wandering albatross

[Wandering from the huge distances it covers in its gliding flight + albatross.]

The very large albatross *Diomedea exulans* (fam. Diomedidae) which has white and dark brown to black plumage, whitening with age. The bird's wingspan is up to 3.5 m (11 ft 6 in), and it is famed for its powers of flight. The **royal albatross** has a similar wingspan.

There are two subspecies, *D. e. exulans*, which breeds in the Tristan da Cunha and Gough Island region, and *D.*

*e. chionoptera*, which breeds on other subantarctic and antarctic islands. The bird is also known as the **cape sheep, gony, great wandering albatross, wanderer, and white albatross**. See also **brown albatross, great goose, snow(y) albatross**.

**1785** [source: NOED] Pennant *Arctic Zool.* II: 506.

Albatross. Wandering. *Diomedea exulans*.

**1839** Enderby, Charles in *Journal of the Royal Society* IX: 525.

Saw .. *one* albatross, the first seen since leaving Campbell Island; this occurred in lat. 61°30'. May this be the southern limit of the range of this bird, probably the wandering albatross, which was seen by Mr. F.D. Bennett as far N. as lat. 38°S off the coast of Brazil?

**1848** Gould, John *The birds of Australia* The author, 20 Broad St, Golden Square, London, vol VII: pl. 38.

The powers of flight of the Wandering Albatross are much greater than those of any other bird that has come under my observation.

**1879** (Kerguelen Island) *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: 146.

An adult Wandering Albatross can breathe without much difficulty with a weight of about 130 lbs. upon its back. When specimens had to be killed we employed large men to sit down upon them, holding their beaks to prevent the birds from biting.

**5 Dec 1910** (56°S, 176°E) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912* Blandford Press, London: 70.

There were numbers of Royal and Wandering Albatross and of various ages, changing from dark brown to pure white with black wing primaries.

**1940** (Nightingale Island) Hagen, Yngvar in Christopherson, Erling, transl. fr Norwegian by Benham, R.L. *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 122.

The wandering albatross has had a great past on Tristan da Cunha ... At the time of the Challenge Expedition .. it bred high up in the old crater of the volcano, 6,000 feet above the sea, and its nests were also found .. at an altitude of 2,000–2,500 feet. But the demand for meat is great among the fishing population of Tristan ... It was simply eaten up. Later on came its turn on the other islands ... Only a little colony of these proud birds is left on the lonely mountain plateau of Inaccessible. They would have become almost extinct in Tristan waters if Gough had not formed the reservoir from which the species is recruited.

**1956** (Gough Island) *City Press [London]* 16 Mar: 5.

Christmas Albatross ... Christmas Dinner in the South Atlantic was hot, with over 12 hours sunshine. Christmas dinner consisted of: Hors d'oeuvres; roast wandering albatross and two vegetables; Christmas pudding and two sauces; fruit salad; savoury and coffee.

**1962** Bailey, Alfred M. and Sorensen, J.H. *Subantarctic Campbell Island*. Proceedings no. 10, Denver Museum of Natural History: 121.

The Wandering Albatross, with its around-the-world distribution in subantarctic waters, has long been considered the largest of the flying birds with exceptional individuals having wing spans from tip to tip in excess of eleven feet. The Wanderers will have to share honors or be displaced by the southern race of Royal Albatrosses, however, for a comparison of measurements of twenty-four specimens of Wandering Albatrosses listed below with ten specimens of *Diomedea exulans epomophora*, collected by the Denver Museum party on Campbell Island, indicates the latter averages larger.

**1991** Hooper, Meredith A for *Antarctica: facts and stories from the frozen South* Pan Books, London: 12.

Wandering albatross can live to be eighty years old, and they pair for life. Every two years the albatross pair return to the same nest site, on a northerly Antarctic island beyond the pack ice, to lay an egg.

**1997** Gurney, Alan *Below the convergence: voyages toward Antarctica 1699–1839* W.W. Norton & Co, NY/London: 56.

Sometimes an animal, by reason of its perfect fitness in a harsh and hostile environment, becomes identified in the popular mind as representing that environment — becomes in effect its heraldic beast. As the polar bear is for the Arctic, the penguin for the Antarctic, and the camel for the desert, so for the Southern Ocean the most fitting emblem is the wandering albatross.

## wanigan US and NZ. Also wannigan

[From the North American English wan(n)igan a cabin mounted on runners. This word comes — according to NOED (1949–) — from the Montagnais Indian atawangan a container, and according to DAlaskE, from an Algonquian Indian language, perh. Ojibwa. In arctic Alaskan English, the earliest recorded quotation for this sense of a cabin on skis is 1938.]

A tractor-hauled caravan on a sledge (or skis), used on traverse or as a field hut, and known in *Brit* and *S Afr* antarctic terms as a **caboose**.

**1958** *Polar Record* 9(60) Sept: 257.

The "Byrd" traverse, led by V. Anderson, glaciologist, left the station on 19 November [sc. 1957]. It was equipped with three Sno-cats, towing 2-ton sledges, and a wanigan, and was resupplied by air on four occasions.

**1964** (Scott Base) *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(9) Mar: 385.

A wannigan (tractor-hauled ski-equipped hutment) has already been placed in position at Second Crater.

**1979** Killian, Crawford *Icequake* Futura Publications, London: 211.

'We'll have to build some wanigans that'll fit on the sledges. Otherwise we'll never be able to shelter everybody.'

**1993** (Casey) Penney, Richard in Clark, Linda and Wishart, Elspeth 66° *South Queen Victoria Museum, Launceston*: 62.

I had a little hut, which in American-Indian we call a wannigan, which means house on a sled. It measured six feet by eight feet, and I could stand up in it so it must have been six feet high. I had two bunks, had my typewriter, a little tiny oil-fired stove and food.

## warm store

An area kept at about the normal temperature of a refrigerator, or slightly above, to stop items from freezing.

**5–13 April 1959** Béchervaise, John (1963) *Blizzard and fire: a year at Mawson, Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 59.

Bruce and Chris filled pressure lanterns in the warm store.

**1967** (Mawson) *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* June: 30.

The "Blue Ice Casino" did a roaring business as cans of VB were exchanged for local currency ... At one stage the bank had to call on reserves from the lower warm store but in the long run it weathered the storm and came out nicely in front.

**1993** (Casey station) White, Alan in Clark, Linda and Wishart, Elspeth 66° *South Queen Victoria Museum, Launceston*: 41.

Down there, you're doing everything opposite. You don't have to keep anything cold, you have to keep things warm. Apples were in the warm store of the tunnel, along with the potatoes and the onions and the eggs. That was kept about eight or nine degrees.

**warrah** *noun and attrib. Falkland Islands*

The extinct dog *Canis australis* (fam. Canidae), the only native terrestrial carnivore of the Falklands. It was a large, dark to reddish animal which was also called the **antarctic dog**, **Falkland Island fox** or **wolf**, and **(wild) fox**. The last recorded animal was killed in the 1870s: the Tasmanian tiger's disappearance later followed the same sad pattern, though the warrah didn't last quite as long after European settlement as the tiger.

**1836** Captain Grey quoted in Strange, Ian J. (1987) *The Falkland Islands and their natural history* David and Charles, Newton Abbot, Devon: 56.

In shape they resemble a fox, their colour is much darker than that of our foxes, and the fur thicker; they are also longer in proportion in the legs, they are called here "Warrahs" or "Wolf Fox", the one that I had killed was a very old one and I never saw such teeth.

**1840** Mackinnon, L.B. *Some account of the Falkland Islands, from a six months' residence in 1838 and 1839* A.H. Bailey & Co., London: 26.

The only quadruped that seems indigenous to the islands is the warrah, or wolf-fox, a specimen of which was brought home by Captain Fitz-Roy, and placed in the British Museum ... It is much larger than the English fox, being about the size of a middle-sized Newfoundland dog; they have not the slightest fear of man.

**1924** Boyson, V.E., quoting Pennant, 1781, in *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history* by Rupert Vallentin Clarendon Press, Oxford: 216.

This, which inhabits the *Falkland Isles*, near the extremity of *South America*, is dwindled to the size described. The 'warrah', as it was called by the first colonists, seems to have been a timid animal, 'at times very meager from want of prey', says Pennant.

**1990** *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation* 10 (Oct): 12. There must be hundreds of warrah jaws and other remains in the Falklands.

**1995** *The Warrah. Newsletter of Falklands conservation* 7 (May): 12.

The *Warrah*, or Falkland Fox (*Canis antarcticus*) was the only endemic species of mammal on the Falklands. This bold and inquisitive animal was probably never very numerous but, with the introduction of sheep, farmers backed by a Government bounty were encouraged to hunt them and the last one was killed in 1876. We hope this publication will play a small part in preventing any other Falkland wildlife following the same path to extinction.

**watering (ship)**

[*Extended use of water (of a ship), to take on board a store of fresh water, recorded since 1557 (NOED).*]

Gathering ice for a ship's water supply: see **ice ship**.

**9 Jan 1773** (62°44'S, 24°10'W) Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, in the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970), vol II: 38.

Part of the ice we broke in pieces, and put into casks; some we melted in the coppers, and filled up the casks with the water; and some we kept on deck for present use. The melting and stowing away the ice is a little tedious, and takes up some time; otherwise this is the most expeditious way of watering I ever met with.

**1905** Scott, Captain Robert F. *The voyage of the 'Discovery'* Macmillan and Co, London: 94.

'Watering ship' was always a very busy scene, and since the hours spent at it were so much loss to our exploring season, it soon became the custom for the officers as well as the men to share in the work.

**1914** Priestley, Raymond E. (1974 repr.) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* Melbourne University Press: 33.

A few picks and shovels were thrown on to the ice, and the work of watering ship was begun. While one party of men picked and shovelled out the ice into large zinc baths, or broke out large pieces which could be slid on board down the gangway, another party took the ice from the ship's side and dropped it down into the tanks alongside the engines. Here it was melted down.

**1930** Wright, Charles in L.C. Bernacchi, co-ordinator *The polar book: produced for the British Polar Exhibition 1930* E. Allom & Co Ltd, London: 36.

Others, even those who have taken part in the operation of "watering ship" in the polar pack, have denied the very possibility that salt ice could become fresh in the course of time.

**1954** *Polar Record* 7(47) Jan: 52.

Watering ships in pack ice. In view of the possibility of having to spend long periods beset, the captain of a ship in polar waters must always seek to conserve fuel. It is therefore essential that as little as possible is used to melt ice for fresh water. Even a good distilling plant can only produce between eight and ten tons of water per ton of fuel.

**water sky**

[*Water-sky is recorded earlier (from 1823 on: NOED) in arctic English use.*]

A dark reflection on the sky, cast up from open water at some distance from the observer, and significant when navigating through pack ice. See also **ice blink**.

**1 Feb 1842** McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 265.

We were sailing through very loose, small ice, with a very dark water-sky to windward, indicating open water in that direction.

**16 Mar 1898** Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898-1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 217.

The water-sky, which we saw yesterday, has extended considerably.

**20 Dec 1910** (56°S, 176°E) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910-1912* Blandford Press, London: 82.

Open water leads and an open water sky to S. and S.W., but most of the leads here covered with tough soft ice hard to break or work through.

**1938** Ommanney, F.D. *South latitude* Longman, Green & Co., London: 125.

In the pack-ice you take a darkening of this grey sky above the horizon to indicate a possibility that open water lies that way. And the sky darkened always towards the west. Towards this "water sky" we pushed slowly for four days.

**1964** Styles, D.F. *Narrative. Coastal exploration of Kemp and Enderby Lands, Antarctica* ANARE reports Series A vol. 1, Antarctic Division, Dept of External Affairs, Melbourne: 12.

We could only see four to five miles at best all day because of the snowstorms, so there was no water sky to tempt us to move vigorously in any direction.

**1995** Manhire, Bill *Hoosh* Anxious Husky Press, Wellington: [11].

Pony mixed with penguin  
mixed with whale, seal  
rissoles and the stewed paws  
of huskies, a wonderful  
banquet on deck,  
ice-blink and water-sky.

**watron** *Tristan da Cunha*

[Variant form of watering which is apparently itself no longer in English use in this sense.]

A stream.

**1940** Hagen, Yngvar in Christopherson, Erling, transl. fr Norwegian by Benham, R.L. *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 215.

The stream which flows past the settlement is called the Big Watron, "Watron" being a corrupt form of the word watering.

**1964** Hosegood, Nancy *The glass island: the story of Tristan da Cunha* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 106.

The children ... were scattering, now — some making for the lower mountain slopes to look for the first birds' eggs, others leaping back and forth across the 'watron', as the islanders called the stream that ran through the village.

**wattled sheathbill**

[Wattled from the pendulous wattles of the bird.]

The bird *Chionis alba*: see **sheathbill**.

**1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 122.

[caption] Greater or wattled sheathbill, a pigeon-like scavenger of penguin colonies and shorelines.

**1982** Hosking, Eric and Sage, Bryan *Antarctic wildlife* Croom Helm, London: 40.

Both the Brown Skua and the Wattled Sheathbill can be regarded as vertebrate carnivores since they scavenge, take the eggs and occasionally kill the young of other birds.

**weaner** Also **weanie**

[In English, esp. in New Zealand, weaner has been used since 1865 for a calf, lamb or other animal weaned in the current year.]

A seal which has recently finished suckling.

**1953** Laws, R.M. *A new method of age determination in mammals with special reference to the elephant seal* Falkland Islands Dependencies Survey scientific report no. 2: 46.

The coat has lost the bluish cast of the newly moulted "weaner."

**1986** (Macquarie Island) *Station News [Australian Antarctic Division]* Nov: 2.

The "weanies" now enter the sea every evening to educate themselves in the gentle art of swimming.

**1995** (Macquarie Island) *Station News [Australian Antarctic Division]* Nov: 2.

Perfect sunny day at last. New one day branding record — 150 weaners.

**weasel** *noun and attrib.*

[Light Cargo Carriers M29 (the land weasel) and M29C (the amphibious weasel) were transports manufactured by the Studebaker Corporation, and produced 1929–1945. They were also then used in Antarctica.]

A tracked oversnow vehicle designed to float, and extensively used in Antarctica from the late 1940s until the 1990s. Weasels were generally enclosed, but some had open cabins.

**1952** *Polar Record* 6(43) Jan: 382.

In five working days some 250 tons of stores, which included two Weasels and prefabricated huts, were landed.

**1957** Sullivan, Walter *Quest for a continent* Secker & Warburg, London: 131.

An operating table was fashioned from sledge boxes and an oxygen mask was made from weasel spare parts.

**1965** Hedblom, Captain E.E. *Polar manual, 4th edn* US Navy, Bethesda, Maryland: 93.

The efficiency of dog and weasel travel decreases with higher sastrugi and more crevasses to zero. A prolonged period of bad weather can reduce efficiency of man and dog parties, but not remarkably affect a weasel party ... All weasel drivers should be mechanics.

**1995** Law, Phillip *You have to be lucky: antarctic and other adventures* Kangaroo Press, Sydney: 20.

There was one Weasel (an over-snow tracked vehicle powered by a six-cylinder Studebaker engine).

**wedd**

Abbreviation of **Weddell seal**.

**1989** British Antarctic Survey [untitled] *FIDS glossary* British Antarctic Survey, Cambridge: [3].

Wed: Weddell seal.

**1995** (Signy) *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* no. 336 (Aug): 7.

We've seen one fur seal, seven wedds, one ademie, and one emperor (must have been well lost).

**Weddell** See **Weddell seal**

**Weddell Sea**

In 1823, Scottish navigator James Weddell (1787–1834) sailed to 74° south in the sea which he named George IV Sea in 1825. It is now known as the Weddell Sea in honour of its discoverer.

**Weddell gyre** *noun and attrib.* Also **Weddell drift**

A closed-circulation pattern in the Weddell Sea.

**1973** Gordon, Arnold L. in *Antarctic Journal of the United States* VIII(3) May/June: 68.

The Weddell Gyre represents a large volume of cold, relatively fresh water extending from the Antarctic Peninsula to 20° or 30°E.

**1986** Lutjeharms, J.R.E. and Foldvik, A. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* 16(1): 18.

This front may be an area of influx of warmer water from further north as part of the Weddell Gyre circulation.

**1988** Moss, Sanford and del Eiris, Lucia *Natural history of the Antarctic Peninsula* Columbia University Press, NY: 29.

The Peninsular almost blocks the East Wind Drift and deflects most of this current northward where it reflects to the east into the bosom of the West Wind Drift. The gyre so produced is known as the Weddell Drift.

**1991** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XXVI(2/3): 15.

Weddell Gyre physical oceanographic studies.

**weddellite**

A mineral, calcium oxalate dihydrate, Ca(C<sub>2</sub>O<sub>4</sub>).2H<sub>2</sub>O, first described in 1942 from a specimen dredged from the Weddell Sea floor. The same mineral is one of the most common constituents of kidney stones.

- 1942** [source: NOED] Frondel & Prier in *Science* 24 Apr: 431. Stones [formed in the body] composed wholly of carbonate-apatite are relatively rare ... Weddellite ( $\text{CaC}_2\text{O}_4 \cdot 2\text{H}_2\text{O}$ ) and especially struvite .. are ordinarily present.
- 1999** Cerranol, Carlo in *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 179: 297. A constant amount of calcium oxalates, as weddellite and whewellite, has been detected by X ray diffraction analysis in the NaClO resistant fraction of the tissue of the demersal sponge *Chondrosia reniformis*.

**Weddell seal** *noun and attrib.* Also simply **Weddell**, and formerly **Weddell's seal**

[The seal was named by French naturalist Lesson in 1826, from a drawing and description of the animal in Weddell's account of his 1822-1824 journey. Weddell himself referred to the seal as a "sea leopard".]

The seal *Leptonychotes weddellii* (fam. Phocidae), which occurs in pack ice and fast ice around Antarctica, and is the world's southernmost mammal. It hauls out onto ice to breed and moult in summer, and spends most of the winter in the water. The seal is variable in colour; it is bluish black or brownish black to grey, often silvery, and usually looks spotted or blotched, which helps explain the early name of **sea leopard**.

The seal is common, abundant, large (550 kg or 1200 lb, and up to about 3.3 m or 10 ft 9 in long) and vocal, producing beautiful singing and whistling noises both underwater, where it can dive to at least 600 m depth, and on land. It has also been called a **false sea leopard** or **wedd**.

- 1900** Cook, Frederick A. *Through the first Antarctic night 1898-1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 136.

Amundsen remained in the boat and sought to secure a few Weddell sea-leopards asleep on a pan of ice.

— 422.

Two varieties of seals were seen in Belgica Channel — the Weddell seal (*Leptonychotes weddellii*), frequently met in small bands, and the crab-eater seal (*Lobodon carcinophaga*), which is more scarce.

- 1901** Barnett-Hamilton, G.E.H. in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 209.

Leaving out of the question the Sea Elephant ..., we find four species of true seals represented in collections from the Antarctic. These are the Crab-eating or White Seal (*Lobodon carcinophagus*), Weddell's Seal, or the False Sea Leopard (*Leptonychotes weddellii*), the Sea Leopard (*Ogmorhinus leptonyx*), and Ross' Seal (*Ommatophoca rossii*). All these are at home on the pack-ice of the extreme South Polar regions.

- 8 Oct 1912** (Commonwealth Bay) Mawson, Douglas in Jacka, Fred and Jacka, Eleanor, eds (1991) *Mawson's antarctic diaries* Allen & Unwin, Sydney: 117.

Packed Weddell Seal oils. Some extracted by heat in tin dish on stove.

- 1929** *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 252.

Weddell Seal, *Leptonychotes weddellii*, Less. This seal, called by the Norwegian whalers and sealers "Fisk Sael", is found constantly, though in small numbers, at South Georgia.

- 1940** Bertram, G.C.L. *The biology of the Weddell and crabeaters seals, with a study of the comparative behaviour of the Pinnuipedia*. BGL 1934-37 scientific reports vol 1 (no 1) British Museum (Natural History), London: 4.

The first notice of the Weddell seal appeared in 1822 as a short description by Professor Jameson in Weddell's *Voyage*

towards the South Pole (1825) ... The Weddell seal is the most southerly ranging mammal, apart from man himself.

- 1957** Anderson, W. Ellery *Expedition south* Evans Brothers, London: 114.

Most of the seals we killed in Hope Bay were crabeaters, the seal of the pack-ice, but we also got the mottled silver grey and black Weddells that live nearer the land and spend the winter under the ice, breathing through blow-holes they keep open by scraping the ice with their canine teeth.

- 1967** *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* 6 (Sept): 6.

Richard shot a male Weddell seal to obtain scientific specimens and about 100 pounds of meat were deep-frozen, so we enjoy seal steaks on special occasions.

- 1992** Lied, Commander Nils Oscar: *the true story of a husky* Kerr Publishing, Sydney: 122.

We ran out of our stored-up seal-meat in mid-September, and from then on I knew I had to depend entirely on meat hunted with the dog-team, far out among the icebergs. Our first kill for the new season was a huge old Weddell bull, which took three men to load on the sledge.

**weet** *See* **huit**

**weka** *Macquarie Island*

[From the Maori word *weka* for the bird, probably echoing its cry (DNZE 1820-).]

The large flightless rail *Gallirallus australis* (fam. Rallidae), introduced to Macquarie Island in the late nineteenth century, and deliberately exterminated from there in the late twentieth century. The birds were brought to Macquarie from Stewart Island, probably on more than one occasion, in the 1870s.

- 1905** *Bulletin of the British Ornithologists' Club* XV(CXVI): 78.

Mr. Ogilvie-Grant also described a new species of Weka Rail from Stewart Island, New Zealand:— *Ocydromus scottii* ... Eight examples of *Ocydromus* procured by Dr. E.A. Wilson on the Macquarie Islands undoubtedly belong to this species, and are no doubt the descendants of birds imported there from Stewart Island.

- 10 Jan 1912** Blake, L.R. in Mawson, Douglas *Geographical narrative and cartography. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911-14. Scientific reports series A vol 1* Government Printer, Sydney: 281.

Had breakfast and dinner combined on stewed Wekas and "dry-tack" biscuits.

- 1937** (Macquarie Island) Falla, R.A. *Birds. BANZARE reports series B, vol 2* Hassell Press, Adelaide: 23.

There must be few parts quite safe from the prowling weka.

- 1960** *Polar Record* 10(66) Sept: 305.

The removal of the small colony of King Penguins from Heard Island to Australian zoos is a mistake not to be repeated. The "control" of natural predators is a misguided policy, and "blood sports" as understood in civilized communities have no place in the Antarctic, with the exception of the hunting of rabbits, reindeer, Weka, and possibly a quota of ducks on islands.

- 1970** Gosman, Ron, ed. *Homers' Odyssey: Macquarie Island magazine 1970* ANARE, Macquarie Island: [21].

When you're tired of ancient eggs for brekker

How about toasting a tasty weka?

At lunch-time when you're feeling blue,

Cheer yourself up with a roast gentoo,

And then at the end of a day of toil

You won't go wrong with a rocky or royal.

When life becomes a trifle drab, it's

Time you enjoyed some well-hung rabbits.

**1987** National Parks and Wildlife Service, Tasmania *Macquarie Island nature reserve: visitor's handbook* NPWS, Hobart: 24.

The weka was introduced from New Zealand in the mid-1800s as a source of food for sealers. They probably contributed significantly to the extinction of the endemic sub-species of land rails and parakeets. A high priority weka eradication program commenced in 1983.

### **West Antarctica** Also *Western Antarctica*

The smaller of the two distinct parts of the Antarctic continent, divided from **Greater** or **East Antarctica** by the Transantarctic Mountains, and including the Antarctic Peninsula. The landmass underneath its covering icecap is more dissected than that of East Antarctica. It is also known as **Lesser Antarctica**.

**1902** Balch, Edwin Swift *Antarctica* Allen, Lane & Scott, Philadelphia: 13.

It is necessary ... to find some term in place of the cumbersome phrases "the lands south of Australia" and "the lands south of South America" and taking North America and South America as models, it seems as if "East Antarctica" and "West Antarctica" answered the necessity satisfactorily. It remains to be seen whether other geographers will see fit to adopt these terms, but they will be used in this monograph for the sake of convenience, brevity and clearness.

**1965** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 4(1) Mar: 19.

The Pagano nunataks, the Hart Hills and the Whitmore Mountains rise some 3,000 ft above the ice cap north of the Horlick Mountains, and help to cast doubt on the theory that West Antarctica beneath the ice is a series of islands, not half a continent. The ridge which they are now thought to surmount appears to extend from continental East Antarctica, and this throws still further doubt on the old theory of water link under the ice between the Ross and Weddell Seas.

**1972** Mason, Theodore K *All about the frozen continent: Antarctica* Paul Hamlyn, Sydney: 13.

More than a dozen American and New Zealand women have worked in Western Antarctica since 1969.

**1993** Miller, Richard Gordon *A history and atlas of the fishes of the Antarctic ocean* Foresta Institute for Ocean and Mountain Studies, Carson City, Nevada: 3.

East Antarctica and West Antarctica are commonly used geographic terms, and if we are to use them in reference to the Antarctic continent and seas, it must be understood where each begins and ends ... West Antarctica includes the Palmer Peninsula and the region westward to the Ross Sea.

### **West Antarctic ice sheet** Also *West Antarctic ice cap, Western Antarctic ice sheet*

The smaller part of the **antarctic ice sheet**, a vast area of ice some 10 million km<sup>2</sup> (4 million miles<sup>2</sup>) up to about 4 km thick, composed of this and the **east antarctic ice sheets**. The Transantarctic Mountains form the landward boundary between the two areas.

**1993** Fiennes, Ranulph *Mind over matter: the epic crossing of the Antarctic continent* Sinclair-Stevenson, London: 275.

Once 0°C was reached at sea-level, the West Antarctic ice-sheet began its build-up and by 3,000,000 years ago Antarctica was the highest continent in the world.

**1995** *The Advertiser [Adelaide]* 25 Mar: 7.

The theory ... says that the first step towards the destruction of the western Antarctic ice cap is the break-up of the ice shelves.

**1995** *Technology Review* Oct: 5.

A lone Twin Otter aircraft appeared on the horizon and landed at our remote campsite — three canary-yellow Scott tents anchored on the West Antarctic Ice Sheet.

**1997** Robinson, Kim Stanley *Antarctica* HarperCollins, London: 103.

The western Antarctic ice sheet is grounded on land that is well below sea level.

### **west wind drift**

The **antarctic circumpolar current**. See also **east wind drift**.

**1909** Benham, W.B. in Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington: 237.

Most, if not all, of the polychaets [sic] give origin to a pelagic larva, which will be affected by the "West-wind Trift," [sic] and so spread round the antarctic seas.

**1956** Ealey, E.H.M. and Chittleborough, R.G. *Plankton, hydrology and marine fouling at Heard Island* ANARE Interim reports no. 15, Antarctic Division, Dept External Affairs, Melbourne: 7.

Heard Island lies in the region of the West Wind Drift. This surface current caused by the south-westerly winds must strike the western and southern shores of the island.

**1987** *Australian Geographic* 5(Jan): 18.

Drake Passage is less than 1000 kilometres wide. Through it surge the turbulent waters of the West Wind Drift on their circumpolar way from the Pacific into the Atlantic.

**1993** Fiennes, Ranulph *Mind over matter: the epic crossing of the Antarctic continent* Sinclair-Stevenson, London: 279.

The surface waters of the Southern Ocean which are close to the edge of Antarctica are driven by the East Wind Drift, and those further north by the West Wind Drift.

### **west wind zone** Also *west wind area*

The area of the **west wind drift**.

**1899** *The Geographical Journal* 13 (May): 645.

The second section of the cruise in antarctic waters may be looked upon as the most successful part of the expedition. Whether it was because the choice of the route brought us into the calm belt between the west-wind zone and the more southerly east-wind region, or whether fortune favoured us, the fact remains that the expedition found the most exceptionally fine weather.

**18 Feb 1933** (60°07'S, 11°48'E) Christensen, Lars in Jayne, E.M.G. (1935) transl. fr Norwegian *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 84.

We have come into the west wind area, though it is temporarily inclined to be southerly and light.

**1968** Stonehouse, Bernard *Penguins: the World of Animals series* Arthur Barker, London/Golden Press, NY: 39.

King penguins by contrast live in a world of mud, tussock grass and westerly gales. They are at home on the colder shores of west wind zone — Macquarie, Marion, Prince Edward and the Crozet Islands

### **whale** *noun*

[Whale has been used in English for cetaceans since c893 (NOED). Though whales are not restricted to southern waters, activities in the region have significantly affected whale populations. Antarctic whaling in the first part of the twentieth century reduced many species to extremely low numbers.]

A large marine mammal, a cetacean; the meat of one of these (see **whale meat**). The families significant in antarctic and subantarctic waters are the Balaenidae (see

**baleen** and (**southern**) **right whale**, Balaenopteridae (see **blue** and **humpback whale**, **rorqual**), Delphinidae (see **killer whale**), Neobalaenidae (see **pygmy right whale**), Physeteridae (see **sperm whale**) and Ziphiidae (see **Hector's beaked whale**, **shepherd's beaked whale** and **strap-toothed whale**).

**1766** Madrid, Fernando Correa de Montenegro in Markham, Sir Clements, ed. (1911) *Early Spanish voyages to the Strait of Magellan* Hakluyt Society, London: 219.

There were quantities of fish and many whales.

**6 Dec 1833** Darwin, Charles (1901) *Journal of researches into the natural history and geology of the countries visited during the voyage round the world of H.M.S. 'Beagle' under command of Captain Fitz Roy, R.N., 2nd edn* John Murray, London: 161.

It has always been a mystery to me on what the albatross, which lives far from the shore, can subsist: I presume that, like the condor, it is able to fast long; and that one good feast on the carcass of a putrid whale lasts for a long time.

**11 Jan 1893** Burn Murdoch, W.G. (1894) *From Edinburgh to the Antarctic* Longmans, Green and Co, London: 291.

To save the first lines a third boat fired another harpoon into the whale.

**1902** Beddard, Frank Evers *Mammalia. The Cambridge Natural History vol X* Macmillan and Co, London: 340.

The size of the Cetacea has been subjected to much exaggeration. The first duty of a Whale, observed the late Sir William Flower, is to be large; and Natural Historians, in the recent as well as in the remote past, have not hesitated to put very round numbers upon the dimensions of the larger members of the order.

**1930** (Ross Sea) Byrd, Richard Evelyn in *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 142.

Captain Nilsen, of the C.A. *Larsen*, came aboard to bid us farewell ... He gave us much good advice and a lot of whale meat. "Pass the whale" soon ceased to be a joke at mess. The men liked it best cut thin and fried or chopped with onions in meat balls. The meat of some of the old whales was, I must confess, a trifle strong. Some weighed 180,000 pounds. One could hardly expect the meat of such a colossal creature to be delicate.

**9 Feb 1933** Christensen, Lars in Jayne, E.M.G. (1935) transl. fr Norwegian *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Staughton, London: 72.

Suddenly the look-out man yelled: 'Lots of whales to starboard!' I can tell you that we got a move on!

**1949** (South Georgia) Innes, Hammond (1953 edn) *The white south* Fontana Books, London: 12.

The *Southern Cross* ... steaming into the ice, the sea slopping about in the stern hole though which the whales are drawn up on to the after-plan.

**1994** *Greenpeace Australia News* 4(5) Autumn: 5.

Between 1950 and 1960, more than 325,000 whales were reported killed in Antarctic waters.

## whale verb

To hunt and catch whales.

**1915** (Heard Island) Harvey, Rufus Watson *Thrilling adventures in the Antarctic wilds* Unpublished record, in possession of Tim Vasquez: 36.

The captain sent along one of the boat steerers, a man of sixty years age who had whaled nearly all his life.

## whale-bird noun and attrib.

[Whale-bird has been used for various petrels and other birds which live where whales are found, or which feed on their oil or offal, since 1768

(NOED). It is used in Alaskan English for various **muttonbirds** (DAlaskE, 1959-].]

A **prión**: these are small, relatively large-winged, grey-blue seabirds of the fam. Procellariidae. Large flocks gather to feed on plankton disturbed by feeding whales.

**1867** [source: NOED] Smyth *Sailor's Word-book*.

*Whale-bird*, a beautiful little bird seen hovering in flocks over the Southern Ocean.

**1875** Kidder, J.H. *Contributions to the natural history of Kerguelen Island, made in connection with the American Transit-of-Venus expedition, 1874-75. 1. Ornithology*. Government Printing Office, Washington: 32.

*Pseudoprión desolatus*, (Gm.) Gray. "Whale-Bird" ... I first saw this bird at sea, on the way out, about a hundred miles southeast of Tristan d'Acunha (South Atlantic Ocean), in July.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 316.

The small grey Prións, with boat-shaped bills and known to sealers as "whale-birds," seldom go beyond the northern edge of the great antarctic ice-pack.

**1922** (South Georgia) Murphy, Robert Cushman in *National Geographic* 41(4) Apr: 432.

The ground over a whale-bird colony is always strewn with acres of dismembered bodies of victims.

**1938** Ommanney, F.D. *South latitude* Longman, Green & Co., London: 14.

Flocks of blue Whale Birds — "Bláfugler" Christoffersen called them — skimmed about the middle distance.

**1954** Rand, R.W. in *The Ibis* 96(2): 204.

*Pachyptila turtur*. Whale-bird. No individuals were collected.

**1962** Harrison, Peter P.O. *Seabirds of the South Pacific Ocean: a handbook for passengers and seafarers* Royal Naval Bird Watching Society, North Pembrokeshire: 71.

Prións:— These little petrels, about the size of starlings, range far South to the Antarctic Circle, and are better known to seamen as Whale-birds or Ice-birds. At sea it is impossible to distinguish between the species.

**1989** May, John *The Greenpeace book of Antarctica, 2nd edn* Child & Associates, Sydney: 84.

The small, smoky-blue coloured prións, or whale birds, filter-feed by paddling along the surface of the water with their blue bills immersed. Their bills contain tiny comb-like plates which trap food particles; the skin of their mandibles forms a pouch, which shoots water out from the sides.

## whaleboat

[Boats used in whale-fishing have been called whale-boats since 1756 (NOED).]

A small boat, usu. one carried onboard ship, either for whaling or for general runabout work. In earlier and European use, such boats were typically clinker-built. In later (after the first half of the nineteenth century) and North American use, they were more often smooth-sided. Later boats also made greater use of sail.

Antarctica's most famous whaleboat voyage was the extraordinary tale of the *James Caird*, in which Ernest Shackleton and five companions sailed 800 miles from Elephant Island to South Georgia, to get help for their marooned shipmates.

**3 Jan 1786** (Falkland Islands) Portlock, Captain Nathaniel (1789) *A voyage round the world: but more particularly to the north-west coast of America: performed in 1785, 1786, 1787, and 1788, in the King George and Queen Charlotte*. N. Israel facs, Amsterdam (1968): 27.

I sent my whale-boat on board the Queen Charlotte for Captain Dixon, and communicated to him my intention of standing in for it next morning.

**1 May 1824** (Tristan da Cunha) Earle, Augustus (1832) *A narrative of a nine months' residence in New Zealand, in 1827; together with a journal of a residence in Tristan d'Acunha, an island situated between South America and the Cape of Good Hope* Longman, Rees, Orme, Brown, Green, & Longman, London: 318.

Mr. Glass and his men immediately prepared their whale-boat.

**3 Jul 1840** (Kerguelen Island) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 85.

The whale-boat landed me at the corner of Arched Point Bay. **1915** (Commonwealth Bay) Mawson, Sir Douglas *The home of the blizzard: being the story of the Australasian Antarctic Expedition, 1911–1914* William Heinemann, London: 63.

Just after 4 P.M., when the ship was about one mile from the nearest rocks, the whale-boat was lowered and manned. We rowed in with the object of making a closer investigation.

**1929** (South Georgia) *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 563.

On their breeding grounds the albatross are very numerous, for instance the writer was out with one of the whale-boats in January, 1926, when in three days over 2000 eggs of this species [sc. wanderer] were collected for eating.

### whalebone *noun and attrib.*

[Whalebone is recorded from about 1205 (NOED), for ivory from the walrus, and later (from 1604, in an arctic context) for the baleen of whalebone whales.]

### Baleen.

**1827** (Tierra del Fuego) Weddell, James *A voyage towards the South Pole, performed in the years 1822–24, 2nd edn* David and Charles Reprints, Newton Abbot, Devon (1970): 164.

They [sc. the Fuegians] turned their attention to some of the crew, who were employed in splitting whale-bone blades for making brooms.

**24 Dec 1892** Burn Murdoch, W.G. (1894) *From Edinburgh to the Antarctic* Longmans, Green and Co, London: 232.

[Footnote] Whalebone was worth £2500 per ton when we left Dundee. A big whale has a ton of bone in its mouth.

**1906** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 16(9): 110.

To forfeit any whales, whale-oil, or whale-bone found in his possession.

**1968** Dukert, Joseph M. *This is Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 58.

A whale will swim along through a school of krill with his jaws wide apart filling his mouth with food and seawater. Then he rolls his tongue forward, pressing the mouthful against a kind of natural "soup strainer" just inside his upper lip ... The whale's strainer is called baleen or whalebone, but it isn't really bone. It is made of hundreds of rows of horny plates, hanging down from the roof of his mouth and fringed at the bottom into hairlike bristles.

**1981** (Desolation Island, 1854) Richards, Rhys in *American Neptune* 41:

Rogers had unusually good luck and caught right whales through-out the bay whaling season: 3 in April, at least 5 in May, and three small whales in June. Their whalebone would be a bonus worth almost as much as their oil.

### whalebone whale

[While baleen whale is now the commoner term in English for these whales, 'whalebone whale' is the older term, recorded for the northern whalebone whales since 1725 (NOED).]

### A baleen whale.

**1902** Beddard, Frank Evers *Mammalia. The Cambridge Natural History vol X* Macmillan and Co, London: 344.

The pectoral fin of Whales exists in two forms. In the Toothed Whales it is shorter and rounder; in the Whalebone Whales longer and narrower. Structural differences accompany these outward dissimilarities. In the first-named group the humerus and the beginnings of the radius and ulna are within the body, and do not form a part of the fin. In the Whalebone Whales, on the other hand, the fin contains all the bones of the fore-limb.

**1942** Mackintosh, N.A. in *Polar Record* 3(24) Jul: 556.

The whalebone whales, although they visit the warmer seas, are primarily inhabitants of the colder regions, and are found in their greatest concentrations near the sea ice of the Arctic and Antarctic.

**1972** Stonehouse, Bernard *Animals of the Antarctic: the ecology of the Far South* Peter Lowe: 43.

Up to the 1950s whalebone whales were prominent in open water, steaming lazily in groups among the shoals of crustaceans which were their food.

### whale catcher *Also whaling catcher*

A relatively small ship for chasing and catching whales, and returning them to the **shore station** or **factory ship**; a **catcher**.

**1929** *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: ix.

By 1912–13 the number of small steamships known as whale catchers which were employed had risen to twenty-one in South Georgia, and thirty-two in the South Shetlands.

**1948** McCracken, David R. *Four months on a Jap whaler* National Travel Club, NY: 79.

As much cannot be said for the versatility of a whaling catcher boat. Such a vessel also goes by the names of chaser and killer boats.

**1949** Routh, Martin in *The Ibis* 91(4): 582.

The second type of observation made on the whaling grounds were those made from the small, trawler-like whale-catchers and from the factory ship when steaming fast — 9 or 10 knots.

**1971** (South Georgia) Brown, Nan *Antarctic housewife* Hutchinson of Australia, Melbourne: 84.

Shags or cormorants were plentiful around the beach areas, and frequently fell prey to whale-catcher crews and sealing parties, who considered them good eating.

**1991** Venables, Stephen *Island at the edge of the world: a South Georgia odyssey* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 51.

The only remaining ships are .. the *Petrel*, claimed to be the world's last floating whale catcher, moored at the rotting jetty as testament to a dead industry [etc.].

### whale fishery *Also whale-fishing grounds*

The activity of setting out to hunt whales for commercial gain; the fishery itself.

**1803** (near Amsterdam Island) Grant, James *The narrative of a voyage of discovery performed in His Majesty's vessel the Lady Nelson, of sixty tons burthen, with sliding keels, in the years 1800, 1801, and 1802, to New South Wales* T. Egerton, London: 64.

One of my crew had been on two voyages in the whale fishery, and pointed out the different species when they appeared, and by the blow at a great distance.

**1820** (South Shetlands) Miers, John in *Edinburgh Philosophical Journal* 3(6): 372, quoted in *Polar Record* (1950) 5(40): 568.



That it was the real sperm whale is certain, having himself been brought up in the whale-fishery.

**1838** *The penny cyclopaedia* Charles Knight, London, vol X: 189. About the beginning of the present century, the whale-fishery in the seas surrounding the antarctic pole began to become important.

**1849** (Auckland Islands) Enderby, Charles *The Auckland Islands: a short account of their climate, soil, & production; and the advantages of establishing there a settlement at Port Ross for carrying on the southern whale fisheries* Pelham Richardson, London: 25.

This little group is singularly adapted .. to assist the revival of a most important, though at present to all appearances moribund, department of British industry, the southern whale industry.

**1876** Kidder, J.H. *Contributions to the natural history of Kerguelen Island, made in connection with the United States Transit-of-Venus expedition, 1874-75* Government Printing Office, Washington, vol II: 41.

Even now this region is one of the best whale-fishing grounds of the Antarctic Seas.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 282.

The remunerative whale fishery carried on during the early fifties in the Southern seas has become nearly, if not quite, extinct.

**1938** *Falklands Gazette* 47(2) 1 Feb: 20.

The Whale Fishery (Consolidation) Ordinance, 1936.

**1996** Downes, Max *Indexing sealer's logbooks from Heard Island ANARE Research Notes no 97*, Australian Antarctic Division, Kingston: 5.

Some of the vessels in the Heard Island elephant oil trade were listed in surveys of the whale fishery.

## whalefood

[Whale('s) food is recorded from 1767 (NOED) as a general name for the 'small animals upon which whales feed']

## Krill.

**1938** Dakin, William John *Whalemen adventurers: the story of whaling in Australian waters and other Southern Seas Related Thereto. Revised second edn* Angus & Robertson, Sydney: 252.

In those dangerous waters, as close to the ice as possible, the living "whale-food" propagates with amazing speed during its restricted sunshine season. The sea becomes a savoury crustacean soup in which the great Blue whales swim and fatten themselves in preparation for darker days.

**1981** *Insight* Marshall Cavendish, London, pt 35: 958.

Krill is a Norwegian whaling term meaning 'whale food'. It applies to 80-90 species of shrimp-like crustaceans. The most notable variety is the Antarctic krill, *Euphausia superba*, which occurs in the south Antarctic Isc]. It is also the largest form, with some about 7.5 cm (3 in) in length.

**1992** Campbell, David *The crystal desert* Secker & Warburg, London: 107.

A large-scale krill harvest in the Antarctic would basically shift fishing activities from the whales to whale food.

## whale meat

The flesh of the whale, used as food. See also **scientific whaling**.

**30 Nov 1912** Murphy, Robert Cushman (1948) *Logbook for Grace* Robert Hale Ltd, London: 158.

Aside from penguin eggs, the best native provender we have found at South Georgia is fish that our men catch on hooks in the kelp beds, and fresh whale meat from Captain Larsen's station.

**1929** (South Georgia) *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 227.

Salt meat was hardly used at all, being replaced by whale meat, frozen beef from the whaling station and mutton from the Falkland Islands. An unlimited supply of whale meat is of course available throughout the season and, if cut from a fresh carcass and hung for some days, is very palatable.

**1935** Christensen, Lars in Jayne, E.M.G., transl. fr Norwegian *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 54.

Another question which has always interested me is that of the possibility of using whale-flesh for human consumption. We were formerly always obliged to provide large supplies of frozen beef for our crews, and to arrange for the replenishment of our stocks. For many years I studied different methods of preserving and conserving whale-meat. It was somewhat of a triumph to find such progress made that the crews of the factories and whale-boats had grown accustomed to prepare and vary their diet of whale-meat, and no longer either needed or appreciated frozen beef!

**1953** (1894, Bull) Scholes, Arthur *Seventh continent: saga of Australasian exploration in Antarctica 1895-1950* George Allen & Unwin, London: 33.

On Christmas Eve the ship was at 66 degs 32 mins S. and 170 degs 25 mins E., forging ahead under steam and sail as fast as possible. The occasion was celebrated with 'cream porridge', made with butter, and different forms of whale meat.

**1964** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(10) Jun: 469.

The 8,600-ton Japanese whaling mother ship Seifu Maru called at Fremantle on April 3 carrying 7,000 tons of whale meat. The ship was on its way back to Japan from the Antarctic.

**1982** (Grytviken, South Georgia, late 1950s) *BAS Club Newsletter* no 12 (Christmas): 22.

We had excellent Norwegian bread and cakes from the bakery and a joint of meat (often whale-fed pork from the pig-house at the station) in our own cloth meat bag once a week. Whale meat was available for the asking. The lemming would cut you off a fifty-pound chunk from, preferably, a sei whale, and this was carried home to be hung on a hook outside for a week or two to let the blood and any oil drip out. The final result was delicious — steaks as big as you liked, as often as you liked.

**1993** *Age [Melbourne]* 25 May: 24.

Whale meat may soon be back on the menu in Norway. The government has approved the recommencement of the trapping of whales, and it is expected that trapping will resume in the coming northern summer.

## whale oil noun and attrib.

[Whale-oil has been recorded for the oil from whale blubber since 1435 (NOED).]

A fatty, high-glyceride (trihydric alcohol) oil from whale blubber, bones and flesh, sometimes distinguished from **sperm oil** which is a wax high in monohydric alcohol. The **blubber** of a whale contains up to half of the whale's total fat content, and yields the best whale oil.

**1906** *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 16(9): 110.

To forfeit any whales, whale-oil, or whale-bone found in his possession.

**1929** (South Georgia) *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 364.

The highest grade of whale oil comes chiefly from the blubber, and the quantity and quality of the blubber is therefore a matter of direct importance to the whaler.

**1941** *Polar Record* 3(22) July: 454.

Whale oil, although providing only 9.4 per cent. by volume of the total world trade in fats, is of great value both in war and peace. In 1935 Germany used whale oil for 54 per cent. of her margarine and lard compound; while in Great Britain in 1937 whale oil constituted 41 per cent. of the margarine, 28 per cent. of the lard compound, and 16 per cent. of the soap.

**1943** Hydrographic Office *Sailing directions for Antarctica*. H.O. no 138 Hydrographic Office, Washington: 62.

More than 50 percent of the world's whale-oil production came from the Antarctic, a ration which increased steadily and which reached 97.9 percent in 1931.

**1982** Tønnessen, J.N. and Johnsen, A.O. *The history of modern whaling*. C. Hurst and Co, London/Australian National University Press, Canberra: n.p.

Although the term "whale oil" can be used to include the oil both of the baleen whale and of the sperm whale, it is often used to refer to the oil only from baleen whales, the oil from sperm whales being called "sperm oil". It is important to distinguish between these two, as their chemical composition, and hence the uses to which they are put, are quite dissimilar. Whale oil contains genuine fats (glycerides of fatty acids), while sperm oil consists mainly of compounds of wax alcohols and fatty acids.

**1985** Gambell, Ray in Bonner, W.N. and Walton, D.W.H., eds *Key environments: Antarctica* Pergamon Press, Oxford: 234.

Because the oil from sperm whales, which is the prime product, is chemically very different from baleen whale oil, it has to be kept separate.

**1991** VENABLES, Stephen *Island at the edge of the world: a South Georgia odyssey* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 53.

At first the oil rendered from whale blubber was used mainly for low grade heating and lighting fuel, but in 1906 the invention of hydrogenation, the process for turning the oil into a hard fat, elevated it to the multi-purpose raw material. Soap and margarine were the most obvious products, but there was also a range of specialised medical products, and industrial lubricants and, from 1914 to 1918, a massive demand for the by-product used to make nitro-glycerine. Whale oil prices soared during the Great War and production on South Georgia reached a new peak during the 1915–16 season.

**1999** *Britannica Online* [source: <http://www.eb.com:180/cgi-bin/g?DocF=macro/5002/35/24.html>, accessed 26 May 1999.

Stocks [of northern hemisphere whales] were already diminishing when interest in whale oil suddenly increased around 1904 as the production of soap and margarine ran ahead of world fat supplies.

## whaler

1. A principal ship in whale-hunting. Small **whale-boats** might be carried aboard these main vessels.

**1798** Colnett, Captain James *A voyage to the South Atlantic and round Cape Horn into the Pacific Ocean, for the purpose of extending the Spermaceti Whale fisheries, and other objects of commerce* Printed for the author by W. Bennett, London: 14.

If half the whalers belonging to London had been with me, they might have filled their vessels with oil.

**13 July 1806** *Sydney Gazette*: 1.

The commander of the *Harriet* British whaler.

**1 Jan 1841** Olmsted, Francis Allyn *Incidents of a whaling voyage* D. Appleton & Co., NY, repr. 1969 by Charles E. Tuttle Co., Rutland, Vermont: 341.

The "Nantucket," of Nantucket, a whaler, bound home full of oil.

**1901** Brandon, Rev. Lowther, ed. *The Falkland Islands Magazine* XIII(7) Nov: 181.

Newman had started in a whaler from "Jerelun Station", Seal Inlet, (?) in the eastern part of the Falkland Islands.

**1926** Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 132.

The whaler also took on board a supply of fresh water, for Tristan water is very good.

**1957** Booy, D.M. *Rock of exile: a narrative of Tristan da Cunha* J.M. Dent & Sons, London: 143.

Sometimes, as the older men recalled, several whalers would put in there during a day.

**1991** *ANARE News [Australia]* Sept: 11.

The second era, from the 1920s to 1946, was characterised by summer visits to Heard Island. Visits were made by whalers working from Iles de Kerguelen, by the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition (BANZARE) and the French geologist Aubert de la Rue.

2. [Whaler in this sense is recorded in British English from 1684–(NOED).]

A member of the crew of a whaling ship; one involved in whaling.

**6 Jun 1824** (Tristan da Cunha) Earle, Augustus (1832) *A narrative of a nine months' residence in New Zealand, in 1827; together with a journal of a residence in Tristan d'Acunha, an island situated between South America and the Cape of Good Hope* Longman, Rees, Orme, Brown, Green, & Longman, London: 334.

Many whalers have been out here, but have been obliged to abandon the pursuit.

**1879** (Kerguelen Island) *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: 21.

*Cotula (Leptinella) plumosa* ... Reputed by the whalers to be a prompt and effective emetic.

**1916** Doorly, Captain Gerald S. *The voyages of the 'Morning'* Smith, Elder & Co., London: 138.

The *Terra Nova's* crew was comprised chiefly of Arctic whalers, rough and hardy men.

**1938** Ommanney, F.D. *South latitude* Longman, Green & Co., London: 37.

In the new wooden cinema the whalers .. were transported round-eyed to that silly, magical country of Puerilia that we all know so well.

**1943** *Polar Record* 4(25) Jan: 42.

Perhaps no one knew South Georgia better than Barlas. He was on excellent terms with the floating population of Norwegian whalers.

**1955** (1850) Eden, Allan W. *Islands of despair: being an account of a survey expedition to the subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Andrew Melrose, London: 75.

The whaling-vessels made a few kills, but nowhere near up to expectations, while the shore-based whalers had no success at all.

## whale-sick adjective

Affected by **whale sickness**.

**1950** (South Georgia) Saunders, Alfred A *camera in Antarctica* Winchester Publications, London: 41.

When whales were plentiful the whalers were happy, but if for any reason they were scarce for several days, the men became 'whale sick' — a rather acute form of depression.

## whale sickness Also whaling sickness

A discontent or depression engendered among whalers by a lack of whales to hunt: see esp. 1971 quotation.

**1971** (South Georgia) Brown, Nan *Antarctic housewife* Hutchinson of Australia, Melbourne: 123.

During a slack period when whales were scarce, he developed an attack of 'whale-sickness', a common psychological complaint attributed to inactivity and a lack of whales. Whale-sickness manifested itself in various ways, truculent behaviour, moping and imaginary complaints being typical symptoms for which there is only one cure — a good catch of whales.

**1982** (South Georgia) Tønnessen, J.N. and Johnsen, A.O. *The history of modern whaling* C. Hurst and Co, London/Australian National University Press, Canberra: 286.

The "whaling sickness" which raged when the catch was poor proved worse than typhus and beri-beri.

## white albatross

[White from the plumage of the bird, which becomes whiter as they age, + **albatross**.]

An albatross, sometimes and perh. always a **wandering albatross**.

**16 Nov 1820** Bellingshausen, Thaddeus in Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. (1945) *The voyage of Captain Bellingshausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819–1821* Hakluyt Society, London, vol II: 363.

At noon we were in Lat. 54°33'16"S., Long. 133°57'59"E. Arriving at midday on the parallel of Macquarie Island I set my course east by south for this island. At 2.0 p.m. we encountered a few diving penguins, and we were daily accompanied by birds — pintades, black and blue petrels, grey and white albatrosses, and one Egmont hen.

**1901** Saunders, Howard in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 230.

No true Albatros has been obtained within the Antarctic circle, and very few species reach 60°S.; in fact Moseley remarks that the last White Albatros (*Diomedea exulans*) left when the *Challenger* was still 200 miles to the north of the pack.

**white antarctic seal** See **white seal**

## white-bellied storm petrel

The seabird *Fregatta grallaria* (fam. Hydrobatidae or Oceanitidae), which is mainly black and white with a conspicuous white belly. It breeds on Tristan da Cunha, Gough, St Paul and poss. Amsterdam Islands, as well as in the Pacific and South Atlantic regions.

**1848** Gould, John *The birds of Australia* The author, 20 Broad St, Golden Square, London, vol VII: pl. 63.

*Thalassidroma [sic] leucogaster*, Gould. White-bellied Storm Petrel. The White-bellied Storm Petrel is a fine and powerful species, fluttering over the glassy surface of the ocean during calms with an easy butterfly-like motion of the wings, and buffeting and breasting with equal vigour the crests of the loftiest waves of the storm.

**1895** (55°S) Borchgrevink, C. Egeberg *Geographical Journal* 5: 584.

The white-bellied storm petrel still followed in our track.

**1988** Porter, Eliot *Antarctica, 2nd edn* Arch Cape Press, NY: 24. Only in the southern latitudes did we begin to see the white-bellied and black-backed storm petrels, both of which have white underplumage.

**1999** Pizzey, Graham and Knight, Frank *Field guide to the birds of Australia* Angus & Robertson, Sydney: 92.

White-bellied storm-petrel .. *Fregatta grallaria* .. Sooty black above and on throat .. sharply cut-off white underparts.

## white-blooded fish

 Also *white-blooded icefish*

A fish of the marine fam. Channichthyidae — a **channichthyid**: these are more commonly called **icefish**.

**1968** (Palmer Station) *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 5(3) Sept: 135.

The research is a continuation of work started two years ago at McMurdo Station which involves the investigation of blood-gas relationships of the chaenichthyidae (white-blooded) fishes.

**1985** Kock, Karl-Hermann, in Bonner, W.N. and Walton, D.W.H., eds *Key environments: Antarctica* Pergamon Press, Oxford: 178.

In contrast to red-blooded species such as cod and herring the blood of channichthyids is nearly translucent with a yellowish tint and the gill filaments appear to be creamy white. This has led to their common names 'ice-fish' or 'white-blooded fish'.

**1992** (McMurdo Sound) Montgomery, J., Macdonald, J., Macdonald, I. and Taylor, J. in *New Zealand Antarctic Record* 12(1): 6.

The team was disappointed not to obtain any of the white-blooded icefish.

## white-bloodedness

Lack of red blood cells, specifically in **white-blooded fishes**.

**1995** Ives, Jack D. and Sugden, David, eds *Polar regions Reader's Digest*, Sydney: 100.

While many Arctic fishes are also restricted to narrow temperature ranges, white-bloodedness has been seen only in Antarctic fishes. This was a puzzle when first discovered in 1931 and largely remains so.

**white-breasted black eaglet (or haglet)** *noun and attrib., Tristan da Cunha*

The seabird *Pterodroma incerta*: see **Atlantic petrel**.

**1910** Barrow, K.M. *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 275.

The White-breasted Black Eaglet. Lays in November.

**1958** Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 118.

Once we had what an islander would call White-breasted-Black-Haglet pie. For, on a night of over-successful light trapping, so many Atlantic Petrels came down that we lost about twenty through accidental suffocation in the box in which we had put them to await attention. Having these dead birds on our hands, the next best thing, after we had weighed and measured them and selected the best skins, was to eat the surplus, which we did, finding it excellent. One wonders none the less whether these birds would taste quite so good in civilisation.

**1969** Zettersten, Arne *The English of Tristan da Cunha* Lund Studies in English no 37: 95.

White-breasted Black Eaglet. The Atlantic Petrel. It is sometimes called *Nighthawk*.

## white-capped mollymawk

*New Zealand*

Either of two species of albatross with a white patch on the head:

a. The albatross *Diomedea bulleri* (fam. Diomedidae), which is a mainly black and white bird having a light grey head and neck with a white patch on the head. The bird breeds on some New Zealand islands.



**1909** Waite, Edgar R. in Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington, vol 2: 575.

*Diomedea bulleri*, Rothschild. (White-capped mollymawk.) .. This bird was breeding on the Snares on the occasion of my visit in February, 1907.

b. A white-capped **shy albatross**, esp. the subspecies *Diomedea c. cauta*, which breeds on New Zealand's Auckland Islands and in Tasmania.

**1962** Bailey, Alfred M. and Sorensen, J.H. *Subantarctic Campbell Island*. Proceedings no. 10, Denver Museum of Natural History: 201.

With large breeding colonies on Auckland Island only some 150 miles away, the White-capped or Shy Mollymawk should be a regular visitor offshore; but personnel on the island are so rarely at sea there is only one sight record.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 10.

[caption] A vast colony of thousands of shy, or white-capped, mollymawks on the eastern slopes of Disappointment Island, the Auckland Islands.

**white-chinned petrel** Also **white-chinned shoemaker**

[See 1943 quotation.]

The seabird *Procellaria aequinoctialis*: see **Cape hen**.

**[24 Oct 1772]** Hoare, Michael E., ed. (1982) *The Resolution journal of Johann Reinhold Forster 1772-1775* vol 1: 178.

At some distance from the ship we shot a (*Procellaria aequinoctialis* Linn) ... I would call it (*Procellaria nigra*.)

**1879** Sharpe, R Bowdler in *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: 121.

In Kerguelen Island a hole similar to a deserted rabbit's earth, excavated in wet ground with water standing (in early summer) an inch or two inches deep with the entrance, especially if it is in a slope near the sea, may be regarded as the burrow most likely to be that of a White-chinned Petrel.

**1943** Hydrographic Office, US Navy Department *Sailing directions for Antarctica*. H.O. no 138 Hydrographic Office, Washington: 57.

Shoemaker (*Procellaria aequinoctialis*). Sometimes called White-chinned Petrel or Fulmar ... Chin usually white in varying degree, also forethroat and sides of face.

**1952** Hagen, Yngvar *Birds of Tristan da Cunha* Det Norske Videnskap Akademi i Oslo/Hos Jacob Dybwad, Oslo: 80.

The writer at Tristan da Cunha January 27 met both the typical white-chinned Shoemaker and the spectacled form.

**1960** Westerskov, Kaj *Birds of Campbell Island*. Wildlife Publication no. 61, Wildlife Division, New Zealand: 60.

This large black white-chinned petrel — also known as Cape hen — was found by Sorensen .. nesting on muddy peat slopes on the southern coast of Campbell Island.

**1985** Siegfried, W.R. in Bonner, W.N. and Walton, D.W.H., eds *Key environments*. Antarctica Pergamon Press, Oxford: 249.

[caption] A white-chinned petrel in its nesting burrow. Sudden thaws or heavy rain on frozen ground can create problems for burrow-nesting birds in the sub-Antarctic.

**1993** (South Georgia) *Antarctic Society of Australia newsletter [Sydney]* 35 (Dec): 16.

The three lines that were observed during hauling had six dead birds caught on their hooks. They comprised one Black-browed Albatross, one unidentified albatross (*Diomedea* sp.), and four White-chinned Petrels (*Procellaria aequinoctialis*).

**white continent**

The ice-covered continent, **Antarctica**.

**1936** Byrd, Richard E. *Antarctic discovery* Putnam, London: 1.

There was, at least for me, the intangible attraction of the white continent itself.

**1957** *Ross Sea Committee, Trans-Antarctic Expedition: newsletter [Wellington]* no 22 (1 Dec): 1.

The United States Antarctic Service Expedition of 1939-41 took to the Antarctic the most elaborate form of mechanical transport ever seen on the white continent.

**1964** *Antarctic. Bulletin of the New Zealand Antarctic Society* 3(11) Sept: 473.

The long night has gone, and the white continent again tilts into the dawn of summer.

**1986** Chester, Jonathan *Going to extremes: Project Blizzard and Australia's Antarctic heritage* Doubleday Australia, Sydney: 288.

Today Australia's involvement with the white continent cannot be seen in isolation. As the world view of the Antarctic rapidly shifts from a place that just twenty years ago was of interest only to scientists and adventurers, to one that is now even of concern to third world countries, Australia must redefine its views.

**1995** Irion, Robert in *Currents: University of California, Santa Cruz* 5(10) 3 Mar: 1.

Microscopic aquatic life .. teems off the white continent each spring.

**white desert**

**Antarctica**, including the **pack ice** which surrounds it.

**1953** (~ 66°32'S, 170°25'E) Scholes, Arthur *Seventh continent: saga of Australasian exploration in Antarctica 1895-1950* George Allen & Unwin, London: 33.

The weather continued fine but once again the ship ran into the endless white desert of the pack and Bull had the melancholy idea that they might not pass through at all.

**1965** Chapman, W.J.B. in *Antarktiese Bulletin* 8 (Mar): 1.

Antarctica is largely an unmapped, featureless white desert, having the worst flying weather in the world.

**1979** Lovering, J.F. and Prescott, J.R.V. *Last of lands ... Antarctica* Melbourne University Press, Parkville: 10.

Antarctica is the driest of the Earth's continents and may fairly be called a 'white desert'.

**white grass** noun and attrib. *Falkland Islands*

The large perennial grass *Cortaderia pilosa* (fam. Poaceae or Graminae), which has plumes of white flowerheads, and is closely related to the South American 'pampas grass'. See also **soft camp**.

**1978** Trehearne, Mary *Falkland heritage: a record of pioneer settlement* Arthur H Stockwell, Ilfracombe: 51.

They saddled their horses and rode about 20 miles over the rolling white-grass camp.

**1989** Davies, T.H. and McAdam, J.H. *Wild flowers of the Falkland Islands* Bluntisham Books, Huntingdon: 45.

The most common grass in the Falklands and the main component of 'soft camp', whitegrass gives a large proportion of the Islands' landscape its characteristic 'dun' colour.

**white grebe** *Falkland Islands*

The small grey and white waterbird *Podiceps occipitalis* (fam. Podicipedidae), which breeds in the Falkland Islands and South America.

**1861** (Falkland Islands) Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 162.

*Podiceps calipareus*, Less. (White Grebe.) This Grebe is found only in the interior of East-Falkland Island, on the small inland ponds. It never flies on being shot at; and I have never seen it on the wing, though it must take long flights, as I have seen seven or eight of them in a pond one day, and next day they had all disappeared. I know nothing of their breeding, not having found a nest. I have, however, shot the young birds in their immature plumage.

**1924** (1868) Boyson, V.E. *The Falkland Islands: with notes on the natural history by Rupert Vallentin* Clarendon Press, Oxford: 287.

The second species, *Podiceps calipareus* (white grebe), Less., is, as already stated, very rare. I have only met with it on Byron Sound Lagoon where one pair were usually to be seen swimming with the preceding species *lsc. P. rollandii*.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 101.

Silvery Grebe *Podiceps occipitalis* .. Local name: White Grebe ... generally grey plumage and shining white foreneck ... Locally common resident ... Occurs in coastal kelp patches in autumn and winter.

## white-head

A **white-headed petrel**.

**1986** (Macquarie Island) *Australian Geographic* 1(4) Oct-Dec: 81.

The night was excited once again by the aerial calls of the white-heads returning to their nesting burrows.

## white-headed petrel

The seabird *Pterodroma lessonii* (fam. Procellariidae), which breeds on subantarctic islands and moves northward in winter. It is a powerful flier, blackish to greyish above with a white face, underparts and tail. It has also been called **Lesson's petrel**.

**1848** Gould, John *The birds of Australia* The author, 20 Broad St, Golden Square, London, vol VII: pl. 49.

*Procellaria lessonii*, Garn. White-headed Petrel. The wings of the White-headed Petrel are longer and more arched than those of any other species of its size and weight, and it is consequently one of the boldest and most powerful fliers of the *Procellariidae* ... Forehead, face, all the under surface and tail white.

**1909** Waite, Edgar R. in Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington, vol 2: 562.

*Oestrelata lessoni*, Garnot. (White-headed petrel.) .. This bird is known to breed on the Kerguelen and Antipodes Islands. I found it nesting on Disappointment Island, Auckland Group, where it makes burrows under shelter of the *Ligusticum* plants.

**1943** Mawson, Douglas *Macquarie Island: its geography and geology. Australasian Antarctic Expedition 1911-14. Scientific reports series A vol V* Government Printer, Sydney: 36.

The White-headed Petrel (*Pterodroma lessoni*), another of the burrowing forms, nests in several localities.

**1959** Downes, M.C. and others *The birds of Heard Island. ANARE reports Series B vol 1* Zoology Antarctic Division, Dept External Affairs, Melbourne: 12.

The non-breeding populations of several other species, with a strictly low-latitude breeding range, resort regularly in large numbers to antarctic seas. These include the white-headed petrel (*Pterodroma lessoni*).

**1972** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Apr: 23.

At Macquarie the white headed petrels and prions fill the night with their weird crooning and cackling.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 113.

White-headed petrel *Pterodroma lessonii* ... One of the more distinctive petrels of the southern oceans, appears blackish above with a lighter grey back.

**1999** Pizzey, Graham and Knight, Frank *Field guide to the birds of Australia* Angus & Robertson, Sydney: 56.

White-headed petrel ... Robust, long-winged, white-bodied petrel with sturdy black bill.

**white hell** See **great white hell**

## white mollymawk

The albatross *Diomedea melanophris*: see **black-browed albatross**.

**1929** *Discovery Reports vol 1* Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London: 568.

Black-Browed Albatross or Mollymawks — called "White Mollyhawks" by the whalers — abound at sea off South Georgia all the year round and sometimes are seen in extensive flocks.

**1943** Hydrographic Office, US Navy Department *Sailing directions for Antarctica. H.O. no 138* Hydrographic Office, Washington: 56.

Black-browed Albatross (*Diomedea melanophris*). Sometimes called the White Mollymawk ... White head, neck, rump and ventral surfaces.

## whiteout noun and attrib.

[White-out is recorded earlier in North American English (1946) for the same phenomenon, and the word was probably taken south from there.]

The complete obscuring of the sun during daylight, so that shadows disappear and the horizon cannot be distinguished. This can happen in completely clear air, where there is thick cloud cover and snow or ice-covered land, and is a major hazard esp. when flying.

**1955** *Polar Record* 7(51) Sept: 496.

The pilot of a helicopter was overcome by "whiteout" during a flight and was killed when his aircraft crashed.

**1964** Mawson, Douglas in Mawson, Paquita *Mawson of the Antarctic: the life of Sir Douglas Mawson* Longmans, London: 70.

The use of sun compasses and of sastrugi .. so often became vitiated by an overcast sky ('white-out').

**1991** Venables, Stephen *Island at the edge of the world: a South Georgia odyssey* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 97.

We planted a marker wand on the rim of the scoop, took a compass bearing from the edge of the Ross Pass to make sure we could find it on future whiteout journeys, then started down in high spirits.

## white petrel

The white-plumaged bird *Pagadroma nivea*: see **snow petrel**.

**17 Jan 1773** Cook, James (1777) *A voyage towards the South Pole, and round the world. Performed in His Majesty's Ships the Resolution and Adventure, in the Years 1772, 1773, 1774, and 1775* Libraries Board of South Australia facs, Adelaide (1970) vol I: 43.

The white petrel also appeared in greater numbers than before.

**10 Dec 1820** (nr 65°S, 172°W) Bellingshausen, Thaddeus in Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. (1945) *The voyage of Captain*



## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

*Bellingshausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819–1821* Hakluyt Society, London, vol II: 383.

As we travelled south the icebergs increased in number and polar birds flew in flocks round the ship. In our first voyage from the South Sandwich Islands to the eastward we had never met such numerous flocks of polar petrels and had seen more white petrels; but on our present voyage we met the latter very rarely and always in small numbers.

**26 Feb 1841** (69°52'S, 167°53') McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol I: 181.

We have had to-day a greater number and variety of birds flying in the wake of the ship than we have seen since entering the Antarctic circle — white petrel, immature petrel, ash-backed, a stormy, and a gigantic petrel.

**1901** Borchgrevink, C.E. *First on the Antarctic continent: being an account of the British Antarctic Expedition 1898–1900* Australian National University Press facs, Canberra (1980): 219.

The *Oceanites Oceanicus* .. behaved very much like the *Pagodroma Nivea*, the elegant white petrel.

**1953** Scholes, Arthur *Seventh continent: saga of Australasian exploration in Antarctica 1895–1950* George Allen & Unwin, London: 32.

White petrels hovered above the ship or gyrated about her for twenty-four hours a day, apparently without rest or sleep.

### white pigeon *See* pigeon

### white-rumped tern

The seabird *Sterna hirundinacea* (fam. Laridae), which is pale grey to white with a black, cap, red legs and red bill. All terns have forked tails: the adult white-rumped tern has a deeply forked white tail. It breeds in the Falkland Islands and coastal South America.

**1906** (South Orkneys) Eagle Clarke, W. in *The Ibis* 6(XXI) Jan: 177.

*Sterna hirundinacea* Less. .. The White-rumped Tern was first observed by the Expedition at Saddle I. on February 4th, 1903 ... When not surprised on their nests, these birds usually betrayed the whereabouts of their treasures by hovering over them and screeching loudly.

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 102.

The White-rumped Tern (*Sterna hirundinacea*), is a kind of cousin of the gull tribe "with a college education." It is a dainty little bird, with scarlet beak and legs, seen in the Westell Sea and the South Orkneys. It builds no nest, and lays only one egg, on bare crevices among the rocks.

### white seal *Obs.* Also *white antarctic seal*

The seal *Lobodon carcinophagus*: *see* **crabeater seal**.

**23 Dec 1892** Burn Murdoch, W.G. (1894) *From Edinburgh to the Antarctic* Longmans, Green and Co, London: 228.

Later in the day we saw many more of these 'white seals', as we called them.

**20 Feb 1898** Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic night 1898–1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 179.

We saw numbers of penguins, some giant petrels, and a few crab-eating, or white antarctic seals.

**1901** Barnett-Hamilton, G.E.H. in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 209.

Leaving out of the question the Sea Elephant (*Macrorhinus*), whose valuable commercial properties made it the object of

a pursuit so keen that it seems to have been well-nigh wiped out of existence, we find four species of true seals represented in collections from the Antarctic. These are the Crab-eating or White Seal (*Lobodon carcinophagus*), Weddell's Seal, or the False Sea Leopard (*Leptonychotes weddelli*), the Sea Leopard (*Ogmorhinus leptonyx*), and Ross' Seal (*Ommatophoca rossi*). All these are at home on the pack-ice of the extreme South Polar regions.

**1916** Doorly, Captain Gerald S. *The voyages of the 'Morning'* Smith, Elder & Co., London: 64.

The crabeater, or white seal, and the Weddell seal abound in the pack, and at rare intervals a sea-leopard is secured; the latter are formidable creatures, measuring as much as twelve to thirteen feet in length, with a girth of six feet, and demand much energy on tackles to hoist on board.

**1928** Hayes, J. Gordon *Antarctica: a treatise on the southern continent* The Richards Press, London: 104.

The Crab-eater, or White Seal (*Lobodon carcinophaga*), has even less claim to this distinctive colour than the white rhinoceros, possessing a large variety of shades. It is usually about eight feet long, and is one of the most active of seals.

**1940** Bertram, G.C.L. *The biology of the Weddell and crabeater seals, with a study of the comparative behaviour of the Pinnuipedia. BGLE 1934–37 scientific reports vol 1*(no 1) British Museum (Natural History), London: 88.

The normal diet of the Crabeater seal consists entirely of Euphausiids, and this food gives the characteristic pink coloration to the faeces. The colour of the seal in the summer is a bleached silvery-white (hence the older term 'White seal'), which is moulted in the autumn to give place to a mottled grey-brown coat.

### white south

The antarctic regions. *See* also **great white south**.

**1922** *The Daily Graphic* [London] 3 Aug (no. 10,181): 1.

[caption] "The White North" has Franklin, "the White South" Scott and Shackleton.

**1958** Barber, Noel *The white desert* Hodder and Staughton, London: 47.

Perhaps that, after all, was the secret of man's passion for the White South, a love affair with an enigmatic siren who lured one on even to the edge of oblivion, but whose spell was so overwhelming that no hardship was too severe, no danger too great, for the chance of the favours that only she could bestow.

**1968** *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* 17 (Aug): 5.

Navigation being a problem in the 'White South' Norris Rilely has been happily playing with the compasses.

**1991** Bainbridge, Beryl *The birthday boys* Duckworth, London: 38.

I had a chance to glance at the menu and they'd had filllets of beef *Terra Nova*, soufflé *Captain Scott* and *South Pole* ice pudding. It was a splendid dining-room, glittering with silver candelabras and gilded cornices, and you've never seen so many flowers, some in vases and others massed in brass tubs, and all of them white — lilies, possibly — to go with the theme of the white South.

### white swan *Falkland Islands*

The swan *Coscoroba coscoroba* (fam. Anatidae) of South America, occasionally recorded in the Falklands. It has white plumage, with black wingtips and is also called the **coscoroba swan**.

**1861** (Falkland Islands) Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 159.

*Cygnus coscoroba* (Mol.). (White Swan). Mare Harbour is the only part of East Falkland where I have even seen or heard of this bird. At this spot there is generally a flock of eight or ten to be found. I have never seen the nest; but on the 1st of May, 1860, three young ones about a month old were observed, which, no doubt, had been bred on some of the adjacent islands.

1913 *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 22(4) (1 Apr): 61.

An Ordinance To amend the law with regard to the preservation of wild animals and birds ... Black necked Swan. White or Coscoroba Swan ... Sched. II closed season 1 Oct – last Feb.

### white-tufted grebe *Falkland Islands*

The small waterbird *Rollandia* (or *Podiceps*) *rolland* (fam. Podicipedidae) which lives in the Falkland Islands and South America; the Falklands bird is the subspecies *Rollandia rolland rolland*. The adult in breeding season has a white patch streaked with black on either side of the head. Though it has no black crest, it has also been called the **black-crested grebe**.

3 Feb 1968 (Punta Arenas) Scott, Peter (1983) *Travel diaries of a naturalist: Australia, New Zealand, New Guinea, Africa, the Galapagos islands, Antarctica and the Falkland Islands* Collins, London: 252.

We had good views of Crested Ducks and Brown Pintails, a White-tufted Grebe, White-rumped Sandpipers, etc.

1988 Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 99.

White-tufted Grebe *Rollandia rolland* ... Local names: Brown, Black, Golden Grebe .. Adult breeding; recognised by a prominent triangular white patch streaked with black on each side of the peaked and crested black head and shiny black upperparts

### whizzer *See wyssa*

### wig *noun and attrib.*

[Wig is probably from the shaggy mane of some adult male seals.]

A male **fur seal**, especially one of breeding age.

6 Dec 1822 (Bouvette [Bouvet] Island) Morrell, Captain Benjamin (1832) *A narrative of four voyages, to the South Sea [etc.]*. & J. Harper, New York: 59.

The boats returned with one hundred and twelve clapmatch and wig-skins.

1829 (Falkland Islands) Barnard, Captain Charles H. *A narrative of the sufferings and adventures of Captain Charles H Barnard, in a Voyage Round the World, during the years 1812, 1813, 1814, 1815, & 1816* J Lindon, New York, for the author: 101.

A large wig, or male seal, came down upon me, with a number of small ones, and as I could not defend myself against them all at once, the old wig gave me a bite on the right knee.

1955 Eden, Allan W. *Islands of despair: being an account of a survey expedition to the subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Andrew Melrose, London: 105.

An old bull [sc. Hooker's sea lion], known as a "wig", would yield five or six gallons of oil, although the sea-bears or "clapmatches" would not be so profitable.

1983 King, Judith E. *Seals of the world, 2nd edn* British Museum (Natural History), London, and Oxford University Press, Oxford: 9.

Sealers terms are wig and clapmatch, which are used for breeding males and females, respectively.

1990 (South Georgia) Naveen, Ron, Monteath, Colin, de Roy, Tui and Jones, Mark *Wild ice: Antarctic journeys* Smithsonian Institution Press, Washington: 39.

I can attest to their comeback, having almost been chewed too many times by musky "wigs" (the large, harem-collecting male fur seals).

### wigeon *Falkland Islands*

[Wi(d)geon, 'of difficult etymology', is recorded for various wild ducks in NOED from 1513 onwards.]

The large duck *Anas sibilatrix* (fam. Anatidae), which breeds on the Falkland Islands and in southern South America. It is mainly dark with a blackish head, and white face and wing markings; it is hunted as game.

1861 (Falkland Islands) Abbott, Captain C.C. in *The Ibis* III(X) Apr: 160.

*Mareca chiloensis* .. (Wigeon.) This is one of the wildest and scarcest birds in East Falkland. I have never found its nest; but it must breed late in the season, for young ones were seen in a pond near Port Louis in January. On being disturbed, the mother took them to the salt water, and the next day they had disappeared. On the 7th of April, I shot some Wigeons on the north shore with imperfect wing-feathers: were these young birds, or were they moulting?

1913 *The Falkland Islands Gazette* 22(4) (1 Apr): 61.

An Ordinance To amend the law with regard to the preservation of wild animals and birds ... Schedule II. .. Wigeon ... closed season 1 Oct–last Feb.

### wild cabbage *Historical*

Either of two edible plants both also simply called **cabbage**: *Pringlea antiscorbutica* (see **Kerguelen cabbage**) and *Stilbocarpa polaris* (see **Macquarie Island cabbage**).

18 Nov 1820 Bellingshausen, Thaddeus, in Debenham, Frank, ed. and transl. (1945) *The voyage of Captain Bellingshausen to the Antarctic Seas 1819–1821*, Hakluyt Society, London, vol II: 368.

The so-called "wild cabbage" .. grows abundantly over the whole island. It is distinguished .. by the darkness of its foliage. .. The roots resemble cabbage in flavour. The sealers scrape the stalks and roots, cut them up very fine and make soup of them. We took a lot of these cabbages with us and preserved them for the crew, the roots being pickled for the officers mess. From the preserved cabbage we made a very tasty *shtshi* (Russian cabbage soup), and we were sorry that we had not prepared more.

1951 (Heard Island, 1859) *Walkabout. Australian Geographical Magazine* 17(9) Sept : 48.

During a considerable period of their stay the party of seventeen had to share their rations with the Americans and for the last month eke them out with "wild" penguins, sea elephants' tongues and "wild cabbage." For this last they had to dig five or six feet in the snow.

### wild fox *Falkland Islands*

The extinct dog *Canis australis*: see **warrah**.

1971 Taylor, Margaret Stewart *Focus on the Falkland Islands* Robert Hale and Co, London: 103.

I woke next morning to find the *Darwin* was in Fox Bay ... Fox Bay is on the West Falkland, and its name refers to the wild fox (*Canis antarcticus*), the only quadruped found on the islands when they were first discovered.

**Wilkins' bunting** *noun and attrib.* *Tristan da Cunha*

[Both scientific and English names honour the aviator and explorer Hubert Wilkins (1888–1958), naturalist on Shackleton's Quest expedition which called at the Tristan da Cunha group of islands.]

The bird *Nesospiza wilkinsi*: see **big canary**.

[1940 (Nightingale Island) Christopherson, Erling, transl. fr Norwegian by Benham, R.L. *Tristan da Cunha: the lonely isle* Cassell and Co., London: 96.

I could remember little about this bird in which I was now interested except that it was "A giant form, peculiar to Nightingale". Its full name was *Nesospiza Wilkinsi* — so called after Sir Hubert Wilkins, who discovered the bird during his short stay on the island.]

1976 Ryssen, W.J. van *The birds of the Tristan da Cunha group and Gough Island* Board of Extra-mural Studies, University of Cape Town: 30.

Wilkins' bunting *Nesospiza Wilkinsi* Big Bill Canary .. Nightingale and Inaccessible Islands only.

1984 Richardson, M.E. in *Cormorant* 12(2): 123.

The few Wilkins' Buntings *Nesospiza wilkinsi* have a precarious existence because of their dependence on *Phylica*.

1996 Woolley, John, quoted in *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 19 (Sept): 7.

The capture led to further investigation of Wilkin's Bunting habitat around the Skua Bog.

**willywaw** Also *willy*

[Of unknown origin. The earliest usage recorded in English is the 1824 quotation below. It is also used in high northern latitudes: DALaskE records it from 1897–.]

A sudden violent squall, also known as a **woolly**.

6 Mar 1824 (Nightingale Island) Earle, Augustus (1832) *A narrative of a nine months' residence in New Zealand, in 1827; together with a journal of a residence in Tristan d'Acunha, an island situated between South America and the Cape of Good Hope* Longman, Rees, Orme, Brown, Green, & Longman, London: 289.

Suddenly a squall came from the mountains, which very nearly laid us on our beam ends. All was confusion in an instant, the sea heaving up masses of foam in all directions, though not a cloud was visible in any part of the horizon. These sudden squalls are called "Willies", at least, such is the name given them by the sailors who frequent the island.

21 Sept 1842 (Tierra del Fuego) McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world: being personal narratives of attempts to reach the North and South Poles* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 302.

When within a hundred feet of the summit the gusts of wind, here called Williwaws, became so violent, it was somewhat difficult to cling to the sides of the peak against them.

1879 Eaton, A.E. in *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: 4.

Sudden squalls and "willy-waughts" from the hills, such as are usually met with off mountainous coasts, prevail in many parts of the islands, and cause boat navigation to be attended with considerable risk.

12 Dec 1912 (South Georgia) Murphy, Robert Cushman (1948) *Logbook for Grace* Robert Hale Ltd, London: 165.

We had our cables shortened and one anchor arip, only to have to let everything go again when the williwaw suddenly raked down from the mountains with such terrific force that the *Daisy* heeled over under bare spars, and the air was filed with sleet and water smoke.

1912 (Kerguelen Island) du Baty, Raymond Rallier (1948) *Fifteen thousand miles in a ketch* Thomas Nelson & Sons, London: 102.

I can well believe Sir James Clarke Ross when he says that one of his men was actually blown into the sea when going ashore on Kerguelen, and that he only saved himself by lying flat on the ground. These squally are called 'woolleys' or 'willy-waws' by the sealers.

c1928 Kidson, Edward *Meteorology. British Antarctic Expedition 1907–1909: reports on the scientific investigations* Government Printer, Melbourne: 59.

Small whirlwinds or "willy waas" passed close to the winter quarters during strong winds on three occasions .

1962 (Macquarie Island) Davis, J.K. *High latitude* Melbourne University Press, Parkville: 122.

A fresh north-west wind, with occasional heavy squalls off the land (called by the whalers 'willywaws') delayed us until nearly nightfall.

1991 Venables, Stephen *Island at the edge of the world: a South Georgia odyssey* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 45.

The wind came suddenly, in a cold blast from the glaciers, whipping spume off the sea and juddering the ship. It was our first experience of the katabatic 'williewaws' that funnel down from the high mountains into the fjords of South Georgia's lee coast.

**Wilson's petrel** Also **Wilson's storm(y) petrel**, **Wilson petrel**

[Named *Procellaria Wilsonii* by Charles Bonaparte in honour of the Scottish-born American ornithologist Alexander Wilson (1766–1813). The scientific name has since reverted to an earlier one.]

The small oceanic bird *Oceanites oceanicus* (fam. Oceanitidae or Hydrobatidae), which is blackish-brown with a conspicuous white patch on the rump. It breeds on South Georgia, the Crozet, Kerguelen and Falkland Islands, the South Shetlands, South Orkneys, antarctic continent, and elsewhere in the south, and migrates across the equator in the southern winter. See also **storm petrel**.

1848 Gould, John *The birds of Australia* The author, 20 Broad St, Golden Square, London, vol VII: pl. 65.

*Thalassidroma [sic] wilsonii*, Bonap. Wilson's Storm-Petrel. I possess a specimen of this bird which was sent me by his Excellency Governor Grey, who killed it in the South Atlantic.

1875 (Kerguelen Island) Kidder, J.H. *Contributions to the natural history of Kerguelen Island, made in connection with the American Transit-of-Venus expedition, 1874–75. 1. Ornithology* Government Printing Office, Washington: 30.

*Oceanites oceanica* .. Wilson's Stormy Petrel ... These birds are crepuscular near the shore ... They frequent rocky parts of the hillsides, and flit about very like swallows.

1904 *The Canterbury Times [Christchurch]* Annual: 1 Oct: [15].

In a burrow about three feet long, under a heavy mass of rock, some of the explorers were led by the constant hovering of a bird around the entrance to a nest belonging to a Wilson's petrel.

1914 (Cape Adare) Priestley, Raymond E. (1974 repr.) *Antarctic adventure: Scott's northern party* Melbourne University Press: 67.

The skua proved to contain a half-digested Wilson petrel, and the legs of this were sticking out of its mouth; yet, in spite of the discomfort which this must have caused, the bird was vigorously engaged on a shoulder of mutton which had been thrown away on our rubbish heap.

1938 *National Geographic* LXXIV(2) Aug: 240.



Wilson's Petrel, a famous surface-dancer, comes to us in summer from islands east and south of southern America, some of them beyond the Antarctic Circle. Life conditions are so severe at the nesting grounds that one often finds frozen chicks and eggs of previous years in the rock crevices where the birds rear their single offspring.

**1952** Zumpt, F. *The ticks of sea birds* Antarctic Division, Department of External Affairs, Melbourne: 14.

Wilson's storm petrel (*Oceanites oceanicus*) breeds in the Antarctic but migrates northwards to Labrador, Greenland and Great Britain.

**1956** Stinear, B.H. *Preliminary report on operations from Mawson Base, Australian National Antarctic Research Expedition, 1954-55* BMR Record 1956/44, Dept National Development, Commonwealth of Australia: 24.

Snow Petrels and Wilson Storm Petrels nest under the rocks and skuas and giant petrels are also present.

**1976** (Antarctic Peninsula) Hill, Len and Wood, Emma *Penguin millionaire: the story of Birdland* David and Charles, Newton Abbot, Devon: 76.

We saw at least 10,000 Wilson's petrel feeding.

**1992** Mearns, Barbara and Richard Audubon to Xantus: *the lives of those commemorated in North American bird names* Academic Press, London: 490.

From New Orleans [Alexander] Wilson sailed to New York, continuing his birdwatching at sea. Off the east coast of Florida and the Carolinas flocks of petrels followed the ship and he stayed on deck throughout one wet and windy night to watch them as they flew noisily about the rigging. He identified them as Storm-Petrels but in 1824 Charles Bonaparte pointed out that they were a different species, which he designated *Procellaria Wilsonii*. It turned out that they had already been described by Heinrich Kuhl so Bonaparte's specific name is lost but they are still known as Wilson's Storm-Petrels.

**1996** Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 198.

Wilson's petrels skimmed the wake behind the other Humber, the white bars on their tails twirling gracefully over the ruffled water as if they were dancing on the hem of a slip. After a three-month ornithological diet of skuas they looked miraculously tiny.

## wind-chill factor

A calculation of the cooling effect of wind on the coldness we feel, which is affected by wind speed as well as ambient air temperature. American geographer Paul Siple developed an index for wind chill as a result of his antarctic work.

**1954** Roots, E.F. in Gjaever, John, transl. fr Norwegian by Huggard, E.M. *The white desert: the official account of the Norwegian-British-Swedish antarctic expedition* Chatto & Windus, London: 269.

The temperature was -33°F. The wind-chill factor, which is the only significant way of measuring and comparing the effect of such conditions on our living body, was probably as high as it ever got during our field-work.

**1959** Siple, Paul *90° South: the story of the American South Pole conquest* G.P. Putnam's Sons, New York: 71.

It becomes apparent to anyone subjected to cold that a windy day feels much colder than a calm day on which the thermometer may actually register a considerably lower temperature. I adopted the word "wind-chill" to express this factor, recognizing that it was in reality a rate at which the body was cooling.

**1988** Porter, Eliot *Antarctica, 2nd edn* Arch Cape Press, NY: 118.

The official temperature that day was a relatively warm -11° Fahrenheit, but for humans there was a wind-chill factor that made it feel like 30° below zero.

**1996** Wheeler, Sara *Terra incognita: travels in Antarctica* Jonathan Cape, London: 112.

Paul Siple, Byrd's protégé, took on the old man's mantle. He oversaw the construction of South Pole station, was among the first to winter there, and invented the wind-chill factor.

## winfly noun and attrib., US, NZ. Also winter fly-in

[Abbreviated form of winter + fly.]

A series of flights made during winter from the United States operations at Christchurch, New Zealand, to McMurdo Station, Antarctica; (a person on) one of these flights.

**1969** *News from the South* [NZARP, Wellington] 10(3) July: 2.

On the subject of Winfly ... the Winfly mail closes in Christchurch on 28 August.

**1975** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* X(4) Jul-Aug: 196.

Deep freeze '75 support began in late August 1974 when three of the squadron's airplanes arrived at Christchurch, New Zealand, for "Winfly" (winter fly-in). The Winfly flights delivered 62 passengers and 5.7 metric tons of cargo and mail to McMurdo Station.

**1977** Dick, E.C., Jerde, R.S. and others *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XII(4) Oct: 3.

A unique circumstance .. occurs during the winter fly-in (WINFLY<sup>1</sup>) period at McMurdo Station, Antarctica.

<sup>1</sup>Footnote: Used both to designate persons coming to McMurdo at the outset of the winter fly-in period as well as to designate the period itself.

**1993** *Antarctic Journal of the United States* XXVIII(5): 262.

Due to the early, seasonal nature of the ozone loss over Antarctica, this research must be carried out during the winter fly-in period at McMurdo Station: that described here began in late August 1992.

**1996** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] 16(2) Dec: 32.

This year's "Winfly" of supply flights into McMurdo station were [sic] made by US Air Force C141 Starlifter. This made three flights, covering the 2117 mile — about 3200 km — distance from Christchurch to McMurdo in five and a half hours. It landed on a compacted snow runway during the three hours daily of twilight on August 20, 22 and 24. It brought in personnel to prepare the sea ice runway and other facilities for the summer programs, mail, and fresh food.

## winter noun and attrib.

[Winter has been recorded in British English for the colder half of the year since c888 (NOED). In antarctic regions its meaning, like that of other common words such as day, night and summer, is more restricted.]

## The polar winter.

**1778** Forster, Johann Reinhold, edited by Thomas, N., Guest, H. and Dettelbach, M. (1996) *Observations made during a voyage round the world* University of Hawai'i Press, Honolulu: 77.

We often had snow and sleet, and found our water in the skuttled watercask on deck, frozen during some nights. If all this happen in the midst of summer, what must the condition of these climates be during winter?

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 54.

The most remarkable feature in the meteorological conditions of the Antarctic is the winds ... The frequency and force of these gales .. always from the same direction, East-south-east .. the dryness of the winds .. and the motion of the

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

upper clouds from the North-west, point to the fact that the South Pole is covered by .. a great permanent anti-cyclone, more extensive in the winter months than in the summer.

**1950** (South Georgia) Saunders, Alfred *A camera in Antarctica* Winchester Publications, London: 17.

We spoke only of two seasons in the Antarctic. There was no slow transition from one to the other; it was either winter or summer. At South Georgia we reckoned on summer being from October to May, and winter from June to September.

**1963** (Scott Base) McKenzie, Douglas *Opposite poles* Robert Hale & Co, London/ Whitcombe & Tombs, New Zealand: 168.

We went through into the second week of March with the blank and mournful hand of winter closing around the camp. There was no perceptible autumn; we acknowledged the transition as being direct from summer to winter.

**1993** Fothergill, Alastair *Life in the freezer: a natural history of the Antarctic* BBC Books, London: 93.

Every year on 21 September the sun crosses the equator on its journey towards the southern hemisphere. It is a very significant day in the Antarctic year. Known as the spring equinox, it marks the end of the southern winter.

### **winter** *verb.* Also **winter-over**

[Specific use of winter to pass or spend the winter, recorded from 1382 onwards (NOED).]

To spend the winter in antarctic or subantarctic territory. Occas. (see 1964 and 1993 quotations), to prepare or send people to spend winter there.

**1870** Hamilton, Captain R.V. in *Proceedings of the Royal Geographical Society* XIV(II): 152.

I agree with Captain Davis in the propriety of a party wintering there.

**1885** (Straits of Magellan) Thomson, Sir C. Wyville and Murray, John *Narrative, vol 1 pt 2: Report on the scientific results of the voyage of H.M.S. Challenger*. Her Majesty's Government, London: 874.

In 1599 De Cordes, the first Dutchman who attempted this route, wintered in the strait, remaining there from April to September.

**1901** Bernacchi, Louis in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 507.

If a land party should winter near Mount Erebus and Terror, there is an easy way of communication between such a party and a ship wintering in Wood bay by means of an uninterrupted ice-foot which, commencing from the southern slopes of Mount Melbourne, continues southwards as far as McMurdo bay.

**1913** *Life* [Melbourne] 1 Dec: 593.

The ship covered 1100 miles without being able to find a landing-place. Finally, eight men took their lives in their hands and were deposited, bag and baggage, on the Shackleton Glacier — so named in compliment to Sir Ernest Shackleton, on whose birthday the glacier was discovered. The ice-tongue on which these men wintered is 120 miles long, but the camp was seventeen miles distant from land, and there were 200 fathoms of water underneath them, according to soundings which were taken.

**1921** Ponting, Herbert George *The great white South* London: 90.

They were to proceed to and endeavour to land and winter on King Edward VII Land.

**1958** Bursey, Jack *Antarctic night* Longman, Green & Co., London: 237.

No one could understand what the sound of her voice meant to me unless he, too, had wintered-over through the long, dark nights of earlier expeditions.

**1964** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] Nov: 5.

The following day, irrespective of hangovers, your OIC will muster all hands for a concerted effort to finish storing and stacking, to knock off the building programme, and to get yourselves "wintered".

**1967** *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* [Cambridge] 9 (Dec): 6.

One operative aircraft will winter at Adelaide Island.

**1982** Wolmarans, L.G. and Kent, L.E. in *South African Journal of Antarctic Research* suppl. 2: 4.

The geologists wintered over at Sanae and proceeded to the mountains when the coming of spring made field work possible.

**1993** Dalmau, Tim *International approaches: Reflections on managing women and men in Antarctic expeditions Conference paper: Living in Antarctica — Women in a Man's World?* Australian Antarctic Foundation, Hobart, 19–21 August 1993 Australian Antarctic Foundation, Hobart: 5.

If you remove from calculation any countries who have never "wintered" women the figure rises to 9.36%.

**1994** *Looking South* [Dept of Astrophysics, University of NSW] no. 2 (Apr): 5.

To show John Briggs (currently winterovering at the South Pole).

### **winterer** Also **winter-overer**

[Winterer is recorded from 1801 onwards (NOED) for one who spends the winter in a specific place, and initially applied esp. to those working for the Hudson's Bay Company in the Arctic.]

A member of an antarctic expedition who stays in Antarctica over **winter**.

**1958** *Polar Record* 9(60) Sept: 261.

The *Kooperatsiya* left "Mirny" with the first group of winterers due for relief on 10 January 1958.

**1985** *BAS Club Newsletter* 17 (Spring): 14.

There are 61 winterers this year: 18 at Halley, 14 at Rothera, 13 at Faraday, 13 at Signy and 3 at Bird Island.

**1992** (McMurdo station) National Science Foundation *The United States Antarctic program* National Science Foundation, NSF 91-92 (revised), Arlington Virginia: [3].

Except for an air-drop at Midwinter (late June) and a few flights in August, the winterers are isolated until October.

**1993** *Scott Base newsletter* 1 (winter): 2.

Now I'll hand you over to my fellow winter-overers to tell you a bit about themselves.

**1996** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] 16(2) Dec: 16.

Winterers are defined as having spent six continuous months including Midwinter Day, at the station or on field trips originating from it.

### **winter fly-in** See **winfly**

### **winter ice** *noun and attrib.* Also **winter sea-ice**

**Sea ice** which forms over **winter** and usually disperses in **summer**.

**7 Dec 1910** (61°S, 179°E) Edward Wilson (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912* H.R. King, ed. Blackford Press, London: 72.

On the shore of open Ross Sea where we can make daily notes of the open pack ice and winter sea ice movements and changes which have never been watched before.

**1901** (South Victoria Land) Bernacchi, Louis *To the South Polar regions* Hurst and Blackett Ltd, London: 244.

There is one objection to Wood Bay, viz.: the possibility of the winter ice not breaking up every summer, and thus the ship would remain fast, but this is an uncertainty common to most polar harbours.

**1956** Armstrong, Terence and Roberts, Brian in *Polar Record* 8(52): 10.

[Glossary] Winter ice: More or less unbroken, level sea ice of not more than one winter's growth originating from young ice. Thickness from 15 cm. to 2 m.

**1985** Walton, D.H.W. in Bonner, W.N. and Walton, D.W.H., eds *Key environments. Antarctica* Pergamon Press, Oxford: 296.

In sheltered bays on South Georgia thin winter ice may form but it rarely lasts for long.

**1996** *Age* [Melbourne]: A9/8.

As winter sea ice expands, the task of helping the other 62 [sc. on Russian bases] grows more difficult by the day.

### wintering *verbal noun and adjective*

(The act of) spending the winter season in Antarctica.

**14 Dec 1897** Cook, Frederick A. (1900) *Through the first Antarctic 1898-1899* William Heinemann Ltd, UK: 65.

Supplies and equipment were put aside for a wintering party in the antarctic.

**8 Feb 1912** Mawson, D. in Mawson, Paquita (1964) *Mawson of the Antarctic: the life of Sir Douglas Mawson* Longmans, London: 63.

Wild and Harrison and Hoadley went to examine the shelf-ice with a view as to its suitability for a wintering station.

**1949** (British Graham Land Expedition) *The Sphere* [London] CXCVI no. 2559 (19 Feb): 269.

It seemed that the five Britons might be faced with the prospect of wintering in tents or igloos or of making a Polar dash for safety across the Graham Land wastes to Marguerite Bay.

**1960** *Polar Record* 10(64): 53.

Wintering parties at F.I.D.S. stations, 1958.

**1974** (1911) Savours, Anne, ed. *Scott's last voyage through the Antarctic camera of Herbert Ponting* Sidgwick & Jackson, UK: 71.

On 13 May, the remaining men, ponies and dogs arrived safely from Hut Point. The wintering party was complete.

**1993** Clark, Linda and Wishart, Elspeth 66° *South Queen Victoria Museum, Launceston*: 67.

In 1991 the Antarctic Meteorological Centre was opened at Casey, employing a wintering forecaster from 1994.

### wintering expeditioner *Aust.*

A winterer.

**1992** ANARE 45th ANARE *Casey yearbook 1992* ANARE, Casey: 163.

The Wintering expeditioners this year had the luxury of having telephones in their dongas allowing incoming and outgoing calls worldwide.

**1992** Ewing, Tania in *Airways* Jan-Feb: 27.

Between 1948 and 1985 there were almost 2000 wintering expeditioners at Australian bases — those who spent at least a year at a base, three months of which are in total darkness.

### winterise *verb. Also winterize*

[From the US winterize, first recorded there in 1938 (NOED) in the same sense.]

To prepare (equipment) to withstand severe winter weather, either by packing it away or by adapting it to colder conditions.

**1962** Henderson, Jim *One foot at the Pole* Whitcombe & Tombs, Christchurch: 112.

'You know these cameras, since they've been winterised and you get 'em down here, why, they grind away like coffee grinders.'

**1969** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club* [Melbourne] June: 17.

In any cold conditions and particularly in the Antarctic, cameras should be winterized. This simply means that the camera is stripped down, the normal grease and oil is removed as this becomes stiff in the cold, and special light grease is used.

**1969** *British Antarctic Survey Newsletter* 27 (Jun): 3.

Advantage was taken of a warm spell to "winterize" the transport.

**1996** [Macquarie Island] *Station News* Mar: 1.

Peter Sprunk has been busy with the vehicles, cleaning, servicing and 'winterising' those which we will not require until spring.

**11 Dec 1997** Jensen, Katy in *New South Polar Times* [South Pole] <http://205.174.118.254/nspt/index/971211.htm> (printed 8 Apr 1998)

Hello from sixty below! It's getting chilly in a hurry now that the station is closed for winter. All of the summer folks left on February 16th, and we got five more cargo and fuel flights before we officially closed on the 18th. Since then we've been "winterizing" most of the buildings and doing as much outdoor work as possible before it gets too cold.

### winter night

**Night**, which in the **antarctic regions**, can last all winter.

**1930** (Little America) Byrd, Richard Evelyn in *National Geographic* LVIII(2) Aug: 166.

[Caption] The long shadows of the dog-drawn sledges indicate that the sunless winter night is not far away.

**1946** (Operation Highjump) *Polar Record* 4(32) Jul: 401.

It is not intended to continue any part of the Task Force in the Antarctic through the Winter night.

**1969** Keneally, Thomas *The survivor* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 47.

After the winter night one party would use the coast hut as base and go out to re-locate the shifting area of the magnetic pole.

**1995** Forbes, L.M. *Captain Robert Falcon Scott R.N.* Perh. Scott Polar Research Institute, Cambridge: 6.

The winter night drew in and for the next five months, until the sun came back on 21 August, everyone was confined to the ship and hut.

### winter-over *adjective. Also wintering-over*

Spending the winter season in Antarctica.

**1958** Barber, Noel *The white desert* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 28.

Ken Blaiklock, a surveyor and dog-handler, .. would be in charge of the wintering-over party.

**1962** Henderson, Jim *One foot at the Pole* Whitcombe & Tombs, Christchurch: 97.

'Can men catch colds down here?' 'Oh yes, especially the wintering-over group just after the first lot of summer visitors has come in.'

**1966** Baum, Allyn *Antarctica: the worst place in the world* Macmillan Co, NY: 63.

Two hundred men, nearly the entire wintering-over party of McMurdo, stood about on the endless, dull plain of the frozen Ross Sea.

**1978** Lanzerotti, L.J. and Park, C.G. eds *Upper atmosphere research in Antarctica* American Geophysical Union Antarctic Research Series no 29, Washington DC: 7.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

The station at South Pole, completed to receive the first winter-over crew in December 1956, was supported by air-planes from McMurdo.

**1994** *Looking South* [Dept of Astrophysics, University of NSW] no. 2 (Apr): 1.

John Briggs, the CARA winter-over scientist who is now tending our experiments.

**winter-over** *noun, US*

Someone who spends, or has spent, the winter season in Antarctica; the season itself.

**1981** (McMurdo station) Land, Barbara *The new explorers: women in Antarctica* Dodd, Mead & Co, New York: 65.

After the last plane flew out at the end of February, only a handful of "winter-overs" were left — 128 men and two women.

**1990** *Antarctica Sun Times* [McMurdo] IV(i) 24 Oct: 1.

U.S., N.Z., and Italian planes are bringing people and priority cargo from Christchurch to join winter-overs staying for summer.

**1995** (McMurdo station) *Orange County Register* 5 Feb: 9.

It's Hyer's first winter-over, but his predecessors told him what to expect.

**winter-over** *verb, see winter verb***winter-overer** *See winterer***wizzer** *See wyssa***wolf** *Historical, Falkland Islands. Also wolf-fox*

[Specific use of wolf which has been used in general English for various species of *Canis* since c725 (NOED).]

The extinct dog *Canis australis*: see **warrah**.

**1839** Waterhouse, George R. in Darwin, Charles, ed. *The zoology of the voyage of H.M.S. Beagle, under the command of Captain Fitzroy, R.N. during the years 1832 to 1836 Pt II Mammalia* London: 10.

I was assured by Mr. Low, an intelligent sealer, who has long frequented these islands, that the wolves of West Falkland are invariably smaller and of a redder colour than those from the Eastern island.

**1884** (Falkland Islands) McCormick, R. *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 26.

The only quadruped that seems indigenous to the islands is the warrah, or wolf-fox, a specimen of which was brought home by Captain Fitz-Roy, and placed in the British Museum ... It is much larger than the English fox, being about the size of a middle-sized Newfoundland dog; they have not the slightest fear of man.

**1987** (1836) Captain Grey, quoted in Strange, Ian J. *The Falkland Islands and their natural history* David and Charles, Newton Abbot: 56.

In shape they resemble a fox, their colour is much darker than that of our foxes, and the fur thicker; they are also longer in proportion in the legs, they are called here "Warrahs" or "Wolf Fox", the one that I had killed was a very old one and I never saw such teeth.

**1988** Woods, Robin W. *Guide to birds of the Falkland Islands* Anthony Nelson, Shropshire: 28.

Only one terrestrial carnivore was native to the Falkland Islands. This animal was known from the early days of settlement as the warrah and was variously described as a wolf, dog or fox. It was absurdly tame and apparently lived on

geese, penguins, other birds and eggs before livestock were introduced. Settlers and visiting sealers regarded it either as fair game or a pest and the last warrah was killed at Shallow Bay, West Falkland in 1876, only a century after colonisation. Two recent investigations of museum skins and skeletons have both suggested that the Falkland Fox (warrah) *Dusicyon australis* was a close relative of South American foxes, wild dogs or wolves of the same genus.

**wolf of the sea**

[Wolf from its hunting habits and fierceness; wolf has been recorded in British English for various voracious fishes since 1555 (NOED).]

The carnivorous marine mammal *Orcinus orca*: see **killer whale**.

**1916** Andrews, Roy Chapman *Whale hunting with gun and camera* D. Appleton & Co, NY: 215.

The killer is the wolf of the sea and like the land wolves hunts in packs of twenty or more individuals which will attack and devour almost anything that swims.

**1957** Sullivan, Walter *Quest for a continent* Secker & Warburg, London: 6.

The chief enemies of these giants [sc. blue whales] are the killer whales, the "wolves of the sea" who hunt in packs and are the most vicious and sinister of the animals in Antarctica.

**wood fur** *See antarctic wood fur***wood pigeon** *Tristan da Cunha*

[Wood-pigeon has been recorded as a general name in British English for any pigeon which lives in woods, since 1668 (NOED).]

Either of the two seabirds *Anous stolidus* and *A. minutus* (fam. Laridae), which occur on Tristan da Cunha and elsewhere. They are dark brown birds, and the adults have a white forehead. Birds of this genus are more widely known as 'noddies'.

**14 Nov 1907** Barrow, K.M. (1910) *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 175.

Yesterday, after early school, Graham and Repetto went off to the Hardies in search of some wood-pigeons' eggs. This is a sea-bird in spite of its land-sounding name. They had to swim to a high rock standing a little distance from the shore ... It was rather too early for eggs and they only found one.

**1926** (Nightingale Island) Rev Rogers in Rogers, Rose Annie *The lonely island* George Allen & Unwin, London: 179.

The wood-pigeon is a big bird, black and grey, with a long beak, and utters a rather cawing note.

**1952** Hagen, Yngvar *Birds of Tristan da Cunha* Det Norske Videnskaps Akademi i Oslo/Hos Jacob Dybwad, Oslo: 7.

The local name of the noddies, "Wood-Pigeon", seems to point out the smaller species as the primary of the two in the Tristan group.

**1976** Ryssen, W.J. van *The birds of the Tristan da Cunha group and Gough Island* Board of Extra-mural Studies, University of Cape Town: 26.

Common noddy *Anous stolidus* Wood pigeon.

**woolly** *Also wolly, woolley, wooly*

[Woolly is recorded in Alaskan English use from 1886, slightly later than the earliest quotation below.]

**A willywaw.**

**1876** (Kerguelen Island) Kidder, J.H. *Contributions to the natural history of Kerguelen Island, made in connection with the United States Transit-of-Venus expedition, 1874-75* Government Printing Office, Washington, vol II: 36.

Little squalls called "wolleys" (willy-waws?) are particularly dreaded by the sealers. A small white sphere of cloud is seen high up on the mountain-side, and immediately comes down with immense speed and violence, often burying vessels bows under. These squalls are dangerous not only by their violence but by their nearly vertical direction.

**1924** Baker, H.A. *Final report on geological investigations in the Falkland Islands* Government Printing Office, Port Stanley: 3.

Violent winds (termed locally "woolies") were a real menace when proceeding by sea in a small vessel.

**1978** Trehearne, Mary *Falkland heritage: a record of pioneer settlement* Arthur H Stockwell, Ilfracombe: 50.

They shot through the perilous channel known as the Woolly Gut between West Point Island and the mainland. As they came safely through its swirling eddies the Captain explained that "woolly" was the kelpers' word for a williwaw or sudden wind sweeping down from the heights with hurricane force.

**1996** Downes, Max *Indexing sealer's logbooks from Heard Island* ANARE Research Notes no 97: 17.

"The Bight" provided some safety from the prevailing westerlies, but, like all the coast in the shadow of the great mountain, was subject to the dreaded "woolies". These were violent, localised winds and snow squalls which descended on the coast with great ferocity and little warning.

## World Park

[Greenpeace established World Park Base at Cape Evans, Ross Island (77°38'S, 166°24'E) in January 1987, and dismantled it five years later.]

A proposed classification for the **antarctic continent** and surrounding seas, in recognition of the aesthetic and scientific values of the region. The Greenpeace campaign for such a classification seeks to give priority to wilderness values, protect wildlife, and maintain scientific cooperation and peace in the region.

**1982** Barnes, James N. *Let's save Antarctica!* Greenhouse Publications, Melbourne: 59.

The Second World Conference on National Parks, meeting at Grand Teton National Park, USA, in September 1972:

Recommends that the nations party to the Antarctic Treaty should negotiate to establish the Antarctic Continent and the surrounding seas as the first world park, under the auspices of the United Nations.

**1993** Innes, Hammond *Target Antarctica* Pan Books, London: 23. Greenpeace want the whole continent declared a World Park.

**1995** *The Columbus Dispatch [Ohio]* 10 Sept: [n.p.].

Opinions vary on just what Antarctica is — world park, unexploited resource, playground for scientists — but nobody describes the ice continent as "pristine" any more.

**1997** Robinson, Kim Stanley *Antarctica* HarperCollins, London: 311.

'Many world park advocates don't even like scientists down here.'

## worm verb, *Tristan da Cunha*

To remove the **worm** from a crawfish.

**17 Oct 1951** Elliott, Lady Elizabeth in *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* (1998) 23 (Sept): 10.

The women beheaded the live crawfish and the tails were then passed on to more women who wormed them (removing the guts) washed and scrubbed them with a nail brush and finally they were wrapped in cellophane and packed raw.

**1958** Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 58.

The crawfish caught on Tristan are processed and canned in the Big Beach factory. The island women do the work of 'tailing' — that is, breaking or cutting off the tails which alone are canned —, 'worming' (gutting), and shelling. The tails are then washed, sealed in small tins, and the whole sterilised. On the ships, however, the tails are not shelled or canned, but packed in boxes and frozen.

## worm noun, *Tristan da Cunha*

The gut of a **crawfish**, sense 1.

**1960** *Tristan Topics* 5 (June): 7.

The tails are first broken away from the bodies and the worm removed. The tails are then washed, sorted, weighed.

**1997** Ponticelli, Greg in *Tristan da Cunha Newsletter* 21 (Sept): 10. The Government tailers and the processing women are ready in their battle dress of apron, wellies, gloves and tailing and worming knives to tail the dead and damaged lobsters ... The rest are tailed, i.e. the tail is removed from the body and the gut (worm) from the tail.

## WOV noun and attrib., *Aust.*

[Acronym from 'wanted on voyage']

Luggage taken on board ship and stowed in an accessible area or one's quarters; the area itself.

**1986** Hyams, Zena in *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* 5(4) June: 15.

Normally when the ship reaches 60° latitude there is a King Neptune ceremony. Ours had to be postponed twice and eventually it was held down in the WOV hold.

**1995** Australian Antarctic Division *ANARE cargo requirements* AAD, Tasmania: [4].

Expeditioners are limited to taking two kit bags as WOV.

## wreathed tern

The seabird *Sterna vittata*: see **antarctic tern**.

**1879** (Kerguelen Island) Sharpe, R. Bowdler in *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: 113.

*Sterna vittata*. Wreathed Tern, *Lath. Gen. Syn.* iii, pt. 2, p. 359 ... S. Paul's Island .. Kerguelen Island.

**1901** Saunders, Howard in Murray, George, ed. *The Antarctic manual, for the use of the expedition of 1901* Royal Geographical Society, London: 233.

The 'Wreathed Tern' of Latham, breeds in the volcanic islands of St. Paul and Amsterdam, and .. in the north of Kerguelen.

**1929** *The birds of South Georgia: Discovery Reports*. Discovery Committee, Colonial Office, London, vol 1: 582.

The Wreathed Tern is a common resident round the shores of South Georgia. The food chiefly consists of small fish and the birds have also been observed catching euphausians swimming near the surface. Large flocks are often to be seen settled on the beach or moraines near the sea. This species nests in colonies of from half a dozen to twenty or thirty pairs, often some way from the sea. Inland the colonies are on moraines or screes ... The egg is grey-brown with darker brown and olive spots. It is very difficult to see as it lies in the nest.

**1954** (Marion Island) Rand, R.W. in *The Ibis* 96(2): 205.

*Sterna vittata vittata* Gmelin. Wreathed Tern. One adult from the stony patch above Macaroni Bay.

## THE ANTARCTIC DICTIONARY

**1967** Gillham, Mary E. *Sub-Antarctic sanctuary: summertime on Macquarie Island* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Wellington: 143.

Quite near the camp was a stack where some Antarctic, or wreathed, terns nested.

**wyssa** *Historical, Aust. Also whizzer, wyzza*

[In the days of limited telex transmissions between antarctic bases and Australia, the Australian Antarctic Division devised a five-letter code where set phrases were allocated a combination of letters. The letters WYSSA in the 5-letter Australian Antarctic Division telex code stand for "All my (our) love darling".]

A telex message sent or received in the Antarctic or subantarctic. See also **ANARE code**.

**26 April 1959** Béchervaise, John (1963) *Blizzard and fire: a year at Mawson, Antarctica* Angus and Robertson, Sydney: 67.

Tooth-filling, chess, music, and films help pass the time, but *wyzzas* are our greatest joy.

**7 Mar 1969** Bowden, Tim (1991) *Antarctica and back in sixty days* Australian Broadcasting Corporation, Sydney: 118.

My wife sent a whizzer today saying that my finances were unstable but she had bought a Jaguar.

**1992** *Casey News* Apr: [2].

A special hello to the sons, daughters, nieces and nephews and other young friends from all of us down here. Why don't you all write a wyssa to your relatives down here and ask them what they do when they are not working.

# Y

## yellowbelly *Falkland Islands*

The marine fish *Paranotothenia magellanica* (fam. Nototheniidae) which is found in Falkland Islands waters and is widespread elsewhere in the Southern Ocean. It grows to about 35 cm (1 ft 2 in) long and has been commercially fished; in New Zealand it is one of the fishes known as 'Maori chief', a name also used in the USA, together with 'Maori cod'.

**1993** Miller, Richard Gordon *A history and atlas of the fishes of the Antarctic ocean* Foresta Institute for Ocean and Mountain Studies, Carson City, Nevada: 133.

Known in the Falklands as "yellow-belly", it is reported to be a good fish for the table.

## yellowbelly rockcod

[See **rock cod**.]

The marine fish *Notothenia coriiceps* (fam. Nototheniidae), which occurs in waters around Antarctica, and grows to about 60 cm (2 ft).

**1985** Fischer, W. and Hureau, J.C., eds *FAO species identification sheets for fishery purposes. Southern Ocean* FAO, Rome: 354.

*Notothenia (Notothenis) neglecta* ... Yellowbelly rockcod ... Colour: adult specimens with a more or less deep brown colour .. abdomen light yellow ... Circum-Antarctic distribution ... Presence questionable on the Pacific coast and on the Indian coasts of Antarctica ... Of potential importance for coastal fishing.

## yellow-billed albatross or mollymawk See yellow-nosed albatross

## yellow-billed pintail

The mottled, pale brown duck *Anas georgica* (fam. Anatidae) of southern South America, the Falkland Islands and the northern Antarctic Peninsula region. It has a yellow bill with a black stripe down the middle, and is often called a **pintail duck** in the Falkland Islands. The **South Georgia pintail** is a subspecies of this bird.

**17 Jan 1775** (South Georgia) Cook, James quoted in Beaglehole, J.C., ed. (1961) *The voyage of the Resolution and Adventure* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 622.

The Oceanic birds were .. a small Duck such as are at the Cape of Good Hope and known by the name of Yellow-bills; we shot two and found them most delicate eating.]

**1987** Martins, Rodney in *Newsletter from the Falkland Islands Foundation* no 6 (May): 5.

Pebble Island, in addition, has an excellent series of freshwater wetlands, offering a superb opportunity for bird watchers to see waterfowl such as silver teal, yellow-billed pintail [etc.].

**1991** *Polar Record* 27(163) Oct: 359.

Recent records for the Antarctic Peninsula area .. include .. yellow-billed pintail *Anas georgica* on Gama Island

## yellow-billed teal

The duck *Anas flavirostris* (fam. Anatidae), a brown and buff bird, of the Falkland Islands and South America. Adults of both sexes have a bright yellow bill with a black ridge. It is also known as the **speckled teal**.

**1971** (Falkland Islands) Weller, Milton W. in *Antarctic Journal of the United States* VI(4) Jul/Aug: 108.

Yellow-billed or speckled teal (*Anas flavirostris*) used freshwater streams and ponds during the brood rearing.

**1990** Adams, Richard, ed. *Antarctica: voices from the silent continent* Montagne Jeunesse Co., UK: 20.

In South Georgia, our law of 'the higher the latitude, the lower the species count', clicks up a further notch. We now have only 29 breeding bird species with about the same score of recorded vagrants. This time, all but the Antarctic pipit, the endemic South Georgia pintail and the yellow-billed teal are birds of the sea.

## yellow-breasted tit

[Yellow-breasted tit is also used in New Zealand for the species *P. macrocephala* (see quotations for tit of 1872 and 1884, DNZE).]

The small robin-like bird *Petroica macrocephala marrineri*: see **Auckland Island tit**.

**30 Mar 1904** (Auckland Islands) Roberts, Brian, ed. (1967) *Edward Wilson's birds of the Antarctic* New Orchard Editions, Poole [Dorset]: 157.

Yellow Breasted Tit, *Petroica macrocephala* ... The only birds I saw were the black and white males. They were very unsuspecting of danger and came within a yard of one in the scrub. The whole of the inside of the mouth and tongue is brilliant orange red. It is apparently the South Island tit of New Zealand. The note is a very shrill repeated squeak, like a mouse.

**1909** Waite, Edgar R. in Chilton, Charles *The subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Philosophical Institute of Canterbury, Wellington, vol 2: 552.

*Petroica macrocephala*, Gmelin. (Yellow-breasted tit.) ... Though this bird was everywhere met with in the Auckland Island bush, it can scarcely be said to be common.

## yellow-crested penguin Also yellow-crested rockhopper penguin, yellow penguin

A penguin of the genus *Eudyptes* (see **crested penguin**): all adults of this genus have a yellowish crest.

**1879** (Kerguelen Island) Sharpe, R. Bowdler in *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 168: 158.

Dr. Coues in his usual painstaking manner has worked out these Yellow-crested Penguins from the material at his disposal in America.

**1905** (South Orkneys) Pirie, J.H. Harvey in *Scottish Geographical Magazine* 21: 34.

Two new birds were recorded for the locality:— (1) A yellow-crested penguin, probably *Catarrhactes chrysolophus* (Macaroni penguin), of which four specimens were got [etc.].

**1935** (Gough Island) Christensen, Lars, transl. fr Norwegian by Jayne, E.M.G. *Such is the Antarctic* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 230.

Presently we reached some large hillocks covered with tussock-grass, in between which there were tracks, made by penguins. There were thousands upon thousands of these birds, "yellow penguins" with crested heads.

**1987** Lewis, Mimi in Lewis, David *Icebound in Antarctica* Secker & Warburg, London: 61.

Charming .. were the little yellow-crested rock hopper penguins, two of which were pets at the base.

### yellow-eyed penguin *Also yellow-eye, yellow-crowned penguin*

The penguin *Megadyptes antipodum* (fam. Spheniscidae), which has a pale-yellow eye-stripe and grows to about 65 cm (2 ft 2 in) height. It breeds on Auckland and Campbell Island and the South Island of New Zealand. It has been known as the **grand penguin**, and in New Zealand is called both the 'yellow-eyed penguin' and 'hoiho'.

**1888** Buller, Sir Walter Lawry *A history of the birds of New Zealand. 2nd edn*, Published by the author, Westminster London, vol II: 294.

*Eudyptes antipodum*. (Yellow-crowned Penguin.) ... A specimen of the male bird in my collection from Campbell Island, and now figured, has the black shaft-lines on the vertex broader, the dark colour predominating, with an outer and well-defined band of pale yellow, which is continued, although in a narrower form, through the eyes to the angles of the mouth, forming a sort of coronal hood, the feathers composing which are glossy and of a silky texture.

**1902** Hutton, Captain F.W. in *The Emu* II(1) Jul: 3.

*Megadyptes antipodum*, the Yellow-eyed Penguin — sometimes called the Grand Penguin — breeds on Campbell Island, the Auckland Islands, Stewart Island, and the south of New Zealand, generally in groups of about a dozen.

**16 May 1942** Sorensen, J.H. *The work journal of J.H. Sorensen, coastwatcher in the "Cape expedition", Campbell Island, 1942-44*. Diary, in possession of NZ Dept Conservation and Wildlife, Wellington: 13.

I found where a bird had been standing for some time, probably roosting for the night. Copious excreta and the tracks proclaimed the birds to be penguins. They are probably yellow-crowned penguins which birds our predecessors state nest along this shore of Perseverance Harbour.

**1955** (Enderby Island) Eden, Allan W. *Islands of despair: being an account of a survey expedition to the subantarctic islands of New Zealand* Andrew Melrose, London: 36.

We also found that our camp was located on the established route of a number of yellow-eyed penguins ... These penguins are quite attractive birds, but their appearance is rather spoilt by the pallid yellow eye with its tiny black pupil.

**1974** Robertson, C.J.R., ed. *Birds in New Zealand* A.H. & A.W. Reed, Wellington: 96.

The endemic Yellow-eyed Penguin is the third largest of the world's penguins.

**1986** Fraser, Conon *Beyond the roaring forties: New Zealand's subantarctic islands* Government Printing Office Publishing, Wellington: 25.

Whereas most penguins number into the tens of thousands or millions, the total population of yellow-eyed is estimated

at between 2400 and 3600. It breeds on the Campbell and Auckland Islands, as well as on Stewart Island, the Otago Peninsula near Dunedin, and Banks Peninsula. It is an extremely nervous bird, both of human beings, of which other species take little notice, and of Hooker's sea lions, with better reason.

**1995** Kalman, Bobbie *Penguins* Crabtree Publishing Co, NY: 6.

Yellow-eyed penguins are the only penguins with a golden "crown".

### yellowfin notothen *Also yellowfin notothenia*

Any of several marine fish, incl. *Paranotothenia magellanica* (fam. Nototheniidae) of the Falkland Islands and nearby subantarctic waters, which grows to about 35 cm (1 ft 2 in) long, *Patagonotothen brevicauda* (see **Patagonian rockcod**) and *P. guntheri*.

**1990** Gon, O. and Heemstra, P.C. *Fishes of the Southern Ocean* J.L.B. Smith Institute of Ichthyology, Grahamstown: 312.

*Patagonotothen guntheri* (Norman, 1937) Yellowfin notothen ... In life, caudal pectoral and pelvic fins lemon yellow, dorsal and anal fins yellow ... The person being honoured was Mr. E.R. Gunther, a fisheries biologist of the British *Discovery* Investigation.

**1992** Koch, Karl-Hermann *Antarctic fish and fisheries* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 177.

A new target species, the yellowfin notothenia, *Patagonotothen guntheri*, inhabiting the waters around Shag Rocks northwest of South Georgia, was included in the investigations.

### yellow-nosed albatross *Also yellow-billed albatross (or mollymawk), yellow-nosed mollymawk*

[There is a distinctive yellow stripe down the middle of the bird's bill. The specific name chlororhynchus, from the Greek χλωρός pale green + ῥύγχος bill, was given to the bird by English ornithologist John Latham (A General Synopsis of Birds (1785) 3: 309, pl. 94), in reference to the yellow stripe on the bill.]

The relatively slender albatross *Diomedea chlororhynchus* (fam. Diomedidae), the smallest albatross. The adult has mainly white plumage with a blackish-brown upper body, and a black bill with a bright yellow stripe. There are two subspecies, *D. c. chlororhynchus* which has a light grey head and neck, and *D. c. bassi* which has a mostly white head. The bird breeds on subantarctic islands including the Prince Edward Islands, Crozets, Kerguelen, Tristan da Cunha and Gough Islands.

[**12 Oct 1772** Hoare, Michael E., ed. (1982) *The Resolution journal of Johann Reinhold Forster 1772-1775* vol 1: 176.

In the afternoon we went out again & shot two Albatrosses. They have a dirty white body, & rump, black back, quill & tail feathers. The bill black with a yellow stroke all along its upperside ... They .. seem to be a new species. When skinned they afford a good palatable food.]

**1848** Gould, John *The birds of Australia* The author, London, vol VII: pl. 42.

The Yellow-billed Albatros is plentiful off the Cape of Good Hope, and in all the intermediate seas between that point and Van Diemen's Land.

**1888** Buller, Sir Walter Lawry *A history of the birds of New Zealand. 2nd edn* Published by the author, Westminster London, vol II: 202.



*Diomedea chlororhyncha*. (Yellow-nosed Albatros.)... In the Otago Museum there is a specimen of *Diomedea chlororhyncha* (marked s Island) which comes very near in appearance to *D. cauta*, but it wants the face-adornment along the base of the mandible which distinguishes the latter species.

**1910** Barrow, K.M. *Three years in Tristan da Cunha* Skeffington & Son, London: 275.

There is nothing peculiar to Tristan in either its Fauna or Flora. Of the birds those we saw or hear most of were:– .. The Molly, Yellow-nosed Mollyhawk (*Thalassogeron chlororhynchus*). Comes to nest in August, leaves in April [etc.].

**1925** *The Oologists' Exchange & Mart* 1 Sept: 15.

Wanted.– Green and Marsh Sandpipers, Sooty and Yellow-nosed Albatross. Will purchase or exchange for anything on Australian List.

**1936** (Campbell Island) Guthrie-Smith, H. *Sorrows and joys of a New Zealand naturalist* A.H. and A.W. Reed, Dunedin: 219.

Along a towering edge of precipice we sailed near enough to note a huge rookery of the yellow-billed Mollymauk (*Thalassarche melanophrys*) [sic] ... As we proceeded along the coast, huge numbers of them followed in our wake screaming and scrambling for scraps dumped overboard.

**1951** (Nightingale Island) Rowan, M.K. *The Ostrich* XXII(3) Dec: 143.

When the Yellow-nosed Albatrosses come ashore during late August and early September, they promptly start repairing old nests or building new ones.

**1958** Holdgate, Martin *Mountains in the sea: the story of the Gough Island Expedition* Travel Book Club, London: 45.

There were Yellow-nosed Albatross, known all over the Southern Ocean as Mollies or Mollymawks ... The Molly has a wing-span of about eight feet; it is snow-white on the underside of body and wings, but dark-grey shades into black on back and upper wing surface and its head is a delicate grey. Its beak is dark, but with a bright-yellow line along its upper surface, giving it its name.

**1984** Fletcher, Harold *Antarctic days with Mawson. A personal account of the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929–31* Angus and Robertson, London: 54.

Yellow-nosed mollymawks were regularly sighted until 10 days out at sea and were not seen again until our return to the Australian coast.

### yellow orchid *Falkland Islands*

The orchid *Gavilea littoralis* (fam. Orchidaceae) of the Falkland Islands and southern South America.

**1995** Woods, Robin in *The Warrah. Newsletter of Falklands conservation* 7 (May): 9.

[caption] Yellow Orchid (*Gavila littoralis*). This may be the first record for this species on an East Falkland island.

### yellow penguin *See yellow-crested penguin*

### yikla *Historical, Aust.*

[In the days of limited telex transmissions between antarctic bases and Australia, the Australian Antarctic Division devised a five-letter code where set phrases were allocated a combination of letters. YIKLA stood for this is the life and is one of the few such creations to have survived for any length of time outside its use in telexes. WYSSA is another.]

An expression from the **ANARE code**, meaning “this is the life”.

**1963** *Aurora. The official journal of the ANARE club [Melbourne]* Nov: 9.

They sum up the whole trip in the one word “YIKLA”.

**1994** Smith, Roff in *The Australian Way* Nov: 38.

Today, living year-round in Antarctica is considerably easier ... YIKLA has gone the way of wooden skis and Nansen sleds.

### yomp *verb, Falkland Islands*

In military use, to cross rough country on foot with a full kit; more generally, to walk or tramp in rough country.

**1982** [source: NOED] *Daily Telegraph [UK]* 3 June: 36.

And always in the cold light of the Falklands dawn, the .. Marines .. have been ready to ‘yomp on’ for the next stage of the journey.

**1984** Smith, John *74 days: an Islander's diary of the Falklands occupation* Century Publishing, London: 245.

It was a wonderful sight, as are the British troops now streaming into the town, tired but jubilant, having yomped and fought their way in from San Carlos.

**1990** (Falkland Islands) Adams, Richard, ed. *Antarctica: voices from the silent continent* Montagne Jeunesse Co., UK: 14.

The springy upland turf and hill bog that inspired the word ‘yomping’ is as lovely a surface to walk over as exists on earth.

**1991** Venables, Stephen *Island at the edge of the world: a South Georgia odyssey* Hodder and Stoughton, London: 122.

I got the impression that he endured company only out of necessity and that, once the main sledging survey was complete, he was perhaps happiest on the fourth expedition, spending weeks alone, yomping around the coast.

### young ice *Also young sea ice*

Thin **sea ice** in the process of forming, and usually less than about 15 cm (6 in) thick.

**9 Feb 1841** McCormick, R. (1884) *Voyages of discovery in the Arctic and Antarctic seas and round the world* Sampson Low, Marston, Searle and Rivington, London, vol 1: 172.

At 10.15 a.m. we tacked off the edge of the pack having passed through a patch of young ice, already beginning to assume a white appearance near a berg.

**1 Apr 1899** Gerlache, Captain in *The Geographical Journal* 13 (May): 652.

The temperature fell sufficiently for young ice to form, and a second wintering appeared imminent.

**12 Mar 1911** (Hut Point) Wilson, Edward in King, H.G.R., ed. (1972) *Diary of the Terra Nova expedition to the Antarctic 1910–1912* Blandford Press, London: 116.

All the young sea ice has been blown to sea again, rough open black water everywhere.

**1964** (Enderby Land) Styles, D.F. *Narrative. Coastal exploration of Kemp and Enderby Lands, Antarctica. ANARE reports Series A vol. 1* Antarctic Division, Dept External Affairs, Melbourne: 27.

The fjord was deep but fairly well choked with icebergs and young ice.

**1978** Béchervaise, John *Science: men on ice in Antarctica. Australian Life Series* Lothian Publishing Co, Melbourne: 22.

[caption] Young sea-ice. An icefall from the frozen cliffs has lifted slabs of newly frozen sea-ice.

### yuk *See auk*

# — Z —

## zebra trout *Falkland Islands*

The freshwater fish *Aplochiton zebra*: see **trout**.

**1842** Jenyns, Rev. Leonard in Darwin, Charles, ed. *The zoology of the voyage of H.M.S. Beagle, under the command of Captain Fitzroy, R.N. during the years 1832 to 1836. Pt IV 'Fish'* London: 131.

*Aplochiton Zebra*. Jen. ... General form somewhat resembling that of the Mackarel [sic], elongated ... The sides are banded with some irregular transverse zebra-like marks ... Habitat, Falkland Islands. Mr Darwin obtained three specimens of this remarkable fish all precisely similar, from a fresh-water lake in the Falkland Islands, in March. The lake was not far from the sea, and connected with it by a brook. He adds in his notes that the species is common there; that it is good eating and grows to be about half as large again as the individuals procured.]

**1994** (Falkland Islands) *The Warrah. Newsletter of Falklands conservation* Bingham, Michael 5 (Apr): 4.

I have been surveying distributions of the local zebra trout (*Aplochiton zebra*) and minnow (*Galaxias* sp.).

## zodiac Also *zodiac boat*

[From the name of the Zodiac company, a French and US firm which devised inflatable boats in the 1930s, and developed them during World War II.]

An open, inflatable, shallow-draught, flat-bottomed rubber boat, also known as a **gemini**, commonly used to transfer passengers and cargo between ship and shore in Antarctica.

**1966** Temple, Philip *The sea and the snow* Cassell Australia, Melbourne: 29.

It was decided finally to take one 18-ft U.S. Rubber assault craft as the main landing agent with an old ex-army Zodiac

rubber boat to stand by. Both would be powered by 18 h.p. Johnson outboard motors. Our safety lay in the effectiveness of the Zodiac as a rescue craft if the USSR upset.

**1973** Jehl, Joseph R in *Antarctic Journal of the United States* VIII(2) Mar/Apr: 33.

Near-shore censuses were made from Zodiac boats.

**1997** Diski, Jenny *Skating to Antarctica* Granta Books, London: 67.

Never take anything, not a stone, not a discarded feather, from any of the landing places. Do not leave anything behind on land. Comply exactly with the crew's instructions and use the sailor's handshake — hands to wrists — when getting on or off the Zodiacs (the black rubber motorized dinghies on which we would go ashore).

## zucchini (*in sing. & pl.*), *Aust.*

[The vegetable name echoes that of the original 'apple', and perh. also reflects the absence of any familiar long red object in the vegetable kingdom.]

An extended **apple hut**, a (usu. red) fibreglass field hut with two additional sets of panels. See also **melon hut**.

**1991** Bowden, Tim *Antarctica and back in sixty days* Australian Broadcasting Corporation, Sydney: 73.

An extended apple is called a "melon", and further extensions are of course a "zucchini".

**1995** Crossley, Louise *Explore Antarctica* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 69.

For more permanent field accommodation, demountable huts like the fibreglass 'Apple' — which can be extended to a 'Melon', a 'Zucchini' or even a 'Cucumber' by adding sections in the middle — have been developed. They provide more space, shelter and comfort than a tent, but can easily be moved around by helicopters or vehicles.

## — References —

- Barber, Katherine, ed. (1991) *A dictionary of Canadianisms on historical principles* Gage Educational Publishing, Ontario.
- Branford, Jean (1987) *Dictionary of South African English* Oxford University Press, Cape Town.
- Cassidy, Frederic G., ed. (1985, 1991) *Dictionary of American regional English* vols 1, 2, Belknap Press of Harvard University, Cambridge, Mass.
- Craigie, Sir W.A. and Hulbert, James R. (1938-44) *A dictionary of American English on historical principles*, vols 1-4, Oxford University Press, London.
- Fortescue, Michael (1991) *Inuktun: an introduction to the language of Qaanaaq*, Thule Institut for Eskimologi, Københavns Universitet.
- Orsman, H.W., ed. (1997) *The dictionary of New Zealand English* Oxford University Press, Auckland.
- Oxford University Press (1996) *A dictionary of South African English on historical principles* Oxford University Press in association with The Dictionary Unit for South African English.
- Pratt, T.K. (1988) *Dictionary of Prince Edward Island English* Toronto University Press.
- Ramson, W.S., ed. (1988) *Australian National Dictionary* Oxford University Press, Melbourne.
- Tabbert, Russell (1991) *Dictionary of Alaskan English* Denali Press, Juneau.
- Wentworth, Harold and Flexner, S.B., eds (1975) *Dictionary of American slang* Cromwell, NY.